



Manual for FOMA® SH905i '07.11



Easy Search/
Contents/Precautions

Before Using
the Handset

Voice/Videophone
Calls

PushTalk

Phonebook

Sound/Screen/
Light Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion/
i-Channel

Mail

i-appli

Osaifu-Keitai/
ToruCa

GPS Function

1Seg

Full Browser/PC Movie

Data Display/Edit/
Management

Music&Video Channel/
Music Playback

Other Convenient
Functions

Character Entry

Network Services

PC Connection Setting

Overseas Use

Appendix/External Devices/
Troubleshooting

Index/Quick Manual



DoCoMo W-CDMA and GSM/GPRS System

Thank you for purchasing the FOMA SH905i.

Make sure to thoroughly read this manual and the manuals for accessories before and during use to ensure proper operation. If any of the contents in this manual are unclear, please contact number listed in “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual. The FOMA SH905i is designed to make your everyday life more convenient. Careful use will ensure a long service life.

Using the FOMA Terminal

- Because it relies on radio signals, the FOMA terminal cannot be used in places with no signal (such as tunnels, underground, or in buildings), in places with a weak signal or outside the FOMA service area. There may be times when the terminal cannot be used in the upper floors of a building even with no obstructions in sight. There may also be times when the signal is strong and you are not moving but the call is interrupted.
- Make sure not to disturb others when using in public places, places with many people, or quiet places.
- Because the FOMA terminal uses electrical signals, it is possible for a third party to listen in on a conversation. However, the W-CDMA and GSM/GPRS system automatically applies privacy to every call, a third party that tries to listen in only hears static.
- The FOMA terminal converts conversations into a digital signal and sends it to the other party over the radio. If the signal cannot be reconverted properly by such as moving to an area with a weak signal, the voice may not be heard correctly.
- Keep a separate memo and note information (e.g. phonebook, schedule, Text memo, Record message, Voice memo, Movie memo) stored in the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content due to a failure, repair, upgrade or other handling of the FOMA terminal.
- Save the important data to the microSD Memory Card. Or, forward and store the information such as a phonebook, mail and schedule to a PC using DoCoMo keitai datalink.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be liable for any such damage or loss.
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan, Inc., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd., Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal supports the FOMA Plus-Area and the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and DoCoMo's roaming area.

Using This Manual

This FOMA terminal supports Kisekae Tool (☞ P. 134). When Custom menu image is changed by Kisekae Tool, some items in Custom menu may be changed according to the menu history. In addition, some items cannot be selected even if the function numbers are entered.

In this case, operation may not run as explained in this manual. Switch the menu screen to the Basic menu (☞ P. 34) or perform Reset menu screen (☞ P. 136).

Download the latest version of this manual from the NTT DoCoMo web page.


- “User’s Manual (in PDF format)” Download

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>

※ The URL and contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

Viewing/Searching This Manual

This manual uses illustrations and icons to explain operations for proper phone use.

- Icons and screens that appear on the display have been set by default in accordance with the handset color (Kisekae Tool  P. 134).

The explanations in this manual are based on the case when Kisekae Tool is set for the handset color "White".

- The screens and illustrations in this manual are shown as examples. The actual screens and illustrations may differ.

Searching This Manual

Use this manual to find explanations of functions and services. There are several ways to find information in this manual.

See the next page for more details.

Index

 P. 512

Use this when you know the function or service name, or to search for function names that appear on the FOMA SH905i display.

Easy search

 P. 4

Search for frequently used or convenient functions using easy-to-understand language.

Indexed pages

 Cover

Search this manual using the index on the cover and the sides of pages.

Contents

 P. 6

Search for functions by category.

Main functions

 P. 8

Search for new and convenient functions or characteristic functions of the FOMA SH905i.

Menu list

 P. 458


Menus and default settings that appear on the FOMA SH905i are listed.

Quick manual

 P. 522

The basic functions are explained briefly. Cut out the Quick manual to keep as a reference when away from home.

In addition, the Quick Manual "Overseas Use" is available. Use it when using the FOMA terminal overseas.

- Note that "FOMA SH905i" is referred to as the "FOMA terminal" in this manual.
- This manual describes functions using the microSD Memory Card. Please note that microSD Memory Cards are sold separately ( P. 335 for details).
- This manual refers to "microSD Memory Card" as "microSD Memory Card" or "microSD".
- This manual refers to "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- α pli with IC card function" as "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- α pli".
- Reproduction of this manual in part or in whole is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

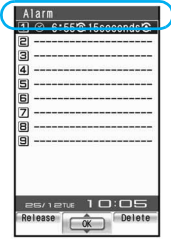
As an example, how to look up the Alarm function using the Index, Easy search, and Indexed pages are explained below.

- Content differs from actual pages in this manual.

Index

 P. 512

Use this when you know the function or service name, or to search for function names that appear on the FOMA SH905i display.




Active marker	397	Auto answer setting	354
Delete history	398	Auto power OFF	399
Display calendar/date	398	Auto power ON	399
Set display category	398		
Additional services	444	B	
Delete	444	Background playback	381
Reply message	444	Bar code reader	173
After-sales service	496	Add bookmark	175
Alarm	401	Add to phonebook	175
Click vision	401	Basic menu	137
Reception reserve alarm	295	Icon image	137
		Key list	137

P. 401
Page that explains
“Alarm”

Easy search

 P. 4

Search for frequently used or convenient functions using easy-to-understand language.

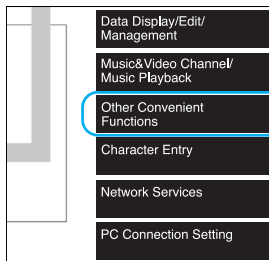
Other features 	Using the desktop clock	130	(Desktop clock)
	Saving battery power	132	(Light/Power saver)
	Scanning QR codes and bar codes	173	(Bar code reader)
	Using GPS function	273	(GPS function)
	Playing back PC movie	308	(Internet movie player)
	Using microSD Memory Cards	335	(microSD Memory Card)
	Ir-exchanging information	352	(Ir exchange)
	Listening to music	375	(Music&Video Channel/ Music playback)
	Setting the alarm	401	(Alarm)
	Using the calculator	414	(Calculator)

P. 401
Page that explains
“Alarm”

Indexed pages

 Cover

Search for functions going in the order of “cover” → “beginning of the chapter” → “description page”. The beginning of each chapter shows a table of contents.



Other Convenient Functions	
● Checking Settings	<Check Settings>396
● Multiaccess	<Multiaccess>396
● Using Multi Assistant (Multitask)	<Multi Assistant (Multitask)>396
● Retrieving the Recently Used Function or File	<Active Marker>397
● Turning Power On Automatically	<Auto Power ON>399
● Turning Power Off Automatically	<Auto Power OFF>399
● Sounding Alarm After Set Time Passes	<Timer>400
● Sounding Alarm at Set Time	<Alarm>401
● Managing Schedules	<Schedule>403
● Accessing Functions Quickly	<Shortcut Menu>409
● Saving Own Name and Image	<Owner Information>410

P. 401 Page that explains “Alarm”

This is the function name as it appears in the index.

Alarm

Sounding Alarm at Set Time

Activate melody, Chaku-uta full® or movie/intonation at the set time/day.
 ● If Vibration mode (CFP P. 125) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

Setting Alarms

Basic setting methods for alarm time and day are described below.
 ● Set the operations when alarm is activated (CFP P. 402). For the settings, change the alarm volume and tone, display a message and a phone number or perform other operations. Also, change Melody stereo effects (CFP P. 124) and called LED (CFP P. 138).

Message	Show messages when alarm operates. Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters.
Contacts	Show phone numbers when alarm operates. Make calls when alarm operates.
Alarm tone	Change alarm tone. Melody, Chaku-uta full® and movie/intonation are available.
Alarm volume	Change the volume.
Snooze setting	Set the number of times to ring alarm and its interval.
Ring duration	Change the duration to ring alarm.

1 In stand-by, press **[Timer/Alarm]** **[LifeKit]** **[Timer/Alarm]** **[Alarm]** **[select alarm registration number]**.

● Set the correct date and time in advance (CFP P. 47).
 ● Save up to nine alarms. Alarms are repeated until disabled when set to activate everyday or if the day of the week setting is set to repeat.

2 Select **[Enter Time]** enter activation time (four digits) and press **[OK]**.
 ● Use 24-hour format.

3 Select **[Set repeat]** select a repeat method.

To sound every day

[Set day of week] → select day (repeatable) → **[OK]**

- If a check is placed in [Exclude holidays], alarm does not activate for set vacations or holidays.
- To disable, select day.
- Press **[Set/Al]** / **[Cr/Al]** to select/clear all.

4 Press **[Complete]**.
 ● Press **[OK]** to end setting (Δ appears in the stand-by display).

Setting details

Appears when alarm is set

Time

Repeat frequency

Once only
 Set day of week
 Daily

Duration of alarm

Appears when snooze is set

Unsaved

Note

- When multiple alarm functions are set to the same time, the alarms are prioritized in the following order:
 Alarm → Recording → Reception → Alarm → Schedule
- If recording and starting TV programs are set for the same time, the alarms are prioritized in the following order:
 Alarm → Schedule
- One-time alarm can also be easily set on the current day (the following day if set time has passed) (Quick alarm).

Related Operations

Set alarm from stand-by **[Quick alarm]**
 In stand-by, enter time (ex. 2:05 P.M.: 1405) and press **[OK]** **[Quick alarm]**.

The setting details and the operation methods are described (Some functions are not executed according to the settings).

Necessary information, precautions and other information for using functions are explained. Blue characters indicate they are included in Index. Search from the index is available.

Search by chapter from the index.

Related operations are explained in a simplified style.

The names of displayed items and their explanations are shown.

The operation is detailed in steps.

Additional information, precautions, and advice relating to operations are explained.

Screens demonstrating various steps are shown. Refer to the screens while using the FOMA terminal (Text which is input, numbers and settings are examples).

Other Convenient Functions

Continued on next page **401**

Page number

※ Content differs from actual pages in this manual.

Note

● Refer to "Menu List" on P. 458 for details on default setting.

Viewing the display

- The explanations in this manual are based on default settings. The actual screens may differ depending on settings changed after purchase.
- When Flash movies and icons featuring animation effects are displayed, screens may differ from those described in this manual.

Notation of Keys and Operation Procedure

● This manual refers to keys as simplified icons.

Actual key	Notation in this manual
Example) [1] [3]	[1] (Refer to "Component Names and Functions" on P. 24)

● The notation and meaning of operation procedure are shown below.

Notation	Meaning
Example) In stand-by, press [OK] [Settings] [Disp/LED/Power saver] [LED settings] [select an item] .	In stand-by, press [OK] → select [Settings] with [F1] and press [OK] → select [Disp/LED/Power saver] with [F2] and press [OK] → select [LED settings] with [F3] and press [OK] → select an item with [F4] and press [OK] .

Easy Search

Use this feature to find simple description for any function.

Useful functions for making calls



Notifying caller ID	48	(Notify caller ID)
Putting a call on hold while talking	53	(Hold active call)
Switching to Videophone during voice call	54	(Switch between voice call and Videophone)
Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice	69	(Earpiece volume)

When unable to take a call



Placing a call on hold without answering the call	70	(On hold)
Indicating that it is necessary to refrain from talking on the mobile phone	71	(Public mode (Drive mode))
.	73	(Public mode (Power OFF))
Recording phone messages	74	(Record message (voice/Videophone calls))

Changing melody and illumination



Setting the ring tone for the caller	104	(Select ring tone)
Changing the ring tone	120	(Select ring tone)
Adjusting the ring tone volume	122	(Phone ring volume)
Muting the tone of keys pressed	123	(Key/Standby i-motion)
Notifying incoming calls with vibration	125	(Vibrator)
Setting Manner mode	127	(Manner mode)
Changing the light color and pattern for incoming calls	138	(LED color settings/LED pattern settings)

Changing the display





Meanings of display icons	28	(View the display)
Switching the menu display	34	(Menu selections)
Changing stand-by wallpaper	128	(Stand-by display)
Setting calendar in stand-by	129	(Calendar display)
Changing the font (font style)	139	(Font style setting)
Changing the font size	139	(Font size)
Keeping the display private	140	(Private filter)


Using mail




Sending Deco-mail	211	(Deco-mail)
Sending images	214	(File attachment)
Sorting and saving mail automatically	233	(Sort rules)

Using the camera 	Shooting panoramic pictures 164 (Panorama)
	Changing the image size 167 (Select size)
	Saving to the microSD Memory Card. 172 (Switch phone↔SD)
	Showing shot images 312 (Image Viewer)

Using the 1Seg 	Watching 1Seg. 289 (Activate 1Seg)
	Changing settings for video, voice, and sound . . 292 (1Seg settings)
	Recording a 1Seg program 293 (Record 1Seg)
	Setting timer to start or record a 1Seg program 294 (Booking list)

Securing the FOMA terminal 	Keeping phonebook contents secret 116 (Set secret)
	Locking the FOMA terminal remotely in case of loss 146 (Omakase Lock)* ¹
	Rejecting calls without caller ID 152 (Reject by reason of non-disclosure)
	Rejecting callers not saved in the phonebook . . 153 (Reject unknown)
	Saving terminal data, such as phonebook from unexpected loss 153 (Data Security Service)* ²

Other features 	Using the desktop clock 130 (Desktop clock)
	Saving battery power 132 (Light/Power saver)
	Scanning QR codes and bar codes 173 (Bar code reader)
	Using GPS function 273 (GPS function)
	Playing back PC movie 308 (Internet movie player)
	Using microSD Memory Cards. 335 (microSD Memory Card)
	Ir-exchanging information. 352 (Ir exchange)
	Listening to music 375 (Music&Video Channel/ Music playback)
	Setting the alarm 401 (Alarm)
	Using the calculator 414 (Calculator)
	Using the mobile phone overseas 449 (Overseas use)
	Updating the software 498 (Software update)
	Updating the security 504 (Scanning function)

*1 This service is a paid service.

*2 This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

Contents

Viewing/Searching This Manual.....	1
Easy Search.....	4
Main Functions of the FOMA SH905i	8
Maximizing Use of the FOMA SH905i	10
Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed).....	12
Handling Precautions.....	18
Intellectual Property	20
Standard Parts Packaged with Unit and Main Optional Parts.....	22

Before Using the Handset 23

Component Names and Functions, View the Display, TOUCH CRUISER Pad, Menu Selections, Supportbook, FOMA Card, Insert and Remove the Battery Pack, Charge the FOMA Terminal, Battery Level, Power ON/OFF, Select Language, Initial Setting, Date Settings, Notify Caller ID, Own Number

Voice/Videophone Calls 49

Use Videophone, Make Calls/Videophone Calls, Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone, Redial/Received Calls, Chaku-moji, Send Own No./No Caller ID, Pause Dial, WORLD CALL, International Dial Assist, International Prefix, Sub Address, Reconnect Signal, Noise Reduction, Hands-free, Answer Calls/Videophone Calls, Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone to Receive Calls, Any Key Answer, Set When Folded, Earpiece Volume, On Hold, Set On Hold Tone, Set Hold Tone, Public Mode (Drive Mode/Power OFF), Missed Calls, Record Message (Voice/Videophone Calls), Quick Message, Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos, Chara-den, Set the Image to Send to the Other Party, Hands-free V.phone, Videophone Set, Change Videophone Settings, Notify Switch Mode, V-phone While Packet, Picture Memo

PushTalk 87

PushTalk, Send PushTalk Transmissions, Add Member, Receive PushTalk Transmissions, Add to PushTalk Phonebook, Use PushTalk Phonebook to Send PushTalk Transmissions, Delete PushTalk Phonebook Entries, Set PushTalk

Phonebook..... 99

Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal, Add to Phonebook, Add to FOMA Card Phonebook, Group Settings, Search Phonebook, Edit Entries, Delete Entries, Set Secret, 2-touch Dialing/2-touch Mail, Use Data Security Service

Sound/Screen/Light Settings 119

Sound Settings, Select Volume, Sound Playback, Vibrator, Melody Call Setting, Quality Alarm, Ring Time Setting, Headset Setting, Manner Mode, Original Manner Mode, Set Screen, Desktop Clock, Call/Receive Display, Send/Receive Display, Picture Call Set, Light/Power Saver, Original Eco Mode, Kisekae Tool, Themes, Change Basic Menu Design, LED Color Settings/LED Pattern Settings, Notice LED, Display Image Quality, Font Style Setting, Font Size, Private Filter

Security Settings..... 141

FOMA Terminal Security Code, Change Security Code, Writing Authentic, UIM Settings, Disable PIN Lock, Lock Functions, All Lock, Omakase Lock, Self Mode, Function Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Multi Easy Lock, Side Key Guard, Show Call/Received, Secret Mode, Accept Calls, Reject Calls, Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure, Set Mute Ring Time, Reject Unknown, Data Security Service, Other Security Settings

Camera 155

Before Using the Camera, Shoot Still Picture, Shoot Movie, Change Settings for Shooting, Change Camera Settings, Send Message, Bar Code Reader, Character Reader (OCR), Card Reader

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel..... 179

i-mode, View Sites, Site Layout and Operation, My Menu, Change i-mode Password, Save Login Information, Internet Access, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Save Image, i-melody, Download PDF, Kisekae Tool, Download Dictionary, Download Chara-den, Download ToruCa, Download e-Comic, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/ Web To/Media To Function, Set i-mode, Set SSL Certificates, i-motion, Download i-motion, i-motion Auto Replay, i-Channel, Show i-Channel, i-Channel Ticker, Reset i-Channel

Mail	207
i-mode Mail, Mail Menu, Compose/Send i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Send Using a Template, File Attachment, Save i-mode Mail, Auto Receive, Receive Option, Check New Message, Reply to i-mode Mail, Forward i-mode Mail, Add to Phonebook, Acquire Attached Files for Manual Reception, View Attachment, View Image in Mail, Save Template, Inbox/Outbox/Unsent Messages, Received/Sent Messages History, Mail Setting, Message R/F, Receive Message R/F, Check New Message, View Message R/F, Area Mail (Service Scheduled), Receive Area Mail, Area Mail Setting, Compose/Send SMS, Receive SMS, SMS Settings, Save SMS to FOMA Card, Delete SMS, Scan Message	
i-appli	247
i-appli, Download, Run i-appli, Auto Start, i-appli To Function, i-appli Stand-by, Manage i-appli, Used by i-appli (Contents Transfer Compatible), Use Various i-appli Functions	
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa	263
Osaifu-Keitai, iC Transfer Service, Start Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-appli, ToruCa, Retrieve ToruCa, ToruCa Viewer, View ToruCa List/Details Screen, ToruCa Settings, IC Card Lock	
GPS Function	273
Use GPS Function, Position Location, Set Position Location, Use GPS Compatible i-appli, Location Request Menu, Location Notification, Location History, Use Location Information from Each Function	
1Seg	285
1Seg, Before Using 1Seg, Channel Setting, Activate 1Seg, Program Guide, Record 1Seg, Booking List, Use Data Broadcasting, TVlink, 1Seg Settings	
Full Browser/PC Movie	301
View Web Pages Designed for PC, Set Full Browser, Internet Movie Player, Internet Movie Player	
Data Display/Edit/Management	311
Image Viewer, Edit Image, i-motion Player, Edit Movie, Video Player, Chara-den Player, Melody Player, microSD Memory Card, Contents Transfer Compatible, Copy to microSD, Backup/Restore, View microSD Data, Copy to the Phone, Manage microSD Memory Card, Manage Data, Ir Exchange, Send and Receive Data Individually, Send and Receive All Data Items, Use Ir Exchange with i-appli Software, Infrared Remote Control, iC Transmission, Send and Receive Data Individually, Send and Receive All Data Items, Voice Recorder, PDF Viewer, Manage PDF Files, Document Viewer, Manage Documents, Manga&BookReader, Use the Information in e-Book/e-Dictionary/e-Comic, Character Reader, Manage e-Book/e-Dictionary/e-Comic, Print Setting (DPOF)	
Music&Video Channel/Music Playback	375
Music&Video Channel, Activate Music&Video Channel, Set Program, Program Play Back/Operation, Operate Music&Video Channel from Data Box, Play Back Music, Music Player, Save Music Data, Folder and Screen of Music Player, Music, Manage Folder/Playlist/Music Data, Playback Settings, SD-Audio	
Other Convenient Functions	395
Check Settings, Multiaccess, Multi Assistant (Multitask), Active Marker, Auto Power ON, Auto Power OFF, Timer, Alarm, Schedule, Shortcut Menu, Owner Information, Voice Memo (During Call/Stand-by), Calculator, Talk Time/Cost, Text Memo, Earphone/Microphone with Switch, Auto Answer Setting, Reset Settings, Delete User Data	
Character Entry	419
Text Input, 5-touch, Save Phrases, Copy Text, Kuten Code Input, Register Words (User Dictionary), Clear Memory Terms, Download Dictionary, Guess Conversion, 2-touch	
Network Services	429
Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Barring Service, Caller ID Request Service, Dual Network Service, English Guidance, Service Number, Arrival Call Action, Set Arrival Action, Remote Control, Multi Number, 2in1, OFFICEED, Additional Services (USSD)	
PC Connection Setting	445
Data Communication, Before Use, General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication, AT Commands, CD-ROM, DoCoMo Keitai Datalink	
Overseas Use	449
Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING), Services Available Overseas, Before Using Overseas, Make Calls at Your Country of Stay, Receive Calls, 3G/GSM Setting, Network Search Mode, PLMN Setting, Operator Name Display, Roaming Guidance, Call Barring, International Services	
Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting	457
Menu List, Dial Key Assignments (5-touch/2-touch), Symbols/Special Character List, Pictograph/Emoticon List, Phrase List, Use the Calculator, Multiaccess Combinations, Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations, Available Services, Options and Accessories, Use with External Devices, Troubleshooting, List of Error Messages, Warranty and After-sales Services, Software Update, Scanning Function, Main Specifications, Number of Saved/Registered/Protected Entries in the FOMA Terminal, Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), Japan Export Control Regulation/Export Administration Regulation	
Index/Quick Manual	511
Index, Quick Manual, Quick Manual "Overseas Use"	

Main Functions of the FOMA SH905i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as a global standard for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

The World of i-mode

i-mode is an online service used to access useful information from i-mode menu sites (programs) or i-mode supported sites, or easily send and receive e-mail.

Deco-mail/Deco-mail Pictograph

Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictograph is available for i-mode mail. Change text color, character size, and background color in message text and insert images or moving pictographs. ☎ P. 211, P. 424

Mega i-appli/Chokkan Game

Download i-appli from sites to play games and automatically update stock prices and weather information. Supporting large Mega i-appli lets you enjoy high-definition 3D games and long RPGs. Also, Chokkan Games to enjoy operations such as "tilting" and "shaking (or swing)" the mobile phone are supported. The speech recognition is also supported on FOMA SH905i, and therefore the operation responding to the voice is available. ☎ P. 248, P. 252

HIGH-SPEED Area Supported

FOMA HIGH-SPEED area is supported so that high speed communication is available with download speed of up to 3.6 Mbps and upload speed of up to 384 kbps. ☎ P. 446

International Roaming

The same FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address as those used in Japan are available overseas (supporting GSM/3G area). In addition, voice/Videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS and network services are available. Moreover, a speech translation for SH, which translates the voice spoken in Japanese to English and the voice spoken in English to Japanese, is pre-installed. ☎ P. 254, P. 450

GPS

Based on the acquired location information with GPS, display the map or search peripheral area information of the present location, notify your location by attaching the information to mail or navigate to a destination. A mapping appli is pre-installed so that high-resolution maps can easily be used. ☎ P. 274

Numerous Network Services

- Dual Network Service (monthly fees apply) ☎ P. 437
- Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply) ☎ P. 430
- 2in1 (monthly fees apply) ☎ P. 440

Chaku-uta full®/Uta-hodai/ Music&Video Channel*/Video Clip

* This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

Supporting Chaku-uta full® with which one song can be downloaded in whole and Uta-hodai with which you can enjoy your favorite songs as much as you like at flat rate using only the mobile phone. Also, Music&Video Channel is supported so that music programs can be automatically downloaded at night and enjoyed if the setting is made in advance. Enjoy the programs with movies on FOMA SH905i. In addition, i-motion of up to 10 MB is supported so that a video clip to enjoy a music clip of one entire song is also supported. ☎ P. 376, P. 381, P. 387

- "Chaku-uta full" is a registered trademark of the Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to deposit electronic money to the IC card in the FOMA terminal, check your balance or view usage history from sites. Moreover, i-appli for "DCMX", a DoCoMo's credit service, is pre-installed. This terminal also supports "iC transfer service" that makes transferring data in the IC card easier when the FOMA terminal is changed into a new model. ☎ P. 256, P. 264
ToruCa is an electronic card available from scanning device and sites. Easily share using mail or Ir exchange. ☎ P. 266

Kisekai Tool

Download the screen of your favorite character, etc. and change the screens such as the stand-by and menu screens collectively. With FOMA SH905i, sort the order to display the menus according to the usage frequency and customize the menu screens. ☎ P. 134

- Call Waiting (monthly fees apply) ☎ P. 432
- SMS ☎ P. 241
- Call Forwarding Service ☎ P. 433

Approx. 3.2 million effective pixel CMOS camera

(Recorded pixels: approximately 3.2 million) Shoot or playback still pictures or movies using an auto-focus digital camera. Multishot and shooting with frames are also available. Shoot images of yourself or to use Videophone.

[☞ P. 156](#)

microSD Memory Card compatible

Supporting a minimum-sized memory, microSD Memory Card. Exchange data between FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card. Save movies directly to the microSD Memory Card to shoot and play long movie files. Save the contents transfer compatible data to a microSD Memory Card and also music or images using a PC. [☞ P. 335](#)

Internet movie player

Replay streaming of a PC movie from Full Browser. Enjoy assorted contents such as news and sports with high-quality images. [☞ P. 308](#)

Manga&BookReader

Read an e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic saved to the microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal. In addition, enjoy an e-comic downloaded from sites. [☞ P. 367](#)

Wakeup TV

Automatically activate 1Seg when the preset time arrives. [☞ P. 296](#)

3.0 inch Full WVGA High-definition Large Display LCD

Enjoy high quality view of 1Seg, shot still pictures and movies, etc. on the 3.0 inch wide screen. The wide screen also let you enjoy lively i-appli games. In addition, the brightness sensor adjusts the brightness of the backlight according to the detected surrounding light. This is useful for power saving proposes. [☞ P. 134](#)

TOUCH CRUISER pad

In Custom menu, i-mode or Full Browser, put a finger on the TOUCH CRUISER pad and move the pointer to select an item with double-tapping. Alternatively, move the cursor or scroll the screen instead of using Multi-guide key. [☞ P. 32](#) In addition, Writing authentication is available. [☞ P. 143](#)

Private filter

Change the contrast of the display to protect your important privacy. [☞ P. 140](#)

Card reader

Scan the name, company name, address, phone number, mail address, etc. described on a business card with the camera to save them in the phonebook. [☞ P. 178](#)

Enlarged font

Enlarge the font sizes displayed on the screen collectively. For i-mode, Full Browser, Mail/Message, and Text input, the font size can be set individually. [☞ P. 139](#)

Wide Array of Lock Functions and Security Settings

There are various lock functions and security settings for the FOMA terminal.

- Lock functions [☞ P. 145](#)
- Secret mode [☞ P. 150](#)
- Multi easy lock [☞ P. 148](#)
- Multi lock auto-set [☞ P. 149](#)
- Show call/received [☞ P. 150](#)
- Writing authentication [☞ P. 143](#)

Security Settings

Omakase Lock*1 [☞ P. 146](#)

The FOMA terminal can be locked by request when it is lost. The lock can be disabled also by request. Refer to the back cover for details on inquiries. Omakase Lock is a paid service*2.

*1 Omakase Lock is a service to lock the handset by the request of the subscriber. Please note that the lock service can be applied by a request of the subscriber even if the subscriber is not a user of the FOMA terminal.

*2 If Omakase Lock is subscribed while or at the same time as when the use of FOMA terminal is suspended, the usage fee of Omakase Lock is not charged.

Data Security Service [☞ P. 117, P. 153](#)

By using this service, phonebook, images, messages in the phone can be saved in the Data Storage Center, and the lost data can be restored from the data saved on the network when the phone is lost. In addition, the data saved on Data Storage Center can be edited and managed using a PC. The edited data can be reflected to the phone.

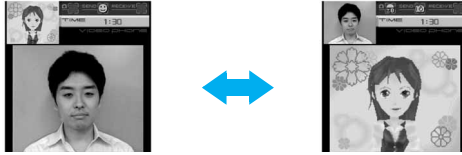
Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for precautions and details on the Data Security Service and the back cover of this manual for inquiries. This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

Maximizing Use of the FOMA SH905i

The functions of the FOMA SH905i are described below.

Videophone P. 50, P. 54

Have conversations with the other party who is far away while viewing each other's image. In default settings, the other party's voice is played through the speakers. Start conversation as it is. In addition, switch a voice call to a Videophone call during a call.




During Videophone Calls

PushTalk P. 88

Simply select the other party from the PushTalk phonebook and press the PushTalk key to communicate with multiple people at once (up to five including yourself).

i-Channel P. 204

Receive graphical information such as news and weather. Select a channel from the list to retrieve detailed information made with Flash ( P. 182).

※ This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

※ i-Channel is only available in Japanese.



1Seg

1Seg P. 289

Watch "1Seg", which is digital terrestrial broadcasting for mobile devices.

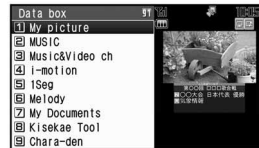


Video P. 293, P. 312, P. 327

Record movies and a scene as a still picture for 1Seg program being played. Watch the recorded movies and still pictures with the FOMA terminal.

Multi Window P. 292

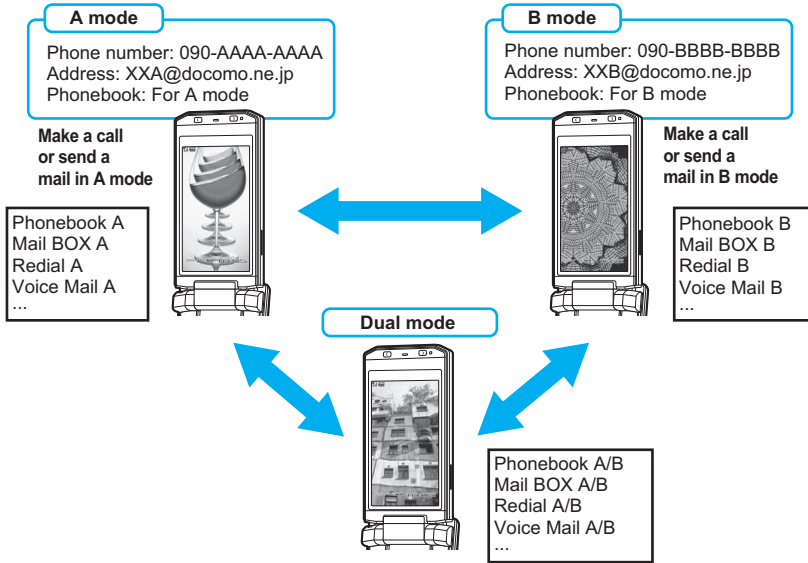
While watching 1Seg on Multi Window, use another function.



TV timer and Recording timer P. 294

Set timer for starting or recording TV programs.

2in1 is a service that two phone numbers and two mail addresses can be used on one mobile phone with dedicated mode function as if two different mobile phones are used. Phonebook, mail box, call/received history, stand-by screen, etc. can be used separately in "A mode" and "B mode" on one mobile phone and also be used in "Dual mode" that can control both A and B modes simultaneously.
 ※ This service is a paid service that requires subscription.



Music Playback

P. 376

Your favorite music programs are automatically distributed at night. The programs are automatically updated on a regular basis. Enjoy the latest music information at any time.

P. 381

Play back Chaku-uta full® downloaded from sites or Internet web pages and WMA file transferred with Napster® using Music player. Uta-hodai is available. Also play back the data saved to the [Multimedia] folder of i-motion.



P. 392

Use SD-Jukebox and a PC or other devices to save songs from a CD to the microSD Memory Card and play on the FOMA terminal.

Chaku-moji P. 58




While making a call and ringing the other party, display a message on the other party's receive display. Viewing the message, the receiver side can know the points and feeling of the other party in advance.



Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed)

- Before use, read these “Safety Precautions” carefully and use your FOMA properly. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions contain information intended to prevent bodily injury to the user and to surrounding people, as well as damage to property, and must be observed at all times.

The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury or damage that may occur if information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used improperly.

 Danger	This symbol indicates that “death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use”.
 Warning	This symbol indicates that “death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use”.
 Caution	This symbol indicates that “bodily injury and/or property damage may result from improper use”.


The following symbols indicate specific directions.

 Don't	Indicates a prohibited action.
 No disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble the device.
 No wet hands	Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.
 No liquids	Indicates not to use the device near water or get it wet.
 Instruction	Indicates that instructions specified are compulsory (must be followed).
 Unplug	Indicates that the power cord must be unplugged from the power outlet.


“Safety Precautions” is explained in the following six sections.

- Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapters (Chargers), and FOMA Card (General) P. 12
- Handling the FOMA Terminal P. 13
- Handling the Battery Pack P. 15
- Handling the Adapters (Chargers) P. 16
- Handling the FOMA Card P. 17
- Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment P. 17


Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapters (Chargers), and FOMA Card (General)

 **Danger**


Do not use, store or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) or FOMA card in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fire, in direct sunlight, or inside a car on a hot day.

 The FOMA may malfunction or become deformed. In addition, the battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life. Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.


Do not attempt to disassemble or modify. In addition, do not attempt to solder.

 May cause accidents such as fires, bodily injury, electric shock or malfunction. In addition, the battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not get the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) or FOMA card wet.

 Contact with water, pet urine, and other liquids may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction or bodily injury. Be attentive to where and how you use the handset.

Use only the battery packs and adapters (chargers) specified by the DoCoMo group companies for use with the FOMA terminal.

 **Instruction**

The use of devices other than those specified may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or malfunction.

- Battery Pack SH14
- Desktop Holder SH16
- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

※ For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo Shop or retailer.

Warning

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers), or FOMA card inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or pressure cookers.



Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal and adapters (chargers) may overheat, emit smoke or catch fire. The internal circuitry may also be damaged.

Do not throw or otherwise subject to strong force or impacts.



Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other equipment may also be damaged or catch fire.

Do not allow conductive materials (such as metal objects and pencil lead) to come into contact with the charger terminal or external device terminal. In addition, do not insert such objects.



Don't

The battery pack may short-circuit and cause a fire or malfunction.

Make sure to turn off the mobile phone in locations such as gas stations where flammable gas is generated.

In addition, do not recharge the battery. It may cause a gas explosion or fire.



Instruction

To use Osaifu-Keitai in locations such as gas stations, make sure to turn off the power in advance (If the IC card lock is set, disable the lock before turning off the power).

If you notice anything unusual, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately follow the instructions below.



Instruction

1. Unplug the power cord from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continued use (charging) may cause overheating, explosion, or fire. In addition, the battery pack may leak.

Caution

Do not leave the FOMA on unstable surfaces, such as on a wobbling table or sloped surface.



Don't

The FOMA may fall and cause injury or be damaged.

Do not store the FOMA in locations that are subject to dust, humidity or high temperatures.



Don't

May cause a malfunction.

Caution

If being used by a child, have a guardian teach them the proper handling procedures. In addition, check that the child is using the FOMA as directed.



Instruction

May result in bodily injury.

Keep the FOMA out of the reach of young children.



Instruction

A young child may swallow components or suffer other bodily injury.

Be very careful when using the FOMA terminal connected to adapters (chargers) repeatedly or for long periods of time.



Instruction

The FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapters (chargers) may become warm if i-αppli, Videophone, or 1Seg is used for a long time while charging. Exposure to high temperature areas for a prolonged period of time may cause skin irritations, itchiness, or low-temperature burn in some people.

Handling the FOMA Terminal

Warning

Do not aim the Ir (Infrared) data port towards the eyes.



Don't

May cause eye injury. In addition, do not aim or direct the Ir data port towards another Ir device as this may cause the device to malfunction.

Do not put the FOMA terminal in the place where it could be affected by an expanded airbag, e.g., on the dashboard.



Don't

If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.

If you are using electronic medical equipment, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.



Don't

Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.

Do not allow water or other liquids, metal, flammable material, or other foreign objects to enter the FOMA card or microSD Memory Card port on the FOMA terminal.



Don't

May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.



Don't

This may prevent a driver from driving safely and cause a traffic accident.

Warning

Turn off the FOMA terminal in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals.



Instruction

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive devices and electronic medical equipment. In addition, if Auto power ON function is set to ON, disable this function before turning off your mobile phone. Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facilities regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises. In addition, actions such as speaking on a mobile phone aboard aircraft are prohibited and may be punishable by law.

During a call in which Hands-free is set, keep the FOMA terminal away from the ears. When you attach the earphone/microphone to the FOMA terminal to play games or music, do not make the volume too loud.



Instruction

Excessive high volume may damage your hearing. Also it may prevent you from hearing the ambient sounds and cause an accident.

If you have a weak heart, take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring tone volume for incoming calls.



Instruction

Various settings may have effects on your heart.

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA outdoors, put the antenna back into the FOMA terminal, immediately turn it off and move to a safe location.



Instruction

There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

Turn the FOMA terminal off near high-precision electronic devices or devices that use weak electronic signals.



Instruction

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

Take particular care with the following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, or other electronic medical equipment. Fire alarms, automatic doors, and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by signals.

Warning

In case that the display part or camera lens is damaged, make sure to pay attention to a broken glass and the exposed inside of the FOMA terminal.



Instruction

The surface of the display is covered by a protective film or the surface of camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause injury.

Caution

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its antenna, strap, etc.



Don't

The FOMA may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.

Do not use the FOMA terminal in area with many people.



Don't

The antenna may strike others, resulting in bodily injury.

Do not use the FOMA terminal with the damaged antenna.



Don't

Touching the antenna may cause burn or other injuries.

When using Motion tracking, confirm the safety of surroundings, hold the FOMA terminal securely and do not swing it around more than necessary.



Don't

Use Motion tracking to operate by tilting and shaking (or swinging) the FOMA terminal. The FOMA terminal may hit people or objects, if shaken (or swung) too much, and cause a serious accident or damage, etc.

If using Motion tracking with the FOMA terminal to which metallic straps or others are attached, be careful not to hit people or objects with the straps.



Don't

Resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.

Never place a magnetic card near or in the FOMA terminal.



Don't

The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

Never place magnetized items near the FOMA terminal.




Don't


Putting highly magnetized items closer may cause a malfunction.

⚠ Caution


If the display is broken and the liquid crystal then leaks, do not lick or inhale the liquid or get the liquid on your skin.
 If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor.
 If the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol, and wash with water and soap.

 The liquid is harmful to your eyes and your skin.
Don't


While the ring tone is ringing or a melody is played on the FOMA terminal, do not put the ears closer to the speaker.

 This may cause hearing loss.
Don't


On the surface of the display, there is a protective film for securing the safety (for preventing the reinforced glass panel from shattering) in case of the damage caused by a drop, impact, etc. Do not forcibly peel off or scratch this film.

 Use with the film removed may cause a bodily injury when the display is damaged.
Don't

Using the FOMA terminal in an automobile may sometimes affect the electronic equipment in some vehicle models.

 In such cases, stop using the FOMA terminal, as this could impede safe driving.
Instruction


Use of the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itchiness, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and seek medical treatment.

 Instruction


Part	Material	Surface treatment
Earphone/Microphone terminal	Stainless steel	Tin plating
External connector terminal		
Charger terminal		Gold plating
Inside microSD Memory Card slot		-
Metal part of 1Seg antenna	Brass	Chrome plating

⚠ Caution

Do not close the FOMA terminal on your fingers or objects such as the strap.

 May result in bodily injury or cause a malfunction.
Instruction

Watch 1Seg in a well-lit place, keeping a certain distance from the screen.

 Otherwise, eyesight may be decreased.
Instruction


Handling the Battery Pack

Check the type of battery using the information printed on the battery pack label.


Label	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

⚠ Danger


Do not touch terminals with metallic objects such as wires. In addition, do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.

 The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.
Don't


If you are having difficulty fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing the correct direction before you attach it.

 The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.
Don't


Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.

 The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.
Don't

Do not puncture, hit with a hammer or step on the battery pack.


 The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.
Don't

If the battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.

 Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.
Instruction


⚠ Warning

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified time has elapsed, stop charging.


 The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.
Instruction

Warning


If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop use and move it away as far as possible from any flame or fire.

 The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

If any trouble is found on the battery pack due to an external impact such as a deformation or scratches caused by a drop, immediately stop using it.


 The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other equipment may also be damaged or catch fire.

Prevent your pet from biting the battery pack.


 The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other equipment may also be damaged or catch fire.

Caution


Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage.

 May cause fires or damage to the environment. Place tape over the terminals to insulate unnecessary battery packs, and take them to a DoCoMo Shop, retailer or institution that handles used batteries in your area.

Do not charge a wet battery pack.

 The battery pack may overheat, catch fire or explode.


If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off thoroughly with clean water.

 Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.


Handling the Adapters (Chargers)

Warning

Do not use if the adapter's (charger's) cord or power cord is damaged.


 May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.

Never use the AC adapter or desktop holder in humid or steamy locations such as a bathroom.


 May result in electric shock.

Warning


The DC adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles. Never use these adapters in positive grounded vehicles.

 May cause a fire.


Do not touch the FOMA terminal or adapters (chargers) if you hear thunder.

 There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.


Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when connected to a power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, take care not to allow any part of your body (fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal.

 May result in a fire, equipment malfunction, electric shock or bodily injury.


Place the charger and desktop holder on stable surfaces when charging. In addition, do not cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.

 The FOMA terminal may detach, overheat, or cause a fire or malfunction.


Do not place heavy objects on the power cords and the adapters (chargers) cords.









 May cause an electric shock or fire.

Do not handle the cord and plug of the adapters (chargers) with wet hands.



 May result in electric shock.

Always use the specified power supply and voltage.

 Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction.
When using overseas, use the AC adapter that is available overseas.
AC adapter: 100 VAC
DC adapter: 12/24 VDC (for negative grounded vehicles only)
AC adapter available overseas: 100 to 240 VAC (Connect only with household AC outlet)






 Warning	
If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.	
 Instruction	Using the fuse other than the specified one may cause a fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.
Wipe off any dust on the power plug.	
 Instruction	May cause a fire.
When plugging the AC adapter into the power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.	
 Instruction	May cause electric shock, short-circuiting or fire.
Always grasp the power plug when unplugging the adapters (chargers) from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not forcibly pull by the cord or power cord.	
 Instruction	Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.
Unplug the power plug from the outlet when not using for a long time.	
 Unplug	May cause an electric shock, fire, or equipment malfunction.
Should water or other liquids enter the adapters (chargers), remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket immediately.	
 Unplug	May cause an electric shock, smoke emission, or fire.
Always unplug the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the adapters (chargers).	
 Unplug	May result in electric shock.

Handling the FOMA Card

 Caution	
Be careful with the cutting surface when detaching the FOMA card (IC).	
 Instruction	May cause injuries to your hand or fingers.

Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

The safety precautions detailed here conform to the guidelines drawn up by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from signals emitted by mobile phones.

 Warning	
Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities.	
 Instruction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units). ● Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards. ● Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby. ● Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly. ● If Auto power ON function is set to ON, disable this function before turning off your mobile phone.
Turn off your FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.	
 Instruction	Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.
If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or an implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, always carry or use your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from your implant.	
 Instruction	Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.
Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of signals on the equipment.	
 Instruction	Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

Handling Precautions

General Notes

- Do not expose to water. FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) and FOMA card are not waterproof. Do not use in humid or steamy areas such as bathrooms and avoid exposing to rain and other forms of moisture. If FOMA terminal is carried close to skin, perspiration may cause internal components to corrode and result in malfunction. Note that if problem is found to be due to moisture, handset and parts are not covered by warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even where repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since damage is not covered by warranty.
- Clean only with a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses).
The surface of the handset's LCD has a special coating to improve the visibility of the color display. Forceful rubbing of LCD with a dry cloth may scratch LCD surface. Handle the handset carefully and clean using a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period. Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents, as these agents may erase the printing on the handset or cause discoloration.
- Occasionally clean terminals with a dry cotton swab.
Unclean terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Additionally, keep terminal clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab to prevent charge performance loss.
- Do not place the handset near an air conditioning vent. Condensation formed due to rapid changes in temperature may cause internal corrosion and lead to malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the FOMA terminal and battery pack when using them.
Carrying the handset in a tightly packed bag, or sitting on the handset in your pocket may result in damage to the display, other internal components or battery pack.
Keeping an external connector device plugged into the external connector terminal or earphone/microphone terminal may cause a damage to the connector or result in malfunction.
- Read the manuals supplied with the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers), and desktop holder carefully.
- Do not rub or scratch the display with metal, etc. May scratch the handset and cause malfunction or damage.

Notes About FOMA Terminal

- Avoid using the handset in extremely high or low temperatures. Use the FOMA terminal within the range of a temperature between 5°C and 35°C and a humidity between 45% and 85%.
- Using the handset close to landline phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far away as possible from such items before use.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- When connecting an external connector device to the external connector terminal or earphone/microphone terminal, do not put it in obliquely or do not pull it while it is plugged in. May damage the handset and cause malfunction.
- Do not close FOMA terminal on strap. May damage the handset and cause malfunction.
- FOMA terminal may become warm with continuous use or during charging. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight. May cause discoloration or burn-in.
- Use the FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone terminal cover, external connector terminal cover, and microSD Memory Card port cover on.
Dust, water and others enter inside and cause a malfunction.
- Do not use the FOMA terminal without the back cover.
May detach the battery pack or cause malfunction or damage.
- Do not cover the surface of the display, keys or buttons with an extremely thick sticker.
May cause malfunction.
- While using a microSD Memory Card, do not remove the card or turn off the FOMA terminal.
May cause data loss or malfunction.

Handling Battery Pack

- Battery pack is a consumable product. Though usage time varies with use, charge battery if battery level is extremely low even after fully charged. Purchase a new battery pack for specified handset.
- Charge battery in areas where ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.
- Always charge the battery before the first use or after not using battery for a long time.
- The usage time for a battery depends on the usage and deterioration of battery pack.
- Depending on usage, the battery may swell as it approaches the end of its service life but this will not cause problems.
- Do not store or leave the battery pack with no battery left.
Failure to observe this instruction may lower the performance or shorten the life of the battery pack.

Handling the Adapters (Chargers)

- Charge battery in the area where ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.
- Do not charge battery pack in the following locations.
 - Areas with high humidity or dust, or in areas exposed to strong vibrations
 - Close to landline phones, TVs, radios, etc.
- Adapters (chargers) may become warm during charging. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- Do not use DC adapter to charge battery when the car engine is not running. May cause car battery to run down.
- When using a power outlet with a feature to prevent the plug from being removed accidentally, follow instructions in the outlet user's guide.
- Do not subject to strong force or impacts. Also, do not disfigure the charger terminals. May cause a malfunction.
- When folding the stand of the desktop holder, prevent the cord for the adapter (including charger) and your fingers from being caught. May result in bodily injury or damage.

Notes About FOMA Card

- Do not apply unnecessary force when inserting/removing the FOMA card.
- FOMA card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Customer is responsible for malfunctions arising from inserting FOMA card into a different IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep IC area clean.
- Clean only with a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses).
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA card. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of data.
- To protect the environment, please take any unnecessary FOMA cards to your local DoCoMo Shop or retailer.
- Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.
- Do not damage, touch haphazardly or short-circuit the IC. May cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop or otherwise subject the FOMA card to severe impact. May cause a malfunction.
- Never bend or place heavy objects on the FOMA card. May cause a malfunction.
- Do not insert the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal with a label or sticker attached on the card. May cause a malfunction.

FeliCa Reader/Writer

- The FeliCa reader/writer function in the FOMA terminal uses weak radio waves in the handling of which does not require a license of radio station.
- The frequency in use is the 13.56 MHz band. When another reader/writer is being used nearby, keep enough distance from it. Make sure that there is no radio station using the same frequency band in the nearby area.

Caution

- Never use the FOMA terminal that is modified. Using a modified device violates the Radio Law. The FOMA terminal has acquired the certification of conformity with technical regulations for the specified radio station based on the Radio Law, and the "Technical Conformity Mark (㊞)" is printed on the model nameplate of the FOMA terminal as a proof. If the screws of FOMA terminal are removed and a modification is given to the inside, the certification of conformity with technical regulations will become invalid. Never use the FOMA terminal without the valid certification. Doing so violates the Radio Law.
- Be careful when using the FOMA terminal while driving a motor vehicle. While driving, using a mobile phone in hand is regarded as a punishable act. If there is no choice but to receive a call, use Hands-free and tell the caller that you will "call back" and then pull over to a safe place to make a call.
- Use the FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan. The FeliCa reader/writer function in the FOMA terminal conforms to the domestic radio wave standards. Using the function overseas may result in punishment.

Intellectual Property

Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

- Data with third party copyrights such as text, images, music and software that is downloaded or acquired via Internet web pages, shot by the FOMA terminal, or acquired from TV or other video cannot be duplicated, altered or publicly transmitted without rightful party's consent. Only duplicating, quoting, etc. for personal use is permitted under copyright laws. Even if for personal use, filming and recording may be prohibited for demonstrations, performances and exhibitions. Also, shooting another's image or posting another's image on Internet web pages without their consent may constitute a violation of one's right to their image.

Registered Trademarks and Trademarks

- "FOMA", "mova", "ToruCa", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "mopera", "mopera U", "FirstPass", "Chara-den", "Deco-mail", "Chaku-motion", "i-motion mail", "i-appli", "i-appliDX", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-Channel", "iD", "DCMX", "Short Mail", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "DoPa", "WORLD CALL", "Dual Network", "visualnet", "V-live", "Security Scan", "musea", "sigmarion", "OFFICEED", "IMCS", "i-area", "2in1", "Chokkan Game", the "i-mode" logo, the "FOMA" logo, the "i-appli" logo, the "DCMX" logo, the "iD" logo, the "WORLD WING" logo, "HIGH-SPEED" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- **symbian** This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd. Symbian, Symbian OS and other associated Symbian marks are all trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd. © 1998-2007 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved.
- Catch Phone (Call Waiting) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Multitask is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- This product is equipped with NetFront Browser, NetFront Sync Client and NetFront Browser DTV Profile Wireless Edition by ACCESS Co., Ltd. for an internet browser or other application software.
- This product adopts Media: specifications of ACCESS CO., Ltd. for activating broadcasting contents. Copyright © 1996-2007 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product includes modules developed by the Independent JPEG Group.

- ACCESS, NetFront and Media: are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.


ACCESS™ NetFront®


- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Vista™, PowerPoint® and Windows Media® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc., in the US and other countries.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- The microSD logo is a trademark.



- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2007 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- **picstel**  Document Viewer is powered by Picstel Technologies. Picstel, Picstel Powered, Picstel Viewer, Picstel Document Viewer and the Picstel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picstel Technologies and/or its affiliates.

- This handset features LCFONT, developed by Sharp Corporation, to make the LCD easier to view and read. LCフォント/LCFONT and  are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.

- Heisei font is an intellectual property of Font Development and Promotion Center of Japanese Standards Association, and "SH Heisei Mincho" is a font developed by DynaComware Corp. with a license.

- DynaFont is a registered trademark of DynaComware Taiwan Inc.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the U.S.A. and other countries.

- All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.

© 2006 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

- Gガイド, G-GUIDE, Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE MOBILE and the G-GUIDE related logos are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates in Japan.
- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.
- F e l i C a, which uses non-contact IC card technology, was created by Sony Corporation.





- F e l i C a is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- FlashFX[®] Pro[™] is a trademark or registered trademark of the Datalight, Inc. in the US. (U.S.Patent Office 5,860,082/6,260,156)
- PhotoSolid[®] is a registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.
- "TOUCH CRUISER", "Private filter", "Wakeup TV", "Desktop clock" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- All other company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

- Contains Flash[®] Lite[™] and Adobe[®] Reader[®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated
Flash Lite copyright © 1995-2007
Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe Reader copyright © 1984-2007
Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash, Flash Lite and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

- This product uses the GestureTek technology. Copyright © 2006, GestureTek, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;

4,901,307	5,490,165	5,056,109
5,504,773	5,101,501	5,506,865
5,109,390	5,511,073	5,228,054
5,535,239	5,267,261	5,544,196
5,267,262	5,568,483	5,337,338
5,600,754	5,414,796	5,657,420
5,416,797	5,659,569	5,710,784
5,778,338		

- Content owners use Windows Media digital rights management (WMDRM) technology to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected contents. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When you download licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

- CP8 PATENT
- Windows[®] 2000 is an abbreviation of Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows[®] XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft[®] Windows[®] XP Professional operating system or Microsoft[®] Windows[®] XP Home Edition operating system.
- Windows Vista[™] is an abbreviation of Windows Vista[™] (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
- This manual refers to Windows[®] 2000 Professional as Windows 2000.
- This manual refers to Windows[®] XP Professional and Windows[®] XP Home Edition as Windows XP.
- This manual refers to Windows Vista[™] (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate) as Windows Vista.

Others

- Under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, customers have licensed permission for the following use of this product to engage in non-profit personal use. Other uses are not permitted.
 - Encoding MPEG-4 standard video (henceforth referred to as MPEG-4 video).
 - Decoding an MPEG-4 video that a customer not engaged in personal commercial activities has encoded.
 - Decoding an MPEG-4 video obtained from a licensed provider.

For details on other intended uses, contact MPEG LA, LLC.

- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard. An additional license and payment of royalties are necessary in the following cases.
 - Data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis.
 - Data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use.

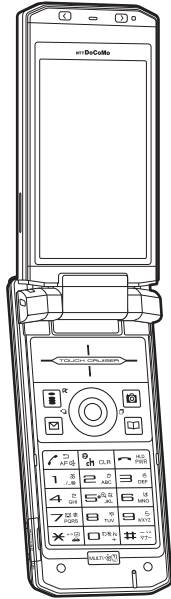
Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. Contact MPEG LA, LLC for additional details.

- This product is licensed under the AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and noncommercial use of a consumer to
 - encode video in compliance with the AVC standard (henceforth referred to as AVC video) and/or
 - decode AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC video.
 No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.

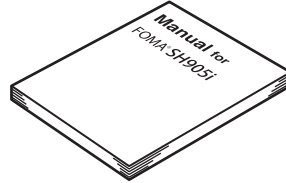
See [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com)

Standard Parts Packaged with Unit and Main Optional Parts

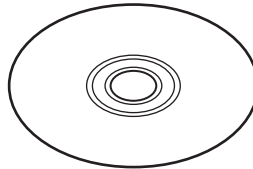
Standard package



FOMA SH905i terminal
(includes warranty and back cover SH17)

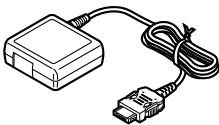


FOMA SH905i manual (this manual)
※ Quick manual can be found on P. 522.

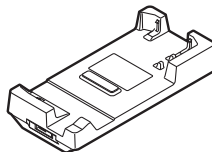


FOMA SH905i CD-ROM
※ "Manual for PC connection setting" and "Kuten Code List" in the PDF format are contained.

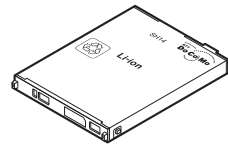
Main optional parts



FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
(includes warranty and user's guide)



Desktop holder SH16
(includes user's guide)



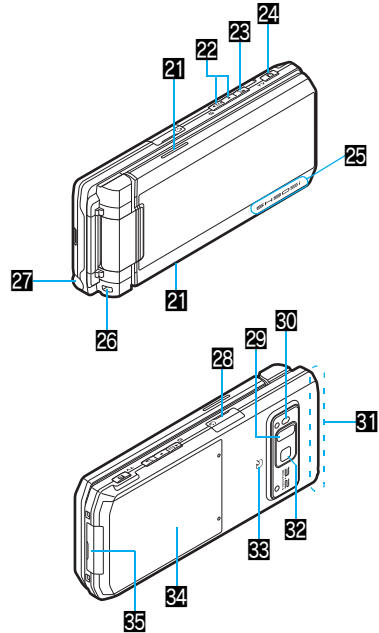
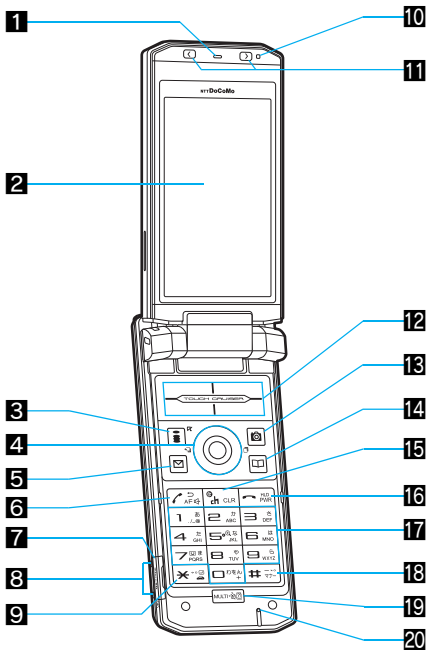
Battery pack SH14
(includes user's guide)

● Refer to P. 481 for details on other optional parts.

Before Using the Handset

● Component Names and Functions	24
● Viewing the Display	28
● TOUCH CRUISER Pad	32
● Menu Selections	34
● Displaying the Supportbook	<Supportbook>36
● Using a FOMA Card	<FOMA Card>37
● Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack	39
● Charging the FOMA Terminal	40
● How to Check the Battery Level	<Battery Level>44
● Turning the Power On and Off	<Power ON/OFF>45
● Switching Display to English	<Select Language>46
● Making the Initial Setting	<Initial Setting>46
● Setting the Date and Time	<Date Settings>47
● Sending Your Own Phone Number to the Other Party	<Notify Caller ID>48
● Checking Your Phone Number	<Own Number>48

Component Names and Functions



※ Key illustrations are examples and may look different from actual keys.

The brightness sensor area

When Brightness of Light/Power Saver (☞ P. 132, P. 134) is set to [Automatic], the sensor detects the light of the surrounding area and automatically adjusts the display brightness and keypad backlight. Do not cover the sensor area (10) with a sticker. May interfere with the sensor.

1 Earpiece

- Emits the other party's voice.
- When in stand-by, listen to Record message/Voice memo using the earpiece.

2 Display (☞ P. 28)

3 i-mode/Guidance key (☞) (☞)

- Press to make or receive a Videophone call (☞ P. 51, P. 66).
- Press to use i-mode (☞ P. 180).
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower left of the display in guidance (☞ P. 27).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display the i-appli software list screen (☞ P. 249).

4 Multi-guide key (four-way key ☞ and OK key ☞) (☞ P. 27)

- Press to display/select Menu, Redial, Received calls, Shortcut menu, Active marker (☞ P. 397) as well as use these functions.
- In stand-by, press ☞ for 1+ seconds to set/cancel Multi easy lock (☞ P. 148). To disable, terminal security code is required.
- In stand-by, press ☞ for 1+ seconds to set/cancel IC card lock (☞ P. 272). To disable, terminal security code is required.
- In stand-by, press ☞ for 1+ seconds to adjust earpiece volume (☞ P. 123).

5 Mail/Guidance key (☞)

- Press to use mail functions (☞ P. 208).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display a new mail message screen (☞ P. 208). Press twice to check new messages (☞ P. 220, P. 238).

- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower left of the display in guidance (☞ P. 27).
- Press to switch between upper and lower case when entering text (☞ P. 421).
- Press for 1+ seconds in text input screen to use emoticons (☞ P. 424).
- Press for 1+ seconds while Mail ticker is being displayed to view received messages list screen (☞ P. 219).

6 Start/Hands-free key

- Press to make or receive a voice call.
- Press for 1+ seconds during a voice call to activate/deactivate the Hands-free (☞ P. 53).
- Press during a Videophone call to activate/deactivate the Hands-free (☞ P. 82).
- Press during a PushTalk transmission to activate/deactivate the Hands-free (☞ P. 89).

7 microSD Memory Card slot (☞ P. 335)

Insert a microSD Memory Card.

8 Charger terminal (☞ P. 43)

Terminal for recharging with the desktop holder.


9 * /Line break/Public mode (Drive mode) key

- Press to enter an [*] ([*]) (asterisk), [] (dakuten), [] (handakuten) or a line break (☞ P. 421).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to set/cancel Public mode (Drive mode) (☞ P. 71).
- In text input screen, press for 1+ seconds to paste text (☞ P. 426).

10 Brightness sensor (☞ P. 132, P. 134)

The sensor detects the light of the surrounding area and automatically adjusts the display brightness and key backlight ON/OFF.

11 Up/Down key (front) (☞ P. 27)

- In the viewer position, use for camera function or music player.
- Press  for 1+ seconds while watching 1Seg in the viewer position to use the phonebook, mail or other functions (☞ P. 292).

12 TOUCH CRUISER pad (☞ P. 32)

13 Camera/Guidance key

- Press to activate Camera (☞ P. 161).
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower right of the display in guidance (☞ P. 27).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display Data box menu (☞ P. 347).

14 Phonebook/Guidance key

- Press to use the phonebook (☞ P. 100).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display the phonebook entry screen (☞ P. 102, P. 107).

- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower right of the display in guidance (☞ P. 27).
- Press to change the type of text to be entered (☞ P. 422).
- In text input screen, press for 1+ seconds to display insert phrase screen (☞ P. 424).

15 i-Channel/Clear/i-appli stand-by key (CLR) (ch)

- Press to show the channel list (☞ P. 204).
- Use to delete phone numbers and text (☞ P. 422).
- Press to return to the previous screen.
- Press when i-appli stand-by is set and i-appli starts (☞ P. 259).

16 Power/End/On hold key

- Press for 2+ seconds to turn the power on/off (☞ P. 45).
- Press to end a call, i-mode, etc., or to put calls on hold (☞ P. 70).
- Press to play/pause when animated GIF or Flash movies are set as the stand-by display. Press while setting i-motion to play/stop (☞ P. 129).


17 Dial/Text entry keys to ,

- Press to enter a phone number (☞ P. 51).
- Press to enter text (☞ P. 420).

18 #/Manner mode key

- Press to enter a [#], [—] (prolonged sound), [~] (Namigata), [.] (touden), [。] (kuten), [!] (exclamation mark), [?] (question mark), or [·] (chuten).
- Press for 1+ seconds in stand-by to set/disable Manner mode (☞ P. 127).
- In text input screen, press for 1+ seconds to cut text (☞ P. 425).

19 Multi/GPS/Supportbook key (MULTI)



- To activate Multi Assistant: Press while running an application to use the phonebook, mail or other useful functions (☞ P. 396).
- GPS positioning: In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to position the present location (☞ P. 274).
- To view Supportbook: Press in stand-by to view Supportbook (☞ P. 36).
- To save a shortcut in the Shortcut menu: Press for 1+ seconds when  is on the screen to save a shortcut (☞ P. 409).




20 Mouthpiece

Sends out your own voice.

21 Speakers

- Emits ring tones and other sounds.
- Emits the other party's voice during hands-free voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls.

22 Up/Down key (side)   (P. 27)

- Use for camera function or Music player.
- Press  while the stand-by display is shown in the normal position to set to Eco mode (Power saver). When Eco mode (Power saver) is already set, the Light/Power saver set screen appears (P. 132).
- Press  for 1+ seconds in the normal position to enable or disable Private filter (P. 140).
- Press  for 1+ seconds in the viewer position or while the stand-by display is shown with the FOMA terminal closed to activate Music player (P. 386).

23 PushTalk key  (P. 27)

- Press to use the PushTalk phonebook (P. 92).
- Press to send PushTalk transmissions. Hold key to talk during PushTalk transmission (P. 89).
- Press for 1+ seconds to enable/disable the side key operation (P. 149).
- Use for Internet movie player or Video player.

24 Camera/TV key  (P. 27)

- Use for camera function or Music player.
- Press in stand-by, etc. to activate 1Seg (P. 289).
- Press for 1+ seconds while the stand-by display is shown in the viewer position to activate camera (P. 161).

25 Called LED/Charging LED

- Flashes while receiving a call, using GPS function, etc (P. 138).
- Stays lit while charging (P. 40).

26 Strap ring

Attach a commercially available strap with the FOMA terminal closed.

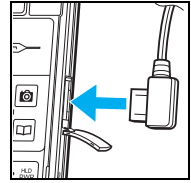
27 1Seg antenna (P. 287)

Receive 1Seg.

28 Earphone/Microphone terminal (P. 415)

Connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).

When using an earphone plug adapter (sold separately), an earphone/microphone with switch can also be used.



29 Infrared port

Use for the Ir exchange (P. 352) and Ir remote control (P. 356).

30 Camera LED/Charging LED

- Lights when the camera is activated (P. 161).
- Flashes during shooting (P. 162, P. 165).
- Stays lit while charging (P. 40).

31 FOMA antenna

An antenna is built in. To speak in better conditions, do not cover the antenna area by hand.

32 Camera

Use to shoot still pictures or movies (P. 156) or send a camera image shot during a Videophone call (P. 50) to the other party.

33 FeliCa mark  (P. 265)

The IC card is included (The IC card cannot be removed). Use Osaifu-Keitai holding the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device.

34 Back cover (P. 39)

A radio frequency-preventing sheet is attached on the back of the back cover. Do not peel off this sheet.

35 External connector terminal

Terminal for connecting external devices, such as an AC adapter, a DC adapter (P. 42), or a FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately).

How to Open the FOMA Terminal

To use the FOMA terminal, open it (normal position) or use it in the viewer position.

- When carrying, keeping the FOMA terminal closed as shown in the diagram for step 1 is recommended.

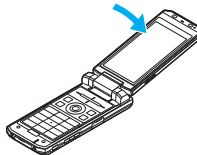
Normal position

1



Open carefully with both hands.

2

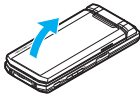


Push the display back as far as it will go.

Viewer position

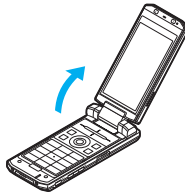
- To rotate the FOMA terminal display from the normal position, bring the display back to where it stops midway (step 2 position) and then rotate it 180° to the right.

1



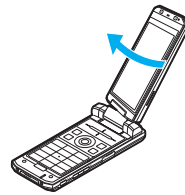
Open carefully with both hands.

2



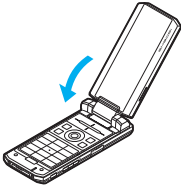
Open the display until it stops midway.

3



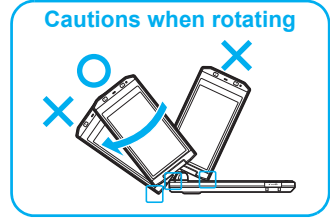
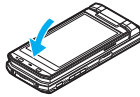
Rotate the display 180° to the right.

4



Flip the display forward.

5



Note

- Note the following when rotating the FOMA terminal display.
 - Do not hit the key surface, stoppers, or terminal. May damage the key surface, stoppers, or terminal (See "Cautions when rotating" above).
 - When using the 1Seg antenna pulled out, do not make the 1Seg antenna touch the display.
 - Do not rotate in the opposite direction or further than 180°.

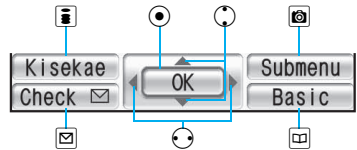
How to Use the Multi-guide Key and Guidance Key

Multi-guide key

Use the Multi-guide key (four-way key and OK key) to select and set menus that are shown in the screen. Move the cursor with and set the selection using .

Guidance keys

Use keys allotted to operate menu items of operation guidance that appear in the lower part of the display. Allotted functions differ depending on the situation.



Key operations in the viewer position

The following table shows the key operations in the viewer position that function in the same way as the operation keys in the normal position.

- The operations may differ depending on the function.

	Normal position	Viewer position
To move cursor	, , ,	, , (Eco) ,
To set		
To clear		
To activate Multi Assistant		Press for 1+ seconds

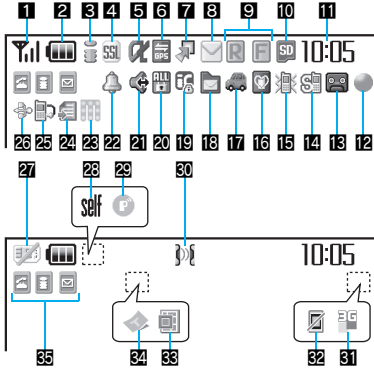
Viewing the Display

The display allows you to check the current status after the power is turned on or while setting up functions.

The display lights for a set period of time when a key is pressed.

- In the viewer position, the display is set horizontally, and the icon positions are different.

Icons that appear in the upper part of the display



Icons that appear in the lower part of the display



1 Signal status

	Indication of the signal strength
	Strong ← → Weak

- When (Out of service area) appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Signal icon can be changed (P. 136).

2 Battery level/Charging (P. 44)

	Battery level
	Charging

- Signal icon can be changed (P. 136).

3 i-mode/Full Browser (P. 180, P. 303)

	Indicates i-mode/Full Browser status
--	--------------------------------------

4 SSL (P. 181)

	SSL compatible sites are viewed SSL compatible Internet web pages are viewed
--	---

- When appears while using Multi Assistant, function such as i-mode, Full Browser, i-appli or Software update is being used with Multi Assistant.

5 i-appli (P. 249)

	i-appli is being activated i-appli stand-by is being activated
	i-appli stand-by is set*
	i-appliDX is being activated i-appliDX stand-by is being activated
	i-appliDX stand-by is set*

* Indicates that an i-appli is set as the stand-by display, but cannot be used.

6 GPS display (P. 274, P. 279)

	Location provision is set to [Loc. provision:ON] Location provision is set to [Permission sched.] and Location provision permission schedule is set
	Location provision is set to [Permission sched.] and Location provision is rejected
	GPS positioning

7 Shortcut menu (P. 409)

	Appears when the function can be added to the Shortcut menu
--	---

8 i-mode mail/SMS/Area mail received (P. 218, P. 303)

	Indicates the status of the i-mode mail/SMS/Area mail reception
	Indicates the status of the memory to store received mail

9 Message R/F icon (P. 237)

		Indicates the reception status of the Message R/F
		Indicates the storage status of the Message R/F

- The status may not always be indicated even if messages are held at the i-mode center.


10 microSD Memory Card (P. 335)

	microSD Memory Card is inserted
	Data on microSD Memory Card is being used

11 Clock display (☞ P. 47)




- Small clock icon can be changed (☞ P. 136).

12 1Seg being recorded (☞ P. 293, P. 294)


	1Seg is being recorded
---	------------------------

13 Record message (☞ P. 74)


	Record message is set
---	-----------------------

- When there are messages,  to  appears, indicating the total number of both types of messages. When there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (Videophone),  appears.


14 Silent (☞ P. 122)

	The phone ring volume [Silent] is set
---	---------------------------------------


15 Vibrator (☞ P. 125)

	Vibration mode is set
---	-----------------------



16 Manner mode (☞ P. 127)

	Manner mode is set
---	--------------------


17 Public mode (Drive mode) (☞ P. 71)

	Public mode (Drive mode) is set
---	---------------------------------










18 Storage status of i-mode center (☞ P. 218)

	Mail being held at the center
	Mail being held at the center full




19 IC card lock (☞ P. 272)

	IC card is locked
---	-------------------


20 Restriction indicator (☞ P. 145, P. 150)

	Secret mode is set
	Secret data is being edited
	Keypad dial lock
	All lock is set
	Function lock is set
	Keypad dial lock/Function lock are set
 (red)	Secret mode/Function lock/Keypad dial lock are set
 (blue)	Key guard/Secret mode/Function lock/Keypad dial lock are set
	Key guard is set

21 Hands-free/Mute in progress (☞ P. 53, P. 80, P. 82, P. 88)


 (red)	Hands-free active call
 (green)	Connected to Hands-free compatible device
	Mute in progress (only when rotated the display)

22 Alarm (☞ P. 295, P. 401, P. 405)



	Alarm is set Schedule alarm is set* Reception reserve alarm is set* Record reserve alarm is set*
---	---

- * Appears only when an Alarm is set for that day.


23 Music&Video Channel program reservation (☞ P. 377)

	Appears 12 hours before Music&Video Channel program distribution
---	--

24 i-mode mail send reservation (☞ P. 216)


	Mail with send reservation
	Mail failed to be automatically sent

25 Earphone/microphone connection (☞ P. 417)



	When voice/Videophone calls in Auto answer setting is set to [ON] and while a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected When PushTalk in Auto answer setting is set to [ON]
---	--

- Appears when Auto answer for PushTalk is set even if earphone/microphone with switch is not connected.


26 USB mode (☞ P. 345)

	FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) is connected
---	---

27 FOMA card error


	Appears when FOMA card is malfunctioning or not inserted
	Appears when a card other than the FOMA card is inserted

28 Self mode (☞ P. 147)


	Self mode is set
---	------------------




- Appears when the handset cannot make/receive calls or PushTalk, send/receive i-mode mail/SMS, or use i-mode functions or Ir exchange.

29 PushTalk (☞ P. 88)





	During PushTalk transmission
---	------------------------------

30 Ir exchange/External device

	Data is communicated with another device using the Ir exchange function (☞ P. 352) Data is sent using the Ir remote control (☞ P. 356)
---	--

	Connected to an external device and transmitting packets
	Connected to an external device and sending/receiving packet data
	Connected to an external device and transmitting 64K data

31 3G/GSM display (🔗 P. 453)



	3G network (Packet transmission available)
	3G network (Packet transmission not available)
	GSM/GPRS network (Packet transmission available)
	GSM/GPRS network (Packet transmission not available)

32 Private filter (🔗 P. 140)

	Private filter is set
---	-----------------------


- The Private filter icon does not appear during International roaming or while 1Seg is recorded.

33 Status of Comics setting (🔗 P. 367)

	Frame display is set
	Page display is set

- Status of Comics setting icon does not appear during hands-free operation.





















34 ToruCa (🔗 P. 267)


















	Unread ToruCa
---	---------------

- The ToruCa icon does not appear during hands-free operation or e-comic display.







35 Multitask (🔗 P. 396)

Indicates functions that are running.

	Four or more applications are running		Camera (still picture)
			Camera (movie)
	Videophone		Character reader (OCR)
			
	Phonebook		Bar code reader
	PushTalk/ PushTalk phonebook		Card reader
			Voice recorder
			Schedule
	Modem transmission (appears during data transmission)		Text memo
			Calculator
			Manga&BookReader
			ToruCa
	Software update		GPS
			Alarm

	Receive Ir data		Timer	
	i-appli		microSD manager	
	i-mode, i-Channel, Internet movie player			General settings
	Full Browser			Record message/ Voice memo
	Mail, SMS, Message R/F, Check new message		Redial/Sent messages history	
	Mail/SMS being composed		Document Viewer	
			Own number	
	SD-Audio		1Seg	
	Data box, Music&Video Channel		When Reception reserve/ Record reserve alarm sounds	
				

36 Operation guidance

Indicates the functions that can be used with keys such as , , , ,  and .

Other icons

Refer to respective pages for information on icons for the functions shown below.

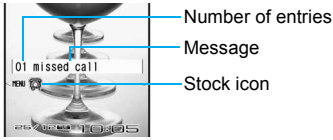
- Videophone (🔗 P. 50)
- Redial/Received calls (🔗 P. 55 to P. 57)
- Phonebook (🔗 P. 101 to P. 103)
- Camera mode (🔗 P. 159 to P. 160)
- Mail/SMS (🔗 P. 224 to P. 227)
- Received/Sent message list/details screen (🔗 P. 231 to P. 232)
- Message R/F (🔗 P. 237 to P. 239)
- ToruCa (🔗 P. 268)
- 1Seg (🔗 P. 290 to P. 290)
- Internet movie player (🔗 P. 308)
- My picture of Data box (🔗 P. 314)
- i-motion of Data box (🔗 P. 324)
- Melody of Data box (🔗 P. 334)
- PDF Viewer (🔗 P. 359)
- Music&Video Channel (🔗 P. 376, P. 378 to P. 381)
- Music player (🔗 P. 384 to P. 385)

Note

- microSD Memory Card is referred to as [microSD] or [SD] on the FOMA terminal (🔗 P. 335).
- Some of the screen in this manual have been modified or abbreviated.
- The display for the FOMA terminal is manufactured using high-precision technology, but it may occasionally contain dots that fail to light or that remain permanently lit. This is not a malfunction.

Checking Notices with Stock Icon

Display stock icons in stand-by when you miss a call or have a new mail. In stand-by, select stock icons to check notice details.



Stock icon

Icon	Message	Page	Icon	Message	Page
	xx missed call*1	P. 74		Check update	P. 502
	Recorded messages xx message/ xx message	P. 77		Update required	P. 500
				Check for update	P. 500
	xx voice mail*1	P. 431		USB mode setting	P. 345
	xx mail message	P. 218 P. 243		Download successful (Music&Video Channel)	P. 377
	xx New Message R	P. 237				Download failed (Music&Video Channel)
	xx New Message F	P. 237		Charge limit exceeded	P. 413
	xx new ToruCa	P. 267		Custom menu/Basic menu*2	P. 34
	New auto send result	P. 210			
	Update complete	P. 502			

*1 When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the number of Number B also appears.

*2 The message that appear differs depending on the menu screen.

1 When a stock icon appears in stand-by, press



- A message appears.
- Stock icons do not appear when playing i-motion set to stand-by or activating i-appli in stand-by.

2 Select a stock icon.

- Check notice details.
- After the details are checked, the stock icon and message disappear.

Switching Between Displays

When Calendar is set in stand-by, press to switch between the stand-by and the calendar (P. 129).



Stand-by



Calendar
(2 months (Down))

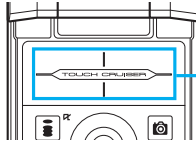
- When the calendar is set to [1 month (Large)], icons appear to the right of dates with schedule entries.

TOUCH CRUISER Pad

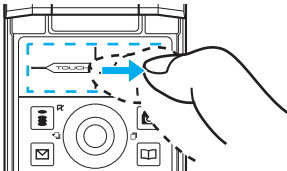
How to Use the TOUCH CRUISER Pad

Use TOUCH CRUISER pad to perform the same operations as those of Multi-guide key (e.g. selecting an item, moving the cursor or scrolling the screen).

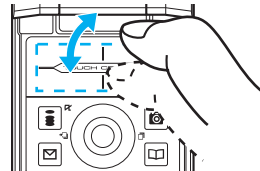
- Move the pointer or double-tap the TOUCH CRUISER pad in the range where there is a logo, "TOUCH CRUISER".
- Make the finger stand a little bit to operate easily.



Operating range of TOUCH CRUISER pad



The pointer or cursor moves in conjunction with sliding of the finger



Double-tap the finger to select

Note

- In the following cases (screens), the TOUCH CRUISER pad is not available. However, when the Submenu appears, the pad can be operated.
 - Stand-by
 - i-appli
 - Dial Input screen
 - While making, receiving or during the Voice call/Videophone call/PushTalk, etc.

Move the pointer

In the Custom menu or while i-mode or Full Browser is connected, move the pointer (⤴, ⤵, ⤶, etc.) up/down, left/right or diagonally to select an item.

- In some Custom menus, the pointer shape varies or the pointer is not supported.
- Move the pointer to the edge of the screen while i-mode or Full Browser is connected to show ⏪, ⏩, ⏴, ⏵ and scroll the screen to the direction of the arrow. If Link is set, ⤴ appears and double-tap to move to the linked page.
- The pointer moving speed varies depending on the finger sliding speed.



Example) Custom menu screen

Move the cursor

In the Basic menu or Submenu, move the cursor up/down and left/right instead of using four-way key.

- When there are multiple pages, move the cursor to switch the pages.



Example) Basic menu screen

Determining

After moving the pointer or cursor, double-tap the item pointed with the pointer or cursor to set it instead of using the OK key.

When using the TOUCH CRUISER pad

- Avoid using the TOUCH CRUISER pad continuously for more than 30 minutes. Take regular breaks to rest your eyes and do a stretching exercise to relax your finger, hand, wrist, forearm and shoulders.
- Do not operate it with unnecessary force or in an improper posture. May hurt your finger and wrist.
- This product is designed to be operated with one finger. In the following cases, the TOUCH CRUISER pad is not activated.
 - When operated with a gloved finger
 - When operated with a pen, ballpoint pen, pencil, etc.
 - When operated with two or more fingers
 - When operated with foreign objects placed on the operation pad
 - When operated with a fingernail
- The TOUCH CRUISER pad may not be properly operated when there are droplets or condensation on the operation pad or when the operation pad is operated with a wet finger or a moist finger with sweat.
- The following usages may cause a malfunction.
 - Do not drop or bang the FOMA terminal, or do not subject to strong force or impacts.
 - Do not spill a liquid such as coffee and juice on the FOMA terminal.
 - Do not attempt to disassemble.
- Do not operate the TOUCH CRUISER pad using a pointed metallic object such as a pen tip. May cause scratches or a failure of the sensor.
- Keep the TOUCH CRUISER pad clean with a dry cloth. When the TOUCH CRUISER pad gets too dirty, wipe it with a wet cloth and fully dry before using it.
- Note that putting a sticker, etc. to the TOUCH CRUISER pad may cause a malfunction.

Setting the TOUCH CRUISER Pad <TOUCH CRUISER Set>

Setting whether to use the TOUCH CRUISER pad

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [TOUCH CRUISER set] ▶ [Usage settings] ▶ [ON]/[OFF].

Setting pointer speed/scroll speed/double tap speed

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [TOUCH CRUISER set].

2 Select speed.

Pointer speed	[Pointer speed] → [Fast]/[Normal]/[Slow]
Scroll speed	[Scroll speed] → [Fast]/[Normal]/[Slow]
Double tap speed	[Double tap speed] → [Fast]/[Normal]/[Slow]

Menu Selections

Set, change or save functions from the menu screens.

When a stock icon (☞ P. 31) appears in stand-by, perform from **MENU** (MENU) being selected.

Switching the Menu Screens

In stand-by, press **☉** to show the menu screen that is selected in Menu priority. Select from the Custom menu and Basic menu.

Menu screens

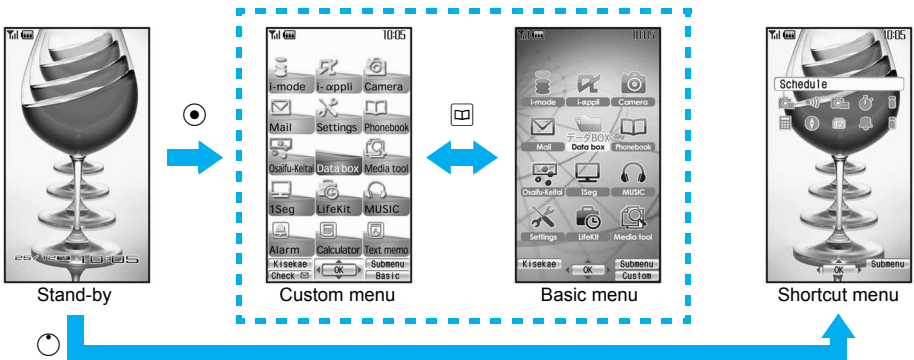
Custom menu	Use the Kisekae Tool (☞ P. 134) to change to a menu with the following designs and functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Menu that shows the next menu item ● Menu that shows frequently used functions in a large, easy-to-read font (preset [Simple]) ● Menu that can change the menu items (☞ P. 135) ● Menu that can sort the menu items according to the menu history (☞ P. 135), etc. The design set by default differs depending on the color of the FOMA terminal handset.
Basic menu	Input the function number to quickly retrieve the function to be used. Alternatively, select from 12 icons to retrieve the function. Icons and background images in the Basic menu can also be changed (☞ P. 137).
Shortcut menu	Retrieve the saved functions quickly. Other function can also be saved (☞ P. 409).

Related Operations

Set the menu screen to be used <Menu priority>

- 1 In stand-by, press **☉** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Menu priority].
- 2 Select [Custom menu]/[Basic menu].

Method for switching the menu screens



Method for Retrieving a Function

Perform one of the following to retrieve a function.

- Use Multi-guide key, TOUCH CRUISER pad or pre-assigned button to select each menu and retrieve a function while checking the function name.

The explanations in this manual are based on this method.

- Input the function number to quickly retrieve the function to be used (Available for the Basic menu only).
- Refer to Menu List (☞ P. 458) for available functions.

- In the Custom menu, unavailable menus can also be selected. However, the functions are not available.
- When functions appear in guidance, use the assigned buttons to operate them (refer P. 27).
- Press **CLR** to re-select a function and the previous screen reappears. Press **⏪** to return to stand-by.

Retrieving a Function from Each Menu Screen

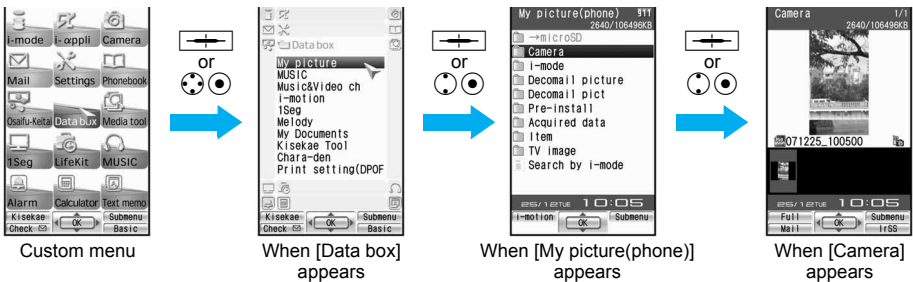
Example: When retrieving [My picture(phone)] from each menu screen to show still pictures in [Camera]

- Double-tap the **⇨** mark to select a function name or icon in TOUCH CRUISER pad (double-tapping may not be required depending on the menu screen). Refer to P. 32 for instructions on TOUCH CRUISER pad.

Using Multi-guide key or TOUCH CRUISER pad to retrieve from the Custom menu

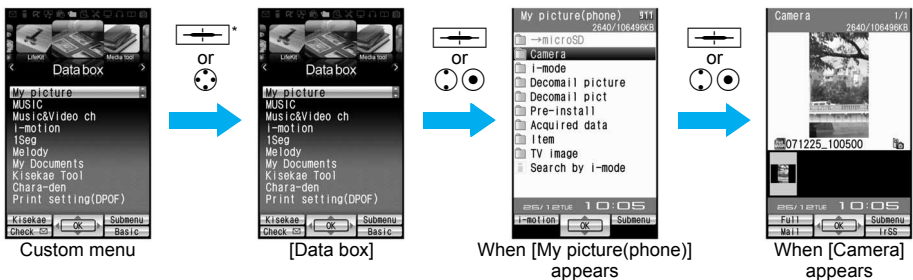
- The method for selecting functions may differ depending on the Kisekae Tool set for the Custom menu.
- The following shows the screen operated with the TOUCH CRUISER pad.

When the handset color is “White” or “Black” (the screen of the handset color “White”)



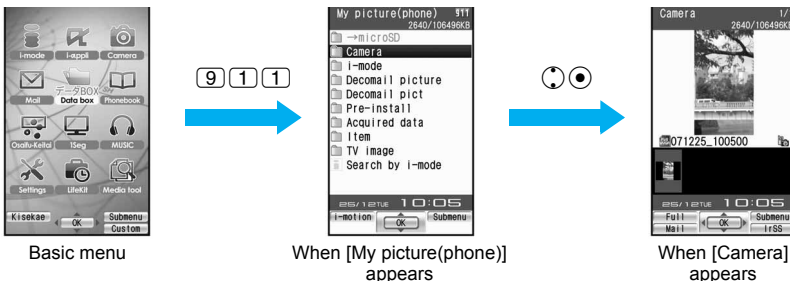
When the handset color is “Blue” or “Pink” (the screen of the handset color “Blue”)

- Select a function on the upper part of the screen to show the menu of the selected function on the lower part of the screen.



- * Move the pointer down to select the displayed menu without double-tapping it.

Inputting a function number to retrieve from the Basic menu



- Also in the Basic menu, use Multi-guide key or TOUCH CRUISER pad to retrieve a function.

Note

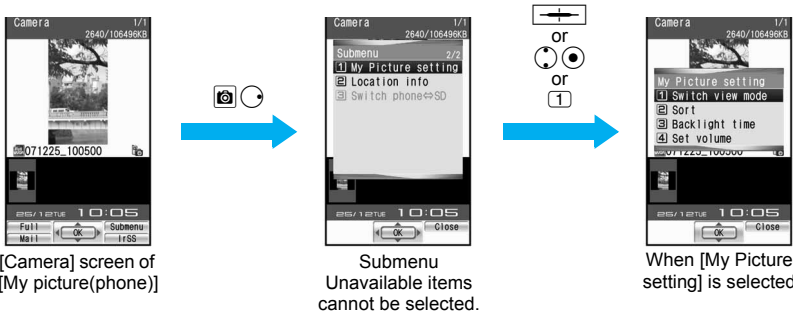
- If set to the viewer position in the Custom menu, the stand-by display reappears. If set to the viewer position in the Basic menu, the list display appears.
- When Custom menu image is changed by Kisekae Tool, operation may not run as explained in this manual. In this case, switch the menu screen to the Basic menu (P. 34) or perform Reset menu screen (P. 136).

Selecting Functions from the Submenu

When guidance [Submenu] appears, press to show Submenu that can be used in that screen. Use Multi-guide key or TOUCH CRUISER pad to select the functions appeared (Submenu).

When Submenu contains multiple pages, use Multi-guide key or TOUCH CRUISER pad to switch the pages.

Alternatively, enter function numbers to select Submenu. However, some Submenus do not have function numbers.



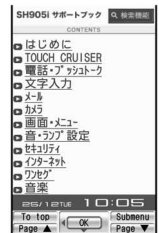
Supportbook

Displaying the Supportbook

Supportbook (preset) is a simple operation guide on the FOMA terminal that uses Manga&BookReader. Use this function when unsure of operations (P. 367).

For example, when composing a message with Multi Assistant, press to use Supportbook (preset) (P. 396).

- Useful tips and functions are explained to allow for rapid comprehension.
- Directly start functions that were looked up in Supportbook.



Example: When checking own address

1 In stand-by, press [メール] (Mail).

2 Select [自分のアドレス確認] (Check your own address).



- A description appears below the title.

Related Operations

Start functions from Supportbook

In the Supportbook details screen, select the function to start ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Functions cannot be started from Supportbook when functions other than Supportbook are used simultaneously.

FOMA Card

Using a FOMA Card

A FOMA card is an IC card that records personal information, such as phone numbers. A FOMA card can store phonebook data and SMS. By switching FOMA cards, multiple FOMA terminals can be used for different purposes as needed.

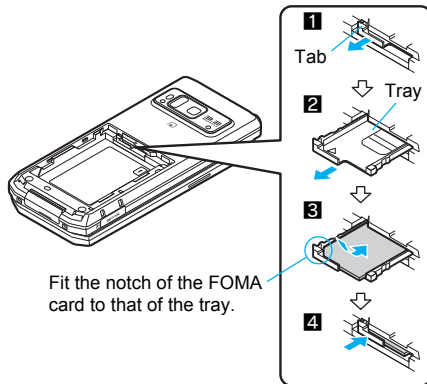
- If a FOMA card is not inserted, voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk transmission, i-mode, i-Channel, i-mode mail and SMS transmission, Message R/F reception and data transmission are not available on the FOMA terminal. In addition, 1Seg cannot be watched.

Inserting and Removing a FOMA Card

※ Refer to step 1 of "Turning the Power Off" on P. 45 to turn off the power, position the back facing upwards and remove the battery pack. Then insert or remove the FOMA card.

Inserting

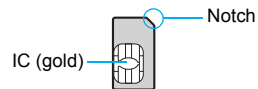
Close and hold the FOMA terminal with your both hands when inserting the FOMA card.



1 Hook a finger on the tab (1) and pull the tray out (2).

- Pull out the tray straight out until it stops.

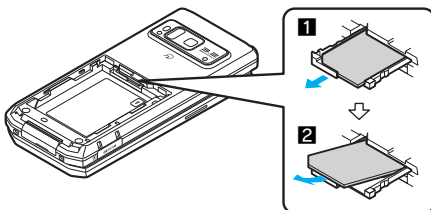
2 Hold the FOMA card with the IC facing up, put on the tray and set (3).



3 Push the tray all the way in (4).

Removing

Close and hold the FOMA terminal with your both hands when removing the FOMA card.



1 Hook a finger on the tab, pull the guide out (1) and remove the FOMA card (2).

- Do not allow the FOMA card to fall when removing it.

Note

- Inserting or removing the FOMA card forcibly may damage the card or deform the tray. Use caution.
- Refer to the FOMA card user's guide for more information on the FOMA card.

Note

- If the FOMA card is inserted into another i-Channel supported terminal, **i-Channel tickers** do not appear. The i-Channel tickers are automatically shown when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.
- Do not misplace the FOMA card once it is taken out.
- The FOMA terminal power may turn off if the IC area of the FOMA card is dirty.
- When the tray falls off, slide the tray in straight along the guide rail.

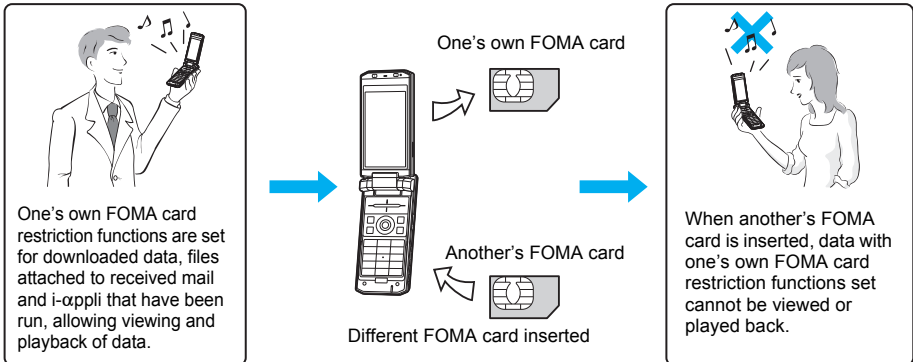
FOMA Card Security Codes

The FOMA card has a "PIN1 code" and a "PIN2 code". Both are set to [0000] by default but can be changed to a four- to eight-digit number by the user (P. 145).

FOMA Card Restriction Functions <FOMA Card Restriction Functions>

The FOMA card has built-in restriction functions as security functions for protecting personal data and files.

- When the FOMA card is inserted into the FOMA terminal and data or files are retrieved using any of the following methods or when an i-αppli is running, FOMA card restriction functions are automatically set in the retrieved data or files.
 - When a file such as an image, melody or PDF is downloaded from a site or Internet web page
 - When a site or Internet web page is saved as a screen memo
 - When i-mode mail with a file attached is received
 - When an i-αppli is running
- Data, files or software with FOMA card restriction functions run only when in use with the FOMA card inserted at time of acquisition. Display, play, attach to i-mode mail, run software, send data using Ir function and IC transmission function, and copy to microSD Memory Card can be executed.
- The following indicates the data for which FOMA card restriction is set.
 - Melody
 - Screen memo
 - Chara-den
 - i-motion
 - PDF data
 - Music&Video Channel program
 - Mail templates with operation restricted data
 - e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic saved in the [Comic] folder
 - File attached to i-mode mail (excluding the files listed below)
 - ToruCa
 - Phonebook
 - Schedule
 - Bookmark
 - Documents
 - Image (including animation and Flash movie)
 - File attached to Message R/F
 - Image inserted to Deco-mail or signature
 - i-αppli (including i-αppli stand-by)
 - Contents transfer compatible data
 - Chaku-uta®/Chaku-uta full®
 - ToruCa (details) image
 - Videophone picture memo
 - Download dictionary
 - Image in Message R/F
 - Kisekai Tool
- ※ "Chaku-uta" is a registered trademark of the Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
- The following indicates the settings saved in FOMA card.
 - Own number
 - SMS center
 - PIN setting
 - Language
 - SMS expiry
 - SSL certificates
 - SMS input character
- The above operations cannot be performed if the FOMA card inserted at time of data/file retrieval or i-αppli startup is replaced with a different FOMA card.
- ※ Explanation that follows refers to the FOMA card inserted at time of data/files retrieval as "one's own FOMA card" and other FOMA cards as "another's FOMA card".



Note

- When one's own FOMA card is replaced with another's FOMA card, the data or files for which FOMA card restriction functions are set cannot be set as stand-by displays or ring tones.
- When a FOMA card is replaced with another's FOMA card, FOMA card restriction functions are activated and if data or file retrieved from a site is set as the stand-by display or ring tone, the setting is reset to the default. When one's own FOMA card is re-inserted, the setting returns.
Example: When setting [Melody A], for which FOMA card restriction functions are set, as a ring tone
When one's own FOMA card is taken out or is replaced with another's FOMA card, ring tone returns to default setting. When one's own FOMA card is put back, the ring tone returns to [Melody A].
- FOMA card restrictions functions cannot be set for data received using **Ir exchange** or data transmission functions, and still pictures/Continuous mode images/movies shot with the FOMA terminal.
- It is possible to move or delete data or files for which FOMA card restriction functions are set even when another's FOMA card is inserted.
- Running **i-appli** by selecting highlighted text in i-mode mail display screen cannot be performed or retrieved when FOMA card restriction functions are set.
- If the FOMA card is replaced with another's FOMA card after **i-appli stand-by** is set, the set i-appli cannot be activated in stand-by, and the image set in **Stand-by display** appears.

Differences in FOMA Card Functions

Note the following differences between "FOMA card (blue)" and "FOMA card (green/white)" used on the FOMA terminal.

Function	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green/white)	Page
Number of phone number digits available in the FOMA card phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P. 106
Client certificate operations for FirstPass	Not available	Available	P. 199
Use of WORLD WING	Not available	Available	P. 450
Service number	Not available	Available	P. 438

About WORLD WING

WORLD WING is a DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service that makes it possible to use the mobile phone number registered in Japan to make and receive calls by the FOMA card (green/white) and supported FOMA terminal.

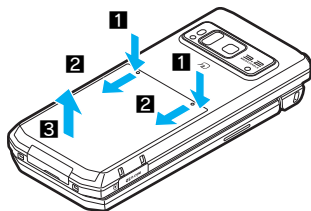
- If subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, subscription for "WORLD WING" is not required. However, if subscription for "WORLD WING" is canceled at or after subscription for the FOMA service, subscription for "WORLD WING" is required again.
- If subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but not subscribed to "WORLD WING", subscription for "WORLD WING" is required.
- Some payment plans are not available.
- When the FOMA card (green/white) is lost or stolen overseas, promptly contact NTT DoCoMo and conduct a procedure for canceling the use of service. Refer to "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for inquiries. Note that transmission/calling charges after the FOMA card is lost or stolen are incurred to the subscriber.

Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack

Use the battery pack SH14 exclusive to the FOMA terminal.

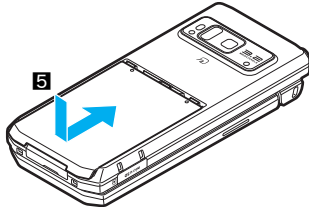
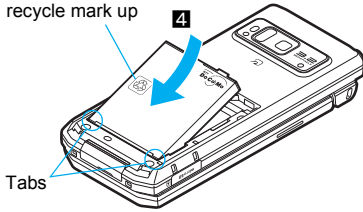
Inserting the battery pack

Close and hold the FOMA terminal in your both hands before removing.



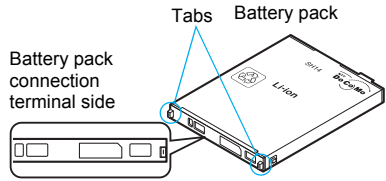
- 1 Lightly push back cover in the direction of the arrow (1) and slide approximately 2 mm (2).
- 2 Lift the back cover in the direction of the arrow (3) and remove it.

Face the side with a recycle mark up



3 Insert the battery pack (4).

- The battery pack has tabs that make it easy to insert. Attach the battery pack with a recycle mark side faced up.

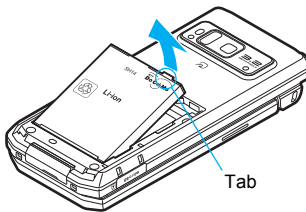


4 Reattach the back cover (5).

- Position the back cover as shown in the illustration and then push the back cover and slide into place.

Removing the battery pack

Turn the power off, close and hold the FOMA terminal in your both hands before removing.



1 Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Inserting the battery pack" on P. 39 to remove the back cover.

2 Remove the battery pack.

- The battery pack has a tab that makes it easy to remove. Press the tab with your fingers without placing too much force. Lift the battery pack to remove.

Note

- Using unnecessary force when inserting or removing the battery pack may damage the battery pack and connection terminal (charger terminal) on the FOMA terminal.
- Refer to the battery pack SH14 user's guide for details.
- Firmly close the back cover. If not closed firmly, the back cover may come off and the battery pack may fall out due to vibration.
- If the battery pack connection terminal side or FOMA terminal battery pack (charger terminal) is dirty, the FOMA terminal power may turn off. Additionally, the battery may not be sufficiently recharged. Wipe off any dirt with a dry cloth or cotton swab.
- When using the battery pack for the first time or after replacing it, battery pack must be charged. Battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase.

Charging the FOMA Terminal





Cautions When Charging

The battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase. Be sure to charge the battery using the exclusive AC or DC adapter (sold separately) before use.

Estimated charge times and LED display

The following figures are estimated times for charging an empty battery pack with the FOMA terminal turned off.

Charger name	Charge time
FOMA AC Adapter 01/02	Approx. 120 min
FOMA DC Adapter 01/02	Approx. 120 min

- Charging LED illuminates in red when charging and turn off when charging is completed.
- Check that the battery pack has been properly inserted when charging LED flashes red. The LED also flashes red when the battery pack has reached the end of its service life.
- The battery pack can also be charged with the FOMA terminal turned on (The  on the display flashes during charging). When charging is complete, charging LED turns off and the  on the display changes to .
- When the battery becomes warm, charging may automatically stop even if the battery has not been fully charged. Charging resumes after the temperature lowers to an appropriate temperature. While charging is stopped, charging LED turns off (The  on the display flashes while stopped).

Estimated times of use when fully charged

Network	3G/GSM setting	Continuous stand-by time	Continuous talk time	Time for watching 1Seg
FOMA/3G	3G	When mobile: Approx. 370 hr	Voice call: Approx. 200 min Videophone call: Approx. 100 min	Approx. 230 min
	AUTO	When mobile: Approx. 345 hr At rest: Approx. 540 hr		
GSM	AUTO	At rest: Approx. 290 hr	Voice call: Approx. 190 min	

- Continuous talk time is estimated as the usage time at normal transmission signal strength, and continuous stand-by time is estimated as the usage time while moving with the FOMA terminal closed at normal signal strength. Talk and stand-by times may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, stand-by display, Power saver mode, Missed call notice and New unread mail notice settings, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission) and stand-by times. When i-Channel is subscribed, information is automatically received and updated. Talk (transmission) time and stand-by time will be reduced. In addition, when shooting or editing an image, watching 1Seg, composing i-mode mail, activating the downloaded i-appli or the i-appli stand-by, or SD-Audio or Music player, the call (transmission)/stand-by duration will be shorten even if calls or i-mode transmission are not made. Some i-appli software may continue transmission even after downloading. To avoid this, set not to connect in advance.
- The actual usage time is a combination of stand-by time and talk time, and the longer the call duration, the shorter the stand-by time becomes.
- Time for watching 1Seg depends on conditions including battery level status, functions used, temperature, other environmental conditions and signal strength (no signal or weak signal).

Battery pack service life

- Battery pack is a consumable product. Service time per charge is gradually reduced every time the battery is charged.
- When service time per charge is reduced to about half of the default time, this means that the battery pack is approaching the end of its service life. In such a case, it is recommended to replace the battery pack as soon as possible. Depending on usage, the battery pack may swell as it approaches the end of its service life but this will not cause problems.
- If i-appli, Videophone, or 1Seg is used while charging for a long time, the service life of the battery pack may become shorter than estimated.
- To protect the environment, return used batteries to NTT DoCoMo, any DoCoMo retailer, or a recycling agency.



About charging batteries

- Refer to user's guide of FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (sold separately), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (sold separately), or FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (sold separately).
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 covers only 100 VAC. FOMA AC Adapter 02/FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use covers from 100 VAC through 240 VAC.
- The shape of the power plug for the AC power cable is for 100 VAC (for domestic use). To use the AC adapter of 100 VAC to 240 VAC overseas, a conversion plug adapter that is compatible with the voltage of your country of stay is required. Do not use a transformer for use overseas to charge the battery.

Cautions when charging

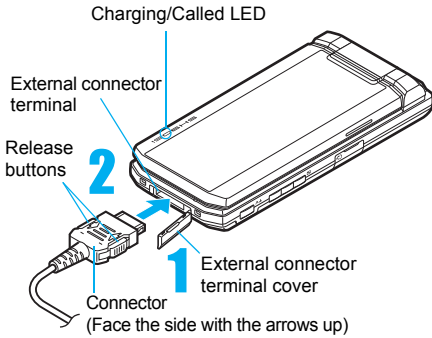
- Do not charge for long periods of time with the power left on. If the FOMA terminal is left on after charging is complete, the battery pack charge decreases.
In such cases, the AC or DC adapter charges the battery again. However, depending on when the FOMA terminal is disconnected from the AC or DC adapter, the battery charge level may be low, the battery alert tone may sound, or the battery may only be usable for a short time.
- When the battery is empty and terminal is recharging, charging LED may not illuminate immediately.

- If the alert tone sounds and the power cannot be turned on, charge the battery for a while.
- If the battery empty alert is displayed and charging begins within 60 seconds of the alert tone, the status returns to normal.
- While charging, terminal may not turn on even when charging LED is illuminated in red. Charge longer and try turning power on again.
- Frequently recharging the battery when power is still remaining enough may shorten the life of the battery pack. It is recommended to use the battery to a certain level before recharging.
- The battery pack cannot be charged by itself.

Charging Using the AC Adapter/DC Adapter

[Read “FOMA AC adapter 01/02 (sold separately) and FOMA DC adapter 01/02 (sold separately) user’s guide” carefully.]

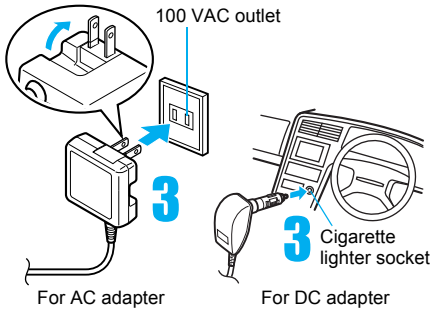
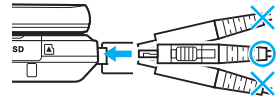
- Battery pack can be charged with FOMA terminal open and in the viewer position.



1 Open the external connector terminal cover.

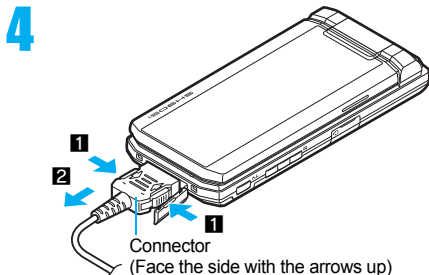
2 Check the direction (see diagram) of the AC or DC adapter connector and insert horizontally into the external connector terminal.

- Check the direction of the connector, keep it parallel with the FOMA terminal and firmly push all the way in until it clicks.



3 For an AC adapter, lift the power plug and insert into a 100 VAC outlet. For a DC adapter, insert the power plug into a car cigarette lighter socket.

- Charge start sound is heard and charging LED illuminate in red. When a call is received while charging, the call is notified with set called LED color.
- While the stand-by display is shown in the viewer position, Desktop clock appears on the display (P. 130).



4 When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.

- When removing the connector, always hold the release buttons on both sides (1) and unplug it by pulling out horizontally (2). Pull by force may cause a malfunction. After removing the connector, close the external connector terminal cover.
- Pull the adapter out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if it will not be used for a long time.

Note

- Check the direction and angle (see diagram) of connector, such as an AC adapter, and connect carefully without using unnecessary force. Do not forcibly insert or remove. May cause damage to the external connector terminal.
- Do not forcefully pull the external connector terminal cover. May damage the cover.
- Do not place objects near the FOMA terminal when charging. The FOMA terminal may be damaged. In addition, a display may be damaged when charged in the viewer position.

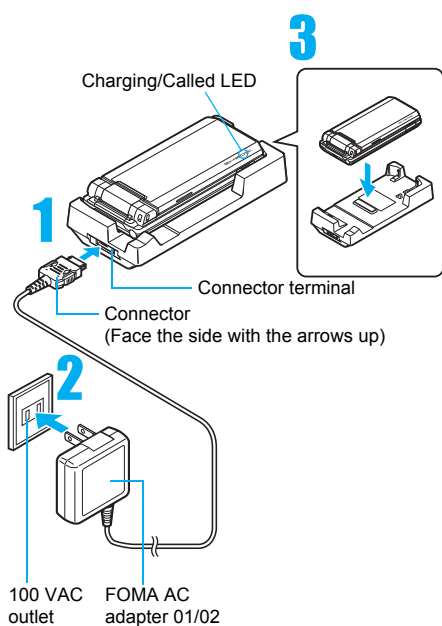
When using a DC adapter

- Do not use with the car engine shut off. May drain the car battery.
- The DC adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles (12 and 24 VDC).
- The DC adapter power is interlocked with the car ignition switch, but the interlock may not work with some vehicles. Make sure that the power is turned off before leaving the car.
- Note that even if the FOMA terminal is turned on, turning off the ignition or pulling the DC adapter out of the cigarette lighter socket will turn the FOMA off. To make a call or stay in stand-by, first disconnect the connector from the FOMA terminal.
- The DC adapter fuse (2A) is a consumable. For replacement, purchase a new fuse at a local automobile supply shop.

Charging Using the Desktop Holder

[Read “Desktop holder SH16 (sold separately) user’s guide” carefully.]

- Battery pack can be charged with FOMA terminal open and in the viewer position.



1 Face the side with the arrows of the AC adapter connector up and insert it into the connector terminal of the desktop holder.

- Keeping the connector parallel with the desktop holder, firmly push it all the way in until it clicks.

2 Lift the AC adapter power plug and insert into a 100 VAC outlet.

3 Place the FOMA terminal into the desktop holder.

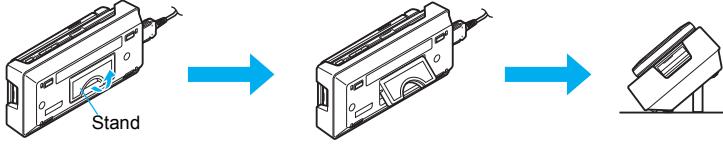
- Place the FOMA terminal as the left figure shows, and push it in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.
- Charge start sound is heard and Charging LED illuminates in red. When a call is received while charging, the call is notified with set called LED color.
- While the stand-by display is shown in the viewer position, Desktop clock appears on the display (P. 130).

4 When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.

- Hold the desktop holder and lift the FOMA terminal out.
- Pull the AC adapter out of the outlet when unused for a long period of time.

Making the desktop holder stand up

Make the stand behind the desktop holder stand up until it clicks so that charging becomes available with the desktop holder stood up.



Note

- When **Charge start sound** is not heard (except when Charge start sound is set to [Silent], Manner mode is set or when terminal is turned off) or when charging LED do not illuminate, check that the FOMA terminal is placed securely in the desktop holder.
- When placing the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder, be careful that the strap is not caught in between the handset and the desktop holder.

Battery Level

How to Check the Battery Level

Check the approximate battery level in the display.



	Battery level is still sufficient.
	Battery level is low.
	Battery is almost empty. Charge the battery.
	Battery is empty (Power will turn off soon).
	Battery pack is being charged.

- When battery icons have been changed (P. 136), the above icons may differ.


Checking the Battery Level with Sound and Display

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[General settings]** ▶ **[Check status]** ▶ **[Battery level]**.

- Graphic for battery level appears (A different sound is heard for each battery level).
- The battery level sound is heard at the volume set in Key/Standby i-motion (P. 123).
- Wait approximately 2 seconds or press **[Back]**/**[Home]** and the previous menu reappears.


Graphic			
Sound	Three beeps	Two beeps	One beep
Status	Battery is sufficiently full.	Battery is running low.	Battery is almost empty. Charge the battery.

If the Battery Runs Out

[Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation] appears if battery starts to run out (Press  to clear the message).

After a while, an alert tone sounds. The screen on the right appears, handset operations are disabled and power turns off after approximately 60 seconds.





- During a voice/Videophone call, the alert tone sounds and [Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation] appears. The call is disconnected after approximately 20 seconds. At the same time, the screen above appears and after approximately 60 seconds, the power turns off.
- Alert tone does not sound when Manner mode or Public mode (Drive mode) is set (Alert tone sounds during a call).
- When  is pressed during a call, the call is disconnected. Turn off the power and recharge the battery.

Power ON/OFF




Turning the Power On and Off

Turning the Power On

- Before turning the power on, check that the FOMA card is properly inserted ( P. 37).
- If the FOMA card is not inserted, [Insert UIM] and a FOMA card error appear ( P. 29).

1 Press (Power) for 2+ seconds.



- It may take some time for the wakeup screen to appear.
- The wakeup screen appears followed by the initial settings screen. Proceed to initial settings ( P. 46). If initial settings are not yet completed, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.
- If initial settings have been completed, the screen shown on the right appears when power is turned on. This screen is called the "stand-by display".
- When [Enter PIN1 code] appears, enter the PIN1 code ( P. 144).
- When  (Out of service area) appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Move to a place where the icon disappears.



Stand-by display

Note

- When a FOMA card is replaced with a new card, the terminal security code (four to eight digits) must be entered after turning on the terminal. If a correct terminal security code is entered, stand-by display appears. When a wrong **terminal security code** is entered five times, the power is turned off. However, turning on the power again is possible.

Turning the Power Off

1 Press (Power) for 2+ seconds.

- It may take some time for the power to be turned off (The end screen appears on the display until the power is turned off).

Note


- Before connecting to an external device, make sure that all transmissions are complete and then turn off the FOMA terminal.

Select Language

Switching Display to English

Switch display language between Japanese and English for functions, messages, and menu items.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Select language] ▶ [English].

- To switch display language from English to Japanese, in stand-by, press  and select [Settings] → [General settings] → [Select language] → [日本語].



Note

- If a FOMA card is inserted, settings are saved to the FOMA card. Select language settings are saved to FOMA terminal handset and inserted FOMA card. When each setting varies, the setting in FOMA card is prioritized.


Initial Setting

Making the Initial Setting

The initial settings screen appears automatically when the power is turned on for the first time. Each setting item can also be set from Menu (When the initial settings are complete, the stand-by display appears).

- Date and time settings
- Change terminal security code
- Key/Standby i-motion
- Location provision
- Font size settings
- When items that have not been set remain, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.

1 Set the date and time (P. 47).

- Alternatively, press  in stand-by and select [Settings] → [Initial setting] to perform initial settings.
- Set date and time from 00:00 January 1, 2001 to 23:59 December 31, 2050.

2 Register a terminal security code (P. 143).

3 Set the Key/Standby i-motion (P. 123).

- Select [ON]/[OFF].

4 Set GPS Location provision ON/OFF (P. 279).


- Select [ON]/[OFF].

5 Set font size (P. 139).

- Select [Normal]/[Enlarge].
- When the initial settings are complete, the software update function confirmation screen appears. Read the description and select [Agree] (When the initial settings are made from the menu or the software update is set to other than [auto-update], the confirmation screen does not appear).

Note

Canceling the initial settings

- Press  while setting.

Setting the Date and Time

Set the date and time on the FOMA terminal. Set to automatically correct the date and time.

- For overseas use, the settings are automatically corrected to the local date and time.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Date settings].



- When Limit settings is set to [Enable], terminal security code is required to set date and time.
- Times appear in 24-hour format.

2 Select [Auto time correction] ▶ [ON]/[OFF].

To automatically correct date and time	[ON] →
To enter date and time	[OFF] → select [Date] → enter date and press → select [Time] → enter time and press → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use 24-hour format. When entering month, day and time, add 0 before numbers one through nine (example: 01, 02, 03, etc.). Alternatively, select numbers with . If you make a mistake, move the cursor using and and re-enter.

Related Operations

Change the time zone manually <City>

- In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Date settings] ▶ select [Auto time correction] ▶ [OFF].
- Press (City) ▶ select a time zone ▶ select a city ▶ .

Note

- The date and time that are set are saved even if the battery pack is removed, but if the battery pack remains removed for approximately a week or more or the battery remains empty, the settings may be reset. When this happens, set again after charging the battery.
- If the date and time are not set correctly, date and time are not correctly recorded for **Redial**, **Received calls**, Record message (voice), **Record message (Videophone calls)**, and camera image titles/shooting date. In addition, functions that use the clock, such as **Auto power ON/OFF**, **Alarm**, **Schedule**, SSL (authentication), i- α pli Auto start, starting i- α pliDX, **Reception**, **Recording**, and playback or view of i-motion/music data/e-comic with replay restrictions, cannot be used properly.

When Auto time correction is set to [ON]

- The FOMA automatically adjusts the time by connecting to the DoCoMo network's time information.
- When time difference is adjusted, [Time adjusted] appears.
- When Auto time correction is set to [ON], the time is sometimes not adjusted for a while. To activate Auto time correction, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart.
- Time is not adjusted depending on the signal status.
- Time may be off by a few seconds.
- When time difference is adjusted overseas, the local time and date appear in **Redial**, **Received calls**, **Received/Sent messages** (SMS only) and Received/Sent messages list, and appears. The received/sent messages are not displayed in order of the displayed time and date but the mail reception/send.
- does not appear in the **Unsent messages** for mail messages. If the date order display is set for the Unsent messages, Unsent messages are displayed in the order of the displayed time and date.
- Time correction may not be performed depending on the overseas network.

Note

- During overseas use, Japan time and local time appear (dual display) except for the following cases.
 - When Auto time correction is set to [ON] and time correction information is not being received from an overseas network.
 - When Auto time correction is set to [OFF] and City is set to the city in the same time zone as Japan.

Notify Caller ID

Sending Your Own Phone Number to the Other Party

Display your number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice/Videophone call or transmission PushTalk.

- Handset number (caller ID) is important personal information. Be very careful about your caller ID setting.
- The Notify caller ID function is available only on compatible phone devices.

Set whether or not to send your caller ID using the methods below.

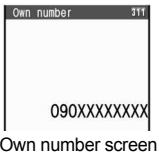
	Method	Notify caller ID	Do not notify caller ID
To set up in advance	In stand-by, press and select [Settings] → [NW Services] → [Notify caller ID] → [Notify caller ID]	[Yes]	[No]
To set up when making a call	Add 186/184 before a phone number	Add 186	Add 184
	Enter the phone number and select from the Submenu (☰ P. 60, P. 90)	Press and select [Caller ID setting] → [Send own no.]	Press and select [Caller ID setting] → [No caller ID]

- Notify caller ID cannot be set while (Out of service area) appears on the screen.
- To check the Notify caller ID setting, press in stand-by, select [Settings] → [NW Services] → [Notify caller ID] → [Status request].
- Specifications made when making a call take priority over the Notify caller ID setting. If no specifications are made when a call is made, the Notify caller ID setting is followed.

Own Number

Checking Your Phone Number

1 In stand-by, press .



Own number screen

- If during a voice/Videophone call, press and select [Own number].
- While Function lock is applied to phonebook, enter terminal security code and press .
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], press to switch between [Number A] and [Number B] and view your number.
- Refer to P. 410 for details on confirming, saving or changing owner information.

Note

- When “Change for the Number B of 2in1” or “FOMA card exchange (2in1 subscriber → 2in1 subscriber)” is performed while the **2in1** is used, set **2in1 function OFF** once and then set the **2in1 setting** to ON again or check 2in1 registration (☰ P. 411) to receive the correct Number B. Also, when “FOMA card exchange (2in1 subscriber → 2in1 nonsubscriber)” is performed, set 2in1 function OFF to update the correct owner information.

Voice/Videophone Calls

■ Making Calls/Videophone Calls

- Using Videophone 50
- Making Calls/Videophone Calls 51
- Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone 54
- Using Redial and Received Calls <Redial/Received Calls>55
- Setting Chaku-moji <Chaku-moji>58
- Setting Caller ID to Send/Not Send for a Single Call <Send Own No./No Caller ID>60
- Sending Touch-tone Signals with Simple Operations <Pause Dial>61
- Making International Calls <WORLD CALL>61
- Setting International Call <Int'l Dial Assist>62
- Setting a First Number to Phone Numbers <Int'l Prefix>64
- Making Calls with Sub Address Set <Sub Address>64
- Reconnecting Disconnected Calls Automatically <Reconnect Signal>65
- Reducing Noise Interference to Hear Calls Clearly <Noise Reduction>65
- Using Handset in a Car <Hands-free>65

■ Answering Calls/Videophone Calls

- Answering Calls/Videophone Calls 66
- Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone to Receive Calls 68
- Answering Calls by Pressing Any Key <Any Key Answer>68
- Closing the FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls <Set When Folded>69
- Adjusting the Volume During a Call <Earpiece Volume>69

■ When Calls/Videophone Calls Cannot Be Answered/Could Not Be Answered

- Placing Calls On Hold <On Hold>70
- Setting On Hold Tone <Set On Hold Tone>70
- Setting Hold Tone <Set Hold Tone>71
- Using Public Mode (Drive Mode) <Public Mode (Drive Mode)>71
- Using Public Mode (Power OFF) <Public Mode (Power OFF)>73
- Checking Missed Calls <Missed Calls>74
- Recording Messages When Calls Cannot Be Answered
..... <Record Message (Voice/Videophone Calls)>74
- Recording Messages When Incoming Calls Cannot Be Answered <Quick Message>76
- Playing/Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos
..... <Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos>77
- Chara-den 77
- Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party 80
- Setting Hands-free Videophone <Hands-free V.phone>82
- Setting the Image During Videophone Calls <Videophone Set>83
- Changing Videophone Settings 84
- Setting to Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone <Notify Switch Mode>84
- Selecting Actions for Incoming Videophone Calls During i-mode
..... <V-phone While Packet>85
- Saving Other Party's Image as a Still Picture <Picture Memo>85

Using Videophone

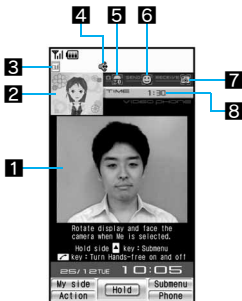
A Chara-den or still picture is sent to the other party as your image. The camera on the rear side can be used to send surroundings and your own image. To send your image, turn the display and talk while viewing each other's face (☎ P. 77, P. 80).

- Videophone transmits at 64K (kbps).
- Chaku-moji can be sent/received with Videophone call (☎ P. 58).
- Digital transmission fees are incurred during Videophone calls.
- Make international Videophone calls using "WORLD CALL", DoCoMo's international telephone service (☎ P. 61).
- Videophone communication is available only between terminals compatible with DoCoMo Videophone.
- DoCoMo Videophones comply with "3G-324M*1 as defined by the international 3GPP*2 standard". Connection is not available with Videophones using other standards.

*1 3G-324M: International standard for Videophone systems for third-generation mobile Videophones.

*2 3GPP (3rd-Generation Partnership Project): A regional standardization organization to establish the common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

Viewing the Screen During Videophone Calls



- The screen shown is only example. Actual screen may differ.

1 Main screen: Other party's image (default)

2 Subscreen: Your image (default)

3 Appears during Videophone call

	Videophone call in progress
--	-----------------------------

4 Hands-free/Mute in progress icon

	Hands-free in progress
	USB hands-free in progress
	Mute in progress (only when rotated the display)

5 The brightness of your camera image

Dark	← Normal →	Bright

6 Send image icon

	Appears while sending Chara-den in Full action mode		Appears while sending still picture as substitute image
	Appears while sending Chara-den in Part action mode		Appears while sending an image from My picture of Data box
	Appears while sending camera image		Appears while pausing camera image

7 Receive image icon

	Appears when shooting and saving images of the other party
--	--

8 Call duration: Displays up to 9 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds. If it exceeds 9:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.

Note

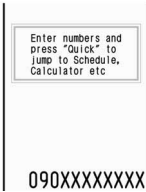
- The display brightness during a Videophone call follows the setting of Original Eco mode in **Light/Power saver**. When Videophone in **Display light time** is set to [Same as normal], the brightness is adjusted to the setting of **Brightness**. When [Always ON] is set, the brightness is adjusted to [Brightness 2].

Making Calls/Videophone Calls

Check that there are sufficient battery and signal strength.

- When (Out of service area) appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Move to a place where the icon disappears.
- Calls may be interrupted even when the signal is strong (appears) and you are not moving.
- For Videophone call, the [キャラ(女性)] of Chara-den is sent to the other party as default setting. The substitute image to be sent can be set in Substitute image (P. 81). When making a Videophone call while viewing each other's face, refer to "Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party" on P. 80.
- To talk while viewing each other's image during a Videophone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (P. 415) or use Hands-free (P. 82).

1 In stand-by, dial the phone number starting with the area code.



- Always dial the area code even when the number is in the same area.

Mobile phone	Enter other party's number (090-XXXX-XXXX, 080-XXXX-XXXX) (11 digits)
PHS	Enter other party's number (070-XXXX-XXXX) (11 digits)

- Enter up to 80 digits for phone number. When the number exceeds 13 digits, it appears on two lines. When the number exceeds 26 digits, the last 26 digits appear in two lines.
- When a mistake is made while dialing, press to erase the last digit. Press for 1+ seconds to delete all digits and stand-by reappears.
- Refer to P. 61 when making an international call.

2 Press (Phone)/ (V.phone).

Outgoing calls of Videophone



- Unlike ordinary telephones, mobile phones send call tones in short beeps before the standard ring tone.
- Phone number and name appear if saved in phonebook. Image also appears if set in advance.
- When the other party is busy, there is a busy signal. Press to disconnect and try again later.
- When a guidance message plays requesting the caller ID, the other party has set Caller ID Request to "Activate". Set the caller ID and make a call again (P. 48, P. 60).

Voice calls

- [Calling] appears while calling.

Videophone calls

- [Dialing videophone] appears while dialing.

3 Talk when the other party answers the phone.

Videophone



- Press and select [Own number] during a voice/Videophone call to view your phone number.

Voice calls


- appears in the upper part of the display during a call.

Videophone calls

- Refer to P. 50 for details on viewing the screen during a Videophone call.
- The Chara-den or still picture set as substitute image is sent (P. 81).
- The following operations are available during a Videophone call.

To send camera image		(My side) (or press for 1+ seconds)
		● Refer to P. 80 on sending your own image.
To send touch-tone signals <DTMF mode>	While sending Chara-den	→ [DTMF mode] → [ON] → enter numbers to send
	While sending camera image	Enter numbers to send

4 Press to end the call.

- Alternatively, for Videophone, press  (P) for 1+ seconds.



Note

- When the mode of **2in1** is set to [Dual mode], the screen for selecting a phone number appears after step 2. Select the phone number from [Number A]/[Number B].
- During a call, approximate call duration appears on the screen. When the call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the display resets to 0:00.
- The FOMA terminal may become warm after continuous use. This is not a malfunction.
- **Set when folded** is followed if the handset is switched to the viewer position during a call.

Voice calls

- Calls can be made even when steps 1 and 2 are reversed. If no operations are performed for approximately 5 seconds after dialing, the call is made.

Videophone calls

- Videophone calls cannot be made to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) from the FOMA terminal.
- When the other party answers, [Connected to videophone press  key to enable/disable hands-free] appears. Digital transmission fees are incurred from this point.
- Videophone call is not connected when placed to an unsupported handset. In addition, it is not connected to devices such as PHS phones for which 64K cannot be used due to network conditions. If **Redial voice call** is set to [ON], the number is automatically redialed as a voice call. In such cases, voice call charges are incurred. Note that this operation may not work if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or an ISDN Videophone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (P. 50) (as of October 2007), or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.
- When sending own image from a location with little light, noise such as white lines increase. Also, direct sunlight or strong light from lamps may darken or distort images. Use Videophone under suitable lighting conditions.
- If **Call Waiting** is subscribed to, the number is recorded in Received calls and  (missed call) appears in stand-by when a voice/Videophone call is received during a Videophone call.
- During a Videophone call, i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at the i-mode center. After a Videophone call, i-mode mail or Message R/F held at the i-mode center can be retrieved by performing **Check new message**. However, SMS are received automatically even during Videophone calls.
- When the sending/receiving of audio or video fails, the Videophone call is not automatically restored. Make the Videophone call again.
- When a Videophone call is started, Redial voice call is not performed.
- Videophone calls are counted toward [V.phone talk time] (P. 412).
- Voice calls or i-mode operations cannot be performed during a Videophone call.
- When connected, the earphone/microphone is used for a call regardless of **Hands-free V.phone**.

When the Videophone call does not connect

- When the Videophone call does not connect, a message explaining the reason appears. The other party's actual conditions may vary depending upon the type of phone and network service subscriptions.

Message	Reason
Check number, then redial	A call is made to unused phone number.
Busy	The other party is engaged in a call.*
Your call is being forwarded	The other party's handset is set to forward Videophone calls.
Out of service area/power off	The other party is outside the service area, or their mobile phone is turned off.
Set caller ID to on	Connected without notifying caller ID (When calling visualnet).
Redial using voice call	The other party's handset is set to the Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding destination does not support Videophone.
Busy with packet transmission	The other party is performing a packet transmission.
Connection failed	Appears in cases other than those listed above.
Upper limit has been exceeded. Connection failed	Upper limit that has been set by payment plans with limit function (Type Limit or Family Wide Limit) has been exceeded.
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	A Videophone call is directly made to the V-live which should be accessed after connecting to i-mode. Access a site run by the contents provider and view it by making a Videophone call from the link.



* The message may appear during a packet transmission depending on the other party's terminal.

Related Operations

Use hands-free <Hands-free>



During a voice call, press  for 1+ seconds.



During a Videophone call, press .

- To disable during a voice call: Press  for 1+ seconds.
- To disable during a Videophone call: Press .

Place calls on hold <Hold Active Call>

1 During a call, press  ► [Hold Active Call].

- Alternatively, press /  for a Videophone call.

2 To resume voice call, press  or .

To resume Videophone call, press .

- For Videophone, press  or press  for 1+ seconds to send a camera image and answer the call.

Select Multi Number and make a call <Sel Multi number>

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number and press  ► [Sel Multi number].

2 Select Multi Number ►  (Phone)/  (V.phone).




Select a phone number and make a call when the 2in1 is used <Select 2in1>

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number and press  ► [Select 2in1].

2 Select [Number A]/[Number B] ►  (Phone)/  (V.phone).

Note

Using Hands-free

-  appears during hands-free operation.
- Speak from approximately 20 to 40 cm away from the mouthpiece. When the surroundings are noisy, sound may break up and the call may not be satisfactory.
- When using Hands-free outdoors or in a location where surroundings are noisy, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).
- Cannot be operated when receiving a call and dialing a voice call.
- Increasing earpiece volume may make conversation difficult. In such cases, press /  and lower the volume.
- Hands-free is disabled when a call ends.


Hold

- The **set hold tone** plays. Hold tone does not sound from the FOMA terminal when Manner mode is set.
- The other party hears the hold tone, and the call is placed on hold. For Videophone calls, the image set in **Hold image** is sent to the other party. The image is sent to the other party with [Hold] superimposed.
- Calls stay on hold even when the FOMA terminal is closed. **Set when folded** does not apply.

Selecting Multi Number

- Those subscribing to **Multi Number** can select a saved Multi Number and make a call.

Selecting 2in1




- **2in1** mode is available when set to [Dual mode].
-  appears in the phone number entry screen when [Number B] is selected.

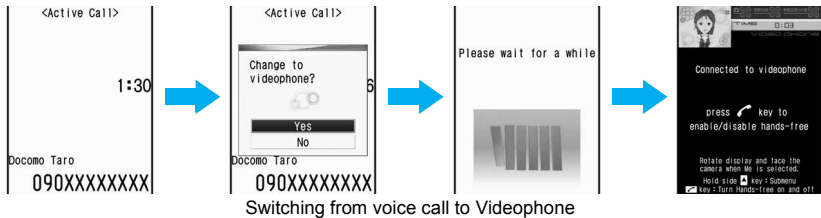
Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone

Switch between voice call and Videophone for placed calls.

- [V.phone] appears for voice calls and [Phone] appears for Videophone calls at the lower right of the display in guidance and call can be switched (Available with models that support switching between voice call and Videophone).
- Notify switch mode (☞ P. 84) must be set to "Activate" for the other party's FOMA terminal.
- Received calls cannot be switched. Have the other party switch.
- When switching, [Unable to switch] may appear and switching is disabled depending on the other party's FOMA terminal status (☞ P. 68).
- Calls cannot be switched while 1Seg is being activated.
- For Videophone call, the [キャラ(女性)] of Chara-den is sent to the other party as default setting. The substitute image to be sent can be set in Substitute image (☞ P. 81). When making a Videophone call while viewing each other's face, refer to "Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party" on P. 80.

1 Press (V.phone) during a voice call ▶ [Yes].

- Alternatively, press  and select [Switch to v.phone] during a voice call.
- To switch from Videophone to voice call, press  (Phone) or  and select [chg to voice call] during a call.
- Select [No] and the voice call screen reappears.
- Switching takes approximately 5 seconds. Switching may take more time depending on signal status. While switching, [Please wait for a while] appears and a guidance message is played.
- The call switches to Videophone and the Chara-den or still picture set as substitute image is sent to the other party.



- Switch between voice call and Videophone is possible as many times as necessary during a call. When switched, call duration resets to 0 seconds.

Note

- Calls may not be switched from voice call to Videophone nor from Videophone to voice call and may be disconnected depending on signal status.
- Switching is not included in the talk time and charges are not incurred.

Switching from voice call to Videophone

- The other party's camera image does not appear if the other party selects to not show image.
- When performing packet transmissions, disconnect packet transmission before switching to Videophone.
- If a call is switched to Videophone, Hands-free is activated regardless of the call status or **Hands-free V.phone** before the switching.
- Hands-free is not available while [Please wait for a while] is shown.
- Calls received with **Call Waiting** cannot be switched from voice call to Videophone call.

Switching from Videophone to voice call

- When switching to voice call from Hands-free Videophone call, Hands-free is disabled.

Using Redial and Received Calls

Redialing Previously Called Numbers <Redial>




The FOMA terminal keeps a record of the 30 most recent phone numbers to which calls were made (including PushTalk).

- When 30 calls are exceeded, phone numbers are erased starting with the oldest.
- If the same number was called multiple times, only the most recent is recorded. However, each call is recorded if PushTalk transmission is sent to multiple parties or the call is made using the PushTalk group or PushTalkPlus.
- When 2in1 is used, up to 30 Redials of each Number A and Number B are saved respectively (60 in total). However, the number of Redials displayed in each mode is up to 30 from the latest.








1 In stand-by, press .


Redial	01/03
12/25 10:58 	
Docomo Taro	
12/25 10:55 	
Keitai Hanako	
12/25 10:39 	
09XXXXXXXX	

Redial list





- Phone numbers and dates are listed starting with the most recent redial numbers.
- When time difference is adjusted overseas, the local time and date and  appear.
- Name appears if saved in phonebook. If the same number is saved in the phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.
- For PushTalk, the other party's name or the PushTalk group name appears.
- To view the next page, press . To view the previous page, press .

Types of calls

No icon	Voice call	 	PushTalk (When transmitted to one person)
	Videophone call		
	International call	 	PushTalk (When transmitted to multiple people)
M0 to M2	Multi Number outgoing call (Only when Multi Number is set)	 MNU	PushTalk (Using PushTalkPlus)
B	Number B outgoing call (Only when the 2in1 [Dual mode] is used)		





To show the redial details screen	Select a phone number
To switch to the received calls list	 (Received calls)

2 Select phone number and dial.

Voice call	
Videophone	 → 
PushTalk	 (P)

- Call is placed to the displayed phone number.
- When **186** or **184** are added to the phone number, the call is saved as a separate dial.

Note

- Even if a call is switched between voice call and Videophone, the phone type of Redial is decided by the original call type.
- Refer to P. 150 for details on the Redial/Show received calls.
- Press  (**P**) or  to call all parties when using Redial for PushTalk transmission made to multiple people. Voice/Videophone calls cannot be made.
- When the redial display for **Show call/received** is set to [OFF], the history is saved but Redial does not appear.
- In the redial list screen, press  (RcvdHist) to show the received messages list or press  (SendHist) to show the sent messages list (see P. 231).

Note

Redial Submenu

Menu names in the redial list screen	Menu names in the redial details screen	Explanation
Add to phonebook	Add to phonebook	Saves phone number in the phonebook.
Delete	Delete one	Deletes a saved Redial (☎ P. 56).
—	Caller ID setting	Sends caller ID/Does not send caller ID/As NW setting when calling.
—	Add prefix setting	Selects a prefix or makes an international call.
—	Sel Multi number ^{*1}	Selects a phone number saved in Multi Number (☎ P. 439).
—	Select 2in1 ^{*2}	Selects a phone number when the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode] (☎ P. 441).
—	V.phone image	Sets an image to be sent during a Videophone call.
—	Chaku-moji	Composes a message, selects a message or displays Sent messages.
Compose message	Compose message	Composes a message. If the mail address is not saved in the phonebook, the outgoing number is entered for the address.
Create schedule	Create schedule	Saves phone number and redial date in the schedule.

*1 Appears when 2in1 is not subscribed or 2in1 function OFF is set.

*2 Appears when the 2in1 is used.

Related Operations

Delete Redials/Received calls <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press (Redial)/ (Received calls).

2 Select a phone number and press ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].

- To delete all Redials/Received calls: Press ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Delete all] ▶ enter terminal security code and press ▶ [Yes].

Note

- If all Redials are deleted, Chaku-moji Sent messages are also deleted.
- If all Redials/Received calls are deleted, all Redials/Received calls of Number A and Number B are also deleted respectively.

Making Calls from Received Calls <Received Calls>

The FOMA terminal keeps a record (Received calls) of the 30 most recent phone numbers (including PushTalk) received.

- When 30 calls are exceeded, phone numbers are erased starting with the oldest.
- When 2in1 is used, up to 30 Received calls of each Number A and Number B are saved respectively (60 in total). However, the number of Redials displayed in each mode is up to 30 from the latest.

1 In stand-by, press (Received calls).



Received calls list

- Phone numbers and dates are listed starting with the most recent Received calls.
- When time difference is adjusted overseas, the local time and date and appear.
- Name appears if saved in phonebook. If the same number is saved in the phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.
- To view the next page, press . To view the previous page, press .

Types of history

	Calls that were answered or put on hold
	Calls that left a recorded message
	Calls that were not answered, calls that forwarded to a forwarding number or Voice Mail Service center, or calls that were rejected because of Reject calls (☎ P. 151), Accept calls (☎ P. 150), Reject unknown (☎ P. 153), Reject by reason of non-disclosure (☎ P. 152), Public mode (Drive mode) (☎ P. 71)

Types of calls

No icon	Voice call		Chaku-moji
	Videophone call		PushTalk (When transmitted to one person)
	64K data communications		
	International call		PushTalk (When transmitted to multiple people)
M0 to M2	Multi Number received (Only when Multi Number is set)		
B	Number B incoming call (Only when the 2in1 [Dual mode] is used)		PushTalk (Using PushTalkPlus)

When (missed call) appears in stand-by (Missed calls)	In stand-by, press → select (missed call) ● The most recent Received calls appear (P. 74).
To display the received calls details screen	Select a phone number
To switch to the redial list screen	(Redial)

2 Select a phone number and dial.

Voice call	
Videophone	→
PushTalk	()

Note

- Refer to P. 56 for details on deleting Received calls.
- Even if a call is switched between voice call and Videophone, the received call type depends on the way the call was answered.
- Press () or to call all parties when using Redial for PushTalk transmission made to multiple people. Voice/Videophone calls cannot be made.
- When **Function lock** is applied to the phonebook, only the phone number appears. When Function lock is disabled, the name registered in the phonebook appears.
- When a call is received from a caller using Dial-in, a number different from the caller's Dial-in number may appear.
- When Show received calls of **Show call/received** is set to [OFF], the call is recorded but Received calls does not appear.
- In the received calls list screen, press (RcvdHist) to show the received messages list or press (SendHist) to show the sent messages list (P. 231).
- If a call is made from Received calls with Chaku-moji, the received Chaku-moji is not sent.
- For a received call with Chaku-moji, the message contents are displayed on the received calls details screen.

Received calls Submenu

- The operations are available as in the Redial submenu except the following items. Refer to "Redial Submenu" on P. 56 for details.

Menu names from received calls list	Menu names from received calls details screen	Explanation
–	Ringing time ^{*1}	Displays Ringing time ^{*2} .
Display all/Limit display	Display all/Limit display	Performs Display all/Limit display.

*1 Cannot select items with in the received calls list (calls that have been answered or disconnected while on hold).

*2 A ringing time of [0:00] appears when a call is rejected due to **Reject calls**, **Accept calls**, **Reject unknown**, **Reject by reason of non-disclosure** and **Public mode (Drive mode)** settings.

- When **Set mute ring time** is set to [ON] and Missed call history is set to [OFF] and the following call not saved in phonebook is received, the number does not appear in Received calls.

- The call is disconnected during mute seconds duration

- The call is disconnected due to weak signal strength

However, select [Display all] from the Submenu to show Received calls (When there are no Received calls that are not shown, [Display all] cannot be selected).

Saving to Phonebook from Redial and Received Calls

1 In stand-by, press \odot (☐)/ \odot (\rightarrow ☐) \blacktriangleright select a phone number and press 📷 \blacktriangleright [Add to phonebook].

2 Select a saving method.

Saving method	Save new to phone	Add/overwrite	Add PushTalk group
	Save new to UIM	PushTalk phonebook	

- Selected phone number is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 102, P. 107).
- [Add PushTalk group] is only available for PushTalk call/received history. History entries of PushTalk transmission sent to multiple people are subject to the setting. Also available when phone numbers of the other party are saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

Chaku-moji

Setting Chaku-moji

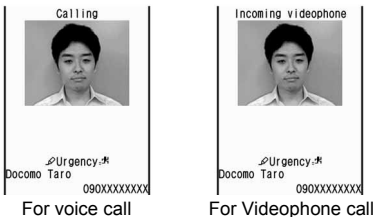
What Is Chaku-moji?

Send a message (Chaku-moji) at the same time when making a voice call or Videophone call to display it on the other party's ringing phone and to previously tell the points.

Save the Chaku-moji message in advance. Set if Chaku-moji is displayed or not when it is received.

- Send up to 10 single/double-byte characters, pictographs or symbols.
- Charges are applied to the sender side. Not applied to the receiver side.
- Ahead of the Chaku-moji messages on the send and receive displays, 📷 appears.
- Chaku-moji appears only while a call is receiving (calling). When the call is answered, Chaku-moji disappears.
- Refer to DoCoMo's web site or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]" for details and compatible models of Chaku-moji.

Receive display when Chaku-moji is received



- The message contents of received Chaku-moji can also be checked in the received calls details screen (☞ P. 57).
- While All lock is set or Function lock is applied to Chaku-moji, Chaku-moji is not displayed even if it is received. When the lock is disabled, the message contents can be checked in the received calls details screen.

Editing and Setting Chaku-moji Message

Saving the Chaku-moji message <Create message>

Save up to ten Chaku-moji messages.

1 In stand-by, press \odot \blacktriangleright [Settings] \blacktriangleright [Other NW Services] \blacktriangleright [Chaku-moji] \blacktriangleright [Create message].

2 Select a number and press ☐ (Edit) \blacktriangleright enter a message and press \odot .

- To check a saved Chaku-moji message, select a number.

Enabling/Disabling Chaku-moji display <Message display>

- In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Chaku-moji] ▶ [Message display] ▶ select a display method.



Dialing with Chaku-moji Message <Chaku-moji>

- In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press ▶ [Chaku-moji].

- In stand-by, press , select a name, press and select [Chaku-moji] when calling with Chaku-moji from the phonebook.

- Select a Chaku-moji message.

To create a new message	[Create message] → enter a Chaku-moji message and press
To select from saved Chaku-moji messages	[Select message] → select a Chaku-moji message
To select from Sent messages	[Sent messages] → select a Chaku-moji message <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To delete one Sent messages entry, select a Chaku-moji message, press and select [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete all Sent messages entries, press and select [Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press → select [Yes].

- Press (Phone)/ (V.phone).



- If Chaku-moji reaches the recipient, [Transmission completed] appears and transmission charges are incurred.

Note

- The ten most recently sent messages are recorded as Sent messages.
- Even if a call is shorter than the set ringing time of the **Set mute ring time**, Chaku-moji is displayed and charges are applied.
- Depending on the signal strength, sending results may not be displayed even if the other party has received Chaku-moji. In this case, charges are applied.
- While **Function lock** is applied to Chaku-moji, terminal security code must be entered to select a Chaku-moji message from the already saved Chaku-moji messages or the Sent messages.
- For overseas usage, Chaku-moji cannot be sent/received.
- On **Redial voice call**, Chaku-moji used when Videophone was dialed will be automatically sent.
- Chaku-moji does not support PushTalk.
- When the call recipient is in the following setting, Chaku-moji does not appear and transmission charges are not incurred even if dialed with Chaku-moji.
 - When the recipient's terminal does not support Chaku-moji
 - When a call is received from numbers rejected by the message display settings
 In addition, when the call recipient is in the following setting or status, the send results do not appear on the sender side display (Chaku-moji is not recorded in Received calls on the receiver side).
 - When outside the service area or the power is turned off
 - When Public mode (Drive mode) is set
 - When the answering duration for Record message is set to [0 seconds]

Send Own No./No Caller ID

Setting Caller ID to Send/Not Send for a Single Call

To not send caller ID

- In stand-by, enter a phone number and press ▶ [Caller ID setting] ▶ [No caller ID] ▶ (Phone)/ (V.phone).

To send caller ID

- In stand-by, enter a phone number and press ▶ [Caller ID setting] ▶ [Send own no.] ▶ (Phone)/ (V.phone).

Note

- Alternatively, make calls by setting caller ID from Submenus in the **Phonebook**, **Redial** or **Received calls** details screen.
- When a phone number is entered after entering **186** and is pressed and [Caller ID setting] → [No caller ID] is selected, caller ID is sent.
- If [186] is selected from **Select prefix** after entering a phone number, caller ID is sent.
- When a phone number is entered after entering **184** and is pressed and [Caller ID setting] → [Send own no.] is selected, caller ID is not sent.
- If [184] is selected from Select prefix after entering a phone number, caller ID is not sent.
- When **186** or **184** is added to a phone number, the call is saved as a separate redial.
- To send PushTalk transmissions, the setting cannot be made by entering a phone number after **186** or **184** is selected. Even if **186** or **184** is added to a transmission, the transmission is sent according to **Notify caller ID** of the network service.

Related Operations

Make a call according to the network service's caller ID setting

In stand-by, enter phone number and press ▶ [Caller ID setting] ▶ [As NW setting] ▶ (Phone)/ (V.phone).

Add 186 (To notify caller ID)

In stand-by, press ▶ enter phone number and press (Phone)/ (V.phone).

Add 184 (To not notify caller ID)

In stand-by, press ▶ enter phone number and press (Phone)/ (V.phone).

Note





Sending caller ID for a single call

- This function is available regardless of the network service's **caller ID setting**.

Sending Touch-tone Signals with Simple Operations



Use services such as ticket reservations and bank balance inquiries, with simple operations by saving the combinations of phone numbers and messages (numbers) in the phonebook.

Saving Touch-tone Data to the Phonebook

- 1** Enter a phone number in phonebook (see step 3 on P. 102) and press 
 - ▶ enter the number to send.
 - Press  to enter a pause [P]. Alternatively, slide the finger up on the TOUCH CRUISER pad to enter it.
 - Enter the number and press  to continue adding numbers.
- 2** Press  ▶ enter the other phonebook items.
 - Refer to "Basic Saving Operations" on P. 102 for details.

Sending Messages Using Touch-tone Signals

- Pause dial is available only for voice calls.

- 1** Make a voice call from the phonebook with a touch-tone signal.
 - Refer to P. 109 to P. 113 for details.
 - When the call is connected, the numbers after [P] appear on the screen.
- 2** Press  (PB send) at the appropriate time to send.
 - The numbers after [P] are sent with touch-tone signals.
 - When multiple numbers separated by [P] are saved, press  (PB send) for each number.
 - Some equipment may not be able to receive signals properly.

Sending Touch-tone Signals Using the Dial Keys During a Call

Send touch-tone signals one at a time during a call by pressing the dial keys.

- 1** Make a call and when the call is connected, press the corresponding numbers on the keypad.
 - The number is sent as a touch-tone signal.
 - Enter 80 digits or more when sending a message using touch-tone signals (Deletes entered digits from the beginning).

WORLD CALL

Making International Calls

"WORLD CALL" Is DoCoMo's International Calling Service

WORLD CALL is an international calling service available from DoCoMo mobile phones. "WORLD CALL" is registered when FOMA services are registered (Registration for "WORLD CALL" is optional).

[Calling Method] 009130 ➔ 010 ➔ Country code ➔ Area code (city code) ➔ Other party's phone number ➔ 

- The calling method shown above can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
 - For area codes (city codes) that begin with 0, omit the 0 when dialing (However, include the 0 when calling Italy).
- Call to about 240 countries and regions worldwide.

- "WORLD CALL" charges are billed with the monthly mobile phone charges.
- Subscription and monthly usage fees are free.
- Check an estimate of the most recent call duration on the display (P. 412).
- When using phonebook, Received calls or Redial, **009130010** is automatically added to make calls.
- Change in procedures for making international calls
Because "MY LINE" service is not available for mobile communications, WORLD CALL also cannot be used with "MY LINE". With the offering of the "MY LINE" service, the dialing procedures for international calls have changed. The former dialing procedure (procedure listed above without **010**) cannot be used.
- For further details on WORLD CALL, contact the number listed in "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
- To make an international call through a company other than DoCoMo, contact the representative companies directly for instructions.
- Some payment plans may not be available.

When calling Videophone compatible specific overseas 3G mobile phone customers, use "International Videophone" by making the call in Videophone mode after the dialing method above.

- Refer to the DoCoMo web page for information on available countries and providers.
- Depending on the other party's international Videophone terminal, the image that appears on the FOMA terminal may be distorted, or connection may not be possible.

Int'l Dial Assist

Setting International Call

Automatically Adding International Access Code/Country Code <Auto Conversion>

When making an international call from Japan, enter [+]
before dialing the overseas number to automatically place the international access code. When making an international call to Japan, convert the first [0] in the phone number to the country code automatically and make a call.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[Int'l dial assist]** ▶ **[Auto conversion]**.

2 Select **[Int'l prefix conv]** ▶ **[ON]**.


- Set international access codes as auto prefix in the IDD prefix setting.


3 Select **[Country code conv]** ▶ **[ON]** ▶ **select the country to add**.

- Select among country codes saved in Set country code.

4 Press  **(Complete)**.

Using [+] to make an international call

- Press  for 1+ seconds to enter [+].

1 In stand-by, enter [+], the country code, area code (city code) and other party's phone number and press .

- The number with the international access code, which is converted from [+], appears.

2 Select **[Call]**.

- The international call is made.
- To not convert [+]
to the international access code, select **[Original number]**.

Setting Numbers Other Than WORLD CALL <IDD Prefix Setting>

Save up to ten international access codes used when international calls are made from Japan.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Int'l dial assist] ▶ [IDD prefix setting] ▶ select a number to save as a new entry.**

To change a saved number	Select a number → [Change]
To delete a saved number	Select a number → [Delete] → [Yes]
To set Auto prefix	Select a number → [Prefix/cancel] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● appears to the right of the name. ● Perform the operations over to disable Auto prefix.

- 2 Enter a name and press ▶ enter a prefix and press .**

- Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters for a name.
- Up to 16 digits can be entered for a prefix.
- When entering a prefix, press for 1+ seconds to enter [+].

Selecting an international access code <International Call>

Enter only the country code, area code (city code) and the phone number to make international calls.

- 1 In stand-by, enter the country code, area code (city code) and other party's phone number and press ▶ [Add prefix setting].**

- 2 Select [International Call] ▶ select an international access code ▶ .**

Related Operations

Make a call from phonebook

In the phonebook entry details screen, press ▶ [Number settings] ▶ [Add prefix] ▶ [International Call] ▶ select an international access code ▶ .

Make a call from Received calls or Redial

In the received calls or redial details screen, press ▶ [Add prefix setting] ▶ [International Call] ▶ select an international access code ▶ .

Setting Country Codes <Set Country Code>

Save up to 30 country codes to make international calls from overseas.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Int'l dial assist] ▶ [Set country code] ▶ select a number to save as a new entry.**

To change a saved country code	Select a number → [Edit]
To delete a saved country code	Select a number → [Delete] → [Yes]

- 2 Enter a country name and press ▶ enter a country code and press .**

- Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters for a country name.
- Up to six digits can be entered including [+].

Int'l Prefix

Setting a First Number to Phone Numbers

Save up to five prefixes, including international access codes, to place at the beginning of phone numbers. The numbers are also available when calls are made from phonebook, Received calls or Redial.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Int'l prefix] ▶ select a number to save as a new entry.

To change a saved number	Select a number → [Change]
To delete a saved number	Select a number → [Delete] → [Yes]

- 2 Enter a prefix and press .

- Press for 1+ seconds to enter [+].
- Up to 16 digits can be entered.

Calling with Prefixes <Select Prefix>

- 1 In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press ▶ [Add prefix setting].
- 2 Select [Select prefix] ▶ select a prefix ▶ .

Related Operations

Make a call from phonebook

In the phonebook entry details screen, press ▶ [Number settings] ▶ [Add prefix] ▶ [Select prefix] ▶ select prefix ▶ .

Make a call from Received calls or Redial

In the received calls or redial details screen, press ▶ [Add prefix setting] ▶ [Select prefix] ▶ select prefix ▶ .

Sub Address

Making Calls with Sub Address Set

Using sub address allows calls to be made to specific terminals when calling an ISDN terminal.

- A sub address is a number assigned to a terminal when there are multiple ISDN terminals for a single ISDN line. It is used in selecting contents for V-live.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Sub address] ▶ [ON].

Making calls with sub address set

- Ask the other party for their phone number and sub address.

- 1 In stand-by, enter phone number, press and enter sub address and press .

Note

- If is entered at the beginning of a phone number or after **186**, **184** or a prefix, the numbers after are recognized as the phone number.

Reconnect Signal

Reconnecting Disconnected Calls Automatically

- Reconnect signal is also available for PushTalk transmissions.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[In-call settings]** ▶ **[Reconnect signal]** ▶ select an alarm tone.

Alarm tone	Alarm on(high)	Alarm on(low)	No alarm
------------	----------------	---------------	----------

Note

- The amount of time that can elapse to reconnect varies depending on signal strength. The estimated time is approximately 10 seconds.
- The other party hears no sound until the call is reconnected (up to 10 seconds). Charges are incurred for this duration.

Noise Reduction

Reducing Noise Interference to Hear Calls Clearly

- It is recommended that this function be kept set to [ON].

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[In-call settings]** ▶ **[Noise reduction]** ▶ **[ON]**.

Note

- Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on surrounding noise and tone of the voice.

Hands-free

Using Handset in a Car

Use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (sold separately) to connect hands-free devices such as car navigation to the FOMA terminal, and make/receive voice calls from the device. Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details. Use a FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (sold separately) for the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (sold separately).

Note

- Functions such as display settings, ring tones and **Public mode (Drive mode)** call functions follow the FOMA terminal settings for incoming calls.
- If a hands-free device has sound enabled, the device plays a ring tone even when the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or [Silent].
- When FOMA terminal sound is enabled, **Set when folded** is followed if the handset is closed during a call. If device sound is enabled, the call continues when the FOMA terminal is closed regardless of Set when folded.
- Record message** settings are followed even when the handset is connected to the device.
- Some handset functions may not be available depending on device characteristics and specifications.

Answering Calls/Videophone Calls

When receiving a call, verify it using ring tone, called LED, vibrator, and others.

- For Videophone call, the [キャラ(女性)] of Chara-den is sent to the other party as default setting. The substitute image to be sent can be set in Substitute image (☞ P. 81). When making a Videophone call while viewing each other's face, refer to "Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party" on P. 80.
- When receiving a Videophone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (☞ P. 415) or use Hands-free (☞ P. 82) to talk while viewing each other's image.

1 When a call is received, the ring tone sounds and the called LED flashes.



- When caller ID is sent, the phone number appears. If the other party's name and phone number are saved in the phonebook, they appear on the screen.
- When Picture call (still picture or movie/i-motion) is saved in the phonebook (☞ P. 104), the name, phone number and image appear on the screen. They do not appear if the caller does not send caller ID.

Voice calls

- [Calling] appears while receiving a call.

Videophone calls











- [Incoming videophone] appears while receiving a call.




- When Chaku-moji is received, the message appears (☞ P. 58).
- When the caller does not send caller ID, a non-disclosure reason message appears. [User unset], [Payphone] or [Not support] (☞ P. 152)

2 Press .

- Refer to the following for key operations while receiving a call.

	When FOMA terminal is open	When FOMA terminal is closed
On hold (☞ P. 70)		-
Quick silent (☞ P. 127)		 (Eco)   (P)
Quick message (☞ P. 76)	Press  for 1+ seconds	-
Manner mode set/disable (☞ P. 127)	Press  for 1+ seconds	Press  for 1+ seconds
Record message/Forward calls/Auto forward/Call Rejection*		-
Answer with camera image (for only Videophone calls)	 (My side) ● Refer to P. 80 on sending your own image.	-

* Videophone calls can be rejected by pressing  (Call Rejection) while 1Seg is activated.

- For Videophone calls, all key operations except those listed above are not available even when Any key answer is set to [ON].


Voice calls

- Calls can also be received with Any key answer (☞ P. 68).

Videophone calls

- The Chara-den or still picture set as substitute image is sent (☞ P. 81).
- When images are not received from the other party, a black screen appears.


Press to end the call.

- Alternatively, for Videophone, press  (P) for 1+ seconds.

Note

- Calls to the FOMA terminal cannot be made from phones with no direct outside line, such as an internal building phone.
- **Set mute ring time** can be set to delay ring tone sounding until set number of seconds pass when a call is received from an unregistered number or a number without caller ID. **Reject unknown** can be set to prevent callers not registered in Phonebook from being connected.
- Save a specified phonebook in a list and set Reject/Accept calls.
- Use Notification of **Voice Mail Service** to receive notification of missed calls when the handset is turned off or outside the service area. An SMS is received after returning to the service area or when power is turned on. If a call is received from a person saved in the phonebook, the person's name appears in the message.
- **Set when folded** is followed if the handset is switched to the viewer position during a call.
- When a call is received while in **Public mode (Drive mode)**, the ring tone does not sound, and the called LED does not flash. The call is saved in **Received calls**.
- If a voice/Videophone call is received when Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate", the call is connected to Voice Mail Service and recording message is activated after the set ringing time passes. Answering during the set ringing time connects call without connecting to Voice Mail Service.

Videophone calls

- The substitute image to be sent can be set in **Substitute image**.
- Even when **Call Forwarding Service** is set to "Activate", the Videophone call is not forwarded if the set forwarding destination is not set to a device that supports Videophone and conforms to the 3G-324M standard ( P. 50). Check forwarding destination before setting.

When a call is received during editing






- If a call is received while editing phonebook, i-mode mail, SMS or a Chaku-moji message, editing is temporarily suspended. When this happens, edited data is automatically saved. When the conversation is finished, the screen before the call was received reappears and editing can be resumed. However, characters that are in the process of being converted and not confirmed may not be saved.

When a call is received from a saved Multi Number

- A Multi Number name appears to the right of [Calling]/[Incoming videophone] when a call is received.

When the handset beeps during a voice call indicating an incoming call

When any of services such as Voice Mail, Call Forwarding or Call Waiting is subscribed to and Set arrival act is set to "Activate" while Arrival call act is set to [Answer], the following operations can be performed when the handset beeps during a call.

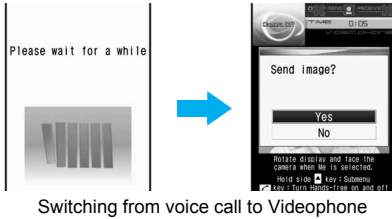
Call Forwarding Service	Press  and select [Forward calls] to forward the call to the set forward number ( P. 433).
Voice Mail Service	Press  and select [Auto forward] to forward the call to the Voice Mail Service center ( P. 430).
Call Waiting	Put the current call on hold and answer the incoming call ( P. 432).

Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone to Receive Calls

The caller (other party) selects to switch between voice call and Videophone.

- The call recipient cannot switch (Available with models that support switching between voice call and Videophone).
- Notify switch mode (☎ P. 84) must be set to "Activate" for the recipient's FOMA terminal.

1 The caller switches between Videophone and voice call during a call.



- Switching takes approximately 5 seconds. Switching may take more time depending on signal status. While the call being switched, [Please wait for a while] appears and a guidance message is played.

Switching from voice call to Videophone

- When the caller switches to Videophone call, a message is played and the screen on the left appears before switching. Proceed to step 2.

Switching from Videophone to voice call

- When the caller switches to voice call during Videophone call, a message is played before switching. Start conversation in voice call.

2 Select [Yes].

Switching from voice call to Videophone

- Your image is sent to the other party.
- Select [No] to not send own image. [テレビ電話代替] appears on the other party's screen with [Camera Off] superimposed.

Note

- Switching is not available when another screen is displayed from the Multi Assistant, while a call is on hold, during a packet transmission call, or when the FOMA terminal is closed. When any function is activated from the Submenu, switching may not be available.

Any Key Answer

Answering Calls by Pressing Any Key

Set Any key answer so that calls can be answered with the keys other than the ones normally used.

	Normal	Any key answer
Voice call	☎	[1] to [9], [0], [X], [M], [V], [E], [M], [C], [CLR]
Videophone	☎, [V]	—
PushTalk	☎, [P] (P)	[1] to [9], [0], [X], [M], [V], [E], [M], [C], [CLR], [MAY]

- Refer to P. 53, P. 70 for details on being resumed/started while on hold or answer holding.

1 In stand-by, press [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Incoming settings] ▶ [Any key answer] ▶ [ON].

Closing the FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

- 1** In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Phone settings]** **[Set when folded]** **select a close operation.**

Phone/Videophone	Hold sound	To set to Hold sound (with hold tone)
	Finish call	To set to Finish Call
	Silent	To set to Silent (without hold tone)
PushTalk	Finish call	To set to Finish transmission
	Speaker phone	To play the other party's voice through the speakers

Note

- When set to [Hold sound], the **set hold tone** plays. Hold tone can be changed (P. 71). For Videophone calls, the image set in **Hold image** is sent to the other party.
- When set to [Silent], hold tone does not sound. For Videophone calls, the Chara-den or still picture set as **Substitute image** is sent.
- When set to [Hold sound] or [Silent], open the FOMA terminal to resume the call.
- If a device such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected, the call can continue while the handset is closed, regardless of [Hold sound], [Silent], or [Finish call] settings.
- For voice/Videophone calls, if the earphone/microphone is disconnected while the FOMA terminal is closed, the call will become mute when [Silent] or [Finish call] is set, or the call is put on hold when [Hold sound] is set. The call resumes when the earphone/microphone is reconnected or the handset is opened. For **PushTalk**, if the earphone/microphone is disconnected while the FOMA terminal is closed, the call can be continued through the speaker whether set to [Finish call] or set to [Speaker phone].
- For PushTalk, when [Speaker phone] is set, open the FOMA terminal to retrieve the transmission status of **Hands-free PT**.

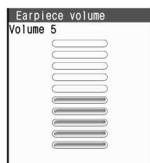
Earpiece Volume

Adjusting the Volume During a Call

Select from ten earpiece volume levels during a call.

- If earpiece volume is raised for a call, noise may occur depending on the surroundings. Use at an appropriate volume.
- The volume remains at an adjusted level even when the handset is turned off or the battery pack is removed.

- 1** During a call, press .



Earpiece volume screen

- Alternatively, press (Eco)/.
- Refer to P. 123 for details on adjusting the earpiece volume when in stand-by.
- Alternatively, press and select [Earpiece volume] during a Videophone call.

- 2** Press to adjust the volume.



- Alternatively, press (Eco)/.
- After adjusting the volume, press or , or wait approximately 2 seconds and the previous screen reappears. Alternatively, press () or () call to reappear the previous screen for Videophone.

On Hold

Placing Calls On Hold

- The other party is charged for the call while on hold.
- If subscribed to Call Forwarding Service or Voice Mail Service, a received call is forwarded to the set destination or connected to the Voice Mail Service center (☎P. 67).

1 While a ring tone is sounding, press .

- When a voice call is received, the other party hears the hold tone (☎P. 70), and the call is placed on hold.
- When a Videophone call is received, the other party hears the hold tone (☎P. 70), and the On hold image set by your FOMA terminal (☎P. 82) is sent to the other party with [On hold] superimposed.
- To disconnect a call while on hold, press . For Videophone, press  (P) for 1+ seconds to disconnect a call (In both cases, the call is saved in Received calls).
- When the other party disconnects the call while on hold, the call is saved in Received calls.

2 Press when ready to answer.

- For Videophone, press  or press  for 1+ seconds to send a camera image and answer the call.

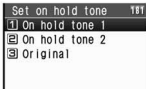
Set On Hold Tone





Setting On Hold Tone



Set the on hold guidance that the other party hears.

- Select [On hold tone 1] (Japanese), [On hold tone 2] (English) or recorded Voice memo.
On hold tone 1 ... ただいま電話に出ることができません。そのままお待ちになるか、しばらくたってからおかけ直してください。
- On hold tone 2 ... I can't take your call now. Please hold the line for a moment or call me back later, thank you.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Hold/On hold tone] ▶ [Set on hold tone] ▶ select a hold tone.



To set the guidance language	[On hold tone 1]: Japanese/[On hold tone 2]: English
To set after recording Voice memo	[Original] → [Record] → record → [Play] → select memo and press  ● Press  to abort recording.
To set recorded Stand-by Voice memo	[Original] → [Play] → select memo and press 
To apply Function lock to Voice memo	[Original] → [Function lock] → enter terminal security code and press  → [ON] ● To disable Function lock: [OFF]

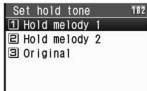
- To play back, select [On hold tone 1] or [On hold tone 2] and press . Press  again to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

Setting Hold Tone

Set the hold tone that the other party hears.

- The hold tone plays at the same volume as the earpiece volume.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Hold/On hold tone] ▶ [Set hold tone] ▶ select a hold tone.



To set Hold melody	[Hold melody 1]/[Hold melody 2]
To set after recording Voice memo	[Original] → [Record] → record → [Play] → select memo and press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press to abort recording.
To set recorded Stand-by Voice memo	[Original] → [Play] → select memo and press
To apply Function lock to Voice memo	[Original] → [Function lock] → enter terminal security code and press → [ON] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To disable Function lock: [OFF]

- To play back, select [Hold melody 1] or [Hold melody 2] and press . Press to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

Public Mode (Drive Mode)

Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service used to ensure manner in public places. When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating you are driving or otherwise unable to speak (on the train, bus, in a movie theater, and others) and the call is disconnected.

- Activating/Deactivating Public mode is only available in stand-by (Available even when (Out of service area) is showing on the screen).
- Calls can be made normally in Public mode.
- This function is not available during data transmissions.
- A message requesting caller ID is played when [User unset] calls are received while Caller ID Request is set to "Activate" (The Public mode message is not played).

1 In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds.



- Public mode is set and appears.
- A message stating the owner of the phone is driving or is in a place that does not allow mobile phone use is played to the other party.
- If Manner mode is also set, Public mode setting is prioritized.

Disabling Public Mode (Drive Mode)

1 In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds.







- Public mode is disabled and disappears.

When Public mode (Drive mode) is set

A ring tone does not sound when a voice/Videophone or PushTalk call is received.  (missed call) appears and the call is saved in Received calls ( P. 56).

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak and the call is disconnected. When a Videophone call is received, Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. If the handset is turned off or in a place with no signal, the guidance for outside service area plays.
- The FOMA terminal will not vibrate when i-mode mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received even if Vibration mode is set. Although a ring tone does not sound, the message is received automatically, and received mail icon appears. When Area Mail is received, beep tone, vibrator and called LED do not activate.
- When data transmission is received, vibrator, ring tone and called LED do not activate.
- An incoming PushTalk is automatically disconnected and [Connection failed] appears on the caller's display. Driving mode status can be notified to all connecting members if 3+ people have participated.
- If Location provision is set to [許可] (Always allow) for usage settings of each service when location information provision, supported by GPS function, is requested, a confirmation screen for location provision is displayed, the GPS positioning screen appears, and the location is provided after GPS positioning. However, Location provision/accept, Location provision/notify, vibrator or called LED does not operate. When Location provision is set to [毎回確認] (Always choose) for usage settings of each service, location information is not provided.

When a call is received while Public mode (Drive mode) and various services are set

Service	When a voice call is received	When a Videophone call is received
Voice Mail Service ( P. 430)	A ring tone does not sound, a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak plays, and the caller is connected to the Voice Mail Service center. The call is saved in Received calls. ^{*1}	Public mode video guidance is not played to the other party and is connected to the Voice Mail Service center.
Call Forwarding Service ( P. 433)	The call is not connected, a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak plays, and the call is forwarded to the set destination. The call is saved in Received calls. ^{*2}	The call is not connected and forwarded immediately. However, if the forwarding number is not a 3G-324M ( P. 50) compliant Videophone, the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls.
Call Waiting ( P. 432)	A ring tone does not sound and the caller hears a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls.	A ring tone does not sound. The Call Rejection video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls.
Nuisance Call Barring Service (when a call is received from a barred number) ( P. 435)	The call is not connected, call rejection message is played to the other party and the call ends. The call is not saved in Received calls.	The Call Rejection video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is not saved in Received calls.
Caller ID Request Service ( P. 436)	When the caller ID is not sent	The call is not connected, caller ID request message plays and the call ends. The call is not saved in Received calls.
	When the caller ID is sent	A ring tone does not sound and the caller hears a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls.
		The Caller ID request video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is not saved in Received calls.
		The Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls.

*1 The message is not heard when Voice Mail Service ring time is set to [0 seconds] and the call is immediately connected to the center. The call is not saved in Received calls.

*2 The message is not heard when Call Forwarding Service ring time is set to [0 seconds] and the call is immediately connected to the destination. The call is not saved in Received calls.

Note

- Even if the alarm time arrives in Public mode, the alarm does not sound. Called LED and vibrator are not activated.

Using Public Mode (Power OFF)

Public mode (power OFF) is an automatic answering service used to ensure manner in public places. Set Public mode (power OFF) to play a message for the caller indicating that the power is off and you are unable to speak (in a hospital, airplane, train near the priority seats), and the call ends.

1 In stand-by, press ✕ 2 5 2 5 1 ▶ ↻.

- Public mode (power OFF) is set (Nothing changes in stand-by).
- When a call is received while Public mode (power OFF) is set, a message indicating that the owner of the phone is currently in a place that does not allow mobile phone use is played.

Disabling Public mode (power OFF)

1 In stand-by, press ✕ 2 5 2 5 0 ▶ ↻.

- Public mode (power OFF) is disabled.

Checking Public mode (power OFF) setting

1 In stand-by, press ✕ 2 5 2 5 9 ▶ ↻.

- Check the current setting.

When Public mode (power OFF) is set

Public mode (power OFF) remains set until disabled. Setting is not canceled when the power is turned ON. The Public mode (power OFF) message is played when the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. When a call is received, a message indicating that the owner of the phone is in a place that does not allow mobile phone use is played and the call is disconnected. An incoming PushTalk is automatically disconnected and [Connection failed] appears on the caller's display. Members are notified that the owner of the phone is not a participant in the call when 3+ people have participated.

When a call is received while Public mode (power OFF) and various services are set


Service		When a voice call is received	When a Videophone call is received
Voice Mail Service (☎ P. 430)		A message stating the owner of the phone is in a location in which the handset must be turned off is played and the call is automatically connected to the Voice Mail Service center. ^{*1}	The Public mode video guidance is not played to the other party and is connected to the Voice Mail Service center.
Call Forwarding Service (☎ P. 433)		A message stating that the owner of the phone is in a location in which the handset must be turned off is played and the call is forwarded to the set destination. The Public mode (power OFF) guidance setting follows Call Forwarding Service guidance settings (☎ P. 434). ^{*2}	The call is immediately forwarded without playing the Public mode (power OFF) video guidance. If the destination does not support Videophone calls, the call is disconnected without forwarding.
Nuisance Call Barring Service (when a call is received from a barred number) (☎ P. 435)		The Call Rejection guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected.	The Call Rejection video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service (☎ P. 436)	When the caller ID is not sent	The Caller ID request message is played and the call is disconnected.	The Caller ID request video guidance is played and the call is disconnected.
	When the caller ID is sent	The Public mode (power OFF) message is played and the call is disconnected.	The Public mode (power OFF) video guidance is played and the call is disconnected.



^{*1} The message is not heard when Voice Mail Service ring time is set to [0 seconds] and the call is immediately connected to the center. The call is not saved in Received calls.

^{*2} The message is not heard when Call Forwarding Service ring time is set to [0 seconds] and the call is immediately connected to the destination. The call is not saved in Received calls.

Missed Calls




Checking Missed Calls

If an incoming call is not answered,  (missed call) and the number of missed calls appear in the stand-by display (Missed Calls).


- If  is pressed for 1+ seconds when missed calls are checked or [xx missed call(s)] is shown in stand-by, the stock icon disappears.
- Missed calls are also indicated by called LED ( P. 138).

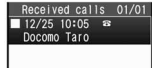


1 When appears in stand-by, press .

- Alternatively, press  () to check Received calls ( P. 56).

2 Select (missed call).

-  appears next to missed calls.



Received calls list

3 Select a phone number.

- Missed call details appear.
- Use the same operations as Received calls to make calls and check other entries in Received calls.

Record Message (Voice/Videophone Calls)

Recording Messages When Calls Cannot Be Answered

Set Record message to record messages when a call cannot be answered. When a voice call is received, a voice message is played and the caller's message is recorded. When a Videophone call is received, a reply image is sent and the caller's message and image are recorded.





- Record message is not available when the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area. This function is convenient when used in conjunction with Voice Mail Service.
- Record up to three Record messages for voice calls (about 15 seconds each). Voice memos recorded during a voice call or in stand-by are also included in these three Record messages for voice calls.
- Record up to two Record messages for Videophone calls (about 15 seconds each).
- The number of recorded message icons appearing in stand-by is the total number of Record messages (voice/Videophone calls) and Voice memo.
- Record message cannot be set/disabled in Manner mode.

Setting Record Message (Voice/Videophone Calls)

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Phone settings]** **[Record message]** **[Record message]** **[ON]**.

Record message




- Record message is set and  appears in the upper part of the display.
- When a message is recorded, an icon appears to show the number of messages. Example:  (for one message),  (for two messages), and others.
- When there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (Videophone),  appears and Record message does not respond when a voice/Videophone call is received. Delete unnecessary messages to reactivate Record message.

Note

- For **Voice Mail Service**, record up to 20 messages of up to 3 minutes each. When Voice Mail Service is set, messages are saved at the Voice Mail Service center even if there are three Record messages (voice calls) or two Record messages (Videophone).
- Refer to P. 77 for details on playing and deleting Record messages.
- When Record message is set by Record message settings or Manner mode settings, Record message will automatically answer.
- The reply image for Record messages for Videophone can be set in **Videophone reply image**.

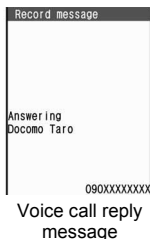
Disabling Record message




1 In stand-by, press [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Record message] ▶ [Record message] ▶ [OFF].

- Record message is disabled and  in the upper part of the display disappears.

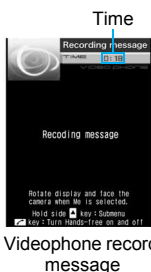
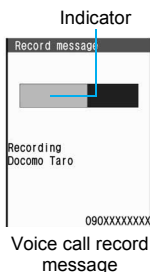
When Record Message (Voice/Videophone Calls) Is Set

1 When a call is received, Record message is activated after set answering duration (P. 76).



- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a voice guidance.
- When a Videophone call is received, after [Preparing message. Please wait] appears, the reply image for Record message (Videophone) appears. When a Videophone call is received, the caller hears a reply message and sees a reply image.
- Press  to answer a call while playing a reply message, recording sounds or movies. Press  or press  for 1+ seconds to answer a Videophone call with a substitute image sent.

2 Record the caller's message.



- The caller hears a beep when recording starts.
- Indicator and time are estimates.
- After the message is recorded, the previous screen reappears.
- While a message is recorded (voice call), the caller's voice can be heard through the earpiece. When Manner mode is set, caller's voice cannot be heard through the earpiece.
- While a message is recorded (Videophone), the other party's image does not appear on the screen but is recorded.
- Record message (voice call) may not be saved if 3 seconds or less.
- When a call is answered while a message is being recorded, the voice or Videophone message is recorded until the call is received.

Note

- Saved contents may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. It is recommended that a memo be kept of contents for Record message (voice/Videophone calls).
- Recording may be cut off depending on signal strength.
- While Record message is activated (Videophone) or a Videophone message is recorded, the reply image set on your FOMA terminal is sent to the other party with [Msg answering] or [Recording message] superimposed.
- During recording, another call cannot be answered. The other party hears a busy signal.
- Message that indicates Record message cannot be recorded.
- Record message is not available when **Public mode (Drive mode)** is set.

Related Operations

Set the message response time <Answering duration>

In stand-by, press **[M]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Record message]** ▶ **[Answering duration]** ▶ enter answering duration (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) and press **[M]**.

- To set response time for Record message immediately started: Enter [000 seconds].

Set reply messages <Reply message>

1 In stand-by, press **[M]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Record message]** ▶ **[Reply message]**.

2 Select the type of messages.

- To record original message: Select [Original] ▶ [Record] ▶ record ▶ [Play] ▶ select memo and press **[M]**.
- To set original message: Select [Original] ▶ [Play] ▶ select memo and press **[M]**.
- To play/stop message: Press **[M]**.

Set the reply image for Videophone Record message <V.phone reply image>

In stand-by, press **[M]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Record message]** ▶ **[V.phone reply image]** ▶ select folder ▶ select still picture and press **[M]**.

- To check the still picture: Select still picture.

Note

Answering duration

- Answering duration applies to Record messages for both voice calls and Videophone calls.
- Cannot be set to the same time as **Auto answer setting**.
- When Record message is set simultaneously with **Voice Mail Service** or **Call Forwarding Service**, the priority will depend on the set ringing time.
To prioritize Record message, set answering duration shorter than for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

Reply message

- [Reply message 1] and [Reply msg 2(Eng)] are preset.
Reply message 1 ただいま電話に出ることができません。ピーツという発信音のあとに、お名前とご用件をお話してください。
Reply message 2 (Eng) I can't take your call now. Please leave your message, thank you.
- Returns to default setting when original reply message is deleted (☞ P. 77).
- Press **[M]** to abort recording.

Videophone reply image

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of **Data box** that are set to **QCIF: 176×144**. However, animated GIFs are not available.
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.

Quick Message

Recording Messages When Incoming Calls Cannot Be Answered

Record a message for an incoming voice/Videophone call when Record message is not set.

1 During an incoming call, press **[7]** for 1+ seconds.

- Alternatively, press **[M]** and select [Record message] during an incoming voice call. Recording starts after a voice guidance is played.
- During an incoming Videophone call, press **[M]** and select [Record message] as an alternative. After [Preparing message. Please wait] appears, the reply image for Record message (Videophone) appears and recording starts.
- Refer to P. 74 for details on Record messages.

Playing/Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

Play or delete Recorded messages and Voice memos (during call and in stand-by).

Playing Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

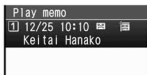
The playback volume follows the Earpiece volume (P. 69) settings.

- Refer to P. 412 for details on recording Voice memos.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Voice memo/Rec msg] ▶ [Play].



Memo menu screen



Memo list

- Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds in stand-by and select [Play].

When (message) appears

- In stand-by, press , select and select [Play].
- appears next to memos that have not been played.

Types of message/memo

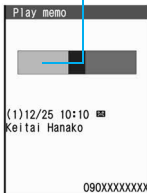
	Record message
	Voice memo during call
	Voice memo in stand-by

Phone type

No icon	Voice call
	Videophone call

2 Select memo.

Indicator



Record message for voice calls

- The indicator is an estimate.
- Name and number do not appear for User unset calls and Voice memos in stand-by.
- Press to stop playback. Memo list appears, press again to play from the beginning during playback. Select a memo to play other memos during playback.
- Playback of Recorded messages and Voice memos automatically stops when a call is received.
- Playback of Recorded messages and Voice memos automatically stops when alarm sounds at alarm time.
- When Show received calls is set to [OFF], the memo list does not appear and Recorded messages and Voice memos cannot be played/deleted.

Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

1 In memo list (P. 77), select a memo and press ▶ select deletion method.

To Delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To Delete all	[Delete all] → [Yes]

Related Operations

Lock Recorded message and Voice memo <Function lock>

In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Voice memo/Rec msg] ▶ [Function lock] ▶ enter terminal security code and press ▶ [ON].

Chara-den

- Refer to P. 330 for details on Chara-den.

Sending Chara-den as Substitute Image <Change Send Img>

During a Videophone call, select a Chara-den to send to the other party.

- Set the Chara-den to send in advance (☎ P. 81).

1 During a Videophone call, press  **[Change send img]** **[Chara-den]** **select a folder** **select Chara-den and press**  **(OK).**

Note

- When DTMF mode is set to [ON], the Chara-den key operations become unavailable because of the **touch-tone signals** sent with the dial keys.
- To switch to [テレビ電話代替], delete [キャラ(女性)] and perform **Reset settings**.

Preset Chara-den

■ キャラ (女性) Woman

This character is a Japanese businesswoman. She can perform a variety of actions such as expressing happiness and distress, waving her hands and tilting her head.



Full-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
①	喜ぶ (Happy)
②	怒る (Angry)
③	哀しむ (Sad)
④	投げキッス (Blow a kiss)
⑤	驚く (Surprised)
⑥	ゴメン (Apology)
⑦	恥ずかしー (Embarrassed)
⑧	ずっこけ (Whoa ho ho!)
⑨	バーン! (Bang!)

Part-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
①①	(右腕) 手を振る (ループ) (Wave right hand (loop))
①②	(左腕) 手を振る (ループ) (Wave left hand (loop))
①③	(顔) うなづく (Nod head)
①④	(右腕) おいでおいで (ループ) (Beckon with right hand (loop))
①⑤	(左腕) おいでおいで (ループ) (Beckon with left hand (loop))
①⑥	(顔) 左右ブルブル (Shake head sideways)
①⑦	(顔) 右に傾ける (Tilt head to the right)
①⑧	(顔) 左に傾ける (Tilt head to the left)

- Press **0** to abort action.

■ キャラ (男性) Man

This character is a Japanese businessman. He can perform a variety of actions such as nodding his head, laughing and raising his hands.



Full-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
①	うなづく (Nod head)
②	笑う (Laugh)
③	怒る (Angry)
④	驚く (Surprised)
⑤	悩む (Worried)
⑥	携帯電話 (Mobile phone)
⑦	決めポーズ (Last posing)



Part-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
①①	右手を上げる (Raise right hand)
④④	右手を下げる (Put right hand down)
③③	左手を上げる (Raise left hand)
⑥⑥	左手を下げる (Put left hand down)
⑧⑧	通常ズーム (Normal zoom in)
⑨⑨	ズームアップ (Zoom in)

- Press **0** to abort action.

Switching Chara-den During a Videophone Call <Change Chara-den>

Switch to send a different Chara-den during a Videophone call.



- 1 While sending Chara-den as a substitute image, press  ▶ [Chara-den set] ▶ [Change Chara-den] ▶ select a folder ▶ select Chara-den and press  (OK).

Switching Between Full-action and Part-action <Change Action>

Switch between full-action and part-action while displaying Chara-den.

- 1 While sending Chara-den as a substitute image, press  ▶ [Chara-den set] ▶ [Change action].
 - Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds to switch.
 - Modes are switched between full-action and part-action.




Making Chara-den Perform Actions

- Alternatively, enter the action number by pressing  to  to have the character perform an action.
- For preset Chara-den actions, refer to P. 78.
- In Full-action mode, express emotions such as [笑う] (laughing) and [怒る] (angry).
- Change to Part-action mode to move body parts, jump and dance.
- Perform different actions together in Part-action mode.
- Some Chara-den move the mouths, synchronizing with sound from a microphone.
- For others, actions may not be available.
- Depending on the Chara-den, some actions are performed automatically.

- 1 While sending Chara-den as a substitute image, press  ▶ [Chara-den set] ▶ [Action list].



- Alternatively, press  (Action list) or  for 1+ seconds to display the action list.

To perform action	Select an action <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To end action: 
To display details	 (or press  for 1+ seconds)

Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party



Changing Image to Send During Call <Change Send Img>



Change the image to send during a Videophone call.

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to **QCIF: 176×144**. However, animated GIFs are not available.
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available. Images shot with the FOMA terminal are available regardless of File restriction (Picture memos shot during Videophone calls are not available).
- Still pictures saved onto a microSD Memory Card are not available directly. Copy to the [Acquired data] folder in My picture of the FOMA terminal handset.

1 During a Videophone call, press ▶ [Change send img] ▶ select image to send.










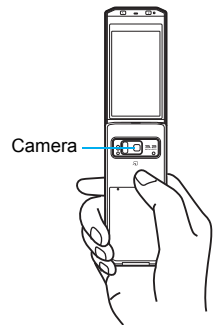
Camera image	[My side]
Substitute image	[Substitute image] → select folder → select still picture and press 
Chara-den	[Chara-den] → select folder → select Chara-den and press 

- If the display is rotated in the normal position while sending substitute image, the display is switched to camera image and the image is sent.
- Press  or press  for 1+ seconds to switch between camera image and substitute image and send.
- This setting is disabled when a Videophone call ends.


When making a Videophone call while viewing each other's face

To send your face image to the other party, rotate the display to make the camera face you.

- Press  (Eco) for 1+ seconds, select an item with  (Eco)/ and press  to operate Submenu. Press  to return.
 - Some screens cannot be operated using the side key.
- ※ When Hands-free is deactivated in this condition, the sound from the mouthpiece and the earpiece becomes silent. During a call, use a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) ( P. 415) or Hands-free ( P. 82) (same for a voice call).



Note

- If the battery level is  or less or if the camera area gets hotter when switch from send image to camera image, [Camera function is not available now] appears. The camera becomes unavailable and switch to substitute image.

Related Operations



Zoom in and zoom out <Zoom in/Zoom out>

1 While sending a camera image, press  or .

2 Press  (zoom in) or  (zoom out).

- Press  for the maximum zoom and  for the minimum zoom.

Send a still picture from Data box <File playback>

During a Videophone call, press  ▶ [Change send img] ▶ [File playback] ▶ select folder ▶ select still picture and press .

Related Operations

Adjust brightness <Brightness>

While sending a camera image, press (brighter) for 1+ seconds or (darker) for 1+ seconds.

Note

Zoom in/Zoom out

- Set up to 22 zoom levels.
- Zoom is not available while substitute images are being sent.
- Zoom is not available for the other party's image.
- When a Videophone call ends, zoom is disabled.

Brightness

- , , , , or appears in the upper part of the display.
- Brightness is reset after a Videophone call ends.
- Brightness cannot be adjusted while a substitute image is being sent.

Changing Image When Making a Call <V.phone Image>

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number and press ▶ [V.phone image] ▶ select the image to send.

- To call from the redial details/received calls/phonebook entry details screen, press and select [V.phone image].
- The setting is only enabled for one time.

Camera image	[My side] ● Refer to P. 80 on sending your own image.
Chara-den	[Chara-den] → select folder → select Chara-den and press ● To check Chara-den, select Chara-den and press (Agree). Press and the previous screen reappears.

Setting a Substitute Image <Substitute Image>

Set a still picture or Chara-den (P. 330) as the substitute image during a Videophone call.

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to **QCIF: 176×144**. However, animated GIFs are not available.
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Set sending image] ▶ [Substitute image] ▶ select a substitute image.



Substitute image	[Substitute image] → select folder → select still picture and press
Chara-den	[Chara-den] → select folder → select Chara-den and press

- To check image, select an image and press (Agree). Press and the previous screen reappears.

Note

- While sending a still picture as substitute image, the still picture is sent to the other party with [Camera Off] superimposed. If **Chara-den** is set, [Camera Off] does not appear.
- Substitute images are sent in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	Set substitute image in the phonebook → Set substitute image in the Videophone setting

Related Operations

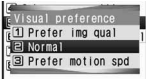
Change On hold and Hold images <On hold image/Hold image>


- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Set sending image].
- 2 Select [On hold image]/[Hold image].
- 3 Select folder ▶ select image and press .

Setting Outgoing Image Quality <Visual Preference>

Set the quality of the camera image sent during a Videophone call.

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Visual preference] ▶ select an image quality.



- To set during a Videophone call, press  and select [Videophone set] → [Visual preference] (When a Videophone call is ended to clear, the image quality returns to the quality set in stand-by).

Prefer img qual	To place emphasis on shape and color
Normal	To create a balance of clarity and movement
Prefer motion spd	To place emphasis on movement

Note

- Image quality settings for the sender and receiver during a Videophone call differ.

Hands-free V.phone

Setting Hands-free Videophone



Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free for Videophone calls. When Hands-free is set, hear the other party's voice through the speaker and talk while viewing their image.

- Please use in a place where it will not disturb others.
- Speak from approximately 20 to 40 cm away from the mouthpiece. When the surroundings are noisy, sound may break up and the call may not be satisfactory.

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Hands-free V.phone] ▶ [ON]/[OFF].

Activating/Deactivating Hands-free During a Call

- 1 During a Videophone call, press .

- Press  to activate/deactivate the Hands-free.
-  appears during the Hands-free operation.

Note

- When using Hands-free outdoors or in a location where surroundings are noisy, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).
- If sound breaks up during a Hands-free call, lower [Earpiece volume](#).

Setting the Image During Videophone Calls

Change the image displayed during Videophone calls.

- Set the following items.

Item	Setting details	Page
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of camera image in five levels.	P. 81
Display setting	Changes both party's display method.	P. 83
Subscreen disp	Sets the location of the subscreen.	P. 83
Lighting	Sets the light duration for the display for a Videophone call.	P. 84
Pause camera	Pauses the camera to send the camera image.	P. 84

Setting the Videophone Display <Display setting>

- Videophone display settings remain even after a Videophone call ends.
- Select from the following four settings.



Show me small



Other



Show me big



Me

1 During a Videophone call, press ▶ [Videophone] ▶ [Display setting].

- Alternatively, press in stand-by and select [Settings] → [Phone settings] → [Videophone set].

2 Select a display method.

Setting the Videophone Subscreen <Subscreen disp>

- If the subscreen is set to [Lower right], the call duration, brightness and sent/received image icons appear on the lower left.
- The subscreen position setting remains even after a Videophone call ends.
- Select from the following two settings.



Upper left



Lower right

1 During a Videophone call, press ▶ [Videophone] ▶ [Subscreen disp].

- Alternatively, press in stand-by and select [Settings] → [Phone settings] → [Videophone set] → [Subscreen position].





2 Select a display location.

Related Operations

Set light <Lighting>

- 1 **During a Videophone call, press**  **▶ [Videophone] ▶ [Lighting].**
 - In stand-by: Press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Light/Power saver] ▶ [Original Eco mode] ▶ [Display light time] ▶ [Video-phone].
- 2 **Select [Same as normal]/[Always ON].**

Pause the camera to send the camera image <Pause camera>

- Send the camera image with a Videophone call and press**  **during the call ▶ [Change send img] ▶ [Pause camera].**
- To undo: Press  / [CLR] /  (P*) (or press  for 1+ seconds).

Note

Lighting

- If [Same as normal] is set, the duration is what was set by normal of **Display light time**.
- Note that increasing light duration shortens the continuous stand-by time.
- The setting for Lighting remains even after a Videophone call ends.

Pausing camera

- Paused camera image can be sent.
- While substitute image is being sent, Pause camera is not available.
- While paused, your image is sent to the other party with [Stopped] superimposed.
- Pause camera is reset after a Videophone call ends.

Changing Videophone Settings

Redialing as Voice Call Automatically <Redial Voice Call>

When a Videophone call is not connected, the call is automatically switched to the voice call and made again.

- 1 **In stand-by, press**  **▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Redial voice call] ▶ [ON].**

- If Videophone communication is started, Redial voice call is not performed.

Note

- If a call is redialed as a voice call, voice call charges are incurred.
- Note that Redial voice call may not work if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or an ISDN Videophone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (P. 50) (as of October 2007), or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.

Notify Switch Mode

Setting to Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone

This setting lets the other party know whether the FOMA terminal can be switched between voice call and Videophone.

- When Notify switch mode is set to "Deactivate", the other party cannot switch the call.
- Notify switch mode cannot be changed during voice calls, Videophone calls or outside the service area.

- 1 **In stand-by, press**  **▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Notify switch mode] ▶ select the notify setting.**

To activate	[Indication ON] → [Yes]
To stop	[Indication OFF] → [Yes]
To check settings	[Check Indication]

Selecting Actions for Incoming Videophone Calls During i-mode

- Videophone calls, during PushTalk transmission, Software update, Pattern definitions update or data transmission using packet transmission, are rejected.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Videophone set]** ▶ **[V-phone while packet]** ▶ select an arrival action.

V-phone priority	Answers incoming Videophone calls.
Packet priority	Rejects incoming Videophone calls.
Voice mail	Automatically connects to Voice Mail Service.
Call forwarding	Automatically connects to Call Forwarding Service.

- [V-phone priority] setting does not automatically end packet transmission unless the Videophone is answered (The packet transmission is disconnected when the call is answered).
- To set to [Voice mail] or [Call forwarding], registration for the respective service is required. If [Voice mail] or [Call forwarding] is set without subscription, a Videophone call is set to [Packet priority].

Picture Memo

Saving Other Party's Image as a Still Picture

During a Videophone call, take a still picture of the other party.

- When Display Setting is set to [Me], Picture memo cannot be selected.
- The shot size applicable to still picture is **QCIF: 176×144**.

1 During a Videophone call, press  ▶ **[Picture memo]** ▶  (.

- While still pictures are being shot, your image is sent to the other party with [Recording] superimposed.
- Shutter does not sound.
- The still picture is recorded and [Saving] appears.
- The picture is saved to the [Camera] folder in My picture of Data box.
- The picture cannot be output from the FOMA terminal.

PushTalk

● PushTalk . . . . .	.88
● Sending PushTalk Transmissions . . . . .	.89
● Adding a Member During PushTalk Transmission	<Add Member>90
● Receiving PushTalk Transmissions . . . . .	.91
● Adding to PushTalk Phonebook	<Add to PushTalk PB>92
● Using PushTalk Phonebook to Send PushTalk Transmissions . . . . .	.94
● Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries . . . . .	.96
● Setting PushTalk Send/Receive Options	<Set PushTalk>97

PushTalk

Press the PushTalk key, recall PushTalk phonebook entries, select the other party, and press the PushTalk key again to easily communicate with multiple people at once (up to five including yourself). Transmission fees are incurred each time the key is pressed (transmission is sent).

- Refer to DoCoMo's web site or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]" for details and compatible models of PushTalk.

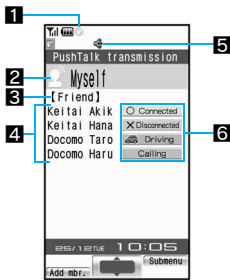
PushTalkPlus*

PushTalkPlus is a service to access a phonebook saved on the network and to communicate with up to 20 people (including yourself) at once. In addition, enjoy other useful functions such as checking the status of other members with more convenient use than PushTalk.

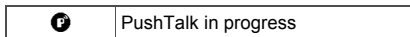
- Refer to the PushTalkPlus guide provided at the time of subscription for details of the service.

* Subscription is required.

PushTalk Transmission Screen Layout



1 PushTalk icon



2 Speaker's name: Name of the person who is currently speaking (Phone number when not saved in phonebook)

Myself: When you are the speaker (have the right to speak)

No display: Nobody is speaking

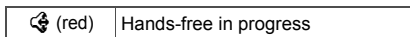
?: When the speaker is not identified

Name appears if saved in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Image also appears if phonebook Picture call is set. If the call is transmitted from PushTalkPlus, the name saved in the network phonebook appears, and the image does not appear even if Picture call is set.

3 Group name: Group name saved in the PushTalk phonebook or the network phonebook appears.

4 Members: Name appears if saved in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook. If the call is transmitted from PushTalkPlus, the name saved in the network phonebook appears. Phone number appears for unregistered participants.

5 Hands-free icon



6 Status of members: Transmission status of each member is shown. When a status changes while connected, a tone indicating that the user is connected or disconnected (leaving PushTalk) sounds and the status shown changes.

- Scroll bar appears when all members cannot be shown on the screen at once. Scroll with to view members.

Connected: Participating in PushTalk.

Disconnected*: No reply, the other party has ended PushTalk, the other party is out of the service area, or the other party has power turned off.

Driving*: The other party has Public mode (Drive mode) set.

Calling*: Ringing the other party.



* Appears only when PushTalk transmission is in progress with three or more participants.

Note






- In the screen while making, receiving or during the PushTalk, the TOUCH CRUISER pad is not available. However, when the Submenu appears, the pad can be operated.

Sending PushTalk Transmissions

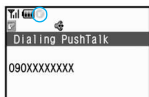
Use packet transmissions and press the PushTalk button to communicate easily. Have conversation one on one or with multiple people.

- Only one person can speak at once. Press  (P) to get the right to speak.
- Voice can only be transmitted when granted the right to speak. When granted the right to speak, other people's voices are inaudible.
- PushTalk charges are incurred for the caller while  (P) is pressed and right to speak is being granted.
- Save PushTalk phonebook entries to easily communicate with those members.
- PushTalk and PushTalkPlus cannot be used with the Number B of 2in1.






1 In stand-by, dial the phone number.

- Alternatively, use one of the following methods.
 - From the PushTalk phonebook ( P. 94)
 - From the phonebook ( P. 109)
 - From Redial ( P. 55)
 - From Received calls ( P. 56)
 - Using Phone To function ( P. 195)



2 Press (P).




PushTalk dialing screen

-  flashes at the upper left of the display while dialing.
- When the other party replies, a tone indicating that the user is connected sounds,  lights and the PushTalk transmission screen appears.
- To activate/deactivate the Hands-free, press  or . Activating/Deactivating the Hands-free is not available while  (P) is pressed.


3 Press (P) when speaker's name is blank ▶ [Myself] appears ▶ speak while pressing (P).

- A right-obtained tone sounds when the right to speak is granted and [Myself] is shown for the speaker's name.
- An error tone sounds if  (P) is pressed while another person is speaking.
- Release  (P) when finished speaking. A right-released tone sounds.

4 Press to end the transmissions.

- When the FOMA terminal is closed or in the viewer position, press  (E) for 1+ seconds.
- The number of times the right to speak was granted is shown and the stand-by display reappears.

Note

- PushTalk calls cannot be made to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118).
- Even if the transmission of some members (including sender) is disconnected, other members can continue PushTalk transmission.
- There is a time limit when speaking. If the right to speak keeps obtained for a set time, a tone indicating that the speaking time is over sounds and the right to speak is terminated.
- PushTalk is not available during voice calls, Videophone calls, and data transmission.
- i-mode transmission is disconnected if PushTalk transmission is sent during i-mode.
- When [Set PushTalk arrival action](#) is set to [Answer], press  to end PushTalk transmission and answer voice calls received during PushTalk transmission.
- When a voice call is received while a hands-free call is in progress, hands-free is disabled if the voice call is answered.
- Voice/Videophone call or i-mode is not available during PushTalk transmission.
- PushTalk is automatically disconnected when no one speaks for a set amount of time.
- When the PushTalk sender has set the network service's [Notify caller ID](#) to "Send ID", phone numbers for the caller and all members are notified. If set to "No ID", [No ID] appears for the speaker and members fields on the handsets of all the members who received the transmission. The phone number is important personal information. Be careful when sending caller ID.
- Approximate number of times the right to speak was obtained appears when PushTalk transmission is ended. 999 is the maximum value that appears. When exceeded, [***] appears.
- During PushTalk transmission, i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at the i-mode center. After PushTalk transmission, i-mode mail or Message R/F held at the i-mode center can be retrieved by performing [Check new message](#). However, SMS are received automatically even during PushTalk transmission.

Related Operations

Send PushTalk transmissions from Received calls/Redial

In stand-by, press ► select Received calls and press (P).

In stand-by, press ► select Redial and press (P).

Adjust earpiece volume during PushTalk transmission

During PushTalk transmission, press /◀ ► .

- When the FOMA terminal is closed: Press (Eco)/◻.
- When in the viewer position: Press /◻.

Select Send own no. or No caller ID and send PushTalk transmissions

<Caller ID setting>

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number and press ► [Caller ID setting].

2 Select [Send own no.]/[No caller ID]/[As NW setting] ► (P).

Return to a PushTalk conversation with multiple members after disconnecting

When a PushTalk call is disconnected, or when a PushTalk call cannot be answered after the PushTalk transmissions with multiple members, the transmissions can only be rejoined by calling the member from the Received calls/Redial if the PushTalk transmissions are still in progress.

- If the PushTalk transmission has been ended, a new transmission is sent from you.

In stand-by, press ► select Received calls and press (P).

In stand-by, press ► select Redial and press (P).

Note

Send PushTalk transmissions from Received calls/Redial

- When the 2in1 is used, PushTalk is not available from Received calls/Redial of Number B.

Caller ID setting

- When Caller ID setting is set to [Send own no.], phone numbers for the caller and all members are notified. If set to [No caller ID], [No ID] appears for the speaker and member fields on the handsets of all the members.
- If Caller ID setting is set when PushTalk transmission is sent, it is prioritized than the network service's [Notify caller ID](#).
- When Caller ID setting is set to [As NW setting], a call is made according to the network service's Notify caller ID.

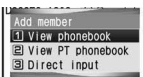
Add Member

Adding a Member During PushTalk Transmission

When a PushTalk sender is Myself, add a member during PushTalk transmission.

- When calling from PushTalkPlus, a member cannot be added.
- Even if a member is added during transmission, it is not recorded in Redial. It is not recorded in Received Calls on the other party's terminal that has been already in transmission.

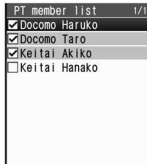
1 Press during PushTalk transmission ► [Add member].



- Alternatively, press (Add member) during PushTalk transmission to add a member.

2

Select an adding method and send the transmission.



When a member is selected from PushTalk phonebook

To select a member from phonebook	[View phonebook] → select a name
To select a member from PushTalk phonebook	[View PT phonebook] → select a name and press (repeatable) → (Dial)
To enter directly	[Direct input] → enter phone number and press (Dial)

- Add up to four members to send the transmissions as many times as necessary. When the transmissions are already sent to four members, re-calling a disconnected member is available, but a new member cannot be added.
- The number of members that can be added at once is up to five followed by the next conditions.
 - When a member is selected from the PushTalk phonebook: Three
 - When a member is selected from the phonebook or directly enter a number: One

Note

- When the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the other party's terminal may operate as follows.
 - When a member is added, the added member does not appear and a tone indicating that the member is connected does not sound.
 - When an added member speaks, [?] appears for the speaker field.
 - When an added member leaves PushTalk, a tone indicating that the member is disconnected does not sound.
- When a PushTalk sender has set the network service's **Notify caller ID** to "Send ID", the sender and all members' phone numbers are sent to all the members including the added members. If set to "No ID", [No ID] appears for the speaker and member fields on the handsets of all the members including the added members. However, when the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the added members do not appear on the other party's screen regardless of the caller ID setting.
- When **Function lock** is applied to the phonebook, a member cannot be added from the phonebook or PushTalk phonebook. Adding a member by direct input is not available while Keypad dial lock is set.
- When the **2in1** mode is set to [A mode], the entries saved in the phonebook whose **Phonebook 2in1 set** is set to [B] cannot be displayed.

Receiving PushTalk Transmissions

1 2

When PushTalk is received, ring tone sounds and called LED flashes.


Press (P) / .

- A PushTalk call can also be received with Any key answer (☞ P. 68).
- A call is answered with hands-free if the FOMA terminal is closed. The operation follows Hands-free PT when the FOMA terminal is open (☞ P. 98).
- at the upper left of the display lights and the PushTalk transmission screen appears.
- Transmission procedures are the same as for "Sending PushTalk Transmissions" on P. 89.
- Adjust the volume during PushTalk transmission (☞ P. 90).
- Refer to the following for key operations while receiving a call.




	When FOMA terminal is open	When FOMA terminal is closed	When in the viewer position
Disconnected		Press () for 1+ seconds	Press () for 1+ seconds
Quick silent (☞ P. 127)		(Eco)/ ()	()
Manner mode (☞ P. 127)	Press for 1+ seconds	Press for 1+ seconds	Press for 1+ seconds

3

Press to end the transmissions.

- When the FOMA terminal is closed or in the viewer position, press  for 1+ seconds.


Note

- When **Set auto answer** is set to [ON], received PushTalk calls are automatically answered with hands-free. However, calls are not answered automatically even if Set auto answer is set to [ON] while in **Manner mode**.
- PushTalk cannot be placed on hold.
- To accept/reject calls from specified callers, set **Accept calls**, **Reject calls**, and **Reject unknown**. The settings are common with voice/Videophone call. However, they are not applied to transmissions from the PushTalkPlus.
- PushTalk calls received during a voice/Videophone call or data transmission are not connected. During a voice call, the call is recorded in Received calls and  (missed call) appears in stand-by. During a Videophone call or data communication, the call is not recorded.
- When a Videophone call, 64K data communication, or different PushTalk call is received during PushTalk transmission, the call is recorded in Received calls and the PushTalk transmission is continued. When **Set PushTalk arrival action** is set to [Answer], press  to end PushTalk transmission and answer voice calls received during PushTalk transmission. If Set PushTalk arrival action is set to other than [Answer], the call is recorded in Received calls and the PushTalk transmission is continued.
- When **i-mode arrival action** is set to [PushTalk preferred], i-mode transmission is disconnected and PushTalk is connected if PushTalk is received during i-mode. When set to [i-mode preferred], PushTalk is not connected nor recorded in Received calls.
- When a PushTalk call is received while **Public mode (Drive mode)** is set and the handset is turned on, the call is not connected but is recorded in Received calls and  (missed call) appears in stand-by. [Driving] appears for the status on the other member's transmission screen. The message does not appear if the other party is one person.

Add to PushTalk PB





Adding to PushTalk Phonebook

Entries saved to the PushTalk phonebook are also saved to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

Save entry to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook and save the name, reading and one phone number to the PushTalk phonebook. Save entries already saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook. Up to 1,000 entries can be saved in the PushTalk phonebook ( P. 100).

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], saving to the PushTalk phonebook is not available.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the entries saved in the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B] cannot be saved in the PushTalk phonebook.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [A mode], the entries saved in the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B] cannot be displayed.

Entry items

Icon	Item	Details
	Name	Enter name. Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters.
	Reading	Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited. Enter up to 32 single-byte characters.
	PushTalk group	Save the entry to a PushTalk group. Groups 1 to 9 are available. Group names can be changed.
	PushTalk phone number	Save phone number for PushTalk.

1

In stand-by, press  (P)   in the PushTalk member list screen ( P. 93)  [New].

- When the PushTalk group list screen appears, press  (Member).

2

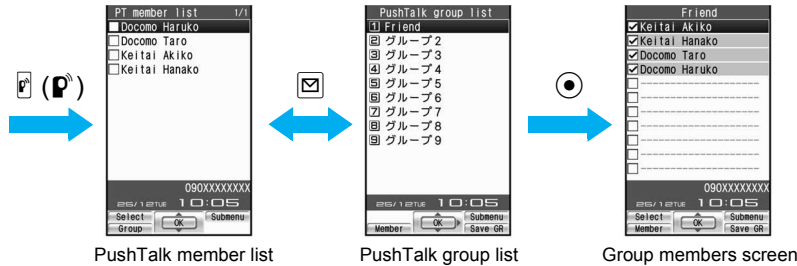
Select a saving method ▶ save phonebook entry.

To select from phonebook	[View phonebook] → select name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When multiple phone numbers are saved, select a name, press (Agree) and select a phone number to use for PushTalk.
To enter directly	[Direct input] → enter name and press → enter phone number and press → select phone number type icon → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> FOMA terminal handset phonebook name entry screen appears. Refer to P. 100 “Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook” for details on saving methods. When multiple phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use for PushTalk after saving to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

PushTalk phonebook

Select a group from the PushTalk group list or select members from the PushTalk member list to send a transmission to the members saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

Press (Member)/ (Group) to switch between the PushTalk group list screen and the PushTalk member list screen.



Registering to PushTalk Group

Set groups in the PushTalk phonebook to easily call all members of a PushTalk group.

- Save up to 19 members per group. Up to four people can be called simultaneously.
- Set up to nine groups. Also, editing group names is available.

Creating a new PushTalk group <New group>

To create a new group, delete an already registered group from [グループ 1] to [グループ 9] in advance (P. 96).

1

In the PushTalk member list screen/the PushTalk group list screen (P. 93), press ▶ [Set PushTalk group].

2

Select [New group] ▶ enter PushTalk group name and press .

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a PushTalk group name.

Related Operations

Edit PushTalk group name <Edit group name>

- In PushTalk member list screen, press ▶ [Set PushTalk group] ▶ [Edit group name] ▶ select group.
 - In the PushTalk group list screen: Select group and press ▶ [Set PushTalk group] ▶ [Edit group name].
- Edit group name and press .

■ Registering to PushTalk group <Add PushTalk group>

Save PushTalk phonebook entries that are already saved as PushTalk members.

1 In the PushTalk member list screen (☎ P. 93), select name and press  (Select).

- Repeat step 1 to select multiple members.
- When nothing is checked, only the entry at the position of the cursor is selected.




2 Press  ▶ [Add PushTalk group].

3 Select PushTalk group ▶ select location to save to.

- If the selected location already has a member saved, the member is overwritten. The same phone number cannot be saved more than once to the same group.
- Selecting a save location is not necessary if multiple members are selected in step 1.

Related Operations

Register to PushTalk group from PushTalk group list <Add PushTalk group>

- 1** In the PushTalk group list screen, select group and press  ▶ [Set PushTalk group] ▶ [Add PushTalk group].
 - In the group member screen: Press  ▶ [Set PushTalk group] ▶ [Add PushTalk group].
- 2** Select member (repeatable) ▶ .

■ Editing PushTalk phonebook entries <Edit data>

Change phone numbers and groups of saved PushTalk phonebook entries.

1 In the PushTalk member list screen (☎ P. 93), select name and press  ▶ [Edit data].

2 Select an item ▶ edit.

- To change phone numbers, select a phone number and select other phone numbers saved to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry.
- To change the group to save, select in order of the group to be changed, the group to change and the save list.
- To add and save to other groups, select [No groups] → select the group to save, and select the save list.

3 Press  (Complete) ▶ [Yes].

Using PushTalk Phonebook to Send PushTalk Transmissions

Send PushTalk transmissions from the PushTalk phonebook. Save members in the PushTalk phonebook in advance.

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], the PushTalk phonebook cannot be used.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B] cannot be used.

Sending from PushTalk groups

- Transmit to up to four people at once.

1 In stand-by, press **[P]** ▶ select the other party.

- If a PushTalk member list screen appears, press **[G]** (Group).

To select group (to send PushTalk transmissions to all members of the group)	↺
To select multiple members from a group	Select group → select name and press [S] (repeatable) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> appears for selected and <input type="checkbox"/> appears for unselected entries. ● When nothing is checked, only the party at the position of the cursor is selected.

2 Press **[P]**.

- Transmission procedures are the same as “Sending PushTalk Transmissions” on P. 89.
- When transmission is sent with five or more members saved in a group, [Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls] appears. Select up to four members and send transmission.

Selecting the other party and sending a transmission

Select the other party from the PushTalk member list screen and send a transmission.

1 In stand-by, press **[P]**.

- If the PushTalk group selection screen appears, press **[M]** (Member).

2 Select name and press **[S]** (Select).

- Repeat step 2 to select multiple members.
- Alternatively, enter reading to search. The cursor moves to the closest entry after each character is entered.

3 Press **[P]**.

Related Operations

Receive transmissions automatically <Set auto answer>

In the PushTalk member list screen, press **[M]** ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Set auto answer] ▶ [ON].

Set the ring duration <Ring time setting>

- 1 In the PushTalk member list screen, press **[M]** ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Ring time setting].
- 2 Enter duration of ring tone (two digits: 01 to 60 seconds) and press **[S]**.

Set the operation when the FOMA terminal is closed during PushTalk transmission

<Set when folded>

In the PushTalk member search screen, press **[M]** ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Set when folded].

- To end transmission: Select [Finish call].
- To play the other party's voice through the speakers: Select [Speaker phone].

Select Send own no. or No caller ID and send PushTalk transmissions

<Caller ID setting>

- 1 In the PushTalk member list screen, select a name and press **[M]** ▶ [Caller ID setting].
- 2 Select [Send own no.]/[No caller ID]/[As NW setting] ▶ **[P]**.

Note

Set auto answer

- When a call is received with Auto answer, the call is automatically switched to hands-free. Auto answer is not available while in Manner mode.
- The Set auto answer in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with the PushTalk in [Auto answer setting](#).

Related Operations

Note

Ring time setting

- When calls are not answered within the set duration in a transmission with multiple people, [Disconnected] appears on the other members' transmission screens.
- The Ring time setting in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with PT ring time set in [Ring time setting](#).
- Ring time setting cannot be selected when Set auto answer is set to [ON].

Set when folded

- Select to end the transmission or activate speakers when the FOMA terminal is closed.
- The Set when folded in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with the PushTalk in the [Set when folded](#).

Caller ID setting


- Refer to "Caller ID setting" on P. 90.

Network connection





- A [PushTalkPlus](#) subscription is required to use the network connection.

Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries

1 In the PushTalk member list screen (☞ P. 93), select a member and press [Delete].

- When the PushTalk group list screen appears, press  (Member).
- Member selection is not necessary for Delete all.

2 Select deletion method.


To delete one phonebook entry	[Delete one]
To delete entries collectively	[Delete selected] → select member (repeatable) →  ● Press  (SelAll)/  (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all PushTalk phonebook entries	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press 

3 Select a phonebook type to delete.

To delete PushTalk phonebook only	[PushTalk PB only] → [Yes]
To delete from FOMA terminal handset phonebook	[PushTalk & ord. PB] → [Yes] ● Entries are deleted from FOMA terminal handset phonebook and PushTalk phonebook.

Deleting PushTalk Groups <Delete>



1 In the PushTalk group list screen (☞ P. 93), select group and press [Delete].




- When the PushTalk member list screen appears, press  (Group).

2 Select a deletion method.

To delete one group	[Delete one group] → [Yes]
To delete all groups	[Delete all groups] → [Yes]

Deleting Members from PushTalk Groups <Delete from Group>

- 1** In the PushTalk group list screen (☎ P. 93), select group.
 - When the PushTalk member list screen appears, press  (Group).
- 2** Select member and press  ▶ [Delete from group] ▶ select a deletion method.

To delete one member	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete members collectively	[Delete selected] → select member (repeatable) →  → [Yes] ● Press  (SelAll)/  (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all members in group	[Del all in group] → [Yes]

Set PushTalk

Setting PushTalk Send/Receive Options


Set the following items.

Item	Setting details	Page
Ring time setting	Set the duration to sound the PushTalk ring tone.	P. 126
Set auto answer	Set whether to automatically answer PushTalk transmissions.	P. 417
Set PT arrival act	Set actions for voice calls received during PushTalk transmissions.	P. 97
i-mode arrival act	Set to receive/reject PushTalk transmissions received during i-mode transmissions.	P. 198
Hands-free PT	Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free when PushTalk transmissions start.	P. 98
Set when folded	Set [Finish call] or [Speaker phone] (other party's voice is heard through the speakers) to engage when the FOMA terminal is closed during a transmission.	P. 69
Set mute ring time	Set the number of seconds to delay the start of ring tone for calls from unknown callers and calls with no ID. This setting applies to both voice/Videophone calls.	P. 153
Reconnect signal	Set to automatically reconnect when a transmission is disconnected due to signal conditions. This setting is applied to both voice/Videophone calls.	P. 65

Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Transmission <Set PT Arrival Act>

Set actions for voice calls received during PushTalk transmissions.

- 1** In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Set PT arrival act] ▶ select an arrival action.

- Alternatively, press  in the PushTalk member list screen and select [Set PushTalk] → [Set PT arrival act].

Voice Mail	Automatically connect to Voice Mail Service.
Call Forwarding	Automatically connect to Call Forwarding Service.
Call Rejection	Reject calls.
Answer	Select to continue PushTalk transmission or end and answer the incoming voice call.


- To set to [Voice Mail] or [Call Forwarding], subscription to the respective service is required. If [Voice Mail] or [Call Forwarding] is set without subscription, a voice call is set to [Answer].

Setting PushTalk Hands-free Operation <Hands-free PT>

Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free when PushTalk transmissions start.

- The setting is switched to hands-free regardless of Hands-free PT if the FOMA terminal is closed.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Set PushTalk]** ▶ **[Hands-free PT]** ▶ **[ON]**.

- Alternatively, press  in the PushTalk member list screen and select [Set PushTalk] → [Hands-free PT].
- Select [OFF] to disable.

Note

- The setting cannot be switched to hands-free while in **Manner mode** even if Hands-free PT is set to [ON].

Phonebook

● Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal	100
● Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>	100
● Saving to FOMA Card Phonebook <Add to FOMA Card Phonebook>	106
● Setting Groups <Group Settings>	108
● Making Calls from Phonebook <Search Phonebook>	109
● Editing Phonebook Entries <Edit Entries>	114
● Deleting Phonebook Entries <Delete Entries>	115
● Hiding Private Numbers <Set Secret>	116
● Calling and Sending Mail with a Few Key Strokes <2-touch Dialing/2-touch Mail>	116
● Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center . . <Data Sec. Service>	117


Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal

Use FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook. Save items such as names, phone numbers and mail addresses for FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks.

The FOMA terminal also features a phonebook exclusively for PushTalk.

FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook, FOMA Card Phonebook and PushTalk Phonebook

- Entries saved in FOMA card phonebook are available even if your FOMA card is inserted into other FOMA terminals. To use phonebook on other FOMA terminals, save numbers in FOMA card phonebook.

	FOMA terminal handset phonebook	FOMA card phonebook	PushTalk phonebook
Number of entries	1,000	50	1,000
Number of characters for name	Up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters	Single-byte alphanumerics: up to 21 characters Double-byte, mixed single-byte/double-byte or single-byte katakana: up to ten characters	Up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters
Reading	Up to 32 single-byte characters	Single-byte alphanumerics: up to 25 characters Double-byte, mixed single-byte/double-byte: up to 12 characters	Up to 32 single-byte characters
Group settings	20 groups	11 groups	Nine groups (PushTalk group  P. 93)
Icon	Phone number: nine types Mail address: six types	–	–
Memory numbers	000 to 999	–	–
Phone number	Three per entry (Up to 3,000 phone numbers can be saved in the phonebook)	One per entry	One per entry
Mail address	Three per entry (Up to 3,000 mail addresses can be saved in the phonebook)	One per entry	–

--: Not available

- In addition to the above items, save one entry per item for the following data in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

■ Company/School	■ Birthday	■ Called LED pattern
■ Department	■ Memo	■ Mail LED color
■ Title	■ Select ring tone	■ Mail LED pattern
■ Postal code	■ Mail ring tone	■ Image (Picture call)
■ Postal address	■ Called LED color	■ Substitute image
■ Location information		

Add to Phonebook

Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook

Register frequently used phone numbers, names and mail addresses to easily access when calling, or sending i-mode mail or SMS.

- Add still pictures, movies/i-motion, etc. shot with camera to phonebook entries. When a call is received from someone with an image in their phonebook entry, their name, phone number and image appear.
- Save to PushTalk phonebook when saving new to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

Entry items

	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	No groups
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	(Not registered)
	OFF
	(Not set)
	Select ring tone
	(Not set)
	Mail ring tone
	(Not set)
	Called LED color
	(Not set)
	Called LED pattern
	(Not set)
	Mail LED color
	(Not set)
	Mail LED pattern
	(Not set)
	Picture call set
	(Not set)
	Substitute image
	(Not set)

FOMA terminal
handset
phonebook
entry screen

Icon	Item	Details	Page
	Name	Enter name.	P. 102
	Reading	Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited.	P. 102
	Group	Entries can be sorted in groups.	P. 103
	Phone number	Save up to three numbers. Select from one of nine icons for each phone number.	P. 102
	Mail address	Save up to three addresses. Select from one of six icons for each address.	P. 102
	Company/school	Enter company/school name.	P. 103
	Department	Enter department.	P. 104
	Title	Enter title.	P. 104
	Postal code	Enter postal code.	P. 104
	Postal address	Enter postal address.	P. 104
	Location info	Enter location information (date of positioning, latitude, longitude, geographical coordinate system, positioning level).	P. 104
	Birthday	Enter a birthday.	P. 104
	Memo	Save memos.	P. 104
	Secret	Keep privacy by hiding phonebook entries. Set to keep phonebook entries private.	P. 104
	Secret code	Enter secret code specified by the other party. Use when sending mail.	P. 104
	Select ring tone	Differentiate callers using specific ring tones or Chaku-motion.	P. 104
	Mail ring tone	Differentiate incoming mail using specific mail ring tones or Chaku-motion.	P. 104
	Called LED color	Differentiate incoming calls using specific LED colors.	P. 104
	Called LED pattern	Set called LED flashing pattern.	P. 104
	Mail LED color	Differentiate incoming mail using specific mail LED colors.	P. 104
	Mail LED pattern	Set Mail LED flashing pattern.	P. 104
	Picture call set	Differentiate incoming/outgoing calls using images. Specific image appears in phonebook list. One still picture or movie/i-motion shot with the camera can be saved.	P. 104
	Substitute image	Set still picture or Chara-den for when sending a substitute image during a Videophone call.	P. 105

Note

- When upgrading the handset at a DoCoMo Shop or retailer, data saved in the FOMA terminal may not be copied depending on specifications of the new model.
- When the **2in1** is used, available phonebook is automatically switched depending on the 2in1 mode. When entries is saved to a phonebook, the **Phonebook 2in1 set** supporting the mode of the 2in1 is automatically saved as follows. However, the Phonebook 2in1 set can be changed individually (☞ P. 441).
 - When the 2in1 mode is [A mode]/[Dual mode] or 2in1 function is OFF, a Phonebook 2in1 set is saved as [A].
 - When the 2in1 mode is [B mode], a Phonebook 2in1 set is saved as [B].
- Data Security Service (☞ P. 117, P. 153) (requires a separate subscription) allows you to store the phonebook entries of the FOMA terminal handset to the Data Storage Center.

Basic Saving Operations

Save name, phone number and mail address.

1 In stand-by, press [New] [Phone].

- If during a voice call, press and select [Add to phonebook] → [Save new to phone].

2 Enter name and press .



FOMA terminal
handset
phonebook
entry screen

- Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters for name. Enter up to 32 single-byte characters for reading.
- Reading is automatically entered in R. Changes made to entered name are not reflected automatically.
- Reading is not automatically entered if symbols and pictographs are entered for name or when using One-touch conversion.
- When reading is incorrect, select R and correct reading.

3 Select enter phone number and press .



- Always dial the area code even when the number is in the same area for landline phone numbers.
- Enter up to 26 digits for phone number.
- Phone number may include [X] or [#] but call may not connect.
- i-mode mail is not sent properly when a number saved to the phonebook with [186] added is selected as the recipient.
- Press for 1+ seconds and enter [+] and a phone number to save the phone number for an international call.
- Press to enter a pause [P]. Alternatively, slide the finger up on the TOUCH CRUISER pad to enter it.
- Press and the last digit or character at the cursor is deleted.
- Press for 1+ seconds with the cursor at the end to delete the entire number. When the cursor is at another location, numbers after the cursor are deleted.

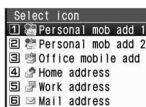
4 Select phone number type icon.



	Landline phone		Home phone
	Personal mobile phone 1		Office phone
	Personal mobile phone 2		Home fax
	Office mobile phone		Office fax
	Videophone		

- Repeat steps 3 and 4 to save multiple phone numbers.

5 Select enter mail address and press .



- Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers or symbols (not all symbols are available).
- Pictographs are not available.

To enter [@] and [.] (period)	Press multiple times
To enter an Internet-related phrase	Press for 1+ seconds → [Internet] ● Enter part of mail address easily (P. 424).

6

Select mail address type icon.

- Docomo Taro
- Docomo Taro
- No groups
- 090XXXXXXX
- (Not registered)
- (Not registered)
- Docomo Taro
- (Not registered)
- (Not registered)
- (Not registered)
- (Not registered)
- (Not registered)
- (Not registered)

	Personal mobile phone mail address 1		Home mail address
	Personal mobile phone mail address 2		Office mail address
	Office mobile phone mail address		Mail address

- Repeat steps 5 and 6 to save multiple mail addresses.

7

Press (Complete) ▶ enter memory number (three digits: 000 to 999).

- Enter name when [Complete] does not appear in guidance.
- Press without entering memory number to save to the lowest available memory number between [010] and [999]. The lowest available number between [000] and [009] is used if the above is not available.
- Use 2-touch dialing to call people saved in memory numbers [000] to [099] (P. 116).
- After entering memory number, [Store in PushTalk phonebook?] appears.

8

Select whether to save to PushTalk phonebook.

To save	[Yes] ● When two or more phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use for PushTalk.
To not save	[No]

Note

- When **Set secret** is set to [ON], phonebook entries cannot be overwritten. Set **Secret mode** to [ON].
- To save a phone number or mail address when 1,000 entries are already saved on the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, select a memory number to overwrite an already existing phonebook entry. However, entries in the FOMA card phonebook are not overwritten.
- Refer to "To check memory usage for each item" on P. 351 to check the numbers of the registered entries in the phonebook.
- Refer to P. 107 for details on copying to FOMA card.
- Refer to P. 340 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Send and receive phonebook saved on the FOMA terminal handset using **Ir exchange** or **iC transmission**.
- When the **2in1** mode is set to [B mode], the confirmation screen does not appear for saving to the PushTalk phonebook.

Alternative methods to specifying memory number

- Enter digit in hundreds column and press .
Entry is saved to the lowest available memory number ([100] to [199] if is entered).
- Enter hundreds and tens column and press .
Entry is saved to the lowest available memory number ([120] to [129] if is entered).

When i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F is received during editing

- When **Receive/Auto send display** is set to [Operation first], receive results do not appear. Continue editing.

Symbols and pictographs

- Enter symbols and pictographs for [Name], [Company/School], [Department], [Title], [Postal address] and [Memo] in FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Symbols and pictographs may not appear properly when sent by Ir exchange to PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

Related Operations

Set groups <Select group>

In the phonebook entry screen, select ▶ select group.



Save company/school

In the phonebook entry screen, select ▶ enter company/school and press .



- Enter up to 29 single-byte (14 double-byte) characters.

Related Operations

Save department

- In the phonebook entry screen, select  ▶ enter department and press .
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.



Save title

- In the phonebook entry screen, select  ▶ enter title and press .
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

Save postal code

- In the phonebook entry screen, select  ▶ enter postal code and press .



Save postal address

- In the phonebook entry screen, select  ▶ enter postal address and press .
- Enter up to 100 single-byte (50 double-byte) characters.



Save location information <Location info>

- In the phonebook entry screen, select .
- Refer to P. 284 for subsequent steps.

Save birthday

- In the phonebook entry screen, select  ▶ enter birthday and press .
- Enter a birthday between January 1, 1900 and December 31, 2099.



Save memo

- In the phonebook entry screen, select  ▶ enter memo and press .
- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.



Save entries as secret data <Set secret>

- In the phonebook entry screen, select  ▶ [ON].



Set Secret code for mail address <Secret code>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen, select  ▶ enter terminal security code and press .
- 2 Select [Set].
 - To confirm set Secret code: Select [View].
 - To disable Secret code: Select [Clear settings].
- 3 Select mail address ▶ enter secret code (four-digit) ▶ [Yes].

Set ring tone and Chaku-motion <Select ring tone/Mail ring tone>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen, select [ Select ring tone]/[ Mail ring tone].
- 2 Select [Melody]/[MUSIC]/[i-motion].
 - To disable: Select [Not set].
- 3 Refer to step 2 on P. 120 and select ring tone.



Set called LED color <Called LED color/Mail LED color>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen, select [ Called LED color]/[ Mail LED color].
- 2 Select called LED color.
 - To disable: Select [(Not set)].

Set called LED pattern <Called LED pattern/Mail LED pattern>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen, select [ Called LED pattern]/[ Mail LED pattern].
- 2 Select called LED pattern.
 - To disable: Select [(Not set)].

Set image <Picture call set>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen, select [ Picture call set].
- 2 Select [My picture]/[i-motion].
 - To shoot still pictures with camera: Select [Shoot still pic] ▶ shoot.
 - To shoot movies with camera: Select [Shoot movie] ▶ shoot.
 - To disable: Select [Not set].
- 3 Select folder ▶ select image and press [].

Related Operations

Set Substitute image <Substitute image>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen, select [☺Substitute image].
- 2 Select [Chara-den]/[Still picture].
 - To disable: Select [Not set].
- 3 Select folder ▶ select Chara-den/still picture and press [📁].
 - To check Chara-den/still picture: Select Chara-den/still picture.

Note

Set secret

- Refer to P. 116 for details on [Set secret](#).

Secret code

- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” for details on Secret code or setting Secret code.
- Only when mail address is **phone number@docomo.ne.jp**, Secret code is available.
- Secret code cannot be set as [0000].
- Set Secret code for one mail address from Mail address1 to 3 per each phonebook entry.
- Even if Secret code is set for mail address, Secret code does not appear in the recipient field of compose message screen (☞ P. 208).
- Mail may not be sent if **phone number + Secret code@docomo.ne.jp** is saved in phonebook. Change entry to **phone number@docomo.ne.jp** before saving Secret code.

Select ring tone and Mail ring tone

- Select ring tone from Melody or Music of [Data box](#) and Chaku-motion from i-motion.
- In the following cases, the ring tone and Mail ring tone cannot be set.
 - Movies/i-motion that are image only or have tickers added
 - Chaku-uta®, movies/i-motion, Chaku-uta full®, or Uta-hodai that has playback restrictions
 - Uta-hodai that has reached the expiration date or whose valid period for update has ended
 - Chaku-uta® or movies/i-motion with Ring tone set to [unavailable] or Chaku-uta full® with Full song ring tone and Point ring tone set to [unavailable] (☞ P. 349)
- Movies/i-motion with images and voice set for Chaku-motion are automatically set as Picture call.
- When a voice-only i-motion (melodies with no video) is set, the image set in Themes appears. When a Flash image is set, the image set by default appears.
- Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as Chaku-motion. Save movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion.
- Anonymous calls are notified with User unset ring tone set in [Select ring tone](#). When Select ring tone is not set, regular ring tone sounds.
- Calls and mail received while [Function lock](#) is applied to phonebook are notified with regular ring tone.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone. To use Select ring tone/Mail ring tone settings, set [Secret mode](#) to [ON].
- Save entire mail address to use Mail ring tone.
 - If mail address is **phone number@docomo.ne.jp**, set only phone number.
- Refer to P. 121 for details on setting the ring tone priority when multiple ring tones are set.




Called LED and Mail/Message LED

- Anonymous calls are notified with regular called LED.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular LED. To use called LED and mail/message LED settings, set Secret mode to [ON].
- Calls and mail received while phonebook [Function lock](#) is set are notified with regular LED.
- Save entire mail address to use mail/message LED. If mail address is **phone number@docomo.ne.jp**, set only phone number.
- Refer to P. 138 for details on setting called LED priority when multiple called LED are set.

Related Operations

Note

Picture call

- Image set in **Call/Receive display** appears during outgoing calls when i-motion is set for Picture call.
- i-motion that are voice only (melodies with no video), movies/i-motion with tickers added, and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions cannot be set for Picture call.
- Depending on data size, the image set to Picture call may take more time to display.
- When movies/i-motion are set to Picture call, the first frame is displayed if the images are displayed in the phonebook list.
- Even if a call is received from a caller with Picture call set, the set image appears when the call is received via **Call Waiting**. However, [電話着信1] appears if i-motion is set.
- Movies/i-motion that are copied from microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset or transferred from PC or another FOMA terminal using **Ir exchange**, **iC transmission** or **DoCoMo keitai datalink**, are not available (Movies/i-motion once copied from the FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card and then copied to the FOMA terminal handset again are included). Save movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Picture call.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular incoming screen.
- Calls from members saved with **Set secret ON** are notified by regular incoming screen. To use Picture call settings, set **Secret mode** to [ON].
- To delete image set for Picture call from **Data box**, select [Delete one] or [Delete selected]. The message indicating Link setting is applied appears. Select [Yes] in the confirmation screen to delete.
- Press  in preview screen and select [Set screen] → [Phonebook] to set shot still picture for Picture call (excluding Picture call set of **Group settings**). When the save destination, however, is set to microSD Memory Card, press  (→phone) to change the save destination to the FOMA terminal handset, and then press  and select [Set screen] → [Phonebook] to set to Picture call.
- When movies/i-motion with images and voice are set as Select ring tone, setting a still picture as Picture call disables Select ring tone setting. When movies/i-motion with images and voice are set as Picture call, Select ring tone is also set the same.
- Refer to P. 132 for details on setting the Picture call priority when multiple Picture calls are set.





Add to FOMA Card Phonebook

Saving to FOMA Card Phonebook

Save entries to FOMA card phonebook. Entry items differ slightly from FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

- Save up to 50 entries to the FOMA card phonebook.

Entry items

Icon	Item	Details
	Name	Enter name.
R	Reading	Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited.
	Group	Entries can be sorted in groups. 11 groups are available. Group names can be changed.
	Phone number	Save one phone number per entry.
	Mail address	Save one mail address per entry.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ ▶ [New].

2 Select [UIM] ▶ enter name and press .



- Refer to step 2 on P. 102 for details on entering name. Enter up to 21 single-byte characters or up to 10 characters for only double-byte characters, single-byte and double-byte mixed characters or only single-byte katakana. When 10 characters are already entered only in single alphanumeric characters and single/double-byte katakana are not saved. In addition, when more than 10 characters with single and double byte-characters mixed are input, the 11th character and after are not saved.
- For reading, enter up to 12 characters for only double-byte katakana or 25 characters for only single-byte alphanumerics. Enter up to 12 characters if single-byte and double-byte characters are mixed. When 12 single-byte characters are already entered and double-byte katakana are entered, the entered characters after double-byte katakana are not saved.

3 Select ▶ select group.

4 Select ▶ enter phone number and press .

- Enter up to 26 digits for FOMA card (green/white) and 20 digits for FOMA card (blue).
- Refer to step 3 on P. 102 for details on entering telephone numbers.

5 Select ▶ enter mail address and press .

- Refer to step 5 on P. 102 for details on entering mail address.

6 Press (Complete).

Copying Phonebook Entries Between FOMA Terminal Handset and FOMA Card

Copy phonebook entries from FOMA terminal handset to FOMA Card or from FOMA Card to FOMA terminal handset.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ select a name in the phonebook and press ▶ [Copy].

2 Select [Copy to UIM] ▶ select copy method.

- To copy the FOMA card phonebook to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, select [Copy to the phone] → copy method.

To copy one	[Copy one] → [Yes]
To copy selected	[Copy selected] → select name (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all (Only the phonebooks in the range displayed at the top of the phonebook list can be selected or cleared).
To check contents before copying	Select name in step 1 → → [Copy] → [Copy to UIM] (FOMA terminal handset phonebook)/[Copy to the phone] (FOMA card phonebook) → [Yes]

Note

- This function is not available if FOMA card is not inserted.
- Set **Secret mode** to [ON] to copy phonebook entries saved with **Set secret ON**.

Note

- Entry items are saved as follows when copied to FOMA card.
 - Portions of name exceeding 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are discarded.
 - Reading is saved as double-byte katakana. Portions exceeding 12 characters are discarded. Reading for entries copied from FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset is saved as single-byte katakana.
 - When a name is entered in alphanumeric, reading is saved as single-byte. Portions exceeding 25 characters are discarded.
 - Entries are allocated accordingly if same group name exists in FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks. If same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to [No groups]. Single- and double-byte characters are differentiated.
- Entry items are saved as follows when copied to FOMA terminal handset.
 - Reading is saved as single-byte characters.
 - Phone number and mail address from FOMA card are saved as first phone number and mail address in FOMA terminal handset.
 - Entries are allocated accordingly if same group name exists in FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks. If same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to [No groups]. Single- and double-byte characters are differentiated.
 - Open memory numbers are allocated from [010] to [999], then [000] to [009].
- Not all characters are compatible between FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card. Unsupported characters are converted to spaces.
- Source data is not deleted.
- Latin and Greek characters and some symbols not included in the standard single-byte alphanumerics/ symbols set, and double-byte characters not included in kuten code list appear as spaces when FOMA card data saved in other FOMA terminals are copied to your FOMA terminal.

Group Settings

Setting Groups

Set groups in phonebook to set group names, ring tones, Called LED and image shown when calls are received from a member of a group.

- Only group name editing is available for FOMA card phonebook.

Changing Group Name <Edit Group Name>

- [1] No groups] cannot be renamed.

1 In stand-by, press [☰] ▶ select a group.



Group settings screen

In phonebook list	[☰] → [Group settings] → select group
In group selection screen	Select group and press [☰] → [Group settings]

- When groups are selected, the FOMA terminal handset phonebook (19 groups) comes first, followed by the FOMA card phonebook (10 groups).

2 Select [Edit group name] ▶ edit group name and press [OK].

- Group name character limits are as follows.
 - FOMA terminal handset phonebook: Up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters
 - FOMA card phonebook: Up to 21 characters when entering only single-byte alphanumeric characters
Up to 10 characters when entering only double-byte characters, mixed single-byte and double-byte characters, or only single-byte katakana
- To restore default group name, press [CLR] for 1+ seconds and press [OK].

3 Press [END] (Complete).

Related Operations

Set ring tone and Chaku-motion for group <Select ring tone/Mail ring tone>

- 1 In the group settings screen, select [Select ring tone]/[Mail ring tone].
- 2 Select [Melody]/[MUSIC]/[i-motion].
 - To disable: Select [Not set].
- 3 Select a ring tone referring to step 2 on P. 120.


Set called LED color for group <Called LED color/Mail LED color>

- 1 In the group settings screen, select [Called LED color]/[Mail LED color].
- 2 Select called LED color.
 - To disable: Select [(Not set)].

Set called LED pattern for group <Called LED pattern/Mail LED pattern>

- 1 In the group settings screen, select [Called LED pattern]/[Mail LED pattern].
- 2 Select called LED pattern.
 - To disable: Select [(Not set)].

Set image for group <Picture call set>

- 1 In the group settings screen, select [Picture call set].
- 2 Select [My picture]/[i-motion].
 - To shoot still pictures with camera: Select [Shoot still pic] ▶ shoot.
 - To shoot movies with camera: Select [Shoot movie] ▶ shoot.
 - To disable: Select [Not set].
- 3 Select folder ▶ select image and press .

Note


Select ring tone/Mail ring tone

- Refer to “Select ring tone and Mail ring tone” on P. 105.

Called LED and Mail/Message LED

- Refer to “Called LED and Mail/Message LED” on P. 105.


Picture call

- When group Picture call is set,  appears on group selection screen.
- Refer to “Picture call” on P. 106.

Search Phonebook

Making Calls from Phonebook

Retrieve phone numbers from phonebook to make calls and send mail.

- When the 2in1 is used, available phonebook is automatically switched depending on the 2in1 mode ( P. 441).
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the Phonebook 2in1 set appear as the following marks in the phonebook list and the phonebook entry details screen. When the 2in1 mode is [A mode]/[B mode] or 2in1 function is OFF, these marks do not appear.



Phonebook list



Phonebook entry details screen

A	A
B	B
AB	Dual

Selecting Phonebook Search Method <Search by>

Search phonebook by reading, group, or memory number.

- Memory numbers do not exist on FOMA card phonebook. Searching by memory number is not available.
- In stand-by, press to show by the last method used.

1 In stand-by, press [Search by] select search method.

Reading?	FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks are sorted by reading.
Group?	FOMA terminal handset entries appear first.
Memory no.?	Only FOMA terminal handset entries appear.

- Phonebook appears sorted by selected search method.

Related Operations

Open phonebook during voice call

During a voice call, press [Phonebook].

View microSD Memory Card phonebook <View microSD data>

In stand-by, press [View microSD data].

- To search by group: In stand-by, press select group [View microSD data].

Copy microSD Memory Card phonebook contents to owner information

<Copy to Owner Info>

In stand-by, press [View microSD data] select name [Copy] [Copy to Owner Info] enter terminal security code and press [Yes].

Send Phonebook attach to mail <Attach to mail>

In stand-by, press select name and press [Attach to mail] compose and send i-mode mail.

Apply Function lock to phonebook <Function lock>

1 In stand-by, press [Function lock].

- To search by group: In stand-by, press select group [Function lock].

2 Enter terminal security code and press [ON].

Note

View microSD Memory Card phonebook

- Search method for microSD Memory Card phonebook cannot be selected.

Copy to owner information

- The first phone number is not copied to owner information.
- When **image transfer** is set to [Yes], an image in microSD Memory Card phonebook is set to Own image.
- When the **2in1** mode is set to [B mode], each item is copied to the owner information of Number B. In other modes, each item is copied to the owner information of Number A.


File attachment

- FOMA card phonebook cannot be attached.
- While microSD Memory Card phonebook is being viewed, [Attach to mail] cannot be selected.
- Refer to P. 208 for details on composing and sending i-mode mail.






1 In stand-by, press .



Phonebook list
(Other column)

- If search by reading phonebook list does not appear, press  and select [Search by] → [Reading?].
- Appears in following order for reading search.
Katakana (phonetic order → dakuten/handakuten) → alphabet → numbers → spaces* → symbols → no reading
* Appears after numbers and before symbols if space is at beginning.

2 Select name.


















To show previous/next column in phonetic order	 
To select one	
To scroll by page	Down:  (Page ▼)/Up:  (Page ▲)
To enter reading (Quick search)	Closest entry appears after each character is entered.



3 Press .








Phonebook entry
details screen

- Select icon to perform the following.

  	Place call to saved phone number. ● The icon appears for each of the saved phone numbers. Select the icon of a phone number to be used.
  	Compose message screen addressed to saved mail address appears. ● The icon appears for each of the saved mail addresses. Select the icon of a mail address to be used.
	View saved company/school, department, and title.
	View saved postal address.
	The location information menu appears ( P. 284).
	View saved memo.
 	Play set ring tone or Chaku-motion.
 	Called LED flashes in the set color and pattern.
	Set still picture or movie/i-motion appears.
	Play set still picture or Chara-den.

- Select  to appear saved postal code.
- Select  to appear saved birthday.

4 Make a call.

Voice calls	 or 
Videophone	
PushTalk	 (P) or 

- Call is placed to phone number displayed.


Searching by Memory Number <Memory No.??>

- Use 2-touch dialing to call people saved in memory numbers [000] to [099] (P. 116).



1 In stand-by, press .



FOMA terminal handset phonebook list (Memory numbers 010 to 019)

- If search by memory number phonebook list does not appear, press  and select [Search by] → [Memory no.].

2 Select memory number.

To show previous/next group of ten entries	
	● The previous/next ten entries appear.
To select one	
To enter memory number (Quick search)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● After each digit is entered, corresponding entries appear. For example, when 085 is entered, the following appear. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Enter 0 for first digit: entry numbers [000] to [009] appear. ■ Enter 8 for second digit: entry numbers [080] to [089] appear. ■ Enter 5 for third digit: entry number [085] is selected. ● If entered memory number is not saved in phonebook, entry for next largest memory number appears. However, if larger memory number does not exist, then smallest memory number closest to 000 appears.


- Refer to step 3 and onward of "Searching by Name" on P. 111 for further operations.

Searching by Group <Group??>

1 In stand-by, press .



Group selection screen

- If group selection screen does not appear, press  and select [Search by] → [Group?].



2 Select a group.



Phonebook list (グループ 1)

- Entries appear in order of reading (katakana (phonetic order → dakuten/handakuten) → alphabet → numbers → spaces → symbols → no reading).
- Phonebook entries with no group settings are grouped in [No groups].

3 Select name.

To show previous/next group	
To select one	 (in the current group)
To enter reading (Quick search)	Closest entry appears after each character is entered.

- Refer to step 3 and onward of "Searching by Name" on P. 111 for further operations.

Searching by Phone Number <Search Phone No.>

- 1 In stand-by, press [Menu] ▶ [Camera] ▶ [Search phone no].**
 - To search by group, select group, press [Camera] and select [Search phone no].
- 2 Enter a part of phone number and press [Search].**
 - Up to 26 digits can be entered.
 - The search results appears.
- 3 Select phone number.**
 - Refer to step 3 and onward of "Searching by Name" on P. 111 for further operations.

Related Operations

Select calling method and make call

- 1 In stand-by, press [Menu] ▶ select name.**
 - To search by group: In stand-by, press [Menu] ▶ select group ▶ select name.
- 2 Select calling method and make call.**
 - To make international call: Press [Camera] ▶ [Number settings] ▶ [Add prefix] ▶ [International Call] ▶ select the international access code ▶ [Search] or [Search].
 - To add prefix: Press [Camera] ▶ [Number settings] ▶ [Add prefix] ▶ [Select prefix] ▶ select prefix ▶ [Search] or [Search].
 - To call without sending ID: Press [Camera] ▶ [Number settings] ▶ [Caller ID setting] ▶ [No caller ID] ▶ [Search] or [Search].
 - To call sending ID: Press [Camera] ▶ [Number settings] ▶ [Caller ID setting] ▶ [Send own no.] ▶ [Search] or [Search].
 - To set same as Network Service notify caller ID: Press [Camera] ▶ [Number settings] ▶ [Caller ID setting] ▶ [As NW setting] ▶ [Search] or [Search].
 - To specify image and make Videophone call: After step 1 of "Changing Image When Making a Call" on P. 81, press [Search].
 - Refer to P. 440 to select Multi Number.
 - Refer to P. 441 to select a phone number when the 2in1 is used.
 - Refer to P. 59 to call with Chaku-moji message.

Changing Display Method for Phonebook List <Switch View Mode>

- 1 In stand-by, press [Menu] ▶ [Camera] ▶ [Switch view mode].**
 - To search by group, select group, press [Camera] and select [Switch view mode].
- 2 Select display method.**



Note

- For Picture list, the first phone number and mail address appear and a call can be made to the phone number. However, the mail address cannot be selected. Select other phone numbers and mail addresses from phonebook entry details screen.
- Image set for group Picture call is shown for all members of group. Individually set images are prioritized.

Changing Phonebook Entry Details Screen Appearance

<Switch View Mode>

Show images set in Picture call for entries in phonebook entry details screen.

- Not available when showing microSD Memory Card data.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ select name ▶ ▶ [Switch view mode].


Restricting Image Transfer <Image Transfer>

Set to not transfer images set as Picture call when phonebook entries are copied to a microSD Memory Card or sent via Ir or iC transmission.
microSD Memory Cards are sold separately.

Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (☎ P. 335).

- When Image transfer is set to [Yes], copying phonebook entries to a microSD Memory Card and sending via Ir or iC transmission may take more time.
- Even if Image transfer is set to [Yes], images from the following sources are not transferred.
 - Preinstalled images
 - Images of Videophone source

1 In stand-by, press ▶ ▶ [Image transfer].

- When searching groups, select a group, press  and select [Image transfer].

2 Select [No].

- To transfer image, select [Yes] → [Yes].


Edit Entries

Editing Phonebook Entries

Edit items saved in phonebook entries.

- Editing is not available when All lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
- Editing is not available for phonebook entries set to accept/reject calls.


1 In stand-by, press ▶ select name and press ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Edit].

- When editing from phonebook entry details screen, press  and select [Edit data] → [Edit].
- Refer to P. 101 and P. 106 for items which can be edited.

2 Select an item ▶ edit.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving.
- Even if a name is edited, the reading does not automatically change.
- When multiple phone numbers are saved, [(Not registered)] appears if the first phone number saved is deleted. However, other phone numbers remain unchanged.

3 Press (Complete) ▶ save.

FOMA terminal handset phonebook	To overwrite	☉ → [Yes]
	To save to a different memory number	Enter memory number ● Press  for 1+ seconds, delete memory number and press ☉ to save to an available memory number (☎ P. 103).
FOMA card phonebook		[Yes]

- When editing and overwriting a phonebook entry that has a phone number also saved in a PushTalk phonebook, a message stating PushTalk phonebook entry will also be changed appears. Select [Yes] to overwrite.

Related Operations

Switch the order of saved multiple phone numbers or mail addresses <Switch item>

- 1 In stand-by, press ► select name and press ► [Edit data] ► [Switch item].
 - To operate from phonebook entry details screen: Press ► [Edit data] ► [Switch item].
- 2 Select [Switch phone no.]/[Switch address].
- 3 Select source ► select destination.

Copy saved details <Copy item>

In stand-by, press ► select name ► select item and press ► [Copy] ► [Copy item].

Add to PushTalk Phonebook <Add to PushTalk PB>

In stand-by, press ► select name and press ► [Edit data] ► [Add to PushTalk PB].

- To save from phonebook entry details screen: Press ► [Edit data] ► [Add to PushTalk PB].

Note

Copying saved details

- The following items can be copied: FOMA terminal handset phonebook [names], [phone numbers one through three], [mail addresses one through three], [Company/School], [Department], [Title], [postal addresses] and [Memo], and FOMA card phonebook [names], [phone numbers] and [mail addresses].
- Refer to "Pasting Text" on P. 426 for details on pasting text copied from the phonebook.

Delete Entries

Deleting Phonebook Entries

- When a phonebook entry is deleted from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, the entry is also deleted from PushTalk phonebook.

- 1 In stand-by, press ► select name and press ► [Delete].



- 2 Select deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete collectively	[Delete selected] → select name (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all (Only the phonebooks in the range displayed at the top of the phonebook list can be selected or cleared).
To delete all in a group	[Del all in group] → select group → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete all in FOMA terminal handset phonebook	[Delete all] → [Hndset phonebook] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete all in FOMA card phonebook	[Delete all] → [UIM] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

- When a phone number is saved in PushTalk phonebook, select [Yes] in the PushTalk phonebook delete confirmation screen to delete both PushTalk and FOMA terminal handset phonebook entries.

Related Operations

Delete from phonebook entry details screen <Delete one>

In the phonebook entry details screen, press ► [Delete one] ► [Yes].

Set Secret

Hiding Private Numbers

Secret phonebook entries are hidden and access is restricted unless Secret mode is set to [ON].

- Set secret is not available for FOMA card phonebook entries.

Setting Entries as Secret Data <Set Secret>

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☎ P. 101), select  ▶ [ON].

2 Press  (Complete) ▶ save.


To save a new entry (☎ P. 103)	Enter memory number
To overwrite	<input checked="" type="radio"/> → [Yes]

- When [Store in PushTalk phonebook?] appears, select [Yes] to store.

Note

- Set **Secret mode** to [ON] to use **2-touch dialing** for secret phonebook entries saved in memory numbers [000] to [099].
- Mail addresses saved in secret phonebook entries are also restricted unless Secret mode is set to [ON].

Opening secret data

- Set Secret mode to [ON] and perform the same steps as when viewing normal entries.  flashes when secret data is selected in phonebook list.
- Same operations as normal phonebook are available.

Redial, Received calls, Sent messages, Received/Sent messages history and Schedule

- Phone number and mail address set as Secret appear instead of name. Set Secret mode to [ON] to show name.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone and called LED. To activate ring tone and called LED set in the phonebook, set Secret mode to [ON].

2-touch Dialing/2-touch Mail

Calling and Sending Mail with a Few Key Strokes

Easily call or send i-mode mail to parties saved in memory numbers [000] to [099] in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.




- First phone number/mail address is called/addressed when multiple are saved.
- 2-touch dialing and 2-touch mail are not available while Function lock is applied to phonebook (☎ P. 147).

1 In stand-by, enter last or last two digits.



- Memory number 000 to 009: Press **0** to **9**.
- Memory number 010 to 099: Press **1** **0** to **9** **9**.

2 Select the function.

To make a voice call	
To make a Videophone call	
To compose a message	

- Call is placed to the entry saved or the compose message screen appears.
- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details on composing and sending mail.

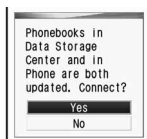
Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center

Saving FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook to Data Storage Center

<Connect to Center>

- Update the contents when the phonebook has already been saved.
- Owner Information can also be saved to the Data Storage Center.
- FOMA card phonebook or phonebook in a microSD Memory Card cannot be saved.
- This service is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Data Sec. Service] ▶ [Connect to Center].



- Alternatively, press  in phonebook list and select [Connect to Center].

2 Select [Yes] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .

- When saving is completed, complete notification screen appears and stand-by reappears.

Note

- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” for details on the use of the Data Security Service.

Automatic updating

- Set to update and save to the Data Storage Center periodically on Data Storage Center’s site.
- The phonebook is not automatically updated when other functions are activated. Display [PB Data Strg Cntr Update notice] in the stand-by when the phonebook is not automatically updated.

Available image files used for Picture call to be stored to the Data Storage Center

- File type must be GIF or JPEG.
- File size must be 300 KB or less for each (Files larger than 300 KB cannot be saved to the Data Storage Center).
- Images that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal cannot be saved to the Data Storage Center.

Viewing Phonebook Transmission History <Exchanging History>

Check up to 30 transmission history entries of saving/updating the phonebook, mail and images, starting with the newest.

When the transmission history exceeded 30 entries, entries are deleted starting with the oldest.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Data Sec. Service] ▶ [Exchanging history] ▶ select history.

Setting Whether to Send Phonebook Images <Send Phonebook Img>

Set whether to send images set as Picture call when phonebook entries are saved to the Data Storage Center.

- When Send phonebook image is set to [ON], it may take some time for sending.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Data Sec. Service] ▶ [Send phonebook img] ▶ select a setting item.

To send images	[ON] → [Yes]
To not send images	[OFF]

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

■ Sound Settings

- Changing Mobile Phone Sounds <Sound Settings>120
- Changing Mobile Phone Sound Volume <Select Volume>122
- Setting 3D Sound and Sound Quality <Sound Plybck>124
- Setting Music Player to Be Activated in the Viewer Position <Run Music Settings>125
- Vibrating for Calls and Alarms <Vibrator>125
- Changing the Ringing Tone <Melody Call Setting>125
- Sounding Alarm When the Signal Is Weak <Quality Alarm>126
- Setting Duration of Mail/PushTalk Ring Tone and Tones When Using GPS Function <Ring Time Setting>126
- Sounding Ring Tone in Earphone Only <Headset Setting>126
- Silencing Handset <Manner Mode>127
- Changing Manner Mode <Original>128

■ Screen/Light Settings

- Changing Stand-by Display Settings <Set Screen>128
- Showing Desktop Clock While Charging <Desktop Clock>130
- Changing Call/Receive Image <Call/Rcv Display>130
- Changing Image for Sending/Receiving Messages <Send/Rcv Display>131
- Setting Whether to Show Phonebook Image for Incoming Calls <Picture Call Set>132
- Saving Battery Power <Light/Power Saver>132
- Setting Original Power Saver Mode <Original Eco Mode>132
- Changing Custom Menu Design <Kisekae Tool>134
- Arranging the Display <Themes>136
- Changing Basic Menu Design 137
- Setting the Illumination <LED Color Settings/LED Pattern Settings>138
- Notifying a Call or Mail Received with LED <Notice LED>138
- Changing Image Quality <Display Img Quality>139
- Changing Font (Font Style) 139
- Changing Font Size 139
- Preventing Others from Seeing the Display <Private Filter>140

Sound Settings

Changing Mobile Phone Sounds

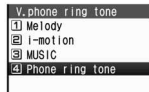
Change ring tones used when voice/ Videophone calls, PushTalk transmissions, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F are received and set Melody stereo effects (P. 124). In addition, change Timer sound and GPS related sounds.

- If a melody with LED actions is set as the ring tone, link the melody and LED flash actions (Melody ON).
- For ring tones, set melodies, Chaku-uta®, movies/ i-motion, and Chaku-uta full® downloaded using i-mode, and movies shot with FOMA terminal as well as preset melodies.
- Set a movie/i-motion for a ring tone to play an image or voice for an incoming call (Chaku-motion).

Changing Ring Tone and Chaku-motion <Select Ring Tone>

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Select sound]** ▶ **[Select ring tone]** ▶ **select an item.**

Item	Phone ring tone	User unset
	V.phone ring tone	Unknown tone
	Payphone ring tone	



When changing Videophone ring tone

2 Select ring tone.

To set melodies	[Melody] → select folder → select melody and press [] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check melody, select a melody and press [] (Agree). Press [] and the previous screen reappears.
-----------------	---

To set Chaku-uta® or movie/ i-motion	[i-motion] → select folder → select Chaku-uta® or movie/ i-motion and press [] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check Chaku-uta® or movie/i-motion, select Chaku-uta® or a movie/ i-motion and press [] (Agree). Press [] and the previous screen reappears. ● Movies/i-motion that are image only or have tickers added are not available. ● Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset are not available. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to set for Chaku-motion. When Chaku-uta® or movie/i-motion saved in the [Movable contents] folder in the microSD Memory Card is selected, the confirmation screen for transferring to the FOMA terminal handset appears. Select [Yes] to move to the [i-mode] folder in i-motion of Data box and set it as the Chaku-motion. ● Refer to P. 201 for details on ring tone and receive display combinations.
To set Chaku-uta full®	A full song [MUSIC] → select folder and press [] → select Chaku-uta full® and press [] → [Full song ring tone] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check Chaku-uta full®, select Chaku-uta full® and press [] (Agree). Press [CLR] to return to the previous screen.
	A part of song [MUSIC] → select folder and press [] → select Chaku-uta full® and press [] → [Point ring tone] → select range and press [] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The selectable range is pre-determined for each Chaku-uta full®. ● To check the selected range, select the range and press [] (Agree). Press [CLR] and the previous screen appears.
To set the same ring tone as Phone ring tone	[Phone ring tone] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Make Videophone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, and Unknown tone the same as Phone ring tone.

* When Chaku-uta full® saved in the [Movable contents] folder in the microSD Memory Card is selected, the confirmation screen for transferring to the FOMA terminal handset appears. Select [Yes] to move Chaku-uta full® to the [i-mode] folder in Music of Data box and set it as the ring tone.

Note

- If the ring tone is changed, receive display may also change (☞ P. 201).
- Ring tone and Mail ring tone are prioritized as follows when multiple ring tones are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Ring tone	Multi Number ring tone* → phonebook ring tone → group ring tone → B Number ring tone → regular ring tone
Mail ring tone	Phonebook mail ring tone → group mail ring tone → ring tone of mail to Address B → regular mail ring tone

* When the 2in1 is used, Multi Number ring tone is disabled.

- Anonymous calls are notified with User unset ring tone set in **Select ring tone**. When Select ring tone is not set, regular ring tone sounds.
- Videophone ring tone is prioritized over User unset for Videophone calls with no caller ID.
- When Chaku-uta® or movie/i-motion with voice only (i-motion with no video image such as a singer's song) is set as Chaku-motion, the Receive display is prioritized as follows: phonebook Picture call settings → group Picture call settings → Call/Receive display settings.
- When a call is received during data transmission, the tone saved as Phone ring tone sounds. Receive display is the same as the display set in Incoming voice calls. The movie/i-motion screen is used if a movie/i-motion is set.
- Setting as the ring tone cannot be performed in the following cases.
 - Chaku-uta®, Movie/i-motion, Chaku-uta full®, and Uta-hodai with replay restrictions
 - Uta-hodai that has reached the expiration date or whose valid period for update has ended
 - Chaku-uta® or movie/i-motion with Ring tone set to [unavailable], or Chaku-uta full® with Full song ring tone and Point ring tone set to [unavailable] (☞ P. 349)
 - Uta-hodai without a license of the compatible MUSIC (subscription) services
 - Chaku-uta full® saved in the middle of download

Related Operations

Change i-mode mail, Message R/F, SMS and PushTalk ring tone <Select Mail tone>

- 1 In stand-by, press **☉** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Select sound]** ▶ **[Select mail tone]** ▶ **[Mail ring tone]/[MessageR ring tone]/[MessageF ring tone]/[SMS ring tone]**.
 - For PushTalk: In stand-by, press **☉** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Select sound]** ▶ **[PushTalk tone]**.
- 2 Select **[Melody]/[i-motion]/[MUSIC]** ▶ refer to **step 2 on P. 120 and select ring tone**.
 - To conform Message R, Message F, and SMS ring tone to Mail ring tone: Select **[Mail ring tone]**.

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

PushTalk tone

- Movie/i-motion with voice only (i-motion with no video) is available for PushTalk tone.

Preset ring tones

Song title	Artist	3D data
着信音1	—	—
着信音2	—	—
着信音3	—	—
着信音4	—	—
着信音5	—	—
着信音6	—	—
鳴き声(ヒヨコ)	—	Yes
黒電話	—	—
Sunrise	—	—
Sunset	—	—
Stardust	—	—
クリスタル	—	—
Smily Tap	—	Yes
Classy Room	—	Yes
Groove	—	Yes
ラグタイムダンス	SCOTT JOPLIN	Yes
ジュピター	GUSTAV HOLST	Yes
Festival Night	—	Yes
JE TE VEUX	—	—
ガヴォット	GOSSEC FRANCOIS JOSEPH	—
王家の末裔	—	—
Siesta	—	Yes
ラヴァーズコンツェルト	J.S.BACH	Yes
Feelin' Groovy	—	Yes
サイレント	—	—
TI (標準音)	—	—
TI (時間です)	—	—
TI (It's time)	—	—

Note

- Refer to “Melody types and their icons” on P. 334 for details on the icons for each melody.

Forward and store saved melody data to a PC using microSD Memory Card (☞ P. 335). Melodies with file restrictions cannot be transferred.

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Changing Timer Sound <Timer Sound>

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Select sound]** ▶ **[Timer sound]** ▶ **select Timer sound.**

To set Default tone	[Default tone] ● To check Default tone, press [F1] . To return, press [F2] .
To set a melody	[Melody] → select folder → select melody and press [F1] ● To check melody, select a melody and press [Agree] . To return, press [F2] .
To not set	[OFF]

- Enter time to sound timer (two digits: 00 to 99 seconds) and press **[Agree]**.

Note

- Movies/i-motion are not available for Timer sound.
- Default tone or melodies checked while setting are played in the volume set by [Timer sound] of Select volume. When the volume is set to [Silent], they are played at [Volume 1]. Press **[Volume]** during playback to adjust the volume for melodies.

Changing Tones When Using GPS Function <GPS Tone>

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Select sound]** ▶ **[GPS tone]** ▶ **select an item.**

Item	Pos location sound	Loc provision/acpt
	Pos location notice	Loc provision/notify

- Select GPS tone.

To set a melody	[Melody] → select folder → select melody and press [F1] ● To check a melody, select the melody and press [Agree] . To return, press [F2] .
To not set	[OFF]

Note

When Location provision is allowed/chosen

- “When Location provision is allowed” is the case when GPS Service settings are set to [許可] (Always allow) or when Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting) is set to [許可] (Always allow).
- “When Location provision is chosen” is the case when GPS Service settings are set to [毎回確認] (Always choose) or when Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting) is set to [毎回確認] (Always choose).
- Refer to P. 281 for details on GPS Service settings.

Select Volume

Changing Mobile Phone Sound Volume

Change ring tone volume used when voice/ Videophone calls, PushTalk transmissions, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F are received. In addition, change the volume of sounds used when keys are pressed or when Stand-by i-motion is played back, Timer sound, Charge start/end sounds and GPS related sounds.

- Volume remains at adjusted level even when handset is turned off or battery pack is removed.
- The ring volume for a call received during data transmission is the volume set for Phone ring tone.

Adjusting Ring Tone Volume

<Phone Ring Vol>




- Select between [Volume 1] to [Volume 10], [Silent] (not sound) and [Step] (gradually get louder).

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Select volume]** ▶ **[phone ring vol]** ▶ **select an item.**

Item	Phone ring tone	User unset
	V.phone ring tone	Unknown tone
	Payphone ring tone	








2 Adjust volume with / and press .

- To set to [Step], press  when volume is set to [Volume 10]. When [Step] is set, the ring tone sounds starting from [Volume 2] to [Volume 10]. The volume increases by two volume levels every 3 seconds. After the ring tone sounds in [Step], it sounds at [Volume 10]. Chaku-motion is also played back in Step when set.
- To set to [Silent], press  when volume is set to [Volume 1]. When Phone ring tone is set to [Silent],  appears on the upper side of the screen.

Related Operations


Adjust i-mode mail, SMS, Message R/F, PushTalk ring volume <Mail ring vol>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select volume] ▶ [Mail ring vol] ▶ [Mail ring tone]/[MessageR ring tone]/[MessageF ring tone]/[SMS ring tone].
 - For PushTalk: In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select volume] ▶ [PushTalk tone vol].
- 2 Press / ▶ .



Adjusting Earpiece Volume <Earpiece Volume>

Select from ten earpiece volume levels.

1 In stand-by, press / for 1+ seconds.


- If a calendar is shown, press  to hide the calendar before continuing with operations.

2 Adjust volume with /.

- After adjusting the volume, press /, or wait approximately 2 seconds and the stand-by display reappears.

Adjusting Sound Volume When Pressing Keys or Playing Standby i-motion <Key/Standby i-motion>

Adjust the volume of the sounds emitted when keys are pressed (Keypad sound) and the i-motion set as stand-by is played (Standby i-motion sound). Also, adjust the volume for Charge start/end sound and Timer sound.

- Select between [Volume 1] to [Volume 10] and [Silent] (not sound).
- The battery level sound ( P. 44) is heard at the volume set in Key/Standby i-motion. When set to [Silent], the battery level sound is not heard.
- Keypad sound is disabled for the character operation during Videophone or Chara-den player.
- Sounds are disabled in Manner mode.
- Sounds are also enabled when the TOUCH CRUISER pad is double-tapped to select.





1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select volume] ▶ [Key/Standby i-motion].

2 Adjust volume with / and press .




- To set to [Silent], press  when volume is set to [Volume 1].

Related Operations

Adjust Charge start and Charge end sound volume <Charge start sound/Charge end sound>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select volume] ▶ [Charge start sound]/[Charge end sound].
- 2 Press / ▶ .

Adjust Timer sound volume <Timer sound>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select volume] ▶ [Timer sound].
- 2 Press / ▶ .

Adjusting Sound Volume When Using GPS Function <GPS Volume>

- Select between [Volume 1] to [Volume 10], [Silent] (not sound) and [Step] (gradually get louder).

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Select volume]** ▶ **[GPS volume]** ▶ **select an item.**

Item	Pos location sound	Loc provision/acpt
	Pos location notice	Loc provision/notify

2 Adjust volume with **○/○** and press **⊙**.

Note

When Location provision is allowed/chosen

- “When Location provision is allowed” is the case when GPS Service settings are set to [許可] (Always allow) or when Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting) is set to [許可] (Always allow).
- “When Location provision is chosen” is the case when GPS Service settings are set to [毎回確認] (Always choose) or when Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting) is set to [毎回確認] (Always choose).
- Refer to P. 281 for details on GPS Service settings.

Sound Plybck

Setting 3D Sound and Sound Quality

Set stereo effects and equalizer used when playing melodies.

- Melody stereo effects/Melody equalizer in Sound playback is linked with Stereo effects/Equalizer while playing back melody (☞ P. 333).

Setting 3D Sound/Surround

<Melody Stereo Fx>

Following settings are available for the set ring tones.

Stereo/3D sound	Play realistic 3D sound from stereo speakers. Ring tones without 3D data are played in stereo sound.
Surround*1	3D data are ignored and ring tones are played in surround sound. Ring tones without 3D data are also played in surround sound.
OFF	Ring tones are played in monaural*2 regardless of ring tone types.

- *1 Playback format that offers rich and vibrant sound.
- *2 Playback format that does not feature rich sound.
- Rich and vibrant sound is not available when set to [OFF].
- Surround effects are disabled when i-motion is set.

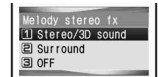
3D sound

The 3D sound function uses stereo speakers (or stereo earphone set) to create a spacious ambient sound that moves through the air. Enjoy 3D sound compatible i-appli games and ring tones with lively 3D sound.



- For the most powerful 3D sound to be enjoyed, hold the FOMA terminal approximately 40 cm off, facing the front.
- Note that 3D sound becomes less powerful when heard off the front, or too close or too far even when the front is faced.
- 3D effect may vary depending on the person. Set Melody stereo effects to [OFF] if uncomfortable.

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Sound plybck]** ▶ **[Melody stereo fx]** ▶ **select a stereo effects.**



Setting Equalizer <Melody Equalizer>

Set the equalizer according to music genres.

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Sound plybck]** ▶ **[Melody equalizer]** ▶ **select equalizer.**

Equalizer	Normal	Pops
	Rock	Classic

Run Music Settings

Setting Music Player to Be Activated in the Viewer Position

Set music player that can be activated in the viewer position or with the FOMA terminal closed.

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Sound playback]** ▶ **[Run music settings]** ▶ select a type of music player.

Music player type	Music player
	SD-Audio

Vibrator

Vibrating for Calls and Alarms

Set Vibrator to notify incoming calls, PushTalk, mail, and alarms. Vibrate when using the GPS function.



- The vibrator pattern for alarms is the same as the pattern set for Vibration mode.
- Vibration mode and volume settings are not linked. Set the volume to [Silent] to silence ring tones and alarm tones. Set volume separately while Vibrator is set (☞ P. 122, P. 402).
- Use vibration patterns set to melodies (Melody ON).

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Vibrator]** ▶ select an item.

Item	Vibration mode
	Mail vibration
	GPS vibrator → Position location
	GPS vibrator → Location notification
	GPS vibrator → Loc provision/accept
	GPS vibrator → Loc provision/notify

- Select Vibrator.

OFF	Vibrator is not activated.
Pattern1	Vibrates for approx. 0.8 sec → stops for approx. 0.8 sec and repeats
Pattern2	Vibrates for approx. 0.3 sec → stops for approx. 0.3 sec → vibrates for approx. 0.3 sec → stops for approx. 1 sec and repeats
Pattern3	Continuous vibration
Melody ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vibrator and melody activate (Melody ON) for melodies created with vibration settings added. Melodies that do not have vibration settings vibrate in [Pattern1].

- Vibrator is set. When the vibration mode is set,  appears on the upper side of the screen.
- Select [Pattern1] to [Pattern3] with  to sample the vibration pattern.

Note

- Note that if Vibrator is set and FOMA terminal is left on a table, it may fall when a call is received.
- Vibrator settings are not reflected in Flash movies.
- Even if [Melody ON] is set, vibration is not in conjunction with the main melody.

When Location provision is allowed/chosen

- "When Location provision is allowed" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to [許可] (Always allow) or when Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting) is set to [許可] (Always allow).
- "When Location provision is chosen" is the case when GPS Service settings are set to [毎回確認] (Always choose) or when Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting) is set to [毎回確認] (Always choose).
- Refer to P. 281 for details on GPS Service settings.

Melody Call Setting

Changing the Ringing Tone

When a voice call is received, the other party hears the melody with sense of the season instead of the normal ringing tone. Also set your favorite melody.

- If a call is made from Videophone/PushTalk, Melody Call is not played.
 - Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]" for details on using Melody Call.
- ※ Melody Call is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Incoming settings]** ▶ **[Melody Call setting]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

- Connects to the site of Melody Call. Packet charges are not incurred when connecting to setting sites.

- Set.

Quality Alarm

Sounding Alarm When the Signal Is Weak

The alarm sounds if the call is about to disconnect such as when the signal is weak.

- Quality alarm is available only for voice calls.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Phone settings]** **[In-call settings]** **[Quality alarm]** select an alarm tone.

Alarm tone	Alarm on(high)	No alarm
	Alarm on(low)	

Note

- There may be times when the signal is strong (📶 appears) and you are not moving but the Quality alarm sounds.
- The call may be disconnected without the alarm sounding if the signal suddenly becomes weak.

Ring Time Setting

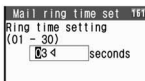
Setting Duration of Mail/ PushTalk Ring Tone and Tones When Using GPS Function

- Mail ring tone does not sound if mail is received while a call is in progress, i-αppli is running, the camera is being activated, the handset is being positioned by GPS, 1Seg is being watched (excluding when using Multi Window) or pattern definitions are being updated.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** **[Ring time setting]** select an item **[ON]**.

Item	Mail ring time set
	PT ring time set
	GPS ring time set → Pos location sound
	GPS ring time set → Pos location notice
	GPS ring time set → Loc provision/acpt
	GPS ring time set → Loc provision/notify

- Ring tones do not sound when set to [OFF].
- Cannot select [ON] or [OFF] for PushTalk ring tone. Always it is set to [ON].



- Enter duration and press **[OK]**.

- Enter between 01 and 20 seconds for Location provision/notify for GPS function, between 01 and 30 seconds for Position location sound, Position location notice and Location provision/accept for GPS function and Mail ring tone and between 01 and 60 seconds for PushTalk tone.

Note

When Location provision is allowed/chosen

- “When Location provision is allowed” is the case when GPS Service settings are set to [許可] (Always allow) or when Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting) is set to [許可] (Always allow).
- “When Location provision is chosen” is the case when GPS Service settings are set to [毎回確認] (Always choose) or when Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting) is set to [毎回確認] (Always choose).
- Refer to P. 281 for details on GPS Service settings.

Headset Setting

Sounding Ring Tone in Earphone Only

Set ring tone or alarm tone to sound from earphone instead of the FOMA terminal speakers when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- If no flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, the ring tone or alarm tone will sound from the speakers even when set to [Headset only].

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** **[Headset setting]** select a ring tone output device.

Ring tone output device	Headset only
	Headset + speaker

Note

- The volume in the earphone/microphone is set using Set volume of the various functions. When the volume is set to [Silent], no ring tone sounds from the earphone.
- Do not wind the earphone/microphone cord around FOMA terminal. Internal antenna may not work properly.
- Fully insert the earphone/microphone plug. Interrupted sound, static or loud noise may result when only partially inserted.
- The following are not malfunctions.
 - Interrupted sound or static when the earphone/microphone is only partially inserted during a call.
 - A popping sound upon turning power on.

Manner Mode

Silencing Handset

Use Manner mode to avoid disturbing others when in public. A single key operation silences the FOMA terminal.

- Settings vary for each mode as indicated below.

Function	Normal	Silent	Original ^{*1}
Record message, Vibrator	ON	OFF	ON
Ring tone, Mail ring tone	Silent	Silent	Silent
Alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion sound, Low battery alarm	OFF	OFF	OFF
Mic sensitivity up ^{*2}	ON	ON	ON

*1 Original manner mode settings can be changed (☞ P. 128).

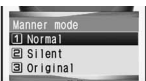
*2 When Mic sensitivity up is set to [ON], the microphone becomes more sensitive allowing for conversations at lower volumes. Microphone sensitivity does not change during a Hands-free call.

- Camera shutter sound and movie record start/end sound are not silenced while Manner mode is set. When Area Mail is received, beep tone, vibrator and called LED activates.

Setting Manner Mode

1 Press **[M]** for 1+ seconds when in stand-by.

- Press **[M]** for 1+ seconds to set Manner mode while receiving a call. The Manner mode selected previously is set. When the FOMA terminal is closed, press **[M]** for 1+ seconds while receiving a call.
- If [Normal] or [Silent] is set during an incoming call, the ring tone is silenced. For [Original], set volume is applied. This setting remains set until disabled. Caller's message is recorded if incoming call is not answered. Record message does not respond if three Record messages (voice calls)/Voice memos or two Record messages (Videophone) are already recorded. Press **[E]** to answer the call.
- Alternatively, in stand-by, press **[M]** and select [Settings] → [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] → [Manner mode] → [ON] to select Manner mode type. When settings are performed while Manner mode is set, the set Manner mode is changed. When settings are performed while Manner mode is disabled, Manner mode is set.



2 Select Manner mode type.

- [Normal Set], [Silent Set], or [Original Set] appears and Manner mode is set.
- The Manner mode selected previously is set in approximately 2 seconds if no operations are performed after step 1.
- When Manner mode is set, **[M]** appears.



When in stand-by or while receiving, with Manner mode set (Normal)

- Key/Standby i-motion sound, warning sounds, melody playback (a confirmation screen appears), i-appli melodies/sound effects, charge start/end sound, battery level sound, hold tone during calls, bar code recognition tone, Limit settings alarm, etc. are silenced.
- Ring tones, alarm tones, timer sounds, GPS tones, etc. are changed to vibrations.
- Record message is automatically set. Record message cannot be set/disabled (☞ P. 74) using menu operations.

Disabling Manner Mode

1 Press **[M]** for 1+ seconds when in stand-by/while receiving.

- [M]** disappear and Manner mode is disabled.

Related Operations

Disable Manner mode automatically at a specified time <Auto disable>

- In stand-by, enter disabling time (four digits: 24-hour format).
- Press **[M]** (Quick) ▶ [Disable Manner].
 - Alternatively, press **[M]** for 1+ seconds to set.

Silence ring tone when Manner mode is not set <Quick silent>

Press **[M]** while receiving.

- When FOMA terminal is closed: Press **[M]** (Eco) **[M]** **[M]** (P) while receiving.

Note (Related operations)

Automatically disabling Manner mode

- Disabling time is within 24 hours of the time of setting. When a screen other than stand-by is shown at the disabling time, or when turned off, Manner mode is disabled after the stand-by display reappears.

Quick silent

- Quick silent silences the current incoming call.

Original

Changing Manner Mode

Change the settings of the various functions that are activated when Original manner mode is set.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Manner mode] ▶ [ON].

2 Select [Original] ▶ select function ▶ [ON]/[OFF].

- Refer to P. 127 for details on functions to set.
- For the volume setting, press to adjust and press .
- Press when changing the settings is finished. The stand-by display reappears and the set Original manner mode is set.

Note

- **Record message** is activated if set to [ON] even if set to [OFF] in Original manner mode.
- An alert tone sounds when battery level becomes low if Low battery alarm is set to [ON].
- Change Original manner mode settings even while Manner mode is set.
- If a connected external device is set to sound, it will sound even if Manner mode is set.

Set Screen

Changing Stand-by Display Settings

Displaying an Image <Stand-by Display>

Set images saved in Data box, including preset images, shot still pictures and movies, downloaded images, Flash movies and i-motion, images received via i-mode mail, etc., as stand-by.

- Stand-by display images are preset in the FOMA terminal.
- Use Data box images such as JPEG/GIF images, animated GIFs, Flash movies in My picture and movies/i-motion in i-motion folder. Even if Flash movies with audio are used, they are played without sound.
- Voice only movies/i-motion (melodies with no video), movies/i-motion with playback restrictions and movies/i-motion in ASF file format are not available.
- When changing the stand-by displays of [B mode] and [Dual mode], set in Stand-by display (P. 441).

1

In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Stand-by display] ▶ select image.

To set an image	[My picture] → select folder → select image and press → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Select Display size for JPEG image from [Normal], [Zoom/Reduce (all)], and [Zoom/Reduce (wide)]. Select Display size for GIF image or animated GIF from [Normal] and [Zoom/Reduce (all)]. [Normal] is not available for still pictures larger than Stand-by: 480×854. Display size cannot be selected for Flash movies. ● To check image, select an image and press (Agree). Press and the previous screen reappears.
To set a movie/i-motion	[i-motion] → select folder → select movie/i-motion and press → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check movie/i-motion, select a movie/i-motion and press (Agree). Press and the previous screen reappears. ● Press (Pause) during playback to pause. Press to continue playback. ● Movies/i-motion of sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, hQVGA: 240×176 and QVGA: 320×240 can be set. For sQCIF: 128×96 and QCIF: 176×144 movies/i-motion, select [Normal] or [Zoom].
To set an i-appli	[i-appli] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Refer to P. 259 for details on setting i-appli.

Note

- When JPEG image, GIF image or animated GIF is set with the display size [Normal], it is displayed in the double size in the following cases.
 - In the normal position: When the image size is **240×427** or smaller
 - In the viewer position: When the image size is **240×240** or smaller
- Images and movies/i-motion saved on microSD Memory Card cannot be directly set as stand-by. Copy/transfer to FOMA terminal handset before setting. Movies/i-motion saved in the [Moveable contents] folder on microSD Memory Card can be directly set.

Note

- If a Flash movie, animated GIF or movie/i-motion is set as stand-by, they are activated as shown below.

Flash movie or animated GIF	Played back from the first frame up to approximately 20 seconds. A frame of the stopped movie/animation appears as the stand-by display when playback finishes. Press during playback to pause. Press again to resume playback.
Movie/i-motion	Played back from the first frame up to approximately 20 seconds. The first frame appears as the stand-by display when playback finishes. Press during playback to return to the first frame and stop. Press again to resume playback.

- Movie/i-motion volume in the stand-by display follows Key/Standby i-motion volume settings. In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds during i-motion playback to switch audio on/off.
- When the image set as stand-by is deleted, the default image reappears.
- The set animated GIF or Flash movies may appear differently (such as frame dropping) from when on a site or Internet web page.
- In Power saver mode, press any key to turn on it. A function assigned to the key is executed during voice call only. Afterward, the normal key operation is enabled.

Displaying the Calendar

<Calendar Display>

Display calendar for the current month, 2 months (the current month and the following month) or 4 months (starting with the current month) on top of stand-by display. Set vacation days (P. 406) and holidays (P. 407) are shown in red. Days with schedules set are underlined. When the calendar is set to [1 month (Large)], icons appear to the right of the dates with schedule entries.

- Japanese national holidays as stipulated in the revised National Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Elderly (Law No. 43, 2005) are set by default (as of October 2007). Dates for Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may differ because they are released on February 1 of the previous year.
- If animated GIF, Flash movie or i-motion is set as stand-by, playback stops when switching to Calendar display.
- Calendar appears in Japanese when Select language is set to [日本語].
- Calendar does not appear in the viewer position.

- 1 In stand-by, press [Settings] [Disp/LED/Power saver] [Set screen] [Calendar display] select display method.

Display method	1 month (Large)
	1 month → Upper left
	1 month → Upper right
	1 month → Lower left
	1 month → Lower right
	2 months → Up
	2 months → Down
	4 months
	OFF



1 month (Large)



1 month (upper left)



2 months (down)



4 months

- Press , and the previous and following months appear. When the calendar is set to [4 months], the previous and following 2 months appear.
- Press in the stand-by display to show or hide the calendar when Calendar is set.
- When Calendar is set and i-Channel ticker is set to [ON], press in stand-by to switch between Calendar display and i-Channel ticker.

Displaying the Clock <Clock Display>



Show date and time on top of stand-by display.


- When Clock display is set to [ON(Large)] or [OFF], clock does not appear in the upper right of the stand-by display. Set Clock display to [ON(Small)] to show the clock in the upper right of the stand-by display.

- GIF images that are 160 (W) × 160 (H) pixels and 320 (W) × 320 (H) pixels saved in My picture of Data box are available. However, Flash movies, animated GIFs, and JPEG images are not available.
- Date and time appear in Japanese when Select language is set to [日本語]. However, some images may not appear properly when language is switched between Japanese and English.
- If in the viewer position, the clock is displayed in [ON(Small)] even when set to [ON(Large)].

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Clock display].

2 Select [Clock display] ▶ select the type of clock.

To show clock (Large)	[ON(Large)]
To show clock (Small)	[ON(Small)] →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The stand-by display reappears and the operation is end. ● The clock image displayed at the top of the screens can be changed (☞ "Changing the Design of Icons" on P. 136).
To not show	[OFF] →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The stand-by display reappears and the operation is end.

3 Select [Set clock style] ▶ select folder ▶ select image and press  (OK).

- Sample of the clock appears on the display.

4 Select [Set disp position] ▶ select the display position ▶  (Complete).

Desktop Clock

Showing Desktop Clock While Charging

While the stand-by display is shown in the viewer position, start charging to show Desktop clock.



- If [2 hours] is set, Desktop clock ends in 2 hours after the display of Desktop clock is started, and the stand-by display reappears.
- The design of Desktop clock depends on the Color theme setting (☞ P. 136) as shown below. Each design varies depending on the date, day of the week, how long time has elapsed, etc.

Color theme	Example of design
GentleWhite Natural SilverLine	 Graphic clock
UrbanBlack CobaltBlue	 Seasonal clock
JewelryPink Gorgeous Citrus	 Event clock

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Desktop clock] ▶ [2 hours].

- To not show Desktop clock, select [OFF].

Note

- While Desktop clock is shown, press a key to return to the stand-by display.
- When Desktop clock is ended due to an incoming voice calls/Videophone calls/mail, alarms, time that has elapsed and others, press / in stand-by to show Desktop clock again.
- Desktop clock is shown at [Brightness 3] regardless of Light/Power saver.

Call/Rcv Display

Changing Call/Receive Image

- Use JPEG/GIF images, animated GIFs and Flash movies in My picture of Data box. Also set i-motion as Receive display (excluding voice only i-motion (melodies with no video)).
- **sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, hQVGA: 240×176** and **QVGA: 320×240** can be set.
- Images with the width or height larger than 480 (W) × 288 (H) pixels are reduced.

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Themes]** ▶ **[Call/Rcv display]** ▶ **select an item** ▶ **⊞** (Select).

Item	Outgoing calls
	Incoming voice calls
	Incoming video phone
	Payphone
	User unset
	Not support

- When an item is selected, a preview of the set image appears. However, preview does not appear when a movie/i-motion is set.

- 2 Select folder ▶ select an image and press **⊞** (OK).

- To set the Receive display, select [My picture]/[i-motion] before selecting a folder.
- To check image, select an image. Press **CLR** and the previous screen reappears. For pre-installed animated GIFs, press **⊙** to play. Playback automatically stops after approximately 15 to 30 seconds.
- For movies/i-motion, press **⊙** (Pause) to pause playback. Press **⊙** to continue playback. Press **⊞** and the previous screen reappears.
- Refer to P. 201 for details on setting i-motion as the Receive display.

Note

- If the Receive display is changed, ring tone may also change (☞ P. 201).
- If original still picture set as Call/Receive display is deleted, the default setting image reappears.
- Images that cannot be set do not appear.
- Incoming Videophone is prioritized over User unset for Videophone calls with no caller ID.
- Images in microSD Memory Card cannot be set as a Call/Receive display. Copy/transfer them to the FOMA terminal handset before setting. Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as a Receive display. To use shot movies, save them on the FOMA terminal handset. Movies/i-motion in the [Movable contents] folder in microSD Memory Card can directly be set.
- **Picture call set** may be prioritized over the Receive display setting if set to [ON].

Send/Rcv Display

Changing Image for Sending/Receiving Messages

Change the images that appear when sending or receiving mail or when mail reception is completed.

- Use JPEG/GIF images, animated GIFs and Flash movies in My picture of Data box. i-motion can also be used for Mail received screen (excluding voice only i-motion (melodies with no video)).

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Themes]** ▶ **[Send/Rcv display]** ▶ **select an item** ▶ **⊞** (Select).

Item	Send display	Mail rcvd screen
	Receive display	

- When an item is selected, a preview of the set image appears. However, the preview does not appear when a movie/i-motion is set.

- 2 Select folder ▶ select an image and press **⊞** (OK).

- To set the Mail received screen, select [My picture]/[i-motion] before selecting a folder.
- To check image, select an image. Press **CLR** and the previous screen reappears. For pre-installed animated GIFs, press **⊙** to play. Playback automatically stops after approximately 15 to 30 seconds.
- For movies/i-motion, press **⊙** (Pause) to pause playback. Press **⊙** to resume playback. To return to the previous screen, press **⊞**.

Note

- If the Mail received screen is changed, mail ring tone may also be changed.
- If an image set for Send/Receive display or Mail received screen is deleted, the default setting image reappears.
- Images that cannot be set for the Send/Receive display or Mail received screen do not appear.
- Images on microSD Memory Card cannot be set for the Send/Receive display and Mail received screen. Copy/transfer to FOMA terminal handset before setting. Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset cannot be set for Mail received screen. To use shot movies, save them on the FOMA terminal handset. Movies/i-motion saved in the [Movable contents] folder on microSD Memory Card can be directly set.
- For the SMS and Message R/F receive complete screen, the default screen cannot be changed from.

Picture Call Set

Setting Whether to Show Phonebook Image for Incoming Calls

Set to show picture call image when a call is received from a phone number with Picture call set in the phonebook (☞ P. 104, P. 109).

- When caller ID is not sent or if picture call images/movies are not set in phonebook, images are not displayed even if Picture call is set to [ON] (☞ P. 106).

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Themes] ▶ [Call/Rcv display] ▶ [Picture call set] ▶ [ON]/[OFF].

Note

- Images are prioritized in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	Phonebook Picture call → group Picture call → Call/Receive display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If i-motion is set, the set i-motion may be prioritized.

Light/Power Saver

Saving Battery Power

Adjust settings such as the screen display time and conserve battery power.

Settings for items such as display time vary for each mode as shown below (Durations are approximations).

	Norm (auto bright)	Norm (fixed bright)	Eco mode (Pwr saver)	Original Eco mode*1
Display light time	10 sec	10 sec	5 sec	10 sec
Screen dsp time	1 min	1 min	30 sec	1 min
Brightness*2	Auto-matic	6	1	Auto-matic
Keypad light setting	Light	Light	OFF	Light

*1 Change Original Eco mode settings (☞ P. 132).

*2 When set to [Automatic], the brightness sensor (☞ P. 25) automatically adjusts the brightness of the display and the keypad backlight according to the surrounding light. Adjusting may take some time when a bright or dark room is entered immediately after the phone is opened. Do not apply stickers to the brightness sensor (☞ P. 24). Doing so may interfere with the sensor.

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Light/Power saver] ▶ select Light/Power saver type.

Setting Eco Mode (Power Saver) by One-touch Operation

- In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** (Eco) ▶ [Yes].
 - Eco mode (Power saver) is set. When Eco mode (Power saver) is already set, the Light/Power saver screen appears.

Note

- To disable, press **Ⓜ** (Eco) again to show the Light/Power saver screen and select the Light/Power saver type other than [Eco mode (Pwr saver)].
- Eco mode (Power saver) can only be set in the normal position.

Original Eco Mode

Setting Original Power Saver Mode

Adjust Display light time, Screen display time, Brightness and Keypad light settings for [Original Eco mode] of Light/Power saver settings.

Setting Display and Key Lights

<Display Light Time>

Set the light duration for display and key backlight for the following situations. Backlight turns off when set time passes.

- When Light/Power saver is set to [Norm (auto bright)], [Norm (fixed bright)] or [Eco mode (Pwr saver)], Display light time, Screen display time, Brightness and Keypad light setting in Original Eco mode are disabled.

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Light/Power saver] ▶ [Original Eco mode] ▶ [Display light time] ▶ select an item.

Display light time	
Ⓜ Normal	
Ⓜ Charging	10 seconds
Ⓜ Video-phone	
Ⓜ Internet	
Ⓜ i-opp11	

Normal	Set the length of time the display lights from 1 to 99 seconds while handset is turned on, keys are pressed, handset is opened/closed, or a call is received.
--------	---

Charging	Set to [Same as normal] or [Always ON] while handset is connected to AC or DC adapter (sold separately).
Video-phone	Set to [Same as normal] or [Always ON] while Videophone is in use.
Internet	Set to [Same as normal] or [Always ON] while i-mode/Full Browser is in use.
i-appli	Set to [Same as normal] or [Software] while i-appli is in use.

2 Set light time.

Normal	Enter from 01 to 99 seconds and press
Charging/Video-phone/Internet	[Same as normal]/[Always ON]
i-appli	[Same as normal]/[Software]

Note

- Light duration (seconds) can only be set for Normal.
- Increasing light duration shortens continuous stand-by time.
- When the same time is set for Normal Display light time and Screen display time, Screen display time is prioritized.
- The display brightness during a Videophone call follows the setting of Original Eco mode in Light/Power saver. When Videophone in Display light time is set to [Same as normal], the brightness is adjusted to the setting of Brightness. When [Always ON] is set, the brightness is adjusted to [Brightness 2].
- **Backlight time** in **Image Viewer** and **i-motion player** applies to the light duration at Flash movie or movie playback.
- If Backlight time for the following functions are set to [As light setting], Normal in Display light time is applied.
 - Image Viewer
 - i-motion player
 - Camera (when shooting movies)
 - Chara-den player
 - Document Viewer
 - Manga&BookReader
 - Internet movie player
 - Music&Video Channel player
- Light is always lit for **Slideshow**, **Shoot still picture**, **Character reader**, **Bar code reader** and **Card reader** regardless of the display light time settings.

Note

- Light duration is prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Light duration	i-appli → Videophone/Internet → Charging → Normal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If Videophone is used while i-appli is being activated, Display light time for Videophone is prioritized. ● If Display light time is set to [Always ON] for Charging and Videophone is used while charging, Display light time is set to [Always ON] regardless of the setting for Videophone.

Lighting the Keypad

<Keypad Light Setting>

- The duration when set to [Light] follows the Display light time setting.
- Note that continuous stand-by time decreases when set to [Light].

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Light/Power saver] ▶ [Original Eco mode] ▶ [Keypad light setting] ▶ [Light].

Setting Image Display Time

<Screen Dsp Time>

Turn off the display when FOMA terminal is not in use for a set period of time to conserve battery power.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Light/Power saver] ▶ [Original Eco mode] ▶ [Screen dsp time] ▶ select time before activating Power saver mode.

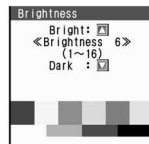
Time	30 seconds	3 minutes	15 minutes
	1 minute	5 minutes	20 minutes
	2 minutes	10 minutes	

Note

- In Power saver mode, press a key to show the screen. A function assigned to the key is executed during voice call only. After the screen is shown, the normal key operation is enabled.
- During i-Channel ticker playback, Power saver mode is activated according to the screen display time setting. However, when the Screen display time is set to [30 seconds], Power saver mode is not activated for 60 seconds from the start of i-Channel ticker playback.

Note

- When Flash movies or animated GIFs are set as stand-by and Power saver mode is exited to return to stand-by, the movie or animation resumes playback from the beginning.
 - Power saver mode is not activated even when the Screen display time passes in the following cases.
 - Videophone calls are in progress
 - Mail transmission is in progress
 - Slideshow is being played
 - PushTalk transmission is in progress
 - Camera is being activated
 - Data is being transferred with an external device
 - i-mode transmission is in progress
 - i-motion is being played^{*1}
 - GPS positioning is being performed
 - 1Seg is being watched^{*2}
 - 1Seg is being recorded^{*2}
 - Video is being played
 - Desktop clock is being shown
- *1 Power saver mode is activated according to the screen display time setting for Stand-by i-motion.
- *2 Excluding when using Multi Window.



When brightness is manually adjusted

Adjusting Display Brightness
<Brightness>

Adjust the display brightness. Set Brightness to [Automatic] to automatically adjust the display brightness according to the surrounding light. In addition, Keypad light is automatically switched between [Light] and [OFF] when Keypad light setting is set to [Light].

- Note that increasing brightness shortens continuous stand-by time.

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Light/Power saver]** ▶ **[Original Eco mode]** ▶ **[Brightness]** ▶ **select brightness.**

To adjust brightness automatically	[Automatic]
To adjust brightness manually	[Manual] → ⊙ / ⊙ → ⊙ ● Select from 16 display brightness levels. The screen appears at the set brightness as adjustments are made. When manually changed, the brightness is set to [Brightness 6].

Kisekai Tool
Changing Custom Menu Design

Use the Kisekai Tool to change the Custom menu screen.

Using Kisekai Tool

Use the Kisekai Tool downloaded from i-mode sites for the terminal and change the ring tone, stand-by, menu icon, etc. collectively.

- Refer to P. 193 for details on downloading the Kisekai Tool.
- The following items can be set.

Screen	Stand-by display, Outgoing calls display, Incoming calls display, Incoming video phone display, Send display, Receive display, Mail received display, Signal icon, Battery icon, Animated notice, Custom menu image (including i-mode menu image and mail menu image)
Ring tone	Phone ring tone, Videophone ring tone, Mail ring tone, Message R/F ring tone, PushTalk tone
Other	Color theme, Font size

- Items that can be set depend on the Kisekai Tool.
- Kisekai Tool in the [Pre-install] folder in Kisekai Tool of Data box can be used only for screens.
- When the custom menu image is changed by Kisekai Tool, the custom menu items may be changed according to the menu history. In addition, some items cannot be selected even if the function number is entered. In this case, operation may not run as explained in this manual. Switch the menu screen to the Basic menu (☎ P. 34) or perform Reset menu screen (☎ P. 136).
- When [ドコモダケ] is set to Kisekai Tool, select [基本メニュー呼び出し] to temporarily return to the normal menu structure.

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Data box]** ▶ **[Kisekai Tool].**

- Alternatively, press **☐** in Basic menu and Custom menu.
- Or, in stand-by, press **⊙** and select [Settings] → [Disp/LED/Power saver] → [Themes] → [Kisekai Tool].

2 Select folder.

3 Select Kisekae Tool.

- To check data, select the data. However, Custom menu cannot be checked in the viewer position. Return to the normal position to check them.



Data screen in Kisekae Tool

4 Press **[Kisekae]** [Yes].

- In the confirmation screen for the collective setting of the font size, select [Yes] to change to the font size specified for Kisekae Tool.

Note

- Checking Kisekae Tool saved in the [Movable contents] folder on microSD Memory Card is possible. However, they cannot be directly set. Transfer them to the FOMA terminal handset before setting.
- Even if Kisekae Tool is set in any mode while the 2in1 service is used, the setting is reflected to all modes, phone numbers and mail addresses except the following items.
 - Stand-by display is reflected to the A mode only.
 - Phone ring tone and Videophone ring tone are reflected to Number A only.
 - Mail ring tone is reflected to Address A only.

Related Operations

Set data check volume <Set volume>

- 1 In data list in Kisekae Tool, press **[Kisekae]** [Set volume].
- 2 Press **[Volume Up]** **[Volume Down]**.

Set display size when setting i-motion as stand-by display <Stand-by i-motion>

- 1 In data list in Kisekae Tool, press **[Kisekae]** [Stand-by i-motion].
- 2 Select [Normal]/[Zoom].

Changing Menu Items

Depending on the Kisekae Tool, change the items in Custom menu to other functions (Manual customization).

- The preset [White], [Black], [Pink], [Blue] and [拡大メニュー] (Large) support the manual customization.

Changing the menu items <Assign function>

1 In Custom menu, select an item and press **[Kisekae]** [Assign function].

- In Custom menu, when Kisekae Tool, which does not support the manual customization, is selected or the item, which cannot be changed, is selected, [Assign function] cannot be selected.

2 Select a function to assign [Yes].

- Allotted functions differ depending on the Kisekae Tool.

Resetting the manually customized Custom menu <Rst func assignment>

1 In Custom menu, press **[Kisekae]** [Rst func assignment] [Yes].

Automatically Sorting the Menu Items According to the Menu History

Depending on Kisekae Tool, some items in Custom menu are automatically sorted according to the menu history (Automatic customization).

- The preset [ドコモダケ] supports the automatic customization.
- Depending on Kisekae Tool, the sorting method and others differ.

Resetting the automatically customized Custom menu <Reset menu history>

1 In Custom menu, press **[Kisekae]** [Reset menu history] [Yes].

Resetting Kisekae Tool Settings

Resetting all setting items of display/ring tone <Reset display/sound>

- When resetting display/sound, Kisekae Tool [White] (for the handset color White) is set regardless of the handset color.

1 In stand-by, press **[9]** for 1+ seconds.

2 Select [Reset display/sound] enter terminal security code and press **[Agree]**.

Resetting only menu screen

<Reset menu screen>

- When resetting menu screen, Kisekae Tool [White] (for the handset color White) is set regardless of the handset color.

1 In stand-by, press **[9]** for **1+ seconds**.

- Alternatively, in Custom menu, press **[*]**.

2 Select **[Reset menu screen]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **[0]** ▶ **[Agree]**.

Themes

Arranging the Display

Changing Submenu Design

<Submenu Image>

Change menu background pattern (image around edge of display).

- Available images are saved in the [Pre-install] folder of My picture of Data box.

1 In stand-by, press **[0]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Themes]** ▶ **[Submenu image]** ▶ **[Select]**.

- Press **[*]** to switch between the image set screens of upper and lower frames.

2 Select **[Pre-install]** ▶ select image and press **[OK]**.

- To check image, select an image. Press **[CLR]** and the previous screen reappears.
- When the upper frame image is set, the lower frame image set screen appears. To set an image, press **[Select]** and repeat step 2.

Setting the Number Design for the Dial Input Screen <Dial Image Set>

1 In stand-by, press **[0]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Themes]** ▶ **[Dial image set]** ▶ select an item.



Setting the Animation for the Notice Window <Animate Notices>

Set images for windows with confirmation/error messages.

- Use JPEG/GIF images or animated GIFs with a size of 212 (W) × 42 (H) pixels or 424 (W) × 84 (H) pixels. However, Flash movies are not available.

1 In stand-by, press **[0]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Themes]** ▶ **[Animate notices]** ▶ **[Select]**.

2 Select folder ▶ select image and press **[OK]**.

- To check image, select an image. Press **[CLR]** and the previous screen reappears.

Changing the Design of Icons

<Signal/Batt/S Clock>

- Use images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to 48 (W) × 60 (H) pixels or 96 (W) × 120 (H) pixels for Signal icon, 72 (W) × 40 (H) pixels or 144 (W) × 80 (H) pixels for Battery icon and 49 (W) × 40 (H) pixels or 98 (W) × 80 (H) pixels for Small clock are available. However, Flash movies, animated GIFs and JPEG images are not available.

1 In stand-by, press **[0]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Themes]** ▶ **[Signal/batt/s clock]** ▶ select mark.

Mark	Signal icon	Small clock
	Battery icon	

2 Press **[Select]** ▶ select folder ▶ select image and press **[OK]**.

- To check image, select an image. Press **[CLR]** and the previous screen reappears.

Changing the Color Scheme

<Color Theme Setting>

1 In stand-by, press **[0]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Themes]** ▶ **[Color theme setting]** ▶ select color theme ▶ **[Yes]**.

Color theme	GentleWhite	Natural
	UrbanBlack	Gorgeous
	JewelryPink	Citrus
	CobaltBlue	SilverLine

- When a color theme is selected, the color scheme appears on the screen.

Changing Basic Menu Design


Change icons, background image and whether to show icon names in the Basic menu.

Setting Basic Menu Icons <Icon Image>


- Use JPEG images, GIF images or animated GIFs that are 76 (W) × 76 (H) pixels or 152 (W) × 152 (H) pixels. Downloaded images can also be used.
- Set two images per icon, for selected and unselected status.
- Up to three scenes are used for animated GIFs. Image for selected status is not available.
- If an image in My picture of Data box is set as a menu icon, even if deleted, the image is retained until the menu icon setting is changed.

1 In Basic menu, select an icon and press  ▶ [Icon settings].

2 Select [Icon image] ▶ select folder ▶ select image for unselected status and press  (OK).

- Images that cannot be set for menu icons do not appear.
- When animated GIF is selected, Basic menu reappears.
- To check image, select an image. Press  and the previous screen reappears.

3 Select image for selected status.

To set a different image for selected status	[Yes] → select folder → select image and press 
To set the same image for unselected status	[No]

Related Operations

Show icon names <Dsp icon name>

In Basic menu, press  ▶ [Icon settings] ▶ [Dsp icon name] ▶ [ON].

Note (Related operations)



Display icon name


- When characters are included in the icon image, the characters appear doubled when Display icon name is set to [ON].

Setting Basic Menu Background

<Set Background>



- Use JPEG and GIF images (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not available). Downloaded images can also be used.
- If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as background image, even if deleted, the image remains as background image until changed.

1 In Basic menu, press  ▶ [Set background] ▶ select folder ▶ select still picture and press  (OK).

- Still pictures that cannot be set as background images do not appear.
- To check still picture, select a still picture. Press  and the previous screen reappears.


Resetting Basic Menu to Default Status <Reset Menu Screen>

Reset Basic menu Icon image settings, Display icon name, and background settings to the default status.

1 In Basic menu, press  ▶ [Reset menu screen] ▶ enter terminal security code and press  ▶ [Yes].

Viewing the Key List <Key List>

Refer to the Key list and look up Basic menu icons and key operations from stand-by.

1 In Basic menu, press  ▶ [Key list] ▶ select the item to check.

Item	Icon	Stand-by display
------	------	------------------

- Key list for the selected item appears.

LED Color Settings/LED Pattern Settings

Setting the Illumination

Set flashed called LED color and flashing pattern in a call, when receiving a call, when using GPS function, etc.

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[LED settings]** ▶ select an item.

Item	Called LED → Phone
	Called LED → Video-phone
	Called LED → PushTalk
	Mail LED → Mail/Message LED
	Mail LED → Mail send/rcv LED*
	In-call LED*
	Alarm/Timer LED*
	IC card LED*
	Open/close LED*
	GPS LED → Position location
	GPS LED → Location notification
	GPS LED → Loc provision/accept
	GPS LED → Loc provision/notify

* Select item and then select [ON].

- 2 Select **[LED color settings]** ▶ select called LED color.

LED color	Rainbow	Aqua
	Aurora	Sunshine
	Sun set	Plasma
	Leaf	Sky

- Each time a color is selected, called LED color changes.
- For checking or notifying present location, setting to [OFF] disables the LED flash.
- IC card LED is set to [ON]/[OFF] only. The LED color cannot be changed.

- 3 Select **[LED pattern settings]** ▶ select LED pattern.

LED pattern	Jewel	Signal
	Firefly	Neon
	Shooting star	Fireworks
	Stars	Melody ON*

* Mail send/receive LED, In-call LED and Open/close LED are not available.

- Each time a pattern is selected, called LED flashing pattern changes.
- GPS LED or IC card LED is set to [ON]/[OFF] only. The LED pattern cannot be changed.

Note

- When a call is received during data transmission, LED color is the set color for the voice called LED.
- Called LED and Mail LED are prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Called LED	Phonebook called LED → group called LED → regular called LED
Mail LED	Phonebook mail LED → group mail LED → regular mail LED

When Location provision is allowed/chosen

- “When Location provision is allowed” is the case when GPS Service settings are set to [許可] (Always allow) or when Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting) is set to [許可] (Always allow).
- “When Location provision is chosen” is the case when GPS Service settings are set to [毎回確認] (Always choose) or when Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting) is set to [毎回確認] (Always choose).
- Refer to P. 281 for details on GPS Service settings.

Notice LED

Notifying a Call or Mail Received with LED

Set the LED to flash for missed calls and new mail.

- The LED flashes in [Aqua] for missed calls, in [Leaf] for new mail, and in [Aqua] and [Leaf] for both missed calls and new mail at approximately 4 second intervals. The LED color cannot be changed.

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[LED settings]** ▶ **[Notice LED]** ▶ select item ▶ **[ON]**.

Item	Missed call notice
	New unrd mail noti

Note

- For the normal position/viewer position, Notice LED flashes in Power saver mode.
- If no operation is performed for about 24 hours after Notice LED starts flashing, the LED turns off.

Display Img Quality

Changing Image Quality

Set the display quality by functions which show images. In addition, automatically control the brightness of Backlight depending on the image scene while playing movie.

Setting Image Quality Mode

<Vibrant Image Mode>

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Display img quality]** ▶ **[Vibrant image mode]** ▶ select a function.

Function	Stand-by
	Camera
	1Seg/Data Box(1Seg)
	Data Box(My picture)
	Data Box(Music&V ch)
	Data Box(i-motion)
	Internet movie plyr

- Select image ▶ check image quality and press **⊙**.

Normal	Standard image quality
Dynamic	Image quality with increased colorfulness and emphasized edges
Vivid*1	Image quality with increased colorfulness
Sharpness*1	Image quality with emphasized edges
Movie*2	Image quality to see a movie

*1 Cannot be set with [1Seg/Data Box(1Seg)].

*2 Can be set with [1Seg/Data Box(1Seg)] only.

Automatically Controlling the Brightness of Backlight While Playing Movie <Control by Scene>

- This is available when the brightness of Light/Power saver is manually set to 1 to 8.

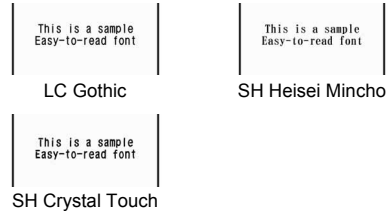
- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Display img quality]** ▶ **[Control by scene]** ▶ **[ON]**.

Font Style Setting

Changing Font (Font Style)

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Font style]** ▶ **[Font style setting]** ▶ select font style.

- To change sample font style, select a style with **⊙**.



Font Size

Changing Font Size

Change the font sizes displayed on the screen collectively. For i-mode, Full Browser, Mail/Message and Text input, the font size can be set individually.

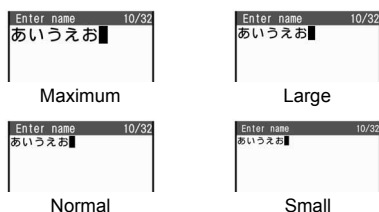
- In the collective setting, the font sizes are changed on the following screens.
 - i-mode
 - Full Browser
 - Mail/Message
 - Text input
 - Manga&BookReader
 - Submenu
 - List display
 - Confirmation/Error messages

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Font style]** ▶ **[Font size]** ▶ select font size.

Collective setting	[Collective setting] → [Normal]/[Enlarge] ● Alternatively, press 5 for 1+ seconds in stand-by to switch between [Normal] and [Enlarge]. ● When a confirmation screen asking whether to change the menu appears, select [Yes] to change the font size and menu. Select [No] to change only the font size.
--------------------	---

Individual setting	i-mode	[Individual setting] → select [i-mode] → [Maximum]/[Large]/[Normal]/[Small] → [Yes]
	Full Browser	[Individual setting] → select [Full Browser] → [Large]/[Normal]/[Small]/[Minimum] → [Yes]
	Mail/Message	[Individual setting] → select [Mail/Message] → [Maximum]/[Large]/[Normal]/[Small]/[Minimum] → [Yes]
	Input	[Individual setting] → select [Input] → [Maximum]/[Large]/[Normal]/[Small] → [Yes]

Example: When setting the Text input individually

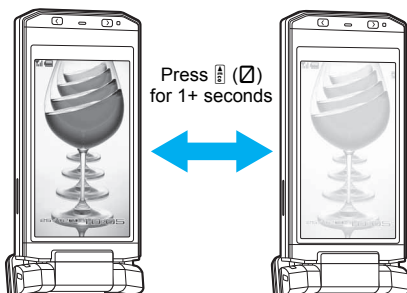


Note

- When the collective setting of Font size is set to [Enlarge], some function numbers of Basic menu (P. 458) may be changed.
- In the compose message screen, even if [Maximum] is set to the text input of each setting, texts for address, subject, or attachment file field appear in the size of [Large].
- Font size cannot be changed on some screens (e.g. word input screen of **User dictionary**).
- Font size for Full Browser is changed only when **Display Mode** is set to [Keitai mode].

Private Filter

Preventing Others from Seeing the Display



- Changing the contrast of the display to prevent others from seeing the screen.

1 In stand-by/during operations, press [A] (Z) for 1+ seconds.

- Private filter is set and [A] (Z) appears in the upper part of the display.
- To disable, press [A] (Z) for 1+ seconds again.

Note

- Private filter cannot be set/disabled during All lock or in the viewer position.
- Private filter is canceled when the FOMA terminal is closed or turned off. However, when Manner mode is set with Linked manner mode set to [ON], Private filter remains enabled even if the FOMA terminal is closed or turned off.
- Private filter is canceled while the display is off due to the **Screen display time**.
- Private filter is not canceled even if the camera is activated while Private filter is set to enabled.

Setting Private Filter in Conjunction with Manner Mode <Linked Manner>

Set so that Private filter is automatically set when Manner mode is set.

1 In stand-by, press [Settings] [Disp/LED/Power saver] [Private filter] [Linked manner] [ON].

- Set/Disable Private filter even while Manner mode is set.

Changing Private Filter Density <Filter Density>

1 In stand-by, press [Settings] [Disp/LED/Power saver] [Private filter] [Filter density] select a filter density.

Filter density	Dark	Normal	Light
----------------	------	--------	-------

- Private filter is more effective to prevent others from seeing the display in the order of [Dark], [Normal] and [Light].

Security Settings

■ Security Codes

- FOMA Terminal Security Code 142
- Changing Terminal Security Code <Change Security Code> 143
- Writing Authentication <Writing Authentic> 143
- Setting PIN Code <UIM Settings> 144
- Disabling PIN Lock 145

■ Restricting Phone Operations and Functions

- Lock Functions 145
- Preventing Use by Others <All Lock> 145
- Using Omakase Lock <Omakase Lock> 146
- Disabling Online Activity <Self Mode> 147
- Hiding Phonebook and Schedule Entries <Function Lock> 147
- Prohibiting Keypad Dialing <Keypad Dial Lock> 148
- Setting Various Lock by One-touch Operation <Multi Easy Lock> 148
- Preventing Side Key Errors <Side Key Guard> 149

■ Restricting Mail and Calls

- Setting Redial and Received Calls <Show Call/Received> 150
- Viewing Information Set as Secret <Secret Mode> 150
- Receiving Calls from Only Specified Phone Numbers <Accept Calls> 150
- Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers <Reject Calls> 151
- Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID <Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure> 152
- Silencing Ring Tone for Callers Not in Phonebook <Set Mute Ring Time> 153
- Rejecting Callers Not in Phonebook <Reject Unknown> 153

■ Using Data Security Service

- Using Data Security Service <Data Sec. Service> 153

■ Other Security Settings

- Other Security Settings 154

FOMA Terminal Security Code

For convenient use of FOMA terminal functions, some functions require security codes. In addition to the terminal security code used for various handset operations, use security codes such as the network security code and i-mode password when using network services. Use security codes with various functions to fully utilize the FOMA terminal.


- Entered terminal security codes (security code for each function), i-mode passwords, and PIN1/PIN2 codes are masked with [*].

Precautions for Various Security Codes

- Do not use easily estimated numbers for security codes to be set such as “birthday”, “part of a telephone number”, “address or room number”, “1111”, “1234”. Keep a separate memo of passwords and security codes.
- Keep security codes private. If the security codes are found and improperly used by others, DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of the users.
- DoCoMo does not ask the users their security codes.
- When security codes are lost, the FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring an identification (a driver’s license, etc.), a FOMA terminal and a FOMA card to a DoCoMo Shop.
- For further details, contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.

Terminal Security Code (For Various Functions)

Terminal security code is set to [0000] by default but can be changed by the user (☎P. 143).

If the terminal security code entry screen appears, enter the terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press .

- If terminal security code is incorrectly entered, [Security code is wrong] appears and the screen before entering a terminal security code reappears. Check correct terminal security code and try again.

Network Security Code

Network security code is a four-digit code used for various registration procedures at ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site) or used for accessing network services. The code is set at the time of subscription and afterwards can be changed by the user.

For those with “DoCoMo ID/password” of the general support site “My DoCoMo” designed for PC, the registration procedure for a new network security code is available from PC.

From i-mode terminals, the security code can be changed by the user, accessing “各種手続き (Procedures)” in ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site).

※ Refer to the back cover for details on “My DoCoMo” and “ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site)”.

i-mode Password

A four-digit “i-mode password” is required to register/delete sites in マイメニュー (My menu), or subscribe/cancel message services and charged i-mode services (Additionally, information providers may set their own passwords).

- i-mode password is set to [0000] by default but can be changed by the user.
- From i-mode terminals, the password can be changed by accessing [iMenu] → [English iMenu] → [Options] → [Change i-mode Password].

PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code

Set two security codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, on the FOMA card. These security codes are set to [0000] by default but can be changed by the user (☎P. 145).

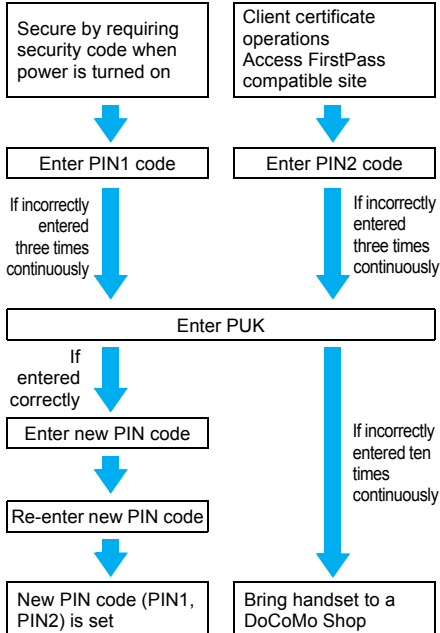
PIN1 code is a four- to eight-digit security code that is entered when the FOMA terminal is turned on or when a FOMA card is inserted to prevent unauthorized use by a third party. Enter PIN1 code to enable making/receiving calls and operating the handset. PIN2 code is four- to eight-digit security code that is entered when performing operations such as applying for or using Client certificates, or resetting total cost.

- Use the previously set PIN1 and PIN2 codes when inserting an old FOMA card into a newly purchased FOMA terminal.

PUK

PUK is an eight-digit number used to disable PIN1/PIN2 code lock. Enter PUK to disable the lock. PUK cannot be changed by the user. Note PIN1/PIN2 codes and PUK.

- PIN1/PIN2 codes are automatically locked if incorrectly entered three times continuously.
- If PUK is incorrectly entered a total of ten times continuously, FOMA card is completely locked.

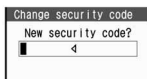


Change Security Code

Changing Terminal Security Code

Change the terminal security code (four to eight digits). Terminal security code is set to [0000] by default.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Security]** **[Change security code]** enter current terminal security code and press **[OK]**.



- 2 Enter new terminal security code and press **[OK]** enter new terminal security code again and press **[OK]**.

Writing Authentic

Writing Authentication

Handwrite characters and symbols on the TOUCH CRUISER pad to perform the authentication. Handwriting can be used as secure security function instead of entering the terminal security code. Compared to the terminal security code entry, saved contents can be more flexible. However, since the authentication is not performed with precise handwriting, keep saved contents private.

- Even if the TOUCH CRUISER Usage settings is set to [OFF], handwrite for the writing authentication or save symbols for the authentication.

Setting Writing Authentication

<Writing Authentic>

Save characters and symbols that are required for Writing authentication.

- Writing authentication is not completely accurate. DoCoMo shall not be liable for damages stemming from a third person using this product or if the product cannot be used because writing authentication does not recognize properly.
- If writing authentication is failed, the error dates and times are recorded in Error history and can be checked. Up to nine of the most recent errors are recorded.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Security]** **[Writing authentic]** enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

- 2 Select [ON].

- The operation is completed if select [OFF].

- 3 Register symbol for authentication.

- If the length of a handwriting per stroke is short, it is highly possible that the size, shape or position changes, and an accurate authentication is hardly performed.

To register new	[Agree] → [Register symbol] → [Agree] → enter character/symbol in handwriting and press [Add] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Handwrite characters and symbols to be used for the authentication on the TOUCH CRUISER pad. ● Handwrite characters and symbols with 2 to 12 strokes. ● Register again if [Unable to register. Try again] appears.
To overwrite	[Register symbol] → [Overwrite] → [Agree] → enter character/symbol in handwriting and press [Add]

To check registered symbol for authentication	[Register symbol] → [Check saved data] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press to end viewing. ● Press (Delete) and select [Yes] to delete symbol for authentication.
To check Error history	[Error history] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press to end viewing.

4 Press (Complete).

- [Simple security that uses registered symbols] appears.

5 Select [Agree].

Activating Writing Authentication

1 In the writing authentication screen, **handwrite the symbols saved for the authentication** (OK).

- Handwrite characters and symbols saved on the TOUCH CRUISER pad.
- Handwrite in the same stroke order as when saving. Also, handwrite in the same shape and position as when saving as much as possible.
- Press to erase handwritten contents.
- If authentication is successful, [Authentication successful] appears and function can be used.
- To switch to enter security code, press (Sec code).
- If authentication is not successful, [Unable to authenticate. Register symbol again if error continues] appears. To authenticate again, select [Re-authenticate] and operate step 1 again. To enter terminal security code, select [Enter sec code], enter terminal security code, and press .

UIM Settings

Setting PIN Code

Change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes on FOMA card. PIN1 and PIN2 codes are saved to the FOMA card. PIN1 code and PIN2 code are set to [0000] by default.

- PIN1 code is a four- to eight-digit security code that prevents unauthorized use of the FOMA card. PIN2 code is a four- to eight-digit security code used for authentication when connecting to sites, Internet and online services. Enter when performing Client certificate operations (issuance of Client certificate to use FirstPass) or accessing FirstPass compatible sites (P. 199).
- Enter the four- to eight-digit number for PIN1/PIN2 code (P. 142).

Note

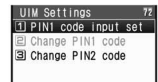
- PIN1 code/PIN2 code is locked if incorrectly entered three times in PIN1 code/PIN2 code entry screen. Disable PIN lock. When disabling PIN lock, new PIN1 code/PIN2 code must be entered (P. 145).
- If three consecutive PIN2 code entry errors are made and the FOMA terminal is locked, the handset continues to receive a signal and can make/receive calls and send/receive mail. However, if three consecutive PIN1 code entry errors are made, the FOMA terminal is locked and functions that require a signal are disabled.

Setting Handset to Require PIN Code Entry When Power Is Turned On

<PIN1 Code Input Set>

Set to require PIN1 code entry when turning on the FOMA terminal to prevent unauthorized use.

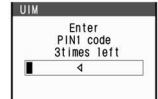
1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Security]** **[UIM Settings]** **terminal security code and press .**



FOMA card settings screen

2 Select **[PIN1 code input set]** **[ON]/[OFF]** **enter PIN code and press .**

- PIN1 code can be entered up to three times. PIN1 code entry screen shows how many times you can enter PIN1 code.



Entering PIN1 code when power is turned on

Set PIN1 code input set to [ON] and PIN1 code entry screen appears when the power is turned on.

- Enter PIN1 code to operate FOMA terminal. Prevents unauthorized use of the handset.

1 Press (Power) for 2+ seconds and turn on handset **enter PIN1 code and press .**

- PIN1 code can be entered up to three times. PIN1 code entry screen shows how many times you can enter PIN1 code.
- Enter correct PIN1 code to show the stand-by display.

Changing PIN1/PIN2 Code

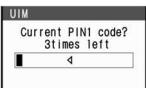
<Change PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code>

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Security]** **[UIM Settings]** **[enter terminal security code]** **[enter]**.

- When PIN1 code input set is set to [OFF], PIN1 code cannot be changed.

2 Select **PIN1 or PIN2 code** **[enter current PIN code]** and press **[enter]**.

- PIN code can be entered up to three times. PIN code entry screen shows how many times you can enter PIN code.
- If PIN1/PIN2 code is entered incorrectly, [PIN1/PIN2 code not recognized] appears after step 3 and the screen of step 2 reappears.

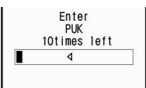


3 Enter new PIN code and press **[enter]** **[enter new PIN code again]** and press **[enter]**.

Disabling PIN Lock

Screen when PIN1/PIN2 is locked

- PUK can be entered up to ten times. PIN lock disabling screen shows how many times you can enter PUK.
- Enter the four- to eight-digit number for PIN1/PIN2 code (see P. 142).



Disabling PIN1 Lock

- Use the same steps to disable PIN2 code lock.

1 In the PUK entry screen with PIN lock set, enter PUK (eight digits) and press **[enter]**.

2 Enter new PIN1 code and press **[enter]** **[enter new PIN1 code again]** and press **[enter]**.

- [Changed] appears.

Lock Functions

Restrict phonebook operations such as retrieving, saving and deleting, and calling with the dial keys.

- Enter terminal security code to set/disable lock.
- The following items can be set.

Lock function	Operation/Restrictions	Page
All lock	Prevents unauthorized use of the FOMA terminal for all operations other than power ON/OFF and answering voice/Videophone calls.	P. 145
Omakase Lock	The access to all the data in the FOMA terminal is remotely locked.	P. 146
Self mode*	Making/receiving voice call and Videophone, sending/receiving PushTalk, i-mode mail, and SMS, receiving Message R/F, and i-mode functions are not available.	P. 147
Function lock	Display, edit and operation for Multimedia, Mail, Phonebook (including PushTalk phonebook), Schedule are not available, preventing access and rewriting of personal information. Each function can be set individually.	P. 147
Keypad dial lock	Dialing and phonebook editing are not available. Use phonebook, Redial or Received calls to call.	P. 148
Multi easy lock	Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be set by one-touch key operation.	P. 148
Multi lock auto-set	Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be automatically set when the display turns off.	P. 149
IC card lock	Prevents use of IC card functions.	P. 272
Side key guard*	Locks side keys and prevents errors.	P. 149

* Terminal security code is not required.

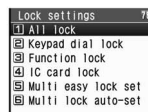
All Lock

Preventing Use by Others

Prevent all operations other than power ON/OFF and answering voice/Videophone calls.

Enabling All Lock


1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Security]** **[Lock settings]** **[enter terminal security code]** and press **[enter]**.



Lock settings screen

2

Select [All lock] ▶ [Yes].



- All lock is set and [All lock] appears in the stand-by display.
-  appears when All lock is set.





Disabling All Lock

1

During All lock, enter terminal security code in stand-by and press

- .
- [All lock] and  disappear in the stand-by display and All lock is disabled.

Note

- During All lock, [待受画面1] appears in the stand-by display. In such cases, the calendar display is set to [OFF]. When All lock is disabled, the previous screen reappears.
- Even if All lock is enabled, FeliCa IC card functions are not locked.
- When a missed call is received when All lock is enabled, the call is not indicated on the screen. When All lock is disabled,  (missed call) appears.
- During All lock, making voice/Videophone calls is not available. However, calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) can still be made. To make a call, enter phone number in the terminal security code entry screen and press . Phone number is masked with [***].
- During All lock, **alarms** are not available.
- i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F are automatically received but do not appear during All lock. Once All lock is disabled, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F icons appear.
- During All lock, Area Mail is automatically received and displayed on the screen.
- Request for Location provision in the GPS function is answered during All lock.
- Failure to disable All lock five times consecutively will turn the FOMA terminal off. Turn the handset on again and enter correct terminal security code.

Omakase Lock


Using Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock is a service to lock the FOMA terminal remotely, for example, in case of loss, by your request. Contact DoCoMo or access My DoCoMo website to use the service. This function will protect the user's privacy and Osaifu-Keitai. The lock is disabled by a call or others from the user.

- ※ Omakase Lock is a paid service. However, if Omakase Lock is subscribed while or at the same time as when the use of FOMA terminal is suspended, the usage fee of Omakase Lock is not charged.
- ※ When Location provision ON/OFF is set to [Loc. provision:ON] during Omakase lock or when [Permission sched.] is set while the location provision permission schedule is set, request for Location provision in the GPS function is answered.

Enable/Disable Omakase Lock

 0120-524-360 Office hours: 24hours

- ※ Omakase Lock can also be enabled/disabled from the My DoCoMo website using PCs.

- ※ For details of Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]".

When Omakase Lock is set

- [Omakase Lock activated] appears, and Omakase Lock is set.
- Omakase Lock is a service to lock the FOMA terminal with the registered FOMA card inserted.
- While Omakase Lock is enabled, all key operations and functions (including IC card functions) are disabled, except receiving a voice/Videophone call and turning the power ON/OFF.
- When a voice/Videophone call is received while Omakase Lock is enabled, the caller's name or image is not displayed even if they are saved in the phonebook. Only their phone number is displayed.
- While Omakase Lock is enabled, received mail is held at mail center.
- Turning the power ON/OFF does not affect Omakase Lock (the lock is not released by turning the power OFF).



- FOMA card and microSD Memory Card are not locked.

Note

- When Omakase Lock is activated while other functions are being activated, the functions being activated are ended and locked.
- Omakase Lock is prioritized over any other lock functions.
- When the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off, the handset cannot be locked.
- If Omakase Lock is enabled with **Public mode (Drive mode)** set, a Public mode (Drive mode) message is played and the call is disconnected.
- When the subscriber of **Dual Network Service** is using the mova service, the handset cannot be locked.
- Omakase Lock is a service to lock the handset by the request of the subscriber of the FOMA card inserted to the FOMA terminal. Even if the subscriber is not a user of the FOMA terminal, the lock service is applied by a request of the subscriber.
- The lock can be disabled only when the FOMA card of the same phone number as when the lock was enabled is inserted. If the lock cannot be disabled, please contact the number listed in "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Self Mode

Disabling Online Activity

Disable all functions that require a signal such as making/receiving voice call and Videophone, sending/receiving PushTalk, i-mode mail, and SMS, receiving Message R/F, and i-mode.

- Message indicating handset is turned off or in a place with no signal is played to calls received while in Self mode. DoCoMo Voice Mail Service (☎ P. 430) and Call Forwarding Service (☎ P. 433) are available.
- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) can be dialed while in Self mode. However, Self mode is disabled after the call.
- iC transmission, Ir exchange and Ir remote control operations are not available.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Self mode]** ▶ **[ON]/[OFF]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

- When Self mode is set, **[i]** disappears and **[Self]** appears in the upper part of the display.

Note

- Self mode is not available when in i-mode stand-by (**[i]** flashes).

Note

While in Self mode

- View i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F sent and received before setting Self mode, create or edit and save messages. Sending is not available.
- Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center and SMS are held at SMS center. To receive, disable Self mode and perform **Check new message** or **Check new SMS**.
- While in Self mode, Position location, Location notification and Location provision in the GPS function cannot be used. In addition, location service clients cannot be saved, edited or deleted.

Function Lock

Hiding Phonebook and Schedule Entries

Restrict access to mail and phonebook by function to prevent access to personal information or unauthorized editing.

- Following items can be locked separately. i-mode/i-Channel, i-appli, Multimedia, Mail (including MessageR/F), Phonebook, Record message/Voice memo, Memo/Schedule/Alarm, ToruCa, GPS, Chaku-moji
- When Function lock is applied to multimedia, camera functions (still picture/movie shooting), 1Seg functions (excluding Program guide and Booking list), Music&Video Channel functions, Music player functions, SD-Audio functions, Voice recorder functions, Manga&BookReader functions (only when a microSD Memory Card is inserted), Document Viewer functions, and PDF viewer functions are also locked.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Security]** ▶ **[Lock settings]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

- 2 Select **[Function lock]** ▶ select an item to lock/disable ▶ **[Complete]**.

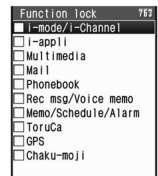
- appears for locked items and appears for disabled items.

- Select an item to switch between lock and disable.

- When Function lock is set, **[F]** appears in the upper part of the display.

- Press **[F]** (SelAll) to lock all items. If all check boxes contain a check, press **[F]** (ClrAll) to disable all items.

- Checks appear in check boxes even if Function lock is set from each function menu (except Multimedia, Alarm, GPS and Chaku-moji).



Function lock settings screen

Note

- Terminal security code entry screen appears when a function other than 1Seg function (excluding **Program guide** and **Booking list**) and GPS function (excluding compatible i-αppli) under Function lock is attempted. Enter correct terminal security code to temporarily disable Function lock. Function is locked when operations are finished. PIM data (Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, **Bookmark** and Mail) on the microSD Memory Card can be accessed with [View microSD data] for each function. PIM is an abbreviation for "Personal Information Manager".
- While Function lock is applied to i-αppli, Program guide is also locked.
- Disabling 1Seg function (excluding Program guide and Booking list) temporarily is not available. When using 1Seg, disable Function lock applied to multimedia.
- Locked items cannot be received by **Ir exchange** and **iC transmission** while Function lock is set.
- Phonebook Function lock is not available when **Reject unknown** is set.
- While Function lock is applied to the phonebook, names and images do not appear even if a call is received from a person saved in the phonebook.
- The following functions are disabled when Function lock is applied to phonebook.
 - 2-touch dialing, 2-touch mail, making calls using earphone
 - Select ring tone, mail ring tone
 - Called LED, Mail LED
 - Entering i-mode mail and SMS recipient using phonebook*
 - Settings other than [OFF] in Accept calls and Reject calls
 - Alarm and Schedule contact settings using phonebook*
 - Displaying schedule by contact*
 - Reject unknown
 - Adding a new member from the phonebook (including PushTalk phonebook) during PushTalk transmission
- * When terminal security code is entered, Function lock is temporarily unset.
- While Memo, Schedule, and Alarm Function lock are set, Booking list is also locked.
- While Memo, Schedule, and Alarm Function lock are set, **Alarm**, **Schedule alarm**, **Reception reserve alarm**, **Record reserve alarm**, and **Wakeup TV** are not activated at set time.
- While Function lock is applied to multimedia, [テレビ電話代替] is sent if sending a substitute image during a Videophone call.
- While Function lock is applied to multimedia, the phonebook ring tone and Mail ring tone do not sound, and the ring tone set in the ring tone setting sounds instead. Image set for **Picture call** does not appear. Enter terminal security code to activate the camera. The alarm image is shown for alarm and Schedule alarm and [着信音1] sounds.

Note

- If Function lock is applied to GPS, the operation of the GPS menu or the operation of GPS compatible i-αppli using the GPS function is disabled. However, request for Location provision is answered.

Keypad Dial Lock


Prohibiting Keypad Dialing

Prevent calling from functions other than phonebook (excluding microSD Memory Card phonebook), Redial and Received calls (only phone numbers saved in the phonebook).

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) can be dialed even when Keypad dial lock is set.

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Security]** ▶ **[Lock settings]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

2 Select **[Keypad dial lock]** ▶ **[ON]/[OFF]**.

-  appears in the upper part of the display when Keypad dial lock is set.

Note

- The following functions are also disabled when Keypad dial lock is set.
 - Sending SMS or i-mode mail through direct address input (address input from the phonebook is possible)
 - Saving/Editing/Deleting phonebook entries
 - Calling from alarms (available if saved in the phonebook)
 - Sending/Receiving phonebook data through Ir exchange or iC transmission
 - Prefix settings
 - IDD prefix setting
 - Phone To (AV Phone To) function
 - Mail To function
 - Transferring/Copying phonebook data between FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card
 - Calls from Bar code reader and Character reader
 - Transferring/Copying phonebook data between FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card
 - PushTalk transmission not from the phonebook (including PushTalk phonebook and network phonebook), Redial and Received calls (only phone numbers saved in the phonebook)
 - Saving/Editing/Deleting location service clients
 - Location service clients by direct input

Multi Easy Lock

Setting Various Lock by One-touch Operation

Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be set at once. Set the item to lock in advance.

- Refer to Keypad dial lock (☞ P. 148), Function lock (☞ P. 147) or IC card lock (☞ P. 272) for details of each lock function.

Setting Functions to Lock

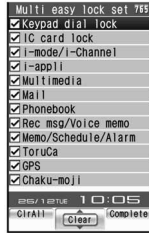
<Multi Easy Lock Set>

Select item to lock with Multi easy lock.

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Security]** **[Lock settings]** enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

2 Select **[Multi easy lock set]** select the item to lock or disable **[OK]** (Complete).

- appears for locked items and appears for disabled items.
- Select an item to switch between lock and disable.
- Press **[SelAll]** to lock all items. If all check boxes contain a check, press **[ClrAll]** to disable all items.



Multi easy lock settings screen

Setting Multi Easy Lock

1 In stand-by, press **[OK]** for 1+ seconds **[Yes]**.

- The set functions are locked, and the corresponding icons appear.

Note

- When **Reject unknown** is set, phonebook **Function lock** is not set even if Multi easy lock is set.

Disabling Multi Easy Lock

1 In stand-by, press **[OK]** for 1+ seconds **[enter terminal security code and press [OK]]**.

Note

- Alternatively, select each lock function in lock settings screen (☞ P. 145) to disable individually.

Setting Multi Easy Lock Automatically

<Multi Lock Auto-set>

Multi easy lock can be automatically set when Power saver mode is activated or when the FOMA terminal is closed in stand-by.

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Security]** **[Lock settings]** enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

2 Select **[Multi lock auto-set]** **[ON]/[OFF]**.

3 Select **[OK]**.

Note

- Automatically Multi lock auto-set can also be disabled by the same operation as “Disabling Multi Easy Lock” on P. 149.
- Disabling Multi easy lock does not set Multi lock auto-set to [OFF]. If the FOMA terminal is closed or Power saver mode is activated, Multi easy lock is set again.

Side Key Guard

Preventing Side Key Errors

Lock side keys when the FOMA terminal is closed to prevent errors.

- Key operations are available in the viewer position regardless of Side key guard.

1 Press **[P]** for 1+ seconds.

- When Side key guard is set, **[P]** appears.
- Side key guard is disabled when power is turned off.
- An incoming PushTalk can also be answered with **[P]**.

Note

- To disable, press **[P]** for 1+ seconds again.
- Manner mode set/disable or **Quick silent** is available while receiving a call even when Side key guard is set.
- Side key guard cannot be set/disabled in the viewer position or during PushTalk transmission.

Show Call/Received

Setting Redial and Received Calls

- Received calls and Redial are recorded even when Show call/received is set to [OFF]. When set to [ON], histories recorded while setting was [OFF] can be viewed.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Security]** ▶ **[Show call/received]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

- Select an item ▶ **[ON]/[OFF]**.

Item	Show rcvd calls	Show redial
------	-----------------	-------------

Note

- Record message** is not played if Show received calls is set to [OFF].
- When Show redial is set to [OFF], Chaku-moji Sent messages (P. 59) cannot be viewed.

Setting Mail History Display

<Show Sent/Received>

- Received and Sent messages histories are recorded even when Show received/sent is set to [OFF]. When set to [ON], histories recorded while setting was [OFF] can be viewed.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Security]** ▶ **[Show sent/received]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

- Select an item ▶ **[ON]/[OFF]**.

Item	Show sent messages
	Show rcvd messages

Secret Mode

Viewing Information Set as Secret

If **Secret mode is set, normal and Secret data appear when phonebook and Schedule are displayed.**

- Only normal data is shown when Secret mode is disabled.
- Set to automatically disable Secret mode if Power saver mode activates when in stand-by or FOMA terminal is closed.
- Secret mode is disabled when power is turned off.
- For details on entering secret data, refer to P. 116 for phonebook and P. 406 for Schedule.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Security]** ▶ **[Secret mode]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

- Select **[ON]/[OFF]**.

To set	To not automatically disable	[ON] → [No auto disable]
	To automatically disable	[ON] → [auto disable] → [OK]
To disable		[OFF]

- When Secret mode is set, **[OK]** appears in the upper part of the display.

Accept Calls

Receiving Calls from Only Specified Phone Numbers

Only accept calls from specified callers. Calls from all other numbers (including those without caller ID) are not connected.

To set Accept calls, save numbers from the phonebook to a list and set all numbers at once afterwards. Numbers can be added and the list can be edited later.

- Even if the caller is on the Accept calls list, the call is not connected if caller ID is not sent. It is recommended to set Caller ID Request Service (P. 436).
- Phone numbers set for Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone and Reject unsupported ID cannot be set for Accept calls.
- Callers not on the Accept calls list hear a busy signal. **[Missed call]** (missed call) appears on the display and the caller's name or phone number is recorded in Received calls.
- While Function lock is applied to phonebook, Accept calls is disabled and all calls are connected.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally regardless of the setting of this function.
- FOMA card phonebook numbers cannot be set. Only numbers in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook are available.
- Accept calls operate as it is set also when PushTalk is received. However, when PushTalkPlus is used, receiving PushTalk from a network phonebook does not follow the Accept calls setting.

Saving Phone Numbers to Accept

Save up to 20 phone numbers.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Security]** ▶ **[Accept/Reject calls]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

2

Select [Accept calls] ▶ [Save list].

- When [Disable reject calls] appears, phone number is set to be rejected. Disable and try again (☎P. 152).
- When [Disable reject calls] appears, phone number is set to be rejected due to Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone or Reject unsupported ID settings. Disable and try again.
- If another person is already saved, name appears.

3

Select list number ▶ select name.

- Phone number and name in phonebook are saved in the Accept calls list.
- Repeat step 3 to save other phone numbers.
- Next, set Accept calls to accept calls from callers specified in the phonebook (☎P. 151).
- When the other party has two or more phone numbers, saving is required for each number.



Note

- If entry saved in Accept calls is edited/deleted in phonebook, the saved list content is also edited/deleted. However, if Accept calls is activated, entries cannot be edited/deleted (except for Delete all in group/Delete all).
- When a phone number is saved in the list while the 2in1 is used, only phonebooks displayed in the mode used can be displayed.

Related Operations

Register from phonebook <Accept calls>

In stand-by, press [☐] ▶ select name and press [Ⓜ] ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Accept/reject set] ▶ [Accept calls] ▶ enter terminal security code and press [Ⓞ] ▶ select list number.

Delete phone number in list <Delete>

In save list, select name ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

- If all phone numbers saved in the list are deleted after Accept calls is set, the setting is disabled.

Change phone number in list <Change>

In save list, select name ▶ [Change] ▶ select name.

Accepting Calls from Specified Numbers

1

In stand-by, press [Ⓞ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Accept/Reject calls] ▶ enter terminal security code and press [Ⓞ].

2

Select [Accept calls] ▶ [ON].

- If any phone number is not saved in the list, the Save list appears. When Save list is finished, Accept calls is set.
- To disable, select [OFF].

Reject Calls

Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers

Reject voice/Videophone calls from specified callers. All other numbers (including those without caller ID) are connected. To set Reject calls, save numbers from the phonebook to a list and set all numbers at once afterwards. Numbers can be added and the list can be edited later.

- Even if Reject calls is set, if the other party does not send caller ID, the call is connected. It is recommended to also set Caller ID Request Service (☎P. 436) or Reject by reason of non-disclosure.
- Reject calls cannot be set for a number set to Accept calls.
- Rejected callers hear a busy signal. [☎] (missed call) appears on the display and the caller's name is recorded in Received calls.
- While Function lock is applied to phonebook, Reject calls is disabled and all calls are connected.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally regardless of the setting of this function.
- FOMA card phonebook numbers cannot be set. Only numbers in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook are available.
- Reject calls operate as it is set also when PushTalk is received. However, when PushTalkPlus is used, receiving PushTalk from a network phonebook does not follow the Reject calls setting.

Saving Phone Numbers to Reject

Save up to 20 phone numbers.

- Refer to P. 152 for details on Reject by reason of non-disclosure.

1

In stand-by, press [Ⓞ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Accept/Reject calls] ▶ enter terminal security code and press [Ⓞ].

2 Select [Reject calls] ▶ [Save list].

- When [Disable accept calls] appears, Accept calls is set. Disable and try again (☎ P. 151).
- If another person is already saved, name appears.

3 Select list number ▶ select name.

- Phone number and name in phonebook are saved in the Reject calls list.
- Repeat step 3 to save other phone numbers.
- Next, set Reject calls to reject calls from callers specified in the phonebook (☎ P. 152).
- When the other party has two or more phone numbers, saving is required for each number.



Note

- If entry saved in Reject calls is edited/deleted in phonebook, the saved list content is also edited/deleted. However, if Reject calls is activated, entries cannot be edited/deleted (except for Delete all in group/Delete all).
- When a phone number is saved in the list while the 2in1 is used, only phonebooks displayed in the mode used can be displayed.

Related Operations

Register from phonebook <Reject calls>

In stand-by, press ▶ select name and press ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Accept/reject set] ▶ [Reject calls] ▶ enter terminal security code and press ▶ select list number.

Delete phone number in list <Delete>

In save list, select name ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].
● If all phone numbers saved in the list are deleted after Reject calls is set, the setting is disabled.

Change phone number in list <Change>

In save list, select name ▶ [Change] ▶ select name.

Rejecting Calls from Specified Numbers

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Accept/Reject calls] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .

2 Select [Reject calls] ▶ [ON].

- If phone number is not saved in the list, the save list appears. Reject calls is set when saving to list is finished.
- To disable, select [OFF].

Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure

Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

When caller ID is not sent, the reason of non-disclosure appears. Set handset to reject calls depending on reason.

- Calls received from a caller who is set to be rejected due to a non-disclosure reason will not be connected. Calls of other non-disclosure reasons will be connected. Rejected callers hear a busy signal. (missed call) appears on the display and the reason of non-disclosure is recorded in Received calls.
- It is recommended to also set Caller ID Request Service (☎ P. 436).
- Reject by reason of non-disclosure cannot be set for numbers set to Accept calls.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally regardless of the setting of this function. PushTalk follows the setting of this function.
- Also when Reject unknown is set, Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized for calls without caller ID.
- Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized when set with Public mode (Drive mode).

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Accept/Reject calls] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .

2 Select reason ▶ [Accept]/[Declined].

User unset	When the caller purposely withholds caller ID
Reject payphone	When the call is received from a payphone
Reject not support	When the caller cannot send caller ID, such as when the call is received from overseas or ordinary (landline) telephones via various transfer services (However, caller ID may still appear depending on the company)

Set Mute Ring Time

Silencing Ring Tone for Callers Not in Phonebook

Set ring tone to sound after a set number of seconds when the caller is not registered in the phonebook (including those without caller ID).

- Reject unknown cannot be set simultaneously with Set mute ring time.
- This is one way to avoid nuisance calls.
- When setting mute ring time, set to record calls disconnected during mute ring time duration in Received calls.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Snd/Vibrator/Manner]** ▶ **[Set mute ring time]** ▶ **[ON]**.

- To disable, select **[OFF]**.



2 Enter duration (two digits: 01 to 99 seconds) and press ▶ set **Missed call history**.

To save in Received calls	[ON]
To not save in Received calls	[OFF] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In Received calls, press and select [Display all] to show all calls. Press and select [Limit display] to return to the previous screen.

Note

- Set mute ring time shorter than ring duration for **Record message** or **Voice Mail Service** to prioritize set mute ring time.
- Set mute ring time activates for calls from callers in phonebook while **Function lock** is applied to phonebook.
- **Public mode (Drive mode)** is prioritized when set with Set mute ring time.
- When Set mute ring time and **Manner mode** are both activated and the set time passes, operation follows Manner mode settings. However, answering duration for Record message includes time before Ring tone sounds.
- Set mute ring time operates as it is set also when PushTalk is received. However, when **PushTalkPlus** is used, receiving PushTalk from a network phonebook does not follow Set mute ring time.

Reject Unknown

Rejecting Callers Not in Phonebook

Set handset to reject calls from callers not in the phonebook.

- Caller hears a busy signal. (missed call) appears on the display and the call is recorded in Received calls.
- This setting is available only when a caller sends notify of the caller ID. It is recommended to also set Caller ID Request Service (P. 436).
- Reject unknown is prioritized when set with Public mode (Drive mode).
- Also when Reject unknown is set, Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized for calls without caller ID.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally regardless of the setting of this function.
- Reject unknown operates as it is set also when PushTalk is received. However, when PushTalkPlus is used, receiving PushTalk from a network phonebook does not follow the Reject unknown setting.
- Reject unknown cannot be set simultaneously with Set mute ring time. Disable Set mute ring time and try again (P. 153).

1 In stand-by, press ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Security]** ▶ **[Accept/Reject calls]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press .

2 Select **[Reject unknown]** ▶ **[Accept/Declined]**.

Data Sec. Service

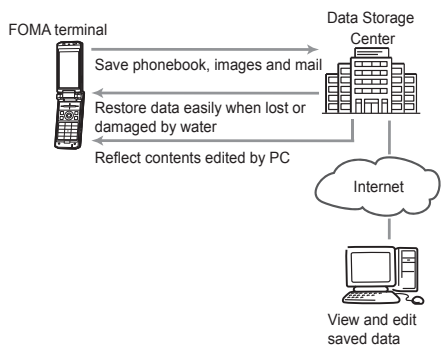
Using Data Security Service

Data Security Service

The Data Security Service is a service to store your FOMA terminal data such as phonebook, images or mails (hereafter called "saved data") at the DoCoMo data storage center.

In the event of data loss due to loss of the FOMA terminal itself or data corruption caused by the terminal being damaged by the water, the saved data at the Center can be restored to a new FOMA terminal using i-mode. The phonebook data on the FOMA terminal and in Data Storage Center can be automatically updated to the latest status on a regular basis. Moreover, the saved data at the Center can be easily edited on My DoCoMo web page using a PC and the edited data can be saved to the FOMA terminal.

※ Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details of the Data Security Service.



※ The Data Security Service is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).

- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be saved.
- Accessing to the Data Storage Center is not available from outside the service area.
- Refer to P. 117 for details on Save Phonebook, refer to P. 227 for details on Save Mail and P. 320 for details on Save Image.
- When Data Security Service is not subscribed, a screen indicating so appears.

Other Security Settings

Use the following settings and functions to secure your FOMA terminal.

Intent	Function/Service name	Ref.
To select necessary mail from massive amount of received mail.	Receive option	P. 219
To change/confirm mail address.	Change/Confirm mail address	*1
To reject mail with a URL.	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL)	
To receive/reject only mail from specified domains.	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive mail settings)	
To receive/reject mail from i-mode.		
To receive/reject only mail from specified addresses.		
To reject all SMS.	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	

Intent	Function/Service name	Ref.	
To use i-mode to save/check safety information during disasters.	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	*1	
To reject the 200th mail or later from i-mode compatible mobile phones that send more than 200 i-mode mail per day.	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders		
To reject unsolicited ad mail.	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail		
To set mail size restrictions for incoming mail.	Limit Mail Size		
To check mail settings.	Confirm Settings		
To suspend mail functions.	Suspend Mail		
To check the rough present location of the lost FOMA terminal.	Keitai-Osagashi Service		
To disable use of FeliCa IC card functions.	IC card lock		P. 272
To save specific phone numbers to reject.	Nuisance Call Barring Service		P. 435
To reject callers with no ID.	Caller ID Request Service		P. 436
To check to see if software update for FOMA terminal is necessary. To download and update if necessary.	Software update	P. 498	
To determine if problems may arise when importing data and programs from external devices to the FOMA terminal.	Scanning function	P. 504	
To check if received SMS is unsolicited SMS including URL.			
To use Client certificate to connect to SSL-enabled sites (The sites must be FirstPass compatible sites).	FirstPass	P. 199	

*1 Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Camera

● Before Using the Camera	156
● Shooting Still Pictures <Shoot Still Picture>	162
● Shooting Movies <Shoot Movie>	165
● Changing Settings for Shooting	166
● Changing Camera Settings	172
● Sending Still Pictures or Movies After Shooting <Send Message>	173
● Using Bar Code Reader <Bar Code Reader>	173
● Reading Text <Character Reader (OCR)>	175
● Using Card Reader <Card Reader>	178

Copyrights and rights of portrait

Images and audio recorded with the FOMA terminal are for personal use and may not be used without the consent of the rightful person in accordance with copyright laws. Please note that the use of the likeness or name of other individuals without their consent, defacement or a similar act may infringe on an individual's rights of portrait. Please be aware of copyrights and rights of portrait when making public images and audio recorded with the handset on the Internet or similar media. The recording of images or audio may be restricted at concerts, performances and exhibits even when recorded for personal use. Do not use this handset to send copyrighted images for uses other than those permitted under copyright laws.



Please respect the privacy of others when using a camera-enabled mobile phone to shoot and send images.

Before Using the Camera

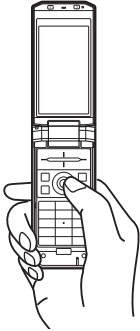
Camera Operations

Use camera to shoot still pictures and movies. **microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (P. 335).**

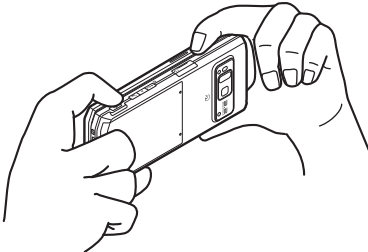
- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the camera may differ from the actual color and brightness.

Shooting other people and landscape

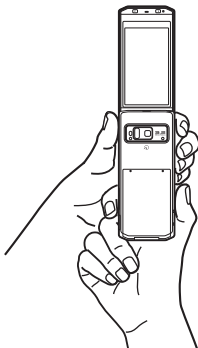
Normal position



Viewer position



Shooting a still picture of yourself



Wide Array of Shooting Methods


- Image size (P. 167) and set image quality (P. 167) depending on intended use
- Continuous modes (P. 163)
- Shoot with frames (P. 168) or with coloring or touch changed (P. 169)
- Attach shot images to i-mode mail and send (P. 173)
- Shoot with auto focus (P. 168)
- Shoot with auto timer (P. 168)

Using the Camera

- Fingerprints or oil on the lens may cause the image to be out of focus. In addition, images may blur and rays of light may appear in images when shot near a strong light source. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth before shooting images.
- Images may appear dark and distorted when shot with insufficient battery power even while the handset is charging. Do not shoot images while the handset is charging.
- Do not apply force to the lens when closing the FOMA terminal as this may damage the lens. May cause a malfunction.
- Although the camera is made with high-precision technology, constantly bright or dark pixels or lines may be visible. Further, white lines and other noise may appear in images especially when shooting images in dimly lit surroundings.
- The quality of images may deteriorate when shot or saved after the FOMA terminal has been left in a warm location for a long time.
- If the camera lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, the internal color filter may discolor, creating a discoloration of shot images.
- Images shot of the sun, a light or other strong light source may appear dark and distorted.
- Direct images shot of the sun may damage the performance of the CMOS.
- To give priority to the image quality when shooting an image, select [SUPER FINE]. The data size will be larger, but the image quality will be better. At these image size settings, fewer images can be saved, more time is required to send these images by i-mode mail. Select the image quality according to the application (P. 167).
- The FOMA terminal may become warm after shooting still pictures continuously or shooting long movies. This is not a malfunction.
- If a call is received or the alarm sounds when viewing the still picture preview screen or movie shooting screen, the camera function is canceled and the voice/Videophone call or alarm screen appears. After that screen ends, the camera screen reappears and the previous still picture or movie data can be saved.
- Keypad sound is silenced while still picture mode or movie mode is active.

Important notes for shooting images

- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the camera may differ from the actual color and brightness.
- Make sure that your fingers, hair and handset strap do not obscure the camera lens when shooting images.

- Because battery power depletes more quickly when shooting images, it is recommended to press  to end Camera mode after shooting images.
- Images are blurred when FOMA terminal moves while shooting images. Hold firmly to prevent blurring. Use the Fix camera shake function to prevent camera shake when shooting still pictures or movies.
- Because a larger image size requires more data, movement in the image on the FOMA terminal display may appear slow.
- Indoor fluorescent lighting may create flickering or streaky shading on the screen. This flickering or shading may be reduced by changing the lighting conditions, brightness or adjusting the camera brightness or White balance.
- Side key guard cannot be set or disabled in the viewer position.

Selecting Image Size

The following are the image sizes of still pictures and movies that can be shot (saved) with FOMA SH905i.

- All sizes in this manual are width × height.

Size	Still picture	Movie	Explanation
sQCIF: 128×96	○	○	Smaller than QCIF and ideal for attaching to mail.
QCIF: 176×144	○	○	Ideal for attaching to mail.
QVGA: 240×320	○	—	Ideal for sending to i-mode terminal.
QVGA: 320×240	—	○	Ideal for playing on a PC.
CIF: 352×288	○	—	Ideal for viewing on a PC.
VGA: 480×640	○	—	Ideal for viewing on a PC.
VGA: 640×480	—	○	This is the maximum movie size that can be shot with FOMA SH905i. Ideal for playing on a PC.
Stand-by: 480×854	○	—	This is the size of the display on FOMA SH905i. This size is useful for shooting a still picture to set as the stand-by display.
UXGA: 1200×1600	○	—	Ideal for viewing on a PC.
FullHD: 1080×1920	○	—	Ideal for viewing on a PC.
3M: 1536×2048	○	—	This is the maximum still picture size that can be shot with FOMA SH905i. Ideal for viewing on a PC or printing.
Panorama: 1280×320	○*	—	This is the size for shooting panoramic pictures.

* Not available when in the viewer position.

Note

Titles

- The titles of shot (saved) still pictures/movies are labeled automatically according to the date and time the still pictures/movies were shot.
Example: December 25, 2007 at 1:05:07 P.M. → [071225_130507].
- Still pictures that were continuously shot are labeled in series ([_01], [_02], etc.) at the end of the title.
- Refer to P. 348 for details on how to edit the titles of still pictures/movies.

Approximate Number of Recordable Images

- Transfer and store still pictures and movies saved in the FOMA terminal handset on a PC, if you have one, using microSD Memory Card (see P. 335).
- Refer to P. 167 for details on the method of setting the image size of still pictures and movies.

Still picture mode

- This lists the approximate number of images that can be shot with the same image size and quality and saved in FOMA terminal handset or 64 MB microSD Memory Card. The number of still pictures that can be shot are fewer when other images, i-αppli software or other types of files are saved in FOMA terminal handset or 64 MB microSD Memory Card. Also, the number may be fewer depending on the shooting conditions and the subject. The following are the approximate number of images that can be recorded according to the image quality.

FOMA terminal handset

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128×96	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	1,000 shots
QCIF: 176×144	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	1,000 shots
QVGA: 240×320	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	1,000 shots
CIF: 352×288	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	1,000 shots
VGA: 480×640	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	1,000 shots
Stand-by: 480×854	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	570 shots
UXGA: 1200×1600	430 shots	260 shots	160 shots
FullHD: 1080×1920	430 shots	260 shots	160 shots
3M: 1536×2048	260 shots	160 shots	80 shots
Panorama: 1280×320	—	—	330 shots

64 MB microSD Memory Card

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128×96	3,700 shots	3,700 shots	1,800 shots
QCIF: 176×144	3,700 shots	1,800 shots	1,200 shots
QVGA: 240×320	1,800 shots	1,200 shots	530 shots
CIF: 352×288	1,800 shots	1,200 shots	530 shots
VGA: 480×640	1,200 shots	750 shots	530 shots
Stand-by: 480×854	930 shots	620 shots	310 shots
UXGA: 1200×1600	230 shots	140 shots	90 shots
FullHD: 1080×1920	230 shots	140 shots	90 shots
3M: 1536×2048	140 shots	90 shots	45 shots
Panorama: 1280×320	—	—	180 shots

Movie mode

- The recording times below are estimates when saving to FOMA terminal handset or 64 MB microSD Memory Card. The recordable movie length and number of recordable movies are less when other images, i-αplli software or other types of files are saved in FOMA terminal handset or 64 MB microSD Memory Card. Also, the recordable movie length may be shorter depending on the shooting conditions and the subject. The following are the approximate movie lengths that can be recorded according to the image quality.

Continuous recording time per shot of FOMA terminal handset

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128x 96	For mail (short)	Image + voice	155 sec	105 sec	52 sec	—
		Image only	214 sec	130 sec	62 sec	—
		Voice only	318 sec			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	10 min	434 sec	215 sec	—	
	Image only	14 min	534 sec	257 sec	—	
	Voice only	21 min				
QCIF: 176x 144	For mail (short)	Image + voice	134 sec	78 sec	28 sec	19 sec
		Image only	176 sec	91 sec	31 sec	20 sec
		Voice only	318 sec			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	552 sec	323 sec	117 sec	79 sec	
	Image only	12 min	375 sec	129 sec	85 sec	
	Voice only	21 min				
QVGA: 320x 240	For mail (short)	Image + voice	—	—	—	10 sec
		Image only	—	—	—	10 sec
		Voice only	318 sec			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	—	—	—	41 sec	
	Image only	—	—	—	42 sec	
	Voice only	21 min				
VGA: 640x 480	For mail (long)	Image + voice	—	—	—	16 sec
		Image only	—	—	—	16 sec
		Voice only	21 min			

※ File size limit (P. 167) for movie files cannot be set to [Unrestricted] when saved to the FOMA terminal handset.

Total recording time of FOMA terminal handset

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128x 96	For mail (short)	Image + voice	258 min	175 min	86 min	—
		Image only	356 min	216 min	103 min	—
		Voice only	530 min			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	547 min	372 min	184 min	—	
	Image only	754 min	458 min	220 min	—	
	Voice only	1,122 min				
QCIF: 176x 144	For mail (short)	Image + voice	223 min	130 min	46 min	31 min
		Image only	293 min	151 min	51 min	33 min
		Voice only	530 min			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	473 min	277 min	100 min	67 min	
	Image only	620 min	321 min	110 min	72 min	
	Voice only	1,122 min				
QVGA: 320x 240	For mail (short)	Image + voice	—	—	—	16 min
		Image only	—	—	—	16 min
		Voice only	530 min			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	—	—	—	35 min	
	Image only	—	—	—	36 min	
	Voice only	1,122 min				
VGA: 640x 480	For mail (long)	Image + voice	—	—	—	13 min
		Image only	—	—	—	13 min
		Voice only	1,122 min			

※ File size limit (P. 167) for movie files cannot be set to [Unrestricted] when saved to the FOMA terminal handset.

Continuous recording time per shot of 64 MB microSD Memory Card

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128x 96	For mail (short)	Image + voice	155 sec	105 sec	52 sec	—
		Image only	214 sec	130 sec	62 sec	—
		Voice only	318 sec			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	10 min	434 sec	215 sec	—	
	Image only	14 min	534 sec	257 sec	—	
	Voice only	21 min				
Unrestricted	Image + voice	60 min	60 min	60 min	—	
	Image only	60 min	60 min	60 min	—	
	Voice only	360 min				
QCIF: 176x 144	For mail (short)	Image + voice	134 sec	78 sec	28 sec	19 sec
		Image only	176 sec	91 sec	31 sec	20 sec
		Voice only	318 sec			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	552 sec	323 sec	117 sec	79 sec	
	Image only	12 min	375 sec	129 sec	85 sec	
	Voice only	21 min				
Unrestricted	Image + voice	60 min	60 min	58 min	39 min	
	Image only	60 min	60 min	60 min	42 min	
	Voice only	360 min				
QVGA: 320x 240	For mail (short)	Image + voice	—	—	—	10 sec
		Image only	—	—	—	10 sec
		Voice only	318 sec			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	—	—	—	41 sec	
	Image only	—	—	—	42 sec	
	Voice only	21 min				
Unrestricted	Image + voice	—	—	—	20 min	
	Image only	—	—	—	20 min	
	Voice only	360 min				
VGA: 640x 480	For mail (long)	Image + voice	—	—	—	16 sec
		Image only	—	—	—	16 sec
		Voice only	21 min			
Unrestricted	Image + voice	—	—	—	474 sec	
	Image only	—	—	—	480 sec	
	Voice only	360 min				

Total recording time of 64 MB microSD Memory Card

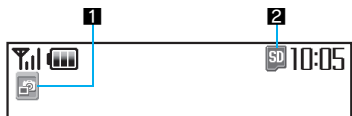
			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128x 96	For mail (short)	Image + voice	312 min	212 min	106 min	—
		Image only	431 min	261 min	127 min	—
		Voice only	611 min			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	313 min	213 min	107 min	—	
	Image only	432 min	262 min	128 min	—	
	Voice only	613 min				
Unrestricted	Image + voice	314 min	214 min	108 min	—	
	Image only	433 min	263 min	129 min	—	
	Voice only	615 min				
QCIF: 176x 144	For mail (short)	Image + voice	261 min	160 min	56 min	37 min
		Image only	342 min	186 min	62 min	40 min
		Voice only	611 min			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	262 min	161 min	57 min	38 min	
	Image only	343 min	187 min	63 min	41 min	
	Voice only	613 min				
Unrestricted	Image + voice	263 min	162 min	58 min	39 min	
	Image only	344 min	188 min	64 min	42 min	
	Voice only	615 min				
QVGA: 320x 240	For mail (short)	Image + voice	—	—	—	19 min
		Image only	—	—	—	19 min
		Voice only	611 min			
For mail (long)	Image + voice	—	—	—	20 min	
	Image only	—	—	—	20 min	
	Voice only	613 min				
Unrestricted	Image + voice	—	—	—	20 min	
	Image only	—	—	—	20 min	
	Voice only	615 min				
VGA: 640x 480	For mail (long)	Image + voice	—	—	—	472 sec
		Image only	—	—	—	478 sec
		Voice only	613 min			
Unrestricted	Image + voice	—	—	—	474 sec	
	Image only	—	—	—	480 sec	
	Voice only	615 min				

Shooting Screen Layout

The following indicators appear on the display in Camera mode.

- When switched to Full-screen mode (P. 172), icons do not appear.

Icons that appear in the upper part of the display (all modes)



1 Mode indicator (P. 166)

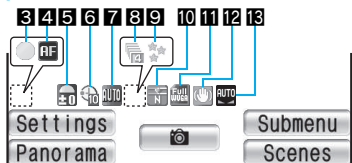
	Still picture mode
	Movie mode
	Character reader mode
	Bar code reader mode
	Card reader mode

2 microSD Memory Card indicator (P. 172)

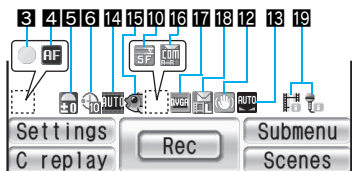
	Save to FOMA terminal handset
	Save to microSD Memory Card

Icons that appear in the lower part of the display

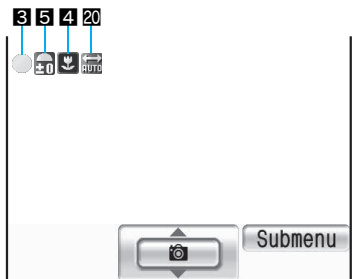
Still picture mode



Movie mode



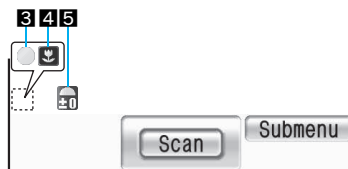
Character reader mode



Bar code reader mode



Card reader mode



3 Focus lock indicator (P. 171)

	(green) Appears when focus is locked
	(red) Appears when focusing

4 AF mode (P. 168)

	Standard
	Closeup
	Manual focus (Still picture/Movie mode only)

5 Image brightness indicator (P. 166)

	Dark ← Normal → Bright
--	------------------------

6 Auto timer indicator (P. 168)

	2 seconds		10 seconds
	5 seconds		

7 Still picture shoot by scene indicator (P. 170)

	Auto		Exercise
	People		Character
	Night scene		Into the sun
	Landscape		

8 Continuous mode indicator (P. 163)

	Fast, Standard, Manual (for 25 pictures)
	Fast, Standard, Manual (for 9 pictures)
	Standard, Manual (for 6 pictures)
	Standard, Manual (for 4 pictures)
	Shared Multishot (2 to 25 pictures)

9 Still picture effect indicator (P. 169)

	Black & white		Ripple
	Sepia		Kaleidoscope (L)
	Sparkling		Kaleidoscope (S)

	Colored pencil		Fish-eye
	Faded edges		

10 Image quality (P. 167)

	ECONOMY		SUPER FINE
	NORMAL		FINE (Movie mode only)

11 Still picture size indicator (P. 167)

	sQCIF: 128×96		Stand-by: 480×854
	QCIF: 176×144		UXGA: 1200×1600
	QVGA: 240×320		FullHD: 1080×1920
	CIF: 352×288		3M: 1536×2048
	VGA: 480×640		Panorama: 1280×320

12 Movie fix camera shake indicator (P. 169)

	Fix camera shake [ON]
--	-----------------------

13 White balance indicator (P. 170)

	Auto		Sunlight
	Incandescent		Cloudy
	Fluorescent		

14 Movie shoot by scene indicator (P. 170)

	Auto		Landscape (soft)
	People		Landscape (sharp)

15 Movie effect indicator (P. 169)

	Black & white		Ripple
	Sepia		Kaleidoscope (L)
	Sparkling		Kaleidoscope (S)
	Colored pencil		Fish-eye
	Spectrum		

16 Common replay mode indicator (P. 172)

	Common replay mode [ON]
--	-------------------------

17 Movie size indicator (P. 167)

	sQCIF: 128×96		QVGA: 320×240
	QCIF: 176×144		VGA: 640×480

18 Movie file size limit indicator (P. 167)

	For mail (short) (500 KB)
	For mail (long) (2 MB)

19 Switch image/voice indicator (P. 168)

	Image + voice		Voice only
	Image only		

20 Inverse mode indicators (P. 176)

	Automatic		Reverse text
	Normal		

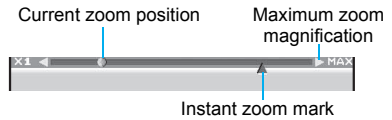
21 QR code link number indicator (P. 175)

	Indicates the number of linked split data being read
--	--

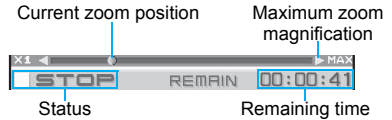
Using zoom (still picture mode/movie mode)

In still picture mode, press to show the screen below and enable zooming. The screen is already shown in movie mode (P. 166).

Still picture mode

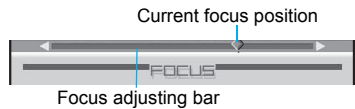


Movie mode



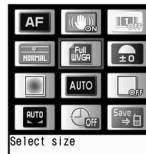
Using Manual focus

In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press and select [Shooting menu] → [AF mode] → [Manual focus] to show the screen shown below. Use to adjust the focus (P. 168).



Using shooting settings

In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press (Settings) to show the screen below. Change settings while checking current settings (P. 171).



Activating/Deactivating the Camera

In the viewer position

1 In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds.

- Camera LED illuminates and the still picture shooting screen appears. The image from the camera is shown on the display.
- Press to end.

In the normal position

1 In stand-by, press .

- Camera LED illuminates and the still picture shooting screen appears. The image from the camera is shown on the display.
- Close the FOMA terminal or press or to end.

Activating movie mode

1 In the still picture shooting screen, press **[Switch camera-mode]** **[Movie]**.

- Camera LED illuminates and the movie shooting screen appears. The image from the camera is shown on the display.
- Close the FOMA terminal or press or to end.

Using different camera modes

1 In stand-by, press **[Camera]** **[select camera mode]**.



Shoot still picture



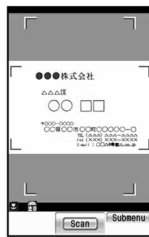
Shoot movie



Character reader



Bar code reader



Card reader

- Switch shooting modes after activating camera: P. 166

Note

When a call is received while a still picture is being saved, a movie is being shot or the movie shooting confirmation menu screen is displayed:

- The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered.
 - Shot still pictures are retained.
 - The movie shooting confirmation menu screen appears after the call. Select [Save] to save the movie and return to the movie shooting screen. Select [Cancel] → [Yes] to delete the movie and return to the movie shooting screen.

Auto end

- In each Camera mode, if no operations are performed for approximately 2 minutes with the viewfinder display shown, Camera mode automatically ends and the stand-by display reappears. Camera mode does not end if there are unsaved data, or a Submenu, Shooting settings screen or scan results screen is shown.

Shortcut key

Frequently used operations are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

- Switch Camera mode to shoot still pictures/movies or read with Character reader, Bar code reader and Card reader.

Key	Still picture mode	Movie mode	Character reader mode	Bar code reader mode	Card reader mode
	Zoom in		-	-	-
	Zoom out		-	-	-
	Shoot by scene		-	-	-
	Panoramic shooting/ Normal shooting	Common replay mode/ Normal shooting	-	-	-
	Brightness ▲				
	Brightness ▼				
	Switch phone↔SD		-	-	-
	Focus lock				
	Switch camera-mode				

Key	Still picture mode	Movie mode	Character reader mode	Bar code reader mode	Card reader mode
②	Folder list of My picture	Folder list of i-motion	Select subject	Saved data	–
③	AF mode		Switch AF mode	AF mode	
④	Auto timer		Inverse mode	–	–
⑤	Select size		–	–	–
⑥	Image quality		–	–	–
⑦	Effect shot		–	–	–
⑧	Fix camera shake		–	–	–
⑨	White balance		–	–	–
⑩	Key list		–	–	–

Key list

When shooting, refer to the Key list and check operation methods.

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen (☞ P. 161), press [Key list].

Shoot Still Picture

Shooting Still Pictures

Shoot still pictures with the FOMA terminal.

- Shot still pictures are saved to [Camera] folder in My picture of Data box or the microSD Memory Card (☞ P. 172, P. 335). Saving still pictures may take time.
- When a still picture is shot, the shutter sounds and Camera LED flashes once. After that, a still picture appears on the preview screen.
- The shutter sound, Focus lock sound and auto timer sound are also audible during Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode) and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.
- The shutter sound, Focus lock sound and auto timer sound volume cannot be changed.
- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save (☞ P. 351).
- If available space on the microSD Memory Card is insufficient, the [Camera] folder in My picture of Data box in the FOMA terminal handset automatically becomes the save destination even when the microSD Memory Card is set as the save destination.

Shooting in the Viewer Position

1 Activate the camera (☞ P. 161).

- Hold the FOMA terminal sideways.
- Use the zoom (☞ P. 166) or show Shooting settings screen (☞ P. 171).

2 Shoot.

To shoot	
To shoot with Focus lock (☞ P. 171)	Press halfway → lock focus → press fully

3 Press and save.

- After shooting, press before saving to discard the shot still pictures.

Shooting in the Normal Position

1 Activate the camera (☞ P. 161).

- Use the zoom (☞ P. 166) or show Shooting settings screen (☞ P. 171).

2 Shoot.

To shoot	or
To shoot with Focus lock (☞ P. 171)	→ lock focus → Or, press halfway → lock focus → press fully

3 Save.

To save	or
To add location information	→ [Paste loc. info] ● The present location is positioned by GPS function (☞ P. 274).
To change the save destination	 ● Switch the save destination between FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.
To delete a shot still picture and shoot again	CLR
To send with i-mode mail (☞ P. 173)	
To edit and use a shot still picture	 ● It is possible to use a shot still picture in Edit image, Facial treatment, Set screen or switch to Full-screen mode. Edit image: ☞ P. 316 to P. 320 Facial treatment: ☞ P. 320 Set screen: ☞ P. 315 Switching to Full-screen mode: ☞ P. 172

Shooting a still picture of yourself

Rotate the display to take a picture of yourself.

1 In the normal position, activate the camera (☞ P. 161) and rotate the display.

2 Face the camera towards yourself and press or

- Refer to step 2 of "Shooting in the Normal Position" on P. 162 for details on shooting.

3 Press (Save) or .

- Refer to step 3 of "Shooting in the Normal Position" on P. 162 for details on saving.
- When the image size is **Stand-by: 480×854** or smaller, the shot still picture appears inverted (left-right orientation backwards). Press (Save) or to save it as a normal image (correct left-right orientation). Press in the preview screen after shooting and select [Normal image] or [Save inverted]. However, [Save inverted] cannot be selected for Shoot with frame.
- When the image size is **UXGA: 1200×1600** or larger, the shot still picture appears as a normal image and is saved.

Note

- When the FOMA terminal is closed while showing the viewfinder display, Camera mode ends.
- If the FOMA terminal is closed while [Processing] appears after the shot, the still pictures being shot are discarded, and the camera mode may end.

Continuous Shooting

<Continuous Mode>

Shoot multiple still pictures continuously. Image sizes available for Continuous mode are as follows.

	Fast continuous mode	Standard continuous mode	Manual continuous mode	Combination with Shoot with frame
sQCIF: 128×96	○	○	○	○
QCIF: 176×144	○	○	○	○
QVGA: 240×320	○	○	○	○
CIF: 352×288	×	○	○	○
VGA: 480×640	×	○	○	×
Stand-by: 480×854	×	○	○	×

- **UXGA: 1200×1600, FullHD: 1080×1920, 3M: 1536×2048 and Panorama: 1280×320** are not available for continuous shooting.

Fast, Standard and Manual

In Fast continuous mode, automatically shoot still pictures at approximately 0.1 second intervals and at approximately 0.2 second intervals in Standard continuous mode. In Manual continuous mode, shoot multiple still pictures with shutter operations.

- The maximum number of shots for Continuous mode that can be shot depends on the size.

sQCIF: 128×96	QCIF: 176×144	QVGA: 240×320	CIF: 352×288	VGA: 480×640	Stand-by: 480×854
25 shots	25 shots	9 shots	9 shots	6 shots	4 shots

Continuous shooting

- Depending on the image size, [Continuous mode] or [Fast] may not be available or the maximum number of shots for Continuous mode may be reduced.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (P. 161), press [Shooting menu] ▶ [Continuous mode] ▶ select the type of Continuous mode.

Type	OFF	Standard
	Fast	Manual

2 Press or .

- The first still picture is shot and the following still pictures are shot automatically. At the last shooting, the Camera LED flashes once.
- Alternatively, press or press halfway to lock focus and shoot the picture (P. 171).
- In the manual shooting mode, press or until the maximum number of shots for Continuous mode.
- When continuous shooting is complete, the shot image list appears.
- Press (Cancel) to cancel shooting. Shot still pictures appear. Press and select [Save all] or press and select [Save one] to save all or just one still picture.

3 Save.

To save all shot still pictures	→ [Save all]
To delete all shot still pictures	→ [Delete all]
To select and save one still picture shot with continuous mode	Select still picture and press → [Save one] ● Repeat the operations to save additional still pictures. ● To check still pictures before saving, select still picture and press .
To select and delete one still picture shot with continuous mode	Select still picture and press → [Delete one] ● To check still pictures before deleting, select still picture and press .
To select one still picture shot with continuous mode and add location information	Select still picture and press → [Paste loc. info] ● The present location is positioned by GPS function (P. 274).
To send with i-mode mail (P. 173)	Select still picture and press ● To check still pictures before sending, select still picture and press .

- When Auto save mode (P. 173) is set to [ON], still pictures are saved together automatically.
- After saving or deleting still pictures shot in Continuous mode, the still picture shooting screen reappears.

Note

- Changing the image size or setting **Effect shot** cancels Continuous mode.

Notes about Continuous mode

- In Continuous mode with [Fast]/[Normal], cannot be used to operate the zoom and cannot be used to adjust the brightness.
- If an incoming call is received or the alarm activates while shooting in Continuous mode, the still pictures being shot are retained and Continuous mode is canceled. However, depending on the timing when an incoming call is received or the alarm activates, the still pictures being shot are discarded, and the still picture shooting screen reappears.
- Closing the FOMA terminal or pressing while shooting in Continuous mode causes shooting to be interrupted and camera-mode to be ended. Changing the position causes shooting to be interrupted and the screen appears to the still picture shooting screen.

Shooting Panoramic Pictures

<Panorama>

By importing images continuously while moving the FOMA terminal horizontally, a panoramic picture can be created automatically.

- Image quality is set to [SUPER FINE] and cannot be changed.
- Shooting is not available in the viewer position.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (P. 161), press (Panorama).

- Alternatively, set the image size (P. 167) to **Panorama: 1280x320**.
- Press (Normal) again and the normal still picture shooting screen reappears.



Panoramic picture shooting screen

2 Press (Save) or (Photo).

- Panoramic shooting starts. Move the FOMA terminal to either direction of left or right within the range for shooting a panoramic picture (do not move back once moved to one direction). Steady the position of the cross mark which appears in the center at the start of shooting.

- For the moving speed of the FOMA terminal, make sure that **GOOD** appears as the moving speed indicator on the lower left of the screen.
- When shooting is almost completed, **OK** appears. Even after **OK** appears, the combined image is updated by moving the FOMA terminal. However, when **END** appears, further shooting is not available. Proceed to step 3.
- Alternatively, press or press halfway to lock focus and shoot the picture (P. 171).



Panoramic picture shooting screen

1 Cross mark display

Appears in the center of the display considering the position where the shooting is started as an origin. Use this display to check the gap from the origin when moving the camera.

2 Moving speed display

SLOW	Appears when the moving speed of the FOMA terminal is too slow
GOOD	Appears when the moving speed of the FOMA terminal is appropriate
FAST	Appears when the moving speed of the FOMA terminal is too fast

3 Press (End).

- When the shooting end tone sounds, the imported images are combined, and the preview screen appears.

4 Press (Save) or (Photo).

Note

- Switch AF mode, Continuous mode, Effect shot, Shoot with frame and Fix camera shake are not available when Panoramic shooting is set.
- While shooting a panoramic picture, cannot be used to operate the zoom and cannot be used to adjust the brightness.
- If an incoming call is received or the alarm is activated while shooting a panoramic picture, shooting is canceled, and the images being imported up to that point are discarded.
- While shooting a panoramic picture, if no operations are made for approximately 2 minutes, Camera mode automatically ends and the stand-by display reappears. The images imported up to that point are discarded.

Note

- When **SHU** appears, the image quality is not affected. However, when **SHI** appears, the image quality may deteriorate. Especially when shooting close subjects, be careful not to display **SHI**.
- When shooting is continued even after **OK** appears, the parts shot at the beginning and ending may be discarded.
- In the following cases, the resulting panoramic image may not be clear.
 - When a moving object is shot
 - When there is a large perspective difference between objects to be shot
 - When there is a large difference between the light and dark parts at the shooting place
- If the FOMA terminal is moved up and down while shooting, the height of a panoramic picture may become short or almost nothing may be shot.
- Panoramic pictures are saved in the size of 1280 (W) × 320 (H) regardless of the range in which the FOMA terminal is moved. If the range in which the FOMA terminal is moved is narrow, the blank area with no image increases.

Shoot Movie

Shooting Movies



Shoot (Record) movies with the FOMA terminal.


- Shot movies are saved to [Camera] folder in i-motion of Data box or the microSD Memory Card (☞ P. 335).
- Shoot when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Movies (Mobile MP4) shot with the FOMA terminal can be sent with mail (☞ P. 173).
- To set shot movies for Chaku-motion (☞ P. 120), save them on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Shooting starts after movie record start sound. However, recording may not begin immediately.
- The Camera LED flashes while shooting movies.
- The movie record start and stop sound and auto timer sound are also audible during Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode) and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.
- The movie record start and stop sound and auto timer sound volume cannot be changed.
- When AF mode is set to [Standard], auto focus activates before and during shooting and automatically adjusts the focus.
- Shooting stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads **00:00:00** (movie file size reaches limit during shooting or microSD Memory Card has no available space). However, shot movies can be saved/played/canceled/attached to mail.

Shooting in the Viewer Position

- 1 Activate movie mode (☞ P. 161) and set the FOMA terminal to the viewer position.**

2 Shoot.

To shoot with auto focus	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The subject at the center is automatically focused.
To lock focus during shooting (☞ P. 171)	Press  halfway during shooting → lock focus

3 To stop recording, press .

4 Save.

- Select an item with / and press .





To save	[Save]
To send with i-motion mail (☞ P. 173)	[Compose message] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Switch to the normal position to compose mail.
To play shot movies	[Play]
To cancel shot movies	[Cancel] → [Yes]



Shooting in the Normal Position

1 Activate movie mode (☞ P. 161).

- When shooting your own image, rotate the display and face the camera towards yourself.

2 Shoot.

To shoot with auto focus	 (Rec) or  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The subject at the center is automatically focused.
To lock focus during shooting (☞ P. 171)	While shooting, press  or press  halfway → lock focus

3 To stop recording, press  (Stop) or .

4 Save.

To save	[Save]
To send with i-motion mail (☞ P. 173)	[Compose message]
To play shot movies	[Play]
To cancel shot movies	[Cancel] → [Yes]

- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save (☞ P. 351).

Note

- Remaining time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may continue longer than the remaining time indicated before the start of shooting or may automatically stop before the indicator reads **00:00:00**.

Note


- When the FOMA terminal is closed while shooting a movie, shooting automatically ends and the movie shooting confirmation menu screen appears. If shooting time is less than 1 second, shooting ends and Camera mode ends. However, if the FOMA terminal is closed when **Switch image/voice** is set to [Voice only], recording is continued.
- Make sure not to press keys while shooting a movie as keypad sounds may be recorded.

Changing Settings for Shooting

Changing Camera <Switch Camera-mode>

Switch among Still picture, Movie, Character reader, Bar code reader and Card reader modes.



- If [Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation] appears and Camera mode is activated immediately after charging is started, [Battery low] appears and Camera mode does not activate.







- In the shooting screen, press  [Switch camera-mode] ▶ select a Camera mode.**

Camera mode	Still picture	Bar code reader
	Movie	Card reader
	Character reader	

Adjusting Brightness <Brightness>




Select from five brightness levels.









- In the still picture/movie shooting screen ( P. 161), press  to adjust brightness.**


- In the viewer position, press .
- Also, adjust brightness levels for Bar code reader ( P. 173), Character reader ( P. 175) and Card reader ( P. 178) with .
- Verify with icon on the display ( P. 159).
- After ending Camera mode, Brightness returns to 0.

Using Digital Zoom <Zoom In and Out>

- In the still picture shooting screen ( P. 161), press  to zoom in or  to zoom out.**

- In the viewer position, press  (Eco) .
- The Zoom bar appears.
- The Zoom bar already appears in the movie shooting screen ( P. 161).

	Normal position	Viewer position
To zoom in	 ● Alternatively, slide the finger from left to right on the TOUCH CRUISER pad.	
To zoom in gradually	Press  for 1+ seconds	Press  for 1+ seconds
To zoom out	 ● Alternatively, slide the finger from right to left on the TOUCH CRUISER pad.	 (Eco)
To zoom out gradually	Press  for 1+ seconds	Press  (Eco) for 1+ seconds
To zoom in instantly*1	Double-tap the right edge of the TOUCH CRUISER pad	–
To return to actual size	Double-tap the left edge of the TOUCH CRUISER pad*2	–

*1 Goes to the instant zoom mark position. For still pictures, press  for double magnification (excluding when Effect shot or Panorama shot is set). Image will be rougher.

*2 For a still picture, when the maximum magnification ratio is set, double-tap twice.
● Area affected by zoom depends on the image size.

Camera mode	Image size	Maximum magnification (zoom step)
Still picture	sQCIF: 128×96	Approx. 24.0× (26 steps)
	QCIF: 176×144	Approx. 17.4× (23 steps)
	QVGA: 240×320	Approx. 12.8× (20 steps)
	CIF: 352×288	Approx. 7.8× (15 steps)
	VGA: 480×640	Approx. 6.4× (13 steps)
	Stand-by: 480×854	Approx. 4.7× (10 steps)
	UXGA: 1200×1600	Approx. 2.5× (4 steps)
	FullHD: 1080×1920	Actual size (–)
	3M: 1536×2048	Actual size (–)
	Panorama: 1280×320	Approx. 2.3× (9 steps)

Camera mode	Image size	Maximum magnification (zoom step)
Movie	sQCIF: 128×96	Approx. 15.2× (28 steps)*
	QCIF: 176×144	Approx. 10.6× (24 steps)*
	QVGA: 320×240	Approx. 6.4× (19 steps)*
	VGA: 640×480	Approx. 3.2× (12 steps)*

* When Fix camera shake is set to [OFF] in the viewer position.

- Image size returns to actual size when shooting size is changed, Fix camera shake settings in movie shooting are changed, Effect shot settings are changed, image/voice is switched or Camera mode is ended.

Note

Notes about shooting

- Make sure camera does not shake. Image is more prone to shaking when image size is large or image quality is high. Moving the FOMA terminal while shooting images may cause images to become blurred. Shoot images while holding the handset as still as possible. Use the Fix camera shake function to prevent camera shake when shooting (☞ P. 169).

Setting Image Size <Select Size>

Set still picture and movie image size.

- When image size is changed, Effect shot is canceled. When a still picture is shot, Shoot with frame, Continuous mode, and Full-screen mode setting are canceled if image size is changed.
- Refer to P. 157 for details on each size.

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen (☞ P. 161), press [Select size] ▶ select size.

Size	Shoot still picture	Shoot movie
sQCIF: 128×96	[sQCIF]	[sQCIF]
QCIF: 176×144	[QCIF]	[QCIF]
QVGA: 240×320	[QVGA]	–
VGA: 320×240	–	[QVGA]
CIF: 352×288	[CIF]	–
VGA: 480×640	[VGA]	–
Stand-by: 480×854	[std-by]	–
VGA: 640×480	–	[VGA]
UXGA: 1200×1600	[UXGA]	–
FullHD: 1080×1920	[FullHD]	–
3M: 1536×2048	[3M]	–
Panorama: 1280×320	[Panorama]*	–

* Not available when in the viewer position.

- Icon that indicates size appears (☞ P. 160).

Note

- When sending images by i-mode mail, transmission charge depends on image size and image quality.
- When image size is set to **QVGA: 320×240** or **VGA: 640×480** while shooting movies, image quality is set to [SUPER FINE].

Setting Image Quality <Image Quality>

Set still picture and movie image quality.

Image quality increases from [ECONOMY] → [NORMAL] → [FINE] (movie only) → [SUPER FINE]. As quality increases, the number of images to save and amount of recordable time decrease.

- Refer to P. 157 for details on the approximate number of images which can be shot and the recording length.

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen (☞ P. 161), press [Shooting menu] ▶ [Image quality] ▶ select image quality.

Image quality	ECONOMY	FINE*
	NORMAL	SUPER FINE

* [FINE] can only be set for shooting movies.

- [SUPER FINE] cannot be set for **sQCIF: 128×96** when shooting movies. Only [SUPER FINE] can be set for **QVGA: 320×240** and **VGA: 640×480**.
- Icon that indicates image quality appears (☞ P. 160).

Note

- To give priority to the image quality when shooting an image, select [FINE] or [SUPER FINE].
- For movie shooting, image quality cannot be selected when **Effect shot** or **Common replay mode** is set.

Setting File Size Limit <File Size Limit>

Set File size limit before shooting movies.

- When sending with i-motion mail, select [For mail (short)] or [For mail (long)]. Record based on allowable size of mail attachment. Select [For mail (short)] to limit the file size to up to approximately 500 KB. Select [For mail (long)] to limit the file size to up to approximately 2 MB.

1 In the movie shooting screen (☞ P. 161), press [Shooting menu] ▶ [File size limit] ▶ select the file size.

File size	For mail (short)*1	Unrestricted*2
	For mail (long)	

- *1 When image size is **VGA: 640×480**, this option cannot be selected.
- *2 If save destination is set to FOMA terminal handset, this option cannot be selected.

Note

- When save destination is set to **microSD Memory Card** and File size limit is set to [Unrestricted], the maximum recording time is approximately 1 hour (excluding when Switch image/voice is set to [Voice only]). When mail is sent right after shooting, the first approximately 2 MB or less are cut and sent.
- When save destination is changed to the FOMA terminal handset, File size limit is set to [For mail (long)]. When save destination is changed to microSD Memory Card, File size limit is set to [Unrestricted]. However, when **Common replay mode** is set, file size is set to [For mail (short)] and cannot be changed.

Shooting Images with Auto Timer

<Auto Timer>

- In the still picture/movie shooting screen (P. 161), press [Shooting menu] ▶ [Auto timer] ▶ set Auto timer.**

Auto timer	OFF	ON (5 seconds)
	ON (2 seconds)	ON (10 seconds)

- appears on the display.

- Press [Shooting] or [Auto timer].**

- Timer sound is audible and Auto timer activates. After the set time (approximately 2 seconds/5 seconds/10 seconds) elapses, picture is automatically shot after the shoot start sound. and Camera LED flash.
- Press [End] to end shooting. In the viewer position, press [F]. Auto timer stays set.
- Auto timer is not deactivated after shooting.

Note

Notes about Auto timer

- Press [Shooting] or [Auto timer] to shoot image immediately.
- When a call is received or alarm activates, auto timer is canceled and shooting screen reappears.
- When Auto timer is active in Still picture mode, cannot be used to operate the zoom and cannot be used to adjust the brightness.
- If the FOMA terminal is closed or [Power] is pressed, shooting is canceled and Camera mode is ended.

Setting AF Mode <AF Mode>

Set AF (auto focus) mode according to the subject.

- For still pictures, AF mode setting returns to [Standard] when Camera mode is re-activated, or image size is changed.
- Switch between [Closeup] and [Standard] in Character reader, Bar code reader and Card reader modes.

Standard	Auto focus activates and the subject at the center is automatically focused.
Closeup	Recommended mode for shooting close subjects (approximately 10 to 20 cm).
Manual focus	Adjust focus manually.

- In the still picture/movie shooting screen (P. 161), press [Shooting menu] ▶ [AF mode] ▶ select AF mode.**

Standard	[Standard]
Closeup	[Closeup]
Manual focus*	[Manual focus] → focus adjusting bar appears → adjust focus with and press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Adjust so the bar on the bottom of the screen turns a deep blue. ● Select Manual focus again in the AF mode screen to adjust focus manually.

* Use TOUCH CRUISER pad to adjust the focus.

Note

- When AF mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.

Setting Image and Voice Shooting

<Switch Img/Voice>

When shooting a movie, select [Image + voice], [Image only] or [Voice only].

- In the movie shooting screen (P. 161), press [Shooting menu] ▶ [Switch img/voice] ▶ select the image/voice combination.**

Combination	Image + voice	Voice only
	Image only	

Note

- [Image + voice] is set and the setting cannot be changed when **Common replay mode** is set.

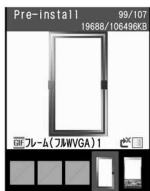
Shooting Still Pictures with a Frame

<Shoot with Frame>



Set and shoot still pictures with frames.

- Frames for **QCIF: 176×144, CIF: 352×288** or **Stand-by: 480×854** are preset in the FOMA terminal.
- A frame is added to each still picture in Continuous mode (☞ P. 163).
- When image size is **UXGA: 1200×1600, FullHD: 1080×1920, 3M: 1536×2048**, or **Panorama: 1280×320** or when Continuous mode is set in **VGA: 480×640** or **Stand-by: 480×854**, shooting still pictures with a frame is not available.
- If the image size differs from the frame size, the frame is rotated 90°.
- Use frames downloaded from sites and Internet web pages to shoot with frames.
- Changing the image size cancels Shoot with frame.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 161), press [Shooting menu] ▶ [Shoot with frame] ▶ set a frame.



When [Pre-install] folder is selected

To use frames	[ON] → select folder → select frame and press  ● To preview, select a frame. Press  and the previous screen reappears.
To cancel frames	[OFF]

- Combined image with frame and subject appears on the screen.

2 Press or .

Adding Various Effects <Effect Shot>

Set effects for still pictures and movies to change the color tone and touch.

- Switching to Continuous mode, changing the image size, or switching image and voice cancels Effect shot.
- When image size for still pictures is **VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854, UXGA: 1200×1600, FullHD: 1080×1920, 3M: 1536×2048** or **Panorama: 1280×320**, and image size for movies is **VGA: 640×480**, Effect shot is not available.

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen (☞ P. 161), press ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Effect shot] ▶ select the type of effect.

OFF	To remove effects
Black & white	Image contrast is expressed in monotone
Sepia	Image contrast is expressed in sepia color
Sparkling	Bright areas light up
Colored pencil	A colored line is drawn
Faded edges*1	Image edges have a soft, blurred effect
Spectrum*2	Spectrum of motions
Ripple	Adds ripple effect
Kaleidoscope (L)	Adds a kaleidoscope effect with a large pattern
Kaleidoscope (S)	Adds a kaleidoscope effect with a small pattern
Fish-eye	Image is expressed as seen through a fish-eye lens

*1 Available only for still pictures.

*2 Available only for movies.

2 Press or .

Note

- For movie shooting, **Image quality** cannot be changed. Image quality is automatically set to [FINE] for **sQCIF: 128×96** and [SUPER FINE] for **QVGA: 320×240** or **QCIF: 176×144**.
- For movie shooting, when Effect shot is set, **Fix camera shake** is automatically set to [OFF]. Afterward, when Effect shot is canceled, the Fix camera shake setting before Effect shot is retrieved.
- For movie shooting, Effect shot is not available when **Common replay mode** is set.

Shooting While Fixing Camera Shake <Fix Camera Shake>

- When image size for still pictures is **sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288** or **Panorama: 1280×320**, and image size for movies is **VGA: 640×480**, Fix camera shake is not available.
- When shooting still pictures, Fix camera shake is not available with Shoot by scene/White balance set to a setting other than [Auto] or in Continuous mode.
- When still picture shooting size is **VGA: 480×640** or **Stand-by: 480×854** and frame is set, Fix camera shake is not available.
- Fix camera shake is not available when shooting with Effect shot.
- Fix camera shake effects depend on the subject and the shooting conditions.

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen (P. 161), press [Camera settings] [Fix camera shake] [ON].

Note

- When Fix camera shake is set to [ON], shot images may contain noise or become darker depending on the subjects or surrounding light. This is not a malfunction. In such cases, shoot images after setting Fix camera shake to [OFF].
- For movie shooting, Fix camera shake is not available when **Common replay mode** is set.
- If camera is activated from other functions, Fix camera shake is not available when still picture shooting size is **3M: 1536×2048**.
- If the following action is performed while [Processing] appears after the shot with Fix camera shake, the still pictures being shot are discarded, and the preview screen may not appear.
 - When an incoming call is received or the alarm sounds (the still picture shooting screen reappears)
 - When the FOMA terminal is closed (Camera mode ends)

Shooting Environment/Subject-specific Images <Shoot by Scene>

Set camera to shoot with natural colors and focus based on surroundings and subject.

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen (P. 161), press [Shooting menu] [Shoot by scene] select a scene.

Still picture scenes

Auto	Ideal setting for normal shooting.
People	Ideal setting for shooting people.
Night scene	Ideal setting for shooting images at night or in dimly lit surroundings.
Landscape	Ideal setting for shooting detailed subjects such as nature and the city.
Exercise	Ideal setting for shooting moving subjects, such as in outdoor sports.
Character	Ideal setting for shooting subjects with contrast differences (e.g. black and white).
Into the sun	Ideal setting for shooting subjects against the sun.

Movie scenes

Auto	Ideal setting for normal shooting.
People	Ideal setting for shooting people.
Landscape (soft)	Ideal setting for shooting soft images of nature and the city.

Landscape (sharp)	Ideal setting for shooting sharp images of nature and the city.
-------------------	---

- Icon that indicates scene appears (P. 159).
- Alternatively, press [Scenes] in the still picture shooting screen or the movie shooting screen (Every time [Scenes] is pressed, the marks and scenes are switched in order).

Note

- After ending Camera mode, setting returns to [Auto].
- If Shoot by scene is set to a setting other than [Auto], White balance is automatically set to [Auto].

Adjust Color Tone <White Balance>

According to the light condition when shooting, adjust color and shoot.

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen (P. 161), press [Shooting menu] [White balance] select type of White balance.

Auto	Automatically adjust color tone.
Incandescent	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
Fluorescent	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.
Sunlight	Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
Cloudy	Suitable for shooting outside a cloudy day or in the shade.

Note

- After ending Camera mode, setting returns to [Auto].
- If White balance is set to a setting other than [Auto], Shoot by scene is automatically set to [Auto].

Minimizing Audio Noise <Noise Reduction>

Set Noise reduction to minimize audio noise in the movie shooting screen.

1 In the movie shooting screen (P. 161), press [Camera settings] [Noise reduction] [ON].

Note

- Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on surrounding noise and tone of the voice.

Setting Backlight Illumination Time

<Display Light Time>

- In the movie shooting screen (☞ P. 161), press ▶ [Camera settings] ▶ [Display light time] ▶ select the display light time.

As light setting	[As light setting] ● Backlight illuminates based on Display light time (☞ P. 132).
Always ON	[Always ON] ● Backlight is constantly lit. Backlight lit duration is same as Display light time for all screens other than viewfinder.

Shooting with Focus Lock <Focus Lock>

Use Focus lock to keep focus on subject and change composition.

- In the still picture/movie shooting screen (☞ P. 161), adjust focus and press or change composition with pressed halfway.

- Focus is locked.
 - (red) Appears when focusing
 - (green) Appears when focus is locked
- When shooting movies, locking focus is available during shooting.
- Focus lock sound notifies that focus is locked. However, this cannot be applied when recording movies.
- When shooting settings are changed while focus is locked, focus lock is released.
- If the FOMA terminal is opened or closed or in the viewer position, focus lock is released.

To lock focus again	When focus is locked with	→
	When focus is locked with pressed halfway	Release → press halfway

- Shoot.

To shoot	When focus is locked with	
	When focus is locked with pressed halfway	Press fully

- Do not change the distance to the subject.

Note

When AF mode is not set to Manual focus

- Auto focus is not available if is pressed when focus is already locked.

Note

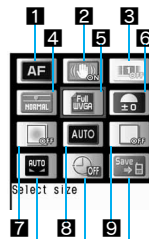
- While shooting a movie, press or press (halfway) to lock focus again. Use when distance to subject changes while shooting. Audio noise may affect shooting when using Focus lock.

Changing Settings for Shooting Collectively <Shooting Settings>

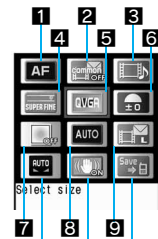
Show settings for functions frequently used when shooting and change them collectively.

- In the still picture/movie shooting screen (☞ P. 161), press (Settings).

- In the viewer position, press for 1+ seconds, select an item with (Eco)/ or and press . Press (P) to return to the shooting screen.



For still pictures



For movies

- To change settings, select item with and press (Change). Press (Back) to return to the shooting screen. Also, use TOUCH CRUISER pad.

	Shooting still pictures	Shooting movies
1	AF mode	AF mode
2	Fix camera shake	Common replay mode
3	Continuous mode	Switch img/voice
4	Image quality	Image quality
5	Select size	Select size
6	Brightness	Brightness
7	Effect shot	Effect shot
8	Shoot by scene	Shoot by scene
9	Shoot with frame	File size limit
10	White balance	White balance
11	Auto timer	Fix camera shake
12	Switch phone⇄SD	Switch phone⇄SD

Setting to Replay Movies on Other FOMA Terminals

<Common Replay Mode>

Replay movies shot in the Common replay mode regardless of FOMA terminal models.

- Image size is set to **QCIF: 176×144**, image quality to [FINE], file size to [For mail (short)] (500 KB), Fix camera shake to [OFF], Switch image/voice to [Image + voice], and Effect shot to [OFF]. These settings cannot be changed.

- 1 In the movie shooting screen (☎ P. 161), press ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Common replay mode] ▶ [ON].

Note

- After ending Camera mode, setting returns to [OFF].

Changing Camera Settings

Changing Camera Shutter Sound

<Shutter Sound>

Select from four shutter sounds.

- Camera shutter sound volume cannot be changed. The shutter sound is also audible during Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode) and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select sound] ▶ [Shutter sound] ▶ select a Shutter sound.

Shutter sound	Default tone	Ding dong
	Digital camera	Twinkle

- To check shutter sound, select a shutter sound and press (Play). Press (Stop) to stop playback.

Showing Images in Full-screen

<Full-screen Mode>

In the normal position, all icons can be deleted to view the still picture at full screen in Camera mode.

- Full-screen mode is not available when shooting size is set to **sQCIF: 128×96**, **QCIF: 176×144**, **CIF: 352×288** or **Panorama: 1280×320**.
- Full-screen mode deactivates when Camera mode ends.

- 1 In the still picture shooting screen (☎ P. 161), press ▶ [Full-screen mode].

- Press again and select [Full-screen mode] to deactivate Full-screen mode.

Saving to microSD Memory Card

<Switch Phone↔SD>

Save images to microSD Memory Card.

A commercially available microSD Memory Card is required (☎ P. 335).

- 1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen (☎ P. 161), press ▶ [Switch phone↔SD].

- Save destination is changed and shooting screen reappears.
- Alternatively, press (→microSD) after shooting still picture to switch.
- microSD Memory Card icon color changes depending on settings.

	Save to FOMA terminal handset
	Save to microSD Memory Card

- Length of movies that can be saved depends on the size of the microSD Memory Card. Maximum length is approximately 1 hour for movies with video.

Note

- In Still picture mode, images are saved to FOMA terminal handset even when save destination is set to the **microSD Memory Card** if there is no available space. In Movie mode, when shooting is started with the save destination set to the microSD Memory Card and there is no available space, Camera mode ends and the stand-by display reappears.
- Refer to P. 342 for details on checking still pictures/movies saved on microSD Memory Card.
- When save destination is the microSD Memory Card, shot images are saved in [Camera folder xxx] ("xxx" is the largest number when multiple folders exist).
- When the number of pictures or movies saved in the folder exceeds 400, a new folder is automatically created, and images or movies are saved in the new folder. The microSD Memory Card used on a personal computer or other devices cannot be used for saving unless the manager information is updated (☎ P. 346).
- When saving to microSD Memory Card, images are saved in DCF1.0 (ExifVer.2.2, JPEG) format.

Note

- DCF (Design rule for Camera File system) is a standard created mainly by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for images from digital cameras and other devices to be shared with related devices. However, DCF standard may not be compatible with all devices.
- Exif is a file format established by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for adding supplementary information to the still picture.

Setting Auto Save Mode <Auto Save Mode>

Set to save shot still picture automatically.

- If Auto save mode is set to [ON], image editing, Set screen and other operations are not available immediately after shooting.
- Shot still pictures are automatically saved on the microSD Memory Card or in the FOMA terminal handset.
- Change the save destination before shooting to save to microSD Memory Cards (☞ P. 172).

- 1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 161), press ▶ [Camera settings] ▶ [Auto save mode] ▶ [ON].

Preventing Still Picture/Movie Shooting Settings from Returning to Default Settings <Save Camera Set>

Save camera settings to retain various settings after Camera mode ends and use those same settings later.

- The following items are retained.

Still picture	Select size, Image quality, Switch phone↔SD, Auto save mode, Fix camera shake
Movie	Select size, Image quality, File size limit, Display light time, Switch phone↔SD, Fix camera shake, Noise reduction

- 1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen (☞ P. 161), press ▶ [Camera settings] ▶ [Save camera set].

- 2 Select [ON].

Send Message

Sending Still Pictures or Movies After Shooting

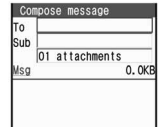
After shooting still picture or movie, send images as i-mode mail attachments from the preview screen.

- Movies are sent as i-motion mail.

- When save destination is set to microSD Memory Card, shot images are saved to the microSD Memory Card and the compose message screen appears.

- 1 In the still picture preview screen (☞ P. 162), press (Mail).

- When shooting movies, select [Compose message] in the screen after shooting is completed.



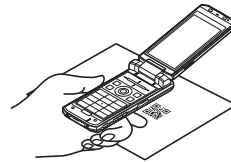
- When a shot movie exceeds 2 MB, a confirmation screen asking whether to cut the file for attaching to mail appears. Select [Yes] to cut and attach the first 2 MB or less.

- 2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Bar Code Reader

Using Bar Code Reader



Use camera to scan bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, register bookmark, add to phonebook, display text and i-appli To. Copy and paste text, play and save melodies and view and save images or ToruCa.

- Scan results cannot be saved on microSD Memory Cards.
- Camera cannot scan bar codes/two-dimensional codes other than JAN codes and QR codes.
- Scan split QR codes.
- Bar code reader is not available in the viewer position.

Using Text from Bar Codes (JAN/QR Codes)

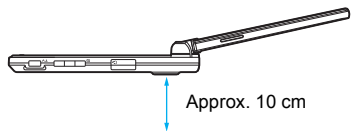
Use scanned text from bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for functions such as connecting to i-mode or Full Browser, composing i-mode mail, making voice/ Videophone calls, making PushTalk calls, composing SMS and running i-appli.

- AF mode is set to [Closeup] when activating Bar code reader. Focal distance for Closeup is approximately 10 cm.
- When viewing sites, use Bar code reader to enter JAN/QR code information into text boxes (☞ P. 183).
- Some bar codes cannot be scanned depending on types or sizes.

- Bar codes may not be scanned due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or QR code version.

1 In stand-by, press [LifeKit] ▶ [Bar code reader].

- Alternatively, press in the still picture shooting screen (P. 161) and select [Switch camera-mode] → [Bar code reader].



- Position the camera approximately 10 cm from the bar code (JAN/QR code). Keep aligned and do not move the FOMA terminal or code while scanning.

2 Display bar code (JAN/QR code) to be read in the center of the screen.

- FOMA terminal automatically distinguishes between JAN code and QR code.
- Glossy paper may be difficult to read. Adjust angle so light does not reflect directly into camera.



To lock focus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Hard-to-scan codes may be recognized. A beep sounds when focused.
To view saved data	→ [Saved data]
To switch AF modes	→ [Switch AF mode] → [Closeup]/[Standard]

3 Press (Scan).

- Focus lock is automatically set if not already set when scanning.
- Bar code reader starts scanning code (JAN/QR code). When scanning is complete, an end tone is heard and scan results appear.
- If 1 minute passes after scanning starts and nothing is scanned, [Could not scan] appears and the screen of step 2 reappears.
- To interrupt scanning, press (Break) or . Scanning is interrupted and the screen of step 2 reappears.

4 Select scanned text.

- Scanned characters and numbers are selectable if underlined.

- Based on the type of scanned text, selection screen for i-mode/Full Browser connection (for URLs), confirmation screens for compose message (for mail addresses) or phone (Videophone) confirmation screen (for phone numbers) appears.
- Applicable screens appear for scanned data. Add to phonebook screen for phonebook data, compose message screen for mail data, register bookmark screen for bookmark data, and run i-appli screen for i-appli data.
- If scanned characters and numbers are not underlined, display does not change even if is pressed.

To copy all scanned text	
To copy a part of scanned text	→ [Copy] → select origin → select last
To save scanned data	→ [Save] → select save destination <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Save up to five entries.

Note

- Compose or send SMS from the phone (Videophone) confirmation screen after read characters are selected.
- [Rotate the display, and use] appears if switch to the viewer position in the Bar code scanning screen. Return to the normal position to scan bar code.
- Alternatively, press in the URL entry screen or text entry screen for a site (P. 180) and select [Quote] → [Bar code reader] to activate Bar code reader.
- While phonebook **Function lock** is set, enter **terminal security code** to unlock temporarily and save scanned text to phonebook. Function lock is enabled again after saving.
- When **Manner mode** or **Public mode (Drive mode)** is set, Focus lock sound and scan complete tone do not sound.

JAN code

- JAN code is a type of bar code using vertical bars of varying width to express numbers.
- The code on the right is read as [4942857119022].



QR code

- QR code is a type of two-dimensional code expressing data vertically and horizontally. Data includes character strings (alphanumeric characters, kanji, kana, pictographs), images and melodies.
- The code on the right is read as [株式会社NTTドコモ].



Note

Split data

- QR code may be split into a multiple set of codes (maximum 16) which can be compiled into one set of data. If split data is scanned, the screen on the right appears after step 3. The parentheses show remaining codes/total codes. Select [Yes] to proceed to the next QR code scanning screen. When the next QR code appears in the center of the screen, scanning starts automatically. Repeat until all split data is scanned. Scan results appear.



Scanning and Using Images/ToruCa/Melodies from QR Codes

1 Read QR code (steps 1 to 3 on P. 174).

- In scan results screen, [Image] appears when scanned data is an image data, [Melody] appears when scanned data is a melody data, and [ToruCa] appears when scanned data is a ToruCa data.

2 Press **show/play**.

To show image	[Show] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some file formats cannot be viewed.
To play back melodies	[Play] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some file formats cannot be played. To stop playback, press stop or CLR.
To show ToruCa	[Display] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When multiple ToruCa are included, only the first one is acquired.
To save image, melody or ToruCa	[Save] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Image is saved to [Acquired data] folder in My picture of Data box. Melody is saved in [Acquired data] folder in Melody of Data box. ToruCa is saved in [ToruCa] of [Osaifu-Keitai] menu.
To not save image, melody or ToruCa	[Don't save]

Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks

- Add scanned mail addresses, phone numbers and URLs to phonebook or bookmarks.

1 Scan bar code (steps 1 to 3 on P. 174) **show** in scan results screen.

2 Add scanned results.

To add to Phonebook	To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	[Add to phonebook] → [Save new to phone] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations (P. 102). Phone numbers set as Videophone numbers in advance are saved as Videophone numbers.
	To save new to FOMA card phonebook	[Add to phonebook] → [Save new to UIM] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations (P. 107).
	To add/overwrite phonebook	[Add to phonebook] → [Add/overwrite] → [Yes] → select name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Scanned text is saved in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations (P. 102, P. 107). However, scanned URL is overwritten in the memo item (P. 101).
	To add bookmark (URL only) (P. 188, P. 304)	[Add bookmark] → [Register i-mode]/[Register FB] → select folder → [OK]

Using saved data

1 In the scanning screen (step 2 on P. 174), press **show** [Saved data] **show** select saved data.

- Proceed to steps 1 and 2 of "Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks" on P. 175.
- Saved data cannot be saved again.

Character Reader (OCR)

Reading Text

Shoot printed data such as URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers and English words, and convert into text to be used by FOMA terminal.

Use read text to connect to sites or Internet web pages, send i-mode mail, make voice/Videophone calls and PushTalk calls or send SMS. Can also be saved in phonebook entries and bookmarks or search for words in a dictionary.

- Text which can be read is shown below. Such as URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers, English words, etc. are automatically distinguished based on the text. Double-byte characters such as kanji and hiragana cannot be read.

URL	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [. - _ : / ~]
Mail address	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [. @ - _ :]
Phone number	Single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [- + P # *]
English word	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [- / ? ! @ + * ' () , &]

- Text may not be read correctly due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or text size.

Using Scanned Text

Data type (URL, mail address, phone number, English word) is automatically distinguished. Use functions such as reading text, connecting to i-mode, composing i-mode mail, making voice/ Videophone calls, sending PushTalk transmissions, composing SMS, searching in dictionaries, adding to phonebook, saving bookmarks.

- AF mode is set to [Closeup] when activating Character reader.

1 In stand-by, press [LifeKit] ▶ [Character reader].

- Alternatively, press in the still picture shooting screen (P. 161) and select [Switch camera-mode] → [Character reader].

2 Display text to be scanned in the center of the screen.

- Glossy paper may be difficult to read. Adjust angle so light does not reflect directly into camera.
- Adjust image so that it appears in the center of the frame []. Text near the sides of the frame may be difficult to scan.
- For optimal scan, point the camera straight while maintaining a distance of approximately 10 cm. Keep both the text and FOMA terminal level without moving them. Viewed text may become small and hard to read. Adjust distance so the bar on the bottom of the screen turns a deep blue.
- Scan up to approximately 60 characters at one time.



To lock focus	
To select data type for scanning	→ [Select subject] → select category <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When Character reader is activated, [Auto] is set.

To switch AF modes	→ [Switch AF mode] → [Closeup]/[Standard] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Set to [Standard] to scan large text and set to [Closeup] to scan small text.
To scan inverted text (white text on black background)	→ [Inverse mode] → [Reverse text] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When Character reader is activated, [Automatic] is set. When text is difficult to scan, set to [Normal] or [Reverse text].

3 Press .

- Press to specify the line to scan. Text is scanned one line at a time.

4 Press (Scan).

- Scanning starts. When scanning is complete, an end tone is heard and the Candidate screen appears. The type of scanned text is displayed.

To edit scan results	Select text to edit with and select candidate with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Letter by letter correction candidates appear on the bottom of the screen. When there are no correction candidates, enter text using dial keys. ● Press to delete letters one at a time.
To delete text on screen and scan again	→ [Yes]

5 Press .

To delete text on screen and scan again	→ [Yes]
To scan additional text	→ [Continue] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The character reader screen appears. ● Connect to previously read data to make complete text. Use for text split into multiple lines such as long URLs or mail addresses. Scan up to 256 characters.

To add text	→ [Add] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The character reader screen appears. Scan text in up to three sessions and link scanned text into one group. Perform functions such as scanning items for phonebook entries and adding scanned data to phonebook.
To edit scanned text	→ [Edit]
To copy all scanned text	→ [Copy all] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paste in other screens.
To delete scanned text	→ [Delete] → [Yes]
To change the data type of scanned text	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the scanned data is phone number, the data type cannot be changed.

6 Press use scanned results.

To use URL	[Connect i-mode]/[Connect FB]
To use mail address	[Yes] → compose/send i-mode mail (☞ P. 208)
To use phonebook	Voice call → [Yes]
	Videophone → [Yes]
	PushTalk → [Yes]
	SMS → [Yes] → compose/send SMS (☞ P. 243)
To use English words	[Yes] → search in dictionary

Note

- [Rotate the display, and use] appears if switch to the viewer position in the Bar code scanning screen. Return to the normal position to scan bar code.
- While phonebook **Function lock** is set, enter **terminal security code** to unlock temporarily and save to phonebook from scanned result. Function lock is set again after saving.
- When **Manner mode** or **Public mode (Drive mode)** is set, Focus lock sound and scan complete tone do not sound.
- When scanned data is a phone number, parentheses (()) become a hyphen (-). Hyphen (-) is erased when adding to phonebook or making a call.
- When read data is URL, **http://** is added to read results even if it is missing.

Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks

Based on the type of data, read data is added as phonebook entry items or saved as bookmarks.

- Scanned data is added to various following items by data type.

URL*1	[URL]	Mail address	[Mail]
Phone number	[Tel]	English word*2	[Word]

*1 URLs are saved in the memo item.

*2 English words are saved in the name/reading item.

- Only URLs are saved as bookmarks.

1 In the screen after scanning text (☞ step 5 on P. 176), press .

2 Register scanned results.

To add to Phonebook	To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	[Add to phonebook] → [Save new to phone] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 102).
	To save new to FOMA card phonebook	[Add to phonebook] → [Save new to UIM] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 107).
	To add/overwrite phonebook	[Add to phonebook] → [Add/overwrite] → [Yes] → select name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Scanned text is saved in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 102, P. 107). However, scanned URL is overwritten in the memo item (☞ P. 101).
To add URL to bookmarks	[Add bookmark] → [Connect i-mode]/[Connect FB] → select folder → [OK] (☞ P. 188, P. 304)	

Searching for Scanned Text in Dictionary

- The e-dictionary saved in the microSD Memory Card is required.

1 In the screen after scanning text (☞ step 5 on P. 176), press ▶ [Search dictionary] ▶ [Yes].

2 Select folder ▶ select dictionary.

- Refer to step 2 and onward on P. 370 for details on search methods for dictionary.
- After searching, press or press multiple times to return to the screen after scanning text.

Card Reader

Using Card Reader

Scan a business card with the camera to save to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

- The following items can be saved.
 - Name
 - Reading (surname only)
 - Phone number/mobile phone number/fax number (up to three)
 - Mail address (up to three)
 - Company/school
 - Department
 - Title
 - Postal code
 - Address
 - Memo (URL and other items)
- AF mode is set to [Closeup] when activating Card reader.

1 In stand-by, press [LifeKit] [Card reader].

- Alternatively, press in the still picture shooting screen (P. 161) → [Switch camera-mode] → [Card reader].
- Camera LED illuminates and the finder appears.

2 Display a business card in the center of the screen.

- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to fit the entire business card with the frame shown on the display. Make sure that no other objects, especially text-written objects, are displayed on the screen.
- For scanning, the direction of the business card can be either vertical or horizontal on the screen. Keep it vertical or horizontal when scanning.
- Alternatively, read in the viewer position.
- The larger the displayed image of the business card is, the clearer the scan result is. However, bringing the camera too close to the business card makes it difficult to adjust the focus. Keep the camera approximately 10 cm away from the business card.
- Switch AF modes if the focus cannot be adjusted easily.



To switch AF modes	→ [AF mode] → [Closeup]/[Standard]
To lock focus	or press halfway
To adjust brightness	/ ● In the viewer position, press /.

3 Press (Scan) or (Camera).

- After scanning is complete, the scan results screen appears.
- Focus lock is automatically set if not already set when scanning.

4 Press (Save) or (Camera).

- Scanned items are entered in the phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (P. 102).
- When the total number of saved phone numbers, mobile phone number and fax numbers is four or more or there are four or more saved mail addresses, the three numbers or addresses from the top are saved. // are the icons for phone number type and is for mail address type.

Note

- Some business cards cannot be scanned or be recognized properly.
- The following business cards cannot be scanned.
 - Business cards with background images
 - Handwritten business cards and business cards with handwritten-style fonts
 - Business cards with letters written in both vertical and horizontal directions
 - Business cards shown on a display, etc.
- The following business cards cannot be scanned fine.
 - Business cards with light colored text and low contrast
 - Business cards with extremely small characters
 - Business cards with italic fonts
 - Shiny, coated business cards
 - Business cards with a logo or logo-style characters
 - Business cards in which there is no space between characters since they are placed too close to each other
- The reading (pronunciation in kana) may not be saved correctly or added automatically.
- Items may not be recognized properly.
- Some characters may be removed from the displayed scan result.
- While phonebook **Function lock** is set, enter **terminal security code** to unlock temporarily and save to phonebook. Function lock is enabled again after saving.

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

■ i-mode

- What Is i-mode? <i-mode>180

■ Viewing Sites

- Viewing Sites <View Sites>180
- Site Layout and Operation 182
- Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu) <マイメニュー (My Menu)>185
- Changing the i-mode Password <Change i-mode Password>186
- Saving ID and Password <Save Login Info>186
- Viewing Internet Web Pages <Internet Access>187
- Saving Sites and Web Pages as Bookmarks <Bookmark>188
- Saving Site Contents <Screen Memo>190

■ Downloading Data from Sites

- Downloading Images from Sites and Messages <Save Image>191
- Downloading i-melody from Sites <i-melody>192
- Downloading PDF Files from Sites <Download PDF>193
- Downloading Kisekae Tool <Kisekae Tool>193
- Downloading Dictionaries from Sites <Download Dictionary>194
- Downloading Chara-den from Sites <Download Chara-den>194
- Downloading ToruCa from Sites <Download ToruCa>194
- Downloading e-Comic <Download e-Comic>195

■ Useful i-mode Functions

- Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To <Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To Function>195

■ Setting i-mode

- Setting i-mode 197

■ Using Certificates

- Setting SSL Certificates 199

■ i-motion

- i-motion <i-motion>201
- Downloading i-motion from Sites <Download i-motion>202
- Setting Whether to Automatically Replay i-motion <i-motion Auto Replay>203

■ i-Channel

- i-Channel <i-Channel>204
- Showing i-Channel 204
- Setting i-Channel <i-Channel Ticker>205
- Resetting i-Channel Settings <Reset i-Channel>205

What Is i-mode?

i-mode is an online service that connects i-mode compatible FOMA terminals (i-mode terminals) to sites (programs) and the Internet, and enables i-mode mail exchange.

- i-mode is a paid service that requires subscription.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on i-mode service contents.

Using i-mode

- Sites (programs) and Internet web pages are generally protected by copyright law. Using downloaded text, images or other data from sites (programs) and web pages for non-personal use without the author's permission such as changing, selling or redistributing is prohibited.
- Some models may not allow data such as downloaded images/movies/melodies, files sent/received by mail (images/movies/melodies, etc.), Screen memos or Message R/F to be viewed/played if a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card.
- If files with access restrictions by a FOMA card are set as the stand-by display or ring tone, etc. and a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card, settings are reset to default.

Viewing Sites

Use the various services provided by IPs (Information Providers).

Use the FOMA terminal for functions such as ticket reservations or bank balance inquiries. Available services vary depending on sites.

Separate subscription may be required.

- While viewing a site, use the pointer (⤴, ⤵, etc.) to select items (☞ P. 32, P. 183).


1

In stand-by, press .

- i-mode menu appears.








2

Select [iMenu].

- To cancel, press  (Cancel) while connecting (⤴ flashes).







Icons that appear during i-mode

	i-mode is in standby (flashes)
	i-mode is in use (flashes)
	SSL page is being viewed
	Loading images Set image display is set to [OFF]
	An error occurs while loading an image The image format is unsupported
	The image cannot be loaded because the URL is not correct
	Downloading i-αppli

3

Select an item.

- Repeat this operation to view site.

To scroll up/down	Down:  Up: 
To scroll one screen at a time	Down:  (Page ▼) Up:  (Page ▲)

4

To end, press  ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Select [Search by i-mode] on the folder list, Deco-mail template list or i-αppli software list of Data box to connect to sites.
- If characters do not appear properly, convert the character code (☞ P. 187).

Note

- Some downloaded images may exceed the number of colors the FOMA terminal can show on the display.
- Press **[M]** (i-mode M) while showing a site and i-mode end confirmation screen appears. Select **[Yes]** to go to i-mode menu.
- TOUCH CRUISER pad may not be available depending on the site.

Sending the usage history of Music Player

- The history of some music data played with Music player can be sent from i-mode site, Message R/F or ToruCa. If the send key is selected, the information of MUSIC played on the user's phone is requested from sites and a confirmation screen to send the information of MUSIC appears. Select **[Yes]** to send the information (title name, artist's name, and played date/time) of MUSIC played on the user's phone. The information of MUSIC to be sent is used by the IP (Information Provider) to offer customized information to the customers.

Related Operations

Replay Flash movies or animated GIFs <Retry>

While viewing a site, press **[M]** **[Display/set]** **[Retry]**.

Apply Function lock to i-mode <Function lock>

In stand-by, press **[M]** **[i-mode setting]** **[Function lock]** **[ON]** enter terminal security code and press **[ENTER]**.

Note (Related operations)

Refer to "Viewing Flash Movies" on P. 182 for details on viewing flash movies.

Sending terminal ID and UIM ID

While viewing sites or Internet web pages, some sites or Internet web pages may ask for terminal ID. When **[Phone/Terminal and UIM ID will be sent]** appears, select **[Yes]** to send. To not send, select **[No]**. To not send and return to the previous screen, press **[CLR]** or select **[Return]**.

Note

- The notification confirmation screen always appears before sending terminal ID and UIM ID. Terminal ID and UIM ID are not sent automatically.
- Terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.

Note

- Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP with this operation.

Viewing images

View images on sites/internet web pages, image mail and Message R/F.

- The FOMA terminal is compatible with images in GIF/JPEG format and Flash movies. Some images may not appear even in these formats.
- **[M]** appears while receiving an image and the image is shown when receiving is complete.
- Set image display (**[P. 198]**) to show or not show images. If set to **[OFF]**, **[M]** appears in the place of images.



Note

- Saved Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or Internet web page.
- When viewing Internet web pages, also view GIF/JPEG images and Flash movies. i-mode mail with URL for GIF/JPEG images or Flash movies do not appear as image mail. Select URL and use **Web To function** to view the GIF/JPEG images or Flash movies.
- When no image is received, **[M]** appears. Reload to try to receive image again.
- When images that are not GIF/JPEG format or Flash movies are received, **[M]** appears in place of the image.

Viewing SSL Pages

View SSL-enabled sites or Internet web pages that start with **https://** (SSL page). The screen on the right appears when trying to view an SSL page. Press **[M]** (Cancel) to not connect.

One of the certificates below is used to view SSL pages (**[P. 199]**).

- CA certificate
 - Client certificate
 - DoCoMo certificate
- When viewing an SSL page, **[M]** appears.

A message prompting to end the SSL connection appears when moving from an SSL page to a normal page.



Note

- If [This certificate has expired. Connect?] or other messages appears, the web page certificate is invalid, has expired or uses a different certificate from the FOMA terminal's certificate. When such messages appear, the page is not secure to send credit card numbers, postal addresses or other personal information. To continue viewing the page, select [Yes]. To not view the page, select [No].

Related Operations

View a site's server certificate <View certificate>

While viewing a site, press ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [View certificate].

Connecting to the Last Viewed Page

<Last URL>

When i-mode is disconnected, the last viewed page is recorded as Last URL. Use Last URL to quickly connect to the last viewed page.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Last URL].

- The last viewed URL appears.
- Pages may not be displayed if URL exceeds 2,000 single-byte characters. Additionally, some pages, such as completed melody download screens, may not be saved as Last URL.



2 Press (Go).

Related Operations

Delete Last URL <Delete>

In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page", press ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

Save Last URL as a bookmark <Add bookmark>

In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page", press ▶ [Add bookmark] ▶ select folder ▶ [OK].

Copy Last URL <Copy>

In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page", press ▶ [Copy].

Note (Related operations)

Saving as a bookmark

- Refer to P. 188 for details on saving bookmarks.

Copying

- Up to 2,000 single-byte characters can be copied.

**Changing Font Size **

Set font size of sites, Internet web pages and screen memos.

- Some sites may not appear correctly when Font size is changed.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Font size] ▶ select font size.

Font size	Maximum	Normal
	Large font	Small font

Setting Playback Volume for Melody <Sound Fx Setting>

Set playback volume for melodies from sites, web pages and screen memos.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Sound fx setting].

- While viewing sites or Internet web pages, press and select [Display/set] → [Sound fx setting] to adjust volume.

2 Press / to adjust and press .

Site Layout and Operation

When viewing sites or Internet web pages, use links to view other screens from the current screen and reload data. Perform operations such as verifying URLs and registering phone numbers.

Viewing Flash Movies

View Flash movies using the FOMA terminal.

Flash technology combines pictures and sound into animation. Sites that use Flash movies are more expressive. Save in My picture of Data box and set as stand-by (P. 128, P. 315).

1 View site (P. 180), Internet web page (P. 187) or saved screen memo (P. 190) with a Flash movie.

- Flash movie plays automatically. When some part of a Flash movie is outside the screen, scroll it until the entire image appears so that it plays automatically.

When a link is set in a Flash movie	Press , , , to or to select link set in Flash movie. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Operate the page even if does not appear.
To set Flash movie sound effect volume (P. 197)	When viewing Flash movie, press → [Display/set] → [Sound fx setting] → / →

To play a Flash movie again	When viewing Flash movie, press [OK] → [Display/set] → [Retry]
-----------------------------	--

Note

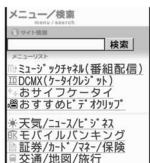
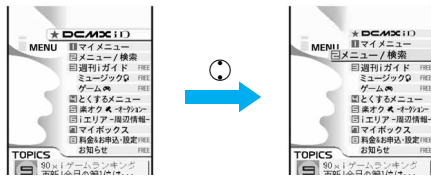
- When **Set image display** is set to [OFF], Flash movies cannot be viewed.
- Playback is not available for sound effects from Flash movies set as stand-by or incoming/outgoing call screen.
- If a Flash movie has an error during playback, it cannot be saved.
- Some Flash movies may cause the handset to vibrate during playback. Even if the vibrator is set to [OFF], handset vibrates.
- Some Flash movies may play differently from when viewed at usual sites.
- When Flash movies are saved in My picture of Data box, Screen memo, or microSD Memory Card and played, they may be viewed differently from when on a site or internet web page depending on the save destination.
- Refer to “Downloading Images from Sites and Messages” on P. 191 for details on saving Flash movies.
- Depending on the site, the pointer may not appear even if the TOUCH CRUISER pad is operated, but the operation may be available.

Selecting Links and Items

When viewing sites or Internet web pages, view other screens from the current screen. This is called a “link”. Links usually appear blue. A selected link is highlighted.

- Some links may be images. When selected, the image is outlined.

Selecting a link and moving to a new screen



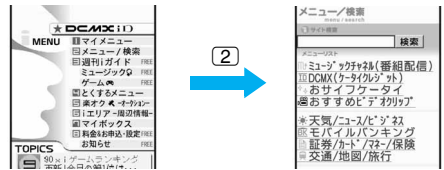
Linked page

- Press [Left] to highlight the next link and [Right] to highlight the previous link.
- If Link is set when using TOUCH CRUISER pad, a pointer appears. Double-tap to move to the linked page.

Moving to a new screen by using dial keys

In front of links, [1], [2], [3], etc. may appear.

Move by pressing the corresponding dial key ([1] to [9], [0], [X] or [H]).



Linked page

- ※ Some sites and Internet web pages may not be viewed.

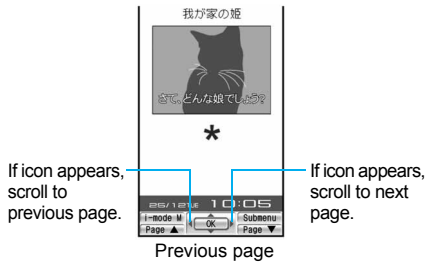
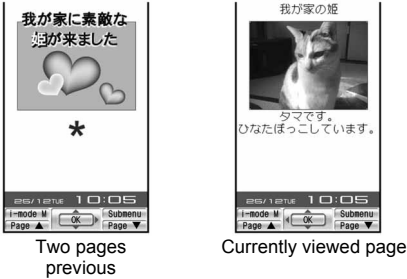
Selecting items and entering text in sites/Internet web pages

Use the following method to select items and enter text.

Name	Display example	Details
Radio button	<input type="radio"/> : Unselected <input checked="" type="radio"/> : Selected	Used to select items. Select only one entry.
Check box	<input type="checkbox"/> : Unselected <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : Selected	Used to select items. Select one entry or multiple entries.
Pull-down menu		Used to select items. Select pull-down menu to see a list of possible choices.
Text box	ID パスワード	Used to enter text. In text input screen, press [Quote] → [Bar code reader] and enter information into text box using JAN/QR codes. Melodies and images are not available and are displayed as text. Characters that cannot be entered in the text box do not appear. ● Use [Paste login info] to easily enter the ID or password. Refer to P. 186 for details.

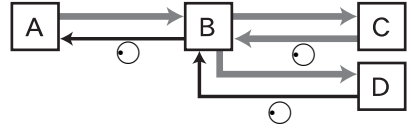
Moving to Previous/Next Page (Cache, History)

The FOMA terminal stores sites and Internet web pages and how they have been viewed. This memory is called the "cache". Press to show up to 50 pages stored in a cache without transmission.



- Press for the previous page and for the next page.
- Previously entered characters and settings are not restored for pages saved in the cache.
- When pressing to scroll through pages, if the page is no longer in the cache, the cache size is exceeded or the page is set (created) to always download up-to-date information, the handset reloads the page from the site.
- When switching to a screen saved in the cache, it may take time to view the page.
- Display actions may differ when Flash movies are shown.
- The history and cache are reset when i-mode ends.
- Press repeatedly to scroll through previous pages. When using to scroll through previous pages (C to B) and another page (D) is viewed, pressing twice at D will not return to C. Page will scroll from B to A.

<When scrolling A → B → C → B → D>



Reloading Information <Reload>

Reload information from a site or Internet web page when information was not received properly (when appears).

- Perform this operation after information has finished loading.
- Some sites and Internet web page information may not be downloaded properly even after reloading.
- Screen memos cannot be reloaded.

1 While viewing sites (P. 180) or Internet web pages (P. 187), press ▶ [Reload].

- Reloading starts.
- To cancel, press (Cancel) while reloading (flashes).

Viewing the URL <URL>

Verify the URL of the current site or Internet web page.

A URL is an address written in formats like <http://www.xxx.ΔΔ.jp>. Up to 2,033 single-byte characters (including <http://>) can be shown in the display.

- URLs cannot be edited.

1 While viewing sites (P. 180) or Internet web pages (P. 187), press ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [URL].

- To view URL of screen memos (P. 190)/bookmarks (P. 188), press in the each list and select [URL].

To copy URLs	
To scroll up/down	Down: Up:

Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook

<Add to Phonebook>

Add highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses from sites or Internet web pages to phonebook.

- Highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses on a screen memo can also be saved (☞ P. 190).
- Some highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses cannot be saved.

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select phone number or mail address and press ▶ [Save/Add].

2 Select [Add to phonebook] ▶ select a saving method.

Saving method	Save new to phone
	Save new to UIM
	Add/overwrite

- Selected phone number or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 102, P. 107).

Using Display Histories <History>

A history of up to 50 pages viewed is recorded starting with the newest, and the pages can be displayed by using the history.

- Histories are deleted when i-mode ends.

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), press ▶ [History].

2 Select a history entry.

- To check URL, select history and press (Show URL).

マイメニュー (My Menu)

Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

Register frequently visited sites from iMenu to マイメニュー (My menu) for convenient access.

- Register up to 45 sites. Some sites cannot be registered.
- Internet web pages cannot be registered. Use bookmarks for easy access (☞ P. 188).

Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

1 While viewing site to register (☞ P. 180), select マイメニュー (My menu) registration menu (example: マイメニュー登録 (My menu registration)).

2 Select [iモードパスワード入力] (Input password) field ▶ enter i-mode password and press .

3 Select (OK).

Note

- Page set-up may differ depending on the site.
- Upon subscribing to a paid site, the site is automatically registered to マイメニュー (My menu).
- Refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

Viewing Sites Registered in マイメニュー (My Menu)

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [iMenu] ▶ [マイメニュー] (My menu).

2 Select site.

Note

- For **Dual Network Service**, マイメニュー (My menu) that was registered on a mova terminal may not be available on a FOMA terminal, and マイメニュー (My menu) that was registered on a FOMA terminal may not be available on a mova terminal.

Change i-mode Password

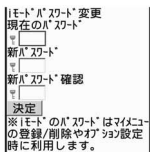
Changing the i-mode Password

Four-digit i-mode password (☎ P. 142) is required for マイメニュー (My menu) registration/deletion, Message R/F and i-mode paid site subscription/cancellation and mail settings.

- i-mode password can be changed after subscribing to i-mode. Keep i-mode password private.
- In the case of a forgotten password, bring identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop. Password is reset to [0000].

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [iMenu] ▶ [English iMenu] ▶ [Options].

2 Select [Change i-mode Password].



3 Select [Current Password] input field ▶ enter current i-mode password and press .

4 Select [New Password] input field ▶ enter new i-mode password and press .

5 Select [New Password (Confirmation)] input field ▶ re-enter new i-mode password and press .

6 Select [Select].

Save Login Info

Saving ID and Password

For some sites, a screen to enter ID and password may appear. Save login information (ID and password) in advance to easily enter them in the text box.

- Save up to 20 login information.
- Do not use easily estimated numbers, characters or symbols for the security codes, register symbol for writing authentication and the ID or password for each service. Keep the ID and password private when using and managing them. If the ID or password is found and improperly used by others, DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of the users.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Save login info].

- Alternatively, press and select [Save login info] while a site is shown.

2 Enter terminal security code and press .

- Login information saving list screen appears.

3 Select number to register.

- To check registered login information, select login information and press (Agree).

4 Select [Title] ▶ enter title and press .

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

5 Select [Item 1] ▶ enter ID and press .

- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters.

6 Select [Item 2] ▶ enter password and press .

- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters.

7 Press (Complete).

Using Registered Login Information

<Paste Login Info>

Paste login information collectively in the text box.

1 Select a text box while a site is shown and press ▶ [Paste login info].

2 Enter terminal security code and press .

3 Select login information.

- To check login information, select login information and press (Agree).

Note

- Depending on the sites, login information cannot be pasted to the text box to be entered.

Deleting Login Information

1 In the login information saving list screen (☎ step 2 of “Saving ID and Password” on P. 186), select a login information and press (Delete) ▶ select a deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete all	[Delete all] → [Yes]

Viewing Internet Web Pages

Enter Internet web page address (URL: addresses that start with *http://*, etc.) to connect.

- Internet web pages that are not i-mode compatible or have excess data may not appear properly.

1 In stand-by, press ► [Go to location] ► [Input URL].

- The URL entry screen appears. (*http://* is already entered).
- If a URL has been entered previously, that URL appears.
- Alternatively, press while viewing sites and select [Go to location] → [Input URL].

2 Enter URL and press .

- Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including *http://*).
- Operations when viewing are the same as for sites.
- Press (Cancel) while connecting (↵ flashes) to cancel.

To scan URL with Bar code reader (☞ P. 173)	In the URL entry screen, press → [Quote] → [Bar code reader]
When the URL is incorrect	In the URL entry screen, press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The character the cursor is on or the last character is erased. ● Press for 1+ seconds when the cursor is on the first character or after the last character to erase all the characters.

3 To end connection, press ► [Yes].

Note

- Press twice without entering characters and the i-mode menu reappears.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum size for a page, [Size of this page is not supported] appears, data transmission stops and only received data appears.

Related Operations

View with full browser <Switch to FB>

While viewing sites or Internet web pages, press ► [Switch to FB] ► [Yes].

Viewing Internet Web Pages with Correct Characters <Character Code>

If the characters on an Internet web page do not appear properly, convert them to proper characters and view again.

1 While viewing sites (P. 180) or Internet web pages (P. 187), press ► [Display/set] ► [Character code].

- Internet web page with correct characters appears.
- If characters do not appear properly, repeat the above step.

Note

- Converting character code when properly shown may render site unreadable.
- Some pages may not appear properly even after converting character code.
- After character code converts four times, the site or web page is shown with original code.
- After viewing with correct characters and then reloading or scrolling to the next/previous page, the site or web page is shown with original code.

Viewing Pages from URL History <URL History>

The FOMA terminal records up to nine Internet web pages accessed from [Go to location] of i-mode menu. Use the history to reconnect to those web pages.

1 In stand-by, press ► [Go to location] ► [URL history].

- Alternatively, press while viewing sites and select [Go to location] → [URL history].

2 Select URL.

Note

- When nine pages are exceeded, the oldest page in history is overwritten.

Related Operations

Delete URL history <Delete one>

1 In URL history list in step 1 of “Viewing Pages from URL History”, press ► [Delete one].

- To delete all: Press ► [Delete all] ► enter terminal security code and press .

2 Select [Yes].

Show URLs in URL history <URL>

In URL history list in step 1 of “Viewing Pages from URL History”, press ► [URL].

- To copy URL: Press .

Bookmark

Saving Sites and Web Pages as Bookmarks


Save frequently visited sites and Internet web pages as bookmarks for convenient access.

- Add folders and sort bookmarks into types and manage them (☞ P. 189).
- Sites or Internet web pages with images or melodies may not appear correctly when accessed from a bookmark.

Saving Bookmarks

Save up to 100 bookmarks in total.

- Each bookmarked URL can have up to 256 single-byte characters. URLs which exceed 256 characters cannot be saved.


1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), press  **[Bookmark]**.

2 Select **[Add bookmark]**.

- Up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters from beginning of the title is saved. If the title exceeds 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters, the extra characters are deleted.

When 100 bookmarks are already saved	[Bookmark data is full. Overwrite bookmarks?] appears → [Yes] → select folder → select bookmark to overwrite
When the same URL is already saved	[The same URL is saved. Overwrite?] appears → [Yes] ● Select [No] and the site or Internet web page reappears.
When the URL is too long	[URL is too long to register] appears and bookmark is not saved.

3 Select a folder ▶ select a saving method.


To save	[OK]
To change the title and save	[Edit title] → edit title and press  ● Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.
To change folder and save	[Change folder] → select folder → [OK]

Note




- In sites or Internet web pages, even if a selection is made in a radio button, check box, pull-down menu or text is entered in text boxes, the selected or entered contents are not saved in bookmarks.
- Some bookmarks may not be saved depending on the site or Internet web page.
- Refer to P. 340 for details on copying to microSD Memory Cards.
- Bookmark saved on the FOMA terminal handset using **Ir exchange** or **iC transmission**.

Viewing Sites and Internet Web Pages from Bookmarks




1 In stand-by, press  **[Bookmark]**.

- Alternatively, press  while viewing sites and select [Bookmark] → [Bookmark list].





To view all saved Bookmarks	 → [All bookmarks]
To view bookmarks on microSD Memory Cards	 → [View microSD data] ● To view bookmarks on FOMA terminal handset again, press  twice.

2 Select folder ▶ select bookmark.

- To check URL of bookmark, select bookmark, press  and select [URL]. To copy URL of bookmark, press  (Copy) while checking URL.
- To disconnect, press  (Cancel) while connected (⚡ flashes).

Note

- When a bookmark does not have a title, its URL appears in the Bookmark list.
- Bookmarks are listed in the order of use.
- Full Browser bookmarks do not appear on Bookmark list of i-mode in the FOMA terminal handset. i-mode and Full Browser bookmarks are shown together in the Bookmark list of microSD Memory Cards.  appears for i-mode bookmarks and  appears for Full Browser bookmarks.
- **Paste** the **copied** URL into text areas such as mail or **text memo**.

Attaching Bookmark to i-mode Mail

<Attach to Mail>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 188), select folder.

2 Select bookmark and press [Attach to mail].

3 Compose and send i-mode mail.
● Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Note

- If the other party's terminal does not support attachment, attached files are deleted.

Managing Folders

Manage bookmarks in up to 20 folders (including [Bookmark] folder).

Edit folder names or delete folders. The preset [Bookmark] folder cannot be edited or deleted.

Creating folders <New folder>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 188), press [Manage folders].

2 Select [New folder] enter folder name and press .

- In the folder name editing screen, press for 1+ seconds to delete "New folder" name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 188), select folder and press [Manage folders].

2 Select [Edit folder name] edit folder name and press .

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.
- In the folder name editing screen, press for 1+ seconds to delete folder name.

Deleting folders <Delete>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 188), select folder and press [Delete].

2 Select a deletion method.

To delete one folder	[Delete one folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
----------------------	---

To delete folders collectively	[Delete sel folders] → enter terminal security code and press → select folder (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all bookmarks inside and outside folders (keep folders)	[Del all(keep fol)] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Managing Bookmarks

Changing bookmark titles <Edit title>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 188), select folder select bookmark and press [Edit title].

2 Edit title and press .

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.
- In the title editing screen, press for 1+ seconds to erase current title.

Moving bookmark to another folder <Move>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 188), select folder select bookmark and press [Move].

2 Select a transfer method.

To move one bookmark	[Move one] → select folder
To move bookmarks collectively	[Move selected] → select bookmark (repeatable) → → select folder ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To move all bookmarks in the folder	[All in folder] → select folder

Deleting bookmarks <Delete>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 188), select folder select bookmark and press [Delete].

2 Select deletion method.

To delete one bookmark	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete bookmarks collectively	[Delete selected] → select bookmark (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all bookmarks in the folder	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Screen Memo

Saving Site Contents

Use screen memo to save screens from sites and Internet web pages.

- Save screen memo images in My picture of Data box and set as stand-by (P. 128).
- Save up to 400 screen memos. Amount varies depending on size of the data. When screen memo data is large, fewer can be saved.
- Protect up to the maximum amount of data that can be saved. Protected screen memos are not deleted even when Delete all is performed.

Saving Screen Memos

1 While viewing sites (P. 180) or Internet web pages (P. 187), press ▶ [Save/Add].

2 Select [Add screen memo].

To save	[OK] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters of the title is saved. When title is not entered, [No title] appears.
To change the title and save	[Edit title] → edit title and press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

Note

- In sites or Internet web pages, even if a selection is made in a radio button, check box, pull-down menu or text is entered in text boxes, the selected or entered contents are not saved in the screen memo.
- When a screen memo is saved, if the maximum saved entries (400 entries) are reached or the available memory space is smaller than the maximum space for one entry (100 KB), a message appears notifying that the screen memo overwrites the other.

Viewing Screen Memos

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Screen Memo].

Screen memo list
Restaurant
Job
Bowling

Screen memo list

Meaning of screen memo icons

	Standard screen memo.
	Protected screen memo.
	FOMA card restriction (P. 38) is set.

2 Select screen memo.

To scroll up/down	Down: Up:
To scroll one screen at a time	Down: (Page ▼) Up: (Page ▲)
To view other screen memos	Next: Previous:
To view screen memo list again	(List)

Note

- Screen memo is data from the time of saving. Screen memo may differ from the latest site or Internet web page data.

Related Operations

Check screen memo URLs <URL>

In screen memo display screen, press ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [URL].

- From screen memo list: Select screen memo and press ▶ [URL].
- To copy URLs: Press .

Check screen memo details <File property>

In screen memo display screen, press ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [File property].

- From screen memo list: Select screen memo and press ▶ [File property].
- To end viewing: Press or .

Save screen memo image/background image in My picture of Data box

<Save image/Save bckgrnd img>

In screen memo display screen, press ▶ [Save/Add] ▶ [Save image]/[Save bckgrnd img].

Create i-mode mail with screen memo URL

<Compose message>

In screen memo display screen, press ▶ [Compose message] ▶ [Compose message].

Create i-mode mail with image from screen memo <New mail w/image>

In screen memo display screen, press ▶ [Compose message] ▶ [New mail w/image] ▶ select image ▶ [Insert URL]/[Attach image].

Add phone numbers and mail addresses from screen memo to phonebook

<Add to phonebook>

In screen memo display screen, press ▶ [Save/Add] ▶ [Add to phonebook].

Related Operations

Adjust Flash movie sound effect volume in screen memo <Sound fx setting>

In screen memo display screen, press ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Sound fx setting] ▶ / ▶ .

Repeat Flash movies in screen memo <Retry>

In screen memo display screen, press ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Retry].

Note (Related operations)

Refer to P. 191 for details on downloading image.

Composing new mail with image

- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.
- Refer to P. 196 for details on compose new mail with image.

Refer to “Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook” on P. 185 for details on adding to the phonebook.

Refer to “Viewing Flash Movies” on P. 182 for details on viewing flash movies.

Managing Screen Memos

Protect/delete screen memos and edit titles.

Changing screen memo titles

<Edit title>

1 In screen memo list (P. 190), select screen memo and press ▶ [Edit title].

- In the screen memo display screen, press and select [Edit title].

2 Edit title and press .

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.
- Press for 1+ seconds in the title editing screen to erase current title.

Protecting screen memos <Protect set>

- appears for protected screen memos.

1 In screen memo list (P. 190), select screen memo and press ▶ [Protect set].

- In the screen memo display screen, press and select [Protect].

2 Select [ON]/[OFF].

Deleting screen memos <Delete>

1 In screen memo list (P. 190), select screen memo and press ▶ [Delete].

- In the screen memo display screen, press and select [Delete one].

2 Select deletion method.

To delete one screen memo	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete screen memos collectively	[Delete selected] → select screen memo (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all screen memos*	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

* Protected entries are not deleted.

- To delete screen memos from screen memo display screen, select [Delete one] only.


Save Image


Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

Save images, Flash movies, frames and stamps downloaded from sites, Internet web pages, and Message R/F. Set saved images as stand-by and for other functions (P. 128). Also, download Deco-mail templates from sites providing Deco-mail templates to use when composing messages.

- Save the retrieved image in the [i-mode], [Item] or [Decomail picture] folder or in a created folder in My picture of Data box. Available folder differs depending on the type and size of the image. Deco-mail templates are saved in [Template] of the Mail menu (P. 213).
- JPEG/GIF images and animated GIFs that are 20×20 pixels without file restrictions are saved as Deco-mail pictographs in the [Decomail pict] folder.
- Save up to 1,000 images on FOMA terminal handset. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.
- Save up to 100 KB of GIF images, JPEG images and SWF images (Flash).
- Images that are restricted for output to non-FOMA terminal devices can directly be saved to a microSD Memory Card (Contents transfer compatible).

Example: When downloading images that can be set as stand-by from sites and Internet web pages

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), press  ▶ [Save/Add].

2 Select [Save image] ▶ select image ▶ select folder and press  (Fix).

- [Set to display screen? (Current display settings will be cleared)] appears. Select [No] to save the image and end the procedure.

3 Select [Yes] ▶ [Stand-by display] ▶ [Yes].

- Select display size depending on the image.
- Available settings depend on the file format. Unavailable settings cannot be selected.



Note

- Saved Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or Internet web page.
- Depending on the size, some downloaded pictures may not fully appear when set as stand-by, etc.

Related Operations

Download Deco-mail templates and compose Deco-mail


1 While viewing sites or Internet web pages, select Deco-mail template.

2 Select [Save] ▶ [Compose message] ▶ compose message.

- To preview: Select [Preview].
- To not save: Select [Back].

Save background images from sites or screen memos <Save bckgrnd img>

1 While viewing sites, Internet web pages or screen memos, press  ▶ [Save/Add].

2 Select [Save bckgrnd img] ▶ select folder and press .

Note (Related operations)

Deco-mail template

- If templates are not saved, a message cannot be composed.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is insufficient. Delete unnecessary templates and increase available memory space to save (☞ P. 214).

i-melody

Downloading i-melody from Sites



Save melodies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages. Save up to 500 i-melodies. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.

Set the saved melody as the ring tone or attach to i-mode mail.

- Save up to 100 KB of SMF files and MFI files.
- Melodies that are restricted for output to non-FOMA terminal devices can directly be saved to a microSD Memory Card (Contents transfer compatible).

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select melody.

2 Save.

To play back melodies	[Play] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To stop playback, press  or . ● Melody is played at the same volume as phone ring tone (☞ P. 122). When phone ring tone is set to [Silent] or [Step], melody is played at [Volume 1].
To save melodies	[Save] → [phone]/[microSD]
To not save	[Don't save]

Note

Transfer and store saved i-melody data on a PC using microSD Memory Card (☞ P. 335).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content (Melodies with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal are not sent).

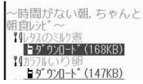
Download PDF

Downloading PDF Files from Sites

View and save PDF files downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Download is available up to 2 MB of PDF files. Files larger than 2 MB cannot be downloaded. Also, some downloaded PDF files may not be displayed.
- When downloading PDF files that are larger than 500 KB, a confirmation screen asking [Content length exceeds 500KB. Download?] appears.
- Save up to 50 PDF files on the FOMA terminal handset. The number of files that can be saved varies depending on the size of PDF files.
- PDF files with unknown file size cannot be downloaded.
- Downloaded PDF files are saved to the **PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx** folder when saved to microSD Memory Card (☞ P. 337). "xxx" in the file name is a three-digit single-byte number between 001 and 999.

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select a PDF file.



Split download PDF files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When the first page is downloaded, PDF viewer is activated and the PDF file appears. Download continues for remaining pages. ● Use links to move to other pages. When [Continue downloading following pages?] appears, select [Yes].
PDF files that must be saved first	[Download and save?] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Download the entire PDF file to view. ● Proceed to step 3.

- Refer to P. 359 for details on the icons shown in the PDF files.
- If download fails, download the PDF file again to view. Some files may not be displayed even when downloaded again.
- PDF files downloaded by an individual page cannot be saved to microSD Memory Card.

2 Press **[OK]** after download is completed ▶ **[Save]**.

3 Save.

To save to FOMA terminal handset	Select folder and press [OK]
----------------------------------	-------------------------------------

To save to microSD Memory Card	[→microSD] → select folder and press [OK] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Insert microSD Memory Card in advance. ● PDF files with file restriction cannot be saved to microSD Memory Card.
--------------------------------	--

- When saving is completed, the PDF file appears.
- When password is set, enter password and press **[OK]** to view the PDF file.
- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save (☞ P. 351).

Note

- When the number of bookmarks or marks exceeds ten, [10 bookmarks exceeded. Delete?] or [10 marks exceeded. Delete?] appears. After deleting bookmarks or marks, PDF files are saved or closed.

Kisekai Tool

Downloading Kisekai Tool

Save Kisekai Tool downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Save up to 50 Kisekai Tool on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Download is available up to 2 MB of Kisekai Tool.
- Downloaded Kisekai Tool is saved to [i-mode] folder in Kisekai Tool of Data box or [Movable contents] folder in microSD Memory Card.

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select a Kisekai Tool.

2 Save.

To check Kisekai Tool	[Preview]
To save Kisekai Tool	[Save] → [phone]/[microSD]
To not save	[Back]

- If save destination is FOMA terminal handset, a confirmation screen asking whether to use Kisekai Tool appears when saving is completed. Select [Yes] to apply Kisekai package to the phone.

Download Dictionary

Downloading Dictionaries from Sites

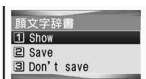
Download dictionaries from sites or Internet web pages to register in the FOMA terminal.

- Save up to ten Download dictionaries. Up to five can be used.
 - Save Downloaded dictionaries of up to 6 KB.
 - Download dictionaries from the [SH-MODE] site in iMenu.
[iMenu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile phone manufacturer) → [SH-MODE]
- ※ SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

- 1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select Download dictionary.



- 2 Save.

To display Download dictionary	[Show]
To save Download dictionary	[Save] → select slot ● When slot selected is already in use, a confirmation message to overwrite slot appears. Select [Yes].
To not save Download dictionary	[Don't save]



- 3 Set Download dictionary.

- When five dictionaries are already saved, the confirmation screen does not appear. Clear dictionary currently in use and try again. Refer to "Setting/Clearing a Dictionary" on P. 427 for details.

Download Chara-den

Downloading Chara-den from Sites

Download Chara-den from sites or Internet web pages to save to the FOMA terminal.

- Download Chara-den up to 100 KB.
 - Save up to 50 Chara-den files. The amount depends on available memory.
 - The downloaded Chara-den are saved to the [i-mode] folder in Chara-den of Data box.
 - Default Chara-den can be downloaded from the [SH-MODE] site in iMenu.
[iMenu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile phone manufacturer) → [SH-MODE]
- ※ SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

- 1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select Chara-den.

- 2 Save.

To display Chara-den	[Show] ● Chara-den player appears.
To save Chara-den	[Save]
To not save Chara-den	[Don't save]

Download ToruCa

Downloading ToruCa from Sites

- In stand-by, press and select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [Search by i-mode] to connect to the site easily.

- 1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select ToruCa.

- Download ToruCa up to 1 KB and ToruCa (details) up to 100 KB.

- 2 Save.

To save ToruCa	[Yes]
To not save ToruCa	[No]
To display preview screen	[Preview]

Download e-Comic

Downloading e-Comic

Download e-comic and others (including e-book and e-dictionary) from sites or Internet web pages and save them to the microSD Memory Card.

- Downloaded e-comic and others are saved into the [Manga&BookReader] folder/[Comic] folder of Manga&BookReader.
- Download up to 3 MB e-comic and others.
- Available e-comic, etc. types (file extensions) are X MDF format (.zbf) and TEXT format (.zbx).

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select e-comic, etc. ▶ [Yes].

2 Save.

To save	[Yes] ● Saved to microSD Memory Card.
To not save	[No]

Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To Function

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To

Use highlighted data (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, etc.) in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa and conveniently make a voice/Videophone call, send mail, or access an Internet web page. In addition, start 1Seg and set timer for starting or recording the 1Seg program.

- Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To may not be used with decorated mail received from a PC.
- Use the address link function to access a map site or start the application for navigation from URLs on sites, Internet web pages and ToruCa (☞ P. 284).

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)

Make voice/Videophone calls and send PushTalk transmissions or SMS to phone numbers in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa.

- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Calls cannot be made using Phone To (AV Phone To) while Keypad dial lock is set.
- PushTalk transmission cannot be sent when 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180), Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), Message R/F (☞ P. 239), mail (☞ P. 224) or ToruCa (☞ P. 267), select a phone number.

2 Make a call.

Voice call	→ [Yes]
Videophone	→ [Yes]
PushTalk	→ [Yes]
SMS	→ [Yes] → compose/send SMS (☞ P. 243)

- When phone number is saved in the phonebook, the name and phone number appear.

Note

- Some sites and Internet web pages show highlighted text linked to the phone number in place of a phone number.
- When a number string fulfilling the following conditions appears in a mail message, the string is recognized as a phone number and Phone To (AV Phone To) is available.
 - 10 to 26 digit numbers (including [0] or [+]) that start with [0] or [+]
 - 5 to 26 digit numbers (including [#] or [*]) that start with [#] or [*]
 - 3 to 26 digit numbers that start with [tel:] or [TEL:]
 - 3 to 26 digit numbers that start with [tel-av:] or [TEL-AV:] (Videophone)
- ※ Even if the above numbers contain a hyphen (-) or parenthesis (()), string is recognized as a phone number. If these symbols repeat continuously, number string before the repeating symbols are recognized as a phone number.

Using Mail To

Send i-mode mail to mail addresses in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa.

- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Some sites and Internet web pages show highlighted text linked to the mail address in place of a mail address.
- Mail To may not be available if two or more mail addresses appear together.
- Up to 50 single-byte character mail addresses are valid. Portions of addresses exceeding 50 characters are deleted after the fiftieth character.
- i-mode mail cannot be sent using Mail To while Keypad dial lock is set.
- Mail To is not available when 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180), Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), Message R/F (☞ P. 239), mail (☞ P. 224) or ToruCa (☞ P. 267), select mail address.

- Compose message screen appears. The selected mail address is entered.
- Subject and message may be entered if mail address is from a site or Internet web page.

2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Creating Image Mail <New Mail w/Image>


Create i-mode mail with URLs of images or image attachments in sites and Internet web pages.

- Send GIF, JPEG images or Flash movies.
- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), press ▶ [Compose message].

2 Select [New mail w/image] ▶ select image ▶ select a creation method.



To compose i-mode mail inserted URL	[Insert URL]
To compose i-mode mail attached image	[Attach image] → 

- A confirmation screen appears for images with the location information added. Select [Yes] to attach the location URL in a mail message.
- Location URL is a URL of a site providing maps and peripheral area information with the addition of location information (longitude and latitude), geographical coordinate system* and accuracy.
 - * Geographical coordinate system is a standard for expressing the position on the earth as longitude and latitude.

3 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Using i-appli To

Start i-appli from URLs in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail, ToruCa or screen memos.

- Start i-appli when i-appli To settings are set to [Yes].
- i-appli does not start with URLs which exceed 512 single-byte characters.

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180), Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), Message R/F (☞ P. 239), mail (☞ P. 224), ToruCa (☞ P. 267) or screen memo (☞ P. 190), select i-appli address (URL) ▶ [Yes].

- i-appli starts.

Using Web To

Connect with i-mode and view Internet web pages from URLs in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa. For i-mode mail, connecting with Full Browser is available.

- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Display and save image when image URL is included in mail message.
- Download i-motion when i-motion URL is included in mail message.
- Internet web pages with URLs which exceed 2,033 single-byte characters cannot be viewed.
- Some sites and Internet web pages show the highlighted web page name in place of a URL.



1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180), Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), Message R/F (☞ P. 239), mail (☞ P. 224) or ToruCa (☞ P. 267), select address (URL).

- Subsequent steps are the same as for i-mode Internet access (☞ P. 180).
- When selecting from ToruCa, perform the operation above, select [Yes].

Using Web To while viewing i-mode mail

When URL is selected from mail message, select whether to use i-mode or Full Browser.

1 Select address (URL) in i-mode mail message ▶ select connection method.

To connect using i-mode	
To connect using Full Browser	

Related Operations

Save an image from URL in mail message

<Save image>

Select URL ▶  ▶  ▶ [Save/Add] ▶ [Save image] ▶ select image ▶ select folder and press .


Note (Related operations)

- The image is saved in the [i-mode], [Decomail picture], [Decomail pict], or [Item] folder or a created folder in My picture of **Data box**.

Using Media To

Start 1Seg from the link of program information in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F or mail, or set timer for starting or recording a program.

1 While viewing sites (P. 180), Internet web pages (P. 187), Message R/F (P. 239) or mail (P. 224), select the link of program information.

- 1Seg is activated and the timer setting screen appears for starting or recording a 1Seg program.
- For setting timer for starting or recording a 1Seg program, some setting items are already entered by program information.
- When Channel setting ( P. 287) is not made, Channel setting is activated if 1Seg is activated from Media To.
- Refer to P. 289 for details on watching 1Seg and P. 294 for setting timer for starting or recording a 1Seg program.
- Media To may not be available even if the link of program information is highlighted.


Setting i-mode

Set various functions relating to i-mode access.

Adjusting Flash Movie Sound Effects Volume <Sound Fx Setting>

- Sound effects are disabled in Manner mode.
- Some Flash movies do not have sound effects.

1 While viewing sites (P. 180) or Internet web pages (P. 187), press ▶ [Display/set].

- Alternatively, in stand-by, press  and select [i-mode setting].

2 Select [Sound fx setting] ▶ press / to adjust and press .

- To silence sound effects, set to [Silent].

Changing Hosts from i-mode (ISP Connection Transmission)

<Host Selection>

※ Settings do not need to be changed to use i-mode.

ISP connection transmission

When changing FOMA terminal host, connect to various providers (ISP). Subscription to Packet Transmission Service is required to use ISP connection transmission. Packet transmission charges apply for ISP connection transmission.






※ Subscription is not required for i-mode subscribers.

- Pake-hodai/Pake-hodai full does not apply to packet transmissions incurred for hosts other than DoCoMo.

Provider agreements

- Subscription to another provider is required for ISP connection transmission. Contact providers for details regarding service contents (site/Internet access, mail, etc.) and subscription procedures.
- Some services may require a separate fee.
- Phone number and location information may be sent to the provider depending on the site.
- Save up to ten hosts in the FOMA terminal handset (excluding "i-mode (UIM)").
- i-mode is not available when using hosts other than "i-mode (UIM)".

Saving hosts

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Host selection].
- 2 Select the number to register ▶ [Edit].
- 3 Enter terminal security code and press .
- 4 Enter host name and press 
 - [Host ○] appears when saving a new host. The host number selected in step 2 appears for the ○.
 - Press  for 1+ seconds to erase host name.
 - Enter up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters.
- 5 Enter host number and press 
 - Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

6 Enter host address and press

- Enter up to 30 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

7 Enter host address for i-Channel and press

- Enter up to 30 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.
- The host is saved, and the setting is changed to the saved host.

Note

- Default connection information cannot be changed.

Changing hosts

Save hosts in advance in order to access.

1 In stand-by, press > [i-mode setting] > [Host selection].

2 Select the host number > [Set].

- When [i-mode (UIM)] is selected, [i-mode (UIM) selected] appears and the host is changed.

Related Operations

Reset saved contents <Reset>

In stand-by, press > [i-mode setting] > [Host selection] > select host number > [Reset] > enter terminal security code and press .

Note (Related operations)

- When set or saved hosts are reset, host is set to "i-mode (UIM)".

Setting to Use Terminal Data During Flash Playback <Use Phone Info>

1 In stand-by, press > [i-mode setting] > [Use phone info] > [Yes]/[No].

- Alternatively, while a site is shown, press and select [Display/set] → [Use phone info].

Not Viewing Images <Set Image Display>

Set handset to not show images from screen memo, sites or Internet web pages.

1 In stand-by, press > [i-mode setting] > [Set image display] > [OFF].

- Alternatively, while a site is shown, press and select [Display/set] → [Set image display].

Note

- When set to [OFF], appears in the place of images.
Image is not saved even when is registered in the screen memo (P. 190).
- When set to [OFF], Flash movies are not shown.
- Even when set to [OFF], images in i-mode mail and Message R/F are shown.

Setting to Receive/Reject PushTalk Transmissions During i-mode Transmissions <i-mode Arrival Act>

1 In stand-by, press > [i-mode setting] > [i-mode arrival act] > set priority.

Priority	PushTalk preferred	i-mode preferred
----------	--------------------	------------------

Resetting i-mode Settings

<Reset i-mode>

Reset following i-mode settings to default settings (P. 458).

Setting item	
Host selection	i-motion auto replay
Save login info	DoCoMo CA Host of Secure setting
Set image display	Use phone info
Font size	Sound fx setting
Certificates	i-mode arrival act

- i-Channel settings are also reset (P. 205).

1 In stand-by, press > [i-mode setting] > [Reset i-mode] > enter terminal security code and press .

2 Select [Yes].

Setting SSL Certificates

Enabling/Disabling CA Certificates <Certificates>

The following certificates are required to view SSL pages.

- CA certificate.... Certificate issued by a certification company that is registered in the FOMA terminal by default.
- DoCoMo certificate.... Certificate registered in FOMA card (green/white) required to connect to FirstPass center or FirstPass compatible sites.
- Client certificate.... Certificate downloaded from FirstPass center by selecting the FirstPass center menu in the FOMA terminal (☞ P. 199). The certificate is registered in FOMA card (green/white).

Detailed information of each certificate can be viewed. Disable CA certificate that develops security problems.

- SSL pages using a disabled CA certificate cannot be viewed.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Certificates] ▶ select a certificate and press  (Enable/Disable).

- appears for enabled certificates. appears for disabled ones.
- Enabled/Disabled switch.
- To show certificate details, select a certificate.

Setting FirstPass <Cert Operation>

Client certificates are required to access FirstPass compatible sites and Internet web pages. Client certificate is a proof of FOMA contract. Request and download from FirstPass center. Register Client certificates in FOMA card (green/white) to access certificate compatible sites and Internet web pages.

- FOMA card (blue) is not available.
- The SSL client authentication from i-mode browser is not available with FOMA Data Plan (Available with ISP connection transmission regardless of payment plan).
- Set the correct date and time to access FirstPass center (☞ P. 47).
- Some screens and operations for FirstPass center may change.
- FirstPass is not available overseas.

Note

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Certificates are exchanged between sites and FOMA terminal. Certificates are then validated for client authentication.
- After reading and agreeing with "FirstPass ご利用規則" (Usage Rules), request Client certificate.
- **PIN2 code** is required to use Client certificate. After entering PIN2 code, all actions are presumed to be performed by the user. Keep FOMA card and PIN2 code private.
- If FOMA card is lost or stolen, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual and cancel Client certificate.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for sites or information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. All problems must be resolved between user and site.
- Neither DoCoMo nor certification company guarantee security when using FirstPass or SSL. Use at own discretion.
- Packet transmission charges incurred from accessing a FirstPass compatible site with i-mode are included with Pake-hodai/Pake-hodai full.

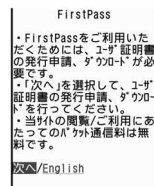
Client authentication

- Server and client authentication allow for safer data transfer. Certificates are exchanged between sites and FOMA terminal. Certificates are then authenticated. Client authentication allows for safer data transmission.

Accessing FirstPass center

Perform Client certificate operations from FirstPass center. Some screens and operations for FirstPass center may change.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Secure setting] ▶ [Cert Operation].



2 Select [English].



Note

- Read [The usage regulation (Japanese only)] in the screen of step 2 carefully before using FirstPass.
- Packet charges are not incurred when connecting to FirstPass center.
- The following functions are not available when accessing FirstPass center.
 - Sending/receiving i-mode mail (SMS can be received/replied)
 - Check new message (Check new SMS)
 - Receiving Message R/F
 - Downloading i-motion
 - Web To
 - PushTalk

■ Applying for Client certificate and downloading

Apply for Client certificate before downloading.

1 Access FirstPass center (☞ “Accessing FirstPass center” on P. 199) ▶ [Request your certificate].




2 Select [Continue].

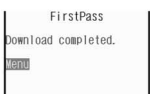
3 Enter PIN2 code and press .



4 Select [Download].

5 Select [Continue].

- To end, press  and select [Yes].



Note


- Always apply for Client certificate when renewing or attempting to get new certificate. Certificate cannot be downloaded without application.

■ Accessing sites with Client certificate

Access FirstPass compatible sites and Internet web pages using Client certificate.

- Refer to P. 199 for details on viewing Client certificates.

1 Access site (☞ P. 180) or Internet web page (☞ P. 187) ▶ view FirstPass compatible site.

- To view server certificate while viewing site, press  and select [Display/set] → [View certificate].

2 Select [Yes] ▶ enter PIN2 code and press .

Note

- When access to a FirstPass compatible site or Internet web page is attempted without Client certificate, [You have no certificate. Connect?] appears. Select [No] to end SSL transmission. Try again after downloading certificate from FirstPass center.
- When Client certificate expires, [Your certificate has expired. Connect?] appears. Select [No] and the previous screen reappears. Try again after renewing certificate from FirstPass center.

■ Canceling Client certificates


Invalidate downloaded Client certificates.

1 Access FirstPass center (☞ “Accessing FirstPass center” on P. 199) ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Revoke your certificate].

2 Select [Yes] ▶ enter PIN2 code and press .

3 Select [Continue] ▶ [Continue].

4 Select [Continue].

- [The certificate revocation is completed.] appears.
- To end, press  and select [Yes].

Note

- FirstPass compatible sites cannot be viewed after cancellation.
- To reactivate a Client certificate, apply and download again.

Changing Certificate Issuer

<DoCoMo CA Host>

Set host when downloading Client certificate.

※ Setting does not normally need to be changed.

1 In stand-by, press **[F4]** ▶ **[i-mode setting]** ▶ **[Secure setting]** ▶ **[DoCoMo CA Host]**.



2 Select **[Host]**.

- To set DoCoMo as host: Select **[DoCoMo]**.

3 Select **[Edit]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

- To reset, select **[Reset]**, enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**. Default settings are restored.

4 Enter host information and press **[OK]**.

- Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

5 Enter host address and press **[OK]**.

- Enter up to 100 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

i-motion

i-motion

i-motion refers to **image, voice and music data**. Download **i-motion** to **FOMA terminal** from **i-motion sites** and **Internet web pages**. Play downloaded **i-motion** immediately, or save them to **FOMA terminal**. Search for **i-motion sites** in **メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) of iMenu**.

- i-motion types include Standard type and Streaming type.
 - Standard type
 - These can be saved to FOMA terminal. There are two types.
 - Those played after downloading
 - Those played while downloading
 - Standard type i-motion cannot be saved (data that cannot be played back).
 - For Standard type i-motion, there are i-motion of up to 500 KB that is downloaded in one operation and i-motion of up to 10 MB that is downloaded in several batches even if the download is interrupted for an unspecified reason.
 - Streaming type (up to 10 MB)
 - Streaming refers to simultaneous playback while downloading data. When playback is complete, the played data is discarded, and cannot be played again or saved to the FOMA terminal. Even if i-motion Auto Replay (P. 203) is set to **[No]**, Streaming type i-motion are automatically played.
 - The type of i-motion downloaded differs depending on site or Internet web page.
 - Save up to 100 i-motion. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.
 - i-motion downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal, can be moved to a microSD Memory Card. However, some i-motion cannot be moved depending on the download source site.

Ring tone and Receive display combinations

When i-motion is set as the ring tone and Receive display, the combinations and actions are as follows.

- Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) are not available for Receive display.
- i-motion without voice are not available for ring tone.

Type of ring tone	Type of Receive display	Type of ring tone and Receive display when received
Melody	JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion without voice, Flash movie	Ring tone: Melody Receive display: Set Receive display*

Continued on next page ▶▶

Type of ring tone	Type of Receive display	Type of ring tone and Receive display when received
i-motion with image and voice	i-motion with image and voice	Ring tone: i-motion with image and voice Receive display: i-motion with image and voice
Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video)	JPEG image, GIF image	Ring tone: Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) Receive display: Set Receive display
Ring tone [Silent]	JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion without voice, Flash movie	Ring tone: Silent Receive display: Set Receive display*

* Flash movie sound effects do not play.

Note

- If i-motion with image and voice is set as the ring tone, the i-motion is automatically set as the Receive display. If a voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) is set, the Receive display is not changed and the set image appears.
- If i-motion with image and voice is set as the Receive display, the i-motion is automatically set as the ring tone. If an image only i-motion is set, the ring tone sounds in the following priority.
- Priority for ring tone is phonebook ring tone → group ring tone → regular ring tone.
- The priority for Receive display is phonebook Picture call → group Picture call → Call/Receive display. If none are set, the default image appears.
- When **Videophone ring tone**, **Payphone ring tone**, User unset, Unknown tone are set to [Phone ring tone], the actions are as follows.
 - Receive display returns to the default setting if a melody or a voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) is set for ring tone.
 - Ring tone is set to [着信音1] if JPEG image, GIF image, animated GIF, Flash movie or an image only i-motion is set for Receive display.
 - Receive display follows Incoming voice calls screen.
- Some i-motion are not available.

Download i-motion

Downloading i-motion from Sites

Playing i-motion Downloaded from Sites

Play back i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Ticker does not appear even if i-motion with ticker is downloaded.
- i-motion cannot be downloaded while 1Seg is running.

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select i-motion.

Streaming type		[Yes]
Standard type	i-motion auto replay [Yes]	● i-motion is played back while downloading. After i-motion download is complete, playback begins.
	i-motion auto replay [No]	Screens such as the play/save selection screen appear. Select [Play]/[Save]/[File property]. ● When i-motion is not saved and [Back] is selected, [Save this i-motion?] appears. Select [Yes] to save.

- To cancel download, press **CLR** or **⏏** while downloading.
- To stop playback, press **□**.
- To pause, press **⏏** (Pause) during playback.

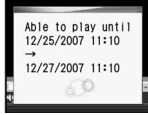
Note

- Some i-motion cannot be played while downloading.
- For i-motion that plays during download, when unable to play due to weak signal, play after downloading is completed.
- Weak signals may stop playback or distort the image during i-motion download.
- Date and time information on FOMA terminal may be reset after the battery pack has been removed for a long time. In such cases, playback for i-motion with an expiration date/replay period is not available.
- Some i-motion may not play properly after being downloaded.
- i-motion can be set as Chaku-motion (☞ P. 120) or as the stand-by display (☞ P. 128). Some i-motion are not available.

i-motion with a replay period

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with a replay period, the screen on the right appears.

- The i-motion cannot be played before and after the replay period.
- When download is attempted for i-motion with an expired replay period, [Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error] appears.



i-motion with an expiration date

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with an expiration date, the screen on the right appears.

- When download is attempted for i-motion after the expiration date, [Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error] appears.



i-motion with a set number of replays

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with a specified number of replays, the screen on the right appears.

- When download is attempted for i-motion with a replay number of 0, [This data cannot be saved. Download?] appears. To download, select [Yes].



Saving i-motion

- i-motion is saved to the [i-mode] folder in i-motion of Data box. i-motion which can be saved in the microSD Memory Card, can be saved in the [i-motion] folder included in the [Movable contents] folder (Contents transfer compatible).
- i-motion saved can be played using i-motion player.
- Some downloaded i-motion cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal.

1 While downloaded i-motion is played back/stopped (paused), press ▶ [Save].

2 Select [phone]/[microSD].

Viewing i-motion File Properties

1 While downloaded i-motion is played back/stopped (paused), press ▶ [File property].

- When viewing i-motion file properties from image list (P. 321), press and select [File property].
- For Streaming type i-motion, press while downloaded or paused and select [File property].
- Press or to end viewing.

i-motion Auto Replay

Setting Whether to Automatically Replay i-motion

Set whether to automatically replay i-motion when downloading.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [i-motion auto replay] ▶ [Yes]/[No].

Note

- Streaming type i-motion are always automatically replayed regardless of Automatic replay settings.
- Some i-motion are not automatically replayed even when Automatic replay is set to [Yes].
- When Automatic replay is set to [No], selection screens for operations such as playback and saving appear after download.

i-Channel

i-Channel

i-Channel is a service provided by DoCoMo or IP (Information Provider) that sends news, weather and other information graphically to i-Channel supported terminals. Receive such information periodically and show the latest information in stand-by using a ticker or press the i-Channel supported key to show the latest information in a list of channels (To show a list of channels P. 204). Select a channel from the list to retrieve detailed information.

※ i-Channel is only available in Japanese.

- i-Channel is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).

i-Channel has a “ベーシックチャネル (Basic channel)” and “おこのみチャネル (Favorite channel)”. “Basic channel” is a pre-registered channel provided by DoCoMo and is available immediately. Packet transmission does not charge for automatically updating information provided by “Basic channel”. “Favorite channel” is a channel provided by non-DoCoMo IP (Information Providers) and can be customized. Packet transmission charges for automatically updating information provided by “Favorite channel” are not included in the i-Channel usage fee. In addition to the i-Channel service charge, packet transmission charges are incurred for “Basic channel” and “Favorite channel” when viewing detailed information from the channel list. Also, note that packet transmission charges for automatically updating information provided by “Basic channel” during international roaming are not included in the i-Channel usage fee.

- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” for details on using i-Channel.

Showing i-Channel

Subscribe to i-Channel, receive i-Channel information and automatically show them in the stand-by ticker. Connect to the site from the channel list to retrieve detailed information.

1 In stand-by, press (CH).

- The channel list appears.
- When i-αppli is set as stand-by, press (CH) for 1+ seconds.
- Alternatively, press in stand-by and select [i-Channel] → [Run i-Channel list] to show the channel list.

- When i-Channel information is received for the first time, pressing does not stop receiving until all information is received.

2 Select a channel.

Note

- When i-Channel ticker is set to [OFF], i-Channel ticker does not appear.
- TOUCH CRUISER pad may not be available when viewing i-Channel.

Receiving the latest information

- Information may not be received when the handset is turned off or signal is weak, such as when outside the service area. Ticker appears in stand-by if information is received when the channel list is shown.
- Ring tone/Vibrator do not activate even when information is received. However, while receiving data, mail send/receive LED flashes.
- Depending on settings, information may be received when the channel list is shown.
- Channel list is not available during **All lock**. Terminal security code is required while **Function lock** is applied to i-mode/i-Channel.

Changing the i-Channel host

- Set i-Channel host in **i-mode host selection**. Setting does not normally need to be changed.
- i-Channel ticker does not appear when i-Channel host is changed. However, when the channel list is viewed, the latest information is received and i-Channel ticker appears.
- Information may not be automatically updated when the host is changed. View the channel list to receive the latest information.

Related Operations

Adjust sound effects volume <Sound fx setting>

In the channel list, press ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Sound fx setting] ▶ / ▶ .

Note (Related operations)

- The i-Channel volume setting is common with the Sound fx setting for i-mode.

i-Channel Ticker

Setting i-Channel

Set whether to show i-Channel ticker on the Stand-by display.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [i-Channel] ▶ [i-Channel ticker] ▶ [ON].

- To not show, select [OFF].

2 Select [Ticker font size] ▶ select the font size.

Font size	Small	Medium	Large(default)
-----------	-------	--------	----------------


- Sample of the ticker appears at the lower part of the display.

3 Select [Ticker color] ▶ select a ticker color.


Ticker color	Pattern1 to Pattern9
--------------	----------------------

4 Select [Ticker speed] ▶ select the speed.

Speed	Slow	Normal	Fast
-------	------	--------	------

5 Press  (Complete).



Note

- When i-Channel or i-mode subscription is canceled, i-Channel ticker does not appear.
- If i-mode service subscription is canceled before canceling i-Channel service subscription, i-Channel ticker remains [ON].
- i-Channel ticker is not available if i-Channel or i-mode is not subscribed.
- i-Channel ticker is not available while **All lock** or **Public mode (Drive mode)** is set or **Function lock** is applied to i-mode/i-Channel.
- i-Channel ticker is not available when playing i-motion set to stand-by or activating i-appli in stand-by.
- When Calendar display and i-Channel ticker are both set, press  in stand-by to switch between Calendar display and i-Channel ticker.
- When the **2in1** is used, set whether to show i-Channel ticker for each mode of the 2in1.

Reset i-Channel


Resetting i-Channel Settings

Reset i-Channel ticker settings to default settings (☞ P. 458).

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [i-Channel] ▶ [Reset i-Channel] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .

2 Select [Yes].

Note

- i-Channel ticker does not appear. When the information is automatically updated or  (CLR) is pressed in stand-by to receive the latest information, the information is automatically shown in the stand-by ticker.

Mail

● i-mode Mail	<i-mode Mail>208
● Displaying Mail Menu	<Mail Menu>208
■ Creating i-mode Mail/Deco-mail	
● Composing and Sending i-mode Mail	<Compose/Send i-mode Mail>208
● Creating and Sending Deco-mail	<Deco-mail>211
● Sending Using a Template	213
● Attaching a File	<File Attachment>214
● Saving i-mode Mail and Sending Later	<Save i-mode Mail>216
■ Receiving and Operating i-mode Mail	
● Receiving i-mode Mail	<Auto Receive>217
● Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail	<Receive Option>219
● Checking for i-mode Mail	<Check New Message>220
● Replying to i-mode Mail	<Reply to i-mode Mail>220
● Forwarding to Another Address	<Forward i-mode Mail>221
● Saving Mail Addresses and Phone Numbers to Phonebook	221
● Acquiring Attached Files for Manual Reception	222
● Checking/Saving/Deleting Attached File	<View Attachment>222
● Viewing and Saving Deco-mail Images	<View Image in Mail>223
● Saving Deco-mail as Templates	<Save Template>223
■ Operating the Mailbox	
● Displaying Messages in Inbox and Outbox	<Inbox/Outbox/Unsent Messages>224
■ Using Mail History	
● Using Mail History	<Received/Sent Messages History>231
■ Mail Settings	
● Setting FOMA Terminal Mail Functions	<Mail Setting>233
■ Using the Message Service	
● Message R/F	<Message R/F>236
● Receiving Message R/F	<Receive Message R/F>237
● Checking for New Message R/F	<Check New Message>238
● Viewing Messages R/F in Message Box	<View Message R/F>239
■ Using Area Mail	
● Area Mail (Service Scheduled)	240
● Receiving Area Mail	<Receive Area Mail>240
● Setting Area Mail	<Area Mail Setting>241
■ Using SMS	
● Composing and Sending SMS	<Compose/Send SMS>241
● Receiving SMS	<Receive SMS>243
● SMS Settings	<SMS Settings>244
● Saving SMS to FOMA Card	245
● Deleting SMS	<Delete SMS>246
● Avoiding Unsolicited SMS	<Scan Message>246

i-mode Mail

i-mode Mail

Subscribe to i-mode service to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals and e-mail via the Internet.

Attach up to ten files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF, etc.) in total of 2 MB to a message. Deco-mail is available for i-mode mail. Create and send expressive mail by adding text color, changing font size and background color, or inserting Deco-mail pictographs, which are preinstalled, in message text.

- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on i-mode mail.

Mail Menu

Displaying Mail Menu

Compose and view received and sent i-mode mail from Mail menu.

1 In stand-by, press .




Menu	Function	Page
Inbox	View, reply to, and forward received mail.	P. 217 P. 224
Outbox	View and resend sent mail.	P. 217 P. 224
Unsent messages	Edit or send unsent messages.	P. 217 P. 224
Compose message	Compose and send or save mail.	P. 208 P. 216
Compose SMS	Compose and send or save SMS.	P. 241 P. 242
WEB Mail	Access the WEB mail site and compose or send mail from Address B. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Available when the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode] or [B mode]. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]" for details on WEB mail. 	—
Check new message	Check i-mode center for new mail and Message R/F.	P. 220 P. 238
Check new SMS	Check SMS center for stored SMS.	P. 243
Receive option	Select mail to receive from i-mode center.	P. 219

Menu	Function	Page
Template	Edit and view Deco-mail templates.	P. 213
Mail setting	Perform various i-mode mail and SMS related settings.	P. 233

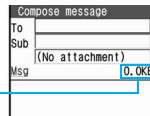
Compose/Send i-mode Mail

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

- Avoid entering pictographs and single-byte katakana in subject and message when sending to mobile phones not supporting i-mode. Characters may not appear properly on receiving end.
- When i-mode mail including pictographs is sent to a mobile phone of other mobile phone companies (au/SoftBank/Tu-Ka), pictographs are automatically converted and similar ones appear on the receiver side.
 - ※ May not appear correctly depending on the receiver's mobile phone model and function.
 - ※ When the receiver's mobile phone does not support sent pictographs, they are converted to characters or "=".
- Mail can be sent using [To], [Cc], and [Bcc]. The [To] field must be filled in.
- Change the size of the font in Font size ( P. 233).










1 In stand-by, press   [Compose message].

The bytes of message text entered



Compose message screen

2 Select [To]  select input method.

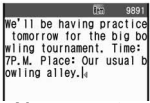
To select from phonebook	<p>[Search phonebook] → select recipient</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To select another address, select recipient, press , and select mail address. ● If a mail address icon (, , , ) does not appear, a mail address is not saved. With FOMA card phonebook,  appears even if the mail address is not registered.
To input directly	<p>[Direct input] → enter address and press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers and some symbols. ● @docomo.ne.jp is not necessary when sending to i-mode terminals. ● Symbols ( P. 424) and Internet-related phrases ( P. 424) are available.

To select from Sent messages history	[Sent messages] → select recipient → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Select when there are i-mode mail sent messages.
To select from Received messages history	[Rcvd messages] → select recipient → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Select when there are i-mode mail received messages.
To select from mail members	[Mail members] → select mail member <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Save mail members in advance (P. 234).
To send to multiple ones (P. 210)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Broadcast field is added when an address is entered in [To]. ● Select Broadcast field → select sending type → select input method. ● All mail members are always set to [To] if set mail members. ● Add up to four addresses.
To change address	Select address → select input method <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When [Search phonebook], [Sent messages], or [Rcvd messages] is selected, [Overwrite address?] appears. Select [Yes] to select mail address. ● When [Mail members] is selected, [Overwrite all address?] appears. Select [Yes] to select mail members. ● When [Direct input] is selected, the address entry screen appears.
To check address	Select address → [View address] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Check name and address.
To delete address	Select address → [Delete address] → [Yes]

- When the recipient is saved in the phonebook, the name appears in the recipient field.

3 Select [Sub] or [Msg] ▶ enter text and press .

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters for subject.
- In mail message entry screen, confirm a character in character entry area in middle of display, press and move to location to insert.






Message entry screen

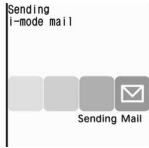
- Size becomes 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters or more and remaining bytes become negative under the conditions below. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less (remaining bytes is 0 or more).

- When pasted characters and mail message total size is 10,001 bytes or more
- When i-mode mail is decorated after entering message
- Line breaks [] are counted as one double-byte character. Single- and double-byte spaces (blanks) are counted as single- and double-byte characters, respectively (Line breaks [] are not available for Subject).
- Press in pictograph mode (P. 424) to switch between Pictograph and PictographD (Deco-mail pict). Switch to PictographD (Deco-mail pict) to enter Deco-mail pictographs. The total number of Deco-mail pictographs and inserted images that can be entered is up to 20. Note that their total size cannot exceed 90 KB including inserted images. Enter Deco-mail pictographs to create Deco-mail.
- Press at end of sentence in message entry screen to enter line break [to delete [without entering message and the compose message screen reappears.

To use phrases	In message entry screen, press → [Insert phrase] → select type of phrase → select phrase → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Refer to P. 476 for details on phrases.
To add signature	In compose message screen/message entry screen, press → [Add signature] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Save signature in advance (P. 234). ● Signature is automatically added when Auto signature is set to [ON] (P. 234). ● Signature is included in message size. If message and signature exceed the size limit, remaining bytes are shown as negative. Edit so the number becomes 0 or greater.
To attach location URL	In message entry screen, press → [Location info] → [From position loc.]/[From loc. history]/[From phonebook] → select location information <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Refer to P. 284 for the method of selecting location information. ● Character count includes location URL. ● is placed before location URL.
To compose Deco-mail (P. 211)	In message entry screen, press → [Decorate mail]

Press (Send).

- When sending is complete, [Transmission completed] appears and the Mail menu reappears.
- While sending, press  to cancel. Alternatively, press  or  to cancel. However, i-mode mail may be sent depending on timing. Canceled i-mode mail is saved as unsent mail.



When i-mode mail cannot be sent outside the service area

- When mail cannot be sent outside the service area, the Send reservation screen appears. Select [Yes] to make a send reservation to automatically send the mail after returning to the service area. Refer to "Sending Mail Automatically in Service Area" on P. 216 for details.

Note



- When setting mail members as recipients, the first address is entered in the first [To]. Subsequent addresses are entered in subsequent [To] fields (Can be changed to [Cc] or [Bcc]).
- When an address entered in the first [To] is deleted, the address entered in the second [To] is moved to the first [To].
- Some receiving models may not be able to receive the title completely but a part of it.
- i-mode mail that could not be sent by an unspecified reason is saved as unsent mail.
- Depending on signal status, [Transmission failed] may appear even if message is sent.
- Text for recipient may not appear correctly depending on signal status.
- While **Function lock** is applied to the phonebook, names do not appear even if recipients are saved in the phonebook.
- Save up to 500 sent mail and SMS combined. When new i-mode mail is sent with 500 sent mail saved, sent mail is automatically overwritten starting from the oldest unprotected sent mail (Confirmation message does not appear). Protect important i-mode mail. Please be careful especially when the size of attachment to be sent is large, e.g. 2 MB, since the number of sent messages to be deleted become large.
- When **Show sent/received** is set to [OFF], [Sent messages] and [Rcvd messages] are not available for address entry.
- While Function lock is applied to mail, enter **terminal security code** to compose and send i-mode mail.
- i-mode mail cannot be composed when **2in1** mode is set to [B mode].
- i-mode mail cannot be sent from Address B. Send it from the WEB mail site.

Note

When called during editing


- Previous screen reappears after disconnecting and editing can be resumed.

When other party has set Secret code

- Enter other party's **Secret code** (four digits) before @. This is unnecessary if Secret code is entered in phonebook entry ( P. 104).
- If address is **phone number** or **phone number@docomo.ne.jp**, phonebook is automatically checked for Secret code. If set, Secret code is added and sent ( P. 104).
- i-mode mail may not be able to be sent or replied to if mail address is saved as **phone number+Secret code@docomo.ne.jp** in phonebook. Change entry to **phone number@docomo.ne.jp** before saving Secret code.
- Error messages such as for unknown recipients are sometimes not received when sent to a non-DoCoMo mail address.



Broadcast

Send same i-mode mail to multiple addresses simultaneously from FOMA terminal. Send to up to five people at once.

- Select sending type (To/Cc/Bcc) in Broadcast entry field.
 - To** : Receiver's address. Addresses entered in [To] appear on the other recipient's screen.
 - Cc** : Used to send carbon copy to a third party.
 - Bcc** : Used to send blind carbon copy to a third party. Unlike [Cc], addresses are invisible to other recipients.
- Save up to five people in mail members to easily select multiple addresses ( P. 234).
- All addresses except set as [Bcc] are shown to other recipients. Addresses may not appear on some models.
- Sent mail is saved as one mail. All successful recipients are shown in sent message screen.
- If mail is not sent to all recipients, one copy is saved in Sent messages and another in Unsent messages. Unsuccessful recipients are shown in Unsent messages.
- When multiple identical addresses are set as address or broadcast, duplicate addresses are deleted.

Changing sending type

Change sending type for address and broadcast.

- When composing i-mode mail ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208), select address entry field other than the first entry  [Sending type].

- Select sending type.

Sending type	To	Cc	Bcc

Creating and Sending Deco-mail

Change color and font size of message text, insert image or change background color when creating i-mode mail.

- Create Deco-mail message text up to 10,000 bytes. Up to 20 types and images can be inserted. Note that their total size cannot exceed 90 KB excluding the message text size.

Decorations and effects

- Message text cannot be decorated when the remaining byte is 0 or a negative number.
- Decorated mail sent from PCs may not appear properly.

Active decorations



Message entry screen

Swing

Insert image

Blink



Preview screen

Font color/
Font size/
Word alignment

Background color

Insert line

Ticker








Palette



- In message entry screen, press and select [Decorate mail] to show palette. Select decoration type from the palette or press and select decoration from the Submenu (P. 212).



Submenu	Decoration
[Font color]	<p>Font color </p> <p>Description: Add color to characters. Pictographs are also shown in selected color. To return pictograph to default color, select [Default].</p> <p>Post-insertion adjustments: Select color</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When selecting [Other colors], select color.
[Font size]	<p>Font size </p> <p>Description: Change font size to [Large], [Standard] or [Small].</p> <p>Post-insertion adjustments: [Large]/[Standard]/[Small]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The size of Deco-mail pictographs cannot be changed.

Submenu	Decoration
[Insert image]	<p>Insert image </p> <p>Description: Insert image in message. Animated images such as animated GIFs stop after a set length of time. Word alignment is reflected in image location. Image location and word alignment can be changed. Images cannot be inserted when editing decorations.</p> <p>Post-insertion adjustments: At location to insert, press → select folder → select image and press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A confirmation screen, asking whether to attach location URL, appears for images with the location information added. Select [Yes] to attach the location URL in a mail message. ● Deco-mail pictographs can be selected and inserted.
[Blink]	<p>Blink </p> <p>Description: Set text to blink. Blinking automatically stops after a set length of time.</p> <p>Post-insertion adjustments: [Select]/[Reset]</p>
[Ticker]	<p>Ticker </p> <p>Description: Stream text (Show ticker). Text stops streaming after a set length of time.</p> <p>Post-insertion adjustments: [Select]/[Reset]</p>
[Swing]	<p>Swing </p> <p>Description: Wobble (swing) text sideways. Text stops MOVING after a set length of time.</p> <p>Post-insertion adjustments: [Select]/[Reset]</p>
[Word alignment]	<p>Word alignment </p> <p>Description: Change alignment of text to left, center or right.</p> <p>Post-insertion adjustments: [Left]/[Center]/[Right]</p>
[Insert line]	<p>Insert line </p> <p>Description: Add line (horizontal rule) in message text. One line's worth is inserted. Font color is reflected in inserted line. Line color (font color) can be changed. Line cannot be inserted when editing decorations.</p> <p>Post-insertion adjustments: At the location to insert, press </p>
[Background color]	<p>Background color </p> <p>Description: Change message text background color. Background color cannot be changed when editing decorations.</p> <p>Post-insertion adjustments: Select background color</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When selecting [Other colors], select color.

Submenu	Decoration
[Edit decoration]	Edit decoration  Description: Specify range and add decorations. Post-insertion adjustments: At start point, press  and press  at end point → set decoration <ul style="list-style-type: none"> [Insert image], [Insert line] and [Background color] are not available.
[Undo]	Undo  Description: Undo the last operation.
[Reset decoration]	Reset decoration  Description: Enter undecorated characters. All the decorations that have been already inserted are not canceled.
[Reset all]	Reset all Description: Cancel all decorations. Images that have been inserted are deleted and mail returns to text mail.
[Input]	Input Description: Enter text. Alternatively, press  when palette is displayed.
[Preview]	Preview Description: Preview decoration. Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds when palette is displayed.

Key operation	Decoration	Description
	Cursor/Sel deco	Switch between cursor movement in message text and cursor movement in palette selection.
	Range	Press to select the range to decorate.

Note

- If Deco-mail of 10,000 bytes or larger is sent to a supported terminal other than the following series* or if Deco-mail of any size is sent to an unsupported terminal (mova or FOMA models prior to the 900i series), a URL is sent in the message text. The recipient must select the URL to view Deco-mail on the Internet. However, some unsupported terminals receive mail only with message text and without a URL to view Deco-mail when Deco-mail of 10,000 bytes or larger is received. Compatible models: Available for Deco-mail supported handsets. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.
 - * 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (excluding P703ij), 704i series (excluding P704ij)

Inserting images

- Images (Decomail pictures) are preset in the FOMA terminal.

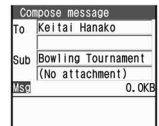
Note

- If the same image is continuously inserted, 20 or more can be inserted. However, images are not deemed identical in the following cases.
 - When an image is inserted/pasted after a message with the image is saved
 - When an image included in a signature is inserted into a message with the image
- When a message is composed while another application has already been activated (e.g. during voice call), previewing a selected icon may not be available. Only image selection by pressing [OK] is available.
- To display the inserted image information, move the cursor right ahead of the image and select [File property] from the Submenu.

Inserting message text while decorating

Enter text with decorations after specifying decoration method. Or, decorate already entered text with specified decoration method.




- In mail compose message screen, enter recipient and subject (steps 1 to 3 on P. 20).**





- Select [Msg].**

- To specify the decoration method and enter text with decorations, proceed to step 3. To enter text and decorate afterwards, enter message text.




- Press  [Decorate mail] ▶ select decoration type from palette ▶ specify decoration.**

- Press  (Cursor) to move cursor in message text when palette is displayed. Press  (Sel deco) again to return to palette selection.
- When Palette is set to [OFF], press , select [Decorate mail], select decoration type from the Submenu, and specify decoration.





To specify blink	[Blink] → [Select] → enter text
To specify ticker	[Ticker] → [Select] → enter text
To specify swing	[Swing] → [Select] → enter text
To display preview screen	 → [Preview] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press  and the previous screen reappears.

4 When finished specifying decorations, enter message text.

- The bytes of message text entered appear.
- When decorating entered text, refer to "Setting range and decorating" on P. 213.
- When Palette is set to [OFF], press  (Input) when finished specifying decorations and enter message text.
- Decorations are reflected when message text is entered.
- Even after deleting text with decorations, decoration data may remain and cause available character number to decrease. Delete decorations before deleting text. When  is pressed for 1+ seconds to delete text, the text and the decoration data are deleted together.
- To undo to one step before editing message text, press  and select [Undo]. Decorations cannot be undone if decoration area is specified after multiple decorations are specified in continuation.






5 Press [Preview].

- Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds to display a preview screen.
- Press , close the preview screen and repeat steps 3 and 4 for multiple decorations.




6 Press (Agree).

- Press , select [Decorate mail] and press  → [Reset all] to delete all decorations. When Palette is set to [OFF], press , select [Decorate mail] and select [Reset all]. Inserted images are also deleted.


7 Press (Send).

Note

- Decorations and inserted images are quoted when replying with quote or forwarding Deco-mail (excluding images with [file restrictions](#)).
- Decorated mail sent from devices other than Deco-mail supported FOMA terminals may not appear correctly.
- When decoration is determined, status icon changes to .
- Even if mail with Deco-mail URL is forwarded from a model that does not support Deco-mail, the Deco-mail message cannot be viewed.


Related Operations

Set whether to show palette <Palette>



- 1 After step 2 of "Inserting message text while decorating" on P. 212, press  [Palette].
- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF].

Setting range and decorating

1 In the palette screen (☞ P. 212), press (Range).


- Alternatively, press  and select [Edit decoration] in the palette screen.

2 Move the cursor to location to start decorating and press .

- To select all text, press .
- To cancel selection, press .

3 Move the cursor to location to end decorating and press .

4 Select decoration from palette ▶ specify decoration.

- Specified range is decorated.
- To undo to one step before editing message text, press  and select [Undo].
- [Insert image], [Insert line], [Background color], [Edit decoration] and [Reset decoration] are not available.
- Repeat step 4 to add decorations to the same range.

5 After specifying, press (Input).

- Refer to steps 5 to 7 on P. 213 for subsequent steps.

Note

- When Palette is set to [OFF], select a decoration type from Submenu, specify a decoration, and then select the range.
- If area is specified after multiple decorations are continuously specified, Undo is not available.

Sending Using a Template

Use a template to create Deco-mail. Templates are Deco-mail models with set layout and decorations. Use templates to easily create and send Deco-mail.

In addition, save created Deco-mail as a template and download (☞ P. 192) templates from sites.

- Save up to 10 to 100 templates.

Using a Template to Create Deco-mail

<Template>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Template].

- Template list appears.

2 Select template ▶ (Mail).

- Template is reflected in message entry screen.
- Editing is the same as when creating Deco-mail. Refer to P. 211 for details.



Opening template while composing mail

1 In the compose message screen (step 1 on P. 208) or the message entry screen (step 3 on P. 209), press ▶ [Open template].

2 Select template ▶ (OK).

- When a message contains texts before selecting template (no decoration), [Copy and paste text?] appears. Select [Yes] to reflect template to the message entry screen and then select a paste location to attach the message text.

Note

- A template that exceeds 10,000 bytes for the body text or one with inserted images exceeding 90 KB cannot be opened.
- [Template] is not available when 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].
- In the following cases, [Entered message will be lost. Recall template?] appears when template is open. The message texts before template is selected are deleted if the template is reflected.
 - When decorated texts are entered in the message entry screen
 - When texts are entered in the compose message screen


Saving Mail as a Template <Save Template>

1 When Deco-mail is completed (steps 1 to 6 on P. 212), press ▶ in the compose message screen [Save template].

2 Select [Yes].

- Mail is saved in [Template] of the Mail menu.
- For Deco-mail created by opening a template, select [Save new] or [Overwrite].

Note

- The file names of saved templates are labeled automatically according to the date and time the templates were saved.
Example: December 25, 2007 at 1:05:07 P.M. → [071225_130507]
- Attachments are not saved with Deco-mail.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary templates and increase available memory space to save ( P. 214).

Editing Templates <Edit>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Template] ▶ select template and press ▶ [Edit].





2 Edit Deco-mail (steps 3 to 6 on P. 212) and press ▶ [Save new]/[Overwrite].

Related Operations





Edit template titles <Edit title>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Template] ▶ select a template and press  ▶ [Edit title].
- 2 Edit title and press .

Delete templates <Delete>



- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Template] ▶ select a template and press  ▶ [Delete].
- 2 To delete one, select [Delete one].
 - To delete templates collectively: Select [Delete selected] ▶ select template (repeatable) ▶ .
 - To delete all templates: Select [Delete all] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .
- 3 Select [Yes].

View detailed information <File property>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Template] ▶ select a template and press  ▶ [File property].
 - To end view: Press  or .

Note (Related operations)

Delete Template

- For deleting selected folders, press  (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

Template file properties

- Title name, file name, file format and file restrictions appear.

File Attachment

Attaching a File

Send i-mode mail attached still pictures, movie/i-motion, etc.

Supported attachments

- Attach the following data.
 - Still picture/image (JPEG image, GIF image*1, animated GIF, Flash movies)

- Melody (SMF*¹, MFi)
- Movie/i-motion (MP4)
- ToruCa*² (ToruCa, ToruCa (details))
- PDF data*³
- Phonebook (vCard)
- Schedule (vCalendar)
- Bookmark (vBookmark)
- Document file (BMP, PNG, Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Text)
- Other files (e.g. file is not recognizable by the FOMA terminal)

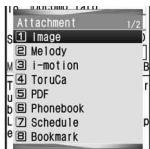
*1 GIF images and melodies in SMF format cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.

*2 ToruCa exceeding 1 KB and ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB cannot be attached to mail.

*3 PDF files being downloaded or PDF files of individual pages partially downloaded cannot be attached.

- Attach up to ten files in total size of up to 2 MB.
- Transmission time may be longer depending on the attached file size.









1 Compose i-mode mail (steps 1 to 3 on P. 208) ▶ select the attachment file field with and press .
















2 Select file to attach.

Attachment file field



To attach still picture/image	[Image] → select folder → select image and press  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check image, select an image and press  (View). ● A confirmation screen, asking whether to attach location URL, appears for images with the location information added. Select [Yes] to attach the location URL in a mail message.
To attach a melody	[Melody] → select folder → select melody and press  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To play melody, select a melody and press  (View). Press  to stop playback (Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back).
To attach movie/i-motion	[i-motion] → select folder → select movie/i-motion and press  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To play movie/i-motion, select a movie/i-motion and press  (View). Press  to stop playback.

To attach ToruCa	[ToruCa] → select folder → select ToruCa and press  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check ToruCa, select ToruCa and press  (View).
To attach PDF data	[PDF] → select folder → select PDF data and press  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check PDF data, select PDF data and press  (View).
To attach Phonebook	[Phonebook] → [phone]/[microSD] → select a name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check Phonebook, select a name and press . ● If [microSD] is selected, checking Phonebook is not available.
To attach Schedule	[Schedule] → [phone] → select date and press  → select schedule <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check Schedule, select Schedule and press . ● To select from microSD Memory Card, select [microSD] and select Schedule. Checking Schedule is not available.
To attach Bookmark	[Bookmark] → [i-mode]/[Full Browser] → select folder → select bookmark <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To select from microSD Memory Card, select [microSD] and select Bookmark.
To attach Document file	[Document] → select file and press  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check file, select file and press  (View).
To attach other files in microSD Memory Card	[Other] → select folder → select file <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Checking file is not available.
To attach shot still pictures	[Start cam (still)] →  →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Shot still pictures are saved in the [Camera] folder. ● Shooting size is automatically set to stand-by: 480×854.
To attach shot movies	[Start cam (movie)] →  (Rec) →  → [Save] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Shot movies are saved in the [Camera] folder. ● Select [For mail (short)] to send movie/i-motion exceeding 500 KB to a terminal other than the following series*. * 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (excluding P703iμ), 704i series (excluding P704iμ) ● Shooting size is automatically set to QCIF: 176×144.

- Compose message screen reappears. The number of attachments appear in the attachment file field. Select the attachment file field to show the attached file name and size.

3 Press (Send).

Note

- Frames, stamps and preset melodies cannot be attached.
- Melody may not be played properly if other party is using a model released prior to FOMA SH900i.
- Sent attached files may not be received by the models released prior to FOMA SH903i depending on the file type and size.
- Files with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.
- Images shot with FOMA terminal that have **file restrictions** are sent but cannot be forwarded by the other party.
- When files cannot be correctly received or viewed on receiving side terminals, the quality of movies may deteriorate or movies may be converted to continuous still pictures. To send movies to the models* not supporting i-mode mail (2 MB compatible), the movies shot with the **Common replay mode** set to [ON] are recommended.
 - * 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (excluding P703iμ), 704i series (excluding P704iμ)

- Files which the other party's terminal does not support are deleted.

Attaching shot still pictures

- If **Auto save mode** is set to [ON], preview screen after shooting does not appear.

Pasted data

- Pasted melody (MFi) is not quoted when replying or forwarding.

ToruCa

- Depending on the size, some ToruCa cannot be attached to a message to send.

Related Operations

Add attachment file

- 1 In mail compose message screen, select **attachment file field** and press **[Attach]**.
- 2 Refer to step 2 of "Attaching a File" on P. 215 and select a file to attach.

Release attached file

- 1 In mail compose message screen, select **attachment file field** and press **[Release]**.
- 2 Select **[Release one]/[Release all]** **[Yes]**.
 - To disable files collectively: Select **[Release selected]** **[select a file (repeatable)]** **[Yes]**.

Check attached file

In mail compose message screen, select **attachment file field** and press **[select a file]**.

Note (Related operations)

Adding attachment file

- [Attach] cannot be selected if the maximum number of files is already attached or if 2 MB of files are already attached.

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

Releasing attachment file

- For releasing selected files, press **[SelAll]/[ClrAll]** to select/clear all.

Checking attachment file

- When the mark of an attachment file is **[?]**, the file cannot be checked.

Save i-mode Mail

Saving i-mode Mail and Sending Later

Saving i-mode Mail

Save i-mode mail being composed to FOMA terminal and continue composing at a later time.

- 1 While composing i-mode mail (**[steps 1 to 3 on P. 208]**), press **[Save]**.

- i-mode mail being composed is saved as an unsent message.



Note

- If **[?]** is pressed while composing mail with address, subject, or message entered or file attached, end confirmation screen appears. Select [Yes] to cancel composing mail. Canceled mail is not saved.

Sending Mail Automatically in Service Area <Send Reservation>

Set to automatically send the i-mode mail which is composed in the out of service area after returning to the service area.

- Make up to 30 send reservations. Mail with send reservation is saved in [Drafts].

- 1 Compose i-mode mail (**[steps 1 to 3 on P. 208]**) and press **[Send reservation]**.

- When the mail is automatically sent, **[new auto send result]** appears on the display, and the auto send result can be checked. In the auto send result screen, select [Successful] to show Outbox and select [Failure] to show Unsent messages.
- When there is a mail, which is not automatically sent, **[?]** appears in the upper part of the display. To send the mail failed to be automatically sent again, select the mail from Unsent messages and send it. In addition, send reservations can also be canceled.

Related Operations

Check auto send results

When (new auto send result) appears in stand-by, press ▶ select (new auto send result) ▶ [Successful]/[Failure].

Check the error information of auto send

<Auto send error>

In unsent messages list (), select mail with send reservation and press ▶ [In-area auto send] ▶ [Auto send error].

Cancel send reservation <Cancel send res>

In unsent messages list (), select mail with send reservation and press (or) ▶ [In-area auto send] ▶ [Cancel send res] ▶ [Clear one].

- To cancel all send reservation: In unsent messages list (), press ▶ [In-area auto send] ▶ [Cancel send res] ▶ [Disable all].

Note (Related operations)

Canceling send reservation

- Send reservation is cancelled when performing the following operations.
 - When mail with send reservation is selected from Unsent messages and edited
 - When Host setting is changed
 - When the FOMA card is replaced with another FOMA card

Editing and Sending Sent/Saved i-mode Mail

Editing/Resending sent i-mode mail

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Outbox].



2 Select folder ▶ select i-mode mail.

- Press to show previous or next mail.
- Press and sent messages list reappears. Alternatively, select mail and press in mail list. Press to resend.
- To check an attached file, select the file name.
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message text ().

3 Edit/Resend mail.

To edit	(or) → [Edit] → edit mail and press <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 208.
To resend	→ [Resend]

Editing/Sending saved i-mode mail

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Unsent messages].

2 Select folder ▶ select i-mode mail.

- When mail with send reservation is selected, [Reserve sending after editing to auto send] appears and press . The send reservation is canceled and editing is available.

3 Select an item ▶ edit and press (Send).

- Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 208.
- To send unsent messages, select each one individually.
- Sent i-mode mail is saved in [Outbox]. Mail is sorted into various folders according to Sort rules ().

Auto Receive

Receiving i-mode Mail

Set Receive option setting () to [OFF] to automatically receive i-mode mail.

- Save 4 to 1,000 received i-mode mail and SMS. Capacity varies depending on size of received mail.
- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected mail is overwritten. Protect important i-mode mail (Overwrite confirmation message does not appear). Please be careful especially when the size of attachment to be received is large, e.g. 2 MB, since the number of received messages to be deleted become large.
- i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center when one of the following occurs.
 - Handset is turned off
 - While in Self mode
 - Outside the service area
 - Using Videophone
 - PushTalk transmission
 - While Omakase Lock is set
 - Receive option setting is set to [ON]
 - During Ir exchange
 - Connected to FirstPass center
 - Memory is full due to a large number of protected or unread mail
 - During iC transmission











Note




- Up to 100 KB for each i-mode mail (including attached files) can be automatically received. Attached files exceeding 100 KB can be manually retrieved from the i-mode center ().
- Mail ring tone does not sound if mail is received while a call is in progress, i-αppli is running, the camera is being activated, the handset is being positioned by GPS, pattern definitions are being updated or 1Seg is played or recorded in full-screen.
- Copy mail from FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card or from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset.

Note

- Number of characters shown on screen differs depending on font size setting.



Meaning of icons

Icon	Meaning
 (green)	Unread i-mode mail (☞ P. 218).
	Unread i-mode mail and SMS (☞ P. 218, P. 243).
 (red)	FOMA terminal received i-mode mail and SMS are full. View unread messages (☞ P. 218, P. 244), disable protection (☞ P. 230) or delete unnecessary mail (☞ P. 230).
 (red)	FOMA terminal received i-mode mail and SMS, SMS in FOMA card are full. View unread messages (☞ P. 218, P. 244), disable protection (☞ P. 230) or delete unnecessary mail (☞ P. 230).
 (red font)	Unread SMS (☞ P. 243).
 (blue font)	SMS in FOMA card is full. Delete unnecessary mail (☞ P. 230).
	Unread Area Mail (☞ P. 240).
 (blue)	Mail is being held at i-mode center (When Receive option setting is set to [OFF]). Perform Check new message (☞ P. 220) to receive i-mode mail.
	i-mode center is full. Perform Check new message (☞ P. 220).
	Function lock is set. Terminal security code must be entered to check i-mode mail while Function lock is applied to mail (☞ P. 142).

-  (blue) may not appear even when mail is held at the i-mode center.
-  (blue) and  do not appear when Receive option setting is set to [ON].


Opening New i-mode Mail




1 i-mode mail is automatically received ( flashes).

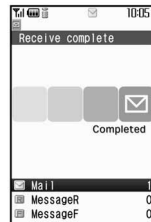
- To cancel receiving mail, press  while receiving.
- i-mode mail canceled while being received is held at i-mode center ( (blue) appears).
- i-mode mail is still received depending on timing.



Receive display

2 After reception, receive complete screen appears and mail ring tone sounds ( appears).

- If no operations are performed in receive complete screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen before reception automatically reappears.  (mail message) appears when the stand-by display reappears. Press  in stand-by and select  (mail message) to display Inbox list.



Receive complete screen

- Received mail is saved in [Inbox]. i-mode mail is sorted into various folders according to Sort rules (☞ P. 233).

3 Select [Mail].

- Folders containing unread mail are pink.
- SMS are also saved in Inbox.



4 Select folder ▶ select i-mode mail.

- Refer to P. 226 for details on viewing received mail.
- Refer to P. 222 for details on viewing attachment file.

Note

- Melody plays if **Melody auto replay** is set to [Auto replay]. Move to another screen to stop. Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back.
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message.
- Melody and i-appli To are both disabled if both are attached.
- Set i-mode mail size (message text + file attachment or pasted data) restrictions for incoming mail (From the i-mode menu, select [iMenu] → [English iMenu] → [Options] → [Mail Settings] → [Limit Mail Size]). When the set number of characters (amount of data) is exceeded, file attachments are received as **attached files for manual reception**. Pasted data is deleted at the i-mode center and cannot be received again.
- For **Deco-mail** with pasted images, the pasted images are displayed even if **Receive attached file** is set to not receive image.
- Check with FOMA terminal if i-mode mail received from FOMA terminal and PCs were received as To, Cc or Bcc (☞ P. 226).
- The characters that do not appear correctly are replaced with spaces, etc.

Note

Stopping ring tone

- Press the following.

	Ring tone stops and Inbox list appears.
	Ring tone stops and stand-by or screen before reception reappears.
	Ring tone stops and receive complete screen remains.

Receiving when not in stand-by

- When Receive/Auto send display is set to [Notice first], **mail ring tone** sounds and and receive complete screen appear.

Displaying the Mail Ticker

<Mail Ticker Setting>

Display mail ticker in the screen if mail is received while other functions are being activated.

- Mail ticker cannot be displayed when shooting or displaying functions other than 1Seg in full-screen.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Mail ticker setting].

2 Select an item to show ticker.

Item	Sender+title	OFF
	Only notice	

Note

- When the sender is not saved in the phonebook and **Function lock** is applied to phonebook, the sender's mail address appears if Mail ticker is set to [Sender+title].
- If Mail ticker is set to [Sender+title] or [Only notice], ticker appears regardless of the Receive/Auto send display (video, voice and sound is being played).
- If Function lock is applied to mail or Folder security for the save destination folder of received mail is set to [ON] even when Mail ticker is set to [Sender+title], only notification appears.

Displaying Mail ticker

Example: When mail is received while watching 1Seg



Mail ticker display

- Press for 1+ seconds when Mail ticker is being displayed to view received messages list. When in the viewer position, press (P) for 1+ seconds.
- Press (P) to hide Mail ticker.

Note

- When multiple functions are being used with Multi Assistant or depending on the used function (P. 479), the received messages list screen may not appear.

Receive Option

Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail

After checking the subject of the i-mode mail stored at the i-mode center, select mail to receive or delete mail stored at the i-mode center before receiving. Set [Rcv option setting] to [ON] in advance to make Receive option available (P. 234).

When set to [ON], i-mode mail cannot be automatically received.

When i-mode Mail Is Received

When Receive option setting is set to [ON] and mail is received at the i-mode center, the screen on the right appears in the stand-by display (Receive option notice). Press a key to clear display. To select and receive i-mode mail, clear display first.



- When a call is received while the screen on the upper right is shown, the screen reappears after the call even if or is pressed.
- When the screen on the upper right appears, the mail ring tone and vibrator do not activate.

Selectively Receiving i-mode Mail

<Receive Option>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Receive option] ▶ [Receive option].

- Connects to i-mode center and held i-mode mail appears.
- When Receive option setting is set to [OFF], [Make sure "receive option" in "mail setting" is set to ON] appears.










2 Select [Receive]/[Delete]/[Hold] for each i-mode mail.

- Press to check sections not shown.
- When a file is attached, the following icons appear to the right of attached file size.




Meaning of icons

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	i-motion attached.
	ToruCa attached.
	Other file attached.

- To delete all mail held at i-mode center, select  at the bottom of receive option screen. Select  in the confirmation screen to delete all mail at i-mode center.

3 Select select .


- To re-select mail to receive/delete, select .

4 Open received i-mode mail (steps 3 and 4 on P. 218).

Related Operations


Selectively receive mail from i-mode



<Receive option>

In stand-by, press  [iMenu] ▶ [メニュー / 検索] (Menu/Search) ▶ [メール選択受信] (Receive option).







Check New Message



Checking for i-mode Mail

Received i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off ( P. 217). Check and retrieve mail from i-mode center.

- Up to 1,000 messages in total of approximately 10 MB can be held at the i-mode center.
- Set types for Check new message (i-mode mail, Message R/F) ( P. 234).
- All i-mode mail is retrieved when Check new message is performed even if Receive option setting is set to [ON].
- After checking new messages, even if checked again while  is flashing, messages are not checked. [0] appears for all types of mail.
- Refer to P. 243 for details on checking for SMS.
- When multiple i-mode mail and Message R/F are received, ring tone set for the last i-mode mail or Message R/F received sounds.

1 In stand-by, press [Check new message].

- Alternatively, in stand-by, press  twice or press  and select [Check new message] to perform Check.
- Check new message ( P. 234) is performed according to settings in order from [i-mode mail] → [MessageR] → [MessageF] (Icons , , ) appear for each type checked).

- To cancel receiving mail, press  while receiving.
- i-mode mail canceled while being received is held at the i-mode center ( (blue) appears).
- i-mode mail may still be received depending on timing.

2 Results appear, and i-mode mail ring tone sounds when i-mode mail is received.

- [0] appears when no i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center.

3 Open received i-mode mail (steps 3 and 4 on P. 218).

Note

- Depending on signal strength, an error message may appear and check may not occur or connection may be interrupted.



Reply to i-mode Mail

Replying to i-mode Mail

Reply to i-mode mail with message quoted or unquoted.


- Not available when unsend messages memory is full.
- Refer to P. 244 for details on replying to SMS.

1 Open i-mode mail (steps 1 to 4 on P. 218) ▶ [Reply/Forward].

- Alternatively, to reply to mail, press  in messages list, or press  in message screen.

2 Select reply method.

To reply	[Reply] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> [Re:] is entered at the beginning of received mail Subject.
To quote message and reply	[Reply with quote] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> [>] is inserted at the beginning of message and received mail content is quoted. For Deco-mail, decorations and inserted images are quoted (excluding images with file restrictions).

- When selected i-mode mail cannot be replied to, [Wrong reply dest] appears.
- If selected Deco-mail exceeds 10,000 bytes when replying with [>] and message text,  appears. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less.
- When i-mode mail with Broadcast is selected, reply destination screen appears. Select [Reply to sender] or [Reply to all].

Reply message	
To	Kaitai Hanako
Sub	Re:Preparation for (No attachment)
MSG	0.0KB

3 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Edit subject and message text.
- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Note

- Press while composing i-mode mail and end confirmation screen appears. Select [Yes] to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- If is pressed in unedited reply screen, end confirmation screen does not appear.
- Replies cannot be sent to sender with mail address exceeding 50 characters. When mail cannot be replied to, appears in received message screen.
- Adding **Secret code** to mail is necessary for recipients with Secret code registered (P. 210).
- If i-appli To is pasted in message, i-appli To is not quoted even with Reply with quote. In addition, i-appli To data cannot be sent with **DoCoMo keitai datalink**, **Ir exchange**, or **iC transmission**.

Replying Quickly <Quick Reply>

Send replies quickly from received message screen.

- Register message as Quick reply mail (P. 235) in advance. Save up to ten messages.

1 Open i-mode mail (steps 1 to 4 on P. 218) [Reply/Forward].

2 Select [Quick reply] select message text.

- To check message text, select message and press (Agree).
- Check address, subject and message.

3 Press (Send).

Forward i-mode Mail

Forwarding to Another Address

- Not available when sent mail memory is full.

1 Open i-mode mail (steps 1 to 4 on P. 218) [Reply/Forward].

2 Select [Forward] compose and send i-mode mail.

- [Fw:] is entered at the beginning of received mail Subject.
- For Deco-mail, decorations and inserted images are forwarded (excluding images with file restrictions).
- Edit subject and message text.
- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Note

- Press while composing i-mode mail and end confirmation screen appears. Select [Yes] to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- If is pressed in unedited forwarding screen, end confirmation screen does not appear.

When a file is attached to forwarded i-mode mail

- Attachment files must be totally retrieved before forwarded. **Attached files for manual reception** that are not acquired yet cannot be forwarded.
- If i-mode mail with melody attached is forwarded to a model released prior to FOMA SH900i, melody may not be played properly.
- i-appli To, i-mode mail attachments and files with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal are deleted.
- If the mail that is addressed to Address B is forwarded when the **2in1** mode is set to [Dual mode], the mail is sent from Address A and saved in the Outbox of Address A.

Saving Mail Addresses and Phone Numbers to Phonebook

Save the received mail's sender and the sent mail's address, or mail address and phone number in message text to the phonebook.

- For SMS, the sender's/recipient's phone number is saved in the phone number field of phonebook.
- Saving in the phonebook cannot be performed in the following cases.
 - Sender's mail address that exceeds 50 single-byte characters
 - While Keypad dial lock is set
 - Saving new when there are 1,000 entries in FOMA terminal handset phonebook or 50 entries in FOMA card phonebook already saved
- While Function lock is applied to phonebook, enter terminal security code to save to phonebook.

Saving Sender's/Recipient's Mail Address to Phonebook <Register Address>

1 In received/sent message screen (P. 226), press [Add/Save].

2 Select [Register address] select a saving method.

Saving method	Save new to phone	Add/overwrite*
	Save new to UIM	

* Select a name to add/overwrite.

- Sender or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (P. 102, P. 107).

Note

- If there are multiple addresses, sender or mail address selection screen appears after selecting [Register address]. Select sender or mail address.

Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses from Message Text to Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>

1 In received/sent message screen (☞ P. 226), select phone number or mail address and press ▶ [Add/Save].

2 Select [Add to phonebook] ▶ select a saving method.

Saving method	Save new to phone	Add/overwrite*
	Save new to UIM	

* Select a name to add/overwrite.

- Selected phone number or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 102, P. 107).

Acquiring Attached Files for Manual Reception

When the size of received i-mode mail including attached files exceeds 100 KB, some or all of the attached files are not acquired automatically but received as attached files for manual reception. In this case, acquire the files from the i-mode center.

- The files which Receive attached file is set to not receive are received as attached files for manual reception.
- If Mail box memory is full, unprotected read mail is deleted in accordance with size of attached files.

1 Open received mail with attached files for manual reception (☞ steps 1 to 4 on P. 218) ▶ select a file name.

- The file is retrieved and saved to the Mail box.
- When there are attached files for manual reception that has not been acquired, an expiration date is displayed at the bottom of message screen. When all files are

Inbox	To	7
07/12/25 16:11		
Keitai Hanako		
Restaurant		
How about this shop?		
Docomo	END	
7.1KB		
保存期限:2008/01/04		

acquired, the expiration date disappears.

View Attachment

Checking/Saving/Deleting Attached File

- Attached files are saved in a selected save destination in each category.
- If an attached file is not recognizable by the FOMA terminal (i.e. other files), the file is saved in the [OTHER] folder of microSD Memory Card.
- When saving an attached file for manual reception that is not acquired, acquire the file from the i-mode center before the operation.

1 Open received mail with attachments (☞ steps 1 to 4 on P. 218).

- Sent mail is also available.

2 Select file with and view.

To view		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Attachment is shown or played. ● Press (IrSS) in the image display screen to send JPEG images to IrSS compatible devices using high-speed Ir exchange.
To save	Still picture/image, PDF data	→ [File attachment] → [Save] → [Yes] → select folder and press
	Movie/i-motion, melody	→ [File attachment] → [Save] → [Yes] → [phone]/[microSD]
	Phonebook	→ [File attachment] → [Save] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Saved to microSD Memory Card. ● To save after viewing Phonebook: → (Save) → [Save to handset]/[Save to microSD]. ● If a single attached file contains multiple phonebooks, the only first data can be checked and saved.

To save	Schedule, Bookmark	→ [File attachment] → [Save] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Saved to microSD Memory Card. ● To save after viewing attachment: → (Save) → [Save to handset]/[Save to microSD]. ● If a single attached file contains multiple schedules/bookmarks, the only first data can be checked and saved.
	ToruCa	→ [File attachment] → [Save] → [Yes] → [phone]/[microSD] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To save after viewing ToruCa: → (Save) (for ToruCa)/ (Save) (for ToruCa (details)) → [Yes] → [phone]/[microSD].
	Document file	→ [File attachment] → [Save] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Saved to microSD Memory Card.
	Other files	→ [File attachment] → [Save] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If an attached file is an e-book, etc. or is not recognizable by the FOMA terminal (i.e. other files), the attached file cannot be viewed or saved to the FOMA terminal handset. Instead, save the attached file to microSD Memory Card.
To delete		→ [File attachment] → [Delete Attach File] → [Yes]

Note

- Some images attached to i-mode mail may not appear correctly. In addition, the following images may not appear even if received.
 - JPEG images with height or width exceeding 2,640 pixels or total image area exceeding 5,200,000 pixels (H × W)
 - GIF images with height or width exceeding 2,048 pixels or total image area exceeding 4,194,304 pixels (H × W)
Refer to "Displaying Saved Images" on P. 312 for details on images.
- Unprotected read mail may be deleted if received mail has attached files larger than the available memory space.
- Compliant software is necessary for i-motion playback on PC or other devices (☞ P. 481 "About Movie Player Software"). Refer to DoCoMo web page for details.
- Melodies or Flash movies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back.

Note

- When files that are not recognizable by the terminal are saved to microSD Memory Card, the file name become one of **OTHER001** to **OTHER999**.

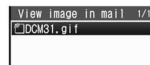
View Image in Mail

Viewing and Saving Deco-mail Images

- Deco-mail pictographs can also be viewed and saved.
- Images can be saved in the [i-mode] folder, the [Decomail picture] folder in My picture of Data box, or the [Other still pic] folder of microSD Memory Card. Deco-mail pictographs are saved in the [Decomail pict] folder in My picture of Data box.

1 In received message screen with image inserted (☞ P. 226), press [View image in mail].

- Sent mail display screen is also available.



2 Select image with and view.

To view	
To save	→ [Yes] → select folder and press
	● For Deco-mail pictograph: → [Yes].

Note

- For attached images, view and save with **File attachment**.

Save Template

Saving Deco-mail as Templates

- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary templates and increase available memory space to save (☞ P. 214).
- Templates are saved in [Template] in Mail menu.

1 Open received Deco-mail (☞ steps 1 to 4 on P. 218) [Add/Save] [Save template] [Yes].

- Sent mail is also available.

Note

- Saved template files are named automatically according to the saved date and time.
Example: December 25, 2007 at 1:05:07 P.M. → [071225_130507]
- Attachments in received Deco-mail are not saved.
- When an inserted image has **File restriction**, the image is deleted.

Inbox/Outbox/Unsent Messages

Displaying Messages in Inbox and Outbox

View received/sent/unsent i-mode mail and SMS.

- Both i-mode mail and SMS are saved in Inbox/Outbox.
- For received, sent and unsent messages, up to the following total numbers of i-mode mail and SMS entries can be saved. Capacity varies depending on the size of messages.

Received mail	Up to 1,000
Sent mail	Up to 500
Unsent mail	Up to 500

- Manage received/sent/unsent i-mode mail and SMS in folders. Folders can be created on the FOMA terminal handset.
- The FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card each have [Outbox] and [Inbox] folders. Sent mail in [Outbox] of both FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card are shown together in [Outbox] folder. The same applies for [Inbox] folder.

Example: Received mail

1 In stand-by, press [Inbox].

- Folders containing unread i-mode mail or SMS are pink.
- For sent mail, press [Inbox] in stand-by and select [Outbox].
- For unsent mail, press [Inbox] in stand-by and select [Unsent message].
- In Inbox/Outbox messages list or received/sent messages list, press [Switch] to switch between Inbox and Outbox.
- To list all the received/sent/unsent messages, press [Show all] (Show all) in the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list screen.

2 Select folder ▶ select i-mode mail/SMS.

- To view mail in mail-type i-appli folder, select folder, press [Enter], select [View i-mode mail] and select i-mode mail.

Inbox To 8
 07/12/25 15:10
 Kaitani Hanako
 Comet is approaching
 Tomorrow, around 12P.M.,
 a comet will be approach-
 ing the Earth.
 I'm sure it'll be beauti-
 ful.
 -END-

Message screen

To end viewing	[Exit]
To view other messages	[CLR] → select mail from messages list
To copy address, subject or message text of received/sent mail being viewed	[F1] → [Move/Copy] → [Copy] → select an item
To display in full-screen	[F1] → [Full-screen mode] (or press [F1] for 1+ seconds) ● To return: [1] to [9], [0], [X], [H], [O], [I], [M], or [CLR].

Note

Message screen operations

To scroll up/down	Down: [Down] Up: [Up]
To scroll one screen at a time	Down: [Page Down] Up: [Page Up]
To view other messages	Next: [Next] Previous: [Previous]

Related Operations

Make calls from message screen <Phone>

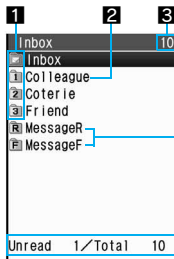
- In the received/sent message screen, press [Phone] ▶ [Phone].
- Press [Yes] ▶ [Yes] to make a voice call.
 - To make a Videophone call: Press [V] ▶ [Yes].
 - To call PushTalk: Press [P] ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

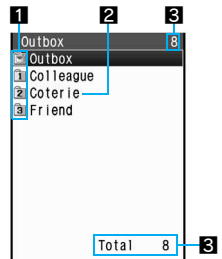
- If the name saved in the phonebook appears as a sender/recipient of mail or SMS, make a call when the phone number is saved in the phonebook.

Message Box List Layout

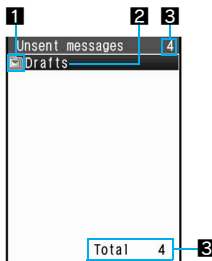
Inbox list



Outbox list



Unsent messages list



1 Folder icons

In the Inbox list, folder icons appear pink when an unread message is saved.

[Folder icon]	Created folder ● For folders [0] to [9], press [0] to [9] to open corresponding messages list.
[Mail icon]	Mail-type i-appli folder

2 Folder name

3 Total number of saved messages

The total number of saved messages in each box appears at the upper right of the display. The number of saved messages in a selected folder appears at the lower right of the display. Number of unread mail messages also appears at the lower left on the Inbox screen.

- The total number of saved messages includes the number of Message R/F.

4 Message R/F folder

	Message R is saved.
	Message F is saved.

Note

- When deleting a mail-type i-αppli, select whether to simultaneously delete the automatically created mail folder. If the mail folder contains a protected message, folder cannot be deleted.
- Refer to P. 245 for details on copying to FOMA card.
- Refer to P. 340 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Send and receive i-mode mail and SMS saved on the FOMA terminal handset using **Ir exchange** or **iC transmission**.

Messages List/View Layout

Received messages list

Sent messages list

Unsent messages list

- Screens for when the Preview is [OFF].

1 Received message type

In [Inbox] folder, i-mode mail and SMS in [Inbox] on the FOMA terminal handset and on FOMA card are shown together.

- Select an unread mail and press (Read) to change the mail to a read mail without viewing the message screen.

	Unread i-mode mail		Unread i-mode mail (protected)
	Read i-mode mail		Read i-mode mail (protected)
	Unread SMS		Unread SMS (protected)
	Read SMS		Read SMS (protected)
	Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail		Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail (protected)
	Mail-type i-αppli read i-mode mail		Mail-type i-αppli read i-mode mail (protected)
	Replied to i-mode mail		Replied to i-mode mail (protected)
	Forwarded i-mode mail		Forwarded i-mode mail (protected)
	Unread SMS on FOMA card		Read SMS on FOMA card
	Unread Area Mail		Mail-type i-αppli unread Area mail
	Read Area Mail		Mail-type i-αppli read Area mail
	Forwarded Area mail		Forwarded mail-type i-αppli Area mail

2 Sent message type

In [Outbox] folder, i-mode mail and SMS in [Outbox] on the FOMA terminal handset and on FOMA card are shown together.

	Sent i-mode mail		Sent i-mode mail (protected)
	Sent SMS		Sent SMS (protected)
	i-mode mail sent with mail-type i-αppli		i-mode mail sent with mail-type i-αppli (protected)
	Sent SMS on FOMA card		

3 Unsent message type

	Unsent i-mode mail		Unsent i-mode mail (protected)
	Unsent SMS		Unsent SMS (protected)
	i-mode mail for which a send reservation is made		i-mode mail for which a send reservation is made (protected)
	i-mode mail failed to be automatically sent		i-mode mail failed to be automatically sent (protected)

4 Folder name

5 Subject

Shows up to the first 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters. If a subject exceeds 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters, up to 19 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "...". Messages with no subject appear as [Untitled].

6 Attached data

	GIF image, JPEG image, Flash movie		Word file
	Melody		Excel file
	i-appli To information		PowerPoint file
	Movie/i-motion		Text file
	ToruCa, ToruCa (details)		BMP file
	PDF data		PNG file
	Phonebook		Data unable to view
	Schedule		e-book/ e-dictionary/ e-comic
	vCalendar that has not been acquired		Multiple files attached
	Bookmark		

7 Received date and time (received message)/ Sent date and time (sent message)/Saved date and time (unsent message)

Time for current day and date for other days.

8 Sender/Address (recipient)

Depending on the other party, received SMS are displayed as follows.

- When the other party sends caller ID and is saved in phonebook
..... Name saved in phonebook
 - When the other party sends caller ID and is not saved in phonebook
..... [090 (or 080, etc.) xxxxxxxx]
 - When the other party does not send caller ID..... [User unset]
 - When the other party calls from a payphone..... [Payphone]
- [Area Mail] appears for the sender of Area Mail.

9 Mode type of 2in1

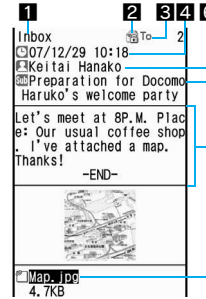
Appears when the mode of 2in1 is set to [Dual mode].

	Mail to Address B/SMS to Number B
--	-----------------------------------

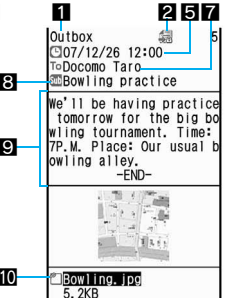
10 Difference time correction

	Mail whose time and date are adjusted to local time, etc.
--	---

Received messages view



Sent messages view



1 Folder name

Number of displayed characters varies according to the font size settings.

Maximum : 7 single-byte (3 double-byte) characters

Large : 11 single-byte (5 double-byte) characters

Normal : 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters

Small/Minimum : 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters

2 Protected icon

Appears when protected.

3 Shows receiving type*

Shows receiving type (To/Cc/Bcc).

4 Received date*

Shows date and time received at i-mode center or SMS center.

5 Sent date and time

6 Sender*

Sending type (To/Cc) is shown when Broadcast is set.

	Shown when address set in To cannot be replied to (when address exceeds 50 characters, etc.)
	Shown when address set in Cc cannot be replied to (when address exceeds 50 characters, etc.)

7 Address (recipient)

Mail address (recipient) and sending type (To/Cc/Bcc) appear.

8 Subject*

9 Message

[- END -] appears at the end of the message.

When receiving limit is exceeded, [I] or [I] appears and the exceeding portion is automatically deleted.

10 Attachment type icon/File name

	GIF image, JPEG image, Flash movie		e-book/ e-dictionary/ e-comic
--	------------------------------------	--	-------------------------------------

	Melody		Attached files for manual reception that has not been acquired
	Movie/i-motion		
	ToruCa, ToruCa (details)		
	PDF data		Attached files for manual reception that is being acquired
	Phonebook		
	Schedule		
	Bookmark		Attached files for manual reception that cannot be acquired
	Word file		
	Excel file		
	PowerPoint file		
	Text file		
	BMP file		Invalid data pasted/deleted attachment
	PNG file		File with FOMA card restrictions applied
	Data unable to view		

* For the mail that is addressed to the Address B of 2in1, Receiving type and icon color change green (Received date/time , Sender , (mail that cannot be replied or forwarded), and Subject). Refer to "Message screen operations" on P. 224 for details on screen operations.

- If the destination or sender address is saved in Phonebook, their name appears in the destination or sender field. If it is not saved, the phone number or address appears. However, the name does not appear while Function lock is applied to phonebook or when phonebook is set as Secret (P. 116). To show names of secret phonebook entries, set Secret mode (P. 150) to [ON].
- When an image is attached to received messages or sent messages, the image appears.

Saving Sent/Received Messages to Data Storage Center <Store in Center>

- Save i-mode mail and SMS saved on FOMA terminal.
- Mail that exceeds 10,000 bytes for the body text and mail with the inserted image exceeding 90 KB cannot be saved/updated.
- Select and save up to ten mails.
- This service is a paid service that requires subscription.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on the restoration of saved mails.

1 In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (P. 225), select mail and press ▶ [Store in Center].

- In the received messages/sent messages screen, press , select [Store in Center] → [Yes], enter terminal security code and press .

2 Save messages.

To save one	[Save one] → [Yes] → enter terminal security code and press .
To save multiple messages	[Save selected] → select mail (repeatable) → → [Yes] → enter terminal security code and press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When the number of messages in the folder is ten or less, press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

Note

- Attached file cannot be saved.
- SMS delivery reports cannot be saved.
- Check the exchanging history for transmissions of saving to the Data Storage Center (P. 117).

Managing Folders

Delete, sort and separate received/sent/unsent i-mode mail and SMS into folders.

- Up to 20 folders (not including [Inbox], [Outbox], [Drafts], [Message R], [Message F], and mail-type i-appli folder) can be created, renamed and deleted. However, [Inbox], [Outbox], [Drafts], [Message R], [Message F], and mail-type i-appli folder cannot be renamed or deleted.

Creating folders <New folder>

1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list (P. 224), press ▶ [Manage folders].

2 Select [New folder] ▶ enter folder name and press .

- To delete "New folder" name, press for 1+ seconds in the folder name editing screen.

Note

- Folders cannot be created on FOMA card.
- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for folder name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>


1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list (P. 225), select folder and press ▶ [Manage folders].

2 Select [Edit folder name] ▶ edit folder name and press .

- To delete a folder name, press for 1+ seconds in the folder name editing screen.

Moving folder order upward/downward

<Move folder up/Move folder down>


1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list (☞ P. 224), select folder and press  **[Manage folders]**.

2 Select **[Move folder up]/[Move folder down]**.

Note

- [Inbox], [Outbox], and [Drafts] cannot be moved.



Setting Folder security <Folder security>

1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list (☞ P. 224), select folder and press  **[Manage folders]**.

2 Select **[Folder security]** **▶** enter terminal security code and press .

3 Select **[ON]/[OFF]**.




Note

- When Folder security is set to [ON], folder icon changes to .
- **Terminal security code** is required to view message list.
- When Folder security is set, the terminal security code will be asked after pressing  (Show all) in the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list.
- Folder security is not available in [MessageR]/[MessageF].



Deleting folder

Deletion method	Explanation	Screen
Delete one folder	Deletes folders individually.	Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list
Delete selected folders	Deletes folders collectively.	
Delete all read (received messages)	Deletes all unprotected read i-mode mail/SMS from all folders including [Inbox].	Inbox list
Delete all unread (received messages)	Deletes all unprotected unread i-mode mail/SMS from all folders including [Inbox].	
Delete all (keep folder)	Deletes all unprotected i-mode mail/SMS. Folders are not deleted.	Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list
Delete all (delete folder)	Deletes all folders and all unprotected i-mode mail/SMS.	



Delete created folders <Delete>

- 1** In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list, select folder and press  **[Delete]**.
- 2** Select **[Delete one folder]**.
 - To select and delete folder: Select **[Delete sel folders]** **▶** select folder (repeatable) **▶** .
- 3** Enter terminal security code and press  **[Yes]**.

Delete all messages <Delete all>

- 1** In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list, press  **[Delete]**.
- 2** Select **[Delete all read]/[Del all unread]/[Del all(keep fol)]/[Del all(del fol)]**.
- 3** Enter terminal security code and press  **[Yes]**.

Note

- SMS on the FOMA card cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing messages can be deleted.
- Protected messages cannot be deleted.
- When [Delete one folder] or [Delete sel folders] is selected, messages in the folder are also deleted. However, if the folder contains protected messages, the folder and the messages in the folder cannot be deleted.
- When [Del all(del fol)] is selected, only unprotected i-mode mail and SMS is deleted. Folders containing protected i-mode mail and SMS will not be deleted.
- Folders containing software compatible with a mail-type i- α pli folder cannot be deleted. Delete the software and then delete the folder. When there is no compatible software, the folder can be deleted, but deleting one mail-type i- α pli folder created in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages list will also delete all other mail-type i- α pli folders.
- For deleting selected folders, press  (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
- If a folder is deleted, i-mode mail/SMS to both Address A/Number A and Address B/Number B of **2in1** are deleted.
- When Delete all read, Delete all unread, or Delete all (keep folder/delete folder) is selected, Message R/F cannot be deleted.

Managing Mail

Displaying message in the message list <Preview>

- The setting applies to Inbox, Outbox, and Unsent messages.
- Preview is not available when the Multi Windows are opened.

1 In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (☞ P. 225), press [Display settings] ▶ [Preview] ▶ [ON].

- Press (smaller)/ (larger) to change font size in the message.



When set to [OFF]



When set to [ON]

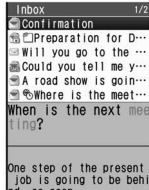
Switching message display <List display>

In the messages list, switch the view layout among the following six views.

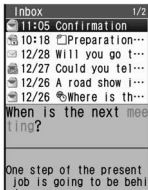
- When the view layout is switched, the setting applies to Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages.



Two lines



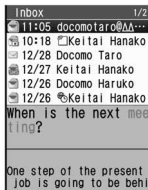
Title^{*1}



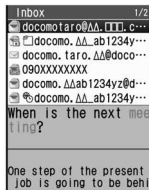
Date/time+title^{*1}



Name^{*2}



Date/time+name^{*2}



Address^{*3}

*1 First characters of message for SMS.

*2 Mail address or phone number when not saved in phonebook.

*3 Phone number for SMS.

1 In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (☞ P. 225), press [Display settings].

2 Select [List display] ▶ select a view mode.

View mode	Two lines	Name
	Title	Date/time+name
	Date/time+title	Address

Showing sender's address

<Check address>

1 In received messages list (☞ P. 225), select message and press [Display settings] ▶ [Check address].

Sorting mail <Sort>

Mail view method

Date (new→old)	Latest received/sent/saved date first
Date (old→new)	Latest received/sent/saved date last
By address	Depending on the sender's address, sorted by numbers → upper case alphabet → lower case alphabet
By subject	Depending on the title, sorted by single-byte (symbols → numbers → upper case alphabet → lower case alphabet) → double-byte (hiragana → katakana → kanji → pictographs → numbers → upper case alphabet → lower case alphabet) → single-byte katakana (Character code order is applied in each character type)
Protected preferred*	Protected mail → normal mail
Message w/attach*	Mail with attachments → mail without attachments
Size (big→small)	The largest files (including attached files) first
Size (small→big)	The smallest files (including attached files) first

* Messages are sorted with newest mail first in each criterion.

1 In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (☞ P. 225), press [Display settings].

2 Select [Sort] ▶ select a sort method.

Note

- In [Inbox] and [Outbox], i-mode mail, FOMA terminal handset SMS and FOMA card SMS are sorted.

Note

- When sorting mail by size, i-mode mail and SMS in the FOMA terminal handset are sorted first and then SMS in the FOMA card is sorted.
- Sort method returns to default setting when showing screens other than messages list. After checking message screen with changed display method, press **[CLR]** or view message list again after **[Move one]** or **[Delete one]** and changes remain.

■ Searching mail with subject**<Search subject>**

Search i-mode mail with a text contained in the subject.

1 In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (**[P. 225]**), press **[🔍]** **[Search subject]**.

2 Enter a text and press **[👉]**.

- Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters.
- The search results appear. Select mail to show mail. Press **[CLR]** and the previous screen reappears.

■ Moving mail to another folder <Move>

1 In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (**[P. 225]**), select mail and press **[🔍]** **[Move/Copy]**.

2 Select **[Move]** **[▶]** select a transfer method.

To move one	[Move one] → select folder
To move multiple ones in a folder collectively	[Move selected] → select message (repeatable) → [🔍] → select folder
To move all in folder	[All in folder] → select folder

■ Moving to another folder from message screen <Move one>

1 In the received/sent message screen (**[P. 226]**), press **[🔍]** **[Move/Copy]**.

2 Select **[Move one]** **[▶]** select folder.

Note

- SMS on FOMA card cannot be moved within card.
- For Move selected, select up to 50 messages. When the number of messages in the folder is 50 or less, press **[🔍]** (SelAll)/**[🔍]** (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
- Already received i-αpli mail can be manually sorted into the folders automatically created when downloading a mail-type i-αpli.

Note

- If all in folder is moved, i-mode mail/SMS to both Address A/Number A and Address B/Number B of **2in1** are moved.

■ Protecting mail <Protect>

1 In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (**[P. 225]**), select mail and press **[🔍]** **[Protect]**.

- In the received messages/sent messages screen, press **[🔍]** and select **[Protect]** → **[OK]** to protect displayed mail.

2 Select a protecting/disabling method.

To protect one	[Protect] → [Protect one]
To protect multiple ones collectively	[Protect] → [Protect selected] → select mail (repeatable) → [🔍]
To protect all in folder	[Protect] → [Prot all in folder]
To disable protection of one	[Clear] → [Clear one]
To disable protection of multiple ones collectively	[Clear] → [Clear selected] → select mail (repeatable) → [🔍]
To disable protection of all in folder	[Clear] → [Clear all in folder]

Note

- Area Mail cannot be protected.
- SMS on FOMA card cannot be protected. Copying a protected SMS to FOMA card will disable protection.
- To protect/delete multiple messages, select up to 50 messages. When the number of messages in the folder (the number of protected messages for deleting) is 50 or less, press **[🔍]** (SelAll)/**[🔍]** (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
- If Protect all in folder or Clear all in folder is performed, i-mode mail/SMS to both Address A/Number A and Address B/Number B of **2in1** are protected/cleared.

■ Deleting mail <Delete>
Deletion method for mail

Deletion method	Explanation	Screen
Delete one	Deletes i-mode mail/SMS individually.	Received/Sent/Unsent messages list Received/Sent message screen
Delete selected	Deletes selected unprotected i-mode mail/SMS collectively.	Received/Sent/Unsent messages list
Delete all in folder	Deletes all unprotected i-mode mail/SMS from folder.	

Deletion method	Explanation	Screen
Delete read in folder (received messages)	Deletes all unprotected read i-mode mail/SMS from folder.	Received messages list
Delete unread in folder (received messages)	Deletes all unprotected unread i-mode mail/SMS from folder.	

Delete mail individually <Delete one>

- In the received message/sent messages screen, press [OK] ▶ [Delete one].
- Select [Yes].

Delete mail individually from messages list <Delete one>

In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list, select message and press [OK] ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].

Delete all mail in messages list <All in folder>

- In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list, press [OK] ▶ [Delete].
- Select [All in folder].
 - To delete all read mail: Select [Read in folder].
 - To delete all unread mail: Select [Unread in folder].
- Enter terminal security code and press [OK] ▶ [Yes].

Select mail and delete <Delete selected>

- In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list, press [OK] ▶ [Delete].
- Select [Delete selected].
- Select message (repeatable) ▶ [OK] ▶ [Yes].

Delete mail in i-appli folder <Delete>

- In Inbox/Outbox list/Unsent messages, select i-appli folder and press [OK] ▶ [View i-mode mail].
- To delete one, select message and press [OK] ▶ [Delete].
- Select [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].
 - To delete all sent/unsent mail in folder: Select [All in folder] ▶ enter terminal security code and press [OK] ▶ [Yes].
 - To delete read mail: Select [Read in folder] ▶ enter terminal security code and press [OK] ▶ [Yes].
 - To delete unread mail: Select [Unread in folder] ▶ enter terminal security code and press [OK] ▶ [Yes].
 - To select and delete mail: Select [Delete selected] ▶ select message (repeatable) ▶ [OK] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- In the messages list, selecting and deleting mail in the FOMA card is possible.
- For Delete selected, select up to 50 messages. When the number of messages in the folder is 50 or less, press [SelAll]/[ClrAll] to select/clear all.
- Depending on i-appli software, i-appli mail may be deleted automatically from folder.
- If Delete all is performed, i-mode mail/SMS to both Address A/Number A and Address B/Number B of 2in1 are deleted.

Received/Sent Messages History

Using Mail History

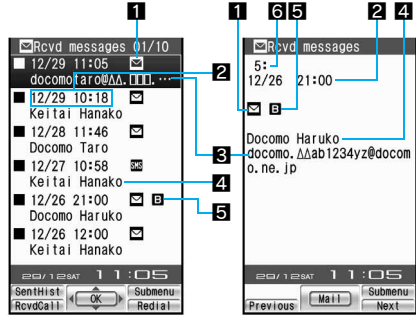
The FOMA terminal stores a history of up to 30 received/sent i-mode mail or SMS starting with the newest. Use history to send mail, make voice/Videophone calls or save the other party's mail address or phone number to phonebook.

- When 30 entries are exceeded, entries are erased starting with the oldest.
- Parties that repeat are assigned as separate entries.
- Mail addresses from Broadcast mail are not recorded. All successfully sent mail can be checked in the sent messages screen (P. 226).
- Up to 50 single-byte characters appear for mail addresses.
- Area Mail is not stored as Received messages history.

Received/Sent message list/details layouts

Here is an example using the received messages.

Messages list **Message details screen**



1 Types of history

	i-mode mail
	SMS
	Mail that cannot be replied to, or SMS with no caller ID (Received messages history)/unsent messages (Sent messages history)

2 Received date and time (Received messages history)/Sent date and time (Sent messages history)

	Appears when time and date are adjusted to local time, etc. (This is not available for i-mode mail)
--	--

3 Other party's mail address or phone number

4 Name

Appears when the same mail address or phone number is already saved in phonebook.

5 Mode type of 2in1

Appears when the mode of 2in1 is set to [Dual mode].

B	Mail to Address B/SMS to Number B
----------	-----------------------------------

6 History number

Received date and time/sent date and time is numbered starting from the most recent.

Note

- Set to not show Received/Sent messages history (P. 150).

Using Received/Sent messages history to send mail

1 In stand-by, press (RcvdHist).

- Smaller numbers in the upper right part of the display represent newer received messages.
- [Show rcvd msgs set to OFF] appears when Show received messages is set to [OFF].
- To send mail using Sent messages history, press in stand-by and press (SentHist). [Show rcvd msgs set to OFF] appears when Show received messages is set to [OFF].

Rcvd messages 01/10	
12/29 11:05	
docomotar@AA...	
12/29 10:18	
Keitai Hanako	
12/28 11:46	
Docomo Tarō	
12/27 10:58	
Keitai Hanako	
12/26 21:00	
Docomo Haruko	
12/26 12:00	
Keitai Hanako	

2 Select a history entry.

- Press to end viewing.

3 Press (Mail).

- When i-mode mail history is selected, compose message screen appears. Recipient's mail address is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 209 for subsequent steps.
- When SMS history is selected, compose SMS screen appears. Recipient's phone number is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 242 for subsequent steps.

Saving phone numbers and mail addresses from Received messages history/Sent messages history to phonebook

1 In the received messages/sent messages list (P. 231), select a history entry [Add to phonebook].

- Alternatively, select an entry, press and select [Add to phonebook] in the received messages/sent messages list.
- Select i-mode mail history and perform operation to save mail address.
- Select SMS history and perform operation to save phone number.

Add to phonebook	
1	Save new to phone
2	Save new to UIM
3	Add/overwrite

2 Select a saving method.

Saving method	Save new to phone	Add/overwrite*
	Save new to UIM	

- * Select a name to add/overwrite.
- Mail address or phone number is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (P. 102, P. 107).

Deleting mail history <Delete>

1 In the received messages/sent messages list (P. 231), select history and press [Delete].

2 Select deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete all	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Note

- If Delete all is performed, both Received messages histories for i-mode mail/SMS to Address A/Number A and Address B/Number B of 2in1 are deleted.

Related Operations

Make calls from mail history <Phone>

- In the received messages/sent messages list, select history and press [Phone].
- Press [Yes] to make voice call.
 - To make Videophone call: Press [Yes].
 - To call PushTalk: Press [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

- If the name saved in the phonebook appears as a sender/recipient of mail or SMS, make a call when the phone number is saved in the phonebook.

Mail Setting

Setting FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

Changing Font Size

Set i-mode mail/SMS font size.

- In stand-by, press ► [Mail setting] ► [Font size] ► select an item.

Item	Display	Text input

- Select font size.

Font size	Maximum	Normal	Minimum*
	Large	Small	

* The item appears only when [Display] is selected.

Related Operations

Change font size in message screen by one-touch operation

- To make the font size smaller: Press .
- To make the font size larger: Press .

Change font size from Submenu in message screen

- In the received messages/sent messages screen, press ► [Font size].
- Select font size.

Sorting Mail Automatically <Sort Rules>

Set Sort rules for folders and sort i-mode mail and SMS automatically.

- Rules to sort mail in [Inbox], [Outbox], [Unsent messages], [Message R], and [Message F] are not available.
- SMS cannot be sorted to FOMA card.
- Sort to up to 25 folders (including i-αpli folders) in Inbox/Outbox and set up to ten rules for each folder.
- Normal mail can be sorted to mail-type i-αpli folders. Sort rules for mail-type i-αpli take priority.

Sort rules

The following six rules are available.

Address (From)	Sort by sender's address (Received mail only).
Address (From/Cc)/ Address (To/Cc)	Criteria are applied from the folder shown at top to From, To and Cc for received mail and To, Cc, and Bcc for sent mail.
Group	Sort by groups set in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
Subject	Sort by text in subject.

Phonebook empty	Sort mail from senders not saved in FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Sort sent mail to a specified folder when an address not saved in the phonebook is entered in To/Cc.
All received (sent) messages	Sort all received (or sent) mail.

- [Folder 1] has top priority and the folder listed at the bottom has least priority if Sort rules for multiple folders coincide.
- Secret phonebook entries are treated as unsaved entries. Note that mail from secret entries will be sorted as [Phonebook empty] rather than [Group]. To apply [Group], set Secret mode to [ON].
- Sort mail by specified mail address. Specify the entire address including the portion after @ (up to 50 single-byte characters). However, **@docomo.ne.jp** can be abbreviated when sender is using an i-mode terminal (including mova). SMS can be sorted by specifying phone number.
- Note that [Group] and [Phonebook empty] are not available while Function lock is applied to phonebook.
- Mail from senders saved in FOMA card phonebook are sorted as [Phonebook empty].
- i-αpli mail is sorted to the compatible mail-type i-αpli folder regardless of Sort rules.
- When setting the mail sort rules while using 2in1, specify the condition of [Address(From)]/[Address(From/Cc)/Address (To/Cc)]/[Subject]/[All rcvd (sent) messages] before use.

Setting Sort rules to folders

- In Inbox/Outbox list (, select folder and press ► [Sort rules].

- Set rules are prioritized from top to bottom.

- Select entry number ► set Sort rules.

- Select a set number to edit Sort rules. Re-select Sort rules, press and select [Yes].
- When setting mail-type i-αpli folder, [Mail will be used by software. Set mail sorting?] appears. Select [Yes] to set Sort rules. Select [No] and the screen of step 1 reappears.

To sort received mail by sender's mail address	[Address(From)] → select entry method → select mail address (or enter and press) ● Up to 20 single-byte characters appear.
To sort mail by mail address of sender or recipient(s)/broadcast	[Address(From/Cc)] or [Address (To/Cc)] → select entry method → select mail address (or enter and press) ● Up to 20 single-byte characters appear.

To sort by group	[Group] → select group name ● Group name appears.
To sort by text contained in subject	[Subject] → enter text and press . ● Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters. The first 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are shown.
To sort by mail addresses not in FOMA terminal handset phonebook	[Phonebook empty]
To sort by all received (sent) messages	[All rcvd messages] or [All sent messages] → [Yes] ● [All rcvd (sent) messages] is set to . ● Select [No] to set to specified number.

3 Repeat step 2 to set multiple rules.

4 Press (Complete).

Deleting specified Sort rules

Sort rules can be deleted.

1 In Inbox/Outbox list (P. 224), select folder and press ▶ [Sort rules].

2 Select sort rule and press ▶ select a deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes] →
To delete all	[Delete all] → [Yes] →

Adding Signature to i-mode Mail

<Save Signature>

Add a signature to notify name, phone number and mail address. Also, decorate a signature.

- Set to automatically add (enter) signature to the text when composing i-mode mail.
- Only one signature can be saved.
- Signature cannot be added to SMS.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Save signature].

- When a signature is already saved, the saved signature appears.

2 Enter signature and press ▶ [ON].

- Enter up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters. Insert up to 90 KB of images. Line breaks [] are available.

Related Operations

Decorate signature

In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Save signature] ▶ decorate signature referring to steps 3 to 6 of “Inserting message text while decorating” on P. 212.

Delete signature

In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Save signature] ▶ press for 1+ seconds ▶ ▶ [OFF].

Setting Check New Message Details

<Check New Message>

Set message type to check (i-mode mail, Message R/F).

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Check new message] ▶ select type ▶ [ON]/[OFF].

Type	i-mode mail	MessageR	MessageF
------	-------------	----------	----------

2 Press (Complete).

Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail

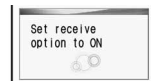
<Receive Opt. Setting>

- All mail is received when checking for new messages even if Receive option setting is set to [ON]. To not receive all mail, set to not check i-mode mail (P. 234).

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Receive option] ▶ [Receive opt. setting].

- Alternatively, in stand-by, press and select [Mail setting] → [Receive opt. setting].

2 Select [ON] ▶ [Yes].



Creating Mail Member List

<Mail Member>

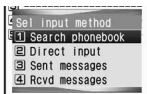
Save multiple addresses for a mail member to easily specify multiple addresses. Unlike Broadcast mail, multiple addresses are specified collectively.

- Save up to five mail addresses per mail member.
- Save up to ten mail members.
- Charges are the same as when sending one mail. However, network charges will increase as addresses are added.

Saving addresses for mail members

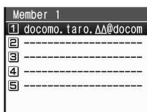
1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Mail member].

2 Select number for mail member ▶ select a slot.



3 Select entry method ▶ select/enter mail address and press .

- When number selected is already in use, [Overwrite?] appears if entry method other than [Direct input] is selected. Select [Yes] to select mail address. Select [No] and the screen of step 3 reappears. When [Direct input] is selected, the address entry screen appears.
- To add mail address, select a slot and repeat step 3.



4 Press (Complete).

Editing mail member names

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Mail member] ▶ select mail member and press [Edit member].

- To reset member name, select a mail member and press and select [Reset one member]. Select [Yes] to reset member names.



2 Edit member name and press .

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- Press for 1+ seconds to delete member name.

Deleting addresses saved for mail members

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Mail member] ▶ select mail member.

2 Select mail address and press ▶ select deletion method.

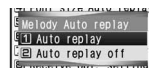
To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes] →
To delete all	[Del all members] → [Yes] → <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Delete all addresses for specified mail member.

Setting Whether to Automatically Replay Melody <Melody Auto Replay>

Set whether to automatically play melodies attached or pasted to Message R/F or received i-mode mail when opened.

- Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back automatically.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Melody Auto replay] ▶ select whether to automatically play melodies when opened.



Note

- When [Auto replay] is set while in **Manner mode**, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not. Select [Yes] to play.
- When 1Seg is played using **Multi Window**, melodies cannot be played automatically even if [Auto replay] is set.

Setting Quick Reply Mail Message <Quick Reply Mail>

Set messages in advance for Quick reply (P. 221).

- Ten messages of up to 500 single-byte (250 double-byte) characters can be saved.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Quick reply mail] ▶ select number of the message to save/edit.

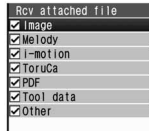
2 Edit message and press .

Setting Whether to Receive Attached Files <Rcv Attached File>

Set attached file types to be received. Attached files set not to be received are not acquired when mail is received. They are treated as attached files for manual reception.

- Refer to P. 222 on how to acquire user-acquired attached files for manual reception.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Rcv attached file].



2 Select type of attachment ▶ .

- appears for selected and appears for unselected entries. Select file to switch between select and clear.
- Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

Note

- For Message R/F, all attached files are received regardless of settings.
- Melodies in MFi format pasted in the message text are received regardless of settings.

Setting Received Mail/Auto Send Notice While Using Other Functions

<Rcv/Auto Send Disp>

Set notification method for when mail is received or automatically sent while using other functions.

- Receive display and Mail received screen are not shown while a call is in progress, i-appli is running, the camera is being activated, the handset is being positioned by GPS, pattern definitions are being updated, Streaming type i-motion is being downloaded, data on microSD Memory Card is being viewed, a PC movie is being played back, Area Mail is being automatically displayed, watching or recording 1Seg.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Rcv/Auto send disp] ▶ select notification method.

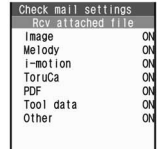
Notice first	When receiving mail, Receive display and received , , or icon appear. Called LED flashes, Mail ring tone sounds and receive complete screen appears. When auto sending mail, Send display appears.
Operation first	When receiving mail, received , , or icon appears. Mail ring tone does not sound, called LED does not flash and vibrator does not activate. Receive display and receive complete screen are not shown. When auto sending mail, Send display is not shown.

Checking Mail Settings Status

<Check Mail Settings>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Check mail settings].

- Press to turn the page.
- Press to end checking.



Resetting Mail Settings

<Reset Mail Settings>

Reset mail settings to default values.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Reset mail settings].

2 Enter terminal security code and press ▶ [Yes].

Note

- The following settings are not reset.
 - Saved signature
 - SMS center
 - Quick reply mail
 - SMS expiry
 - Mail member
 - SMS input character
 - Receive entry of Area Mail setting

Related Operations

Apply Function lock to Mail <Function lock>

In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Function lock] ▶ enter terminal security code and press ▶ [ON].

Message R/F

Message R/F

Subscribe to sites which provide Message Service to automatically receive information (messages). Message Service uses Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

- Refer to "Receiving Message R/F" on P. 237 for details on receiving Message R/F.
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.
- Enter the four-digit number for i-mode password (P. 142).



Message R (Request)

Service to automatically receive message from a site which provides Message Service.

Message F (Free)

Message is received with no packet charge.

Setting Message F (Free)

Select [iMenu] → [料金 & お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [メッセージF設定] (Message F) → [受信する] (Receive), enter i-mode password, press  and press .






Receive Message R/F

Receiving Message R/F

Message R/F is automatically received from the i-mode center when the FOMA terminal is in the service area.









- Save up to 50 messages each in the FOMA terminal. Capacity varies depending on size of message.
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center when one of the following occurs.
 - Handset is turned off
 - While in Self mode
 - Outside the service area
 - Using Videophone
 - PushTalk in progress
 - While Omakase Lock is set
 - During Ir exchange
 - While connected to FirstPass center
 - When there is no available space due to protected or unread Message R/F
 - During iC transmission
























Note

- When FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full, check the unread message ( P. 239), disable Message R/F protection ( P. 240), and delete the unnecessary Message R/F ( P. 240). To check messages held at i-mode center, perform Check new message ( P. 238).
- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected Message R/F is overwritten automatically. Protect Message R/F to prevent overwriting ( P. 240).
- Message ring tone does not sound if a message is received while a call is in progress, i-αpli is running, the camera is being activated, the handset is being positioned by GPS, pattern definitions are being updated or 1Seg is played or recorded in full-screen.

Note

Meaning of icons

Icon	Meaning
 /F (green)	Unread Message R/F.
 /F (yellow)	FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full.
 /F	Message R/F is held at i-mode center.
 /F	i-mode center is full.
 /F	Unread Message R/F and Message R/F are held at center.
 /F	Unread Message R/F. i-mode center is full.
 /F	FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full. Message R/F is held at i-mode center.
 /F	FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full. i-mode center is full.





-  (green)  (yellow)      : Request
 (green)  (yellow)      : Free
- /F, /F, /F, /F, /F or /F may not appear even when Message R/F is held at the i-mode center.
 - Message R/F at i-mode center may be overwritten when /F, /F or /F appears.




Opening New Message R/F

When Message R/F is received, the newest one appears automatically. Message does not appear when Auto message display is set to [No auto display].

- Set types of messages for Auto message display or priority of received messages.

1 Message R/F is automatically received.

-  (green) flashes when receiving Message R, and  (green) flashes when receiving Message F.
- After reception, receive results appear and message ring tone sounds ( (green)/ (green) appears).

To check Message R/F contents immediately	In receive complete screen, select [MessageR]/[MessageF] → select Message R or Message F
To stop ring tone	 or  ● Ring tone stops and receive complete screen disappears. Press  to keep screen but stop ring tone.

2

Message R/F appears for approximately 15 seconds and the stand-by display reappears (when set to automatically display).

- To continue viewing the message, press and scroll while viewing Message R/F.
- In Message details screen, if the screen returns to stand-by without any operation, (new Message R)/ (new Message F) appears. Press in stand-by and select (new Message R)/ (new Message F) to display Messages list.

Automatically Displaying Message R/F <Auto Message Display>

Set priority and message types.

1

In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Auto message display] ▶ select display method.

Msg R preferred	When unread Message R and Message F are received simultaneously, Message R appears.
Msg F preferred	When unread Message R and Message F are received simultaneously, Message F appears.
MessagesR only	Only unread Message R appears.
MessagesF only	Only unread Message F appears.
No auto display	No messages appear automatically.

Note

- When Auto display is set, newest unread Message R/F appears for approximately 15 seconds in the following situation.
 - Returning to stand-by from receive complete screen
- Message does not automatically appear regardless of Auto message display settings in the following situations.
 - While All lock is set
 - While Omakase Lock is set
 - While Mail Function lock is set

Check New Message

Checking for New Message R/F

Received Message R/F are held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off (P. 237). Check and retrieve message from the i-mode center.

- Set types for Check new message (i-mode mail, Message R/F) (P. 234).
- When Receive option setting is set to [ON], i-mode mail and Message R/F are received.
- Refer to P. 243 for details on checking for SMS.

1

In stand-by, press ▶ [Check new message].

- Alternatively, in stand-by, press twice or press and select [Check new message] to check.
- Check new message (P. 234) is performed in accordance with settings from [i-mode mail] → [MessageR] → [MessageF] (Icons (green), (green), and (green)) appear for each type checked).
- To abort receiving mail, press while receiving.
- Aborted Message R/F are held at i-mode center (appears).
- Message R/F may be received depending on timing.

2

Message R/F ring tone sounds when new Message R/F is received.

- [0] appears when no Message R/F are held at the i-mode center.
- When i-mode mail and Message R/F are received simultaneously, ring tone set for the last mail or Message R/F received sounds.
- To stop, press . Other keys also stop ring tone (P. 219).

3

In the receive complete screen, select [MessageR]/[MessageF].

- To not view immediately, perform no operations in the receive complete screen for approximately 30 seconds, and the stand-by display reappears.
- Message R/F does not automatically appear when received by checking new messages.

4

Select Message R/F to view.

View Message R/F

Viewing Messages R/F in Message Box

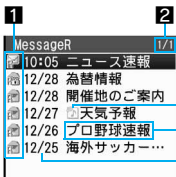
- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Inbox] ▶ [MessageR] folder/[MessageF] folder.

- Alternatively, in stand-by, press → [MessageR/F] → [MessageR]/[MessageF].

- 2 Select Message R/F.

Messages List/Details Screen Layout

Messages list layout



1 Unread/Read/Protected message icon

	Unread Message R/F
	Read Message R/F
	Read Message R/F (protected)

2 Message R/F list screen page number/total

3 Melody/Image/ToruCa

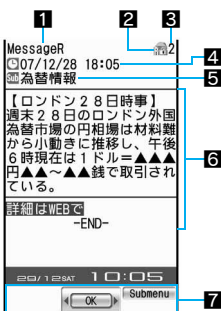
	Melody is attached.
	JPEG image/GIF image/Flash movie is attached.
	ToruCa is attached.
	Multiple files are attached.

4 Subject

5 Received date and time

Time for current day and date for other days.

Message details screen layout



1 Message type

2 Protected icon

Appears when protected.

	Message R (protected)
	Message F (protected)

3 Message number

4 Received date and time

5 Subject

6 Message

[-END-] appears at the end of the message.

7 Screen operation

To scroll up/down	Down: Up:
To scroll one screen at a time	Down: Up:
To view other messages	Next: Previous:

- When a melody is attached, and file name for melody appear above message.
- Melody plays automatically if Melody Auto replay is set to [Auto replay].
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear above message.

Related Operations

Add phone numbers and mail addresses from Message R/F to phonebook <Add to phonebook>

In the message details screen, press ▶ [Add to phonebook].

Note (Related operations)

- Refer to “Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook” on P. 185 for subsequent steps.

Checking/Saving Attachments

<View Attachment>

Check or save images and melodies attached to Message R/F. Attached files are saved in a selected save destination in each category.

- 1 In messages list (), select Message R/F ▶ ▶ [View attachment].

- 2 Select attachment and check.

To check	
To save	Image → [Yes] → select folder
	Melody/ToruCa → [Yes] → [phone]/[microSD]

Checking/Saving Inserted Images

<View Image in Mail>

View or save GIF, JPEG and background images inserted in Message R/F message. Inserted files are saved in a selected save destination in each category.

1 In messages list (☞ P. 239), select Message R/F ▶ ▶ [View image in mail].

2 Select image and check.

To check	
To save	→ [Yes] → select folder

Note

- For attached images, check and save with [View attachment](#).

Managing Message R/F

Protect and delete Message R/F to prevent overwriting.

Protecting Message R/F <Protect>

Message R/F can be protected, or protection can be canceled. Protected messages cannot be overwritten.

- When there is no available memory, same types of read messages are deleted starting with the oldest.
- Protect up to 25 of each type of message. The number of protected messages depends on size.
- Unread Message R/F cannot be protected.

1 In messages list (☞ P. 239)/message details screen (☞ P. 239), select Message R/F and press ▶ [Protect].

2 Select [ON]/[OFF].

Deleting Message R/F <Delete>

1 In messages list (☞ P. 239), select Message R/F and press ▶ [Delete].

- In message details screen, press and select [Delete one] → [Yes] to delete from message details screen.

2 Select deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete multiple ones collectively	[Delete selected] → select Message R/F (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

To delete all	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes] ● Unread or protected Message R/F is not deleted.
---------------	---

- To delete message R/F from message display screen, select [Delete one] only.

Sorting Message R/F <Sort>

1 In messages list (☞ P. 239), press ▶ [Sort] ▶ select the sort method.

- Refer to "Sorting Mail" on P. 229 for details on sort method.

Area Mail (Service Scheduled)

Area Mail is a service to receive the information such as an emergency earthquake report provided from the Japan Meteorological Agency.

- Set the Receive setting before receiving Area Mail. Refer to "Setting Area Mail" on P. 241 for the Area Mail receive setting.
- In the following cases, mail may not be displayed automatically even if received.
 - During a call (a voice/Videophone call)
 - During packet transmission (streaming playback, data transmission, PushTalk transmission)
 - i-appli is running/During i-appli transmission
 - While Public mode (Drive mode) is set
 - During software update
 - GPS positioning is being performed
 - 1Seg is being watched
 - Alarm is being activated
 - During pattern definitions update
 - During USB transmission
 - Camera is being activated
 - When battery level is low
- In the following situation, mail cannot be received.
 - While Omakase Lock is set
 - While in Self mode
 - During International roaming
- Missed Area Mail cannot be received again.
- Area Mail is received without i-mode subscription.

Receive Area Mail

Receiving Area Mail

Area Mail is automatically received.

- Save up to 30 Area Mails in Inbox. When 30 Area Mails are exceeded, Area Mails are overwritten starting with the oldest received date and time.

1 Area Mail is automatically received.

- When Area Mail is received, the Area Mail dedicated alarm tone or ring tone sounds and Called LED flashes red () appears).

- There are two types of Area Mail: For the first type, the text automatically appears after received, and for the second type, [Area mail received] appears.
- Press , or , and the screen before reception reappears if message automatically display.
- When [Area mail received] appears, the screen before reception automatically reappears in approximately 30 seconds.
- Whether to automatically display Area Mail message when received is set on the distributor side.

Note

- An emergency earthquake report is notified with the dedicated alarm tone (beep sound) and vibration.
- The tone of the Area Mail dedicated ring tone cannot be changed. The Beep time follows the Mail ring time setting, the volume follows the Mail ring volume and the vibrator follows the vibrator setting.
- Area Mail is automatically sorted when the sort rule of the folder is set to [All rcvd messages].
- Beep sound, Vibrator, or Called LED is activated even while Manner mode is set.

Area Mail Setting

Setting Area Mail

Set whether to receive Area Mail.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Area Mail setting] ▶ [Receive setting].

2 Check precautions ▶ (Yes)/ (No).
 ● Press (Yes) and setting is [ON] to receive Area Mail.

Setting Receive Entry of Area Mail

<Receive Entry>

Save the Area Mail name and Message ID of the information to be received other than emergency information. When emergency information is received, the receive entry is not required.

- The preset [Emergency] cannot be edited or deleted.
- Set up to 20 entries (excluding [Emergency]).

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Area Mail setting] ▶ [Receive entry].

2 Enter terminal security code and press ▶ (New).

- To edit saved contents, select a set receive entry.
- To delete a set receive entry, select the receive entry, press (Delete) and select [Yes].

3 Enter Area Mail name and press .

- Enter up to 15 single/double-byte characters.

4 Enter Message ID and press .

Related Operations

Set whether to beep <Beep setting>

- 1** In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Area Mail setting] ▶ [Beep setting].
- 2** Select [Allow] or [Not allow].

Set time to beep <Beep time>

- In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Area Mail setting] ▶ [Beep time] ▶ enter time to beep (two digit: 01 to 30 seconds) and press .

Note (Related operations)

Beep setting

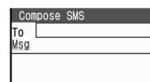
- When the beep is set to sound, the vibrator is also activated. The sound and volume of the beep and the type of the vibrator cannot be changed.

Compose/Send SMS

Composing and Sending SMS

- Enter phone number as the address for SMS.
- Number of characters that can be entered in SMS message text depends on SMS input character setting.
- Single-byte katakana and pictographs in SMS message text may not appear correctly for recipient.
- Exchange messages with users of non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunications providers. Refer to the DoCoMo web page for information on available countries and providers.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Compose SMS].



2 Select [To] ▶ select an entry method.

To select from phonebook	[Search phonebook] → select recipient ● If phone number exceeds 20 digits, exceeding portion is deleted.
--------------------------	---

To enter directly	<p>[Direct input] → enter address and press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enter phone number (up to 20 digits). ● Press for 1+ seconds to enter [+]. Enter up to 21 digits if [+] is entered. ● For addresses of non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunications providers, enter [+] (press for 1+ seconds), the country code, and the recipient's mobile phone number. If the phone number begins with 0, remove the 0. Alternatively, enter 010, the country code and the phone number. Add 010 to reply to SMS received from abroad.
To select from Sent messages history	<p>[Sent messages] → select recipient → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Selectable when there are SMS sent messages.
To select from Received messages history	<p>[Rcvd messages] → select recipient → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Selectable when there are SMS received messages.
To check address	<p>Select address → [View address]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Check name and address.

- When the recipient is saved in the phonebook, the name appears in the recipient field.

3 Select [Msg] ▶ enter message text and press .

- If SMS input character is set to [Japanese(70Chara)], up to 70 single/double-byte characters can be entered. If SMS input character is set to [English(160Chara)], up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Line breaks [] are counted as one character when set to [Japanese(70Chara)] and two characters when set to [English(160Chara)]. Spaces (blanks) are counted as one character.
- When set to [English(160Chara)], [] ^ | { } ~ are counted as single-byte characters in the message entry screen but are counted as double-byte characters when sent. [Transmission failed] may appear and message may not be sent even if 160 or fewer characters are entered in the message entry screen.

4 Press (Send).

- When complete, [Sent SMS] appears.

- To set delivery notice, press and select [Report request] and either [Request] or [Do not request].
- To set expiration date, press , select [SMS expiry] and select expiration date.

Note

- When entering address, [+] can only be entered at the beginning.
- Depending on the signal status, messages may not be sent. SMS that cannot be sent is saved as unsent SMS.
- Text may not appear correctly on receiving end depending on signal status.
- SMS can be sent without i-mode subscription.
- The FOMA terminal receives Short Mail from mova service i-mode terminals as SMS.
- Up to a combined total of 20 received and sent SMS can be saved on the FOMA card. Unsent SMS cannot be saved on the FOMA card.
- While **Function lock** is applied to the phonebook, names do not appear even if recipients are saved in the phonebook.
- Delivery notice and expiration date set at time of sending are not reflected on **Report request** and **SMS expiry**.
- SMS cannot be composed when 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].
- SMS cannot be sent from Number B.

When called during editing

- Previous screen reappears after disconnecting and editing can be resumed.

When 186/184 is added (P. 48)

- If 184 is added to beginning of address, SMS can be sent with caller ID notified.

Saving SMS and Sending Later

<Save SMS>

Save SMS being composed to FOMA terminal handset and continue composing at a later time. Edit and send saved SMS.

- Refer to P. 241 for details on composing SMS.
- Up to 500 sent and unsent SMS (combined with i-mode mail) can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.

Saving unsent SMS

1 While composing SMS (steps 1 to 3 on P. 241), press ▶ [Save].

- SMS being composed is saved as unsent SMS.

Note

- Press while composing SMS and the end confirmation screen appears. Select [Yes] to cancel composing SMS. Canceled SMS is not saved.

Note

- Unsent SMS cannot be copied (saved) to FOMA card.

Editing/Sending saved SMS

1 In unsent messages list (☞ P. 224), select SMS.





2 Select an item ▶ edit and press  (Send).

- Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 241 for details.

Editing/Resending sent SMS

1 In sent messages list (☞ P. 225), select SMS.

2 Edit/Resend mail.

To edit	 or  → [Edit] → edit SMS → 
	● Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 241 for details.
To resend	 → [Resend]

Receive SMS




Receiving SMS

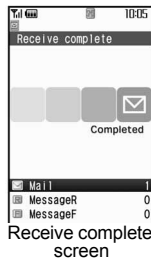
SMS is automatically received.

- Up to a combined total of 1,000 received SMS and i-mode mail can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset. Capacity varies depending on size of received messages.






1 SMS is automatically received.

2 SMS receive complete screen appears and SMS ring tone sounds (🔔 appears).

- If no operations are performed in receive complete screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen before reception automatically reappears.  (mail message) appears when the stand-by display reappears. Press  in stand-by and select  (mail message) to display Inbox list.



Meaning of icons displayed in stand-by

 (red font)	Unread SMS.
	Unread i-mode mail and SMS.
	i-mode mail and SMS on FOMA terminal handset are full.
 (blue font)	SMS on FOMA card is full.
 (red)	i-mode mail and SMS on FOMA terminal handset are full, and SMS on FOMA card is full.

3 Select [Mail].

4 Select folder ▶ select SMS.

- Refer to “Checking for SMS” on P. 243 for details on viewing received SMS.

Note

- SMS ring tone can be changed (☞ P. 121).
- SMS on FOMA card cannot be overwritten.
- Copy received SMS saved on FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. Delivery reports cannot be copied.
- When sent SMS are copied to FOMA card, the delivery reports are also copied.

Receiving when not in stand-by

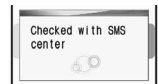
- When **Receive/Auto send display** is set to [Notice first], SMS ring tone sounds and icon (☞ P. 243) and Received results screen appear.

Checking for SMS <Check New SMS>

Received SMS is held at the SMS center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off. Retrieve from the SMS center.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Check new SMS].

- After the screen on the right appears, automatic retrieval starts if there is SMS held at the SMS center.



Note



- SMS cannot be received anymore when FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card memory are full. Delete/View unread SMS or disable protection (☞ P. 230). Read SMS or unprotected SMS are overwritten in order from the oldest first.
- Automatic retrieval may not start immediately after checking.

Viewing Received SMS


<Display Received SMS>

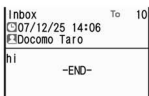
- Received SMS are saved in [Inbox]. SMS are sorted into various folders according to Sort rules (☞ P. 233).
- Received SMS copied to FOMA card are also saved in [Inbox].

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Inbox].

- Box list layout (☞ P. 224)
- To view sent SMS, press  in stand-by and select [Outbox].
- To view unsent SMS, press  in stand-by and select [Unsent messages].

2 Select folder ▶ select SMS.

- Message list/view layout for messages (☞ P. 225)
- To view received SMS in FOMA card, select [Inbox] and select SMS. In [Inbox], received SMS list appears for both FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card. Distinguish by the icon (☞ P. 225).
- To view sent SMS in FOMA card, select [Outbox] and select SMS.
- Press  to end viewing.



SMS screen


Note

- Up to a combined total of 1,000 received SMS and i-mode mail can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.

Replying to Received SMS

<Reply to SMS>

1 In SMS screen (☞ step 2 of “Viewing Received SMS” on P. 244), press ▶ [Reply/Forward] ▶ [Reply] ▶ compose SMS and press (Send).

- Press  in SMS screen and select [Reply/Forward] → [Reply with quote] to quote the received SMS for creating a reply.
- The number of characters in a message follows SMS input character. However, it follows the sender's SMS input character depending on the contents of SMS replied with quote or forwarded.
 - When Japanese is input in a message
 - When a message includes 70 characters or more
- Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 241 for details.

Note

- **Quick reply** is not available for SMS.
- SMS from User unset/Payphone/Not support cannot be replied to.
- If SMS in reply to FOMA card SMS is saved while being composed, the SMS is saved as unsent SMS on the FOMA terminal handset.
- [+] is added automatically at beginning of addresses if sender is a user of a non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunication provider.

Forwarding Received SMS

<Forward SMS>

1 In SMS screen (☞ step 2 of “Viewing Received SMS” on P. 244), press ▶ [Reply/Forward] ▶ [Forward] ▶ compose SMS and press (Send).

- Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 241 for details.

SMS Settings

SMS Settings

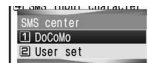
Setting SMS Center <SMS Center>

SMS center host can be changed.

- Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

※ Setting does not normally need to be changed.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [SMS setting] ▶ [SMS center].



2 Select [User set] ▶ enter SMS center address and press .

- Enter up to 20 digits.

3 Select [International]/[Unknown].

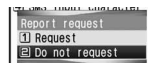
Receiving Notification of SMS

<Report Request>

Set whether to receive delivery report for SMS.

- Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [SMS setting] ▶ [Report request].



2 Select whether to receive delivery reports.

Note

- Delivery reports are received as SMS.
- Report request can be set when SMS is composed also.
- A delivery report by itself cannot be copied to FOMA card or microSD Memory Card or be sent by Ir data transmission or iC transmission.

Setting SMS Expiration Date

<SMS Expiry>

Set number of days for SMS to be stored at the SMS center on occasions such as the receiver being outside the service area and failed to receive the SMS. Select from 0 to 3 days. If you select 0 days, SMS is resent within a fixed time period and deleted from the center.

- Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

1 In stand-by, press [Envelope] ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [SMS setting] ▶ [SMS expiry] ▶ select length of time.



Note

- Setting can be made when SMS is composed also.

Setting Character Type to Enter in Message <SMS Input Character>

- Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

1 In stand-by, press [Envelope] ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [SMS setting] ▶ [SMS input character].

2 Select character type to enter.

Type	Japanese(70Chara)	English(160Chara)
------	-------------------	-------------------

Saving SMS to FOMA Card

Copy SMS saved in FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. Up to a combined total of 20 received and sent SMS can be saved to FOMA card.

- Insert FOMA card in advance.

Copying SMS from FOMA Terminal Handset to FOMA Card

Example: When copying received SMS

1 In stand-by, press [Envelope] ▶ [Inbox] ▶ select folder.

- Received messages list appears.
- For sent SMS, press [Envelope] in stand-by, select [Outbox] and select folder.
- To copy from SMS screen, press [Envelope] in SMS screen and select [Move/Copy] → [Copy to UIM] → [Yes] to copy.

2 Select SMS in FOMA terminal handset and press [Envelope] ▶ [Move/Copy].

- When an SMS in FOMA terminal handset is selected, [Copy to UIM] appears in the Submenu.

Meaning of icons

- In FOMA terminal handset

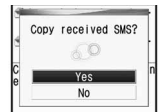
	Unread SMS		Unread SMS (protected)
	Read SMS		Read SMS (protected)
	Sent SMS		Sent SMS (protected)

- In FOMA card

	Unread SMS
	Read SMS
	Sent SMS

3 Select [Copy to UIM] ▶ select copy method.

- Received SMS is copied to [Inbox], and sent SMS is copied to [Outbox].



To copy one	[Copy one] → [Yes]
To select and copy	[Copy selected] → select SMS (repeatable) → [Envelope] → [Yes]

Note

- Unsent SMS cannot be copied to FOMA card.
- Delivery reports cannot be copied.
- Overwrite copy is not available.
- For Copy selected, when the number of SMS in the FOMA terminal handset is 50 or less, press [SelAll] (or [ClrAll]) to select/clear all.
- Copying is canceled when the save limit for FOMA card is reached.
- When sent SMS are copied to FOMA card, the delivery reports are also copied. However, sent date and time are not copied.

Copying FOMA Card SMS to FOMA Terminal Handset

Example: When copying received SMS

1 In Inbox list (☰ P. 224), select [Inbox] folder.

- For sent SMS, press in stand-by, select [Outbox] and select [Outbox] folder.
- To copy from SMS screen, press in SMS screen and select [Move/Copy] → [Copy 1 to phone] → [Yes] to copy.

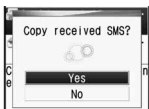
2 Select SMS in FOMA card and press ▶ [Move/Copy].

Meaning of icons

	Unread SMS on FOMA card
	Read SMS on FOMA card
	Sent SMS on FOMA card

3 Select [Copy to the phone] ▶ select copy method.

- When an SMS in FOMA card is selected, [Copy to the phone] appears in the Submenu.
- Received SMS is copied to [Inbox], and sent SMS is copied to [Outbox].



To copy one	[Copy one] → [Yes]
To select and copy	[Copy selected] → select SMS (repeatable) → → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

Note

- Overwrite copy is not available.
- Copying is canceled when the save limit for FOMA terminal handset (up to a combined total of 1,000 for i-mode mail and received SMS, up to 500 for sent SMS) is reached.

Delete SMS

Deleting SMS

Delete SMS with the same operation as “Deleting mail” on P. 230.

Scan Message

Avoiding Unsolicited SMS

Check SMS that came with phone numbers or URL in the confirmation screen.

- The confirmation screen does not appear for mopera mail or Missed call notification SMS of Voice Mail.
- Refer to P. 504 for details on setting.
- To view received SMS, press in the screen on the right.

Scanning function
Caution!
This SMS includes
Phone Nos. or URLs.
Be careful if you
do not recognize
the sender.

Agree

i-αppli

● i-αppli	<i-αppli>248
● Downloading i-αppli from Sites	<Download>248
● Running i-αppli	<Run i-αppli>249
● Running i-αppli Automatically	<Auto Start>257
● Running i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail	<i-αppli To Function>258
● Setting i-αppli as the Stand-by Display	<i-αppli Stand-by>259
● Managing i-αppli	260
● Viewing i-αppli Used Data in microSD Memory Card	<Used by i-αppli (Contents Transfer Compatible)>261
● Using Various i-αppli Functions	261

i-αppli

i-αppli

Download i-αppli software from sites for more convenient use of the i-mode terminal.

Download various games to the i-mode terminal. Also, directly save information from an i-αppli to the phonebook or Schedule, or use an i-αppli to link with Data box to store or retrieve images.

- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on i-αppli.

Download

Downloading i-αppli from Sites

Download i-αppli software from sites or Internet web pages, and run the software on the FOMA terminal display.

- Save up to 100 i-αppli software. Or, save up to five mail-type i-αppli software. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select software.

- The i-αppli download screen appears and downloading begins.

For software which uses saved data, terminal and UIM ID, and microSD Memory Card	In the confirmation screen of download, select [Yes] ● Press [F] (Svd data) to view a list of saved data.
When [Run software?] appears	[Yes] ● The software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading. After ending the software, select whether to save the software available for saving.
When the FOMA terminal handset does not have enough memory	[Memory is full or saved data exceeds limit. Overwrite?] appears → [Yes] → select data (repeatable) → [F] → [Yes]
To stop downloading	While [Downloading] is displayed, press [F]

- If software was already downloaded with a different FOMA card, [Already downloaded by different UIM. Overwrite?] appears. Select [Yes] to overwrite. However, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software is not overwritten.

- Depending on the software, the screens for i-αppli setting (Stand-by display, Network set, Location usage setting, Program guide key) may appear after downloading is complete.

Note

- If download is failed due to weak signal strength, save the data downloaded until the interruption and download the remaining data from the software list (☞ P. 249).
- If software currently saved in the handset is deleted because of insufficient memory during download, and download fails due to weak signal strength, the deleted software cannot be restored.
- Information may not be provided if **Network set** is set to [No].
- ☒ appears when downloading i-αppli information or software from an SSL-enabled page.
- Once downloaded, some i-αppli software may continue transmitting data automatically. The FOMA terminal must be set up in advance to use this service.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears when i-αppli software is downloaded while **Function lock** is applied to i-αppli. When terminal security code is entered, Function lock is temporarily unset and download is possible.

When selected software is already saved to the FOMA terminal

- If a new version of software is available, a confirmation screen asking whether to upgrade the software appears.
Select [Yes] to begin download (upgrade).

When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be downloaded

- Depending on the IC card data capacity, downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be possible even when software storage space is available. Follow the instructions on the screen, delete the displayed software, and repeat the download (Depending on the software to be downloaded, some software may not appear as candidates for deletion).
Depending on the status inside the IC card, all the displayed software must be deleted. In such cases, perform Delete all following the displayed screen so that the displayed software can be deleted collectively. Some software cannot be deleted collectively. The software must be started and the data on the IC card must be deleted in order to delete the software itself.
- While **IC card lock** is set, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be downloaded.

Memory area

- **Data box** and i-αppli share memory area. Depending on the amount of data saved in Data box, i-αppli software may not be saved.

Downloading mail-type i-appli software

Note the following when downloading mail-type i-appli software.

- When downloading mail-type i-appli software, mail-type i-appli folders are automatically created in Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages. The folder name is the name of the downloaded mail-type i-appli and cannot be changed.
- Save up to five mail-type i-appli folders.
- If a mail-type i-appli using the same folder is already on the software list, that software cannot be downloaded.
- If a mail-type i-appli is downloaded again when only the folders for that i-appli remain, those folders for the i-appli can be re-used. To not use existing folders, delete the existing folders and create new folders. If new folders are not created, the mail-type i-appli cannot be downloaded.
- Folders containing mail-type i-appli cannot be deleted. If the folder contains no mail-type i-appli, it can be deleted, but all folders created in Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages are deleted collectively.
- When deleting mail-type i-appli, select whether to simultaneously delete automatically created mail folders. If the folder contains protected messages, the folder cannot be deleted. When only the folder remains, move the cursor to the folder in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages, press and select [View i-mode mail] to check a message.
- Mail-type i-appli cannot be downloaded while Function lock is applied to mail (P. 147).
- Mail-type i-appli that changes the mail folder name cannot be downloaded or upgraded while Function lock is applied to mail.
- Mail-type i-appli that creates new mail folders cannot be downloaded while Function lock is applied to mail.

Viewing i-appli Information During Download <Software Info>

1 In stand-by, press [i-appli] ▶ [Software info] ▶ [ON].

- Software description appears when download is started.



Run i-appli

Running i-appli

- Some i-appli software may transmit data automatically when started. Use Network set (P. 251) in advance to disable data transmission or check whether to connect when starting the software.

1 In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds.

- To show only Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli software, press in stand-by and select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [iC card content].
- To show only GPS compatible i-appli software, press in stand-by and select [LifeKit] → [GPS menu] → [i-appli].
- To activate DCMX credit appli, press in stand-by and select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [DCMX].
- The following icons indicate the settings of the selected software.



Software list

Meaning of icons

	Software with i-appli stand-by function
	Software with Auto start function
	Software downloaded with SSL session
	i-appliDX software
	Mail-type i-appli software
	Software set as i-appli stand-by
	Software set to Auto start
	Software with data transmission function
	Software to save i-appli used data to a microSD Memory Card
	Software set to FOMA card operation restriction
	Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli software
	GPS compatible i-appli software
	Software incompletely downloaded
	Software transferred using iC transfer service (P. 264)

2 Select software to run.

- i-appli start screen appears and the software starts.
- For software incompletely downloaded, [Incomplete data, Download remaining data?] appears. Select [Yes] to start downloading.
- To end, press while the software is running and select [Yes].



- When the software transferred using iC transfer service is selected from the IC card content, [Download software?] or [Connect to site to download software?] appears. Select [Yes] to start downloading the software or connecting to the site.

Note

- When Kisekae Tool is [White]/[Black], display the software list screen from the Custom menu screen and press \leftarrow to return to the Custom menu screen.
- If the FOMA card used when downloading the software is not inserted, some i-αppli may not run (start).
- When the time set for **Alarm** (Alarm/Schedule alarm/Reception reserve alarm/Record reserve alarm) arrives, running software stops and the alarm screen appears. The software resumes when the alarm screen is closed. However, depending on the i-αppli software, the software may be ended when the alarm activates.
- Mail-type i-αppli can also be started from **Inbox**, **Outbox** or **Unsent messages**. Select the mail-type i-αppli folder from each folder list.
- Depending on the i-αppli, if a new version of the software is available, a confirmation screen for upgrading the software appears at startup.
- By installing a 3D polygon engine, 3D images can be displayed with i-αppli. 3D polygons express three-dimensional images with depth, by combining polygons (triangles, squares, etc.).
- If there is a high number of connections while running software, [Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?] appears. Select whether to transmit data or not.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position while running software, it appears in the horizontal screen. [Rotate the display, and use] appears and the software is interrupted depending on some i-αppli software. Return to the normal position to resume the software.
- Some i-αppli software may save i-αppli used data to a microSD Memory Card. Saved i-αppli used data can be checked in i-αppli used data list. Check i-αppli used data properties for the software that uses an i-αppli used data (☞ P. 261).
- If the microSD Memory Card or the battery pack is removed while the i-αppli used data is being saved/deleted, the data may be unable to be viewed. In this case, format the microSD Memory Card with FOMA SH905i. Formatting deletes all the data in the microSD Memory Card.
- Some data saved on a microSD Memory Card may not be available on other models.
- Reading/writing data saved on/to microSD Memory Card from i-αppli may become impossible while other running functions are using the card.

Note

- Mail-type i-αppli is not available when **2in1** mode is set to [B mode].

Starting i-αppliDX software

- Some i-αppliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software **Network set**. The number of connections and connection time differ depending on the software.
- If the correct date and time are not set, validity cannot be checked and the software cannot start.
- If the software is not validated, it cannot start until the validity is checked.

Related Operations

Start from Shortcut menu

In stand-by, press \odot ▶ select software.

Set volume <i-αppli volume>

In stand-by, press \odot ▶ [i-αppli] ▶ [i-αppli volume] ▶ \odot / \odot ▶ \odot .

View software description <Software info>

In the software list, select software and press \square ▶ [Software info].

Change the display method for the software list

In the software list, press \square .

Set whether to display the battery icon <Battery icon>

- 1 In stand-by, press \odot ▶ [i-αppli] ▶ [Battery icon].
- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF].

Note (Related operations)

Shortcut menu

- Register frequently used i-αppli in advance (☞ P. 410).
- If a calendar is shown in stand-by, press \square to disable the calendar before continuing with operations.

Setting i-αppli volume

- Some i-αppli do not have sound.

Software info

- The information that appears in the description includes the software name, version, software by, storage, profile version, compatible models, Auto start time interval, SSL connection, and others.
- The software name of the i-αppli cannot be changed.

Changing the display method for software list

- Press \square to switch from graphical display → icon display → list display.

Battery icon

- This is available for i-αppli that is displayed in full-screen.

Setting Power Saver of i-αppli

<Power Saver Set>

When the display turns off according to Light/Power saver (P. 132) while i-αppli is running, the i-αppli is paused after the set time passes, and the battery power can be conserved.

- When the following operations are performed within the set time, Power saver mode of i-αppli is not activated even after time set for Light/Power saver passes. After the operations end, Power saver set becomes valid, and the Power saver mode of i-αppli is activated after the set time passes.
 - Operation on FOMA terminal
 - Packet transmission from i-αppli
 - Access from i-αppli to microSD Memory Card

1 In stand-by, press **[i-αppli]** **[Power saver set]** **[ON]** **select time before activating Power saver mode.**

Time	1 min later	3 min later	5 min later
	2 min later	4 min later	

- The set time for Power saver time is the time after the display is turned off until Power saver mode is activated.

Note

- To resume the software in the Power saver mode of i-αppli, press a key and select [Agree] in the confirmation screen.
- In i-αppli stand-by, press **[CLR]** to activate i-αppli so that it is run in Power saver mode.

Configuring the Connection Setting

<Network Set>

For each i-αppli software, set whether data can be transmitted while the i-αppli is running.

- This setting is valid only for software that transmits data.
- Network set is set to [Yes] when software is downloaded.

1 In the software list (P. 249), select software and press **[Set software use]**.

2 Select **[Network set]** **select an item.**

Item	Yes	Always confirm
	No	

3 Press **[Complete]**.

Note

- Software may not function properly and information may not be available in a timely manner if Network set is set to [No]. This may also prevent the software from starting.

Note

- Because images used with the i-αppli software and entered data are sent over the Internet, some of these information may be viewed by a third party ("Images used with the i-αppli software" include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli, and images viewed and retrieved from Data box operated with i-αppli).

Configuring the Icon Information Setting <Icon Info Set>

For each i-αppli software, set whether the software should be notified regarding icons indicating unread mail and Message R/F, battery level, Manner mode setting, and whether the handset is inside or outside the service area.

- This setting is valid only for software that uses icon information.
- Icon information is set to [Yes] when software is downloaded.

1 In the software list (P. 249), select software and press **[Set software use]**.

2 Select **[Icon info set]** **[Yes]/[No]** **[Complete]**.

Note

- i-αppli requiring use of icon information may not function properly if set to [No].
- If Icon information setting is set to [Yes], the icon status for unread mail/Message R/F, battery level, Manner mode, and inside/outside the service area may be sent via the Internet to the IP (Information Provider) along with terminal ID and UIM ID, and this information may be viewed by a third party.

Configuring the Phonebook and History Access Setting <View Phonebook/History>

Set whether to allow the i-αppli software to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls. Setting this to [Yes] allows the i-αppli to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls automatically.

- This setting is valid only for software that accesses the phonebook and history information.
- [Yes] is set when software is downloaded.

1 In the software list (P. 249), select software and press **[Set software use]**.

2 Select **[Allow access to phone book/call records by software]** **[Yes]/[No]** **[Complete]**.

Note

- Setting this to [No] may prevent operation of some i-αppli software.

Configuring the Ring Tone and Screen Change Setting <Change Tone/Image>

Set whether to allow the i-appli software to change the ring tone and screen, and whether to show a confirmation screen when making the changes. Setting this to [Yes] allows the i-appli to change the ring tone and screen automatically.

- Change tone/image is set to [Yes] and when tone/image confirmation screen is set to [No] when software is downloaded.

1 In the software list (☞ P. 249), select software and press  ▶ [Set software use].

2 Select [Allow ring tone/image/icon changes by software] ▶ [Yes]/[No].

3 Select [Confirm all changes] ▶ [Yes]/[No] ▶  (Complete).

Setting Whether to Use Location Information <Location Usage Setting>

Set whether to use location information for GPS compatible i-appli.

- Location usage is set to [Yes] when software is downloaded.

1 In the software list (☞ P. 249), select software and press  ▶ [Set software use].

2 Select [Location usage setting] ▶ [Yes]/[No] ▶  (Complete).

Setting Program Guide i-appli Started from 1Seg <Program Guide Key>

Set the Program guide i-appli available for 1Seg.

- Program guide key is set to [No] when software is downloaded.

1 In the software list (☞ P. 249), select software and press  ▶ [Program guide key].

2 Select [Yes].

Motion Tracking Compatible i-appli

Enjoy a virtual game (Motion tracking compatible i-appli) by tilting and shaking (or swinging) the FOMA terminal.

- The preinstalled “直感♪プレーパーク (Chokkan Play Park)” and “地図アプリ (Mapping appli)” support Motion tracking (☞ P. 252, P. 275).

Starting One Software from Another Software

Some software allow starting other software without returning to the software list.

- If the software to start is not specified, follow the instructions on the screen to select the software.
- If the software to start is not saved in the FOMA terminal, download the software.

Default Software

The following software are preset.

- デビル メイ クライ for SH (Devil May Cry for SH)
- 直感♪プレーパーク (Chokkan Play Park)
- シャべって翻訳 for SH (Speech translation for SH)
- 地図アプリ (Mapping appli)
- FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA transmission environment confirmation appli)
- iD 設定アプリ (iD setting appli)
- DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)
- 楽オク出品アプリ 2 (Rakuoku auction appli 2)
- i アプリバンキング (i-appli banking)
- Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)

- To use again after deleting, download preset software from the iMenu site, [SH-MODE].

[iMenu] → [メニュー / 検索] (Menu / Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile phone manufacturer) → [SH-MODE]

※ SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

直感♪プレーパーク (Chokkan Play Park)

Enjoy Motion tracking compatible game by tilting and shaking (or swinging) the FOMA terminal. In three mini games, win a gold, silver or bronze medal depending on the score. Control the player skillfully to win a gold medal.



©2007 SHARP CORPORATION

Warning

This appli is the game with tilting and shaking (or swinging) the FOMA terminal.

The mobile phone may hit people or objects, if shaken (or swung) too much, and cause an accident or a damage. When playing, hold the FOMA terminal securely, do not swing it around more than necessary and confirm the safety of surroundings.

This appli detects movements using a camera. Do not cover the camera with fingers while playing the game.

Starting the software

1 In the software list (☞ P. 249), select [直感♪プレーパーク] (Chokkan Play Park).

- The software starts and the alert screen appears and then top screen appears.

2 In the top screen, press .

- A TUTORIAL screen appears when this game is activated for the first time. When the TUTORIAL ends, a CLUBHOUSE screen appears. The CLUBHOUSE screen initially appears from the next startup.

3

Select the game.

- Press to show the option screen.
- Press to change volume during a game.

Games and main operations

● フリフリ！ドラゴン

(Shake Shake! Long-driving contest)

Hit a ball and outdrive it by using items and gimmick.

- Shake (or swing) the FOMA terminal to increase the power. To determine the power or angle, press . After getting an item, press to use it.

● 狙って！クレール (Shoot! Clay)

This is a shooting game to shoot down clay pigeons or items within the time limit.

- Tilt the FOMA terminal to aim a target and press or to shoot it down.

● 傾けて！カート (Tilt! Cart)

Operate a cart and head toward the goal while avoiding obstacles.

- Tilt the FOMA terminal left/right to control the direction of cart movement and press or to proceed. Keep or pressed to increase the speed of the cart.

Stage mode

There are “通常モード (Normal mode)” and “とことんモード (Thorough mode)”. After winning a gold medal in all games, select “とことんモード (Thorough mode)”.

- Press in the CLUBHOUSE screen to select “とことんモード (Thorough mode)”.

Note

- In the option screen during a game, set whether to switch vibration on or off, key operations, etc. for the game.

TUTORIAL

- Practice the basic operations with the TUTORIAL. The TUTORIAL can be used from the option screen of the CLUBHOUSE as many times as necessary.

■ デビル メイ クライ for SH (Devil May Cry for SH)

This is a wide-screen compatible, fully-fledged 3D action game to operate the devil hunter, “ダンテ (Dante)”, to clear various missions. Enjoy the game in the vertical or horizontal screen.



©CAPCOM 2007

Starting the software

1

In the software list (P. 249), select [デビルメイクライ forSH].

- The software starts and the title screen appears.

2

Select [NEW GAME].

- Select [OPTION] to show the OPTION screen.

Mission mode

This is a main mode used in this game to clear missions following the story. Depending on the mission, there are various conditions.

Challenge mode

This is a mode used to climb up the devil tower while beating enemies until the character is totally exhausted.

- Select this mode after clearing one of the routes in the mission mode.

Note

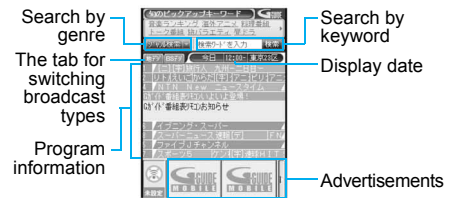
- Set the screen, sounds, vibration, key operations, etc. for the game in the option screen.
- When setting to the horizontal screen, hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations. However, the operation is not available in the viewer position.

■ 地図アプリ (Mapping appli)

This convenient application is for searching destination and viewing a route with means of transportation by using GPS function built in SH905i.

- Packet transmission charges apply when transmitting.
- Refer to “Using GPS Compatible i-αappli” on P. 275 for operation method of “地図アプリ (Mapping appli)”.

■ Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)



Main display

This convenient application combines the TV program schedule with AV remote control and does not incur a monthly usage fee. Easily download the information of TV programs on terrestrial digital or terrestrial analog broadcasting or BS digital broadcasting, which are being shown at a time of your target, anywhere at any time. Access information such as program titles, program details and start/end time for channels. In addition, activate a 1Seg from the program guide, and vice versa.

Programming your DVD hard disc recorder to record your favorite program is available through the internet (The recorder must support remote programming. And the initial setting to enable this appli function must have been made.).

Search programs by keywords such as program genre or TV personality name. Also operate TVs, VCRs and DVD players (Some devices are not supported).

- ※ Refer to "Using the Infrared Remote Control Function" on P. 356 for precautions on operating the remote control.
- ※ When using for the first time, perform initial settings and agree to the user agreement.
- ※ Only packet transmission charges apply.
- ※ During overseas use, set the time of the FOMA terminal to Japan time.
- ※ Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) uses mail function and therefore cannot be used when 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].
- ※ The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ. Program listings for your area will be shown.
- ※ Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control).

Setting timer for starting 1Seg

Select a 1Seg program to be started from program guide for terrestrial digital shown by this appli and set timer for starting the 1Seg program.

● How to set timer for starting a 1Seg program

In the main screen, select a program to be started and select [予約実行] from [視聴予約] of the menu. Since the timer setting screen for starting appears, follow the screen to set timer for starting.

Setting timer for recording 1Seg

Select a 1Seg program to be recorded from program guide for terrestrial digital shown by this appli and set timer for recording the 1Seg program.

● How to set timer for recording a 1Seg program

In the main screen, select a program to be recorded and select [予約実行] from [#ワンセグ録画予約] of the menu. Since the timer setting screen for recording appears, follow the screen to set timer for recording.

- Alternatively, in the main screen, select a program to be recorded and press (田) to set timer for recording.

Setting recording schedule function remotely

If your DVD hard disc recorder supports remote programming, setting the recorder timer remotely for recording a TV program is available from the TV program schedule shown by this appli via the internet. To enable this appli function, the initial setting described below is required.

● Making the initial setting

1 Setup your DVD hard disc recorder for internet connection.

- Refer to the user's guide of the DVD hard disc recorder for the setting procedure.

2 In the main screen, press (メ) (メニュー)

- ▶ [リモート録画予約] (Remote Record).
- Follow the guidance displayed to complete the initial setting.

● Setting TV program recording schedule

Select a program to be recorded from the TV program schedule, and select [リモート録画予約] (Remote Record) from the menu. Your DVD hard disc recorder designated by the initial setting can be programmed via the internet to record the selected program.

- ※ If the designated recording time overlaps with the pre-programmed one, a message indicating the overlapping will appear.
- ※ Packet transmission charges apply when using this service.

Receiving the recommended information via mail

Set .TV mail to receive the program information according to keywords via mail. Activate this i-appli directly from the mail or display program search results from the .TV mail sites.

Detailed program information

When the link to a broadcasting station site or program-related site appears, select the link to view the site or Internet web page.

■ シャベって翻訳 for SH (Speech translation for SH)

This is a communication tool for a person who is not good at speaking English.

The voices spoken to the FOMA terminal in Japanese or English are converted to characters and translated from Japanese to English or from English to Japanese.



- Use this appli for 60 days from the first-time use as a trial period. All the functions are available. On the 61st day or later from the first-time use, some functions are unavailable.
- Packet transmission charges apply when transmitting.
- Use this appli overseas. Overseas packet transmission charges differ from those in Japan.

Starting the software

1 In the software list (P. 249), select [しゃべって翻訳_SH] (Speech translation_SH).

- Title screen appears.
- When the software is activated for the first time, the description, user agreement and precautions of this appli appear. Agree to the user agreement and check precautions. A TUTORIAL screen appears. When the TUTORIAL ends, the title screen appears. When it is activated next time, the title screen directly appears.
- Press (En/English)/(Jp/Japanese) to switch the displayed language to English/Japanese.

Translating Japanese to English

1 In the title screen, select [Translation] ▶ [Jpn→Eng translation].

- When translating English to Japanese, select [Eng→Jpn translation].

2 Select a scene ▶ [Next].

3 Select a profile ▶ [Next].

- When using this function for the first time or there is no profile, select [Edit profile].

4 Press ◉ ▶ speak the words to be translated to the mouthpiece according to the instructions on screen ▶ ◉.

- After the screen during translating appears, the translation result screen appears.
- Finish speaking within 10 seconds. After approximately 10 seconds, the translation starts automatically.

5 Select [Translated].

- The screen, which displays the entire translation text, appears. Check the entire translation text at an enlarged size.

Note

- If (X) is pressed when [*key: Help] appears in the bottom of the screen, the details and operation methods of each screen appear. To return to the previous screen, press [Back] or (X).
- When the **network setting** is [No], a message asking to switch the network setting to [Yes] and redo appears at member authentication or voice entry. Select [OK] to end this appli and set the network setting to [ON] before using.

TUTORIAL

- With TUTORIAL, practice operations following the instructions on screen. Use TUTORIAL as many times as necessary by selecting [Menu] → [TUTORIAL] in the title screen.

Related Operations

Edit profiles

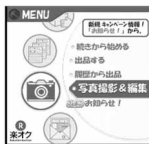
- 1 In the title screen, select [Edit profile] ▶ select items to edit profile with ◉.
- 2 To edit a name, select name column ▶ enter a name and press ◉.
 - To edit gender: Select gender column ▶ select gender.
 - To edit age: Select age column ▶ select age.
- 3 Select [Profile save].

View Request screen

- In the title screen, select [Menu] ▶ [Request screen] ▶ ◉.

■ 楽オク出品アプリ 2 (Rakuoku auction appli 2)

"Rakuoku auction appli 2" is a convenient application for easily putting a thing up to 楽オク (Rakuoku) anywhere at any time.



There is a guidance displayed so that people who put up a thing for the first time can also use this application easily. In addition, there are convenient functions such as shooting or editing pictures and saving the history, and a thing can be put up in a shorter time than from the site.

- When using for the first time, agree to "terms of use".
- Packet transmission charges apply when using this service.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on 楽オク (Rakuoku).
- To put a thing up in 楽オク (Rakuoku), the registration for the membership and the registration as an auctioneer must be approved by Rakuten, Inc.
- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ.
- Refer to the i-mode site for details on 楽オク (Rakuoku).

i-mode site: [iMenu] → [楽オク
 ✦ - オークション-] (Rakuoku
 ✦ -Auction-)



QR code to connect to the site

■ FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA transmission environment confirmation appli)

FOMA transmission environment confirmation appli is i-appli for confirming whether the FOMA terminal can use the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.



- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ.
- When FOMA transmission environment confirmation appli is activated for the first time, "notes regarding use" must be agreed upon before use.
- Depending on the transmission environment (weather, signal status, network congestion, etc.) at the transmission environment confirmation, a different result or a result indicating that the FOMA terminal is outside the service area appears even if in the same place and hour.
- When another function is used while this appli is used, the transmission environment may not be confirmed properly.

■ iD 設定アプリ (iD setting appli)

The electronic money "iD", which does not require charging, is a service available for shopping only by holding Osaifu-Keitai or a credit card with "iD" installed over. Shopping is made easier and more convenient without signing. Depending on the card issuer, cashing is also supported.



- To use "iD", an Osaifu-Keitai whose prescribed settings are completed using an iD appli and a Card appli offered by a card issuer or a credit card with "iD" installed is required in addition to the registration to a card issuer supporting iD.
- To use "iD" on Osaifu-Keitai, it is necessary to activate the iD appli, agree upon "notes regarding use", finish the prescribed settings on the iD appli side, and then download or activate the Card appli and make the prescribed settings on the Card appli side.

- The cost for the service supporting iD (annual fee, etc.) varies depending on the card issuer.
- Packet transmission charges are applied to download an iD appli and a Card appli.
- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ.
- Refer to the "iD" i-mode site for details on "iD".

i-mode site: [iMenu] → [メニュー / 検索] (Menu/Search) → [iD]



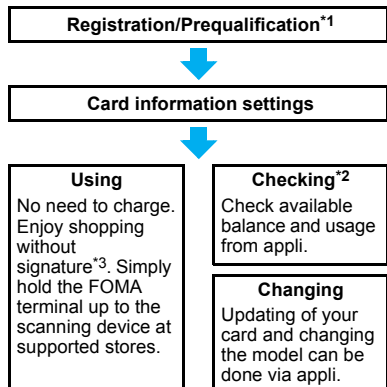
QR code to connect to the site

DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)

"DCMX" is a credit service supporting "iD", provided by the NTT DoCoMo group. DCMX includes DCMX mini that provides 10,000 yen/month credit and other DCMX services that provide more credit and DoCoMo points than DCMX mini. DCMX mini allows you to enjoy Mobile phone/Portable credit iD by simply signing up from this appli.



Appli Functions



- *1 For DCMX mini, there will be an online prequalification at the time of subscription. Subscription of services other than DCMX mini, can be made on the i-mode subscription page that is automatically displayed.
- *2 Usage check function is only available with DCMX mini.
- *3 Under certain conditions, a security code may be required.
- Refer to the i-mode site of DCMX for details on the service and how to apply.

i-mode site: [iMenu] → [DCMX iD]



QR code to connect to the site

- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ.

- When this appli is activated for the first time, "notes regarding use" must be agreed upon before use.
- Packet transmission charges apply for setting or operating.

i アプリバンキング (i-appli banking)

This i-appli is for convenient use of mobile banking. Mobile banking is a service that enables the user to check the balance or activity statement of his or her own account, and deposit or transfer money from a mobile phone anywhere at any time. When activating the i-appli, enter the password set by the user to use mobile banking of up to two financial institutions.



- To use mobile banking, the user must have an account in the financial institution and subscribe to the mobile banking service of the financial institution.
- Packet transmission charges apply when using this service.
- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on i-appli banking.
- Refer to the i-mode site for details on i アプリバンキング (i-appli banking).

i-mode site: [iMenu] → [メニュー / 検索] (Menu/Search) → [モバイルバンキング] (mobile banking) → [i アプリバンキング] (i-appli banking)



QR code to connect to the site

Note

- The default settings of the preset i-appli functions are as follows.
- Change settings from the Submenu of the software list.

Settings item	Default setting				
	Chokkan Play Park	Devil May Cry for SH	Mapping appli	G-GUIDE program schedule remote control	Speech translation for SH
Stand-by display	—	—	—	—	—
Network set	No		Yes		
i-appli To	—	—	Yes		—
Icon info set	—	—	Yes	—	—
Change tone/image	—	—	—	—	—
View phone-book/history	—	—	Yes	—	—
Location usage setting	—	—	Yes	—	—

Note

- For “直感♪プレーパーク (Chokkan Play Park)” and “デビルメイクライ for SH (Devil May Cry for SH)”, Set software use cannot be changed.

Settings item	Default setting				
	Rakuoku auction appli 2	FOMA transmission environment confirmation appli	ID setting appli	DCMX credit appli	i-appli banking
Stand-by display	—	—	—	—	—
Network set	Yes	—	Yes		
i-appli To	Yes	—	Yes		
Icon info set	Yes		—	—	—
Change tone/image	—	—	—	—	—
View phone-book/history	—	—	—	—	—
Location usage setting	—	—	—	—	—

- Packet transmission charges apply when using this service.

Precautions for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

- DoCoMo shall not be liable for information set in IC card.

Auto Start

Running i-appli Automatically

There are three methods to automatically start i-appli.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞ P. 47).

Auto start using the i-appliDX setting	Set Auto start to [ON] to enable.
Auto start using the software function	Auto start setting pre-installed in software. Set Auto start to [ON] and register software to enable. Register up to nine.
Auto start using the FOMA terminal setting	Set time, date and day for i-appli saved in FOMA terminal to set Auto start. Set Auto start to [ON] and set schedule to use. Register up to nine.

Configuring Auto Start <Auto Start>

- 1 In stand-by, press [i-appli] ▶ [Auto start] ▶ [ON]/[OFF].



Auto start screen

- 2 Setting software startup time with FOMA terminal settings

- 1 In the auto start screen, select [Details set] ▶ select a number.

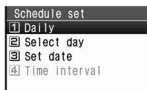
- Auto start software list screen appears.

To save new	Select a number ● To save a new schedule, select a slot with [-----].
To change	Select a number to change → [Update] ● Proceed to step 3.
To delete	Select a number to delete → [Delete] ● The operation is end.

- 2 Select software.

- 3 Select a starting method.

- If [Select day] is selected, select day of week (repeatable) and press (Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all days of the week).



Schedule setting screen

- 4 Enter a time and press .

- Use 24-hour format.
- Enter date for Set date.
- Move the cursor with .

- 2 Enabling Auto start setting for supported software

- 1 In the schedule setting screen, select [Time interval].

- To disable, delete Auto start setting (“To delete” in step 1 of “Setting software startup time with FOMA terminal settings”).
- [Time interval] cannot be selected for software without Auto start settings.

Note

- If Auto start cannot be started, the error is recorded in Auto start error history.
- Automatic startup is not available in the following situations.
 - Handset is turned off
 - Other functions are activated (including Desktop clock)
 - i-αppli is running
 - Call is in progress
 - When Auto start and Alarm (Alarm/Schedule/Reception/Recording) are set for the same time
 - i-αppli Function lock is set
 - Mail-type i-αppli is set to start automatically when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode]
 - FOMA card inserted is different from the one that was used when the appli with Auto start was downloaded
 - FOMA card is not inserted
- The functions below operate with the following priority when the same time is set.

	Priority (high → low)
Function	Auto power OFF → Auto power ON → Alarm → i-αppli Auto start

- **Reset settings** deletes i-αppli auto start error history and disables i-αppli Auto start settings.
- If transmission setting for software with Auto start settings is set to [Always confirm], a transmission confirmation screen appears upon startup. If no operations are performed for 5 seconds, software starts automatically as if [No] was selected in confirmation screen.
- When two Auto start times for the same software are set within 9 minutes of each other, Auto start does not function. Set Auto start time interval to 10 minutes or more. [Run error] appears in the Auto start error history.

i-αppli To Function

Running i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail

If i-αppli To (Run i-αppli) is set, i-αppli can be started from a site, Internet web page, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo or ToruCa.

- The following methods also start i-αppli.
 - When i-αppli start signal is received during Ir exchange
 - When i-αppli start information is read by Bar code reader
 - When i-αppli start information is read by holding the FeliCa mark up to a scanning device
- Set whether to allow i-αppli To in i-αppli To settings.

Configuring Startup with i-αppli To

<i-αppli To>

Select whether to start i-αppli with i-αppli To for each software.

1 In the software list (☞ P. 249), select software and press [Set software use].

2 Select [i-αppli To] ▶ [Yes] ▶ (Complete)

Note

- The software to start is determined by the site, Internet web page, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo or ToruCa. Download the specified software in advance.

Starting i-αppli from Sites or i-mode

Mail <i-αppli To Function>

- If i-αppli To is set to [No], i-αppli does not function.
- Cannot be activated as i-αppli stand-by.
- Full Browser is not available.

1 Select i-αppli in a site, Internet web page, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo or ToruCa ▶ [Yes].

- To cancel, press while [i-αppli activating] appears and select [Yes].

Note

- When i-αppli is ended, the original site, Internet web page, received message screen, screen memo, ToruCa details screen or screen for watching 1Seg reappears.
- If there is no software corresponding to the Run i-αppli setting, [No requested software] appears.
- Some software run from a site cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Depending on the site, the specified i-αppli software can be downloaded or updated if it is not saved on the FOMA terminal or if a newer version is available for the software saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Depending on the software settings, the software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading. After ending the software, select whether to save the software if available.
- Network set (☞ P. 251) may be required while running i-αppli software.
- i-αppli To from i-mode mail is a function only available from i-mode mail delivered from an IP (Information Provider). Not available for i-mode mail exchanged between FOMA terminals.

i-αppli Stand-by

Setting i-αppli as the Stand-by Display

- Press **[CLR]** to operate i-αppli set as the stand-by display.

Setting i-αppli as the Stand-by Display <Stand-by Display>

- Set whether to transmit from the software set as the i-αppli stand-by, using Stand-by network set (**[P. 259]**).

1 In the software list (**[P. 249]**), select software and press **[OK]** ▶ **[Stand-by display]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

- The software is set as i-αppli stand-by, and the software starts when the stand-by display reappears.
- The screen shown on the right appears when the software uses transmission. Select **[Yes]** to allow transmission. When **[No]** is selected, data is not transmitted and information may not be received.



Note

- Only one software can be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- Some software cannot be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, i-αppli appears as stand-by. The image set as the **stand-by display** does not appear. If i-αppli stand-by is disabled, the image set as the stand-by display appears.
- Web To function is not available from i-αppli stand-by.
- If software that transmits data is set as i-αppli stand-by, the software may not operate properly depending on the signal strength.
- If **All lock** is set when in i-αppli stand-by, i-αppli stand-by screen closes and [待受画面1] image appears. In addition, if **Function lock** is applied to i-αppli when in i-αppli stand-by, i-αppli stand-by screen closes and the image set as the stand-by display appears. When All lock or i-αppli Function lock is disabled, i-αppli stand-by reappears.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position, it appears in the horizontal screen. [This software cannot use in a horizontal position] appears and the software is interrupted depending on some i-αppli software. Return to the normal position to resume the software.
- If i-αppliDX is set as i-αppli stand-by, the i-αppliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software transmission setting.

Note

- If i-αppli stand-by is set, the i-αppli stand-by confirmation screen appears when the handset is turned on. Select **[Yes]** or do nothing for approximately 5 seconds to start i-αppli stand-by. Select **[No]** to show normal stand-by and cancel i-αppli stand-by settings. If the handset is turned on by the **Auto power ON** setting, the confirmation screen does not appear and i-αppli stand-by starts when the stand-by display reappears.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, usable battery time decreases.
- i-αppli stand-by is not available when **2in1** mode is set to **[Dual mode]** or **[B mode]**.
- The following operations end stand-by i-αppli.
 - Camera
 - Data box
 - i-mode
 - Mail
 - Videophone
 - Data Security Service
 - SD-Audio
 - Changing i-αppli settings
 - Playing i-motion
 - ToruCa
 - Updating software
 - iC transmission
 - Ir exchange
 - Downloading i-αppli software
 - Starting i-αppli
 - Manga&BookReader
 - Document Viewer
 - PDF Viewer
 - Updating pattern definitions
 - 1Seg
 - Changing 2in1 (switching modes, switching ON/OFF of 2in1 function)

Security errors

- While i-αppli stand-by is set, if an incorrect i-αppli action is attempted, or use of a function not permitted by the software is attempted, i-αppli stand-by is disabled.
- If an error that cancels i-αppli stand-by occurs, the error time and other information appear and are recorded in the error history. No information is recorded when ended properly. When **[Security error]** appears in stand-by, press **[OK]** to view error history.

Related Operations

Set whether to transmit data from i-αppli stand-by <Stand-by NW set>

- 1 In the software list, select software set as stand-by and press **[OK]** ▶ **[Stand-by NW set]**.
- 2 Select **[Yes]**/**[No]**.

Set i-αppli stand-by from menu <Stand-by display>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[OK]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Disp/LED/Power saver]** ▶ **[Set screen]** ▶ **[Stand-by display]** ▶ **[i-αppli]**.
- 2 Select software.
 - To set a different i-αppli as stand-by: Select **[Settings]** ▶ select software ▶ **[Yes]**.
 - To end i-αppli set as stand-by: Select **[End]**.
 - To disable i-αppli set as stand-by: Select **[Cancel]**.

Disabling i-αppli Stand-by

If i-αppli stand-by is disabled, the previous image set in Stand-by display appears (☞ P. 128).

- Even if i-αppli stand-by is ended, i-αppli stand-by settings are not disabled and i-αppli stand-by is restarted when the stand-by display reappears.

1 In the software list (☞ P. 249), select software set as stand-by and press  ▶ [Stand-by display] ▶ [Yes].

Managing i-αppli


Upgrade, delete and sort i-αppli saved in the FOMA terminal and view run error and trace information.

- Some software saved on the handset may be accessed by the IP (Information Provider) and service may be stopped directly. In such cases, the software cannot be run, set as stand-by or updated. Only deleting and viewing software details are available. To use again, the software needs to be contacted with an activation transmission. Contact the IP (Information Provider).
- Data may be sent from the IP (Information Provider) to some software saved on the handset.
- When IP (Information Provider) sends data to stop/resume software, the handset transmits data and the i-mode icon flashes. Transmission charges are not incurred.

Upgrading i-αppli <Upgrade>

Upgrade software saved in the FOMA terminal if a new version is available on the site. Some software automatically checks for updated information and upgrades itself when running.

1 In the software list (☞ P. 249), select software and press  ▶ [Upgrade] ▶ [Yes].

- When software description appears, press .

Note

- i-αppli cannot be upgraded when the FOMA terminal handset does not have enough available memory. Delete other software or data in **Data box** that shares memory area with i-αppli.
- For some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, downloading and upgrading may not be available while **IC card lock** is set.

Related Operations

Upgrade automatically when software is running

In the confirmation screen of [Upgrade software?], select [Yes].

Note (Related operations)


- Mail-type i-αppli software that changes the mail folder name cannot be upgraded while **Function lock** is applied to mail.

Sorting i-αppli <Sort>

Change the list order to one of the following.

- The setting continues even if the soft list is ended after sorting.

DL(New→Old)	Latest download date first
DL(Old→New)	Oldest download date first
By usage	Most recently used software first
By size	Largest program size first

1 In the software list (☞ P. 249), press  ▶ [Sort] ▶ select sort method.

Viewing error display <Error display>

View run error information ([Auto start error], [Stand-by error] and [Security error]) and trace information.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [i-αppli] ▶ [Error display] ▶ select error history.

Note

- If an error that cancels **i-αppli stand-by** occurs, the error time and other information appear and are recorded in the error history. No information is recorded when ended properly.

Related Operations

View Trace information <Trace info>

- 1** In stand-by, press  ▶ [i-αppli] ▶ [Trace info].
- 2** To end viewing, press .
 - To delete: Press  ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

- If there is no trace information, [No Trace info available] appears.

For i-αppli creators

- If a created i-αppli does not function properly, use Trace information details as a reference.
- Trace information does not appear if there is no software set to obtain a trace.

Applying Function lock to i-αppli <Function lock>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [i-αppli] ▶ [Function lock] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .

2 Select [ON]/[OFF].

Deleting i-αppli <Delete>

- G-GUIDE program schedule remote control cannot be deleted.

1 In the software list (☞ P. 249), select software and press ▶ [Delete] ▶ select deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete multiple ones collectively	[Delete selected] → select software (repeatable) → → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Note

- When deleting mail-type i-αppli, select whether to simultaneously delete automatically created mail folders. If the folder contains protected messages, folder cannot be deleted.
- When i-αppli used data of the software to be deleted is saved to the microSD Memory Card, select whether to delete the i-αppli used data simultaneously.
- When mail-type i-αppli software is deleted and only the folder remains, press in **Inbox**, **Outbox** or **Unsent messages** and select [View i-mode mail] to check the i-mode mail in the folder. View the i-mode mail in the folder without starting the mail-type i-αppli.

Deleting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software

- For some software, the software must be started and the data on the IC card must be deleted in order to delete the software itself.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be able to be deleted.
- While **IC card lock** is set, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software may not be able to be deleted.

Deleting all software including mail-type i-αppli

- If there is protected i-mode mail in the mail folders, the folders cannot be deleted.

Used by i-αppli (Contents Transfer Compatible)

Viewing i-αppli Used Data in microSD Memory Card

- Delete i-αppli used data folders or view detailed information of a selected folder.
- Properties show Software/CP names, folder availability and cause for unavailability.
- The folders cannot be used under the following conditions.
 - Restrictions [Y]: The software to use the saved data does not exist.
 - UIM restrictions [Y]: The FOMA card inserted is different from the one that was used when saving the data.
 - Model rstrctns [Y]: The model of the FOMA terminal is different from the one that was used when saving the data.
 - Series rstrctns [Y]: The series of the FOMA terminal is different from the one that was used when saving the data.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [i-αppli] ▶ [Used by i-αppli].

To delete one data folder	Select folder and press → [Yes]
To display Properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press to end checking.

Note

- Viewing i-αppli used data folders saved on microSD Memory Card may become impossible while other running functions are using the card. Exit other functions in advance.

Using Various i-αppli Functions

- Depending on the function, other functions may need to be ended before using.

Viewing Sites from i-αppli

- Download software that enables viewing of sites.
- Sites with URLs exceeding 255 characters, including single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols, cannot be viewed.

1 While software is running, select URL ▶ [Yes].

- The method for viewing sites and Internet web pages varies depending on the software.

Making Calls from i-αppli




Make voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls from the running software.

- Download software that supports the use of voice call, Videophone call and PushTalk.
- Calls cannot be made while Keypad dial lock or Self mode is set.

1 While software is running, select phone number.

- Procedures for voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls differ depending on the software.
- A phone number to use for voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls appears.

2 Make a call.

Voice calls	 → [Yes]
Videophone	 → [Yes]
PushTalk	 → [Yes]


Using the Camera from i-αppli

- When the camera is started from i-αppli, shot images are saved and used as part of i-αppli.

1 While software is running, select camera startup.

- Camera mode (still picture shooting screen) appears. Adjust the brightness and use Auto timer and Zoom.
- Use some software to set [Image size], [Continuous mode], [Image quality] and [Frame]. Items that can be set, setting methods and camera startup method differ depending on the software.

2 Press .

- To save the image, press .

Note

- Some software may automatically send images and entered data used with i-αppli over the Internet. Images used with i-αppli include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images selected from My picture of **Data box** operated with i-αppli and images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli.

Using Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

1 While software is running, select Bar code reader startup.

- Camera mode (Bar code reader) is activated.
- Procedures for starting Bar code reader differ depending on the software.

2 Position camera to show bar code (JAN/QR code) and press .

- An image of the bar code (JAN/QR code) is shot.

Note


- Scanned data may be used for some software.

Saving ToruCa from i-αppli

1 While software is running, select ToruCa item.

- Procedures for saving ToruCa differ depending on the software.

2 Preview/save item.

To preview ToruCa	[Preview]
To save a new item	[Save new] → select folder
To overwrite	[Overwrite] → select folder → select data → 

Setting Alarms from i-αppli

- [Enter time] and [Set repeat] are entered with i-αppli.

1 While software is running, select alarm setting item ▶ .

2 Press registered number and set the alarm.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 401 for details.

Using Location Information from i-αppli



1 While software is running, select location history ▶ [Yes].

2 Select location information to be used from the location history list.


Note

- For i-αppli that can refer to the phonebook, saved location information is available.

Using Ir Exchange/iC Transmission from i-αppli

- Ir exchange ( P. 352)/iC transmission ( P. 356) is not available while in Self mode.

1 While software is running, start Ir exchange/iC transmission ▶ [Yes].

- Procedures for starting differ depending on the software.
- To cancel transmission, press .

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

■ Osaifu-Keitai

- Osaifu-Keitai264
- iC Transfer Service264
- Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-appli264

■ ToruCa

- ToruCa<ToruCa>266
- Retrieving ToruCa. <Retrieve ToruCa>266
- Viewing ToruCa<ToruCa Viewer>267
- Viewing ToruCa List/Details Screen268
- Setting ToruCa<ToruCa Settings>272
- Locking IC Card Functions <IC Card Lock>272

Osaifu-Keitai

“Osaifu-Keitai” refers to useful IC card i-mode functions (i-mode FeliCa) and i-mode terminals equipped with IC cards.

FeliCa, using non-contact IC card technology, enables reading and writing of data without direct contact.

Simply hold the handset up to the scanning device at supported stores to turn your mobile phone into a convenient tool with

Osaifu-Keitai. Use electronic money to pay and use as an airline ticket or a point card.

Compared with already existing non-contact IC cards which support FeliCa, the IC card in Osaifu-Keitai enables depositing electronic money, checking your balance or viewing usage history, and other useful functions using transmission.

- ※ To use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, it is necessary to set by i-αplli (IC appli) compatible with IC card function (Contact the IP (Information Provider) for details).
- ※ Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” for precautions and details on using Osaifu-Keitai services.
- Osaifu-Keitai malfunctions may cause data saved in the IC card to be lost or altered (Note that as a rule, you will be asked to delete data when leaving your Osaifu-Keitai for repairs, etc.). For the service such as a reissue, restoration, or transfer of the data except the transfer by iC transfer service, use a backup service of IP (Information Provider). The availability and use conditions (required procedures, charge, etc.) of backup service and the availability of the support for iC transfer service vary depending on each service. Contact your IP (Information Providers) for details in advance. Be sure to use a service including a backup service for important data.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content or the damage of Osaifu-Keitai service caused by any reason such as repairing and upgrading.
- When the Osaifu-Keitai is stolen or lost, immediately contact your provider of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service for handling methods. In the FOMA terminal, Omakase Lock (☎ P. 146), IC card lock (☎ P. 272), Multi easy lock (☎ P. 148) or Multi lock auto-set (☎ P. 149) can be used.

iC Transfer Service

iC transfer service*1 is a service which transfers the data on the IC card to a new Osaifu-Keitai*2 collectively*3 when changing Osaifu-Keitai such as upgrading, repairing, etc. Use iC transfer service at a DoCoMo Shop or retailer.

Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” for details.

- *1 Charges apply when iC transfer service is used (Charges may not apply for some services). In addition, packet transmission fees apply to download/various settings of IC appli.
- *2 iC transfer service can be used only when a new Osaifu-Keitai supports iC transfer service.
- *3 Some services are not supported depending on the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Unsupported services are deleted when iC transfer service is used. Use a backup service of each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service or delete those services in advance.

Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-αplli

Using Osaifu-Keitai

Use Osaifu-Keitai in the following manner.

- When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αplli is started or downloaded for the first time, [Current UIM necessary to use IC card] appears. IC card functions are not available unless the FOMA card paired with the IC card is inserted. In addition, to use the IC card functions with a different FOMA card inserted, delete all Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αplli. When deleting them, the FOMA card paired with the IC card may be required.

Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αplli.
☎ P. 248



Start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αplli and read/write data in the IC card. ☎ P. 265



Hold the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device.
☎ P. 265

Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-αppli and Reading/Writing Data in the IC Card


Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli enables charging of electronic money or railway tickets, checking balance and usage history, as well as other useful functions.

1 In stand-by, press  **[Osaifu-Keitai]**
▶ [IC card content].

2 Select Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.

- Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli starts.

Note


- When Kisekae Tool is [White]/[Black], display the IC card list screen from the Custom menu screen and press  to return to the Custom menu screen.

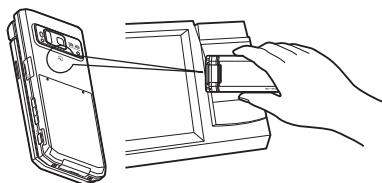
Holding the FeliCa Mark Up to the Scanning Device

Hold the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device to enable payment with electronic money, replacement for railway tickets, as well as other functions.

- Starting the software is not needed except for some services.
- Avoid contact between the FOMA terminal and scanning device.
- Only the side with the FeliCa mark can be read.
- Hold the FeliCa mark parallel to the scanning device.
- Hold the FOMA terminal up to the center of the scanning device.
- If you hold the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device and it is still not recognized, try moving the handset around.
- Reading may not be possible if a metallic substance is present on the FeliCa mark side.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device.





- Set the FOMA terminal called LED flashes when the scanning device recognizes the FOMA terminal ( P. 138).



2 Confirm that the data was read.

- Check the scanning device display to confirm the read results.

Precautions for Using Osaifu-Keitai

- When using Osaifu-Keitai, be sure to have the battery pack attached.
- Although Osaifu-Keitai is available when the handset is turned off, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be started. Called LED does not flash.
- If the battery pack is removed and then inserted, IC card function is not available until turn the power on.
- Although Osaifu-Keitai is available during i-mode, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be started.
- i-αppli can be started and sites can be connected by reading startup information from a scanning device.
- Osaifu-Keitai may not be available even when holding FeliCa mark up to a scanning device if battery is empty.
- FeliCa IC card function is not available while IC card is locked ( P. 272).
- Even if All lock ( P. 145) is enabled, FeliCa IC card functions are not locked.
- When Omakase Lock ( P. 146) is enabled, FeliCa IC card functions are also suspended. When Omakase Lock is disabled, the IC card lock ( P. 272) setting is followed.

Note

- Preinstalled i-αppli software can also be used.
- In the following cases, data being read or written to the IC card from software will be interrupted. Operations after a call is ended vary depending on the service being used.
 - When a call is received while software is running, the software is interrupted. After the call is ended, the software resumes.
 - When the time set for **Alarm** (Alarm/Schedule alarm/Reception reserve alarm/Record reserve alarm) arrives, running software stops and the alarm screen appears. The software resumes when the alarm screen is closed.
- Automatic startup is not available in the following situations:
 - Handset is turned off
 - Other functions are activated
 - Call is in progress
 - i-αppli Function lock is set
 - i-αppli is running
- Make sure to safeguard **terminal security code**, symbol for writing authentication and service passwords.

ToruCa

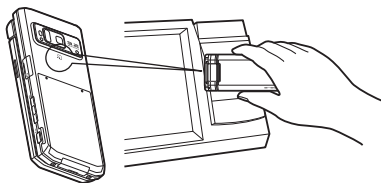
ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be retrieved with Osaifu-Keitai. Use as fliers, restaurant cards, coupons, etc. ToruCa is available from scanning device, sites, and QR codes. Easily share using mail, Ir exchange, iC transmission and microSD Memory Card. Retrieved ToruCa is saved in [ToruCa] of [Osaifu-Keitai] menu.

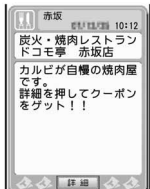
- ToruCa is available with compatible handsets. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

Using ToruCa

Hold Osaifu-Keitai up to the scanning device and retrieve ToruCa.

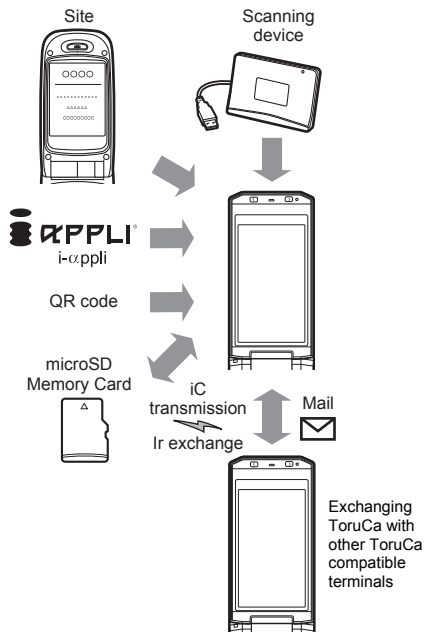


FeliCa mark



The retrieved ToruCa appears. Press [詳細] (Details) key to view further details.

Retrieving ToruCa



Note

- Normal packet transmission charges are incurred when retrieving ToruCa with i-mode transmissions.
- Some ToruCa may not be updated or redistributed using mail or Ir exchange depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider).

Retrieve ToruCa



Retrieving ToruCa

Retrieve ToruCa through a scanning device using IC card function, or through i-mode mail or message R/F attachment, i-αppli, downloading from i-mode, microSD Memory Card, iC transmission, Ir exchange, QR code, or downloading from data broadcasting and data broadcasting site. Save up to 1,000 ToruCa (Capacity varies depending on size of ToruCa).

- Hold the FOMA terminal up to the scanning device to use ToruCa with the automatic reading function. A used ToruCa is moved to the [Used ToruCa] folder.
- When Function lock is applied to ToruCa, Function lock must be disabled except for ToruCa retrieved using IC card function.





Retrieving from Scanning Device

Hold the FOMA terminal up to the scanning device and retrieve ToruCa/ToruCa (details).

- Retrieve/save ToruCa up to 1 KB each and ToruCa (details) up to 100 KB each.
-  (new ToruCa) appears when a new ToruCa is retrieved using IC card functions.  appears when an unread ToruCa is in the FOMA terminal handset.



1 When ToruCa/ToruCa (details) is retrieved, the retrieval complete tone sounds, the called LED flashes and ToruCa/ToruCa (details) appears.

- If no operations are performed, the previous screen reappears in approximately 15 seconds.  (new ToruCa) appears when the stand-by display reappears. Press  in stand-by and select  (new ToruCa) to display ToruCa list.
- Set the handset not to display ToruCa/ToruCa (details) when retrieval is completed ( P. 272).
- For ToruCa including detailed information, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to access a site when retrieval is completed. Select [Yes] to retrieve ToruCa (details).

Note

- ToruCa cannot be retrieved using a scanning device when **IC card lock** is set or ToruCa from IC is set to [OFF].
- If ToruCa is retrieved from the scanning device when a display other than the stand-by is shown, ToruCa/ToruCa (details) or a confirmation screen for connection of sites does not appear even after the retrieval is completed.






Retrieving from File Attachment of i-mode Mail or Message R/F

Retrieve ToruCa as an i-mode mail or message R/F attachment.

1 Open received mail or message R/F with ToruCa attached ▶ select file to save.

- ToruCa/ToruCa (details) preview screen appears.


2 Select a saving method.

ToruCa	To save as is	 (Save) → [Yes]
	To save after retrieving ToruCa (details)	[詳細] (Details) → [Yes] →  (Save) → [Yes]
ToruCa (details)	To save as is	 (Save) → [Yes]
	To save after updating ToruCa (details)	 (Update) → [Yes] →  (Save) → [Yes]


- Retrieve/update ToruCa (details) with i-mode transmission. Packet transmission fees apply.

3 Select [phone]/[microSD].

Note

- ToruCa cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary ToruCa and increase available memory space to save ( P. 271).

microSD Memory Card

- Details cannot be retrieved from ToruCa saved on microSD Memory Card.
- Copy ToruCa saved on microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset ( P. 270).

ToruCa retrieved from i-mode and i-appli

- Some ToruCa may not be retrieved from i-appli.
- Some ToruCa cannot be sent as mail attachments, via **Ir exchange/IC transmission**, or copied to microSD Memory Cards.

ToruCa Viewer


Viewing ToruCa

View retrieved ToruCa and ToruCa (details).

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Osai-fu-Keitai] ▶ [ToruCa].

- Select [→microSD] to view information about ToruCa saved in microSD Memory Card.

2 Select a folder.

- Press  to show ToruCa list for all folders. Does not apply to microSD Memory Card.

3 Select a ToruCa.

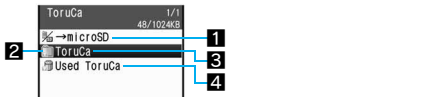
- Access functions such as Web To, Mail To, and Phone To (AV Phone To) from the ToruCa or ToruCa (details) details screen. Content of used ToruCa or ToruCa saved in a microSD Memory Card cannot be used.

Note

- Terminal security code entry screen appears when ToruCa folder list is shown while **Function lock** is applied to ToruCa. Enter terminal security code to unlock Function lock temporarily and view.

Viewing ToruCa List/Details Screen

Folder list layout



1 →microSD

Select to view ToruCa folder list in microSD Memory Card ([→phone] appears when viewing list on the microSD Memory Card).

2 Folder icons

	Folder with unread ToruCa
	Folder with read ToruCa

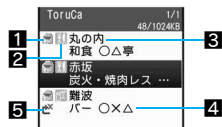
3 Folder name

Show up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.

4 Used ToruCa

Used ToruCa is saved. Save up to 20 entries. When the save limit is exceeded, ToruCa are deleted starting with the oldest retrieved date.

ToruCa list layout



1 ToruCa type

	Unread ToruCa*1
	Unread ToruCa (expired)*2
	Read ToruCa
	Read ToruCa (expired)*2

*1 ToruCa retrieved from sites and i-mode mail do not become unread.

*2 When an expiration date is set to ToruCa, it appears on expired ToruCa.

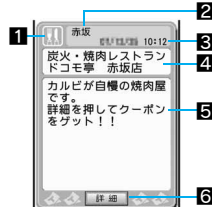
2 Category

3 Index

4 Title

5 Non-redistributable ToruCa

ToruCa details screen layout



1 Category

2 Index

3 Date retrieved

4 Title

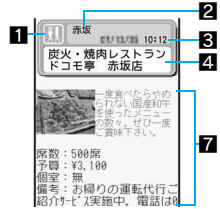
5 Description

6 Details key

Select to retrieve ToruCa (details).

7 ToruCa (details) details

ToruCa (details) details screen layout



Retrieving ToruCa (Details) from ToruCa

1 In the ToruCa details screen (☎ P. 268), select [詳細] (Details) ▶ [Yes].

- Connects to the i-mode site and ToruCa (details) is retrieved.

Note

- ToruCa (details) cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary ToruCa and increase memory space to save (☎ P. 271).

Related Operations

Save phone numbers and mail addresses in ToruCa to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

- 1 In the ToruCa (details) details screen or ToruCa details screen, select phone number or mail address, and press [Add to phonebook].
- 2 Select [Save new to phone]/[Save new to UIM] to save new to phonebook.
 - To add/overwrite phonebook: Select [Add/overwrite] ▶ select name.
- 3 Add to phonebook (☎ P. 102, P. 107).

Save ToruCa (details) image <Save image>

- 1 In the ToruCa (details) details screen, press [Save image].
- 2 Select image ▶ [Yes].

Related Operations

Play the Flash movie or animated GIF in ToruCa again <Retry>

In the ToruCa (details) details screen, press ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Retry].

Adjust the Flash movie sound effects volume in ToruCa <Sound fx setting>

- 1 In the ToruCa (details) details screen or ToruCa details screen, press ▶ [Display/set].
- 2 Select [Sound fx setting] ▶ ▶ .

Update ToruCa

In the ToruCa (details) details screen, press (Update) ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

- Adding to phonebook or saving ToruCa image is not available for used ToruCa or ToruCa saved in microSD Memory Card.

Refer to “Viewing Flash Movies” on P. 182 for details on viewing flash movies.

Sorting ToruCa Automatically

<Sort Rules>

Set Sort rules for folders and sort ToruCa automatically.

- Set up to ten rules for each folder.
- Sort rules cannot be set to the [ToruCa] and [Used ToruCa] folders.
- Only ToruCa retrieved with a scanning device are automatically sorted.

Setting Sort rules to folders

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [ToruCa] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Sort rules].

2 Select entry number ▶ set Sort rules.

- Select a used number to edit sort rules.

To sort by category	[Category] → select category ● Press in the category selection screen to show the icon list for the selected category. Press to return to the previous screen.
To sort by text contained in index	[Index] → enter text and press ● Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
To sort by text contained in title	[Title] → enter text and press ● Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

To sort all ToruCa	[All ToruCa] → [Yes] ● [All ToruCa] is set to 1 . ● Select [No] to set to a specified number.
--------------------	--

3 Repeat step 2 to set multiple rules.

4 Press (Complete).

Deleting specified Sort rules

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [ToruCa] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Sort rules].

2 Select entry number and press ▶ select a deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes] →
To delete all	[Delete all] → [Yes] →

Managing Folders

Create up to 20 folders and manage files.

Creating folders <New folder>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [ToruCa] ▶ ▶ [Manage folders].

2 Select [New folder] ▶ enter folder name and press .

- To delete “New folder” name, press for 1+ seconds in the folder name editing screen.

Note

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [ToruCa] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Manage folders].

2 Select [Edit folder name] ▶ edit folder name and press .

- To erase folder name, press for 1+ seconds in the folder name editing screen.

Note

- Only folder names of user-created folders can be edited.

Moving folder order upward

<Move folder up>

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Osafu-Keitai]** ▶ **[ToruCa]** ▶ **select folder and press** **📁** ▶ **[Manage folders]**.

- [ToruCa], [Used ToruCa] folder, the user-created folder at the top of the list or folders in microSD Memory Card cannot be moved.

- Select **[Move folder up]**.

Applying Function lock to ToruCa

<Function lock>

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Osafu-Keitai]** ▶ **[ToruCa]** ▶ **📁** ▶ **[Function lock]**.

- Enter terminal security code and press **⊙** ▶ **[ON]/[OFF]**.

Deleting folders <Delete>

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Osafu-Keitai]** ▶ **[ToruCa]** ▶ **select folder and press** **📁** ▶ **[Delete]**.

- Select a deletion method.

To delete folders individually	[Delete one folder] → enter terminal security code and press ⊙ → [Yes]
To delete folders collectively	[Delete sel folders] → select folder (repeatable) → 📁 → enter terminal security code and press ⊙ → [Yes] • Press 📁 (SelAll)/ 📁 (ClrAll) to select or clear all.
To delete all ToruCa (keep folders)	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press ⊙ → [Yes]
To delete all folders and ToruCa	[Delete all folders] → enter terminal security code and press ⊙ → [Yes]

Note

- Only user-created folders can be deleted.

Managing ToruCa

Delete, move, copy, and sort ToruCa and ToruCa (details) in the FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (📞 P. 335).

Sorting ToruCa <Sort>

Change the list order to one of the following.

- Only ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal handset is to be sorted.
- The setting continues after the ToruCa screen is ended after sorting.

Date (new→old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first
Date (old→new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first
By category	Files are sorted by genre of category icon
By index	Files are sorted by index in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → pictograph → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana • Characters are sorted by character code.
By kana	Files are sorted by kana set to ToruCa

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Osafu-Keitai]** ▶ **[ToruCa]** ▶ **select folder** ▶ **📁** ▶ **[Sort]**.

- Select a sort method.

Moving or Copying ToruCa <Move/ Copy/Copy to microSD/Copy to the phone>

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Osafu-Keitai]** ▶ **[ToruCa]** ▶ **select folder** ▶ **select ToruCa and press** **📁** ▶ **[Move/Copy]**.

- Select an item.

Item	Move	Copy to microSD*
	Copy	

* For ToruCa saved in microSD Memory Card, [Copy to the phone] appears.

- Select Move method/Copy method.

To move or copy ToruCa individually	[Move one]/[Copy one]
-------------------------------------	-----------------------

To move or copy selected ToruCa collectively	[Move selected]/[Copy selected] → select ToruCa (repeatable) → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To move or copy all ToruCa in the folder	[All in folder] (move)/[All in folder] (copy) → enter terminal security code and press

4 Select folder.

- When copying between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card, select [Yes].
- When [Includes image with file restrictions. Will be copied without details] or [Includes image with file restrictions. ToruCa will be copied without details] appears, select [Agree].

Note

- ToruCa cannot be moved without created folders.
- ToruCa cannot be moved/copied to [Used ToruCa] folder.
- ToruCa cannot be moved between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.
- Folder selection is not required when copying between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.

Deleting ToruCa <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [ToruCa] ▶ select folder ▶ select ToruCa and press ▶ [Delete].

2 Select a deletion method.

To delete ToruCa individually	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete ToruCa collectively	[Delete selected] → select ToruCa (repeatable) → → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all ToruCa in the folder	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Searching ToruCa

Search ToruCa by genre of category icons, index, or title.

- ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal handset is applicable.
- ToruCa cannot be searched inside [Used ToruCa] folder.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [ToruCa] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Search].

- Alternatively, select a folder, press and select [Search] to search inside the selected folder.

2 Select the range of search.

Range of search	Search in folder
	Search all

3 Select a search method ▶ specify a keyword.

To search by genre of category icon	[Category] → select category
To search by index	[Index] → enter part of index and press
To search by title	[Title] → enter part of title and press

- The search results list appears.
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for keywords (index and titles).

4 In the search results screen, press ▶ [Advanced search] to perform advanced search.

Attaching ToruCa to i-mode Mail

- ToruCa exceeding 1 KB, ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB, non-redistributable ToruCa and used ToruCa cannot be attached to mail.

1 In the ToruCa (details) details screen (P. 268) or ToruCa details screen (P. 268), press ▶ [Attach to mail].

- Alternatively, press in the ToruCa list.

2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Note

- Cannot be sent to models that do not support ToruCa.
- When ToruCa (details) attached to mail includes an image with **file restrictions**, the mail is sent with ToruCa. However, details can be retrieved again by the mail recipient.

ToruCa Settings

Setting ToruCa

Set to use ToruCa when holding the FOMA terminal up to the scanning device.

- The following items can be set.

Item	Setting details
Retrieve ToruCa from IC card	Set whether to retrieve using a scanning device and iC transmission.
ToruCa duplicate check	Set to check that the same ToruCa has not been saved before retrieving to prevent duplication.
ToruCa auto reading check	Set whether to automatically read available ToruCa when ToruCa is used by holding the FOMA terminal up to the scanning device. When set to [ON], available ToruCa is automatically recognized and transferred to the recognized ToruCa to the [Used ToruCa] folder.
ToruCa auto display	Set whether to automatically view ToruCa when retrieving is completed.
ToruCa sound effect	Adjust Flash movie sound effect volume in ToruCa.

- When ToruCa auto reading check is set to [OFF], some functions of ToruCa may not be available.
- When the FOMA terminal is held up to the scanning device if ToruCa auto reading check is set to [OFF], a confirmation screen may appear asking whether to use the automatic reading function. To use ToruCa, select [Yes] and set this function to [ON].

1 In stand-by, press **[Osaifu-Keitai]** **[Setting]**.

2 Select a setting item.

To set to retrieve from a scanning device	[ToruCa from IC] → [ON]/[OFF]
To set duplicate check	[ToruCa dupe check] → [ON]/[OFF]
To set auto reading check	[ToruCa auto read] → [ON] → [Yes] • To disable: [OFF].
To set auto display	[ToruCa auto disp] → [ON]/[OFF]
To adjust sound effect volume	[ToruCa sound fx] → [Volume Icon]

Note

- Expired ToruCa, used ToruCa and ToruCa saved in microSD Memory Card are not objects of ToruCa dupe check or ToruCa auto read.

IC Card Lock

Locking IC Card Functions

Lock IC card functions to restrict usage of the FeliCa IC card function.

Locking IC Card Functions When Power Is Turned On <IC Lock(Power-on)>

Set IC card functions to automatically lock when the power is turned on.

1 In stand-by, press **[Osaifu-Keitai]** **[IC card lock]** **[enter terminal security code and press [Osaifu-Keitai]]**.

2 Select **[IC lock(power-on)]** **[ON]/[OFF]**.

- Alternatively, press **[Osaifu-Keitai]** for 1+ seconds in stand-by and select [Yes] to set IC card lock. To disable, press **[Osaifu-Keitai]** for 1+ seconds in stand-by, enter terminal security code and press **[Osaifu-Keitai]**.

Locking IC Card Functions When Power Is Turned Off <IC Lock(Power-off)>

Set IC card functions to automatically lock when the power is turned off.

1 In stand-by, press **[Osaifu-Keitai]** **[IC card lock]** **[enter terminal security code and press [Osaifu-Keitai]]**.

2 Select **[IC lock(power-off)]** **[select a setting item when the power is turned off]**.

Setting item	Follow power ON
	ON

Note

- If **Omakase Lock** is set, IC card is automatically locked.
- ToruCa cannot be retrieved using a scanning device or the automatic reading function is not available when IC card is locked.
- IC card lock is set automatically when battery pack is removed. If the battery pack is inserted, IC card lock is disabled when turning the handset on. However, if the battery pack is removed with IC card lock [ON] at power-on, IC card lock is retained when reinserting the battery pack and turning the handset on.
- When IC card lock is set or IC card lock is set using Omakase Lock, IC card lock is retained even if battery becomes empty and power turns off.
- For some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, downloading and version upgrading may not be available while IC card is locked.

GPS Function

● Using GPS Function	274
● Positioning Your Location	<Position Location>274
● Setting Position Location	<Set Position Loc.>275
● Using GPS Compatible i-appli	275
● Providing Location Information upon the Request	<Loc. Request Menu>279
● Notifying Present Location	<Location Notification>281
● Displaying the History of Confirmed Location Information	<Location History>283
● Using Location Information from Each Function.	284

Using GPS Function

- Note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for the pure economic loss if you cannot confirm the positioning (communication) result with terminal failure, malfunction, error or external factors such as power failure (including battery exhaustion).
- FOMA terminals cannot be used as navigation system for professional use of aircrafts, vehicles, person, etc. Therefore, note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for the loss caused by the navigation system to use location information.
- FOMA terminals cannot be used as surveying GPS of high accuracy. Therefore, note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for the loss caused by the error of location information.
- GPS is the service in charge of Department of Defense of USA, therefore, GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (accuracy degradation or radio wave abort, etc.) for the US national security reason.
- Position location and Location notification are not available when Function lock is applied to GPS.
- Location provision, Position location and Location notification are not available in the following cases.
 - When a FOMA card is not inserted
 - During Self mode
 - During Software update
- Note that GPS is using the radio wave from satellites, and following conditions may cause the radio wave abort or difficulty to receive.
 - In or under buildings
 - In basement, tunnel, underground or water
 - In bags or boxes
 - In density area with buildings or residence
 - In or under densely trees
 - Near high-tension line
 - Inside cars or trains
 - In bad weather with heavy rain/snow
 - When people or objects are blocking mobile phones
 - When hands are covering screen/keypad/microphone/speaker of mobile phones
 In these cases, the error of retrieved location information may be 300 m or more.
- Unable to use GPS function of FOMA terminals out of service area or overseas.

Position Location

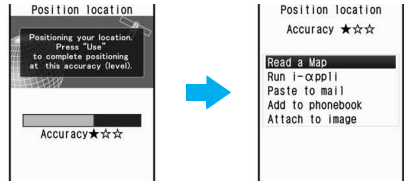
Positioning Your Location

Position the present location and check your place. Use this function for more convenient use such as showing a map from positioning location information, changing the location information to a URL and sending mail with the URL pasted, etc.

- Transmission charges are not incurred when the present location is positioned. However, packet transmission charges are applied when a map is displayed based on the location information.

1 In stand-by, press **Ⓞ** ▶ **[LifeKit]** ▶ **[GPS menu]** ▶ **[Position location]**.

- Alternatively, press **Ⓞ** for 1+ seconds in stand-by to start (☞ P. 275).
- ✳** flashes while GPS positioning is being performed.



Accuracy level **☆☆☆**:

Almost accurate location information
Error is less than 50 m

Accuracy level **☆☆**:

Relatively accurate location information
Error is less than 300 m

Accuracy level **☆☆**:

Rough location information
Error is 300 m or more

- Accuracy level is a rough indication. It may differ depending on the radio wave condition of the surroundings.
- Press **Ⓞ** (Use) to use the location information as a result of location positioning at the displayed accuracy level while the present location is being positioned.
- To cancel position location, press **Ⓞ** (Break) or **CLR** and press **Ⓞ**.

2 Select a usage of location information.

To display a map based on location information*	[Read a Map] → [OK]
To use GPS compatible i-αppli	[Run i-αppli] → select i-αppli
To paste location URL to i-mode mail	[Paste to mail] → [OK] → compose/send i-mode mail (☞ P. 208)
To save location information to phonebook	[Add to phonebook] → [New to phonebook]/[Add to phonebook] → save to phonebook (☞ P. 104)
To add location information to image	[Attach to image] → select folder → select image (repeatable) → Ⓞ → [Save new]/[Overwrite]

* Check peripheral area information using “iエリア (周辺情報)” after displaying a map based on the location information. Refer to the NTT DoCoMo web page for “iエリア (周辺情報)” service.


- To show location information details, press **Ⓞ** (Loc.info).


Note

- Change sound/volume/LED color for Position location (☞ P. 122, P. 124, P. 138).
- The Location URL to be sent appears only on the i-mode supported handset.

Setting Position Location

Setting GPS Key <GPS Button Setting>


Set the operation that is automatically launched after positioning the present location by pressing  for 1+ seconds.

- In stand-by, press  ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Set position loc.] ▶ [GPS button setting] ▶ select an action.

Action	Read a Map	Add to phonebook
	Run i-αpli	Attach to image
	Paste to mail	Confirm each time

- Select [OK].

Setting Positioning Mode for Positioning Location <Positioning Mode>

- In stand-by, press  ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Set position loc.] ▶ [Positioning mode] ▶ select Positioning mode.


Standard mode	Prioritizes the speed of positioning location.
Quality mode	Performs positioning with longer time. As a result, more accurate positioning is performed than in Standard mode.

- Select [OK].

Using GPS Compatible i-αpli

Start i-αpli compatible with GPS function.

- When GPS compatible i-αpli is used, location information is sent to the information provider of the software used.
- When GPS function is used on GPS compatible i-αpli, set Location usage setting of the software used to [Send].

- In stand-by, press  ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [i-αpli].

- GPS compatible i-αpli list appears.

- Select software.

- GPS compatible i-αpli starts.

Using “地図アプリ”

With the pre-installed “地図アプリ”, use the GPS function and maps for various uses such as viewing the present location or specified location, searching the peripheral area information or navigating to a destination for using vehicle, walking or driving a car.

Enter the information with voice to use transfer information easily.

Note

- Packet transmission charges apply when using this service. It is recommended to use this software with Pake-hodai or Pake-hodai full.
- To undo after deleting this software, download it from [エリア-周辺情報-] in iMenu.
- Since this software uses mail functions, it cannot be used when 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].
- Note that there is no guarantee for the accuracy and immediacy of the information such as a map and route.
- Make sure that a person other than the driver operates this software while driving.
- Screenshots in this manual are examples and may differ from actual screens.

Basic service and additional services

For this software, there are basic service and additional services.

- Basic service: Service provided by DoCoMo for free
- Additional services: Services provided by ZENRIN DataCom for a fee

Use the additional services (except the traffic information) for free until the 90th day from the first-time use of this software.

To use the additional services on and after the 91st day, the membership subscription (fees apply) for “ゼンリン 地図+ナビ” provided by ZENRIN DataCom is required.

Even if the membership is signed up while this software is used, the software does not need to be downloaded again. Use this preinstalled software.

Menu	Details	Until the 90th day	From the 91st day
今いる場所	Use GPS to view the map of the present location or send the map via mail. Leave footprints in the present location, check the track of motion or view footprints of other people.	Free	Free
周辺を調べる	Search the information on a shop, facility or iD-supporting shop near the current location or specified location to download a coupon from the restaurant information. Check the weather and the information on parking availability in the peripheral area.	Free	Free

Menu	Details	Until the 90th day	From the 91st day
地図を見る	Enter any word, genre, address or phone number to view a map.	Free	Free
	Check the map of the location saved in this software, the server or the phonebook or previously searched. Save the location to the server so that the saved point is shared with a personal computer.	Free	Fees apply
ナビをする	Totally navigate to the destination including the means of using vehicle, walking and driving. Easily navigate to your home saved.	Free	Fees apply
乗換案内	Check train transfer information and time schedule. Check a train route on a map and set an alarm before departure.	Free	Fees apply
おしゃべり検索	Enter the information with voice to search peripheral area information or view a map.	Free	Free
	Enter the information with voice to use transfer information easily.	Free	Fees apply
設定/直感★	Tilt the FOMA terminal to move a 3D map or map.	Free	Free
	Check the settings of map display, navigation display, etc. and how to use them.	Free	Free

Starting the “地図アプリ”

1 In stand-by, press (⏻) for 1+ seconds.

2 Select [地図アプリ].

- Each menu appears on the TOP screen. Close the menu to view the previously searched map.
- When the software is activated for the first time, the user agreement and the safety precaution appear. Confirm the user agreement and agree to it. When it is activated next time, the TOP screen directly appears.

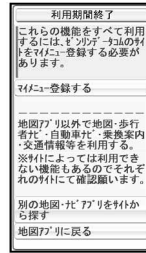


TOP screen

When the 91st day passes without the membership subscription

When this software is activated for the first time on and after the 91st day, a message indicating that available functions are limited and a message referring to the membership subscription appear.

Also, when the additional service menu is selected, the same messages appear.



When the 91st day passes

- Sign up as a member on the site of “ゼンリン” (ZENRIN) from this software.

Map display screen and operations



©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Key operations while displaying a map

To view menu	(メニュー) ● Press (閉じる) to close the menu.
To view quick access menu	
To zoom/shrink a map	(拡張) ● The bar indicating the scale appears. Press to view details of the map and press to view a wide area of the map. Press (閉じる) to determine the scale and hide the bar.
To move a map to up/down/left/right	
To close menu or to return to the first result position	CLR
To rotate a map	Right: Left:
To position a map facing north	

Key operations while displaying quick access menu

To check the peripheral area information around the location displayed on the map	(周辺を調べる)
To search a route to the center of the map on which a departure place is set and displayed	(ココへナビ)

To send the URL of the displayed map via mail	Ⓒ (ココを☑送信)
To save the location information of the center of the map to this software, the server or the phonebook	Ⓓ (ココを登録) ● Save the location information to the server so that the saved point is shared with a personal computer.
To close the quick access menu	Ⓔ (地図へ)
To display the point to view a 3D intersection or panoramic picture	① (3D・パノラマ) ● Select a point to view a 3D intersection or panoramic picture.
To display buildings in the peripheral area	② (ビルテナント) ● To check tenants, select a building and select [このビルのテナント].

Search result screen of the neighborhood information and key operations



©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

- A screen displaying a search result as a map is shown and the operations are explained below. When viewing the search results as a list, select a search result from the list to view the map.

Key operations while displaying result to search the neighborhood information

To confirm details information of search result	Select search result and press Ⓒ ● When the cursor is not placed on the search result, the quick menu appears.
To move a map to up/down/left/right	Ⓕ
To re-search with displayed map centered	⑤
To view the previous search result	④
To view the next search result	⑥
To view menu	Ⓖ (メニュー) → [はい] ● The search result is deleted, and the peripheral area information ends.
To zoom/shrink a map	Ⓖ (拡縮) ● The bar indicating the scale appears. Press Ⓒ to view details of the map and press Ⓒ to view a wide area of the map. Press Ⓖ (閉じる) to determine the scale and hide the bar.

Searching a route to guide (navigate) to the destination with voice and a screen

Set a departure place and a destination to search a route. Routes for walking, using public transportation and driving are displayed. Guide (navigate) to the destination with voice and a screen after searching a route.

1 In TOP screen, select [ナビをする] and select [ナビをする].

2 Select [出発地] ▶ select an item ▶ set a departure place.

- The following items can be selected.

現在地 (GPS)	Position the present location to set (only for setting a departure place).
フリーワード検索	Search by key words to set.
地図上で指定	Set a departure place on a map.
TEL/〒検索	Search by a phone number or postal code to set.
住所一覧から	Select an address to set.
ジャンルから	Select a genre to set.
履歴から	Set from the previously displayed map.
登録地点から	Set from the location information saved in this software, the server or the phonebook.
自宅	Set the location information of your home.

- Select [出発地を確認] to check the set departure place.

3 Select [目的地] ▶ select an item ▶ set a destination place.

- Use the same operations as step 2 to set a destination place.
- Select [目的地の確認] to check the set destination place.

4 Select [時間指定] ▶ select an item.

現時刻で指定	Search a route with the current time.
出発時刻指定	Specify a departure time to search a route.
到着時刻指定	Specify an arrival time to search a route.
終電を利用	Search a latest train route on the day.

5 Select [条件設定] ▶ select an item ▶ set conditions ▶ [上記で設定].

乗換条件	Select a selection criteria of transfer among “早い”, “安い”, and “楽々”.
徒歩ルート	Select a selection criteria of the route among “おまかせ”, “屋根多い”, and “階段少ない”.
特急利用	Select whether to use a limited express train when the total distance of the route is 100 km or less.
通常利用車種	Select a car model to be used.

6

Select [🚗🚙🚚🚛🚎🚏]で検索.

- Select [🚗のみで検索] to search route used car only.
- Routes (up to six entries) appear. When there are transfer routes of different transportations, the characteristics of the routes are shown as icons.

Icon	Characteristics
早	Route of the earliest arrival time
安	Route with the lowest fee
楽	Route with the least number of transfers
オススメ	Route that satisfies the above three conditions
有料	Route for a car with toll roads
一般	Route for a car with open roads

- Select [ルートを登録] to register the route.

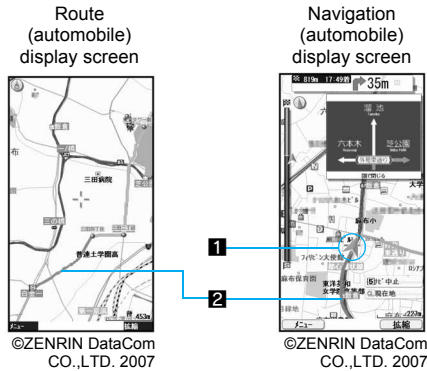
7

Select a route ▶ [ナビ・ルート確認] ▶ [ナビ]/[ナビ(省電力)] ▶ [はい].

- Starts navigation to your destination.
- Select the route and select [ナビ・ルート確認] → [ルート確認] → [はい] to check the route.
- To check the timetable, select a route, zone, and [時刻表] in order.

Route (automobile)/Navigation (automobile) display screens and operations

Route (automobile)/Navigation (automobile) display screens



- 1 Present location and traveling direction
- 2 Route to a destination

Key operations while using a navigation

To view TOP menu	[メニュー] → [はい] ● The navigation ends.
To view quick access menu	[🔍]
To zoom/shrink a map	● (拡縮) ● The bar indicating the scale appears. Press [🔍] to view details of the map and press [🔍] to view a wide area of the map. Press [閉じる] to determine the scale and hide the bar.

To move a map to up/down/left/right	[🔄]
To return to the original position	[CLR]
To switch to the intersection mode	[2]
To stop/start the navigation	[5]
To rotate a map	Right: [🔄] Left: [✕]
To position a map facing north	[0]

Key operations while displaying quick access menu

To display the route search result/To set the navigation	[🔍] (結果 & 設定)
To search a route to the destination with up to three stopover places added	[🔍] (経由地を設定)
To search a route from the present location to the destination again	[🔄] (リルート)
To delete the displayed route	[1] (ルート消去)
To switch to the intersection mode	[2] (モード切替)

Using おしゃべり検索

In おしゃべり検索 menu, enter the information with voice to search peripheral area information, use transfer information or view a map easily.

Example: Searching “a nearby convenience store”

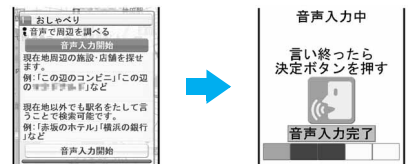
1

In TOP screen, select [おしゃべり検索] and select [周辺を調べる].

- The voice entry startup screen appears.

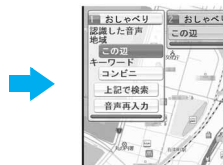
2

Select [音声入力開始] ▶ speak the peripheral area information to search to the mouthpiece (example: “この辺のコンビニ”) ▶ [音声入力完了].



Voice entry startup screen

Microphone screen



Voice entry result screen

3 In the voice entry result screen, select [上記で検索].

- When the voice recognition is not performed properly, select [音声再入力].

Using 設定・ヘルプ

1 In TOP screen, select [設定/直感★] and select [設定・ヘルプ] ▶ select an item.

会員情報確認	Check whether the membership of “ゼンリン 地図+ナビ” is signed up.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 基本設定	Make the settings related to overall software such as settings of the map display color and font size.
ナビ設定	Make the settings related to overall navigation such as settings of the re-routing and voice navigation volume.
自宅設定	Save the place of your home.
履歴系クリア	Delete the usage history of a map, navigation, etc.
使い方の説明/よくある質問/利用規約	Check how to use, frequently-asked questions and the user agreement.

Related Operations




Move a map by tilting the FOMA terminal

In TOP screen, select [設定/直感★] and select [直感★] ▶ [直感★地図] ▶ [OK].

Loc. Request Menu

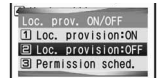
Providing Location Information upon the Request

Set whether to provide the present location upon the request from the other party.

- Location provision may require the subscription to a service provider supporting the service and the service usage fee.
- To use a service supporting location provision, set Location request menu to [Loc. provision:ON]. In addition, usage settings for each service (GPS Service settings or Location usage setting accessed by [iMenu] → [料金&お申込・設定] (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → [オプション設定] (Options) → [位置情報利用設定] (Location usage setting)).
- Set location information may not reach a service provider depending on the signal strength.
- Location information may be sent to a service provider without any operation under [Loc. provision:ON]. Under [Loc. provision:OFF], even if the location information from the other party is received, it is automatically rejected, and the history of location provision does not remain.
-  (blue) appears when [Loc. provision:ON] is set. Until a location provision permission schedule ends if it is set,  (blue) is displayed while permitted and  (black) while rejected.
- Location information is provided free of charge.

- For the use of location information, check the information of a service provider and DoCoMo web page.

1 In stand-by, press [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Loc. request menu] ▶ [Loc. prov. ON/OFF] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .



Location provision ON/OFF setting screen

2 Select whether to provide the location information.

Note

- Location provision can also be set from initial settings (P. 46).

Setting permission schedule onto Location provision

1 In the Location provision ON/OFF setting screen, select [Permission sched.].




2 Select [Start] ▶ enter time to start the function and press .

- Use 24-hour format.



3 Select [End] ▶ enter time to deactivate and press .

- Use 24-hour format.

4 Select [Repeat] ▶ select a repeat method.

To permit providing location information at the set time every day	[Daily]
To permit providing location information on specified days of the week	[Set day of week] → select a day of the week (repeatable) →  (Complete) ● Press  (SelAll)/  (ClrAll) to select/clear all days of the week.
To permit providing location information for a specified period	[Not set] ● Valid period cannot be set. Proceed to step 6.

5 Set Valid period.


To set Valid period	[From] → [Start date setting] → enter start date and press  → [End date setting] → enter end date and press  .
To not set Valid period	[End date] → [Not set]

Note

- If an end time is set to the time before the scheduled time, location information is not provided for the day.
- Refer to P. 280 for details on the operation by settings.
- Change sound/volume/LED color for Location provision (☞ P. 122, P. 124, P. 138).

Related Operations**Set Positioning mode of Location provision**

<Positioning mode>

- 1 In stand-by, press  [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Loc. request menu] ▶ [Positioning mode].
- 2 Select [Standard mode]/[Quality mode] ▶ [OK].

Operation When Permission Schedule Is Set onto Location Provision

Example: When the current date is
"December 25, 2007, 14:00"

Start: 15:00 End: 22:00

Setting details		Schedule when location provision is performed
Repeat	Valid period	
Not set	–	12/25/2007, 15:00 to 12/25/2007, 22:00
Everyday	From 12/30/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Everyday from 12/30/2007, 15:00 to 01/30/2008, 22:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)
	From 12/20/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Everyday from 12/25/2007, 15:00 to 01/30/2008, 22:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)
	Not set	Everyday after 12/25/2007, 15:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)
Set day of week	From 12/30/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Set day of week from 12/30/2007, 15:00 to 01/30/2008, 22:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)
	From 12/20/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Set day of week from 12/25/2007, 15:00 to 01/30/2008, 22:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)
	Not set	Set day of week after 12/25/2007, 15:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)

Start: 09:00 End: 22:00

Setting details		Schedule when location provision is performed
Repeat	Valid period	
Not set	–	12/25/2007, 14:00 to 12/25/2007, 22:00
Everyday	From 12/30/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Everyday from 12/30/2007, 09:00 to 01/30/2008, 22:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)
	From 12/20/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Everyday from 12/25/2007, 14:00 to 01/30/2008, 22:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)
	Not set	Everyday after 12/25/2007, 14:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)

Setting details		Schedule when location provision is performed
Repeat	Valid period	
Set day of week	From 12/30/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Set day of week from 12/30/2007, 09:00 to 01/30/2008, 22:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)
	From 12/20/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Set day of week from 12/25/2007, 14:00 to 01/30/2008, 22:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)
	Not set	Set day of week after 12/25/2007, 14:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)

Start: 15:00 End: 10:00

Setting details		Schedule when location provision is performed
Repeat	Valid period	
Not set	–	12/25/2007, 15:00 to 12/26/2007, 10:00
Everyday	From 12/30/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Everyday from 12/30/2007, 15:00 to 01/31/2008, 10:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)
	From 12/20/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Everyday from 12/25/2007, 15:00 to 01/31/2008, 10:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)
	Not set	Everyday after 12/25/2007, 15:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)
Set day of week	From 12/30/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Set day of week from 12/30/2007, 15:00 to 01/31/2008, 10:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)
	From 12/20/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Set day of week from 12/25/2007, 15:00 to 01/31/2008, 10:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)
	Not set	Set day of week after 12/25/2007, 15:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)

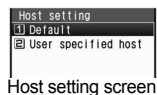
Start: 09:00 End: 09:00

Setting details		Schedule when location provision is performed
Repeat	Valid period	
Not set	–	12/25/2007, 14:00 to 12/26/2007, 09:00
Everyday	From 12/30/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Everyday from 12/30/2007, 09:00 to 01/31/2008, 09:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)
	From 12/20/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Everyday from 12/25/2007, 14:00 to 01/31/2008, 09:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)
	Not set	Everyday after 12/25/2007, 14:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)
Set day of week	From 12/30/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Set day of week from 12/30/2007, 09:00 to 01/31/2008, 09:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)
	From 12/20/2007 End date 01/30/2008	Set day of week from 12/25/2007, 14:00 to 01/31/2008, 09:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)
	Not set	Set day of week after 12/25/2007, 14:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)

Setting Host <Host Setting>

Set the host for the GPS service setting site.
※ Setting does not normally need to be changed.

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[LifeKit]** ▶ **[GPS menu]** ▶ **[Loc. request menu]** ▶ **[Host setting]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.



- 2 Select **[User specified host]** and press **ⓐ** (Check).

- A details confirmation screen appears.
- To return to the default host, select **[Default]**. To change to the preset user-defined host, select **[User specified host]**.

- 3 Select **[Host name]** ▶ enter the host name and press **⊙**.

- Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

- 4 Select **[Host URL]** ▶ enter the host URL and press **⊙**.

- Enter up to 100 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

- 5 Press **ⓑ** (Complete).

- The host is changed.

Related Operations

Delete the user-defined host <Delete>

In the host setting screen, select **[User specified host]** and press **ⓐ** (Check) ▶ **ⓑ** (Delete) ▶ **[Yes]**.

GPS Service Settings <Service Settings>

Connect to the GPS service setting site and configure the setting required for Location provision.

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[LifeKit]** ▶ **[GPS menu]** ▶ **[Loc. request menu]** ▶ **[Service settings]**.

- Connected to the GPS service setting site.

- 2 Configure the settings.

- Please contact GPS service providers for the setting details.

When the Location Information Is Requested

Location provision starts when the request to provide the location information is received.

- When Location provision is allowed (when GPS Service settings are set to **[許可]** (Always allow) or when Location usage setting accessed by **[iMenu]** → **[料金&お申込・設定]** (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → **[オプション設定]** (Options) → **[位置情報利用設定]** (Location usage setting) is set to **[許可]** (Always allow)), the location information is automatically provided upon request.

- When Location provision is chosen (when GPS Service settings are set to **[毎回確認]** (Always choose) or when Location usage setting accessed by **[iMenu]** → **[料金&お申込・設定]** (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → **[オプション設定]** (Options) → **[位置情報利用設定]** (Location usage setting) is set to **[毎回確認]** (Always choose)), a confirmation screen asking whether to provide appears at every request. Select **[Yes]** to start providing the location information.
- To cancel Location provision, press **ⓑ** (Break) or **ⒸLR** and press **⊙**. However, the location information may be sent depending on timing.
- Sent location information may not reach a requestor of the location information depending on the signal strength.
- Host ID for Location provision may not be displayed on the screen.

Note

- When the **2in1** service is used, only Number A is available regardless of the mode. If the location information provision is requested with Number B, the location information is not provided, and the failure of search is notified to the other party.

When the location information is requested from the other party who used imadocokan search

- A confirmation screen for location provision appears at every request. Select **[Yes]** to immediately notify to a rough positioning result to the other party. After **[Yes]** is selected, the GPS positioning screen appears, and a high-accuracy positioning result is notified.

- If the location provision is canceled after **[Yes]** is selected on a confirmation screen for location provision, a rough positioning result is notified to the other party. In this case, the location history is recorded, but the location information does not appear.

When the location information is requested while in Public mode (Drive mode)

- If Location provision is set to **[許可]** (Always allow) for usage settings of each service, a notification screen and then the GPS positioning screen are displayed and the location is provided after GPS positioning. However, Location provision/accept, Location provision/notify, vibrator or called LED does not operate.
- When Location provision is set to **[毎回確認]** (Always choose) for usage settings of each service, location information is not provided.

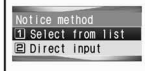
Location Notification

Notifying Present Location

Notify the positioned Location information of the present location to specified service clients (service provider supporting Location notification).

- See the information of a service provider supporting Location notification or DoCoMo web page. In addition, subscription to a service provider supporting Location notification and a service usage fee may be required.
- Sent location information may not reach a service provider depending on the signal strength.
- Using Location notification is charged.

- 1** In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[GPS menu]** **[Loc.notification/set]** **[Location notification]**.



- 2** Select a service client.

To select from list	[Select from list] → select a service client
To directly enter	[Direct input] → enter a service client ID and press [OK]

- The present location is notified to the selected client.
- To cancel positioning location, press **[Break]** or **[CLR]** and press **[OK]**. However, the location information may be sent depending on timing.

Note

- Change sound/volume/LED color for Location notification (**[P. 122, P. 124, P. 138]**).
- When the **2in1** service is used, the location information is notified with Number A regardless of the mode.

Related Operations

Set Positioning mode of Location notification <Positioning mode>

- 1** In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[GPS menu]** **[Loc.notification/set]** **[Positioning mode]**.
- 2** Select **[Standard mode]/[Quality mode]** **[OK]**.

Saving Service Clients <Notification Clients>

Save up to five service clients to notify the present location.

- 1** In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[GPS menu]** **[Loc.notification/set]** **[Notification clients]**.

- To check the saved contents of the service client, select a client.



Notification clients list

- 2** Press **[Save new]**.

- Alternatively, press **[New]**.

- 3** Select **[Name]** enter a service client name and press **[OK]**.

- Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters.

- 4** Select **[ID]** enter a service client ID and press **[OK]**.

- Enter ID specified by a GPS service provider.
- Enter up to 12 single-byte numeric characters. **[*]** and **[#]** are also available to enter.

- 5** Select **[Phone number]** enter a phone number.

To select from phonebook	[Search phonebook] → select phone number
To directly enter	[Direct input] → enter phone number and press [OK]

- The phone number already saved as Location service client cannot be added.

- 6** Select **[Auto]** select whether to automatically notify location information.

To automatically notify	Automatically notifies the present location to the recipient when a voice call is made to a saved phone number.
To not automatically notify	Does not automatically notify the present location.
To confirm when calling	Selects whether to notify the present location when a voice call is made to a saved phone number.

- 7** Press **[Complete]**.

- The service client is saved.

Note

- Notification clients are not be saved/edited while Keypad dial lock is set.
- Copy notification clients to a microSD Memory Card (**[P. 340]**) or notification clients saved on a microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset (**[P. 342]**).
- Send and receive service clients saved on the FOMA terminal handset using **Ir exchange** or **iC transmission**.

Related Operations

Edit the saved contents of notification clients

In the notification client list, select a location service client **[select item]** **[edit and press [OK]]**.

Save notification clients to phonebook

<Add to phonebook>

- 1** In the notification client list, select a notification client and press **[Add]** **[Add to phonebook]**.
- 2** To save new to phonebook, select **[Phone]/[UIM]**.
 - To add/overwrite phonebook: Select **[Add/overwrite]** **[select name]**.
- 3** Add to phonebook (**[P. 102, P. 107]**).

Delete notification clients <Delete>

- 1** In the notification client list, select a notification client and press **[Delete]** **[Delete]**.
- 2** To delete one notification client, select **[Delete one]**.
 - To delete notification clients collectively: Select **[Delete selected]** **[select a service client (repeatable)]** **[OK]**.
 - To delete all notification clients: Select **[Delete all]** **[enter terminal security code and press [OK]]**.
- 3** Select **[Yes]**.

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

Editing notification clients

- Edit using same steps as when saving new notification clients. Refer to steps 3 to 6 of "Saving Service Clients" on P. 282.

Location History

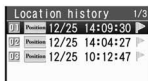
Displaying the History of Confirmed Location Information

Up to 50 entries of location information positioned by GPS function are saved in Location history. Use location information on the history to display a map or for other operations.

- When 50 entries are exceeded, entries are overwritten starting with the oldest.
- Even if latitude and longitude are indicated on the Location history screen, sent location information may not reach the service clients or provider.

1 In stand-by, press [LifeKit] ► [GPS menu] ► [Location history].

- Location history types and dates are listed starting with the most recent.



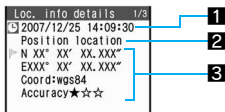
Location history list

Location history type

	Position location
	Location notification
	Location provision

- appears when the location history contains location information.
- Select a location history and press (Map) to show a map.

2 Select the location history.



Location history detail screen

1 Positioning date

2 History type

[Position location]/[Location notification]/[Location provision] appears. For [Location notification]/[Location provision], the icon and the information of the service client or service client for provision appear.

For Location notification

	Service client name
	Service client ID

For Location provision

	Service client name for Location provision
	Service client ID for Location provision
	Requestor name for Location provision
	Requestor ID for Location provision

※ When the requestor ID for Location provision is a phone number or mail address, Phone To (AV Phone To) (P. 195) and Mail To (P. 195) can be used.

3 Location information

Latitude : Degrees, Minutes, Seconds
 Longitude : Degrees, Minutes, Seconds
 Datum : wgs84 (World Datum), tokyo (Tokyo Datum)

Accuracy : Error range of accuracy (P. 274)

Note

- Accuracy is a rough indication. It may differ depending on the radio wave condition of the surroundings.
- The entry that has failed or interrupted to position for **Position location** is not saved as **Location history**.
- For Location notification and Location provision, the entry that has failed or interrupted to position is saved as Location history. However, location information does not appear.
- If the location information is provided when the **2in1** service is used, the requestor name for Location provision appears in each mode of 2in1 according to the **Phonebook 2in1 setting**.
- The location information and accuracy recorded in Location history may differ from those sent to a location provider and a location service client due to the signal strength, etc.

Using Location History

1 Select the location history on the Location history list and press ► select a usage.



To display a map based on location information	[Read a Map] → [OK]
To use GPS compatible i-αppli	[Run i-αppli] → select i-αppli
To attach location URL to i-mode mail	[Paste to mail] → [OK] → compose/send i-mode mail (P. 209)
To save location information to phonebook	[Add to phonebook] → [New to phonebook]/[Add to phonebook] → save to phonebook (P. 104)
To add location information to image	[Attach to image] → select folder → select image (repeatable) → → [Save new]/[Overwrite]

Continued on next page ►►

To delete location history	Delete one	[Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]
	Delete selected	[Delete] → [Delete selected] → select location history (repeatable) → [OK] → [Yes] ● Press [SelAll]/[ClrAll] to select/clear all location history.
	Delete all	[Delete] → [Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press [Yes]

Using Location Information from Each Function

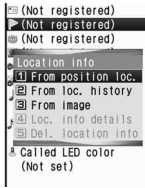
Use location information with each function by adding location information to data such as phonebook and still pictures or displaying a map based on the added location information.

Adding Location Information

Add location information to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, still pictures after shooting or images saved in My picture of Data box, or paste location URL to i-mode mail text.

Example: For phonebook

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞ P. 101), select



2 Select location information to add.

To position present location and add	[From position loc.] → [Yes] ● The present location is positioned by GPS function.
To select location information from Location history	[From loc. history] → select location history and press [Yes]
To select location information added to image	[From image] → select folder → select image and press [Yes]
To check added location information	[Loc. info details] ● Press [Yes] and the previous screen reappears.
To delete added location information	[Del. location info]

- For pictures saved in My picture of Data box or i-mode mail, location information added to the phonebook can be selected. The location information added to an image cannot be selected.

- For My picture of Data box, when the operation is made from the image list, multiple images to which location information is added can be selected.

Using Added Location Information

Using location information in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook or in the images saved in My picture of Data box

Example: For phonebook

1 In the phonebook entry details screen, select

2 Select a usage.

To display a map based on location information	[Read a Map] → [OK]
To use GPS compatible i-appli	[Run i-appli] → select i-appli
To paste location URL to i-mode mail	[Paste to mail] → [OK] → compose/send i-mode mail (☞ P. 209)
To add location information to image	[Attach to image] → select folder → select image (repeatable) → [OK] → [Save new]/[Overwrite]
To check location information	[Loc. info details] ● Press [Yes] and the previous screen reappears.

- For My picture of Data box, select [Location info] from the Submenu of an image list or image display screen and select a usage. Also, save location information to the phonebook.

Using location information of sites, data broadcasting, ToruCa or Message R/F

Use location information of sites, data broadcasting, ToruCa or Message R/F to position the location on a map, use GPS compatible i-appli, or attach to mail to send.

Example: For sites

1 While viewing a site (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 180), select location information.

2 Select a usage.

To use GPS compatible i-appli	[Run i appli] → [OK] → select i-appli
To display a map based on location information	[Read a map] → [OK]
To paste location URL to i-mode mail	[Paste to mail] → [OK] → compose/send i-mode mail (☞ P. 209)
To check location information	[Run i appli]/[Read a map]/[Paste to mail] → [OK] ● Press [Yes] and the previous screen reappears.

1Seg

● 1Seg	286
● Before Using 1Seg	287
● Setting Channels	<Channel Setting>287
● Watching 1Seg	<Activate 1Seg>289
● Using the Program Guide i-appli	<Program Guide>293
● Recording 1Seg	293
● Setting Timer for Starting or Recording 1Seg Programs	<Booking List>294
● Using Data Broadcasting	298
● Using TVlink	<TVlink>299
● Setting 1Seg	<1Seg Settings>299

1Seg

1Seg

1Seg is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices and can receive data broadcasting with image and voice. Moreover, use i-mode to freely enjoy acquiring more detailed program information, participating in a quiz program, teleshopping, etc. For details on the "1Seg" service, see the website below. The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting PC: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>
i-mode: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>

Using 1Seg

1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations).

In 1Seg, a mobile phone can receive video, voice and sound, and other information of data broadcasting. Reception of them is free of charge and does not require any subscription.

Information available in the area of the data broadcasting is "data broadcasting" information and "data broadcasting site" information.

Information of "data broadcasting" is carried in a broadcast wave, together with video, voice and sound. "Data broadcasting site" information is used to access sites provided by the TV broadcaster (broadcast station). The "i-mode site" can also be accessed with this service. To access sites, subscription of the i-mode service, etc. is required. Packet transmission charges apply when accessing a site such as a "data broadcasting site", "i-mode site" or others.

Also, paid sites (i-mode paid sites) require another cost for some sites.


About Signal

1Seg is one of the broadcasting services, and the signal (broadcast wave) different from that of FOMA service is received. Therefore, it cannot be received at the place where the broadcast wave does not reach or during the hours when the broadcasting is out of service, regardless of whether the FOMA terminal is outside or inside the FOMA service area. Also, in the following places, the signal status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the FOMA terminal is inside the area of a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service.

- Place that is far from the tower which sends the broadcasting wave
- Place where the signal is interrupted due to the landscape or buildings such as mountain areas or behind a building
- Place where the signal is weak or does not reach to, such as a tunnel, basement or a place in the rear of a building

To improve the reception status, fully pull out the 1Seg antenna. In addition, change the direction of antenna, hold the FOMA terminal apart from or close to the body or move to another place, so that the reception status may become better. When watching 1Seg in the viewer position, keep the 1Seg antenna pulled out straight to receive the images in the best condition.

Screen Display for When 1Seg Is Used for the First Time

A confirmation screen for using the service appears when 1Seg is activated for the first time after purchase. Check the contents and press  (Agree) twice. The same confirmation screen does not appear after that.

- In the following cases, a confirmation screen for using the service appears again.
 - When Reset settings is made
 - When Delete user data is performed
 - When another FOMA card is inserted
 - Reset 1Seg

Broadcast Storage Area

A mobile phone has a storage area that is used exclusively for 1Seg information. This area is called broadcast storage area. When watching a program, the user may enter some information, following instructions provided in the data broadcasting area. The broadcast storage area stores this entered information, based on the setting made by the TV broadcaster (broadcast station). The stored information may be results of panel shows, member's number, sex, age, occupation or others. These stored items may be displayed even if not re-entered when the data broadcasting site is accessed. They may also be transmitted to the TV broadcaster (broadcast station). Refer to P. 300 for details on deleting the broadcasting storage area. A confirmation screen appears asking whether to format the broadcasting storage area when a different FOMA card is inserted. Select [Yes] to format. Select [No] to not format. In this case, the services of the broadcasting storage area become unavailable.

Using information in the broadcasting storage area

When using information in the broadcasting storage area while watching a TV program, [Use saved information? It may include info used by the same broadcasting group] appears. Select [Yes] to not display the message again while watching the same program. Select [Yes(Always)] to not display the message for all the TV programs.

Other Features

- Using the viewer position and Multi Window
- Selecting a station with remote control No.
- Switching between main and sub languages
- Using timer for starting or recording a program
- Recording movies and still pictures of a program

- Using the Program guide i-appli
- Displaying and using data broadcasting information
- Using TVlink

Before Using 1Seg

- If 1Seg is used for a long time while charging, the service life of the battery pack may become shorter than estimated.
- Watching 1Seg, Reservation recording history, TVlink, Channel setting, and 1Seg settings are not available while Function lock is applied to Multimedia.

Procedures for Watching 1Seg

Example: When watching 1Seg for the first time

Setting Channels P. 287

Save channel lists corresponding to your area.

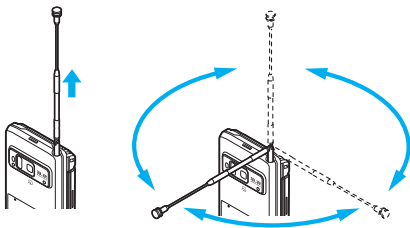


Watching 1Seg P. 289

Pull out the 1Seg antenna to activate 1Seg.

Cautions When Using the 1Seg Antenna

- Do not force to change the direction of the 1Seg antenna.
- When putting the 1Seg antenna back into the FOMA terminal, do not force to do so holding its top part. May result in damage. Hold the antenna's lower half and pull it down straight until its top part is fully put back into the FOMA terminal.



Receiving a Call or Message While Watching 1Seg

When one of the followings is received while watching 1Seg, the FOMA terminal suspends or stops playing the video, voice and sound. Then the terminal reacts to the reception.

- 1Seg is suspended and restarted afterwards if the reception is:
 - Incoming voice call
 - Receiving PushTalk transmission
 - Notice of Alarm, Schedule, and starting/recording a 1Seg program
- 1Seg is stopped and not restarted afterwards if answering:
 - Incoming Videophone call

Note

- When talking in the viewer position, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).
- After a call is ended, 1Seg may start automatically. At this time, the voice and sound are played in the volume for 1Seg. Stay the FOMA terminal away from your ear in that case.
- The video appears on the right side of the screen without a suspend or stop in the viewer position.
- Even if Chaku-uta full® or i-motion is set as the ring tone, the preset ring tone sounds when a call is received while running 1Seg. In addition, the preset tone also sounds for PushTalk ring tone, Alarm, Schedule, and notice of starting/recording a 1Seg program.

Other notes for 1Seg

- When 1Seg is activated for the first time, it cannot be activated in the condition that communication is disabled.
- 1Seg is not available when the FOMA card is not inserted, subscription with DoCoMo is canceled, or the FOMA service is disabled.
- When 1Seg is repeatedly played in the condition that communication is disabled (for example, the FOMA terminal is in Self mode or outside the FOMA service area), 1Seg may not be activated even if the inserted FOMA card is subscribed to DoCoMo. In such cases, move into the FOMA service area and reactivate 1Seg in there.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of stored content. Before changing the model or asking for repair of your FOMA terminal, it is recommended to make a copy of the stored contents (still pictures taken from 1Seg, TVlink, data in the broadcasting storage area, etc.) by preparing a memo or other means. The stored information cannot be transferred to another FOMA terminal.
- 1Seg cannot be used overseas since the broadcasting format and the broadcasting frequency are different (1Seg programs video-recorded on the FOMA terminal can be watched).

Channel Setting

Setting Channels

To watch 1Seg, select the channel list in the Channel setting.

- Up to 62 stations can be saved into one channel list. In addition, up to nine channel lists can be saved according to your area. Select one channel list to be used first.
- Save the channel list in the normal position.

Saving a Broadcast Station into the Channel List <Auto Channel Set>

A broadcast station is automatically searched and saved into the channel list when a prefecture/district is selected.

- Perform inside the area of a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service.

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ [1Seg].



1Seg menu screen

2 Select [Channel setting].



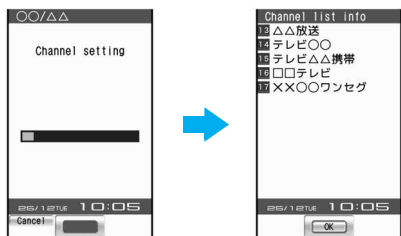
Channel list

3 Select the destination No. and press **⊗** ▶ [Auto channel set] ▶ [Yes].

- Alternatively, select the destination No. and press **⊗** (Auto).

4 Select a region ▶ select a prefecture/district.

- Searching broadcast stations starts. It takes approximately 40 seconds to end the search. The channel list detailed screen appears when the search ends.



5 Press **⊙** ▶ [Yes].

- The broadcast station is saved into the channel list. To use the saved channel list, refer to "Selecting a Channel List to Be Used" on P. 288.

Saving Preset Channel List <Preset CH Setting>

The broadcast information for each region is preset in the FOMA terminal. Save broadcast stations in a prefecture/district selected from the information into the channel list.

1 In the channel list screen, select the destination No. and press **⊗** ▶ [Preset CH setting].

- Alternatively, select the destination No. in the channel list screen and press **⊗** (Preset).

2 Select a region ▶ select a prefecture/district.

3 Press **⊙** ▶ [Yes].

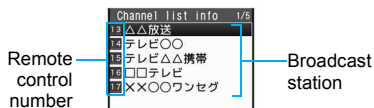
- The broadcast station is saved into the channel list. To use the saved channel list, refer to "Selecting a Channel List to Be Used" on P. 288.

Note

- The preset channels cannot be set depending on a selected prefecture/district. Make the automatic channel setting if not set.

Selecting a Channel List to Be Used

1 In the channel list screen, select a channel list and press **⊗** (Details).



Channel list detailed screen

- Channels are allocated to the remote control numbers 1 to 12. Easily select a channel by one-touch operation (☞ P. 289). The remote control number can be changed.
- To view the next page of the channel list, press **⊙**. To view the previous page, press **⊙**.

2 Press **⊙** (Set).

- ✓ appears in the selected list.
- Alternatively, select a channel list in the channel list screen.

Related Operations

Edit a title of channel list <Edit title>

In the channel list screen, select a channel list and press **⊗** ▶ [Edit title] ▶ edit the title and press **⊙**.

Delete a channel list <Delete>

1 In the channel list screen, select a channel list and press **⊗** ▶ [Delete].

2 Select [Delete one].

- To delete selected channel lists collectively: Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a channel list (repeatable) ▶ **⊗**.
- To delete all channel lists: Select [Delete all] ▶ enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

3 Select [Yes].

Related Operations

Delete a broadcast station in the channel list

<Delete>

- 1 In the channel list screen, select a channel list and press select a broadcast station and press [Delete].
- 2 Select [Yes].

Change the remote control number

<Change remote no.>

- 1 In the channel list screen, select a channel list and press [Change remote no.].
- 2 Select a broadcast station to be changed select a new remote control number.

Note (Related operations)

Editing titles

- Enter up to 40 single/double-byte characters for the title.

Deleting

- The channel list being used cannot be deleted.
- When Delete all is performed, all the channel lists other than the one being used are deleted.

Deleting broadcast stations

- When only one station is saved, it cannot be deleted.

Activate 1Seg

Watching 1Seg

Watch 1Seg. Set to the viewer position to watch 1Seg in the horizontal screen. In addition, use another function while watching 1Seg on Multi Window.

- Activate 1Seg from the Program guide i-appli or the timer function for starting/recording a 1Seg program. Also activate from program information on sites, Internet web pages, mail, or i-Channel (P. 197).

- 1 In stand-by, press [1Seg] [Activate 1Seg].

- Alternatively, press (TV) in stand-by.
- The last channel is set.
- When another FOMA card is inserted, [Invalid UIM. Initialize storage area?] appears. Check them and press .



Screen for watching 1Seg

- 2 Select a channel with .

- Channels appear in the order of remote control numbers 1 to 62.

Note

- When 1Seg is activated in Manner mode, [In Manner mode. play sound?] appears. Select [Yes] to sound.

Note

- If the broadcasting area is changed due to the transfer while 1Seg is viewed when Switch auto area of 1Seg settings is set to [ON], a confirmation screen asking whether to change to a channel list that can be viewed. Select [Yes] to automatically search and set the channel list.
- When watching 1Seg, the color such as a color theme may be appear differently.

Key operations while watching 1Seg Video mode

	Normal position	Viewer position (Full-screen)
To select a station with UP/DOWN*1	/	/ (Eco)
To select a station with one-touch operation*2	to , , ,	—
To select a station by searching a frequency*3	Press for 1+ seconds/Press for 1+ seconds	Press for 1+ seconds/Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds
To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10)	/ or / (Eco) ● Keep pressed to adjust volume continuously.	/
To mute/disable		—
To turn Subtitles ON/OFF	Press for 1+ seconds	—
To activate the Program guide i-appli		—
To record a movie of 1Seg programs	Press for 1+ seconds ● To stop, press .	Press (TV) for 1+ seconds ● To stop, press (TV).
To record 1Seg programs as a still picture		(TV)
To display Submenu		—
To switch between video mode and data broadcasting mode		—
To switch between 1Seg and functions being activated*4	(TV)	Press for 1+ seconds → select a function and press (TV)
To end 1Seg	, or → [Yes]	(P) → [Yes] → (TV)









*1 Select a station in order/reverse order of the remote control numbers 1 to 62.

*2 to , , , and correspond to remote control numbers, 1 to 9, 10, 11, and 12 respectively.

*3 Stations are searched and switched in order of received frequencies.

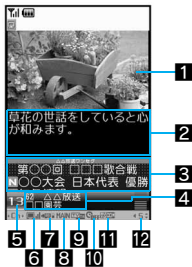
*4 Switching may not be available depending on the status of the functions being activated.

Data broadcasting mode

	Normal position
To select the highlight in data broadcasting items	 
To access a selected site	
To move to the previous/next page	 
To record a movie of 1Seg program	Press  for 1+ seconds ● To stop, press  .
To record 1Seg programs as a still picture	
To operate data broadcasting	CLR, (1) to (9), (0), (X), (H) ● Operations differ according to the data broadcasting.

Screen for Watching 1Seg

Normal position



Viewer position



1 Video

2 Subtitles

- Appears when Subtitles is set to [ON].

3 Data broadcasting

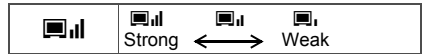
- Appears in the location of **2** when Display mode (W) is set to [Video+data] in the viewer position. It is prioritized than Subtitles.


4 Name of broadcast station and 1Seg program

- Appears in the location of **2** when Subtitles is set to [OFF] in the viewer position (However, it does not appear when Display mode (W) is set to [Video+data]).

5 Channel number

6 Icon indicating reception of broadcast waves



- When  appears, the handset is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received.



7 Icon indicating the recording status

	Video recording destination: phone
	Video recording destination: microSD
	Video recording destination: Auto (handset first)
	Video recording destination: Auto (microSD first)
	Recording is being prepared
	Recording is in progress: phone
	Recording is in progress: microSD Memory Card


8 Icon indicating the settings of Main/Sub language

MAIN	Main language	MAIN SUB	Main + Sub language
SUB	Sub language		










9 Icon indicating operation mode

	Video mode (normal position, viewer position)
	Data broadcasting mode (normal position)





10 Icon indicating the settings of the Off timer

	Off timer is being set
---	------------------------

11 Icon indicating the settings of Dolby sound

	Link genres		Variety
	Normal		Music
	News		Movie
	Sports		Original
	Drama		

12 Icon indicating volume

	 (Volume 0) to  (Volume 10) ●  appears in the Silent status.
---	---

Note

- **Multi Window** does not show the items displayed in the screen for watching 1Seg, such as the icons and the names of the broadcast station/program.

Related Operations

Set channels <Channel setting>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Channel list] ▶ [Channel setting].
- 2 Refer to “Setting Channels” on P. 287 for the settings.

Save the broadcast station of a 1Seg program being watched into the channel list <Add channel>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Channel list] ▶ [Add channel].

Search a service station to be used on the channel <Service station>

- 1 In the 1Seg watching screen, press ▶ [Channel list] ▶ [Service station].
- 2 Select a service to be used.

Switch the display size of video in the viewer position <Display mode (W)>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Display mode (W)].
- 2 Select [Video+data]/[Video (default)]/[Vid (full-screen)].

Set whether to display the icon when video is enlarged in the viewer position <Mark display (W)>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Mark display (W)].
- 2 Select [Temporary display]/[Full-time display].

Set whether to display the name of broadcast station and 1Seg program in the normal position <App area (L)>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [App area (L)].
- 2 Select [Temporary display]/[Full-time display].

Set to display subtitles while watching 1Seg <Subtitles>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Subtitles].
- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF].

Set to Subtitles when activating 1Seg

<Startup settings>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Subtitles] ▶ [Startup settings].
- 2 Select [ON]/[Linked manner]/[OFF].

Set the Dolby sound <Dolby Sound Set.>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Dolby Sound Set.].
- 2 Select [Link genres]/[Normal]/[News]/[Sports]/[Drama]/[Variety]/[Music]/[Movie]/[Original].
 - When [Original] is selected: Select [Sound Space]/[Natural Bass]/[Sound Level Cnt]/[Mono-to-Stereo] ▶ [ON]/[OFF] ▶

Set the duration to automatically stop 1Seg

<Off timer>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Off timer].
- 2 Select [After 30 min]/[After 60 min]/[After 90 min]/[After 120 min]/[OFF].

Related Operations

View key list <Key list>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Key list].

Compose a message including program information <Comp intro message>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Comp intro message] ▶ compose/send i-mode mail.

Check available broadcast stations <Channel info>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Channel info].
 - To end checking: Press or .

View program information <Program info>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Program info].
 - To end checking: Press or .

Note (Related operations)

Add channel

- When a 1Seg program in the different area from the one set to the channel list is being watched, the broadcast station of the program may not be added to the channel list.

Mark display (W)

- Set whether to show icons (indicating Clock, Signal status, etc.) that appear on the upper side of the screen. If [Temporary display] is set, the icons appear for approximately 2 seconds when the channel and volume are changed.

Application area (L)

- Set whether to display the name of broadcast station, 1Seg program, and channel number. If [Temporary display] is set, names or numbers appear for approximately 2 seconds when the channel is changed.

Subtitles

- Whether to show subtitles when activating 1Seg follows the setting for activating 1Seg.
- Subtitles are not available for some programs. For the setting with subtitles shown, the subtitle area appears even if a program does not have subtitles.

Startup settings

- If [Linked manner] is set, subtitles appear when 1Seg is activated in Manner mode.

Off timer

- Even after setting Off timer, it returns to [OFF] when 1Seg is ended.

Compose introduction message

- Send to the FOMA terminal supporting **Media To function** so that the recipient can select the information and activate 1Seg.
- i-mode mail cannot be composed or sent when **2in1** mode is set to [B mode] (P. 208).

Setting Video, Voice and Sound of 1Seg <1Seg Settings>

1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press **[M]** ▶ **[1Seg settings]** ▶ select a setting item.

To set Vibrant image mode	[Vibrant image mode] → [Normal]/[Dynamic]/[Movie]
To adjust the display brightness	[Brightness] → [Manual] → → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To automatically adjust the brightness according to the surrounding light: [Brightness] → [Automatic].
To switch between Main and Sub languages	[Main/Sub language] → [Main]/[Sub]/[Main + Sub] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After ending 1Seg, the setting returns to [Main].
To switch between Main language and Sub language	[Change language] → [Main language]/[Sub language] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After ending 1Seg, the setting returns to [Main language].
To set the operation of the FOMA terminal closed*1	[Set when folded] → [Continue]/[Silent]/[End] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The FOMA terminal is muted while recording even if set to [End]. Recording continues.
To set the recording destination of movies	[Video recding dest] → [phone]/[microSD]/[Auto(hndset first)]/[Auto(microSD first)]
To automatically change the channel list when the broadcasting area is changed	[Switch auto area] → [ON]/[OFF] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When Auto area switch is set to [ON], the save destination number [9] may be overwritten.
To check the setting*2	[Status request] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To end checking: or [CLR].

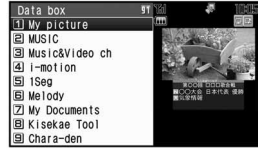
*1 When 1Seg is activated if the close operation is set to [Continue] or [Silent], the information of data broadcasting or data broadcasting site may be automatically updated since 1Seg is kept activated even with the FOMA terminal closed. In such cases, packet transmission charges may apply.

*2 Display the details of the 1Seg settings, the Dolby sound settings (☞ P. 291), the image display settings (☞ P. 300) and the Sound FX settings (☞ P. 300).

Using Another Function While Watching 1Seg

Use another function while watching 1Seg on Multi Window (W) in the viewer position.

- Use mail function such as composing mail while watching 1Seg even in the normal position.



Multi Window (W)



Multi Window (L)

- Refer to “Key operations in the viewer position” on P. 27 for key operations in Multi Window.
- Refer to “Watching 1Seg in Multi Window” on P. 479 for functions which can be activated simultaneously.
- When 1Seg is ended in the viewer position, a substitute image appears on 1Seg display position of Multi Window (W).

1 Press **[M]** for 1+ seconds while watching 1Seg in the viewer position.

- In the normal position, press **[M]** for 1+ seconds while watching 1Seg. The mail menu appears in Multiple Window (L).

2 Select the icon for a function to use and press **[TV]**.

- The selected function appears in Multi Window (W).
- Even if the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position when other functions are activated with Multi Assistant while 1Seg being activated in the normal position, Multi Window (W) appears.

■ When a call is received while watching 1Seg

1Seg is interrupted, and the receive display appears.

- The call can be answered in the normal position. For voice call, 1Seg resumes after the call is finished. For Videophone call, 1Seg ends when the call is answered.
- When the viewer position is set, switch to the normal position before answering a call.

Note

- Even if Chaku-uta full® or i-motion is set as the ring tone or the receive display, the default ring tone or the receive display is activated when a call is received while running 1Seg.

■ When mail is received while watching 1Seg

When mail is received while watching 1Seg or displaying data broadcasting, Mail ticker appears on the screen. The mail ring tone, the receive display and the mail received screen are not activated. In the normal position, press **[M]** for 1+ seconds to view received messages list screen. In the viewer position, press **[P]** for 1+ seconds to view received messages list screen.

- Press **⏏** (P) to hide Mail ticker when Mail ticker is being displayed. Also, set the handset to display the sender and the subject in the Mail ticker or to not display the Mail ticker (☞ P. 219).
- View a received message while watching 1Seg in Multi Window.

Note

- In the following cases, the mail ring tone, the receive display and the mail received screen are activated. If Chaku-uta full® or i-motion is set as the mail ring tone or the mail received screen, the default settings are activated.
 - When another function activated with **Multi Assistant** is displayed while 1Seg is running in the normal position
 - When 1Seg is played using Multi Window

Program Guide

Using the Program Guide i-αppli

Use the Program guide i-αppli to start the 1Seg program from the TV program guide. Also, set timer for starting or recording a program.

- Program Guide i-αppli can be changed (☞ P. 252).
- When Channel setting (☞ P. 287) is not made, Channel setting is activated if 1Seg is activated from the Program guide i-αppli.

1 In stand-by, press **⏏** [1Seg] [Program guide].

- Alternatively, press **⏏** (EPG) or press **⏏** in the screen for watching 1Seg and select [Disp program guide].
- In the Program guide i-αppli screen, press **⏏** (TV起動) to watch the selected program.



Note

- Preset Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) uses mail function and therefore cannot be used when 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].

Recording 1Seg

Record movies of a program being displayed or a scene as a still picture.

- The copy control signals (indicating that “the program cannot be recorded (Copy Never)”, “the program can be recorded only once (Copy Once)” and “the program can be recorded without restrictions (Copy Free)”) are used in 1Seg. They are set by each broadcast station.

- With the copy control signals indicating that “the program can be recorded only once (Copy Once)” and “the program can be recorded without restrictions (Copy Free)”, programs can be recorded.
- When the copy control signal changes to “the program cannot be recorded (Copy Never)” while recording a program, recording stops. Video data recorded up to that point is saved.
- When an incoming Videophone call is answered, 1Seg ends. Also, recording of the movie ends, and the video data recorded up to that point is saved.
- When space in memory is insufficient, recording stops automatically. In addition, data recorded up to that point is saved.
- While recording movies, changing channels, setting channels, recording video destination and recording pictures are not available. The Program guide i-αppli and TVlink cannot be used either.
- Recording continues even if the FOMA terminal gets in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received. However, 1Seg cannot be received while in the place.
- Called LED flashes red while recording movies.
- Recording continues even if the FOMA terminal is closed.
- The videos recorded to the microSD Memory Card are automatically named as [PRGxxx] (“xxx” is a single-byte number). In the video file list screen (☞ P. 327), video files are shown with program names.
- The videos/still pictures recorded to the FOMA terminal handset are named according to the date and time of recording.
Example: December 25, 2007 at 1:05 PM → [200712251305xxx] (“xxx” is a single-byte number)
- The recorded video data is saved into [1Seg] folder in Data box on the FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (☞ P. 335).
- The saving destination of recorded videos can be set with Video recding dest of the 1Seg settings.
- When the data from other functions cannot be saved to Data box while 1Seg is recorded to the FOMA terminal handset, the data may be able to saved by deleting the data in Data box and increasing the free space in the memory.




Estimated number of saved entries and recording time

- Record up to 99 entries for up to approximately 30 minutes when saving the recorded video data to FOMA terminal handset.
- Record up to 99 entries for up to approximately 1,280 minutes when saving the recorded video data to 4 GB microSD Memory Card. However, each continuous recording time is up to approximately 640 minutes (up to 2 GB).
- Actual number varies depending on the recording time.


- Refer to “Playing Back Videos” on P. 327 for details on playing back a recorded program.
- When images of 1Seg programs are recorded as a still picture, they are saved into the [TV image] folder in My picture of Data box on the FOMA terminal handset. Save up to 1,000 entries.
- Refer to “Displaying Saved Images” on P. 312 for displaying images recorded as a still picture.

Recording Movies of 1Seg Programs While Watching

1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press (TV/Rec) for 1+ seconds.

- When in the viewer position, press  (TV) for 1+ seconds.
-  appears in the screen for watching 1Seg. The indication is changed to  when recording starts. Some recordings may take longer to start.
- When Multi Window is opened or the broadcast wave is out of the service area, during the hours when the broadcasting is out of service, or in the case of Copy controlled, recording cannot be started.

2 To stop recording, press (Stop).

- When in the viewer position, press  (TV).
- Recording ends and is saved automatically.

Note

- When the time set for recording arrives while another movie is being recorded, the recording of the timer-set movie is started. Recording up to that point ends, and the video data is saved.

Setting the End Time of Recording Movies <Recording End Time>

- The recording end time cannot be set during the reservation recording.

1 While recording movies, press [Recording end time] ▶ select the recording end time.

Recording end time	After 15 min	After 90 min
	After 30 min	After 120 min
	After 60 min	Unrestricted*

* Movies are recorded until available space on the FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card becomes insufficient. After recording, continue watching 1Seg.


2 Select whether to end or continue watching 1Seg after recording ends.

Note

- When [Unrestricted] is set while a microSD Memory Card of more than 2 GB is used, recording ends when the available capacity for saving is exceeded (P. 335) even if the available memory space is sufficient.

Recording Images of 1Seg Programs as a Still Picture

1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press (TV/Rec).

- When in the viewer position, press  (TV).

- A 1Seg program is recorded as a still picture and automatically saved. Some programs may take longer to be saved.
- When Multi Window is opened or the broadcast wave is out of the service area, during the hours when the broadcasting is out of service, or in the case of Copy controlled, recording is not available.

Note

- For still pictures, only images are recorded, and the contents of data broadcasting are not recorded.
- Still pictures cannot be recorded when data broadcasting is displayed in full-screen.

Booking List

Setting Timer for Starting or Recording 1Seg Programs

Set timer for starting or recording TV programs. The alarm (start announcement) sounds 1 minute before the start time of a timer-set program. When timer is set for recording a TV program, the recording automatically starts. For starting TV programs, 1Seg is automatically activated in the alarm screen if Linked startup setting is set to [ON (Do not notify)].


- Set the correct date and time in advance (P. 47).
- Timers for starting and recording cannot be set when channels are not set.
- In the condition that a confirmation screen for using the service appears, such as when 1Seg is activated for the first time, recording is not available even if timer is set for recording.
- Save up to 50 timer settings for recording and starting TV programs.
- Set timer for recording or starting a TV program from the program information shown in the Program guide i-appli, sites and mail (P. 197).
- Adjust the direction of the 1Seg antenna, etc. and check whether the images of 1Seg are received clearly.
- Check whether there is enough remaining battery power of the FOMA terminal.
- Refer to "Recording 1Seg" on P. 293 for recording movies of 1Seg programs.

Setting Timer for Starting or Recording 1Seg Programs

Using the Program guide i-appli <EPG>

1 In stand-by, press [1Seg] ▶ [Booking list].

2 Press (New).

- Alternatively, press  and select [New].

3 Select [EPG].

■ Setting date/time and a channel

<Manual input>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [1Seg] ▶ [Booking list].

2 Press (New).

- Alternatively, press and select [New].

3 Select [Manual input] ▶ select a timer setting.



Timer setting screen for starting a program



Timer setting screen for recording a program

To save timer for starting a program	[Reception]
To save timer for recording a program	[Recording] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Read descriptions on the timer setting screen carefully. Select [Yes(Always)] to not show the timer setting screen again.

4 Select [Strt date] and [End date] (only for recording) ▶ enter the start date/time and the end date/time (only for recording), respectively.

- Refer to the step 2 of "Saving Schedules" on P. 404 for details on entering the date and time.
- Use 24-hour format for the time.

5 Select a repeat method.

To save a one-time timer	[Once only]
To set to repeat every day	[Daily XX:XX] → enter number of repeats (00 to 99) and press .
To save a weekly timer	[Weekly XX] → enter number of repeats (00 to 99) and press .

* The saved time/day appears.

- 00 represents unlimited repeats.

6 Select [Channel] ▶ select a channel.

7 Select [Prog name] ▶ enter the program name and press .

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.

8 Set a start announcement.

- Refer to "Setting alarms" on P. 295 for setting of start announcement.
- If set to [OFF], the timer for starting program is not activated.

9 Press (Complete).

■ Setting alarms

Set the alarm tone and volume for the start announcement.

- Timer for recording programs cannot be set to [OFF].
- Ring duration of an alarm is 15 seconds. Ring duration cannot be changed.
- Refer to P. 401 for the priority of alarm functions.

1 In the timer setting screen for starting or recording programs, select [Start ann].

- When setting timer for recording programs, proceed to step 3.

2 Select [ON].

- If set to [OFF], the timer for starting program is not activated.

3 Select [Alarm tone] ▶ select an alarm tone.

Alarm tone	Melody	i-motion
	MUSIC	Not set

4 Refer to step 2 on P. 120 and select an alarm tone.

5 Select [Alarm volume] ▶ or to adjust the volume and press .

- When setting timer for recording programs, proceed to step 7.

6 Select [Linked startup setting] ▶ select the operation after the alarm screen appears.

To show a confirmation screen to activate 1Seg	ON (Notify)
To activate 1Seg	ON (Do not notify)
To not activate 1Seg	OFF

- If set to [ON (Do not notify)], the off timer of [After 30 min] is automatically set.

7 Press (Complete).

Note

- When the start date and time of timers for starting and recording a program are set to the same date and time, the timer for recording is prioritized.

Timer for starting programs

- When setting the timer, a confirmation screen appears if the same start date and time are already saved. To set, select [Yes]. For the already saved timer (including a repeat timer), its start announcement is changed to [OFF].

Note

Timer for recording programs

- If the start date and time are the same as the end date and time of an existing timer-set program, a confirmation screen appears. To set, select [Yes]. The first recording ends approximately up to 1 minute earlier.
- Multiple programs cannot be recorded simultaneously. If the recording period is partially same as that of an existing timer-set program, a confirmation screen appears. To set, select [Yes]. The already saved timer (including a repeat timer) is deleted.

Setting Wakeup TV <Wakeup TV>

Set date/time and a channel and use 1Seg as alarm clock. The confirmation screen asking whether to activate 1Seg does not appear and 1Seg is activated automatically.

1 In stand-by, press [LifeKit] ▶ [Timer/Alarm] ▶ [Wakeup TV].

- Timer setting screen for starting a program with Linked startup set to [ON (Do not notify)] and Alarm tone set to [Silent] in advance appears.
- For Wakeup TV, the off timer of [After 30 min] is automatically set.
- Refer to steps 4 to 9 of "Setting date/time and a channel" on P. 295 for subsequent steps.

Note

- If Linked startup is set to [ON (Do not notify)] or [OFF], 1Seg is not activated automatically.
- If start announcement is set to [OFF], Wakeup TV is not activated.
- Sound is off when the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received.
- To edit or delete Wakeup TV, use **Booking list** in the 1Seg menu in the same way as when setting the timer for starting or recording a program.

When the Start Time Arrives

An alarm sounds in accordance with the settings 1 minute before the start time. After 15 seconds, the alarm stops. Refer to "Key operations when alarm sounds" on P. 402 to stop the alarm or adjust the volume.

- When an alarm notifying start of a program stops, if Linked startup setting is set to [ON (Notify)], a confirmation screen appears asking whether to activate 1Seg. Select [Yes] to activate 1Seg. If Linked startup is set to [ON (Do not notify)], 1Seg is activated when the alarm stops. The confirmation screen does not appear when an alarm sounds while 1Seg is activated. When a channel different from that of timer setting is being selected, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to change the channel. Then, select [Yes] to switch to the timer-set channel.
- For timer for recording, 1Seg starts in the Silent status when an alarm stops. In such cases, appears in the screen for watching 1Seg. When the set start time arrives, recording starts. The indication is switched to . When an alarm sounds while 1Seg is activated, a message appears and recording starts when the alarm stops.



Timer-set alarm screen for starting



Timer-set alarm screen for recording

Note

- Alarm tone does not sound when in Normal or Silent manner mode. For Original manner mode, set the alarm tone [ON] or [OFF].
- If the start time set for timer arrives while in **Public mode (Drive mode)**, alarm tone does not sound. Called LED and vibrator are not activated.
- In the following cases, timer-set alarms for starting or recording programs are activated. However, watching or recording does not start.
 - When a function that cannot be activated simultaneously with 1Seg is being used with **Multi Assistant**
 - When a FOMA card is removed or a different FOMA card is inserted after setting timer for recording
 - When battery level is insufficient
 - When Video recording destination is set to [microSD] without microSD Memory Card inserted
 - While Function lock is applied to multimedia
- In the following cases, timer-set alarms for starting or recording programs are not activated. In addition, watching or recording does not start.
 - While making, receiving or during a voice/ Videophone call
 - While sending, receiving or during PushTalk
 - During Ir exchange or while sending data using Ir remote control
 - While All lock is set
 - While the power is off, the wakeup screen or end screen at power ON/OFF is displayed, or the Auto power OFF confirmation screen is displayed
 - While the screen indicating the battery empty is displayed
 - During software update
 - While deleting user data collectively
 - During USB transmission
 - During packet transmission

Checking Timer Settings

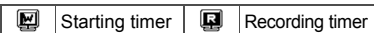
1 In stand-by, press [1Seg] ▶ [Booking list].

- Press (Calendar) to show the calendar screen and check other schedules.



Booking list

1 Timer setting type



2 Alarm

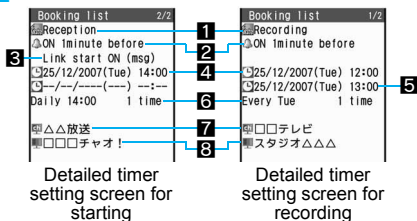
3 Start date and time

4 End date and time

5 Channel name

6 Program name

2 Select a timer setting.



1 Timer setting type

2 Start announcement setting

3 Linked startup setting

4 Start date and time

5 End date and time

6 Set repeat

7 Channel name

8 Program name

Editing Timer Settings <Edit>

1 In the detailed timer setting screen or booking list screen, select the timer setting and press [Edit].

2 Edit the timer settings and press (Complete) select a save method.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving (P. 295).

To add a new entry	[Save new]
To overwrite	[Overwrite] → [Yes]

Managing Timer Settings

Delete or sort the timer setting.

Deleting the timer setting <Delete>

1 In the booking list screen, select the timer setting and press [Delete].

- In the detailed timer setting screen, press and select [Delete one] → [Yes] to delete the timer setting.

2 Select a deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
---------------	----------------------

To delete entries collectively	[Delete selected] → select a timer setting (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select or clear all.
To delete all entries up to the day before specified day	[Delete all past] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete all	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Sorting the timer settings <Sort>

- The setting continues even if the booking list is ended after sorting.

Sort by air date (old → new)	Oldest timer setting date first
Sort by air date (new → old)	Latest timer setting date first
Sort by timer settings for starting a program	Oldest date first (timer for starting) → Oldest date first (timer for recording)
Sort by timer settings for recording a program	Oldest date first (timer for recording) → Oldest date first (timer for starting)

1 In the booking list screen, press [Sort].

2 Select a sorting method.

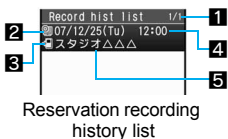
1Seg

Viewing Timer History <Reserve Rec Hist>

Up to 50 timer recordings ended are saved as a timer history. Check the recordings.

1 In stand-by, press [1Seg] [Reserve rec hist].

- Alternatively, press when [1Seg video] appears in stand-by.



1 Number of entries/total entries

2 Icons indicating the recordings



3 Icon for destination of movie to save



4 Recording start date and time

5 Program name

Showing reservation recording history details




The following information is shown.

- Recording results
- Remote control no.
- Destination
- Broadcaster name
- Start time
- Program name
- End time

1 In the reservation recording history list, select reservation recording history.

Related Operations

Delete reservation recording history <Delete>




- 1 In the reservation recording history list/reservation recording history details screens, select a reservation recording history and press .
- 2 Select [Delete one].
 - To delete multiple reservation recording histories collectively in the reservation recording history list: Select [Delete selected] ▶ select reservation recording history (repeatable) ▶ .
 - To delete all reservation recording histories in the reservation recording history list: Select [Delete all] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .
- 3 Select [Yes].

Using Data Broadcasting

Use data broadcasting as well as video, voice and sound for 1Seg. In data broadcasting, use a variety of information including still pictures and movies. For example, connect sites available in programs, submit your opinion, etc. Depending on a program, use Phone To, Mail To and i-appli To functions, add indicated numbers to phonebook and save schedules.

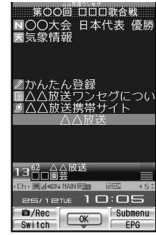
- Voice and sound may be played when data broadcast or a data broadcast site is being displayed.
- The screen is switched to the data broadcasting mode in the viewer position or Multi Window (L) (data broadcasting is not available).

1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press (Switch).

-  appears and the screen is switched to the data broadcasting mode.
- Refer to P. 290 for operation in data broadcasting mode.
- Operation mode is switched between video mode and data broadcasting mode every time  is pressed.
- Alternatively, in the screen for watching 1Seg, press  and select [Switch].



Video+data mode



Data broadcasting mode

2 Select an item.

- If a confirmation screen for connection appears, select [Yes] to connect to i-mode. Select [Yes(Always)] to not show the confirmation screen again and information of data broadcasting or a data broadcasting site may be automatically updated. In such cases, packet transmission charges may apply.
- When an i-mode site is accessed from data broadcasting or a data broadcasting site, the i-mode site appears in full-screen without video of the 1Seg.
- Refer to "Site Layout and Operation" on P. 182 for details on operation for viewing sites.

Note

- To show the confirmation screen for connection again, perform **Reset status display**.
- The following messages may appear while using data broadcasting or a data broadcasting site. Select [Yes] to execute operation.

Message	Reason
[Storage area is full. Delete?]	Appears before a new broadcast station is stored if eight areas for individual broadcast stations in the broadcasting storage area are occupied.
[Use saved information? It may include info used by the same broadcasting group]*	Appears when a channel is changed, a new TV program is displayed or a next TV program starts after the current program ends.
[Send out saved data? Access the site by i-mode]*	Appears when asked for submission by the current program.
[Requesting from program. Connect to Data Broadcasting Site? Access by i-mode]	Appears when a connection is made to i-mode sites by the notification from the program.
[Connect to URL?]*	Appears when accessing to an i-mode site from data broadcasting, a data broadcasting site or TVlink.
[Connect to Data Broadcasting Site? Access the site by i-mode]	Appears when accessing to an i-mode site from data broadcasting or a data broadcasting site.
[Add to phonebook?] [Save schedule?]* [Save TVlink?]*	Appears when information retrieved from data broadcasting is saved.

* Select [Yes(Always)] to not show a confirmation screen again.

Related Operations

Switch the display size of data broadcasting
<Display mode (L)>

- 1 In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Display mode (L)].
- 2 Select [Video+data]/[Data broadcasting].

Reload a data broadcasting site <Reload>

In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Reload].

Show certificate <Show certificate>

In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Show certificate].

Return from a data broadcasting site to data broadcasting <Return to data BC>

In the screen for watching 1Seg, press ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Return to data BC].

Note (Related operations)

Display mode (L)

- When 1Seg is ended, this setting returns to [Video+data] even if it is already changed.

TVlink

Using TVlink

Save memo information and URL in some data broadcasting as TVlink. Use the TVlink list to quickly show memo information and a site saved in there.

- Up to 100 entries can be saved as TVlink.

Saving as TVlink

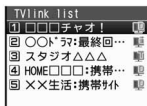
1 Select an item that can be saved as TVlink ▶ [Yes].

- Procedures for saving TVlink differ depending on the program.
- A confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite when a site or memo information is already saved. To save, select [Yes].

Showing a Saved TVlink <TVlink>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [1Seg] ▶ [TVlink].

- Alternatively, in the screen for watching 1Seg, press and select [TVlink].



TVlink list

Meaning of icons

	Memo information		i-mode site
	Data broadcasting site		

2 Select TVlink to show.

To show memo information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To end checking, press or .
To view data broadcasting sites	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → [Yes] ● A data broadcasting site appears in full-screen. When the operation is performed in the screen for watching 1Seg, 1Seg ends.
To view i-mode sites	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → [Yes]

- Expired TVlink cannot be displayed, but can be deleted.

Related Operations

View detailed information <Show details>

In the TVlink list screen, select TVlink and press ▶ [Show details].

- To end checking: Press .

Delete TVlink <Delete>

- 1 In the TVlink list screen, select TVlink and press ▶ [Delete].
- 2 Select [Delete one].
 - To delete multiple TVlinks collectively: Select [Delete selected] ▶ select TVlink (repeatable) ▶ .
 - To delete all TVlinks: Select [Delete all] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .
- 3 Select [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

Delete TVlink

- For deleting selected TVlink, press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select or clear all.

1Seg Settings

Setting 1Seg

Setting the Saving Destination of Video Recording <Video Recding Dest>

Set the saving destination of recorded video.

- Set [Auto(hndset first)] or [Auto(microSD first)] to automatically change the recording destination and start recording in the following cases.
 - When prioritized memory space is insufficient
 - When the save limit is exceeded

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [1Seg] ▶ [1Seg settings] ▶ [Video recding dest].

2 Select a save destination.

Save destination	phone	Auto(hndset first)
	microSD	Auto(microSD first)

Note

- The video recorded to the FOMA terminal handset cannot be copied to microSD Memory Card. Likewise, the video recorded to the microSD Memory Card cannot be moved or copied to the FOMA terminal handset.

Deleting Saved Data of Data Broadcasting <Erase Storage Area>

Delete saved data (in the broadcast storage area).

1 In stand-by, press **[1Seg]** **[1Seg settings]** **[Erase storage area]**.

2 Select an associated broadcast station and press **[]** select a deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one]
To delete all	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press []

- To check broadcasters in a group of associated stations, press **[]** (Details). To end checking, press **[]** or **[CLR]**.
- To delete data of each broadcaster, select an associated broadcast station, select a broadcaster, press **[]** and select a deletion method.

3 Select **[Yes]**

Setting to Not View Images in a Data Broadcasting Site <Set Image Display>

1 In stand-by, press **[1Seg]** **[1Seg settings]** **[Set image display]** **[OFF]**.

- Alternatively, in the screen for watching 1Seg, press **[]** and select **[Data broadcasting]** → **[Set image display]**.

Muting Sound Effects of Data Broadcasting <Sound FX>

1 In stand-by, press **[1Seg]** **[1Seg settings]** **[Sound FX]** **[OFF]**.

- Alternatively, in the screen for watching 1Seg, press **[]** and select **[Data broadcasting]** → **[Sound FX]**.

Checking the 1Seg Settings <1Seg Status>

View the image display settings, Sound FX settings, 1Seg settings in the screen for watching 1Seg (**[]** P. 292) and Dolby sound settings (**[]** P. 291).

1 In stand-by, press **[1Seg]** **[1Seg settings]** **[1Seg status]**.

- To end checking, press **[]** or **[CLR]**.

Re-showing a Confirmation Screen for Data Broadcasting

<Reset Status Disp>

In a confirmation screen for connection of data broadcasting and data broadcasting sites, select **[Yes(Always)]** to not show similar confirmation screens. When the Reset status display settings are made, their confirmation screens reappear.

1 In stand-by, press **[1Seg]** **[1Seg settings]** **[Reset status disp]** **[]** enter terminal security code and press **[]**.

- Alternatively, in the screen for watching 1Seg, press **[]** and select **[Data broadcasting]** → **[Reset status disp]**.

2 Select **[Yes]**.

Resetting 1Seg Settings <Reset 1Seg>

Reset the settings for video, voice and sound of 1Seg to default. The following setting items are reset.

- The broadcast storage area is not deleted.
- When resetting 1Seg settings, the Reset status display settings are made at the same time. A confirmation screen for using the service or the timer setting screen appears again.

Setting item	
1Seg settings in the screen for watching 1Seg ([] P. 292)	Vibrant image mode
	Brightness
	Main/Sub language
	Change language
	Set when folded
	Video recding dest
1Seg settings in the 1Seg menu	Switch auto area
	Set image display
	Sound FX
Dolby Sound Set.	

1 In stand-by, press **[1Seg]** **[1Seg settings]** **[Reset 1Seg]** **[]** enter terminal security code and press **[]**.

2 Select **[Yes]**.

Full Browser/PC Movie

● Viewing Web Pages Designed for PC	302
● Setting Full Browser	306
● Internet Movie Player	308
● Playing PC Movie	<Internet Movie Player>308

Viewing Web Pages Designed for PC


View Internet web pages that are not supported by i-mode as they appear on PCs with the FOMA terminal using the Full Browser.

- Some Internet web pages with large amounts of information do not appear properly.
- Transmitting large amounts of data such as viewing a home page with many images and downloading data will lead to higher transmission charges. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on the packet transmission charges.
- Screen memos cannot be saved.
- Ring tone, i-appli, ToruCa, i-motion and Flash movie playback, downloading and saving are also not available.

1 In stand-by, press  **[Full Browser]**.



2 Specify the Internet web page to view.













To view a saved web page (portal site)	[Home]
To view from bookmarks	[Bookmark] → select folder → select bookmark
To enter URL and view	[Go to location] → [Input URL] → enter URL and press  ● Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including http://).

- It may take time to view some pages.

Confirmation screen for the use of Full Browser



- If Full Browser Access Setting is set to [OFF] when Full Browser is started, the Access Setting screen appears to confirm the use of Full Browser. When [Yes] is selected, Access Setting is changed to [ON] and Internet web page is shown with Full Browser. This setting remains enabled after Full Browser is closed.


Key operation during Full Browser

Key operation	Action
	Window list appears. Switch windows
	Move to top of the screen
	Open link in new window
	Go back to previous page
	Open saved web page in new window
	Go to next page
	Search the web with a registered search engine
	Search text on the page
	Use bookmarks
	Paste login information
	Show the history list of viewed pages
	Key list

Related Operations

Set a home page (portal site) <Set as Home URL>


While viewing an Internet web page with Full Browser ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 302), press  **[Display operations]** **[Home]** **[Set as Home URL]**.

- To enter URL to set a home page (portal site):
In the Full Browser menu screen, select [FB Settings] **[Home URL]** **[enter URL and press **.

View pages from URL History <URL history>

In the Full Browser menu screen, select [Go to location] **[URL history]** **[select URL]**.


View the last viewed page <Last URL>

In the Full Browser menu screen, select [Last URL] **[**.

View pages using Active marker <Active marker>

In stand-by, press  **[ (Full Browser history)]** **[select history]**.

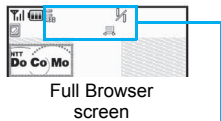
Note (Related operations)

- i-mode **Bookmarks** and Full Browser bookmarks are managed separately.
- A combined total of 20 folders (including [Bookmark] and [検索] folders) can be saved in Full Browser bookmarks.
- Save up to 100 bookmarks in total.
- When searching the web, the site saved at the top of the [検索] folder is used ( P. 306).

Full Browser Display

Basic operations for Full Browser are the same as when accessing sites from the i-mode Go to location menu (☞ P. 187). Operations that differ are mainly explained here.

- In Full Browser display, use the pointer (☞, ☞, etc.) to select items (☞ P. 32).
- If Link is set when using TOUCH CRUISER pad, ☞ appears. Double-tap to move to the linked page (☞ P. 183).



Icons that appear during browsing Full Browser

	Full Browser open (☞ flashes during transmissions)
	Full Browser is accessing the web (☞ flashes when receiving data)
	Full Browser is accessing an inactive window (☞ flashes when receiving data)
	Full Browser is accessing a background frame (☞ flashes when receiving data)
	SSL/TLS page is being viewed
	PC mode
	Frame is shown enlarged
	Multiple windows open (window/total number of windows)
	For unread i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F
	For unread Area Mail

Changing display mode

- Refer to P. 307 for details on display mode.

1 In the Full Browser screen, press ☞
 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Display Mode] ▶
 select a display mode.

Display mode	Keitai mode	PC mode
--------------	-------------	---------

Vertical scroll

Scroll the screen up and down with ☞.

- Alternatively, press ☞ (Page ▼)/☞ (Page ▲) to scroll one screen at a time in Keitai mode.

Horizontal scroll (PC mode)

Scroll within the horizontal size of the page in PC mode with ☞.

Jumping to the top of the page (Return to top)

- Press ☞ or ☞ and select [Display operations] → [Return to top] to jump to the top of the current page.

Moving to previous/next page (Cache)

The FOMA terminal stores up to 2,500 KB of viewed Internet web pages. This is called the “cache” and can be shown easily.

- For Keitai mode, press ☞ to show the previous page and then press ☞ to show the next page.
- For PC mode, press ☞ (Back) to show the previous page and then press ☞ (Next) to show the next page.
- Also, press ☞ to return to the previous page and ☞ to go to the next page.
- Press ☞ or ☞ (Back) repeatedly to scroll through previous pages. When using ☞ or ☞ (Back) to scroll through previous pages (C to B) and another page (D) is viewed, pressing ☞ or ☞ (Back) twice at D will not return to C. Page will scroll from B to A.

<When scrolling A → B → C → B → D>
(☞ P. 184)

- Previously entered characters and settings are not restored for pages saved in the cache.
- If a new page is viewed when the cache is full, the oldest page in history is deleted.
- When scrolling through pages, if the page is no longer in the cache, the FOMA terminal cache size is exceeded or the page is set (created) to always reload up-to-date information, the handset downloads the page from the Internet web page.
- When switching to a screen saved in the cache, it may take time to view the page.
- Cache information is reset when the Full Browser is closed.

Viewing pages using frames

View Internet web pages consisting of multiple frames.

Select a frame in the frame selection screen to show a page per frame.

- In the frame selection screen, press ☞, select a frame to show the frame details screen.
- To return from individual frames to the frame selection screen, press ☞ and select [Display operations] → [Ret to frame disp].

Note

- Set handset to not load images when viewing Internet web pages (☞ P. 307).
- Some Internet web pages may appear different from actual ones. If characters do not appear properly, convert the character code. After character code converts four times, the site or web page is shown with original code.

Note

- Some downloaded images may exceed the number of colors the FOMA terminal can show on the display depending on the file format.
- Press while viewing Internet web pages and end confirmation screen appears. Select [Yes] and the Full Browser ends.
- may appear on the display when data to show on the display could not be retrieved while viewing Internet web pages due to transmission errors and other causes. In such cases, the Internet web page may appear properly when reloaded.

Related Operations**Change font size in the Keitai mode **

- 1 In the Full Browser screen of the Keitai mode, press (Size) (or ► [Display/set] ► [Font size]).
- 2 Select [Large font]/[Normal]/[Small font]/[Minimum].

Change magnification in the PC mode**<Zoom/All>**

- 1 In the Full Browser screen of the PC mode, press (Zoom/All) (or ► [Display/set] ► [Zoom]).
 - To display at 60%: Press for 1+ seconds.
- 2 Select [250%]/[200%]/[150%]/[100%]/[75%]/[60%].

Reload Internet web page <Reload>

In the Full Browser screen, press ► [Reload].

Use the history list of viewed pages <History>

- In the Full Browser screen, press ► [History] ► select a history.
- To check a URL: Select the history and press .

Save ID and password <Save login info>

- 1 In the Full Browser screen, press ► [Save login info] ► enter terminal security code and press ► select the number to be saved.
- 2 Refer to P. 186 to save ID and password.

Use the saved login information**<Paste login info>**

In the Full Browser screen, select text box and press ► [Paste login info] ► enter terminal security code and press ► select the login information.

View the URL <URL>

In the Full Browser screen, press ► [Display/set] ► [URL].

Convert character code <Character code>

In the Full Browser screen, press ► [Display/set] ► [Character code].

Related Operations**Replay animated GIF <Retry>**

In the Full Browser screen, press ► [Display/set] ► [Retry].

Add bookmarks <Add bookmark>

- 1 In the Full Browser screen, press ► [Bookmark].
- 2 Select [Add bookmark] ► select folder.
- 3 To save, select [OK].
 - To change the title and save: Select [Edit title] ► edit title and press .
 - To change folder and save: Select [Change folder] ► select folder ► [OK].

Save Images <Save image>

- 1 In the Full Browser screen, press ► [Save image].
- 2 Select image ► select folder and press .

Send Internet web page URL by mail**<Compose message>**

In the Full Browser screen, press ► [Compose message].

Note (Related operations)**History list**

- The history is deleted when the Full Browser is closed.

Save login information and Paste login information

- Refer to P. 186 for details.

Save image

- Save up to 500 KB of GIF images, JPEG images, BMP images and PNG images. BMP images and PNG images can be saved on microSD Memory Card but not on the FOMA terminal handset.

Viewing SSL/TLS-enabled pages

View Internet web pages that begin with **https://** (SSL/TLS pages) with the Full Browser.

When Client certificate is required, a confirmation screen appears. Select [Yes] and enter PIN2 code to send.

- When viewing an SSL/TLS-enabled page, appears.
- When multiple windows are opened, does not appear if an SSL/TLS-enabled page is only open in the inactive windows.
- A screen confirming the end of SSL/TLS-enabled page appears when exiting an SSL/TLS-enabled page and showing a normal page.

Related Operations**View Internet web page server certificate****<View certificate>**

In the Full Browser screen, press ► [Display/set] ► [View certificate].

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

- If [This certificate has expired. Connect?] or other messages appears, the web page certificate is invalid, has expired or uses a different certificate from the FOMA terminal's certificate. When such messages appear, the page is not secure to send credit card numbers, postal addresses or other personal information. To continue viewing the page, select [Yes]. To not view the page, select [No].

Using Multiple Windows

Open up to five browser windows simultaneously.

Entering URL and viewing in a new window

View a different Internet web page in a separate window while viewing an Internet web page with Full Browser.

1 In the Full Browser screen (☞ P. 303), press **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[Go to location]**.

2 Specify the Internet web page to view.

To view from URL history	[URL history] → select URL history
To enter URL and view	[Input URL] → enter URL and press [Ⓞ] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including http://).

3 Select **[Open New Window]**.

- Internet web page appears in a new window.

Note

- A new window may not open when the number of frames which can be viewed is exceeded or when the memory is low.

Related Operations

View the selected link in a new window

In the Full Browser screen, select link and press **[Ⓜ]** (or **[Ⓜ]**) ▶ **[Window]** ▶ **[Open New Window]**.

View a list of open windows

In the Full Browser screen, press **[Ⓜ]** (or **[Ⓜ]**) ▶ **[Window]** ▶ **[Window list]**.

- To switch the active window: Select a window.
- To close a selected window: Select a window and press **[Ⓜ]**.
- To close all inactive windows: Press **[Ⓜ]**.

Related Operations

Close the windows

In the Full Browser screen, press **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[Window]** ▶ **[Close window]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

Select a bookmark and view in a new window <Bookmark list>

- 1** In the Full Browser screen, press **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[Bookmark]** ▶ **[Bookmark list]**.
- 2** Select folder ▶ select bookmark and press **[Ⓜ]** (New WND).

View the registered home page (portal site) in a new window <Home>

In the Full Browser screen, press **[Ⓜ]** (or **[Ⓜ]**) ▶ **[Display operations]** ▶ **[Home]** ▶ **[Home]**.

Note (Related operations)

View a list of windows

- Up to five windows can be viewed in the list.

Uploading Files

Upload images from Internet web pages that support file uploads from forms.

- Upload GIF and JPEG images of up to 80 KB.

1 In the Full Browser screen (☞ P. 303), select the **[参照]** (browse) button to select a file.

2 Select folder ▶ select image.

3 Select send key on the Internet web page.

Downloading Files

Download document files, PDF files, e-book, etc. from Internet web pages.

- Downloaded files are saved to the microSD Memory Card.
- Supported file types (file extension) Microsoft Word (.doc), Microsoft Excel (.xls), Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt), PDF (.pdf), XMDF (.zbf), e-book in Text format (.zbk)
- Download files of up to 500 KB as a single file.

1 In the Full Browser screen (☞ P. 303), select the file to download.

2 Select **[Yes]**.


- [Download file?] appears. Select [Yes].

3 When finished downloading, select **[Save to ext mem]**.

Searching the Web


Use search engines to search the web.





- In the Full Browser screen**
(☞ P. 303), press  ▶ [Search] ▶ [Search web].

- Alternatively, press .
- The first Internet web page saved in the [検索] folder of Bookmark is connected. If no Internet web pages are saved in the [検索] folder, [No bookmarks] appears.
- Follow instructions for each site for search methods.

Searching the Page

Search for specific character strings in the page being viewed.

- In the Full Browser screen**
(☞ P. 303), press  ▶ [Search] ▶ [Search page].

- Enter keyword and press .**
 - Press  (Next) to search for next search result and press  (Previous) to search for previous search result.
 - Press  (End) to end search.

Viewing the Key List

- In the Full Browser screen**
(☞ P. 303), press  ▶ [Key list].

Switching from i-mode to Full Browser

Switch to Full Browser when an Internet web page viewed from i-mode does not appear properly.

- While viewing an Internet web page from i-mode, press  ▶ [Switch to FB] ▶ [Yes].**

Setting Full Browser

Set various functions related to Full Browser.

Setting Cookies

Cookies temporarily record information such as user name, date/time and number of accesses in the FOMA terminal when an Internet web page is connected. This information is used when the Internet web page is accessed again.

- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any information obtained by a third party as a result of validating cookies.

Validating/Invalidating cookies

Validate/Invalidate recording of cookies.

- In stand-by, press  ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Cookie Setting].**

- Select Validate/Invalidate.**



Valid	[Valid] ● Terminal security code may be required to switch from [Invalid] to [Valid].
Valid (notify)	[Valid(notify)] → [Sending]/[Receiving]/[Sending/Receiving] ● Terminal security code may be required to switch from [Invalid] to [Valid(notify)].
Invalid	[Invalid]

Note

- If the FOMA card that was inserted when cookies were set to [Valid] is removed and other FOMA cards are inserted, cookies are set to [Invalid].
- When cookie setting is changed from [Invalid] to [Valid] or [Valid(notify)], a confirmation screen to delete previous cookie information may appear. Select [Yes] to delete.

Deleting cookies

Delete all cookie information saved on the FOMA terminal.

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Delete cookie] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .
- 2 Select [Yes].

Validating/Invalidating JavaScript

Set to run JavaScript program when included in Internet web page.

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Script Setting] ▶ [Valid]/[Invalid].

Hiding Images <Set Image Display>

Set to hide images when viewing Internet web pages with the Full Browser.

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Set image display] ▶ [OFF].
 - Alternatively, press  in the Full Browser screen and select [Display/set] → [Set image display].

Setting Display Mode <Display Mode>

Set display mode for Full Browser.

Keitai mode	Displays at a reduced size to fit display horizontally. Set font size.
PC mode	Displays at screen size for PC. Set magnification.

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Display Mode].
- 2 Select display mode.

Keitai mode	[Keitai mode] → [Large font]/[Normal]/[Small font]/[Minimum]
PC mode	[PC mode] → [250%]/[200%]/[150%]/[100%]/[75%]/[60%]

Preventing New Windows from Opening Automatically

<Window Open Guard>

Block JavaScript programs in Internet web pages that prompt a new window to open.

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Window Open Guard] ▶ [Valid].

Performing Settings Regarding Referer

Set whether to send Referer (URL information of the link source) to the server of the link destination when following links in Internet web pages.

- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any information obtained by a third party as a result of using "Refeer".

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Refeer Setting].
- 2 Select an item.

Item	Send	Unsend	Notify
------	------	--------	--------

Note

- Some Internet web pages may not appear correctly when "Refeer" is not sent.

Setting Whether to Use Full Browser Function <Access Setting>



- If [Yes] is selected, Access Setting is changed to [ON] and Full Browser can be started. If [No] is selected, Access Setting is changed to [OFF] and the Access Setting screen appears when Full Browser is started (P. 302).
- To use Full Browser function with the settings changed, be sure to read [For more information] in the Access Setting screen.

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Access Setting] ▶ [Yes]/[No].

Resetting Full Browser Settings

<Reset Full Browser>

- Resetting the Full Browser settings also resets the registered home page.

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Reset full browser] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .
- 2 Select [Yes].

Internet Movie Player

Play movies for PC (PC movies) provided in portal sites or movie dedicated sites on the Internet with Internet movie player of the FOMA terminal.

- Internet movie player supports the playback of Windows Media Video.
- A large amount of data may be received. Making a transmission with large-volume data will lead to higher transmission charges. For details on transmission charges and payment plans, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- The following are the distribution formats and file formats for PC movies that can be played back.

Format	Distribution system	Explanation
Streaming type	Live distribution	A PC movie is distributed in real time. Pause, Fast forward, Fast rewind and Jump to a specified position are not available.
	On-demand distribution	A PC movie, which is prepared on the server in advance, is distributed.

File format	Windows Media file Metafile: WMV, WAX, ASX Media data: WMV, WMA, ASF
Video codec	WMV9 MP@LL
Maximum bit rate	2Mbps
	30fps (QVGA)
	Image size	48×48 to 352×288
Audio codec	WMA Standard L3 Profile (ver.2 to 9)
Bit rate	5 to 320kbps

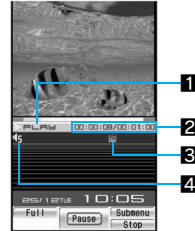
- PC movies cannot be saved.
- Depending on the site, the operating environment (e.g. Browser type, OS type) is checked, and the playback on the FOMA terminal is not available.

Internet Movie Player

Playing PC Movie

1 In the Full Browser screen, select PC movie ▶ [Yes] ▶ [Agree].

- Depending on the data, if [Yes] is selected, the playback PC movie may be started.



PC movie playback screen

1 Playback

▶ PLAY	During playback
⏸ PAUSE	While paused
■ STOP	While stopped
⏩ FFF	While fast forward
⏪ REW	While fast rewind

2 Play time/Total time

- The total playback time appears only for the on-demand distribution.

3 Buffering

	Appears during buffering
--	--------------------------

4 Volume

	(Volume 0) to (Volume 10)
--	---------------------------

- Full-screen mode is available when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position. Full-screen mode is deactivated when returning to the normal position. However, when the Submenu or others appear on the screen, the screen mode is not switched.
- Full Browser screen reappears when playing is completed.

Key operations during playback



	When FOMA terminal is open	When in the viewer position
To pause*1	● (Pause)	⏸ (⏸)
To adjust volume*2 (Volume 0 to 10)	⏮/⏭ ● Keep key pressed to adjust volume continuously.	⏮/⏭
To fast rewind*1,2	Press ⏮ for 1+ seconds	Press ⏮ for 1+ seconds
To fast forward*1,2	Press ⏭ for 1+ seconds	Press ⏭ for 1+ seconds
To switch display in full-screen	⏏ (Full)	—
To end	⏏ (Stop) → [Yes]	⏏ (P) → [Yes] → ⏏ (⏏)

*1 Key operations are not available for the live distribution.

*2 When in Full-screen mode display, operations for up/down and left/right are switched. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.

- Press a dial key (1 to 9) to jump to a location assigned to the key and resume playback. Press 1 during playback to return to the beginning of the PC movie. Press 2 to 8 to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the total playing time. Press 9 to jump to the end of the PC movie. However, this feature is not available for the live distribution.
- Some PC movies have restrictions on the operations of Fast forward, Fast rewind and Jump to a specified position or the location of them to resume playback after the operation may be misplaced.

Note

- Depending on the line speed, line condition or radio wave environment, the playback may be interrupted or the image may be distorted.
- When the battery icon does not indicate , a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not when playback resumes or during playback. Select [Yes] to play. Also a confirmation screen may appear depending on the use even when the battery icon indicates .
- When the connection is interrupted due to the signal status, [Play again?] appears. Select [Resume] (only for on-demand distribution)/[Play from start] to play again.
- Playback may stop if a call is received, alarm activates or other function is operated during playback. Full Browser screen reappears when end calling or operation.


Note

About the license (WMDRM (Windows Media digital rights management))

- Play a PC movie that is protected with a license. However, some PC movies cannot be played on the FOMA terminal depending on the license settings.


Related Operations

View detailed information <File property>

In the PC movie playback screen, press  ▶ [File property].


- To end checking: Press ● or CLR.

Set Playback light <Backlight time>

1 In PC movie playback screen, press  ▶ [Backlight time].

2 Select [As light setting] or [Always ON].

Show in Full-screen mode <Full-screen mode>

In the PC movie playback screen, press  ▶ [Full-screen mode].

Note (Related operations)

File properties

- The displayed items are title (original), creator, copyright, rights management, play time, file format, video codec, audio codec, display size, description, and quality. Items may appear differently depending on the PC movie.

Data Display/Edit/ Management

■ Using Still Pictures

- Displaying Saved Images <Image Viewer>312
- Editing Still Pictures (SPEEDYLAB) <Edit Image>316

■ Using Movies

- Playing Movie/i-motion <i-motion Player>321
- Editing Movies (SPEEDYLAB) <Edit Movie>326

■ Using Videos

- Playing Back Videos <Video Player>327

■ Using Chara-den

- What Is Chara-den? <Chara-den Player>330

■ Using Melodies

- Playing Back Melodies <Melody Player>333

■ Using microSD Memory Cards

- microSD Memory Card 335
- Transferring Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card <Contents Transfer Compatible>339
- Copying from FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card <Copy to microSD>340
- Backing Up FOMA Terminal Handset Data <Backup/Restore>340
- Previewing microSD Memory Card Data <View microSD Data>342
- Copying from microSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal <Copy to the Phone>342
- Managing microSD Memory Card 343

■ Using Various Data

- Managing Data 347

■ Using Ir Exchange

- Ir Exchange <Ir Exchange>352
- Sending and Receiving Data Individually 354
- Sending and Receiving All Data Items 355
- Using Ir Exchange with i-appli Software 355
- Using the Infrared Remote Control Function <Infrared Remote Control>356

■ Using iC Transmission Function

- iC Transmission <iC Transmission>356
- Sending and Receiving Data Individually 357
- Sending and Receiving All Data Items 357

■ Using Voice Recorder

- Using the FOMA Terminal as a Voice Recorder <Voice Recorder>357

■ Using PDF Viewer

- Displaying PDF Files <PDF Viewer>358
- Managing PDF Files 362

■ Document Viewer

- Displaying Word and Excel Files <Document Viewer>364
- Managing Documents 366

■ Manga&BookReader

- Displaying e-Book/e-Dictionary/e-Comic <Manga&BookReader>367
- Using the Information in e-Book/e-Dictionary/e-Comic 370
- Scanning Text to Search for Words in an e-Dictionary <Character Reader>371
- Managing e-Book/e-Dictionary/e-Comic 372

■ Printing Still Pictures

- Printing Saved Images <Print Setting (DPOF)>373

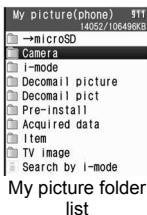
Displaying Saved Images

Play back still pictures shot with FOMA terminal, images downloaded from sites and Internet web pages or images for which 1Seg programs are recorded as a still picture saved in My picture of Data box with Image Viewer.

- Save JPEG and GIF images stored in My picture of Data box to the Data Storage Center (☞ P. 320).

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] [My picture].

- Alternatively, press in the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 161) and select [Display Data box].
- To view still pictures saved in microSD Memory Card, select [→microSD].
To view still pictures saved in FOMA terminal handset again, select [→phone].



2 Select a folder.

- Refer to "Changing display method" on P. 313 for switching image list screen.



Image list

3 Select still picture.

- To view previous/next image, press .
- Switch among [1/1], [Zoom ↑] and [Full] (JPEG image only) if a still picture is **less than 480 × less than 640**.
- Switch among [1/1], [Zoom ↓] and [Full] (JPEG image only) if a still picture is larger than **480 for the horizontal size or 640 for the vertical size**.
- The display size cannot be changed for **480×640 or less or 480 or less × 640** still pictures.
- Zoom and Shrink are not available for animated GIFs, Flash movies, Frames and Stamps.



Image display screen

- Full-screen mode is available when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position.
- For JPEG image, press (Rotate) to display the image rotated 90°.
- For images other than JPEG images, press (Full) to display the image in full-screen.

Note

- Data is not saved if memory is full (☞ P. 351). Check memory before shooting, editing still pictures or downloading images.
- Opening and saving becomes slower when more images are saved.
- Animated GIFs and Flash movies downloaded from a site or Internet web page may appear differently, such as frame dropping, from when seen on the site or page.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if Image Viewer is ended, and is used the next time Image Viewer is started.

Related Operations

Show in Full-screen mode

<Full-screen mode/Wide mode>

- 1 In the image display screen, press [My Picture setting].
- 2 Select [Full-screen mode] to show in the Full-screen mode (in the size that fits within the display).
 - To show in the Wide mode (in the size without margins): Select [Wide mode].
 - To show Full-screen mode in the image list screen with one-touch key operations: Press .
 - To return: Press .

Use Zoom (JPEG image only) <Zoom>

- In the image display screen, press [Zoom] .
- To show other areas: Press .
 - To return to original view: Press .
 - To shrink (zoom out) enlarged still pictures: Press .

Light up <Light up>

- In the image display screen, press [My Picture setting] [Light Up].
- Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds.
 - To turn off: Perform same steps or show another image.

Set Playback light <Backlight time>

- 1 In My picture folder list screen, press [Backlight time].
- 2 Select [As light setting]/[Always ON].

Add/use location information <Location info>

- In the image list screen or image display screen, press [Location info].
- Refer to P. 284 for details on the location information.

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

Zoom

- For images in the [Pre-install] folder, even if they are JPEG images, the Zoom is not available.

Light

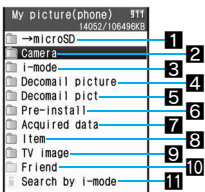
- Backlight turns off after time set for **Display light time** when Backlight time is set to [As light setting].
- When Backlight time is set to [Always ON], even after time set for Display light time passes while playing Flash movies and animated GIFs, the backlight remains lit until image display is ended.
- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of **Brightness** settings.

My Picture Folder List/Image List Screen

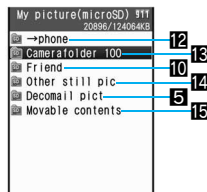
My picture folder list screen layout

Select [→microSD] or press in My picture folder list screen and select [Switch phone⇄SD] to switch to microSD Memory Card folder (P. 337).

FOMA terminal handset



microSD Memory Card



- Shows folder list screen of microSD Memory Card
- Folder for still pictures shot with FOMA terminal
- Folder for still pictures downloaded from sites and Internet web pages or retrieved via Message R/F or i-mode mail
- Folder for Deco-mail pictographs
 - Deco-mail images are preset.
 - Deco-mail images which are downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or retrieved via mail, are saved.
- Folder for Deco-mail pictographs
 - Deco-mail pictographs are preset.
 - JPEG/GIF images and animated GIFs that are 20×20 pixels without file restrictions are saved.
- Folder for still pictures preset in FOMA terminal handset
- Folder for images retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) or IrSS exchange
- Folder for frames and stamps downloaded from sites and Internet web pages
- Folder for images of which 1Seg programs are recorded as a still picture
- Created folder (P. 343, P. 347)
- Connects to i-mode

12 Shows folder list screen of FOMA terminal handset

13 Folder for still pictures shot with FOMA terminal, DCF compliant JPEG and GIF images excluding animated GIF. When a still picture is shot or is copied from the FOMA terminal handset, a folder named Camerafolder 100 is automatically created. When the number of files reaches 400, a new folder named Camerafolder xxx ("xxx" in the folder name is a three-digit single-byte number between 100 and 999) is automatically created.

14 Folder for animated GIF and non-DCF compliant JPEG images/Flash images copied from FOMA terminal handset

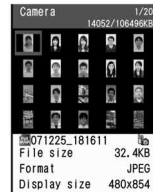
15 Folder for images downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal

Image list screen layout

Select a view method from the following four settings.



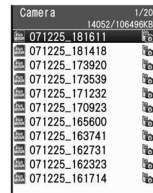
12-part



20-part



5-part/details



List display

Note

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters for title name. Up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen. If a title name exceeds 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters, up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "...".
- When in 5-part/details, press to view the next page and to view the previous page.
- When in List display, press to view the next page and to view the previous page.

Changing display method

<Switch view mode>

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select folder ▶ ▶ [My Picture setting].

2 Select [Switch view mode] ▶ select display method.

Display method	12-part	5-part/details
	20-part	List display

Still picture types and their icons

Still picture types

JPEG					
76×76	Icon: 152×152	sQCIF: 128×96	QCIF: 176×144	QVGA: 240×320	CIF: 352×288

JPEG				
VGA: 480×640	Stand-by: 480×854	UXGA: 1200×1600	FullHD: 1080×1920	3M: 1536×2048

JPEG		GIF image Animated GIF	Flash movie	1Seg
Panorama: 1280×320	Other			

Mark types

	Still pictures with FOMA card restrictions applied
	Still pictures with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal
	Frames or stamps
	Still pictures downloaded from i-mode (excluding frames or stamps)
	Still pictures (excluding frames or stamps) retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmissions, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) or IrSS transmissions
	Still pictures shot with camera
	Picture memos shot during Videophone calls
	Still pictures saved from e-book, etc.
	Still pictures cut out from PDF Viewer
	Still pictures with location information added
	Images for which 1Seg programs are recorded as a still picture
	When no image sizes are applied

- Check the image size with Display size of [File property] (☞ P. 349).
- Refer to P. 157 for details on shot sizes and capacity.

Playing Flash Movies

Play back Flash movies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages saved in [i-mode] folder in My picture of Data box.

- 1 In stand-by, press ► [Data box] ► [My picture] ► select folder ► select Flash movie.

- appears for Flash movies in image list screen.
- To restart playback, press to stop playback, press and select [Retry].

Note

- Saved Flash movies may appear differently from when seen on a site or Internet web page.

Related Operations

Set Playback light <Backlight time>

- 1 While stopped (paused) Flash movie, press ► [Backlight time].
- 2 Select [As light setting]/[Always ON].

Adjust playback volume <Set volume>

- In stand-by, press ► [Data box] ► [My picture] ► select folder ► ► [My Picture setting] ► [Set volume] ► / ► .

Viewing Slideshows <Slideshow>

Show all supported images in a folder consecutively.

- 1 In stand-by, press ► [Data box] ► [My picture] ► select folder and press ► [Slideshow] ► [Start slideshow].

- Press , or to end playback. Alternatively, switch to the viewer position to end the slideshow.

Setting playback interval and effects

Set playback interval (speed) and effects of Slideshow in My picture.

- 1 In stand-by, press ► [Data box] ► [My picture] ► select folder and press ► [Slideshow].

- 2 Select [Play interval] ► select interval.

Fastest	Images appears one after another.
Fast	Next image appears after approximately 3 seconds.
Normal	Next image appears after approximately 5 seconds.
Slow	Next image appears after approximately 10 seconds.

※ Play interval may vary depending on image size.

3 Select [Effects settings] ▶ select effect.

Diamond shape	Next image appears from inside to outside, like a rhomboid enlarging.
Pin-wheel	Next image spins and enlarges.
Wheel	Next image enlarges from center like spinning.
Dissolve	Next image fades in.
Stretch	Next image enlarges vertically from center.
Random	Next image appears with an effect randomly selected.
OFF	Effect is not set.

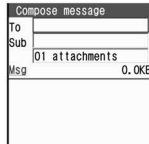
Attaching Still Pictures and Sending i-mode Mail

Select still picture from My picture of Data box and attach to i-mode mail.

- Send still pictures of up to 2 MB.
- Available still pictures are those received via i-mode mail as attachments, shot with FOMA terminal and downloaded from sites and Internet web pages that do not have restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal.
- Still pictures shot with FOMA terminal and those retrieved with microSD Memory Cards are available even when restricted.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select folder ▶ select still picture and press (Mail).

- **QVGA: 240×320** is the suitable size for sending to i-mode terminals.



2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Setting an Image as Stand-by Display <Set Screen>

Select still pictures saved in My picture of Data box as the stand-by display, call/receive display, send/receive display and display mark.

- Frames, stamps and images for which 1Seg programs are recorded as a still picture are not available.
- Flash movies are available for stand-by, call/receive and send/receive display.
- Some JPEG images, animated GIFs and GIF images are not available for Animated notices.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select folder ▶ select still picture and press ▶ [Set screen].

- Alternatively, in the image display screen (step 3 on P. 312) or while stopping Flash movies, press and select [Set screen].



2 Select screen item.

- To set as the stand-by display, select [Yes].
- Select additional items depending on the screen.

Send Still Pictures Using High-speed Ir Exchange (IrSS Function)

Send JPEG images saved in My picture of Data box to IrSS compatible devices using high-speed Ir exchange.

- JPEG images saved on the microSD Memory Card can also be sent directly.
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.
- IrSS is a simplex communication function compliant with IrSimple1.0 (Home Appliance Profile).
- IrSS performs a transmission without confirming the response of the receiver side since it uses a simplex communication. For this reason, the sender side completes the communication normally even if the receiver side does not.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select folder ▶ select still picture and press .

2 Set receiving FOMA terminal to receive data.

3 Select [Yes].

- Press to cancel transmission.
- When the transmission is successfully completed, [Sent] appears even if still pictures are not saved in the receiver side terminal.

Edit Image

Editing Still Pictures (SPEEDYLAB)

Compare before and after images while editing without interruption.

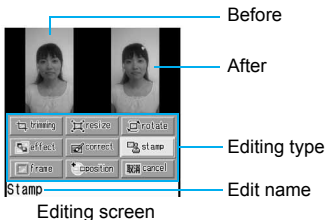
- For still pictures larger than **Stand-by: 480×854**, editing other than Trimming, Resize image and Rotate is not available. In addition, still pictures of the size smaller than **64×64** cannot be edited.
- Some still pictures downloaded from sites or Internet web pages or imported using microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange or DoCoMo keitai datalink cannot be edited depending on the image or the image size.
- Image quality may deteriorate with repeated editing of an image after saving, such as by adding frames and stamps.
- Data size may increase/decrease when edited.
- Attach edited image to i-mode mail and send (☞ P. 317).
- Flash movies and animated GIFs cannot be edited.

Opening Image Editing Screen

<Edit Image>

- 1 In stand-by, press **⏏** ▶ **[Data box]** ▶ **[My picture]** ▶ select folder ▶ select still picture and press **⏏** ▶ **[Edit data]** ▶ **[Edit image]**.

- Editing screen appears.
- Alternatively, press **⏏** in the image display screen (☞ step 3 on P. 312) and select [Edit data] → [Edit image].
- Or, press **⏏** in the still picture preview screen after shooting (☞ step 3 on P. 162) and select [Edit image].



Editing type buttons

Use editing type buttons to access editing menu directly.

trimming	resize	rotate
Trimming (☞ P. 316)	Resize image (☞ P. 317)	Rotate (☞ P. 318)
effect	correct	stamp
Effect (☞ P. 318)	Correct image (☞ P. 318)	Stamp (☞ P. 319)
frame	position	cancel
Frame (☞ P. 319)	Change face position (☞ P. 320)	Undo (☞ P. 316)

※ Editing type buttons differ for functions and screens.

Key operations in editing screen

Perform one of the following to select editing types.

- Press **⏏** and select editing type.
 - Select editing type buttons with **⏏**.
 - Press dial key (**1** to **9**).
- Editing type buttons correspond to keypad layout.
- Select another editing type to continue editing same still picture.
 - Editing is not available when Edit name cannot be selected.

Undoing previous operation <Undo>

- 1 Press **⏏** ▶ **[Undo]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

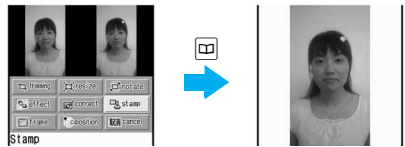
- Last edit is undone.
- Undo one step. Undo again to return to unedited still picture.
- Operation cannot be performed if nothing was edited.

Showing in one screen

Show the edited still picture in a single screen.

Before editing, the original still picture is shown in a single screen.

- 1 Press **⏏** (Chk img).



Note

- Edited still pictures are compressed when saved and may appear different during editing.

Changing Size of Still Pictures <Trimming>

Change size or trim still pictures to use as Icon image or to set as the stand-by display.

Original size	Available still picture sizes
Icon: 152×152 sQCIF: 128×96	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96
QCIF: 176×144	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144
QVGA: 240×320	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320
CIF: 352×288	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288
VGA: 480×640 UXGA: 1200×1600 FullHD: 1080×1920	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288, VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854

Original size	Available still picture sizes
3M: 1536×2048 Panorama: 1280×320	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288, VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854, 1.2M: 1286×960
Stand-by: 480×854	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288, VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854, Icon (9-part)

1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press [Trimming] select the image size.

- Some still pictures cannot be edited depending on original size. Unavailable sizes cannot be selected.
- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than size.
- Once a **sQCIF: 128×96** image is edited (rotate 90°), it cannot be cut for the same size. Additionally, once **Stand-by: 480×854** image is edited (rotate 90°), it cannot be cut for "Icon (9-part)".

2 Specify portion to cut with and press .

- Press to zoom in and to zoom out and cut with . Zooming in and out is not available for "Icon (9-part)".

3 Save still picture.

To save	→ [Yes] → [OK]
To change title and save	→ [Yes] → [Edit title] → edit title and press → [OK] ● Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters.
To change folder and save	→ [Yes] → [Change folder] → select folder and press → [OK]
To attach to i-mode mail and compose	→ [Yes] → [Compose message] → compose/send i-mode mail ● Still picture is automatically saved. ● Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.
To make additional editing without saving	→ select editing type
To save before continuing	→ [OK] → → select editing type

Resizing Still Pictures <Resize Image>


Resize still picture depending on the intended use, such as for Deco-mail or stand-by display.

- Aspect ratio is maintained when still picture is resized. For images with differing aspect ratio, use Trimming to use as icon or Videophone substitute images.

Original size	Available still picture sizes
Icon: 152×152	sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288, VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854, 1.2M: 1280×960
sQCIF: 128×96	Icon: 152×152, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288, VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854, 1.2M: 1280×960, Deco-mail*
QCIF: 176×144	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288, VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854, 1.2M: 1280×960, Deco-mail*
QVGA: 240×320	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, CIF: 352×288, VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854, 1.2M: 1286×960, Deco-mail*
CIF: 352×288	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854, 1.2M: 1280×960, Deco-mail*
VGA: 480×640	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288, 1.2M: 1280×960, Deco-mail*
Stand-by: 480×854	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×258, VGA: 480×640, 1.2M: 1280×960, Deco-mail*
UXGA: 1200×1600 FullHD: 1080×1920 3M: 1536×2048	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288, VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854, 1.2M: 1280×960, Deco-mail*
Panorama: 1280×320	Icon: 152×152, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320, CIF: 352×288, VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854, Deco-mail*

* Still picture is compressed to approximately 12 KB (file size (video) is 9 KB or less). Still pictures larger than **QVGA: 240×320** are resized to **QVGA: 240×320** or smaller. When image size is **sQCIF: 128×96**, **QCIF: 176×144**, **QVGA: 240×320** and file size (video) is 9 KB or less, still pictures cannot be resized for Deco-mail.

- When a still picture saved on the microSD Memory Card is edited, this table may not be followed.

1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press  **[Resize image]** **▶** select the image size.


- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than size.

2 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.

Rotating Still Pictures <Rotate>

Rotate 90 degrees left/right or reverse images vertically/horizontally.

1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press  **[Rotate]** **▶** select a rotation.

Rotation	Rotate 90° right	Invert (up/down)
	Rotate 90° left	Invert (L/R)

- When the image size is larger than **1280×960**, the image is reduced in size and rotated. After a confirmation screen appears, select [Yes].

2 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.


Note

- Image quality may deteriorate when **trimmed** or **resized** still pictures are rotated. For some resized still pictures, their size may be changed to that other than shooting size (☞ P. 157). In such cases, some editing functions are not available (e.g. rotating, etc.).
- When still pictures are rotated left or right, the aspect ratio changes for sizes other than **Icon: 152×152**.
- Depending on the image, you may not be able to specify the folder destination.

Adding Various Effects <Image Effect>

Change hue or feel of still pictures.

- Effects may differ depending on the still picture.

1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press  **[Effect]**.

2 Select [Image effect] **▶** select an effect.

Effect	Black & white	Ripple
	Sepia	Kaleidoscope(L)
	Sparkling	Kaleidoscope(S)
	Colored pencil	Fish-eye
	Faded edges	


3 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.

Decorating Faces <Face Effects>



Add expressive effects to still pictures of faces.

- Respect personal image rights when adding face effects, sending edited images via i-mode mail or setting edited images to stand-by.
- Face effects are added after automatically extracting face contour. Effects vary depending on position and size of face in still picture. Note the following.
Out of focus, head tilted, dark, eyes hidden by hair, mouth open, glasses, facial hair, etc.
- Use larger portraits that face forward for Face effects.

1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press  **[Effect]**.

2 Select [Face effects] **▶** select an effect.

Effect	Slender	Hide wrinkles
	Plump	Light skinned
	Big eyes	Wrinkled face
	Smile	Face symmetry (R)
	Angry	Face symmetry (L)
	Sad	

- When facial contours are not properly extracted, press  and select [Undo] → [Yes] to return to original image. Press , select [Change face pos] and set contour manually. Refer to “Setting Contour Manually” on P. 320 for details.


3 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.

Correcting Still Pictures <Correct Image>

Correct sharpness and softness of still pictures.

- Degree of corrections differ depending on original still picture such as a little color variation.

1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press  **[Correct image]** **▶** select the type of correction.

Sharpness	Emphasizes edges
Softness	Blurs edges
Sensitivity up	Increases brightness and contrast
Vibrancy	Increases colorfulness

2 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.

Pasting Image Stamps <Image Stamp>

Paste preset and downloaded image stamps such as stars, flowers and kiss marks.

- Image quality may deteriorate when Image stamps are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.

1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press ▶ [Stamp] ▶ [Image stamp] ▶ select folder ▶ select stamp and press (OK).

- To check a stamp, select an image stamp. Press and the previous screen reappears.
- Press to adjust location.
- Press to re-select image stamp. Stamp selected is deleted and the editing screen reappears.

2 Press .

- Adjust location and press to paste same stamp.

3 Press (Complete) ▶ save still picture.

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.

Pasting Face Stamps <Face Stamp>

Add decorations such as tears, sunglasses and swirly cheeks.

- Respect personal image rights when adding face stamps, sending edited images via i-mode mail or setting edited images to stand-by.
- Use larger portraits that face forward for Face stamp.
- Face stamps are added after automatically extracting face contour. Effects vary depending on position and size of face in still picture. Note the following.
 - Out of focus, head tilted, dark, eyes hidden by hair, mouth open, glasses, facial hair, etc.
- Image quality may deteriorate when Face stamps are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.

1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press ▶ [Stamp].

2 Select [Face stamp] ▶ select a stamp.

Stamp	Anger	Sunglasses
	Tears	Brainy glasses
	Swirly cheeks	Mosaic (eyes)
	Puppy dog eyes	Mosaic (face)

- When facial contours are not properly extracted, press and select [Undo] → [Yes] to return to original image. Press , select [Change face pos] and set contour manually. Refer to “Setting Contour Manually” on P. 320 for details.

3 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.

Pasting Character Stamps <Character Stamp>

Paste entered characters and date/time.

- Image quality may deteriorate when Character stamps are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.

1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press ▶ [Stamp].

2 Select [Character stamp] ▶ select a stamp.

Free word	[Free word] → enter text and press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter up to 22 single-byte (11 double-byte) characters. Text that exceeds display width is cut. Line breaks are not available.
Date	[Date]

- Press to adjust location.
- Press (Size ▼)/ (Size ▲) to change the font size. The font size changes in the order of 40 dots ⇔ 48 dots ⇔ 60 dots ⇔ 80 dots (double height size) ⇔ 24 dots ⇔ 32 dots ⇔ 40 dots.

3 Press ▶ select font color.

Font color	Orange	Red	Green
	Black	Yellow	Blue
	White		

4 Press ▶ save still picture.

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.

Adding a Frame <Frame>

- Frames for **QCIF: 176×144**, **Stand-by: 480×854**, **CIF: 352×288** are preset in the FOMA terminal.

1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press ▶ [Frame] ▶ select folder ▶ select frame and press (OK).

- To preview, select a frame. Press and the previous screen reappears.

2 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.

Note

- Image quality may deteriorate when frames are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.

Setting Contour Manually

<Change Face Pos>

Manually set the contour information (face contour, right eye contour, left eye contour and mouth contour) for each part of the face used in Face effects or Face stamp.

- [+] moves only within image.
- Outlines for contour are red for face, blue for right eye, green for left eye and yellow for mouth.
- Also use contour data with Facial treatment (☞ P. 320).

- 1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 316), press [📷] ▶ [Change face pos] ▶ specify the face contour.**



1. Move [+] to upper left of contour with [⬅️] and press [⏪].
2. Move [+] to lower right of contour with [➡️] and press [⏩].

- 2 Set right eye contour.**

1. Move [+] to upper left of contour with [⬅️] and press [⏪].
2. Move [+] to lower right of contour with [➡️] and press [⏩].

- 3 Set left eye contour.**

1. Move [+] to upper left of contour with [⬅️] and press [⏪].
2. Move [+] to lower right of contour with [➡️] and press [⏩].

- 4 Set mouth contour.**

1. Move [+] to upper left of contour with [⬅️] and press [⏪].
2. Move [+] to the lower right of contour with [➡️].

- 5 Press [📷] (Complete) ▶ save still picture.**

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.

Note

- Press and hold [⬅️] to move [+] consecutively.
- Press [⏪] while specifying the face contour to return to the previous step.
- Set contour data is saved when edited image is saved. Contour data settings return if edited image is not saved. Saved contour data is used the next time the image is edited.

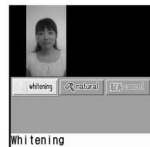
Making Up People's Faces

<Facial Treatment>

Whiten or add natural make up to still pictures of people's faces.

- Effects may differ depending on the still picture.

- 1 In stand-by, press [📷] ▶ [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select folder ▶ select still picture and press [📷] ▶ [Edit image] ▶ [Facial treatment].**



- 2 Press [📷] ▶ select an effect.**

Whitening	Makes the complexion whiter.
Natural	Makes the skin look natural and healthy.
Undo	Undoes previous operation.

- 3 Save still picture.**

- Refer to step 3 of “Changing Size of Still Pictures” on P. 317 for details on saving.

Saving Images to Data Storage Center <Store in Center>

- Save JPEG or GIF images of 100 KB or less saved in My picture of Data box.
- Select and save up to ten files.
- This service is a paid service that requires subscription.
- Refer to “Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]” for details on the restoration of saved images.

- 1 In image list screen (☞ P. 312), select image and press [📷] ▶ [Store in Center].**

- 2 Save still picture.**

To save one	[Save one] → [Yes] → enter terminal security code and press [⏪].
To save files collectively	[Save selected] → select image (repeatable) → [📷] → [Yes] → enter terminal security code and press [⏪].

Note

- Images that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.
- Images saved in a microSD Memory Card are not available directly. Copy to the [Acquired data] folder in My picture of FOMA terminal handset.

Note

- Check the **Exchanging history** for transmissions of saving to the Data Storage Center.

i-motion Player

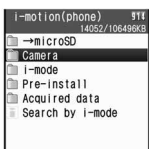
Playing Movie/i-motion

Play back movies shot with FOMA terminal and i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages saved in i-motion folder of Data box with i-motion player.

- Tickers do not appear even if movies/i-motion have tickers. However, whether the movie or i-motion has a ticker can be confirmed with the playback icon (☞ P. 322) during playback.

1 In stand-by, press **Ⓞ** ▶ [Data box] ▶ [i-motion].

- Alternatively, press **Ⓜ** in the movie shooting screen (☞ P. 161) and select [Display Data box].



i-motion folder list

- To view movies/i-motion saved in microSD Memory Card, select [→microSD]. To view movies/i-motion saved in FOMA terminal handset again, select [→phone].

2 Select a folder.

- To switch image list, refer to "Changing display method" on P. 324.



Image list

3 Select movie/i-motion.



Playback icons

Movie playback screen

- When i-motion saved in the middle of download is selected, a confirmation screen asking whether to download the remaining data appears. Select [Yes] to download.
- Fixed animation appears for voice only movies/i-motion (i-motion with no video).

- Full-screen mode is available when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position.

Key operations during playback

	When FOMA terminal is open	When in the viewer position
To pause	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (Pause) Press Ⓞ again to resume playback. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ⓜ Press Ⓜ again to resume playback.
To stop	Ⓜ (Stop)	—
To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10)*1	Ⓜ / Ⓜ	Ⓜ / Ⓜ
To fast forward*1, 2	Press Ⓜ for 1+ seconds	Press Ⓜ for 1+ seconds
To fast rewind*1, 2	Press Ⓜ for 1+ seconds	Press Ⓜ (Eco) for 1+ seconds
To play next movie/i-motion*1, 3	Ⓜ	Ⓜ
To play previous movie/i-motion*1, 3	Ⓜ	Ⓜ (Eco)
To jump to assigned location*2, 4	1 to 9	—

*1 When in Full-screen mode display, operations for up/down and left/right are switched. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.

*2 For the data with restrictions, the operation may not be available or the Total time in the playback screen may not appear correctly.

*3 While paused, press **Ⓜ** to advance by frame or **Ⓜ** to rewind by frame. However, operation may not be performed depending on movie/i-motion.

*4 Press **1** during playback to return to the beginning of movie/i-motion. Press **2** to **9** to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the recording time. However, it may not be possible to jump when the recording time is short.

- Supported movie/i-motion formats are as follows. Check the format of movies/i-motion at file format in [File property] (☞ P. 349).

File format		Encoding
MP4 (extensions: .mp4, .3gp, .m4a)	Image	MPEG-4, H.263, H.264
	Audio	AMR, AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus
ASF (extensions: .asf)	Image	MPEG-4
	Audio	AMR, G.726

- The image size that can be played is **VGA: 640×480** or smaller such as **sQCIF: 128×96**, **QCIF: 176×144**, **QQVGA: 160×120**, **hQVGA: 240×176**, **QVGA: 320×240**, **WQVGA: 400×240** and **VGA: 640×480**.

- Movies/i-motion in ASF file format cannot be saved or copied to the FOMA terminal handset.

- **sQCIF: 128×96** and **QCIF: 176×144** are available for playback for movies encoded in H.263 format.
- Only Baseline Profile is available for movies encoded in H.264 format.

Playback icons

Playback	Volume	
	Repeat playback	
	Image size	
	Appears while buffering (Normal type/Streaming type)	
	Download Incomplete	
Track type	Voice	
	Image	
	Ticker	
	No audio	
	No image	

Note

- Playback is paused if Submenu is selected. Playback may be resumed from a spot slightly before pausing depending on Submenu or data. Playback is stopped to return to the stopped of movie/i-motion if an alarm is activated or another function is activated using Multi Assistant.
- Jumping to specified location by pressing **[1]** to **[9]** is not available for some data or locations. In addition, some images are not available when forwarding/rewinding frames.
- Movies saved to microSD Memory Cards from external devices can be played back on the FOMA terminal (P. 481).
- Playback continues even if FOMA terminal is closed.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if i-motion player is ended, and is used the next time i-motion player is activated.

When voice/Videophone call is received during movie/i-motion playback

- The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered. Playback is canceled and the stopped movie/i-motion reappears after the call is ended. Even if Resume settings is set to [ON] on the microSD Memory Card for MP4 file saved on the FOMA terminal handset, playback cannot be resumed from where it was interrupted.

Related Operations

Show in Full-screen mode

<Full-screen mode>

While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[⊞]** ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Full-screen mode].

- To show Full-screen mode during playback or in the movie list with one-touch key operations: Press **[⊞]**.
- To return: Press **[⊞]**.

Set screen mode when activating

<Launch screen mode>

- 1 While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[⊞]** ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Launch screen mode].
- 2 Select [Normal Play]/[Full-screen mode].

Select a chapter to playback <Chapter list>

- 1 While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[⊞]** ▶ [Chapter list].
- 2 Select a chapter.

Repeat playback <Repeat playback>

While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[⊞]** ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Repeat playback].

- To return to normal playback: Perform same steps.
- To stop playback: Press **[CLR]**.

Change playback size <Change size>

- 1 While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[⊞]** ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Change size].
- 2 Select [Normal]/[Zoom].

Light up <Light up>

While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[⊞]** for 1+ seconds (or **[⊞]** ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Light Up]).

- To turn off: Perform same steps.

Set forwarding frame rate <Frame rate>

- 1 While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[⊞]** ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Frame rate].
 - To set from movie editing screen: Press **[⊞]** ▶ [Frame rate].
- 2 Select [Rough (hi-speed)]/[Fine].

Set Playback light <Backlight time>

- 1 In movie/i-motion folder list or image list screen, press **[⊞]** ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Backlight time].
- 2 Select [As light setting]/[Always ON].

Adjust playback volume <Set volume>

- 1 In movie/i-motion folder list or image list screen, press **[⊞]** ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Set volume].
- 2 Press **[⊞]** ▶ **[⊞]**.

Set resume playback settings <Resume settings>

- 1 In movie/i-motion folder list screen, select [→microSD] ▶ select folder ▶ **[⊞]** in the image list screen ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Resume settings].
- 2 Select [ON].

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

Switch Full-screen mode

- When in the Full-screen mode, operations for up/down and left/right are switched. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.

Launch screen mode

- This setting is enabled from the next startup.

Repeat playback

- Data with limitations on number of times to play back is not available for repeat playback.
- Press any key other than **CLR** and **↵** within 3 seconds of repeating to stop repeat playback. However, press **MAX** for 1+ seconds to resume playback. In addition, press **⏮** to play back in the Full-screen mode and **⏭** to switch to the compose message screen.
- Press **CLR** or **↵** to end repeat playback.

Switch playback size

- For the image size of **less than 480× less than 392** such as **sQCIF: 128×96**, **QQVGA: 160×120**, **QCIF: 176×144**, **QVGA: 320×240** and **WQVGA: 400×240**, the display size can be switched to [Zoom].

Light up

- Backlight turns off after time set for **Display light time** passes when Backlight time is set to [As light setting].
- When Backlight time is set to [Always ON], even after time set for Display light time passes, the backlight remains lit until movie/i-motion is ended.
- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of **Brightness** settings.

Forwarding frame rate

- For voice only movies, [Fine] is not available and forwarding frame is set to [Rough (hi-speed)].
- For some movies, [Fine] is not available and forwarding frame is set to [Rough (hi-speed)].
- When editing in the movie editing screen, if image size is **hQVGA: 240×176** or **WQVGA: 400×240**, or if data size exceeds 500 KB, forwarding frame is set to [Rough (hi-speed)].

Resume playback

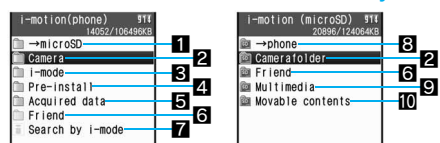
- Resume playback is available for movies/i-motion saved in **microSD Memory Card**. However, it is not available for the movies/i-motion saved in the [Movable contents] folder and [Multimedia] folder.
- Set Resume setting to [ON] to resume playback of movies/i-motion saved in the microSD Memory Card that are interrupted by incoming calls.
- Resume settings are not available if no movies/i-motion are saved on the microSD Memory Card.

i-motion Folder List/Image List Layout

i-motion folder list layout

Select [→microSD] or press **Ⓜ** in i-motion folder list and select [Switch phone↔SD] to switch to microSD Memory Card folder.

FOMA terminal handset microSD Memory Card



- Shows folder list of microSD Memory Card
- Folder for movies shot with FOMA terminal
- Folder for movies/i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages or retrieved via Message R/F or i-mode mail
- Folder for movies/i-motion preset in FOMA terminal handset
- Folder for movies/i-motion retrieved via microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately)
- Created folder (☎ P. 343, P. 347)
- Connects to i-mode
- Shows folder list of FOMA terminal handset
- Folder for movies shot while set to voice only and to be saved on microSD Memory Card and Voice recorder audio
 - [Multimedia] folder name is fixed. Folder cannot be deleted.
 - Save up to 400 shot and recorded data in [Multimedia] folder. Files are in MP4 format.
 - Save data other than those shot and recorded in [Multimedia] folder via a PC. Available file formats are MP4, ASF and 3GPP. Saved files are named MMF0001 to MMF9999. Up to 400 files can be viewed on the FOMA terminal. If there is data that cannot be played back or there are 401 files or more, data may not appear (The file names do not appear if they are not named as "MMFxxxx" ("xxxx" indicates a number)).
- Folder for storing downloaded movies/i-motion with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal (Contents transfer compatible)
 - Data saved in the [Movable contents] folder is transferred from the FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card. When the data is required for the FOMA terminal handset, transfer it to the FOMA terminal handset (☎ P. 339).

Image list screen layout

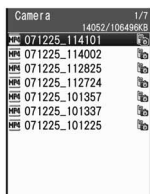
Select a view method from the following three settings.



12-part



20-part



List display

- In 12-part and 20-part, , , or appears in place of image if movie/i-motion corresponds with below.
 - Data displayed as
 - Voice only data
 - Unsupported image size data
 - Unsupported image file format data
 - Data displayed as
 - Text only data
 - Data whose images may not be able to be displayed (corrupted)
 - Data to which FOMA card restriction function applied in the [Movable contents] folder
 - Data displayed as
 - Data saved in the middle of download

Note

- Enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters for title name of movies/i-motion. However, only 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters are shown on screen. If a title name exceeds 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters, up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "...".
- While showing the List display, press to view the next page and to view the previous page.

Changing display method

<Switch view mode>

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [i-motion] ▶ select folder ▶ ▶ [i-motion setting].

- 2 Select [Switch view mode] ▶ select a display method.

Display method	12-part	List display
	20-part	

Movie/i-motion types and their icons

Movie/i-motion types

MP4 (Mobile MP4)		ASF
Unlimited	Limited	

Mark types

	Movie/i-motion with FOMA card restrictions applied
	Movie/i-motion with the restriction of mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal
	Movie/i-motion downloaded from i-mode
	Movie/i-motion retrieved via microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmissions or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately)
	Movie/i-motion shot with camera

Repeating Movies <Continuous Play>

Play all movies/i-motion in a folder in succession.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [i-motion] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Continuous play] ▶ [Start cont play].

- Press during playback to pause.
- Press during playback to stop. Press to resume stopped movie/i-motion from beginning and continuous play is resumed.
- [Data unable to be played skipped] appears for movies/i-motion with restrictions on number of replays or expiration date and the next movie/i-motion plays.
- Message does not appear for movies/i-motion saved in the middle of download and the next movie/i-motion plays. No confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the remaining data.

Setting continuous play

Perform settings for movie/i-motion continuous play.

Setting	Function
Repeat playback	Sets repeat settings on or off. Settings are applied to all folders.
Sample playback	Sets maximum playback time. Settings are applied to all folders.

Repeating playback

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Data box]** ▶ **[i-motion]** ▶ **select folder and press** **Ⓜ** ▶ **[Continuous play]** ▶ **[Repeat playback]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

Sampling playback

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Data box]** ▶ **[i-motion]** ▶ **select folder and press** **Ⓜ** ▶ **[Continuous play]**.

- Select **[Sample playback]** ▶ **select a playback time**.

Playback time	5 seconds	No
	15 seconds	

Attaching and Sending Movie/i-motion <i-motion Mail>

Attach movie/i-motion to i-mode mail and send.

- Send movies/i-motion of up to 2 MB in MP4 format.

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Data box]** ▶ **[i-motion]** ▶ **select folder** ▶ **select movie/i-motion and press** **Ⓜ** **(Mail)**.

- Selected movie/i-motion is attached.

- Select **[For mail (short)]** or **[For mail (long)]** if movie/i-motion exceeds 500 KB.

- Select **[For mail (short)]** to cut out the first approximately 500 KB automatically.

- For movie/i-motion which exceed 2 MB, select **[For mail (long)]** to cut out the first approximately 2 MB automatically. Movie/i-motion larger than 500 KB and 2 MB or less are not cut.

Compose message	
To	
Sub	
Msg	01 attachments 0.0KB

- Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Setting Movie/i-motion as the Stand-by Display <AV Settings>

- If animated GIF, Flash movie or i-motion is set as stand-by, playback stops when switched to Calendar display.
- Refer to P. 128 and P. 130 for the image size of movie/i-motion that can be set as the stand-by or receive display.
- Movie/i-motion in the [Movable contents] folder in microSD Memory Card can be set as stand-by display or ring tone. The set movie/i-motion is transferred to the [i-mode] folder in Data box on the FOMA terminal handset.

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Data box]** ▶ **[i-motion]** ▶ **select folder** ▶ **select movie/i-motion and press** **Ⓜ** ▶ **[AV settings]**.

- Movies/i-motion with voice only (i-motion with no video) and ASF format movies/i-motion are not available.

- Select an item.

Item	Stand-by display	Msg R ring tone
	Phone ring tone	Msg F ring tone
	V.phone ring tone	SMS ring tone
	User unset tone	Mail rcvd screen
	Mail ring tone	PushTalk tone

- When stand-by is selected, select **[Yes]** ▶ **[Normal]**/**[Zoom]**.

- Zoom is not available for image sizes other than **sQCIF: 128×96** or **QCIF: 176×144**.

Note

- Some i-motion are not available to be set as the stand-by display.
- Set movie/i-motion stand-by volume with **Key/Standby i-motion**.
- Only movie/i-motion with voice only (i-motion with no video) are available for PushTalk tone.

Edit Movie

Editing Movies (SPEEDYLAB)

Edit shot movies.

- Movie editing may not be available for some data recorded on devices other than FOMA SH905i.
- Tickers do not appear even if movies/i-motion have tickers. However, whether the movies/i-motion have a ticker can be confirmed with the playback icon (P. 322) during playback.

Opening Movie Editing Screen

<Edit Movie>

- In stand-by, press **[Data box]** **[i-motion]** **select folder** **select movie and press [Image cutter]** **[Edit data]** **[Edit movie]**.

- Alternatively, press **[Image cutter]** while playing movie (step 3 on P. 321) and select **[Edit data]** **[Edit movie]** to stop and open movie editing screen.

- Press **[Fast Forward]** to forward/rewind frame. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast rewind. Sound is off.
- Press **[1]** to **[9]** to jump to specified location. Depending on the movie, this feature may be unavailable.

Editing type icon



Movie editing screen

Editing type icons

	Capture still (P. 327)
	Image cutter (P. 326)
	File property (P. 326)
	Save (P. 326)
	End

Key operations in movie editing screen

Perform one of the following to select editing types.

- Press **[Image cutter]** and select editing type.
- Select editing type icon with **[Cursor]**.

Related Operations

View detailed information <File property>

In the movie editing screen, press **[Image cutter]** **[File property]**.

- To end viewing: Press **[Cursor]** or **[CLR]**.

Cutting Movies <Image Cutter>

Cut out a portion and save as a new movie.

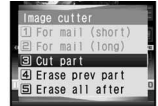
Setting start and end points and cutting

Set starting point and ending point and cut.

- Not available for movies that are shorter than 3 seconds.

- In the movie editing screen (P. 326), press **[Image cutter]** **select cut method**.

- Press **[Fast Forward]** to forward/rewind frame. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast rewind. Sound is off.
- Ending point must come after starting point.
- When the portion to cut is selected, a confirmation screen for the cut movie size appears.



To set starting point and ending point and cut	[Cut part] → [Origin] → [Last] → [Verify]
To cut from starting point to end of file	[Erase prev part] → [Origin] → [Verify]
To cut from beginning of file to ending point	[Erase all after] → [Last] → [Verify]

- Save movie.



To save edited movie	[Image cutter] → [Save] → [OK]
To change title and save	[Image cutter] → [Save] → [Edit title] → edit title and press [Cursor] → [OK] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters for still picture captures. Enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters for other movies.
To change folder and save	[Image cutter] → [Save] → [Change folder] → select folder and press [Image cutter] → [OK] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Changing folders may not be available for movies on microSD Memory Cards.
To attach to i-mode mail and send	[Image cutter] → [Save] → [Compose message] → compose/send i-mode mail <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Movie is automatically saved. ● Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.
To not save edited movie	[Image cutter] → [End] → [Yes]

To play edited movie	
----------------------	--

- When edited movie is larger than 500 KB, a screen to select whether to convert for mail attachment appears. Select [For mail (short)] to cut out the first approximately 500 KB automatically. Select [For mail (long)] to cut out the first approximately 2 MB automatically. To save as is, select [None].
- Next cutting cannot be performed until saving the movie.

Cutting for Mail

Cut movie to attach to i-mode mail.

- Not available for movies that are approximately 500 KB or less.

1 In the movie editing screen (☞ P. 326), press [Image cutter] ▶ select cut method.

For mail (short)	To automatically cut approximately 500 KB from starting point.
For mail (long)	To automatically cut approximately 2 MB from starting point.

- Press to forward/rewind frame. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast rewind.

2 Press (Origin) at starting point ▶ [Verify].

3 Save movie.

- Refer to step 2 of "Setting start and end points and cutting" on P. 326 for details on saving.

Saving Movie as a Still Picture

<Capture Still>

Save a scene from a movie as a still picture. Handle saved still picture as those shot with FOMA terminal. Attach to i-mode mail and send.

- Capture still is not available for voice only data.

1 In the movie editing screen (☞ P. 326), press and select scene to save as still picture and press [Capture still].

2 Select [OK].

- Scene is saved as a still picture.
- Refer to step 3 of "Changing Size of Still Pictures" on P. 317 for details on saving.

Video Player

Playing Back Videos

Record movies of 1Seg programs with the FOMA terminal to save into the 1Seg in Data box or 1Seg folder in the microSD Memory Card and the movies can be played back with Video player.

- Movie editing is not available for 1Seg programs recorded as video data.

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] ▶ [1Seg].

- To check the video file in the microSD card, press (→microSD). To check the video file in FOMA terminal handset again, press (→phone).



Video file list

2 Select video file.



Playback display

Screen for playing video

- Video is displayed in full-screen when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position.
- When a video is played, data broadcasting appears. They are available in the broadcast station of a recorded program. Refer to P. 298 for details on using data broadcasting.
- When playing the video that was ended during the previous playback, the playback resumes from the spot where the playback stopped last time.
- When a video is played, TVlink list cannot be displayed.

Note

- When playing back the video edited (divided) by other devices, movie or sound may break up.

Key operations during playback

	Normal position	Viewer position (Full-screen)
To fast forward (▶▶×1, ▶▶×2, ▶▶×3, ▶▶×4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To speed up fast forward: Press repeatedly. ● To fast forward at speed of ▶▶×2: Press for 1+ seconds. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To speed up fast forward: Press repeatedly. ● To fast forward at speed of ▶▶×2: Press for 1+ seconds.

	Normal position	Viewer position (Full-screen)
To fast rewind (◀×1, ▶×2, ▶×3, ▶×4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To speed up fast rewind: Press repeatedly. To fast rewind at speed of ▶×2: Press for 1+ seconds. 	(Eco) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To speed up fast rewind: Press (Eco) repeatedly. To fast rewind at speed of ▶×2: Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds.
To pause	(Pause) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press again to resume playback. 	(Pause) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press again to resume playback.
To stop	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press (Play) while stopped to resume playback from the beginning. 	—
To jump to assigned location*2	1 to 9	—
To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10)	/ or (Eco) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keep pressed to adjust volume continuously. 	/
To mute/disable		—
To turn Subtitles ON/OFF	Press for 1+ seconds	—
To display Submenu		—
To switch video mode/data broadcasting mode		—
To end video player	or → [Yes]	(P) → [Yes] → (P)

*1 Play video, voice and sound at approximately 1.3 times speed of normal.

*2 Press 1 during playback to return to the beginning of video. Press 2 to 9 to jump to locations divided by one-ninth increments of the recording time. However, it may not be possible to jump when the recording time is short.

Note

- Data broadcasting is activated only when a video is paused or played in the normal speed or ▶▶.
- When the video playback ends, the data broadcasting also ends.

Related Operations

Switch the display size of data broadcasting <Display mode (L)>

- In the screen for playing video, press ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Display mode (L)].
- Select [Video+data]/[Data broadcasting].

Switch the display size of video <Display mode (W)>

<Display mode (W)>

- In the screen for playing video, press ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Display mode (W)].
- Select [Video+data]/[Video (default)]/[Video (full-screen)].

Set whether to display the icon when video is displayed at full-screen in the viewer position <Mark display (W)>

<Mark display (W)>

- In the screen for playing video, press ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Mark display (W)].
- Select [Temporary display]/[Full-time display].

Set whether to display broadcast station or program name <App area (L)>

- In the screen for playing video, press ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [App area (L)].
- Select [Temporary display]/[Full-time display].

Set subtitles while playing video <Subtitles>

- In the screen for playing video, press ▶ [Subtitles].
- Select [ON]/[OFF].

Set subtitles when activating Video player <Startup settings>

<Startup settings>

- In the screen for playing video, press ▶ [Subtitles] ▶ [Startup settings].
- Select [ON]/[Linked manner]/[OFF].

Set Dolby sound <Dolby sound set.>

- In the screen for playing video, press ▶ [Dolby Sound Set].
- Select [Link genres]/[Normal]/[News]/[Sports]/[Drama]/[Variety]/[Music]/[Movie]/[Original].
 - When [Original] is selected: Select [Sound Space]/[Natural Bass]/[Sound Level Cnt]/[Mono-to-Stereo] ▶ [ON]/[OFF] ▶ .

Set sound effects of data broadcasting <Sound FX>

<Sound FX>

- In the screen for playing video, press ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Sound FX] ▶ [ON]/[OFF].

Display the confirmation screen for connection <Reset status disp>

<Reset status disp>

- In the screen for playing video, press ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Reset status disp] ▶ enter terminal security code and press ▶ [Yes].

Switch between video mode and data broadcasting mode <Switch>

- In the screen for playing video, press ▶ [Switch].

Related Operations

View key list <Key list>

In the screen for playing video, press **[OK]** ▶ **[Key list]**.

Note (Related operations)

Display mode (L)

- Available when the FOMA terminal is in the normal position.
- Even if the setting is changed, the setting returns to [Video+data] when Video player is ended.

Display mode (W)

- Available when the FOMA terminal is in the viewer position.

Mark display (W)

- Set whether to show icons (indicating Clock, Signal status, etc.) that appear on the upper side of the screen. If [Temporary display] is set, the icons appear for approximately 2 seconds when the volume is changed.

Application area (L)

- Set whether to display the name of program or play time. If [Temporary display] is set, the name or play time appears for approximately 2 seconds when the operation such as pausing/playing is made.

Subtitles

- Whether to show subtitles when activating Video player follows the setting for activating Video player.
- Subtitles are not available for some programs.

Startup settings

- If [Linked manner] is set, subtitles appear when Video player is activated in Manner mode.

Video File List Screen Layout

Select a view method from the following three settings.



12-part



20-part



List display

- In 12-part and 20-part, if a video file image does not appear due to the broadcast wave status at video recording or other causes, **[No image]** appears in place of the image.

Changing the display method for the video file list screen <Switch view mode>

1

In the video file list screen, press **[OK]** ▶ **[1Seg data settings]**.

2

Select **[Switch view mode]** ▶ select a display method.

Display method	12-part	List display
	20-part	

Setting Image and Voice of Current Playback <1Seg Settings>

1

In the screen for playing video, press **[OK]** ▶ **[1Seg settings]** ▶ select a setting item.

To set Vibrant image mode	[Vibrant image mode] → [Normal]/[Dynamic]/[Movie]
To adjust display brightness	[Brightness] → [Manual] → [Up/Down] → [OK] ● To automatically adjust the brightness according to the surrounding light: Select [Brightness] → [Automatic].
To switch Main/Sub language	[Main/Sub language] → [Main]/[Sub]/[Main + Sub] ● When Video player is ended, the setting returns to [Main].
To switch Main language/Sub language	[Change language] → [Main language]/[Sub language] ● When Video player is ended, the setting returns to [Main language].

Managing Video File

Delete and sort video file.

Editing title <Edit title>

1

In the video file list screen, select video file and press **[OK]** ▶ **[Edit title]**.

2

Edit the title and press **[OK]**.

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters.
- To delete title, press **[CLR]** for 1+ seconds in the title editing screen.

Deleting video <Delete>

1

In the video file list screen, select video file and press **[OK]** ▶ **[Delete]**.

2

Select deletion method.

To delete video file individually	[Delete one] → [Yes]
-----------------------------------	----------------------

To delete video files collectively	[Delete selected] → select video file (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select or clear all.
To delete all video files in the folder	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Viewing detailed information

<File property>

- Refer to P. 349 for details on the information.

1 In the video file list screen, select video file and press ▶ [File property].

- In the screen for playing video, press and select [File property].
- Press or to end checking.

Moving video to microSD Memory Card <Move → microSD>

1 In the video file list screen, select video file and press ▶ [Move → microSD].

2 Select a moving method.

To move video file individually	[Move one]
To move video files collectively	[Move selected] → select video file (repeatable) → ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select or clear all.
To move all video files in the folder	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press

Sorting video <Sort>

Change the list order to one of the following.

- The setting continues even if the video file list screen is ended after sorting.

Date (new→old)	Latest air date first
Date (old→new)	Oldest air date first
Program name	Phonetic order of program names
Channel name	Phonetic order of channel names
Size (big→small)	Largest files first
Size (small→big)	Smallest files first

1 In the video file list screen, press ▶ [1Seg data settings] ▶ [Sort].

2 Select sorting method.

Chara-den Player

What Is Chara-den?

During a Videophone call, send a character instead of camera image. The character moves its mouth according to sound (for lip-sync supported data), raises its arms and legs, dances, and performs various actions.

Check Chara-den's movements anytime with Chara-den player.

- Chara-den can also be downloaded from sites and Internet web pages (☞ P. 194).
- Keypad sound is disabled for the character operation during a Videophone call or while using Chara-den player.

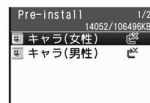
Playing Chara-den <Chara-den Player>

Play Chara-den saved in Chara-den of Data box. Also perform actions.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den].

2 Select folder.

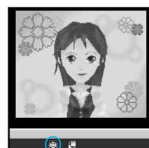
- To view the next page of the image list, press .
- To view the previous page, press .



Chara-den list

3 Select Chara-den.

- Chara-den is played.
- Press to switch between Full-action mode and Part-action mode.
- To perform actions, press and select an action or directly enter a shown action number (1 to 9).



Action mode icon

Alternatively, directly enter the action number without opening the Action list.

- Refer to P. 78 for details on preset Chara-den actions.

Action mode icon

	Full-action mode
	Part-action mode

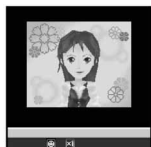
Note

Key operations for Chara-den player

Change action	Change screen size (☞ P. 331)	Action list (☞ P. 331)
	[1] to [9]	[0]
Submenu	Actions (☞ P. 331)	Cancel action (☞ P. 331)

Adjusting screen size <Screen size>

Adjust screen size.



1/1 (actual size)



Zoom ↑

1 During Chara-den playback (☞ step 3 on P. 330), press (1/1).

- To return to zoom size, press (Zoom ↑).

Related Operations

Set Playback light <Backlight time>

1 During Chara-den playback, press ▶ [Backlight time].

- To set from Chara-den list: Press ▶ [Chara-den disp set] ▶ [Backlight time].

2 Select [As light setting]/[Always ON].

Set Chara-den as Videophone substitute image <Substitute image>

During Chara-den playback, press ▶ [Substitute image] (or ▶ [Save Chara-den] ▶ [Substitute image]).

- To set from Chara-den list: Select a Chara-den and press ▶ [Save image] ▶ [Substitute image].

Set phonebook <Image for call>

1 During Chara-den playback, press ▶ [Image for call] (or ▶ [Save Chara-den] ▶ [Image for call]).

- To set from Chara-den list: Select a Chara-den and press ▶ [Save image] ▶ [Image for call].

2 Select [New entry]/[Add to phonebook].

3 Add to phonebook (☞ P. 102).

Calling with Chara-den as substitute image <Chara-den call>

Select a Chara-den to use as substitute image.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den] ▶ select a folder ▶ select a Chara-den and press ▶ [Chara-den call].

- To make a call during playback, press and select [Chara-den call].

2 Select input method and make a Videophone call.

To make a call from phonebook	[Search phonebook] → select person to call →
To make a call with direct input	[Direct input] → enter phone number and press

Controlling Chara-den

Making a Chara-den perform actions

Make Chara-den perform actions during Videophone calls or Chara-den playback.

- Select from a range of expressions, including happiness and anger, while in Full-action mode.
- Change to Part-action mode to move body parts.
- Perform different actions together in Part-action mode.
- Depending on the Chara-den, sound from a microphone can be synchronized with the movement of the mouth.
- Types of actions vary for each Chara-den.
- Depending on the Chara-den, actions may not be available.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den] ▶ select a folder ▶ select a Chara-den.

2 Press (Action) ▶ select action.

- To show action list details, press .
- Alternatively, enter the action number by pressing to to have the character perform an action. Or, directly enter the action number without opening the Action list.
- Refer to P. 78 for details on preset Chara-den actions.
- Press to end action.



Note

- Depending on the Chara-den, some actions may be performed automatically.

Managing Folders

Creating folders <New folder>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den] ▶ ▶ [Manage folders].

2 Select [New folder] ▶ enter folder name and press .

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.
- To erase "New folder" name, press for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Editing folder name <Edit folder name>

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Manage folders].

2 Select [Edit folder name] ▶ edit folder name and press

- To erase folder name, press **CLR** for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

■ Deleting folder <Delete>

- Only created folders can be deleted.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Delete].

2 Select deletion method.

To delete folder individually	[Delete one folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete folders collectively	[Delete sel folders] → select folder (repeatable) → → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all Chara-den (keep folders)	[Del all (keep fol)] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete all folders and Chara-den	[Del all (del fol)] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Note

- Folders containing data set as Substitute image, etc. cannot be deleted. Disable setting and try again.

Managing Chara-den

Edit Chara-den title, delete and sort Chara-den.

■ Editing title <Edit title>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den] ▶ select folder.

2 Select Chara-den and press ▶ [Edit title].

3 Select [Direct input] ▶ edit the title and press .

- To return to original title, select [Back to original].
- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters. However, up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen. If a title name exceeds 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters, up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "...".
- To erase current title, press **CLR** for 1+ seconds in the title editing screen.

■ Sorting Chara-den <Sort>

Change the list order to one of the following.

- The setting continues even if the Chara-den list screen is ended after sorting.

Date (new→old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first
Date (old→new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first
By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana
By source	Blank → i-mode, by source
Size (big→small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first
Size (small→big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den] ▶ select folder ▶ ▶ [Chara-den disp set].

2 Select [Sort] ▶ select a sorting method.

■ Moving Chara-den to another folder <Move to folder>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den] ▶ select folder.

2 Select Chara-den and press ▶ [Move to folder].

3 Select a transfer method.

To move Chara-den individually	[Move one] → select folder and press
To move Chara-den collectively	[Move selected] → select Chara-den (repeatable) → → select folder and press ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To move all Chara-den in folder	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press → select folder and press

Note

- Only one data can be moved from a created folder to the default folder.

Viewing properties <File property>

The following information is shown.

- Date/time saved
- Display size
- File size
- File restriction: [Restricted]
- Ph/book settings: [ON/OFF]
- Video-phone: [ON/OFF]
- File name
- Title (Original)
- Source
- Move to the microSD: [unavailable]

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den] ▶ select folder.

2 Select Chara-den and press [File property].

- To end viewing, press or .

Deleting Chara-den <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den] ▶ select folder.

2 Select Chara-den and press [Delete].

3 Select deletion method.

To delete Chara-den individually	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete Chara-den collectively	[Delete selected] → select Chara-den (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all Chara-den in folders	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Note

- Delete all will erase preset Chara-den as well.
- All in folder is not available for data set as the Substitute image, etc.
- To use again after erasing, download preset Chara-den from [SH-MODE] in the iMenu site (P. 194).

Melody Player

Playing Back Melodies

Melodies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages and melodies attached to Message R/F or i-mode mail are saved to Melody of Data box. They can be played with Melody player.

- If Vibration mode (P. 125) is set to [Melody ON], vibrator operates when playing melody.

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] ▶ [Melody].

- To view melodies saved in microSD Memory Card, select [→microSD]. To view melodies saved in FOMA terminal handset again, select [→phone].



2 Select a folder.

- To view the next page of the image list, press . To view the previous page, press .

3 Select melody.

- Melody is played.
- Press while playing to stop and the melody list screen reappears.

Note

- Some melodies may not be played.
- Set melody as ring tone (P. 335).
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if Melody player is ended, and is used the next time Melody player is started.

Setting Playback Effects <Stereo Effects>

Change stereo effects in Melody stereo effects (P. 124).

1 While playing melody (step 3 on P. 333), press [Melody settings] ▶ [Stereo effects] ▶ select a playback effect.

- Alternatively, press (3D Stereo) while playing melody.

Stereo/3D sound	Melodies with 3D data are played in 3D sound. Melodies without 3D data are played in stereo sound.
Surround*1	Melodies are played back in surround sound. Melodies are played back in surround sound even when 3D data is included.
OFF	Playback effects are not set. Melodies play in monaural*2.

*1 Playback format that offers rich, vibrant sound

*2 Playback format that does not feature rich sound

Related Operations

Adjust volume <Set volume>

In the screen in step 2 of “Playing Back Melodies” on P. 333, press [Melody settings] ▶ [Set volume] ▶ /◁▶ .

Related Operations

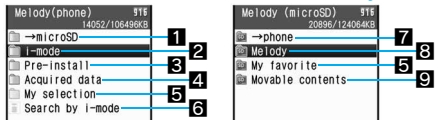
Set Equalizer <Equalizer>

- 1 While melody is playing, press ▶ [Melody settings] ▶ [Equalizer].
- 2 Select [Normal]/[Rock]/[Pops]/[Classic].

Melody Folder List Screen Layout

Select [→microSD] or press in Melody folder list screen and select [Switch phone↔SD] to switch to microSD Memory Card folder.

FOMA terminal handset microSD Memory Card.



- 1 Shows folder list screen of microSD Memory Card
- 2 Folder for melodies retrieved from sites and Internet web pages, Message R/F or i-mode mail
- 3 Folder for melody preset in FOMA terminal handset
- 4 Folder for melodies retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately)
- 5 Created melody folder (see P. 343, P. 347)
- 6 Connects to i-mode
- 7 Shows folder list screen of FOMA terminal handset
- 8 Preset melody folder
- 9 Folder for melodies downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal

Melody types and their icons

Melody types

SMF	MFi (no 3D data)	MFi (3D data)

Mark types

	Melodies with FOMA card restrictions applied
	Melodies downloaded from i-mode
	Melodies retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Cards, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately)
	Melodies with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal

Note

- When MFi (3D data) is saved in the [Movable contents] folder, MFi (no 3D data) icon appears. However, 3D data is retained.

Playing a Series of Melodies

<Continuous Play>

Play all melodies in a folder in succession.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Melody] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Continuous play].

To skip to the next melody	
To return to the beginning of the current melody	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press again at the beginning of a melody to return to previous melody.

Specifying Start Position <Start Position>

Only the specified section can be played.

- The play section is specified in advance and cannot be changed.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Melody] ▶ select folder ▶ ▶ [Melody settings].

- 2 Select [Start position] ▶ select a playback method.

Playback method	Play all	Play portion
-----------------	----------	--------------

Note

- The entire melody is played when the start position is not specified even if the playback method is set to [Play portion].

Attaching Melodies and Sending i-mode Mail

Melody may not be played properly if other party is using a model released prior to FOMA SH900i. Select melody (SMF, MFi) from Melody of Data box and attach to i-mode mail.

- Maximum size for attachment is 2 MB. Files exceeding the limit are not attached.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Melody] ▶ select folder ▶ select melody ▶ (Mail).

- Selected melody file is attached.

- 2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Note

- Some MFi melodies, melodies attached to mail, melodies downloaded from i-mode, or SMF melodies acquired from i-appli with file restrictions cannot be attached to i-mode mail.

Setting a Melody as the Ring Tone

<Ring Tone>

Set melodies saved on the FOMA terminal handset as the ring tone.

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Data box]** ▶ **[Melody]** ▶ **select folder** ▶ **select melody and press** **⊞** ▶ **[Ring tone]**.

- Alternatively, select a melody and press **⊞** (Ring tone).

2 Select an item.

microSD Memory Card

Copy phonebook, mail and bookmarks from FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card or copy from microSD to FOMA terminal handset. Also, view microSD data from the FOMA terminal. Refer to P. 157 for an estimated number of recordable still pictures/movies and voice recording times for microSD Memory Cards. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards and microSD Memory Card adapter at home electronics shops. Be aware of the following when using the microSD Memory Card.

- Do not insert or remove microSD Memory Card while FOMA terminal is on. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Insert the microSD Memory Card into the slot correctly. The microSD will not function when not inserted correctly.
- [microSD in use] or [Reading microSD] may appear when inserting the microSD Memory Card. In such cases, wait a moment before using.
- FOMA SH905i is compatible with commercially available microSD Memory Cards up to 4 GB (As of October 2007). Refer to the following sites for the latest information such as the manufacturer, available capacity, etc. of the microSD Memory Card. In addition, for microSD Memory Cards that are not provided in the sites, some of them may not operate.

- Accessing [SH-MODE] from i-mode (As of October 2007)
[iMenu] → [メニュー/検索]
(Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile phone manufacturer) → [SH-MODE]
- Accessing from a PC



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh905i/>

Note that the provided information is the information checked for operation. DoCoMo shall not be liable for all operations.

※SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.

- The size of a file that can be used on the FOMA terminal is up to 2 GB.
- The size of a file with which 1Seg can be recorded is up to 2 GB.
- When music data is saved using SD-Jukebox, microSD Memory Cards of up to 2 GB are supported.
- FOMA SH905i allows you to transfer downloaded images, movies/i-motion, Melody, Chaku-uta full® and Kisekai Tool have restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal to microSD Memory Card. However, data cannot be saved when IP (Information Provider) does not provide permission.
- Be aware of the following for microSD Memory Cards.
 - When a microSD Memory Card is inserted into the FOMA terminal, data is written for the use. The longer write time is required depending on the microSD Memory Card to use (Up to approximately 30 seconds). During this time, do not remove the card or turn off the power. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
 - Not all microSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to use microSD Memory Cards formatted by FOMA terminal. Refer to P. 343 for details on formatting. When a card is formatted, all saved data is lost.
- Do not insert or remove microSD Memory Card while editing data on a microSD. Also do not turn off the FOMA terminal or microSD inserted device while editing data. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Data saved on microSD Memory Cards from other devices may not be displayed or played on FOMA terminal. Some data saved on microSD Memory Card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- When a microSD Memory Card used with another FOMA terminal or PC is inserted into the FOMA SH905i, it sometimes cannot be used. Delete unnecessary data and insert again.
- To save music data to microSD Memory Card using SD-Jukebox, there are two methods available. One is to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately), and the other is to use a PC or SD Memory Card reader/writer with an SD Memory slot supporting the copyright protection function.
- Dictionary data backed up to microSD Memory Card cannot be viewed.
- Back up the data saved in microSD Memory Card and store in another place. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss or change of the saved data.

Inserting/Removing the microSD Memory Card

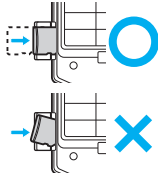
Inserting microSD Memory Card

Turn off FOMA terminal before inserting microSD Memory Card.

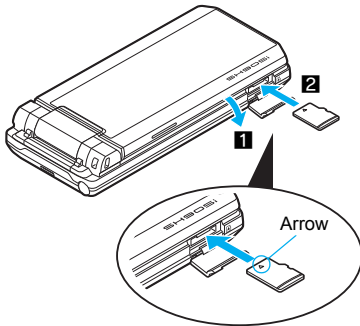
1 Open microSD Memory Card slot cover (1).

2 Slowly insert microSD Memory Card with the arrow (▲) facing up as shown in the diagram (2).

- Do not force the card in at an angle or with the wrong side up. The microSD Memory Card slot may be damaged.
- Push slowly with finger until a click is heard.



3 Close microSD Memory Card slot cover.



Removing microSD Memory Card

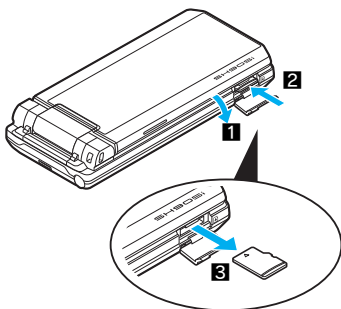
Turn off FOMA terminal before removing microSD Memory Card.

1 Open microSD Memory Card slot cover (1) and gently push card in (2).

- Push until a click is heard. microSD Memory Card springs forward. Excessive force may damage FOMA terminal or card.

2 Remove microSD Memory Card (3).

- Remove slowly and straight. Close microSD Memory Card slot cover after removing.



Note

- Keep your face away from microSD Memory Card when inserting or removing card. Card may pop out.
- To remove microSD Memory Card, press microSD Memory Card lightly until a click is heard and then pull out. Excessive force may damage FOMA terminal or card.
- Store microSD in included case after removing.
- An alert tone sounds when a microSD Memory Card is inserted or removed while the power is on.

microSD Memory Card Features

Copy FOMA terminal handset data to microSD Memory Card.

Select Copy one, Copy selected or Copy all.

Copy entire groups or folders for some functions.

Data available when copying from FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card

Function	Total*1	Copy one/ Copy selected/ Copy all	Copy all in group	Copy all in folder
Phonebook*2	Combined maximum of up to 65,535 items	○	○	—
Schedule*3, 4		○	—	—
Text memo		○	—	—
Bookmark*5		○	—	○
i-mode mail/SMS/ Area Mail*6		○	—	○
Still picture*7, 8	999 folders*9/up to 400 still pictures per folder (P. 157)	○	—	○
Movie*7	999 folders/ up to 400 movies per folder (P. 158)	○*10	—	○
Melody*7	999 folders/ up to 400 melodies per folder	○	—	○
PDF*7, 11	999 folders/ up to 400 files per folder	○	—	○
ToruCa*7	999 folders/ up to 999 ToruCa per folder	○	—	○

Function	Total*1	Copy one/ Copy selected/ Copy all	Copy all in group	Copy all in folder
Location service client	999 folders/ up to 999 clients per folder	○*12	—	—

- *1 The above numbers may lessen depending on size of data and capacity of microSD Memory Card.
- *2 Secret settings, group number, group name, memory number, Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED color, mail/message LED color, Called LED pattern, Mail LED pattern, Substitute image settings and Phonebook 2in1 set are not copied. If [Image transfer] in phonebook is set to [No], Picture call setting is not copied. Even if [Image transfer] is set to [Yes], data with file restrictions (restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal) is not copied. Save destination for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.
- *3 Secret settings and alarm information (except set alarm time) are not copied. Contacts, image settings, TV timer and Recording timer are also not copied.
- *4 Holiday settings are not copied. Start date and time are entered for end date and time if entry with no end date and time is copied.
- *5 Folder information is not copied.
- *6 Reply to (Not available for Area Mail) or forward mail saved on microSD Memory Card. Mail saved in microSD cannot be protected. Folder information is not copied.
- *7 Copy only files that are not restricted for output from the FOMA terminal.
- *8 Frames are not copied to the microSD Memory Card.
- *9 Create up to 900 Camera folders (still picture).
- *10 Copy selected/Copy all are not available for voice only i-motion (melodies with no video).
- *11 Some PDF files that failed to download may not be copied to the microSD Memory Card.
- *12 Copy selected is not available.

Note

- Save still pictures and movies shot with FOMA terminal to microSD Memory Cards or FOMA terminal handset.
- Manager information is written to microSD Memory Card when data is copied.
- Some files directly copied from PC to microSD Memory Cards are not available on FOMA terminal. In such cases, use **DoCoMo keitai datalink**. Refer to P. 448 for details on downloading DoCoMo keitai datalink.
- While **Function lock** is set, locked data cannot be operated. Enter terminal security code to unlock temporarily and operate.

Note

ToruCa

- Details cannot be retrieved from **ToruCa** in a microSD Memory Card.
- Depending on the size, some ToruCa cannot be copied to a microSD Memory Card.

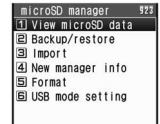
microSD manager screen

View microSD Memory Card data and back up or format card from microSD manager screen. In addition, connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) and use as a microSD reader/writer (☞ P. 345).

- Folder and file names on microSD Memory Cards are managed by "Manager info". Update Manager info if microSD Memory Card is used (data edited, added, deleted, etc.) with PC or other device (☞ P. 346).

Editing, saving, moving, or copying of data may not be available without proper manager information.

1 In stand-by, press  [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager].



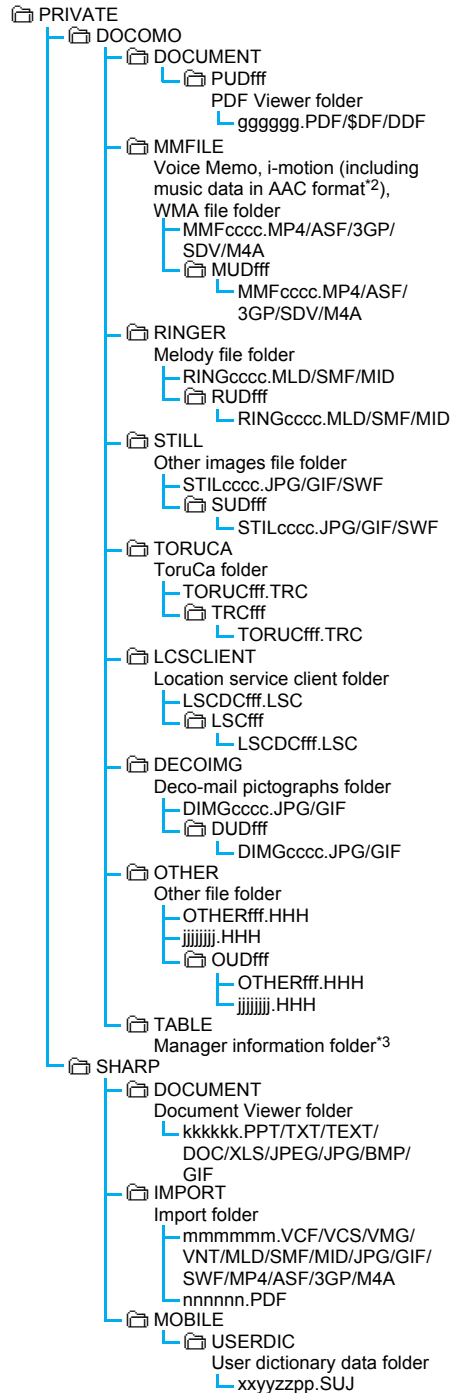
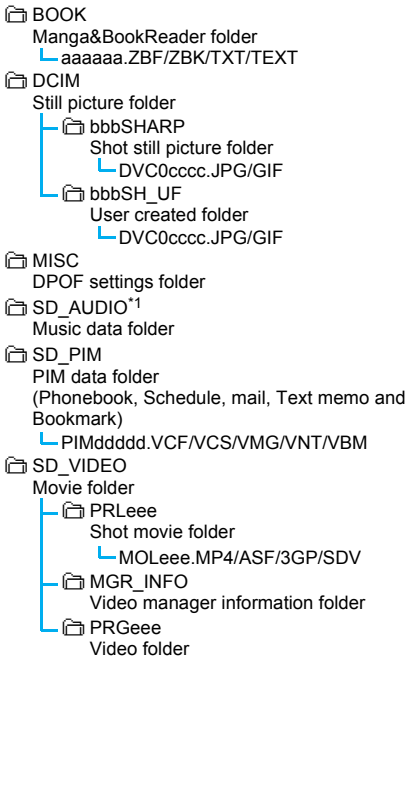
microSD manager screen

Folder Configuration of microSD Memory Card

The following shows the folder configuration of microSD Memory Card and file name of data to be stored in each folder.

- Even when writing data to the microSD Memory Card on the PC and others, it is required to create a folder according to the following folder configurations and file names.
- The rules of folder names and file names are as follows.
 - aaaaaa: Full path of 225 bytes or less in any single-byte alphanumeric characters, any double-byte characters or single-byte symbols of other than “_” (underbar), “=” (equal), “+” (plus) and “-” (minus)”
 - bbb: Three-digit single-byte numbers between 100 and 999 (The name can be changed but 000 to 099 are not available)
 - cccc: Four-digit single-byte numbers between 0001 and 9999
 - dddd: Five-digit single-byte numbers between 00001 and 65535

- eee: Three-digit single-byte alphanumeric characters between 001 and FFF (hexadecimal)
- fff: Three-digit single-byte numbers between 001 and 999
- gggggg: 60 bytes or less including double-byte characters (excluding file extensions)
- HHH: Three-digit or less single-byte alphanumeric characters (upper case)
- jjjjjjjj: Eight-digit or less single-byte alphanumeric characters
- kkkkkk: Full path of 225 bytes or less in any single-byte alphanumeric characters, any double-byte characters or single-byte symbols of “_ (underbar), = (equal), + (plus) and - (minus)”
- mmmmmm: 228 characters or less including double-byte characters (excluding file extensions)
- nnnnnn: 60 characters or less including double-byte characters (excluding file extensions)
- xxyyzzpp: In single-byte numbers, xx represent year, yy month, zz date, and pp 00 to 99



- *1 Depending on the settings of the PC in use, folder may not appear. In addition, do not delete, change or add files in the folder under [SD_AUDIO] directly from a PC. SD-Audio may not operate properly.
- *2 Refer to P. 321 and P. 381 for details on data type which can be stored.
- *3 [TABLE] folder contains folders for [DCIM], [MMFILE], [RINGER], [STILL], [SD_VIDEO], [DOCUMENT], [TORUCA], [LCSCLIENT], [DECOIMG] and [OTHER] information.
- *4 When Movable contents, i-αppli data, Chaku-uta full® or e-comic are saved to the microSD Memory Card, a folder is created starting with [SVC00001].
- *5 If data saved in the [Movable contents] folder (in the SD_BIND folder) in the microSD Memory Card are deleted, moved or edited by PC, the data in the [Movable contents] folder may not be accessed. In addition, if the microSD Memory Card or the battery pack is removed while data are being moved, deleted or edited, the data in the [Movable contents] folder may not be accessed. In this case, format the microSD Memory Card with FOMA SH905i (Formatting deletes all the data in the microSD Memory Card).
- If there is no corresponding folder when attempting to save data to the microSD Memory Card on the PC, create a folder according to the folder configuration and then save the data. Import folder is automatically created by inserting the microSD Memory Card in the FOMA terminal or formatting the card on the FOMA terminal (☞ P. 343).
 - Animated GIFs are stored in [STILL] folder. All other GIF files are stored in [DCIM] folder. However, Decomail pictograph are stored in [DECOIMG] folder.
 - Flash movies are stored in [STILL] folder.
 - Data on microSD Memory Cards do not appear properly on FOMA terminal if folder name is changed or deleted with PC.
 - If using models released prior to SH901iS and PDF files are saved in **PRIVATESHARPIDOCUMENT** folder in the microSD Memory Card, move files to **PRIVATEIDOCOMIDOCUMENTPUDfff** folder. Update the manager information of the microSD Memory Card after moving the files.
 - If models released prior to FOMA SH902i is used with only sound data (including music data in AAC format) of i-motion saved in **PRIVATESHARPIVOICE** folder in the microSD Memory Card, move the data to **PRIVATEIDOCOMIMMFILE** folder. After that, update the manager information of the microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal.

Contents Transfer Compatible









Transferring Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card






Transfer downloaded data that have restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal to a microSD Memory Card. Also, transfer (from a microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset) is also available. Data that can be transferred are images, movies/i-motion, melodies, Chaku-uta full® and Kisekae Tool.

- In microSD Memory Card, data are saved in the [Movable contents] folder.
- Transfer data set to [available]/[Yes (Same model only)] in their properties to a microSD Memory Card. Check transfer availability from [File property] (☞ P. 349).
- The data transferred to microSD Memory Card can be transferred to the FOMA terminal handset in the following situations:
 - When transfer to the FOMA terminal handset is [Available] and the inserted FOMA card is the one that was inserted at data retrieval
 - When transfer to the FOMA terminal handset is [Yes (Same model only)] and the inserted FOMA card is the one that was inserted at data retrieval

Moving Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card <Move → microSD>

Example: i-motion

- In stand-by, press  [Data box]  [i-motion]  select folder.**
 - To move all movies/i-motion collectively, select the folder in the folder list screen, press , select [Move → microSD] → [Move all], enter terminal security code and press .
- Select movie/i-motion and press  [Move/Copy]  [Move → microSD]  select a transfer method.**

To transfer one movie/i-motion	[Move one]
To transfer multiple movies/i-motion collectively	[Move selected] → select movie/i-motion (repeatable) →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press  (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To transfer all movies/i-motion in folder	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press 
To move to destination folder	[Select destination] → select destination folder and press 

Transferring Data in microSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal

<Move to the Phone>

Example: i-motion

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [i-motion] ▶ [→microSD].

- Alternatively, in the microSD manager screen (P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [i-motion].

2 Select the [Movable contents] folder ▶ select folder.

- To move all movies/i-motion collectively, select the [Movable contents] folder, press , select [Move to the phone] → [Move all], enter terminal security code and press .
- To transfer all movies/i-motion in folder, select folder, press , select [Move to the phone] → [All in folder], enter terminal security code and press .

3 Select movie/i-motion and press ▶ [Move/Copy] ▶ [Move to the phone] ▶ select a transfer method.

To move one movie/i-motion	[Move one]
To transfer multiple movies/i-motion collectively	[Move selected] → select movie/i-motion (repeatable) → ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To transfer all movies/i-motion in folder	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press

- To transfer to the FOMA terminal handset, the [i-motion] folder is the only destination where movie/i-motion can be transferred.

Copy to microSD

Copying from FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card

Copy data from data list screen or details screen to microSD Memory Card.

A commercially available microSD Memory Card is required (P. 335).

- Submenu numbers and function names vary depending on function and screen.

Example: When copying phonebook

1 In stand-by, press ▶ select name and press ▶ [Copy] ▶ [Copy to microSD].

- To check before copying, in the details screen, press and select [Copy] → [Copy 1 to microSD] → [Yes].

2 Select copy method.

To copy one	[Copy one] → [Yes]
To copy all in group	[All in group] → select group → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To copy all	[Copy all] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To copy selected	[Copy selected] → select name (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

Note

- When copying still pictures, melodies, movies/i-motion or PDF files from Data box to microSD Memory Card, destination folder can be selected. However, for Copy selected/Copy all of still pictures, the destination folder cannot be selected.
- A mail message with the total size exceeding 100 KB is copied after the attached files are deleted.
- Copy up to 2 MB of PDF files between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.
- Still pictures or movies/i-motion copied to or from microSD Memory Card may deteriorate in image quality or may have different file sizes. When the destination folder contains more than 400 still pictures, a new folder is automatically created and images are saved in the new folder.
- Select up to 50 mail messages, phonebook entries, schedules, Bookmarks and Text memo data when browsing microSD Memory Card for Copy selected or Delete selected.
- JPEG images in FOMA terminal handset may have different file sizes when copied to microSD Memory Card. When available memory space in FOMA terminal handset is low, images copied from handset to microSD Memory Card may not be copied back even if the original image is deleted.
- Images larger than maximum image size or file size may not be copied.
- An entry copied more than once is saved as separate data.
- Data may not be copied depending on microSD Memory Card available space.

Backup/Restore

Backing Up FOMA Terminal Handset Data

Backup data from FOMA terminal handset functions (Phonebook, Mail, Schedule, Bookmark, Text memo) and dictionary data to microSD Memory Card. Owner information is also forwarded with phonebook Backup/restore. A commercially available microSD Memory Card is required (P. 335).

- It is recommended to set this function when sharing information with same models or with microSD Memory Card compatible FOMA terminals, or when transferring data to a new handset, etc.
- When battery level is low, data may not be backed up properly. It is recommended to back up data while recharging battery.
- Backup data is given a name including the backup date and time. Set the correct date and time in advance (P. 47).
- Locked functions cannot be backed up while Function lock is set.
- Phonebook cannot be backed up while Keypad dial lock is set.
- Dictionary data (user dictionaries and dictionaries replaced with download dictionaries) is saved as one file.
- Data other than dictionary data is saved as one file per function.

Backing up from FOMA terminal to microSD Memory Card

1 In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[microSD manager]** **[Backup/restore]** **[Backup to microSD]** select a function.

- When [Mail] is selected, mail categories appear. Select mail to back up.
- When [Bookmark] is selected, select [i-mode] or [Full Browser].

2 Enter terminal security code and press **[Yes]**.

- To back up the phonebook, a confirmation screen for saving owner information appears. To save, select [Yes]. Even if the 2in1 is set to [B mode], the owner information of Number A is backed up.

Note

- Some data may not be forwarded depending on microSD Memory Card available space.
- Some backed up data may not be read with other FOMA terminals.
- The following phonebook data cannot be backed up.

■ Secret code	■ Called LED
■ Select ring tone	■ Mail/Message LED
■ Mail ring tone	■ Substitute image

 Save destination for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.
- When **Image transfer** is set to [Yes], image set to Picture call is also backed up. Images that are backed up include still pictures/movies shot with your FOMA terminal camera, and also edited, and those retrieved from the source other than camera, which are available for output from the FOMA terminal.
- When the phonebook is backed up, **Phonebook 2in1 set** is also backed up.
- Alarm information other than alarm time for Schedule is not backed up. Contacts and image settings are also not backed up.

Note

- If the number of registered entries in FOMA terminal handset phonebook is 0 when the phonebook is backed up, select [No] in the confirmation screen for saving owner information not to create the backup data.
- i-appli To, folder information, and non-redistributable attached files in mail are not backed up.
- FOMA card phonebook entries and SMS are not backed up.
- Dictionary data is backed up after the one in microSD Memory Card is deleted.

Reading backup data from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal

Read backup data from microSD Memory Card.

- When backing up data, keep or delete data in FOMA terminal handset.
- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.

1 In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[microSD manager]** **[Backup/restore]** **[Restore ← microSD]** select a function.

- Backup date appears in data name.
Example: December 25, 2007 1:05 P.M. → [datagr071225_1305]
- When [Mail] is selected, select mail categories to show mail backup list.
- When [Bookmark] is selected, select [i-mode] or [Full Browser].
- When [User dictionary] is selected, enter terminal security code and press **[Yes]** to overwrite or add.
- When data cannot be found, [No data] appears and the screen of step 1 reappears.
- Select data, press **[View]** and select [View data] to check contents.
- Select data, press **[View]** and select [File property] to check properties. Title, file format, file name, location, file restriction and saved date/time appear.

2 Select backup data **[enter terminal security code and press [Yes]]**.

3 Select [Add].

- To overwrite FOMA terminal data, select [Overwrite] → [Yes].

Note

- Because folder information is not saved with mail and **bookmarks**, received mail is saved to [Inbox], sent mail is saved to [Outbox], unsent mail is saved to [Drafts] and bookmarks are saved to [Bookmark] folder.
- Mail may take more time to transfer.

Note

- User dictionaries are updated and dictionaries replaced with Download dictionaries are added. The title of read dictionary is always [User dictionary1].
- When the phonebook backup data is restored, a confirmation screen asking whether to restore the owner information appears after step 3. Select [Yes] to overwrite other than the phone number registered at time of subscription. Group names are also overwritten. Group settings which cannot be overwritten are reset to initial settings. If [No] is selected for the phonebook backup data including the owner information, the owner information is saved as one entry in the phonebook.
- If the number of registered entries in the restored FOMA terminal phonebook reaches 1,000 when the phonebook backup data is restored, additional entries are not restored.
- When the phonebook backup data is restored, images set for Picture call are also restored. However, movies/i-motion cannot be restored.
- When [i-mode] or [Full Browser] is selected for restoration of bookmark backup data, both backup data appear. However, only the selected backup data can be restored.

Deleting backup data

- In stand-by, press [LifeKit] [microSD manager] [Backup/restore] [Restore ← microSD] select a function.**
 - When [Mail] is selected, select mail categories to show mail backup list.
 - When [Bookmark] is selected, select [i-mode] or [Full Browser]. Both backup data appear even when one of them is selected.

- Select data and press [Delete] select a deletion method.**

To delete data individually	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete data collectively	[Delete selected] → select data (repeatable) → → [Yes]
To delete all data in folder	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

View microSD Data**Previewing microSD Memory Card Data**

Check data copied to microSD Memory Card from various function screens or microSD manager screen.

A commercially available microSD Memory Card is required (P. 335).

Checking from various function screens

Check data from the list screen.

Example: When checking phonebook

- In stand-by, press [View microSD data].**

- Check data like checking data on FOMA terminal handset.
- Select backup data to check data on microSD Memory Card.
- When data cannot be found, [No data] appears and the previous screen reappears.

Checking from microSD manager screen

- In stand-by, press [LifeKit] [microSD manager] [View microSD data] select a function.**

- When data cannot be found, a message stating so appears and the previous screen reappears (excluding [Movable contents]).
- Select the folder to select the data in the folder.
- When [Mail] is selected, mail categories appear. Select mail to preview.

- Select data.**

- For details, refer to corresponding page for each function.

Note

- i-mode bookmarks and Full Browser bookmarks are shown together on the bookmark list of the microSD Memory Card. appears for i-mode bookmarks and appears for Full Browser bookmarks.

Copy to the Phone**Copying from microSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal**

Copy data saved on microSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset. Select **Copy one**, **Copy selected** or **Copy all**.

A commercially available microSD Memory Card is required (P. 335).

- Submenu numbers and function names vary depending on function and screen.

Example: When copying phonebook

- In stand-by, press [View microSD data].**

- Alternatively, in the microSD manager screen (P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [Phonebook].

- For [GPS], in the microSD manager screen (☰ P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [GPS], select a folder, select a data, press and select [Copy to the phone].

2 Select data and press ▶ [Copy to the phone] ▶ select a copy method.

To copy one	[Copy one] → [Yes]
To copy selected	[Copy selected] → select name (repeatable) → → [Yes]
To copy all	[Copy all] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

- When copying one phonebook entry, [Store in PushTalk phonebook?] appears. To store, select [Yes]. When multiple phone numbers are stored, select the phone number.

Note

- To copy the backed up data to microSD Memory Card, read the data (☰ P. 341) from microSD Memory Card. However, view the details screen to copy the only backed up data to the handset.
- Copy up to 100 KB for melodies and Flash movies, 2 MB for JPEG/GIF images and PDF files each, and 10 MB for movies on the FOMA terminal handset.

Copying phonebook entries

- [No Name] appears when data without name is copied.

Copying bookmarks

- [Will overwrite the same URL. Are you sure?] appears. To overwrite current data, select [Yes].
- If the maximum number of bookmarks is saved for either i-mode or Full Browser on the FOMA terminal handset, additional bookmarks are not copied when performing Copy selected/Copy all.

Managing microSD Memory Card

Create/delete folders and edit folder names to manage microSD Memory Card data for My picture, Music, i-motion, Melody, My Documents and Kisekae Tool of Data box, ToruCa, Manga&BookReader, GPS and Other. View data details or set still pictures to print in Print setting (DPOF) of Data box.

A commercially available microSD Memory Card is required (☰ P. 335).

- Save up to 400 files per folder on microSD Memory Card (excluding ToruCa, Location service client and other files). Refer to P. 336 and P. 339 for details on files and folders.

Formatting microSD Memory Card

<Format>

Format unformatted microSD Memory Cards on the FOMA terminal before use.

- Note that all data on microSD Memory Card is deleted when formatted.
- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Not all microSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to use microSD Memory Cards formatted by FOMA terminal.
- Note that if formatting is aborted, microSD Memory Card will not be recognized by the FOMA terminal, PCs and other devices. In such a case, format microSD Memory Card again.
- Do not remove microSD Memory Card during operation.
- [Unable to Format] may appear when some microSD Memory Card does not support the copyright protection function. microSD Memory Card may be used if inserted again. However, there is no guarantee for the save and copy of data since the microSD Memory Card is unsupported by FOMA terminal.
- For details on the manufacturer or available capacity, etc. of the microSD Memory Card, refer to P. 335.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [Format].

2 Enter terminal security code and press ▶ [Yes].

Managing Folders

Creating folders <New folder>

Example: My picture

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ [→microSD] ▶ ▶ [Manage folders].

- Alternatively, in the microSD manager screen (☰ P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [My picture].
- For [GPS]/[Other], in the microSD manager screen (☰ P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [GPS]/[Other], press and select [New folder].

2 Select [New folder] ▶ select folder to create.

Folder	Camera folder	Decomail pict
	Other still pic	

3 Enter folder name and press .

- To erase "New folder" name, press for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- When the microSD Memory Card memory is full, new folders cannot be created.
- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a folder name in the [Movable contents] folder. Enter up to 64 single-double-byte characters for the **Manga&BookReader** folder name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>**Example: My picture**

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ [→microSD] ▶ select folder and press [Manage folders].

- Alternatively, in the microSD manager screen (☞ P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [My picture].
- For [GPS]/[Other], in the microSD manager screen (☞ P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [GPS]/[Other], select a folder, press and select [Edit folder name].

2 Select [Edit folder name] ▶ edit folder name and press .

- To erase folder name, press for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited. In addition, folder names in the [Movable contents] folder can be edited.

Deleting folder <Delete>**Example: My picture**

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ [→microSD] ▶ select folder and press [Delete].

- Alternatively, in the microSD manager screen (☞ P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [My picture].
- For [GPS]/[Other], in the microSD manager screen (☞ P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [GPS]/[Other], select a folder, press and select [Delete]. Delete one folder.

2 Select deletion method.

To delete folder individually	[Delete one folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete folders collectively	[Delete sel folders] → select folder (repeatable) → → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

To delete all data (keep folders)	[Del all (keep fol)] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete all folders and data	[Del all (del fol)] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Note

- The folder displayed at the top of [Movable contents] folder is automatically created. The folder cannot be deleted.
- Only created folders can be deleted.

Managing Data

- Submenu numbers and function names vary depending on function and screen.

Viewing data details <Properties>**Example: Phonebook**

1 In stand-by, press [View microSD data] ▶ select data and press [Properties].

- Alternatively, in the microSD manager screen (☞ P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [Phonebook].
- To end viewing, press .

Deleting data <Delete>**Example: Phonebook**

1 In stand-by, press [View microSD data].

- Alternatively, in the microSD manager screen (☞ P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [Phonebook].
- For [GPS]/[Other], in the microSD manager screen (☞ P. 337), select [View microSD data] → [GPS]/[Other] and select a folder.

2 Select data and press [Delete].

3 Select deletion method.


To delete data individually	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete data collectively	[Delete selected] → select name (repeatable) → → [Yes]
To delete all data in folders	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Moving data to another folder

Move [GPS]/[Other] data to another folder.

- Refer to the corresponding page for details on each function other than [GPS]/[Other].

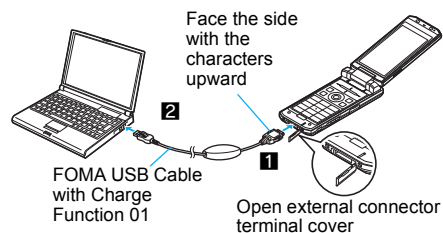
1 In the microSD manager screen (☞ P. 337), select [View microSD data] ▶ [GPS]/[Other].


2 Select a folder ▶ select data and press  ▶ [Move] ▶ select destination folder.





Using as microSD Reader/Writer <USB Mode Setting>

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) to read/write data from the PC.

Communication mode	Mode for packet transmissions, 64K data communications and sending and receiving data (OBEX) (☞ P. 446).
microSD mode	Mode for reading/writing the data saved on microSD Memory Card.
MTP mode	Mode for transferring music data to microSD Memory Card using Windows Media Player 10/11. Refer to P. 382 for details on saving.



1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [USB mode setting].

- Alternatively, press  in stand-by and select [Settings] → [General settings] → [USB mode setting].
- When steps 3 and 4 are performed before USB mode setting,  (USB mode setting) appears in stand-by on a personal computer with FOMA 通信設定ファイル (FOMA Communication Setting File) installed (☞ P. 448). In stand-by, press  and select  (USB mode setting) to show the USB mode setting screen.

2 Select [microSD mode] ▶ [Yes].

- To set MTP mode, select [MTP mode] → [Yes]. MTP mode cannot be selected when microSD Memory Card is not correctly inserted nor correctly recognized.

3 Insert the FOMA terminal side connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 into the external connection terminal on the FOMA terminal (**1**).

4 Insert the PC side connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 into the USB connector of the PC (**2**).

- To return to Communication mode, press a key other than the side key, select [Yes]. Alternatively, the mode automatically switches to Communication mode in approximately 90 seconds if FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is removed from a PC and no operations are made.
- To disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01, follow the safe disconnecting method of each OS in a PC.

Note

- The following devices are required to use the FOMA terminal as a microSD reader/writer.

Item	Description
Cable	FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately)
PC	A PC with a USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev. 1.1-compliant) usable with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately)
Compatible OS	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista (all Japanese versions)

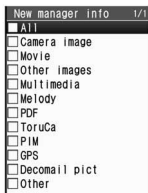
- Not all microSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. Format the microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal.
- Make sure the FOMA terminal is properly connected to the PC. If not connected properly, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Check whether there is enough remaining battery power of the FOMA terminal. If data communication is performed when the battery level is low or empty, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost. Check the PC power supply as well.
- Make sure that the microSD Memory Card is already inserted when using it as a microSD Reader/Writer.
- Do not remove the microSD Memory Card while switching to microSD mode or in microSD mode. Data may be damaged and the FOMA terminal handset may not work properly.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 while reading/writing data. Sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- The TOUCH CRUISER pad is not available in the microSD mode or the MTP mode.

Updating microSD Memory Card Manager Information <New Manager Info>

Update Manager information if microSD Memory Card is used (data edited, added, deleted, etc.) with other devices.

- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Manager information may not be updated if there is no available space on the microSD Memory Card.
- microSD Memory Card may not operate properly if manager information is not updated on FOMA terminal.
- It may take time to update depends on number of files and amount of data on microSD Memory Card.
- Updating manager information is necessary when using data saved by another device.
- Be aware that updating manager information deletes titles of GIF images, movies, data in [Other images] and [Multimedia]. However, original titles for i-motion and melodies are not deleted.
- Do not remove microSD Memory Card while updating.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [New manager info].



2 Select an item.

- Icon changes to . appears for selected and appears for unselected entries. Select an item to switch between select and clear. Select all items to update.
- When [All] is selected, select [Yes] to start updating manager information.

3 Press (Complete) ▶ [Yes].

Note

- While updating, voice/Videophone call and mail can be received. However, the following functions are not available:
 - i-αppli
 - Shooting still pictures/movies
 - Bar code reader
 - Document Viewer
 - Receiving Ir data
 - SD-Audio
 - Print setting (DPOF)
 - Checking memory of microSD Memory Card
 - Viewing microSD data from Phonebook/Mail/Schedule/Text memo/Manga&BookReader/ToruCa/Bookmark/My picture, i-motion, Melody, My Documents, MUSIC and Kisekai Tool of Data box

Checking Data Created with PC and Other Device on FOMA Terminal <Import>

Use microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal to check data (phonebook, mail, schedule, text memo, and still pictures/movies/i-motion/melodies/PDF in Data box) created on a PC or other devices.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [Import].

2 Select function.

- When data cannot be found, [No data] appears and the screen of step 1 reappears.
- Data (file name) for selected function appears.
- To delete data, press and select [Delete]. Subsequent steps are the same as for deleting data normally.
- To copy to FOMA terminal handset, press and select [Copy 1 to phone]. Subsequent steps are the same as for copying data normally.
- When special symbols or katakana are included in a file name, the data may not be copied.
- To check data information, press and select [File property]. Not all data created on a PC or other devices has title information.

3 Select data.

Note

- For melodies, copy up to 100 KB on the FOMA terminal handset and play up to 200 KB on microSD Memory Cards. Copy up to 2 MB for JPEG/GIF images and PDF files each, 100 KB for Flash movies, and 10 MB for movies on the FOMA terminal handset.
- When backup data is put into the Import folder, only the first item is shown.
- Not all still pictures (JPEG/GIF) larger than 3,840 (W) × 3,840 (H) pixels can be viewed. Images from the image list may be displayed for larger images.
- PDF files cannot be displayed when saved in the Import folder. Copy to FOMA terminal handset to display.
- Attached files may be deleted in part or in whole under the following conditions.
 - File exceeding 2 MB is attached
 - 11 or more files are attached

Note

- The following restrictions regarding file names apply to data in the Import folder. Data that exceed limitations are not displayed and cannot be imported.
 - Up to 228 single/double-byte characters for PIM data, still pictures, movies and melodies (excluding file extensions)
 - Up to 60 single/double-byte characters for PDF data (excluding file extensions)
- File names of up to eight lower case alphabets are displayed or imported in upper case alphabets in the Import folder.

Managing Data

Data box consists of the following folders.

Data box

- **My picture**
Shot still pictures with the FOMA terminal and downloaded images are saved (☎ P. 312).
- **MUSIC**
Chaku-uta full® are saved (☎ P. 381).
- **Music&Video channel**
Downloaded Music&Video channels are saved (☎ P. 380).
- **i-motion**
Movies shot with the FOMA terminal, recorded audio and downloaded i-motion are saved (☎ P. 321).
- **1Seg**
1Seg programs recorded with the FOMA terminal are saved (☎ P. 327).
- **Melody**
Melodies are saved (☎ P. 333).
- **My Documents**
PDF files are saved (☎ P. 358).
- **Kisekae Tool**
Kisekae Tool are saved (☎ P. 134).
- **Chara-den**
Chara-den are saved (☎ P. 330).
- **Print setting (DPOF)**
Information such as the number of prints for still pictures saved on the microSD Memory Card is saved to the microSD Memory Card (☎ P. 373).

- Refer to P. 332 for details on managing Chara-den data and P. 329 for managing video file.

Managing Folders

Manage data by creating up to 20 folders each for My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, Melody, My Documents, Kisekae Tool and Chara-den of Data box.

- Refer to P. 331 for details on managing Chara-den folder.

Creating folders <New folder>

Example: My picture

- 1** In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ ▶ [Manage folders].
- 2** Select [New folder] ▶ enter folder name and press .
 - To erase "New folder" name, press for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

Example: My picture

- 1** In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Manage folders].
- 2** Select [Edit folder name] ▶ edit folder name ▶ .
 - To erase folder name, press for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

Deleting folders <Delete>

Example: My picture

- 1** In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Delete].
- 2** Select deletion method.

To delete folder individually	[Delete one folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete folders collectively	[Delete sel folders] → select folder (repeatable) → → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all data (keep folders)	[Del all (keep fol)] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete all folders and data	[Del all (del fol)] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Note


- Only created folders can be deleted.

Note


- Saved data is deleted along with folder.
- Folders containing data saved as stand-by display, ring tone and other functions cannot be deleted. Disable setting and try again.
- Deleting all the folders will also delete all the data preset in the [Decomail picture] and [Decomail pict] folders.
- To use again after deleting, download the preset data from the iMenu site, [SH-MODE] (P. 191).

Setting Folder security <Folder security>

Set folder security in created folders of My picture, i-motion, Melody, My document, Kisekai Tool and Chara-den.

- When Folder security is set to [ON], folder icon changes to .

Example: My picture

1 In stand-by, press   [Data box]  [My picture]  select folder and press   [Manage folders]  [Folder security].

2 Enter terminal security code and press .

3 Select [ON]/[OFF].

Managing Data

Delete and sort data.

- Submenu numbers and function names vary depending on function and screen.

Editing title <Edit title>**Example: My picture**

1 In stand-by, press   [Data box]  [My picture]  select folder  select data and press   [Edit data].

2 Select [Edit title]  edit the title and press .

- To erase title, press  for 1+ seconds in edit screen.

Note

- Title names are names that appear on data lists. File names are names used for data sent as **i-mode mail** attachments.
- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters. For **i-motion**, enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters.


Note

- When changing a title of Music, i-motion, Melody, Kisekai Tool or Chara-den, select [Edit title] and then select [Direct input]/[Back to original].
- Up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen. If a title name exceeds 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters, up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "...".

Editing file names <Edit file name>**Example: My picture**

1 In stand-by, press   [Data box]  [My picture]  select folder  select data and press   [Edit data].

2 Select [Edit file name]  edit file name and press .

- To erase file name, press  for 1+ seconds in the title editing screen.

Note

- Enter up to 36 single-byte characters for the file name.
- File names for the following cannot be edited: data with file restrictions (data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, attached to **i-mode mail** or saved from i- α ppli), picture memos shot during a Videophone call, images of 1Seg recorded as a still picture or data saved on a **microSD Memory Card**.

Sorting data <Sort>

Change the list order to one of the following.

- The setting continues even if the display is ended after sorting.

Date (new→old) ^{*1}	Files are sorted with the latest save date first
Date (old→new) ^{*1}	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first
By title name ^{*2}	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana
By source ^{*3,4}	Files are sorted by acquisition method in the following order: blank → i-mode → camera → data transfer → Videophone
Size (big→small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first

Size (small→big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first
---------------------	--

- *1 If the file restriction of the data in the microSD Memory Card is changed, time and date information is updated. As a result, the time and date displayed in the Date/time saved of File property may be different from a result sorted by Date.
- *2 The data of My picture on the FOMA terminal handset is sorted in the following order:
single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → single-byte katakana → Pictograph.
- *3 File acquisition source differs by data type.
- *4 Cannot be selected if the data is in the microSD Memory Card.
 - Refer to P. 330 for details on sorting 1Seg.
 - Refer to P. 388 for details on sorting music.

Example: My picture

1 In stand-by, press **[Data box]** **[My picture]** **select folder** **[My Picture setting]**.

2 Select **[Sort]** **select a sort method**.

Moving data to another folder

<Move to folder>

Example: My picture

1 In stand-by, press **[Data box]** **[My picture]** **select folder** **select data and press [Move/Copy]**.

2 Select **[Move to folder]** **select a transfer method**.

To move data individually	[Move one] → select folder and press [Move]
To move selected data collectively	[Move selected] → select data (repeatable) → [Select] → select folder and press [Move] ● Press [SelAll] (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To move all data in folders	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press [Move] → select folder and press [Move]

Note

- Data cannot be moved without created folders.
- Only one data can be moved from a created folder to the default folder.

Note

- If the destination folder on microSD Memory Card contains more than 400 still pictures, movies/i-motion, melodies and PDF, the exceeded amount cannot be moved.
- Data contained in the [Multimedia] folder on the microSD Memory Card cannot be moved to [Camera folder].
- If **[Cancel]** or **[End]** is pressed while data are transferred to another folder in a FOMA terminal handset, [Canceling] appears. However, the transfer processing is not canceled.

Viewing detailed information

<File property>

The following information is shown.

- Refer to P. 333 for details on file properties of Chara-den.
- Refer to P. 380 for details on file properties of Music&Video channel.

Item	My picture	MUSIC	i-motion	1Seg	Melody	PDF	Kisakae Tool
Date/time saved	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Date/time saved (Exif) ¹ (images shot with camera only)	○	-	-	-	-	-	-
Date/time made	-	-	-	-	○ (MFi only)	○	-
Display size ² (excluding Flash movies)	○	-	○	-	-	-	-
File size	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
File size (video) (JPEG images only)	○	-	-	-	-	-	-
File format (excluding Flash movies)	○	○	○	○	○	○	-
File restriction: [Restricted/Not restricted]	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Tone settings ¹	-	○	○	-	○	-	-
Set screen ¹	○	-	○	-	-	-	-
Ph/book settings ¹	○	○	○	-	○	-	-
Schedule set ¹	○	○	○	-	○	-	-
Video-phone ¹	○	-	-	-	-	-	-
Record message ¹	○	-	-	-	-	-	-
Owner Information ¹	○	-	-	-	-	-	-
Daily alarm ¹	-	○	○	-	○	-	-
Creator	-	-	○	-	-	-	-
Copyright	-	-	○	-	-	-	-
Description	-	-	○	-	-	-	-
Title	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Artist	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Album	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Year	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Genre	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Comment	-	○	-	-	-	-	-

Item	My picture	MUSIC	i-motion	1Seg	Melody	PDF	Kisekae Tool
Track number	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Music by	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Lyric by	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Rights holder	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Selling agency	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Rights information	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Rights management ³	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Label	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
URL info	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
File name	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Shooting date (JPEG images only)	○	-	-	-	-	-	-
Title (Original)	-	○	○	-	○	-	○
Replay restriction (Mobile/MP4/MP4) ⁴	-	○	○	-	-	-	-
Expiration date (Mobile/MP4/MP4) ⁴	-	○	○	-	-	-	-
File valid (Mobile/MP4/MP4) ⁴	-	○	○	-	-	-	-
Sound: [AAC/AMR/HE-AAC/Enhanced aacPlus/WMA/unknown/Bit rate (Music only)] ⁵	-	○	○	-	-	-	-
Source	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Ring tone: [available/unavailable]	-	-	○	-	-	-	-
Receive display: [available/unavailable]	-	-	○	-	-	-	-
Full song ring tone: [available/unavailable]	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Point ring tone: [available/unavailable]	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Savable Jacket image: [Restricted/Not restricted]	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Savable Image: [Restricted/Not restricted]	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Savable Lyric: [Restricted/Not restricted]	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Play time	-	○	-	-	-	-	-
Change color theme: [Restricted/Not restricted]	-	-	-	-	-	-	○
Font size: [Larger/Default/Not restricted]	-	-	-	-	-	-	○
Move to the microSD: [available/unavailable/Yes(Same model only)] ^{6,7}	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Start video recording	-	-	-	○	-	-	-
Recording end time	-	-	-	○	-	-	-

Item	My picture	MUSIC	i-motion	1Seg	Melody	PDF	Kisekae Tool
Channel name	-	-	-	○	-	-	-
Program name	-	-	-	○	-	-	-

*1 Not displayed for file properties of microSD Memory Card.

*2 Display size appears in pixels.

*3 Appears with WMA file.

*4 Not displayed for i-motion without replay restrictions. [Not restricted] is displayed for music, indicating that there is no restriction.

*5 Not displayed for movies/i-motion with no audio sound.

*6 Contents that can be copied appears as [available].

*7 [Moved to the phone] for data in microSD Memory Card.

Example: My picture

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select folder.

2 Select data and press [File property].

- To end viewing, press or .

Restricting output of still pictures and movies from the FOMA terminal

<File restriction>

Restrict still pictures and movies to mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal.

- If a File restriction is set on data shot with the FOMA terminal, although sending the data as an attachment to i-mode mail is possible, the receiver will not be able to send restricted data to another party.
- File restrictions on data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, attached to i-mode mail, or saved from i-appli, and picture memos shot during Videophone cannot be changed.
- Only data created through editing or shot by the FOMA SH905i can be changed.
- Even if movies shot with the FOMA SH905i, file restrictions cannot be changed for i-motion downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or i-motion retrieved from a URL in an i-motion mail message.

Example: My picture

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select folder.

2 Select data and press [Edit data] ▶ [File restriction] ▶ [Restricted].

Deleting data <Delete>

Example: My picture

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select folder.

2 Select data and press ▶ [Delete].

- To delete data on microSD Memory Card, select [→microSD] in folder list screen, select folder, select data, press and select [Delete].

3 Select deletion method.

To delete data individually	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete data collectively	[Delete selected] → select data (repeatable) → → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all data in folders	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Note

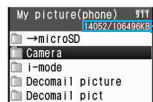
- Cannot delete all in folder for data set as stand-by display, ring tone and other functions.
- Data in [Pre-install] folder of My picture and [Pre-install] folder in Melody cannot be deleted.

Checking Available Memory

Checking FOMA terminal handset memory usage

In the folder list and data list of Data box, the number of FOMA terminal handset memory usage appears at the upper right of the display.

- The number of memory usage does not appear in data type selection screen of MUSIC (P. 385).



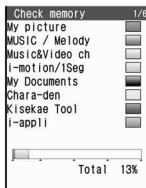
Memory usage/
Entire memory

For folder list of My picture

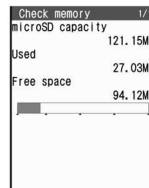
Item	Details
Inbox, Outbox, Unsent messages, Message R/F, Screen memo, Deco-mail template, ToruCa	Percentage used (%)
My picture, MUSIC/Melody, Music&Video channel, i-motion/1Seg, My Documents, Chara-den, Kisekae Tool, i-appli	Total percentage used (%)
microSD Memory Card	Amount, amount used, and free space
FOMA card	Number of remaining phonebook entries and registered entries, and percentage used for SMS (%)

- Secret data items can only be displayed when Secret mode is set to [ON] (P. 150).

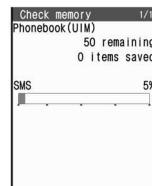
1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Check status] ▶ [Check memory].



FOMA terminal handset



microSD Memory Card



FOMA card

- Press (→microSD) to check microSD Memory Card or FOMA card memory usage and microSD Memory Card usage status appears. Press (⇒UIM) again for FOMA card usage status.
- Current available memory status is shown.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- To show available memory status for other functions while checking available memory on the FOMA terminal handset, press .
- Press , or to end checking.
- The number of phonebook and schedule entries includes secret data.

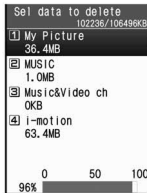
When Memory Is Low or Saved Data Is Full

Data and files cannot be saved when memory is low or saved data is full. Saving to microSD Memory Cards or deleting unnecessary files is recommended.

Item	Details
Phonebook	Number of registered entries and secret entries
Schedule	Number of remaining entries, registered entries, and secret entries
Bookmark, Text memo	Number of remaining entries and registered entries

- If the number of saved data is full, data and file cannot be saved, even if available memory exists. Delete unnecessary data before saving.
- If saving images, Chaku-uta full® i-motion, melodies, Chara-den, i-αppli software, PDF files and Kisekae Tool when the memory is full, [Memory is full or saved data exceeds limit. Overwrite?] appears. Delete any unnecessary data or files before saving.
- When the memory space is not enough to save data downloaded from sites and Internet web pages, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears and the data can be saved by deleting the data in the [Movable contents] folder.

1 In the confirmation screen, select [Yes].



2 Select data type ▶ select folder.

3 Select data.

- appears for selected and appears for unselected entries. Select data to switch between select and clear.
- Select data until the memory allocation status reaches 100%.

4 Press **[Complete]** ▶ [Yes].

Ir Exchange

Ir Exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive phonebook entries, schedules, mail, still pictures, and other data to and from other FOMA terminals which also support infrared communication. In addition, use Ir exchange from i-αppli to operate simultaneously with other devices.

- The FOMA terminal Ir receive function and the sending of single data that can be sent by Ir transmission conform with IrSimple1.0.
- JPEG images saved in My picture of Data box and JPEG images attached to mail can be sent by high-speed Ir exchange (IrSS function*) (☞ P. 222, P. 315).
 - * IrSS is a simplex communication function compliant with IrSimple1.0 (Home Appliance Profile).

When Lock Functions Are Set

- Ir exchange is not available while All lock or Self mode is set.
- Phonebook data and Owner information cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock is set.
- Data of locked functions cannot be received while Function lock is set. For example, while Function lock is applied to phonebook, phonebook data cannot be received. However, data can be sent when Function lock is temporarily disabled.

Using Ir Exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive the following data.

Data that can be sent from the FOMA terminal

Function	One	All items	Remarks
Phonebook	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Group information, PushTalk numbers, and PushTalk group information are not sent when sending data items individually. Secret phonebook entries cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to [ON]. Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED color, mail/message LED color, Called LED pattern, Mail LED pattern, and Substitute image settings are not sent. Owner Information (Number A only) is sent when sending all phonebook data. Also, Secret phonebook entries is sent.
Schedule	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Secret schedules cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to [ON]. When sending all items, data saved as secret data is also sent. Alarm information other than alarm time (ring duration, alarm tone, alarm volume), contacts, and image setting information cannot be sent. Data with no end date/time set will be sent with start date/time set as end date/time. Information of timer for starting or recording the TV program cannot be sent.
Text memo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	-

Function	One	All items	Remarks
i-mode mail, SMS, Area Mail	○	○	Pasted data, attached files, and protected mail can be sent. Data that cannot be attached is not sent. Folder information cannot be sent. Using Ir exchange, a mail exceeding 100 KB (including attached files) may not be sent to the other party properly.
Bookmark	○	○	Both i-mode bookmark and Full browser bookmark can be sent. Folder information cannot be sent.
Still pictures, movies/ i-motion, melodies, PDF in Data box	○	×	Data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or received as i-mode mail attachments that have file restrictions cannot be sent. Preset data in the FOMA terminal cannot be sent. Data that can be sent is up to 2 MB for JPEG image and GIF image, 100 KB for Flash movies, 2 MB for movie, 100 KB for melody and 2 MB for PDF files.
Owner Information	○	※	Saved as phonebook entry by receiver. ※Refer to the phonebook remarks column.
ToruCa	○	○	ToruCa exceeding 1 KB, ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB, non-redistributable ToruCa and used ToruCa cannot be sent. Folder information cannot be sent.
Location service client	○	○	—

Data that can be received by the FOMA terminal

Function	One	All items	Storage location	Storage order
Phonebook	○	○	Phonebook	When receiving a single data item, smallest available memory number after [010] is automatically added. When receiving all phonebook entries, all owner information except own FOMA terminal's phone number is overwritten. [No Name] appears for data without name saved.
Schedule	○	○	Schedule	Saved in order of start date/time.
Text memo	○	○	Text memo	Saved in order of last revision date/time.
i-mode mail, SMS, Area Mail	○	○	i-mode mail, SMS	Saved in order of date/time received, sent or saved.

Function	One	All items	Storage location	Storage order
Bookmark	○	○	Bookmark	Saved at the top when receiving one bookmark. When receiving all bookmarks, they are saved in the order used, starting from the oldest.
Still pictures, movies/ i-motion, melodies, PDF of Data box	○	×	My picture, i-motion, Melody, My Documents of Data box	Saved at the top of the [Acquired data] folder in the selected folder.
Owner Information	○	※	Phonebook	When receiving a single data item, the item is saved in the smallest available memory number after [010]. ※Refer to the phonebook storage order column.
ToruCa	○	○	ToruCa	—
Location service client	○	○	Notification clients	—

Note

- Data saved on microSD Memory Cards cannot be sent or received. However, JPEG images saved on the microSD Memory Card can be sent with Ir exchange or **High-speed Ir exchange (IrSS function)**.
- Note that if overwriting existing data with new data is selected when receiving all the items of a function, all existing data for that function will be deleted.
- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent or received.
- Sort settings for folders are not reflected when bookmarks, i-mode mail, SMS and ToruCa are sent or received.

Sending or receiving single phonebook entry

- Received phonebook data is automatically added to the smallest available memory number after [010]. When no memory number after [010] is available, data is added to an available memory number after [000].
- Group numbers for all entries are set to [No groups].

Receiving all phonebook entries

- For Receive all, memory number, secret settings, group names, group numbers, PushTalk numbers, PushTalk group names, PushTalk group numbers and **Phonebook 2in1 set** are also saved.

Sending or receiving mail message

- For i-mode mail with i-appli To pasted, the pasted information is deleted and is not sent or received.
- Some receiving models may not be able to receive the title completely but a part of it.

Note

Sending or receiving pictographs

- For functions which pictographs can be saved, pictographs can be sent and received. However, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode. The pictographs may not appear properly on i-mode terminal depending on the receiving model.

Sending single owner information

- When the 2in1 is used, the owner's information that appears in the 2in1 mode is sent.

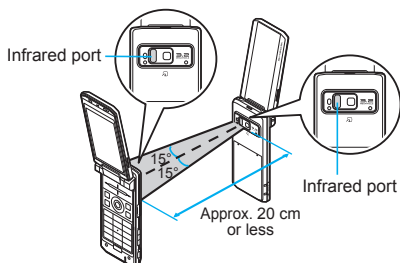
ToruCa

- Some ToruCa may not be sent as a mail attachment, sent using Ir exchange or copied to the microSD Memory Card.

Receiving location service client

- The same location service client cannot be saved more than once.

Precautions for using the Ir exchange function



- Face the Infrared ports of the receiving and sending FOMA terminals each other and set the distance between them to approximately 20 cm or less as shown above.
- In the following circumstances, leave the Infrared ports facing each other and do not move.
 - When data is received, [Save xxx?] appears on the receiving FOMA terminal, until [Yes] or [No] is selected.
 - Until data receiving/sending is completed.
- Ir exchange may not function properly directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.
- If either of the infrared ports is dirty, Ir exchange will become difficult. Take care not to scratch the ports, and wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth.

Note

- When Ir exchange could not be performed properly, the following messages appear. [Authentication failed. Retry?] [No response Retry?] If these messages appear, select [Yes] to try again.
- If Ir exchange fails, move the FOMA terminals close and try again.
- Images sent by Ir exchange may deteriorate in image quality or may have different file sizes.

Note

- IrSS performs a transmission without confirming the response of the receiver side since it uses a simplex communication. For this reason, the sender side completes the communication normally even if the receiver side does not.

Authentication Password

Terminal security code and authentication password entry are required for sending or receiving all data items.

- For terminal security code, enter current security code set in the FOMA terminal.
- Authentication password is a password exclusively for Ir exchange. Before starting data transfer, the sender and receiver must enter the same user-specified four-digit password. This password can be changed for each Ir exchange operation.

Sending and Receiving Data Individually

Use Ir exchange to send/receive data individually on the FOMA terminal.

- Refer to P. 352 for details on data that can be sent and received.

Sending Single Data Item <Send Ir Data>

Operate from the list screen or details screen of data to send.

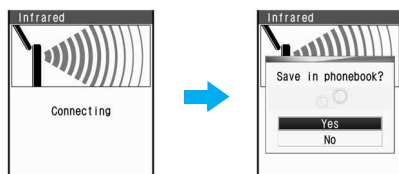
Example: Phonebook

- In phonebook list (☞ P. 111) or details screen (☞ P. 111), select data and press ▶ [Send data] ▶ [Send Ir data].
- Set receiving FOMA terminal to receive single data item.
- Select [Send] ▶ [Yes].

Receiving Single Data Item

<Receive Ir Data>

- In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Receive Ir data] ▶ [Receive] ▶ [Yes].



When phonebook is received

- Ready sender's FOMA terminal to send one data item.
- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Data is automatically received when data is sent within 30 seconds.

2 Select [Yes].

- When phonebook is received, [Store in PushTalk phonebook?] appears. To store, select [Yes]. When multiple phone numbers are stored, select the phone number.
- When received bookmark is identical to existing bookmark, [The same URL is saved. Overwrite?] appears. To overwrite current data, select [Yes].

Note

- If the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], the confirmation screen for saving to the PushTalk phonebook does not appear when single phonebook is received.

Sending and Receiving All Data Items

Use Ir exchange to send/receive all data items on the FOMA terminal.

- Refer to P. 352 for details on data that can be sent and received.

Sending All Data Items <Send All Ir Data>

Operate from the list screen of data to send.

Example: Phonebook

1 In phonebook list (☎ P. 111), press [Send data] ▶ [Send Ir data].

2 Select [Send all].

3 Ready receiving FOMA terminal to receive all data items.

4 Enter terminal security code and press .

5 Enter authentication password (four digits) and press ▶ [Yes].

- If the entered authentication password matches an authentication password entered by receiver, data sending begins.

Note

- When all **Bookmarks** are received, they appear on the receiver's Bookmark list in the order used, starting from the oldest.
- When sending all schedules, operate from Calendar or Show all schedules.

Receiving All Data Items

<Receive All Ir Data>

- To receive all data items, terminal security code and authentication password entries are required.
- Note that when all data items are received, saved data will be overwritten.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Receive Ir data] ▶ [Receive all] ▶ [Yes].

2 Enter terminal security code and press .

3 Ready sender's FOMA terminal to send all data.

- Remember the authentication password entered in the sender's FOMA terminal.

4 Enter the same authentication password (four digits) entered on sender's FOMA terminal and press .

- Ir exchange automatically begins when data is sent from other party's FOMA terminal within 30 seconds.

5 Select [Yes].

- To cancel Receive all while receiving data, press (Cancel).

Using Ir Exchange with i-appli Software

Use the Ir exchange function (☎ P. 352) from running software. Activating i-appli from Ir exchange is also possible.

- While in Self mode, Ir exchange is not available.
- While Function lock is applied to i-appli, i-appli is not activated.

Activating Ir Exchange from i-appli

1 While running software, activate Ir exchange ▶ [Yes].

- Procedures for starting Ir exchange differ, depending on the software.
- Ir exchange begins.
- Press to cancel Ir exchange.

Activating i-appli from Ir Exchange

During Ir exchange, if a signal to activate i-appli is received from devices supporting infrared communication, software can be activated.

- When i-appli To is set to [No], i-appli is not activated from Ir exchange.
- Cannot be activated as i-appli stand-by.

1 In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[Receive Ir data]** **[Receive]** **[Yes]**.

- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Refer to step 1 of "Receiving Single Data Item" on P. 354.

2 Software is activated when signal to activate i-appli is received from the sender's FOMA terminal.

Infrared Remote Control

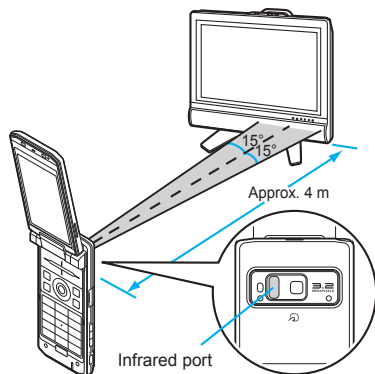
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

Use the FOMA terminal's Infrared port from i-appli software to operate equipment supporting remote control such as TVs and VCRs.

- To use the infrared remote control function, download compatible i-appli software. The preinstalled software "Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)" (☞ P. 253) supports Ir remote control function.
- While in Self mode, the Ir remote control function cannot be used.

Remote Control Operation

Start i-appli software that supports Ir remote control functions, point the FOMA terminal's Ir port to the front of the remote control sensor on the TV, VCR or other devices to operate, and perform remote control operations.



- Actual operational methods will differ with each i-appli software application.
- Control devices from a distance of up to approximately 4 m (Distance will vary depending on the device, the ambient brightness and other factors).
- appears when an Ir remote control signal is being sent.

Note

- Depending on the device, operation may not run properly.

Note

- Remote control operation may not run properly directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.

iC Transmission

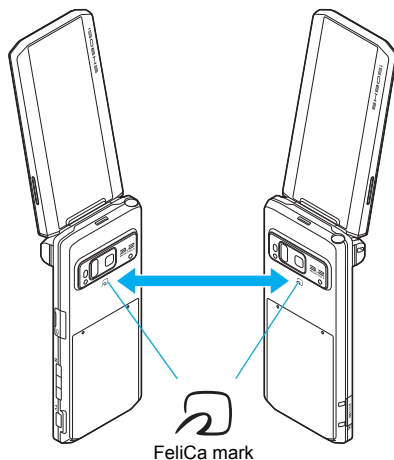
iC Transmission

Use iC transmission to send and receive phonebook entries, schedules, mail, still pictures, and other data to and from other FOMA terminals which also support iC transmission function.

- During iC transmission, the FOMA terminal status is the same as when outside the service area. Therefore, functions such as making/receiving calls, i-mode, sending/receiving i-mode mail, sending/receiving SMS, receiving Area Mail, and receiving Message R/F are not available.
- iC transmission is not available during a call.
- iC transmission is not available while IC card is locked.
- Sending and receiving data may be difficult according to other party's FOMA terminal. In such cases, make the clearance between the FeliCa marks (☞) closer or farther, or move them up/down/left/right alternately.
- Data that can be sent and received or operations when various lock functions are set are same as for Ir exchange. Refer to P. 352 for details.
- As well as Ir exchange, iC transmission function can be used from the running software of i-appli (☞ P. 355).

Precautions for using iC transmission function

- Use while placing FeliCa mark (☞) of receiving side FOMA terminal on that of sending side FOMA terminal. Do not move the FOMA terminals until all data are sent and received.
- During iC transmission, FOMA terminal called LED flashes (☞ P. 138).




Sending and Receiving Data Individually

Use iC transmission function to send/receive data individually on the FOMA terminal.

Sending Single Data Item <Send>

Operate from the list screen or details screen of data to send.

Example: Phonebook

- 1 In phonebook list screen (☞ P. 111) or details screen (☞ P. 111), select data and press  [Send data] [iC transmission].
- 2 Select [Send] [Yes].

- 3 Place FeliCa mark (🌀) on that of other party's FOMA terminal.
 - When completed, [Transmission completed] appears, and the previous screen reappears.

Receiving Single Data Item <Receive>

- 1 In stand-by, place FeliCa mark (🌀) on that of other party's FOMA terminal.
- 2 Select [Yes].
 - When receiving phonebook, [Store in PushTalk phonebook?] appears. To store, select [Yes]. When multiple phone numbers are saved, select the phone number.
 - When completed, [Exchange completed] appears, and the stand-by screen reappears.

Note

- If the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], the confirmation screen for saving to the PushTalk phonebook does not appear when single phonebook is received.

Sending and Receiving All Data Items




Use iC transmission function to send/receive all data items on the FOMA terminal.

- The sender and receiver must specify the same authentication password in advance.




Sending All Data Items <Send All>

Operate from the list screen of data to send.

Example: Phonebook

- 1 In phonebook list screen (☞ P. 111), press  [Send data] [iC transmission].
- 2 Select [Send all].
- 3 Enter terminal security code and press .
- 4 Enter authentication password (four digits) and press .
- 5 Place FeliCa mark (🌀) on that of other party's FOMA terminal.
 - When completed, [Transmission completed] appears, and the previous screen reappears.

Receiving All Data Items <Receive All>

- 1 In stand-by, place FeliCa mark (🌀) on that of other party's FOMA terminal.
- 2 Select [Yes].
- 3 Enter terminal security code and press .
- 4 Enter authentication password (four digits) and press .
- 5 Select [Yes].
 - When completed, [Exchange completed] appears, and the stand-by screen reappears.
 - To cancel receive all data items when receiving, press  (Cancel).

Voice Recorder

Using the FOMA Terminal as a Voice Recorder

Use the FOMA terminal as a voice recorder.

Voice recorder uses the movie shooting function and saves movie data with [Voice only] (no image) to the [Multimedia] folder on the microSD Memory Card.

A commercially available microSD Memory Card is required (☞ P. 335).

- Voice recorder cannot be selected when a microSD Memory Card is not inserted.
- Record up to approximately 10 hours when saving to 64 MB microSD Memory Card.

- Save up to 400 recordings (Actual number varies depending on recording time).
Record up to 6 hours per recording. When recording is attempted after the 400th recording, [Record error] appears and Voice recorder ends. Delete unnecessary data and try again.
- Play back recorded audio with i-motion player (☞ P. 321).
- Recorded data is saved without file restrictions.
- Recording within a distance of approximately 1.5 m is recommended.
- Recording continues even if the FOMA terminal is closed during recording.

Recording

- 1 In stand-by, press ► [Media tool] ► [Voice recorder] ► (Record) or (Record).

- When recording starts, the shutter sounds and the Camera LED automatically flashes. The Camera LED automatically turns off when recording ends. Camera LED cannot be turned off during recording.
- Press (Pause) to pause. Press (Resume) to resume.

- 2 To stop recording, press (Stop) or (Record).

- Recording stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads 00:00:00 (recording file size reaches limit or microSD Memory Card has no available space).

- 3 Select [Save].

- To play back recorded audio, select [Play]. To pause playback, press (Pause). To stop playback, press (Stop). Press and the previous screen reappears.
- To not save, select [Cancel] → [Yes].

Note

- When a voice/Videophone call is received during recording, recording automatically stops and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the save confirmation screen appears.
- Play back recorded audio with i-motion player. In i-motion folder list screen on the microSD Memory Card, select [Multimedia] (☞ P. 323).

Changing Settings for Voice Recorder

The following settings can be made for Voice recorder. Refer to the section on shooting movies for details (☞ P. 165).

Opening Data box <Display data box>

Displays files in the specified save folder.

- 1 In stand-by, press ► [Media tool] ► [Voice recorder] ► ► [Display Data box].

Setting Noise reduction

<Noise reduction>

Set to reduce voice noise.

- 1 In stand-by, press ► [Media tool] ► [Voice recorder] ► ► [Noise reduction] ► [ON].

Setting Auto timer <Auto timer>

- 1 In stand-by, press ► [Media tool] ► [Voice recorder] ► ► [Auto timer].

- 2 Select a set time.

Set time	OFF	ON (5 seconds)
	ON (2 seconds)	ON (10 seconds)

Retaining voice recorder setting

<Retain settings>

Save voice recorder settings.

- 1 In stand-by, press ► [Media tool] ► [Voice recorder] ► ► [Retain settings] ► [ON].

PDF Viewer

Displaying PDF Files

Display PDF files saved on FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.

Download, display and save PDF files from sites and Internet web pages (☞ P. 193).

- Save files in advance to My document of Data box or `PRIVATE\DOCUMENT\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx` folder on microSD Memory Card. To save to microSD Memory Card, save the file and update the microSD Memory Card manager information (☞ P. 337, P. 346).
- To view PDF files saved on microSD Memory Card, insert the microSD Memory Card in advance.
- ※ In order to differentiate the file type, an alphanumeric character string called a file extension, such as ".pdf", is added to the end of the file name on a PC (Depending on the PC settings, file extension may not appear). Refer to the user's guide for the PC or software being used.

- 1 In stand-by, press ► [Media tool] ► [PDF Viewer].

- Alternatively, press in stand-by and select [Data box] → [My Documents].
- To view PDF files saved on microSD Memory Card, select [→microSD]. Alternatively, press and select [Switch phone↔SD].

2

Select a folder.

- To view the next page, press \odot . To view the previous page, press \ominus .

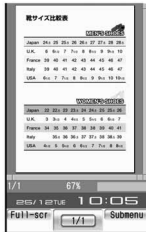
PDF icons

	Downloaded PDF files of all pages
	Partially downloaded PDF files of individual pages
	PDF files that failed to download due to interrupted connection, etc.
	PDF files downloaded from i-mode
	PDF files retrieved from microSD Memory Cards, Ir exchange, iC transmissions, or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately)
	PDF files with file restrictions
	PDF files with FOMA card restrictions applied

3

Select a file.

- PDF files are displayed in accordance with settings such as Magnification.
- When only a portion (i.e. some pages) of the PDF file is downloaded, [Continue downloading following pages?] may appear. Select [Yes] to download the following pages.
- When a PDF file that cannot be successfully downloaded is selected, [Data is incomplete. Download remaining data?] appears. Select [Yes] to start downloading.



Details screen view

To scroll screen	Up and down	Up: \odot Down: \ominus
	Left and right	Left: \odot Right: \ominus
To display entire page		\odot (Fit)
To display Actual size (when displayed as [Fit])		\odot (1/1)
To display in full-screen		Press CLR to end full-screen.
To view next page		(Page \blacktriangledown)
To view previous page		(Page \blacktriangle)
To end		 ● If a file is not saved, the save confirmation screen appears.

Note

- While **Function lock** is applied to multimedia, terminal security code is required to display files.

Note

- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if PDF Viewer is ended, and is used the next time PDF Viewer is activated.
- Depending on the PDF file, a password may be required. Enter password (up to 32 digits) and press \odot .
- Some formats and complex designs not compatible with the PDF Viewer may not appear correctly.
- Some files may not be displayed depending on the software used to create the file.
- Some files may take more time to display or may not be able to display entire contents.
- PDF files with \sim , \parallel , $-$, ϕ , £ , and \rightarrow included in the file name are not supported.

Operations in full-screen

To move up/down/left/right	\odot
To zoom/shrink	$\text{③}/\text{①}$
To rotate 90° left	②
To save displayed image as a still picture	⑧
To view previous page	
To view next page	

Operating the details screen

- Use PDF Viewer details screen in the following ways.

Zoom in		Zooms screen in 10% increments, up to 1,000%.	
Zoom out		Shrinks screen in 10% decrements, down to 8%.	
Rotate view		Rotates screen 90° right or left.	
Set screen	Page layout	Single page	Displays file one page at a time.
		Continuous	When file contains multiple pages, displays pages vertically in succession.
View types	Continuous facing	When file contains multiple pages, displays two pages at a time.	
	Fit page	Displays entire page.	
	Actual size	Displays PDF file at full size.	
Scroll bar	Fit width	Sets PDF file to fit display horizontally.	
		Sets whether to display scroll bar.	
Page numbers		Sets whether to display page numbers.	
Magnification		Sets whether to display magnification.	

Move page	Go to first page		When file contains multiple pages, moves to first page.
	Go to last page		When file contains multiple pages, moves to last page.
	Specified page		When file contains multiple pages, displays specified page.
bookmark · mark	Display bookmark	Bookmark	Displays up to 50 bookmark titles already saved in PDF file and jumps to selected bookmark.
		i-mode bookmark	Displays added bookmarks and jumps to selected bookmark. In addition, deletes bookmark, changes title and displays properties.
	Add bookmark		Adds bookmark. Magnification and rotation settings can be saved. Register up to ten bookmarks.
	Display mark		Displays mark list. Deletes mark.
	Add mark		Adds mark to center of displayed screen. Register up to ten marks.
Search			Searches for a character string (up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters), and displays search results highlighted.
Search criteria			Search criteria can be set.
Display link/Open PDF Viewer			Switches between Display link and Open PDF Viewer. When Display link is set, links within the file, Web To, Mail To and Phone To (AV Phone To) are available.
Capture screen			Part of the screen is cut and image is saved in JPEG format.
Save			Saves PDF file on FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On microSD Memory Card, PDF files downloaded with all pages can be saved without file restrictions.
File property			Displays information about PDF file. Displayed information is Date/time saved, Date/time made, File size, File format, File restriction, File name, Source and Moved to the microSD/the phone.
Doc properties			Displays properties of PDF file. Displayed information is Title, Author, Subject, Keywords, CreationDate, ModDate, Creator, and Produce.

Light Up	Displays at maximum brightness.
DL remaining data	Downloads all pages that have not been downloaded of PDF files partially downloaded and PDF files that failed to download.
Key list	Opens the operation guide to search for an operation.

Zoom/Shrink screen <Zoom in/Zoom out>

- In the details screen, press [Zoom].
- Press to set position to zoom in center of screen (Zoom ↑) / (Zoom ↓).
 - To end: Press or .

Rotate view <Rotate view>

- In the details screen, press [Rotate view] [Rotate 90° right] / [Rotate 90° left].

Set Page layout <Page layout>

- In the details screen, press [Set screen] [Page layout] select page layout type.

Set display method <View types>

- In the details screen, press [Set screen] [View types] select view type.

Display scroll bar, page numbers and magnification

<Scroll bar, Page numbers, Magnification>

- In the details screen, press [Set screen].
- Select [Scroll bar] / [Page numbers] / [Magnification].
- Select [ON].

Display specified page <Move page>

- In the details screen, press [Move page] [Specified page] enter page number and press .
- To display first/last page: Select [Move page] [Go to first page] / [Go to last page].

Add Bookmark <Add bookmark>

- In the details screen, press [bookmark · mark] [Add bookmark].
- Select [OK].
 - To add bookmark after editing title: Select [Edit title] edit title and press .
 - When ten bookmarks are already saved: Select [OK] [Yes] select bookmark to overwrite.

Display bookmark list <Display bookmark>

- In the details screen, press [bookmark · mark] [Display bookmark].
- Select [Bookmark] / [i-mode bookmark].
- To jump to bookmark, select bookmark.
 - To edit title of i-mode bookmark: Press [Edit title] edit title and press .
 - To display properties of i-mode bookmark: Press [Properties] or to end confirming.

Delete i-mode bookmark <Delete>

- 1** In the details screen, press **[bookmark · mark]** **[Display bookmark]** **[i-mode bookmark]** **[Delete]**.
- 2** To delete one, select **[Delete one]**.
 - To delete i-mode bookmarks collectively: Select **[Delete selected]** **[select i-mode bookmarks (repeatable)]**.
 - To delete all bookmarks: Select **[Delete all]** **[enter terminal security code and press]**.
- 3** Select **[Yes]**.

Add mark <Add mark>

- 1** In the details screen, press **[bookmark · mark]** **[Add mark]**.
- 2** Select **[Yes]**.
 - When ten marks are already saved: Select **[Yes]** **[select mark to overwrite]**.

Display mark list <Display mark>

In the details screen, press **[bookmark · mark]** **[Display mark]**.

Delete marks <Delete>

- 1** In the details screen, press **[bookmark · mark]** **[Display mark]** **[select mark and press]** **[Delete]**.
- 2** To delete one, select **[Delete one]**.
 - To delete marks collectively: Select **[Delete selected]** **[select mark (repeatable)]**.
 - To delete all marks: Select **[Delete all]** **[enter terminal security code and press]**.
- 3** Select **[Yes]**.

Search for character string <Search>

- 1** In the details screen, press **[Search]** **[enter character string and press]**.
- 2** To search for next search result, press **[Next result]**.
 - To search for previous search result: Press **[Previous result]**.
 - To search for a new character string: Press **[New search]** **[enter character string and press]**.
 - To set search criteria: Press **[Search criteria]** **[Case-sensitive]/[Entire matches]** **[ON]/[OFF]**.
 - To cancel search: Press **[CLR]** in search screen.
- 3** To end search mode, press **[I]** or **[CLR]**.

Set Search criteria <Search criteria>

- 1** In the details screen, press **[Search criteria]**.
- 2** Select **[Case-sensitive]/[Entire matches]**.
- 3** Select **[ON]/[OFF]** **[I]**.

Set to Display link mode <Display link>

In the details screen, press **[Display link]**.

- To return to original view: Press **[CLR]** (or **[I]**) **[Open PDF Viewer]**.

Save displayed image as a still picture <Capture screen>

In the details screen, press **[Capture screen]** **[Yes]**.

Save file <Save>

In the details screen, press **[Save]** **[select folder]**.

Display text properties <Doc properties>

In the details screen, press **[Doc properties]**.

- To end viewing: Press **[I]** or **[CLR]**.

Light up <Light up>

In the details screen, press **[Light Up]**.

Download all PDF files <DL remaining data>

In the details screen, press **[DL remaining data]** **[Yes]**.

Viewing the key list

In the details screen, press **[Key list]**.

Note**Zoom in/Zoom out**

- Adjust the center position or magnification for zoom by repeating step 2.

Rotate view

- Every time operation is repeated, screen is rotated left (rotated right for **[Rotate 90° right]**) an additional 90°.

Page layout

- When activated from a site or Internet web page, Page layout is set to **[Single page]**.

Adding bookmarks and marks

- Added bookmarks appear at the bottom of the bookmarks list and added marks appear at the bottom of the marks list.
- Added bookmarks may be deleted when moving PDF files to a PC using the microSD Memory Card or Ir exchange.
- When ten bookmarks are already saved, a new bookmark is overwritten even if its title is edited and added.

Deleting bookmarks and marks

- For deleting selected, press **[SelAll]** **[I]** **[ClrAll]** to select/clear all.

Search

- Previous character string appears in the character string entry screen.
- When search reaches the last page, a confirmation screen appears prompting whether to continue searching from the first page. Select **[Yes]** to search from the first page.

Note

- If New search is performed in step 2 of “Search for character string” on P. 361, search starts from the first page. Previous search result is deleted.

Display link

- Screen cannot be scrolled when in Display link mode.
- Refer to P. 195 for details on Web To, Mail To and Phone To (AV Phone To).

Capture screen

- Depending on the security settings, some PDF files may not be cut.
- Cut document image to **Stand-by: 480×854** and save on FOMA terminal handset as a still picture (JPEG image).
- Images cut from PDF files with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal or screen copy are restricted to output from the FOMA terminal. However, they can be transferred to the microSD Memory Card (Contents transfer compatible).

Document properties

- Items not set in the PDF file cannot be displayed.

Shortcut keys

- Operations frequently used on the details screen are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

Key	Operation	Page
	Displays previous page	P. 359
	Displays next page	P. 359
	Zoom out ^{*1}	P. 359
	Rotate 90° left	P. 359
	Zoom in ^{*2}	P. 359
	Moves to specified page	P. 359
	Bookmark · mark	P. 359
	Search	P. 359
	Display link	P. 359
	Capture screen	P. 359
	Set screen	P. 359
	Save	P. 359
	Full-screen	P. 359
Press for 1+ seconds	Light Up	P. 359
	Key list	P. 359

*1 Each time key is pressed, image shrinks. Keep the key pressed and then release it. The longer the key is pressed, the smaller the image becomes.

*2 Each time key is pressed, image enlarges. Keep the key pressed and then release it. The longer the key is pressed, the larger the image becomes.

Attaching PDF Files and Sending i-mode Mail

- Sending is available for PDF files up to 2 MB.
- PDF data with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Media tool] ▶ [PDF Viewer] ▶ select folder ▶ select PDF file and press (Mail).

2 Compose and send i-mode mail.
● Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 208 for details.

Managing PDF Files

Manage PDF files by dividing into folders, editing titles, deleting and sorting.

- PDF files without restrictions copy to microSD Memory Cards (P. 340) and send to other FOMA terminals using Ir exchange function (P. 352).

Managing Folders

Create up to 20 folders and manage files.

Creating folders <New folder>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Media tool] ▶ [PDF Viewer] ▶ ▶ [Manage folders].

2 Select [New folder] ▶ enter folder name and press .

- To erase “New folder” name, press for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Media tool] ▶ [PDF Viewer] ▶ select folder and press ▶ [Manage folders].

2 Select [Edit folder name] ▶ edit folder name and press .

- To erase folder name, press for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

Deleting folders <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press **[Media tool]** **[PDF Viewer]** ▶ select folder and press **[Delete]**.

2 Select deletion method.

To delete folder individually	[Delete one folder] → enter terminal security code and press [Yes]
To delete folders collectively	[Delete sel folders] → select folder (repeatable) → [] → enter terminal security code and press [Yes] ● Press [] (SelAll)/ [] (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all data (keep folders)	[Del all (keep fol)] → enter terminal security code and press [Yes]
To delete all folders and data	[Del all (del fol)] → enter terminal security code and press [Yes]

Note

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- Saved files are deleted along with folder.

Managing PDF Files

Delete and sort PDF files.

Editing title <Edit title>

1 In stand-by, press **[Media tool]** **[PDF Viewer]** ▶ select folder.

2 Select file and press **[]** ▶ **[Edit title]**.

3 Edit the title and press **[]**.

- To erase title, press **[CLR]** for 1+ seconds in the title editing screen.

Note

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters.
- Up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen. If a title name exceeds 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters, up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "...".

Sorting files <Sort>

Change the list order to one of the following.

- Even when PDF Viewer is ended, list order settings remain.

Date (new → old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first
------------------	--

Date (old → new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first
By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana
By source*	Files are sorted by acquisition method in the following order: blank → i-mode → data transfer
Size (big → small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first
Size (small → big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first

* File acquisition source differs by file type.

1 In stand-by, press **[Media tool]** **[PDF Viewer]** ▶ select folder ▶ **[]** ▶ **[My documents set]**.

2 Select **[Sort]** ▶ select a sort method.

Moving file to another folder

<Move to folder>

1 In stand-by, press **[Media tool]** **[PDF Viewer]** ▶ select folder.

2 Select file and press **[]** ▶ **[Move/Copy]**.

3 Select **[Move to folder]** ▶ select a transfer method.

To move file individually	[Move one] → select folder and press []
To move files collectively	[Move selected] → select file (repeatable) → [] → select folder and press [] ● Press [] (SelAll)/ [] (ClrAll) to select/disable all.
To move all files in folders	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press [] → select folder and press []

Note

- Only one data can be moved from a created folder to the default folder.

Viewing detailed information

<File property>

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Media tool]** ▶ **[PDF Viewer]** ▶ **select folder**.

2 Select file and press **⊞** ▶ **[File property]**.

- In the details screen, press **⊞** and select [File property].
- To end viewing, press **⊙** or **[CLR]**.

Note

- Displayed information is date/time saved, date/time made, file size, file format, file restriction, file name, source and availability of transfer to microSD/phone.

Deleting data <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Media tool]** ▶ **[PDF Viewer]** ▶ **select folder** ▶ **select file** and press **⊞** ▶ **[Delete]**.

- To delete files on microSD Memory Card, press **⊞** in folder list screen, select [Switch phone⇔SD], select folder, select file, press **⊞** and select [Delete].

2 Select deletion method.

To delete file individually	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete files collectively	[Delete selected] → select file (repeatable) → ⊞ → [Yes] ● Press ⊞ (SelAll)/ ⊞ (ClrAll) to select/disable all.
To delete all files in folders	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press ⊙ → [Yes]

Document Viewer

Displaying Word and Excel Files

Display files saved on microSD Memory Card, such as Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel and image files, on FOMA terminal.

A commercially available microSD Memory Card is required (P. 335).

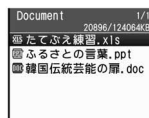
- Supported file types (file extension*):
Microsoft Word (.doc), Microsoft Excel (.xls), Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt), Plain Text (.txt), JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg), GIF (.gif), PNG (.png), BMP (.bmp)
- Place file to view in **PRIVATE\SHARP\DOCUMENT** folder of the microSD Memory Card in advance (P. 337).

- Before using this function, insert microSD Memory Card into FOMA terminal microSD Memory Card slot in advance.
- If PDF files are saved in **PRIVATE\SHARP\DOCUMENT** folder in the microSD card using SH506iC, SH900i, or SH901iC, move files to **PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx** folder.
- * In order to differentiate the file type, an alphanumeric character string called a file extension, such as ".doc" or ".xls", is added to the end of the file name on a PC (Depending on the PC settings, file extension may not appear). Refer to the user's guide for the PC or software being used.

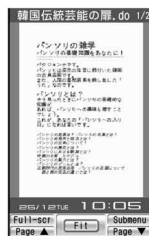
1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Media tool]** ▶ **[Document Viewer]**.

2 Select a folder.

- To view the next page of the image list, press **⊙**.
To view the previous page, press **⊙**.



3 Select a file.



Details screen

To scroll up/down/left/right	Up: ⊙ Down: ⊙ Left: ⊙ Right: ⊙
To show entire page in center of display	⊙
To show in full-screen	⊞ ● Press ⊞ or [CLR] to end full-screen.
To view next page	⊞ (Page ▼)
To view previous page	⊞ (Page ▲)

Note

Operations in full-screen

To move up/down/left/right	
To zoom/shrink	
To rotate 90° left ⇄ No rotation	
To save displayed image as a still picture	
To attach displayed image to mail as a still picture	
To display Submenu	
To view previous page	
To view next page	
To fit to screen	
To light up	

- While **Function lock** is applied to multimedia, terminal security code is required to activate Document Viewer.

When using Document Viewer

- File contents may appear differently from when displayed on a PC depending on the contents.
 - Some files may take longer to be displayed depending on file size. Some files may not be able to display entire contents.
 - Fonts supported by Document Viewer differ from those supported by a PC and may cause file to not be displayed properly.
 - Files with names that exceed 230 characters (including file extensions) cannot be displayed.
 - The number of digits that appears in a cell on a Microsoft Excel worksheet may differ from when displayed on a PC. In addition, Japanese era names are not displayed depending on the version of Microsoft Excel.
- Up to 400 files per folder can be viewed in file list screen.
- Refer to <http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh905i/> for details on files that can be displayed using Document Viewer.
- If a Videophone call is made/received or packet transmission is performed while Document Viewer is being activated, Document Viewer is ended.

Operating the details screen

- Use Document Viewer details screen in the following ways.

Shrink	Displays screen at a reduced size.
Rotate view	Switches between rotating the view 90° left and no rotation.
Zoom	Displays screen at an enlarged size.
Magnifier	Magnifies the area specified by the cursor (Q) and view in the lower part of the display in order to distinguish characters. The lower part of the display changes as the cursor is moved. Magnified area can be enlarged/shrunk.

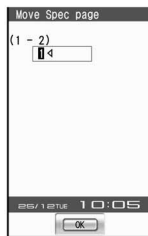
Move	Move w/in screen	Displays upper left, upper right, lower left, lower right or center of page without changing magnification.
	Move Spec page	When file contains multiple pages, displays specified page.
Capture screen	Save image	Cuts document image to the displayed size and saves on microSD Memory Card as a still picture (JPEG).
	Compose message	Cuts a still picture and send as an i-mode mail attachment.
Light Up		Displays at maximum brightness.
Key list		Opens the operation guide to search for an operation.



Rotate 90° left screen



Magnifier screen



Move Spec page screen



Move w/in screen (when upper left is selected)

Zoom/Shrink <Zoom/Shrink>

In the details screen, press [Zoom]/[Shrink].

- To display entire page: Press .

Rotate view 90° left <Rotate view>

In the details screen, press [Rotate view].

- To return to original view: Perform same steps.

Enlarge/Shrink with Magnifier <Magnifier>

In the details screen, press [Magnifier] ▶ move Q cursor.

- To zoom/shrink specified area: Press ▶ [Zoom]/[Shrink].
- To end Magnifier: Press .

Display edges or center of page

<Move w/in screen>

In the details screen, press [Move] ▶
[Move w/in screen] ▶ select move direction.

Display specified page <Move spec page>

In the details screen, press [Move] ▶
[Move Spec page] ▶ enter page number and
press .

Save displayed image as a still picture

<Save image>

In the details screen, press [Capture
screen] ▶ [Save image].

- To send as an i-mode mail attachment: Press
 [Capture screen] ▶ [Compose message].

Light up <Light up>

In the details screen, press ▶ [Light Up].

Viewing the Key List <Key list>

In the details screen, press ▶ [Key list].

Set display light <Backlight time>

- 1 In file list, press ▶ [Backlight time].
- 2 Select [As light setting]/[Always ON].

Note**Shrink**

- Files cannot be shrunk to a size smaller than the size of fitting the screen ([Fit] display). However, JPEG images, GIF images, PNG images and BMP images can be shrunk to the actual image size.

Save image

- Capture screen is not available when there is no available space on microSD Memory Card.

Shortcut keys

Operations frequently used on the details screen are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

Key	Operation	Page
	Scroll up/down/left/right*1	P. 364
	Displays previous page	P. 364
	Displays next page	P. 364
	(Fit) Displays entire page	P. 364
	Full-screen	P. 364
	Shrink*2	P. 365
	Rotate 90° left ⇔ No rotation	P. 365
	Zoom*3	P. 365
	Magnifier	P. 365
	Move	P. 365
	Capture screen	P. 365
	Light Up	P. 365
	Key list	P. 365

*1 Keep key pressed to scroll continuously.

*2 Each time key is pressed, image shrinks. Keep key pressed to gradually shrink image.

*3 Each time key is pressed, image enlarges. Keep key pressed to gradually enlarge image.

Managing Documents

Using Document viewer, delete files in the [Document] folder on the microSD Memory Card, view file properties and sort files. Operation is not available for folders other than the [Document] folder. Operate from My picture (P. 348).

A commercially available microSD Memory Card is required (P. 335).

Sorting files <Sort>

Change the [Document] folder order to one of the following.

- Even when Document Viewer is ended, list order settings remain.

By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph → double-byte numbers → double-byte alphabet → single-byte katakana ● Characters are sorted in the Unicode order but upper case/ lower case is not distinguished for English characters.
Date (new→old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first
Date (old→new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first
Size (big→small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first
Size (small→big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Media tool] ▶ [Document Viewer] ▶ select folder ▶ ▶ [Sort].

2 Select sort method.

Viewing detailed information <File property>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Media tool] ▶ [Document Viewer] ▶ select folder.

2 Select file and press ▶ [File property].

- To end viewing, press .

Note

- Date/time saved, file size, file format and file name appear.

Note

Folder name/File name

- Folder names and file names appear blank if folders and files are named using unsupported character codes with a PC or other devices.

Deleting files <Delete>

Delete files in [Document] folder.

- In stand-by, press **[Media tool]** **[Document Viewer]** **select folder** **select file and press [Delete]**.

Select deletion method.

To delete file individually	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete files collectively	[Delete selected] → select file (repeatable) → [OK] → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press [SelAll]/[i] (ClrAll) to select/disable all.
To delete all files in folders	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press [OK] → [Yes]

Manga&BookReader

Displaying e-Book/e-Dictionary/e-Comic

An e-book (e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic) saved on microSD Memory Card can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

A commercially available microSD Memory Card is required (P. 335).

- The following file extensions of e-books, etc. can be viewed.

e-book	.zbf, .zbx, .txt, .text
e-dictionary/e-comic	.zbf

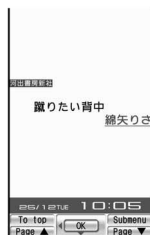
- Place file to view in the **BOOK** folder of the microSD Memory Card in advance (P. 337). When using, insert microSD Memory Card into FOMA terminal microSD Memory Card slot.
- e-books, e-comics, etc. can also be downloaded from sites and Internet web pages (P. 195).
- Supportbook and ONE PIECE (e-comic) are preset on the FOMA terminal handset ("ONE PIECE" ©Eiichiro Oda/SHUEISHA Inc.). When using the file in [Pre-install] folder, microSD Memory Card need not be inserted.
- Some voice or images included in the e-books, etc. may not be used.

- In stand-by, press **[Media tool]** **[Manga&BookReader]** **select folder**.

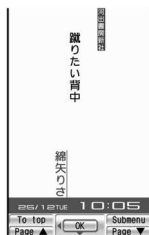
- e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic list screen appears.

2 Select e-books, etc.

- If e-books, etc. ended by pressing **[CLR]** in previous viewing is selected, the page displayed at time of termination appears.
- If e-books, etc. which can be viewed in full-screen are selected, they appear in Full-screen mode when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position.



Details screen (Horizontal)



Details screen (Vertical)

To move a line	To go to the next line	[Up] / [Down]
	To return to the previous line	[Left] / [Right]
To scroll up/down and left/right in the page display screen (e-comic only)		[Home]
To move between frames up/down and left/right in the frame display screen (e-comic only)	To go to the next frame	[Up] / [Down]
	To return to the previous frame	[Left] / [Right]
To view next page		[Page Down] (Page ▼)
To view previous page		[Page Up] (Page ▲)
To jump to first page		[Home] → [Move] → [To top]
To return to e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic list		[CLR] or [Home] → [Move] → [List]

Note

- The details screen uses "蹴りたい背中" (Keritai Senaka) by Risa Wataya provided by ©ザウルスセレクト文庫 (©Zaurus Select Library)/河出書房新社 (Kawade Shobo Shinsha Publishers).
- When **Function lock** is applied to multimedia, terminal security code is required to activate Manga&BookReader.
- When **[CLR]** is pressed to end Manga&BookReader, the page displayed at the time of termination automatically appears the next time Manga&BookReader is activated. However, page does not appear when file displayed at time of Manga&BookReader termination is not saved on re-inserted microSD Memory Card or when activated from **Character reader**. Page also does not appear if **Supportbook** is opened from stand-by.

Note

- Depending on the e-books, etc., a password may be required. Enter password (up to 16 digits) and press **[OK]**.
- Up to 400 entries can be viewed in the list of e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic.

Using Multi Assistant

- Press **[MULTI]** while composing message to use Manga&BookReader.

Displaying history

When the information to move to other pages may be contained, select character string or image with the information to move to the specified page.

Press **[←]** to display previous pages viewed in backward order.

- When there is no history, first page appears.

Related Operations**Switch folders <Switch folder>**

In stand-by, press **[▶]** **[Media tool]** **[▶]** **[Manga&BookReader]** **[▶]** **[Switch folder]** **[▶]** select folder.

Note (Related operations)**Switching display folders**

- Display folder with e-book of XMDF format that was used on non-FOMA terminals such as mobile information devices.
- Depending on mobile information devices used, folders may not be displayed.

e-book and others with view restrictions

Some e-book and others may have access restrictions such as the number of accesses, expiration date or access period. When accessing these e-books and others is attempted, a confirmation message appears. When the number of access is set, select whether to access these e-comics.

- The following shows the operation for when the access restrictions are exceeded.

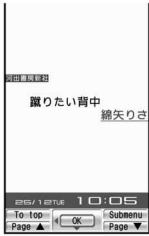
Number of access		When display is attempted, [This data can no longer be viewed. Delete?] appears. Select [Yes] to delete.
Expiration date		When display is attempted, [View period has expired. Delete?] appears. Select [Yes] to delete.
Access period	Before	When display is attempted, [View period has not yet started] appears.
	After	When display is attempted, [View period has expired. Delete?] appears. Select [Yes] to delete.

Operating the details screen

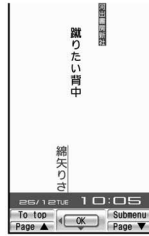
Use e-books, etc. details screen in the following ways.

Bookmark	Insert bookmark	Adds a bookmark to the page being viewed. Up to two bookmarks (up to ten books) can be set for one e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic.
	Move to bookmark	Displays page bookmarked previously.
File property		Shows properties of e-books, etc. ([P] P. 373).
Current location		Approximate position of current page, in respect to total pages, is shown (percentage). For e-comic, the frame location is also shown.
Move	Table of contents	When table of contents is available for e-books, etc. displays page from table of contents.
	To top	Displays first page.
	To end	Displays last page.
	List	Displays e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic list.
	Set % move	Displays page which is located approximately specified percentage into the document.
Copy Text		Copies character string from document. Can be pasted to other screens. Up to 20 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters can be copied at once.
Character reader		While displaying e-dictionary, search for English words scanned ([P] P. 371).
Display settings	Font size	Sets font size to [Large font], [Default] or [Small font].
	Text direction	Sets the screen to display horizontally or vertically.
	Ruby text	Sets whether to show ruby text (reading of kanji).
	Image size	Sets image size to [Default Size] or [Double Size].
Comic setting	Zoom ↓	Displays screen at a reduced size in the page display screen.
	Frame/Page	Switches between the frame display screen (displayed by the frame) and the page display screen (displayed by the page).
	Zoom ↑	Displays screen at an enlarged size in the page display screen.
Set volume		Sets the volume for showing the e-books, etc. to [Large], [Medium], [Small] or [Mute].

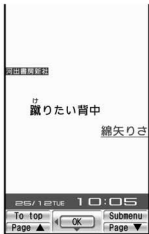
Vibrator	Sets whether to activate the vibrator when the frame, which activates the vibrator, appears.
Backlight time	Sets the Backlight time for showing the e-books, etc. to [As light setting] or [Always ON].



Horizontal screen



Vertical screen



Ruby text [ON]

Insert Bookmark <Insert bookmark>

- 1 In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Bookmark].
- 2 Select [Insert bookmark] ▶ [Bookmark 1]/[Bookmark 2].

Move to Bookmark <Move to bookmark>

- In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Bookmark] ▶ [Move to bookmark] ▶ select bookmark.

Check current display location

<Current location>

- In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Current location].

- To end checking: Press [End].

Display from table of contents

<Table of contents>

- In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Move] ▶ [Table of contents] ▶ select item.

Jump to last page <To end>

- In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Move] ▶ [To end].

Move to a page by specifying percentage

<Set % move>

- In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Move] ▶ [Set % move] ▶ enter percentage (two digits: 00 to 99 percent) and press [End].

Copy characters <Copy text>

- In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Copy text] ▶ select first character ▶ select last character.

Set font size

- In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Font size] ▶ select font size.

Switch between vertical and horizontal view <Text direction>

- 1 In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Text direction].
- 2 Select [Vertical]/[Horizontal].

Show ruby text (reading of kanji) <Ruby text>

- 1 In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Display settings].
- 2 Select [Ruby text] ▶ [ON].

Switch image size <Image size>

- 1 In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Image Size].
- 2 Select [Default Size]/[Double Size].

Zoom/Shrink screen in the page display screen of e-comic <Zoom ↑/Zoom ↓>

- 1 In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Comics setting].
- 2 Select [Zoom ↑]/[Zoom ↓].

Switch the frame/page display screens of e-comic <Frame/Page>

- In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Comics setting] ▶ [Frame/Page].

Adjust volume <Set volume>

- In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Set volume] ▶ select volume.

Set vibrator of e-comic <Vibrator>

- 1 In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Vibrator].
- 2 Select [ON].

Set display light <Backlight time>

- 1 In the details screen, press [OK] ▶ [Backlight time].
- 2 Select [As light setting]/[Always ON].

Note

Bookmarks

- In the page display screen of e-comic, [Move to bookmark] and [Move] cannot be selected.
- When the 11th bookmark or auto bookmark is set, the oldest bookmark or auto bookmark is automatically deleted.

Note

- When Manga&BookReader ends, the last page displayed is automatically set as [Auto bookmark 1]. The next time the same e-books, etc. are displayed and ended, the last page viewed is set as [Auto bookmark 1] and the previously set [Auto bookmark 1] is reset to [Auto bookmark 2]. Up to two auto bookmarks can be set for one e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic (up to ten total) and are automatically deleted from the oldest.
- [Auto bookmark] cannot be set when battery pack is removed.
- When **[MULTI]** is pressed in stand-by to activate **Supportbook**, the first page appears instead of [Auto bookmark]. When Supportbook is opened from Multi Assistant, [Auto bookmark] is not used. The top page or page corresponding to the function that Multi Assistant was activated from is shown.
- Auto bookmark does not appear for contents with a password set.

Copy text

- Scanned text is discarded when the power is turned off.
- Certain characters cannot be copied.
- Masked characters, ruby text, and external characters cannot be copied.
- Copy text may not be available depending on e-comic.

Display settings

- Depending on the data, switching display may not be possible, or the display setting for the e-book and others may be specified.
- Texts in the balloon of an e-book are images. Font size, Text direction, and Ruby text are not reflected to them.
- **Supportbook** cannot be switched between vertical and horizontal display.
- For e-book, etc. with no ruby text settings, readings are not available.

Comic setting

- Comic setting is not available for e-book/e-dictionary.
- In the frame display screen for e-comics, the screen cannot be zoomed/shrunk.
- Frame/Page may not be available depending on e-comic.

Vibrator

- Vibrator can be set for e-book or e-dictionary. However, the function is activated for only e-comic that is created so that the vibrator is activated.

Shortcut keys for e-comic

Comic setting (☞ P. 368) is allocated to the keys below for convenient use while the page display screen is displayed by e-comic.

Key	Operation
[1]	Zoom ↓
[2]	Frame/Page ● Also available on the frame display screen.
[3]	Zoom ↑

- In some cases, these keys may not be operated even if Frame display/Page display is set.

Using Supportbook**1**

In stand-by, press **[MULTI].**

- Activate corresponding functions from Supportbook (☞ P. 37).

Searching in e-dictionary

Search for a word in an e-dictionary. Explanations below use the e-dictionary as an example.

- Text scanned with Character reader can be looked up in the e-dictionary as well (☞ P. 177).
 - The e-dictionary saved in the microSD Memory Card is required.
- ※ The e-dictionary is available on the following SHARP original website, "Sharp Space Town".
<http://www.spacetown.ne.jp/>

1

In stand-by, press **[Media tool] ▶ **[Manga&BookReader]** ▶ **select folder** ▶ **select e-dictionary**.**

- To read text with Character reader, press **[Character reader]** (☞ P. 371).

2

Select input field and press **[Character reader] ▶ **enter word and press **[OK]****.**

- Enter up to 255 characters.
- Read characters are entered when an e-dictionary is started from Character reader.

3

Select word.

Using the Information in e-Book/e-Dictionary/e-Comic

Perform various functions from e-book (e-book, e-dictionary, e-comic), such as moving data to another page, using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, playing movie/sound, saving still pictures, and masking character strings (supported pages only).


- The e-book, etc. saved in the microSD Memory Card are required.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To



Use information (such as phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs) highlighted in e-book, etc., or images embedded with Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To functions to easily make calls, send mail, or view sites and Internet web pages (☞ P. 195).

1 In stand-by, press  **[Media tool]** **[Manga&BookReader]** **▶** select folder **▶** select e-book, etc.

2 Select phone number, mail address, or URL.

- When set in image, press  and select [Move to link].

3 Select **[Yes]**.

- When Phone To (AV Phone To) is set, check the phone number and press  to make a Videophone call. For voice call, check the phone number and press .
- When Mail To is set, compose message screen with mail address already entered appears.
- When Web To is set, connection starts and site or Internet web page appears if i-mode/ Full Browser is selected.

Note

- In some cases, even if phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed, making calls, sending messages, and displaying sites may not be possible.

Jumping to the linked site

When a link for another page is set on a character string or image, that page can be displayed.

1 In the details screen in step 1 of “Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To” on P. 371, select a character string or image with link.

Playing back movies

The movies/sound can be played back when movie/sound information is set in the image.

1 In the details screen in step 1 of “Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To” on P. 371, select image **▶** **[Play Movie/Sound]**.

Related Operations

Mask character strings and images <Mask>

In the details screen in step 1 of “Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To”, select character string/image.

- To display masked character string: Select character string.
- To display masked image: Select image **▶** [Switch mask].

Saving Images in e-Book/ e-Dictionary/e-Comic

Still pictures shown in e-book, etc. can be set as the stand-by display (☞ P. 128) when saved in My picture (☞ P. 313).

- Some images, such as those in PNG format, cannot be saved.
- Image is saved in the [Camera] folder in My picture (☞ P. 313).
- Save up to 1,000 images. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.
- All images are saved as having copyrights. Images cannot be saved on microSD Memory Cards, nor attached to mail.

1 In the details screen in step 1 of “Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To” on P. 371, select still picture **▶** **[Save to My pic]**.


Character Reader

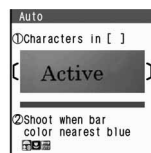
Scanning Text to Search for Words in an e-Dictionary

While displaying e-dictionary, search for English words scanned with FOMA terminal.

- The e-dictionary saved in the microSD Memory Card is required.
- Refer to P. 175 for details on Character Reader.

Example: When searching in an English-Japanese dictionary

1 In the details screen in step 1 of “Searching in e-dictionary” on P. 370, press  **▶** **[Character reader]**.



2 Display text to be scanned in the center of the screen (P. 176) ().

- Press () to specify the line to scan. Text is read one line at a time.

3 Press (Scan).

- Scanning starts. When scanning is complete, an end tone is heard and the Candidate screen appears. The type of scanned text is displayed.



4 Check scanned text and press () select word to search for.

Managing e-Book/ e-Dictionary/e-Comic

Create folders for e-book (e-book, e-dictionary, e-comic) files, manage, delete, move and rename e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic files, or view their properties.

- As for the files in the [Pre-install] folder, file names cannot be edited, and files cannot be moved or deleted.

Managing Folders

Create up to 397 folders and manage files.

- For [Comic] folder, create up to 400 folders in the folder.

Creating folders <New folder>

1 In stand-by, press () [Media tool] [Manga&BookReader] () [Manage folders].

2 Select [New folder] enter folder name and press ().

- To erase "New folder" name, press (CLR) for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a folder name in the [Comic] folder. For other folder names, enter up to 64 single/double-byte characters.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

1 In stand-by, press () [Media tool] [Manga&BookReader] select folder and press () [Manage folders].

2 Select [Edit folder name] edit folder name and press ().

- To erase folder name, press (CLR) for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

Folder name/File name

- Folder names and file names appear blank if folders and files are named using unsupported character codes with a PC or other devices.

Deleting folders <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press () [Media tool] [Manga&BookReader] select folder and press () [Delete].

2 Select deletion method.

To delete folder individually	[Delete one folder] → enter terminal security code and press () → [Yes]
To delete folders collectively	[Delete sel folders] → enter terminal security code and press () → select folder (repeatable) → C → [Yes] ● Press (SelAll)/(ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all folders and files	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press () → [Yes]

Note

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- All files saved in the folder can be deleted.

Managing e-Book/e-Dictionary/ e-Comic

Delete or move an e-book, etc.

Editing file names <Edit file name>

1 In stand-by, press () [Media tool] [Manga&BookReader] select folder.

2 Select e-book, etc. and press ().

e-book/ e-dictionary	[Edit file name]
e-comic	[Edit title] → [Edit title] ● To return to the original title, select [Edit title] → [Back to original].

3 Edit file name and press ().

- To erase file name, press (CLR) for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

Note

- For e-comic, the title name is edited.
- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters for a title name in the [Comic] folder. For other file names, enter up to 64 single/double-byte characters.
- File names up to eight single-byte characters and their extensions may be changed from lower to upper case.

Moving file to another folder <Move>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Media tool] ▶ [Manga&BookReader] ▶ select folder.

2 Select e-book, etc. and press ▶ [Move].

3 Select a transfer method.

To move file individually	[Move one] → select folder
To move files collectively	[Move selected] → select file (repeatable) → → select folder • Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To move all files in folders	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press → select folder

Viewing detailed information

<File property>

View detailed information such as the e-book in XMDf format (.zbf).

- The following information is shown. However, information listed does not appear if not saved in e-book, etc.

e-book list	Title (Original), file name, author, publishing company, file size, and access restriction information
Details screen	Series, title, subtitle, file name, author, publishing company, publisher, summary, distribution date/time, file size, distribution date/time stamping information, and access restriction information

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Media tool] ▶ [Manga&BookReader] ▶ select folder.

2 Select e-book, etc. ▶ ▶ [File property].

- To view from e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic list, press and select [File property].
- To end viewing, press .

Note

- File properties for **Supportbook** are not available.

Note

- File names appear with their extensions.
- File property is not available while e-comic is displayed in the page display screen.

Deleting an e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Media tool] ▶ [Manga&BookReader] ▶ select folder.

2 Select file and press ▶ [Delete].

3 Select deletion method.

To delete file individually	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete files collectively	[Delete selected] → select file (repeatable) → → [Yes] • Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all files in folders	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Sorting e-comics <Sort>

Change the [Comic] folder order.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Media tool] ▶ [Manga&BookReader] ▶ select [Comic] folder ▶ ▶ [Sort].

2 Select a sorting method.

Sorting method	Date(new→old)	By title name
	Date(old→new)	

Print Setting (DPOF)

Printing Saved Images

DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) is a format for printing still pictures shot with a digital camera. Designate still pictures on microSD Memory Card and print specified images/quantity at a digital camera print shop which supports DPOF or use a DPOF compatible printer.

- Still pictures downloaded from sites or Internet web pages cannot be printed. However, JPEG images that can be copied to microSD Memory Card can be printed.
- Refer to printing device user's guide for details on printing.
- Folder for DPOF use
 - Still picture folder/user created folder (P. 337)
 - DCF compliant folder created by other devices (P. 173)
- File for DPOF use

- Still pictures saved in above folders (DCF compliant JPEG)
- Still pictures on FOMA terminal handset cannot be designated.

Setting Printing Method for Images Saved in the microSD Memory Card <Print Setting(DPOF)>

- Non-DCF compliant still pictures saved on microSD Memory Cards with other devices may not be printed.
- Printing is not available for files which are cut from PDF viewer and have file restrictions.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Print setting(DPOF)].

- When DPOF is already set by another device, a confirmation screen appears. To clear, select [Yes]. Current DPOF must be cleared to set a new DPOF.

2 Set the printing details.

To designate the number of prints	Select folder → select still picture and press → enter number of prints (00 to 99) and press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Select still picture and enter the quantity to print by pressing to . ● Set to continue printing other still pictures.
To print same quantity of all still pictures	→ [Specify group] → [All image] → enter number of prints (00 to 99) and press
To print same number of still pictures [Over 640×480]	→ [Specify group] → [Over 640×480] → enter number of prints (00 to 99) and press
To print same number of still pictures [Over 1024×768]	→ [Specify group] → [Over 1024×768] → enter number of prints (00 to 99) and press
To cancel all designated print settings	→ [Reset all] → [Yes]
To add date	→ [Add date] → [ON] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Date in properties of still picture can be added.
To specify index print	Designate the number of prints → → [Set index print] → [ON] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Index print enables thumbnail-size images to be printed along with the file name on postcard or A4 size paper.

To check Designated print status	→ [Status] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When using Specify group, an approximate quantity appears. ● Press to end checking.
----------------------------------	---

3 Press (Complete) ▶ [Yes].

- Select [No] to specify again.

4 Select [OK].

Related Operations

Sort still pictures <Sort>

In stand-by, press ▶ [Data box] ▶ [Print setting(DPOF)] ▶ select folder ▶ ▶ [Sort] ▶ select sort method.

Note (Related operations)

- The setting continues even if the display is ended after sorting.

Music&Video Channel/ Music Playback

■ Music&Video Channel

- Music&Video Channel376
- Activating Music&Video Channel376
- Setting Program <Set Program>376
- Program Playback/Operation377
- Operating Music&Video Channel from Data Box380

■ Music Playback

- Playing Back Music.381
- Music Player381
- Saving Music Data382
- Folder and Screen of Music Player.384
- Playing Back Music Data with Music Player. <Music>385
- Managing Folder/Playlist/Music Data388
- Setting Music Player. <Playback Settings>391
- Using SD-Audio <SD-Audio>392

Handling the music data

- This manual refers to Chaku-uta full[®], WMA (Windows Media Audio) files played back using Music player, and SD-Audio data played back using SD-Audio as “music data”.
- The FOMA terminal can play back WMA files or Chaku-uta full[®] which are protected with copyright protection technology.
- When downloading the music data from Internet web pages, check use conditions (license, prohibited acts, etc.) carefully before use.
- WMA files, which are protected with copyright protection technology, are played back using the information unique to the FOMA terminal. When the information unique to the FOMA terminal is changed due to a failure, repair, upgrade and others, WMA files, which are saved before change, may not be able to be played back.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for handling of CCCD (Copy Controlled CD) or even if music data cannot be saved as a WMA file.
- Music data saved on FOMA terminal handset or the microSD Memory Card can be used for personal use only. Refrain from infringing upon intellectual property rights of a third party’s copyrighted material. Do not copy or transfer music data saved on FOMA terminal handset or the microSD Memory Card to PC or any other medium.

Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel is a service that programs of approximately up to 1 hour are automatically distributed at night if your favorite programs such as music programs are set in advance. In addition, high-quality movie programs of approximately up to 30 minutes can be viewed. The programs are updated on a regular basis and enjoy the distributed programs at any time such as during commuting time to office or school.

Using Music&Video Channel

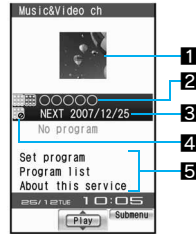
- Music&Video Channel is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode and Pake-hodai/ Pake-hodai full subscription is also required).
- Some programs may require a separate fee in addition to Music&Video Channel service charge.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on Music&Video Channel.
- If the FOMA card is inserted to the FOMA terminal, which does not support Music&Video Channel, after Music&Video Channel is subscribed, Music&Video Channel cannot be used. However, a service usage fee is incurred unless Music&Video Channel subscription is canceled.
- Setting or acquiring programs of Music&Video Channel is not available overseas.* When going abroad, deactivate the distribution of programs in advance. After returning to Japan, resume the distribution of programs. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.
 - * When programs are attempted to be set or acquired during international roaming, packet charges are incurred from connecting to i-mode.

Background playback

- For the program with voice only, view mail or i-mode sites while playing the program. Refer to "Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations" on P. 479 for the combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously.
- For the program with video and voice or the one with Time link distribution applied, it cannot be played in the background.

Activating Music&Video Channel

- 1 In stand-by, press [MUSIC] ▶ [Music&Video ch].



Music&Video Channel menu

1 Program image

2 Program title

Program title display: Program acquired
 No program: No program set
 Setting prg: Program set, before program acquisition
 Downloading: Acquiring program

3 Next scheduled update date

4 Program type icon

(yellow)	Program successfully acquired
	Program failed to be acquired
(blue)	Program that has never been played
	Program with Time link distribution applied
	Program with replay restriction

5 Service menu

Set program: Program can be set/disabled.
 Program list: Connect to the program list site.
 About this service: Connect to the explanation site of Music&Video Channel.

Set Program

Setting Program

Set programs to be viewed so that the program data are automatically acquired at night. Set up to two programs.

Setting/Disabling Program

- 1 In Music&Video Channel menu (P. 376), select [Set program].


2 Follow instructions on screen and set/disable a program.



- Use the same steps to check the set programs.


Note

- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.
- When setting program, **My menu** registration to a site which provides Music&Video Channel program is required.
- My menu registration cannot be deleted even if disabling program setting.

When the Program Is Set

 appears in stand-by 12 hours before the program distribution.

The acquisition of the program is automatically performed at night. When the acquisition is successfully completed,  (download successful) appears in stand-by. When the acquisition is failed,  (download failed) appears. In this case, acquire the program manually.

- When the transmission is interrupted while the program is acquired, the program is automatically re-acquired up to five times at 3-minute intervals.
- When the program cannot be acquired at the start time for acquiring the program due to the reasons that the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off, or battery level is low, the program is re-acquired at night of the following day.
- Ring tone does not sound, called LED does not flash and vibrator is not activated even if acquiring programs is started or completed.
- Acquiring programs may take time. If battery icon does not indicate , the programs cannot be acquired. Fully charge the battery and acquire the programs under the good signal condition.
- Programs cannot be automatically acquired in the following situations: Set the programs again from the Music&Video Channel menu.
 - When inserting the FOMA card different from the one that was used when the programs are set
 - When inserting the FOMA card to the different FOMA terminal supporting Music&Video Channel after setting programs
 - When deleting data collectively
- When the program acquisition is interrupted, the program acquired until the interruption is saved. Acquire the remaining data manually.
- When i-mode or Music&Video Channel is canceled or My menu registration is deleted, the program data in the Delivery program folder may be deleted.

Acquiring Programs Manually

1 In Music&Video Channel menu (P. 376), select a program ▶ [Yes].




Note

- Depending on the acquiring hours, [Unable to download at this hour] appears, and the manual program acquisition may not be available. To confirm the distribution hour, select [About dist hour].
- Programs whose replay restrictions are exceeded cannot be re-acquired. In addition, it cannot be updated until the next distribution date.


Program Playback/Operation

Playing Back Program

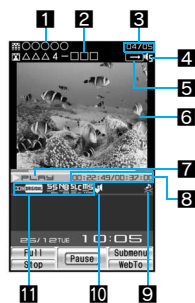
1 In Music&Video Channel menu (P. 376), select a program.

- When  (download successful) appears in stand-by, the Music&Video Channel menu appears even if  is pressed in stand-by and  (download successful) is selected.
- The chapter previously played resumes from a chapter when stopped.
- When the program failed to be acquired is selected, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to download the program again. Select [Yes] to download. When the update is failed but the original program can be played, select [Play prev music] to play the program.
- When the program acquired until the interruption is selected, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to download the remaining data. Select [Yes] to download. Select [Play] to play the acquired part. However, for the program with Time link distribution applied, [Play] cannot be selected.
- Some programs may have replay restrictions such as the limitation of number of replays, expiration date, or replay period. A program cannot be played back when the replay restrictions are exceeded.
- For the program with video and voice, Full-screen mode is available when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position. If returning to normal position, Full-screen mode is deactivated. However, when the Submenu or others appear on the screen, the screen mode is not switched.

Note

- When the battery icon does not indicate /▶/□, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not when playback resumes or during playback. Select [Yes] to play. Also a confirmation screen may appear depending ▶/□.

Music&Video Channel player screen layout

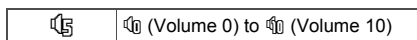


1 Program title name

2 Chapter title name/Artist name

3 Chapter number

4 Volume



5 Repeat



6 Program image/Chapter image (for program with voice only)/Image (program with video and voice)

7 Playback

	▶ PLAY	During playback
	⏸ PAUSE	While paused
	■ STOP	While stopped
	⏩ FF	While fast forward
	⏪ REW	While fast rewind

8 Play time/Total time

9 Availability of playing image/audio



10 Manner playback



11 Dolby sound

	Normal		Classic
	Rock		Jazz
	Pops		Original

When original is selected

	Sound Space		Sound Level Cnt
	Natural Bass		Mono-to-Stereo

Key operations during playback

	When FOMA terminal is open	When in the viewer position	When FOMA terminal is closed
To pause	(Pause)	(Pause)	(Pause)
To stop		—	—
To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10) ^{*1}	/ ● Keep key pressed to adjust volume continuously.	/	(Eco)
To play previous chapter/To return to beginning of chapter ^{*1, 2}		(Eco)	Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds
To fast rewind ^{*1}	Press for 1+ seconds	Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds	—
To play next chapter ^{*1}			Press for 1+ seconds
To fast forward ^{*1}	Press for 1+ seconds	Press for 1+ seconds	—
To switch display in full-screen (only program with video and voice)	(Full)	—	—
To connect to site	(WebTo) ● Connect to site if the program has URL information.	—	—
To end Music&Video Channel player	or → [Yes]	(P) (or (Eco) for 1+ seconds) → [Yes] → (Eco)	Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds
To display Submenu		—	—

*1 For the program with video and voice, operations for up/down and left/right are switched when in Full-screen mode display. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.

*2 If playback time is less than approximately 2 seconds, the previous chapter is played. If playback time is approximately 2 seconds or more, the chapter returns to the beginning.

- Press a dial key (1 to 9) to jump to a location assigned to the key and resume playback. Press 1 during playback to return to the beginning of chapter. Press 2 to 8 to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the recording time. Press 9 to jump to the end of chapter. However, it may not be possible to jump depending on the chapter.
- When Manner playback is set to [ON], the volume over 6 is changed into 5 (Change the volume from Volume 0 to 5).
- Some programs have restrictions on the operations of the move between chapters. Fast forward, Fast rewind and Jump to a specified position.

When connecting a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately)

To play/ To pause	Press a switch ● Alternates each time the switch is pressed.
----------------------	---

Programs with Time link distribution applied

Play the program with Time link distribution applied during the specified hours. It cannot be played depending on the hours. It is activated following the time set with Auto time correction (Even if Auto time correction is set to [OFF] and the time is manually changed, the program cannot be played).

- While the program is played, Pause, the move between chapters, Fast forward, Fast rewind and a jump to the specified position are not available.
- Chapters cannot be selected from chapter list.
- Repeat of Playback settings cannot be set.

Setting for when Music&Video Channel is played <Playback settings>

1 In Music&Video Channel player screen (P. 378), press [] ▶ [Playback settings] ▶ select an item.

To set repeat	[Repeat] → [ON]/[OFF]
To set manner playback	[Manner playback] → [ON]/[OFF]
To set Backlight time*	[Backlight time] → [As light setting]/[Always ON]
To display Full-screen mode*	[Full-screen mode]

* Available only for the program with video and voice.

Note

Manner playback

- When Manner playback is set to [ON], the playback volume cannot be set to Volume 6 or larger.

Setting Dolby sound <Dolby sound set.>

1 In Music&Video Channel player screen (P. 378), press [] ▶ [Dolby Sound Set.] ▶ select an item.

Item	Normal	Classic
	Rock	Jazz
	Pops	Original

- Set each item and press [] (Complete) if original is selected.

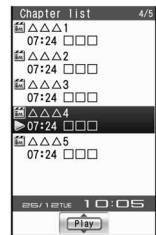
Sound Space	Select [Sound Space] → [ON]/[OFF]
Natural Bass	Select [Natural Bass] → [ON]/[OFF]
Sound Level Controller	Select [Sound Level Cnt] → [ON]/[OFF]
Mono to Stereo	Select [Mono-to-Stereo] → [ON]/[OFF]

Checking Program Chapter List <Chapter List>

Display the Chapter list of the program to check the title, artist's name and playback time of each chapter.

1 In Music&Video Channel menu (P. 376)/program list screen (P. 381), select a program and press [] ▶ [Chapter list].

- In Music&Video Channel player screen, press [] and select [Chapter list].



Chapter list

Meaning of icons

	Chapter of the program with video and voice
	Chapter of the program with voice only
	Chapter failed to be acquired
	Chapter during playback

- Play back from a selected chapter if the chapter is selected.
- Depending on a program, displaying chapter list or selecting chapter may not be available.

Viewing chapter properties

<Chapter info>

The following information is shown.

Program with video and voice	Title, creator, description, play time, copyright, and file size
Program with voice only	Title, artist, comment, music by, lyric by, rights holder, selling agency, rights information, label, play time, and file size

1 In Chapter list screen (P. 379), select a chapter and press [Chapter info].

- In Music&Video Channel player screen, press [] and select [Chapter info].
- Depending on a program, displaying chapter information may not be available.

Checking Program Information

<Program Info>

The following information is shown.

- Name
- Chapter back restriction
- File type
- Time link distribution [Restricted/Unrestricted]
- File restriction [Restricted/Unrestricted]
- Move restriction [Restricted/Unrestricted]
- Replay restriction
- File valid
- Expiration date
- Fast forward restriction [Restricted/Unrestricted]
- Rewind restriction [Restricted/Unrestricted]
- Chapter skip restriction [Restricted/Unrestricted]
- Program image [Restricted/Unrestricted]
- URL
- Title
- Creator
- Rights information
- Distributor
- Comment
- Play time
- File size
- Program size
- Source
- Save date

1 In Music&Video Channel menu (P. 376)/program list screen (P. 381), select a program and press [Program info].

- In Music&Video Channel player screen, press [] and select [Program info].
- When the program has URL information, press [] (WebTo) in program information screen and select [Yes] to connect to site.

Saving Program <Move Program>

Acquired programs are saved in the [Delivery program] folder in Music&Video Channel of Data box. When programs are updated, the saved programs are overwritten and cannot be played. Move the programs, which should not be overwritten, to [Save program] folder in advance.

- Save up to two programs on [Delivery program] folder and 20 programs on [Save program] folder.

1 In Music&Video Channel menu (P. 376), select a program and press [Move program].

Note

- Acquired programs cannot be copied or saved on microSD Memory Cards.
- Programs cannot be moved in the following cases.
 - Program failed to be acquired
 - Program with Time link distribution applied
 - Program with Move restriction applied
 - Program whose replay restrictions are exceeded
 - Program with FOMA card restrictions applied
 - Setting program

Deleting Program <Delete>

1 In Music&Video Channel menu (P. 376), select a program and press [Delete] [Yes].

Note

- Program setting cannot be deleted even if disabling programs.

Connecting to Site <Connect to URL>

When a program has URL information, an access can be made to the site.

1 In Music&Video Channel menu (P. 376), select a program and press [Connect to URL] [Yes].

Operating Music&Video Channel from Data Box

Play the program currently distributed to the [Delivery program] folder in Music&Video Channel of Data box or the program moved to and saved in [Save program].

- Refer to P. 348 for managing program.

1 In stand-by, press [Data box] [Music&Video ch].

- Music&Video channel folder list appears.

2 Select a folder.

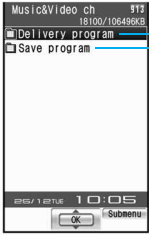
- Program list appears.

3 Select a program.

- Program play back.

Screen Layout

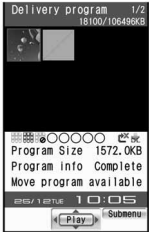
Music&Video channel folder list layout



Folder for distributing set programs

Folder for moved programs

Program list layout



Program list

Program type and their icons

Program types

	Program successfully acquired
	Program failed to be acquired
	Program with FOMA Card Restriction Functions applied
	Program that have not been played
	Program with Time link distribution applied
	Program that has playback restrictions

Mark types

	Program downloaded from i-mode
	Program with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal

Related Operations

Change the display method for the program list <Switch view mode>

- In the program list, press ► [Switch view mode].
- Select [12-part]/[20-part]/[List display].

Changing Program Title <Edit Title>

- In the program list screen (P. 381), select a program and press ► [Edit title] ► [Direct input].

- To return to original title, press and select [Edit title] → [Back to original].

- Edit title and press .

- To erase title, press for 1+ seconds in the title editing screen.
- Enter up to 253 single-byte (126 double-byte) characters.

Playing Back Music

Play back music on the FOMA terminal with the following methods. These methods must be selected depending on music data.

- Mail and browsing of i-mode sites are available while listening to music (Background playback). Refer to "Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations" on P. 479 for the combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously.

Music player (P. 381)

Play back Chaku-uta full[®] downloaded from sites and Internet web pages, and WMA (Windows Media Audio) files and voice only i-motion (including music data in AAC format) saved to microSD Memory Card.

- i-motion can be played back using i-motion player (P. 321).

SD-Audio (P. 392)

Use SD-Jukebox and a PC or other devices to play back music data saved in the microSD Memory Card.

Music Player

- The music data that can be played back are as follows.

Music data type	File format	Audio codec
Chaku-uta full [®]	MP4	MPEG4-AAC, MPEG4-HEAAC (aacPlus), Enhanced aacPlus
WMA file	WMA	WMA9
Data in [Multimedia]	MP4	AMR, MPEG4-AAC, MPEG4-HEAAC (aacPlus), Enhanced aacPlus

- The music data and playback time that can be saved are as follows.

Music data type	FOMA terminal handset	microSD Memory Card	Maximum playback time
Chaku-uta full [®]	Approx. 104 MB*1	Up to 400 per folder*2	Approx. 1,000 min
WMA file	—	Up to 400*2	Approx. 1,000 min

Music data type	FOMA terminal handset	microSD Memory Card	Maximum playback time
Data in [Multimedia]	—	Up to 400 per folder*2	Approx. 840 min

*1 When Still picture, Movie, MUSIC, Melody, My Documents, Kisekae Tool, Chara-den or i-appli are saved, the memory capacity of Chaku-uta full® will be small.

*2 Capacity varies depending on the size of a music data or the capacity of microSD Memory Card.

- Music data saved on FOMA terminal handset or the microSD Memory Card can be used for personal use only. Refrain from infringing upon intellectual property rights of a third party's copyrighted material. Do not copy or transfer music data saved on FOMA terminal handset or the microSD Memory Card to PC or any other medium.

Saving Music Data

Downloading Chaku-uta full®

Save Chaku-uta full® downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Download up to 5 MB Chaku-uta full®.
- When a music data with copyright is downloaded, it cannot be played back using a different FOMA card.

1 While viewing sites (☞ P. 180) or Internet web pages (☞ P. 187), select Chaku-uta full®.

- For Uta-hodai, the replay period information is acquired, and then downloading Uta-hodai begins.

2 Save.

To save Chaku-uta full®	[Save] → select folder and press [S] ● To save to microSD Memory Card, select [→microSD] → [Movable contents] and press [S] .
To play Chaku-uta full®	[Play] ● To return to the previous screen, press [CLR] .
To view detailed information	[File property] ● To return to the previous screen, press [◀] or [CLR] .
To not save	[Back] → [No]

- When saving is completed, a confirmation screen asking whether to play Chaku-uta full® appears. Select [Yes] to play.
- Do not remove microSD Memory Card while reading/writing/aborting data. Sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.

Saving WMA File

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) and save WMA files to microSD Memory Card using Windows Media Player 10/11.

- Save up to 400 WMA files.
- A playlist can be transferred from a PC.
- Playing back copyrighted music data is only possible with the FOMA terminal used for transfer from a PC.
- WMA files saved on devices other than FOMA SH905i cannot be played back even if they are the music data without copyright.
- When the microSD Memory Card to which WMA files are saved is inserted, WMA files saved on devices other than FOMA SH905i may not be displayed.
- If using the microSD Memory Card to which WMA files are saved on devices other than FOMA SH905i, the microSD Memory Card will not be correctly recognized by PCs even when MTP mode is set. In such cases, delete all the WMA files collectively (☞ P. 391) or format the microSD Memory Card (☞ P. 343). Note that all data including the music data is deleted when the microSD Memory Card is formatted.
- Install Windows Media Player 10/11 in advance.

Windows Media Player 10/11

- Use Windows XP Service Pack 2 or after when using Windows Media Player 10/11 with Windows XP. Use Windows Media Player 11 for Windows Vista. For operation methods, refer to Windows Media Player 10/11 help.
- Reconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 to the PC when the PC is recovered from standby or sleep mode while using Windows Media Player 10.

1 Save WMA files to a PC using Windows Media Player 10/11.

2 Insert microSD Memory Card in the FOMA terminal and set FOMA terminal to [MTP mode] (☞ P. 345).

3 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01.

4 Activate Windows Media Player 10/11 and select the music data to be saved ▶ transfer the music data to microSD Memory Card.

5 Disconnect FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 from the FOMA terminal when transfer is completed.

6 Press a key other than the side key ▶ [Yes].

- Switch to Communication mode automatically.

Napster® appli

Save music data using Napster® appli.

- Download Napster® appli in the following web page.
<http://www.napster.jp/> (As of October 2007)
- Refer to the following web page for further information on Napster® appli.
<http://www.napster.jp/support/> (As of October 2007)

Note**WMA file transfer playlist**

- Up to 59 single/double-byte characters appear as a playlist name on the FOMA terminal.
- The playlist is overwritten if a playlist, whose name is the same in its first to 59th characters, is transferred.

Saving i-motion (Including Music Data in AAC Format) Created with PC on the FOMA Terminal

Use a PC to save music from a purchased CD to the microSD Memory Card and play on the FOMA terminal. The following explains how to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) and save music data in [Multimedia] folder in i-motion of Data box to play.

1 Convert music taken from CDs to MP4 format using commercially available software, and save them on a PC.

- For details on how to use the software, see the maker's website, etc.

2 Insert microSD Memory Card in the FOMA terminal and set FOMA terminal to [microSD mode] (☞ P. 345).**3 Connect the FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01.****4 Copy a music data.**

- Copy procedure is as follows.
 1. **Rename the file created in step 1 to "MMFxxx.3gp"/"MMFxxx.mp4".**
 - To rename files, first set the PC to show file extensions.
 - Enter the renamed file name within the range between "MMF0001" and "MMF9999" in single-byte excluding the file extension.
 2. **Copy to the \PRIVATE\DOCOMO\MMFILE folder in the microSD Memory Card.**
 - For details on folder structure in the microSD Memory Card, refer to P. 337.

5 Disconnect FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 from the FOMA terminal after copying the music data.

- To disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01, follow the safe disconnecting method for hardware of each OS in a PC.

6 Press a key other than the side key ▶ [Yes].

- Switch to Communication mode automatically.

7 Update microSD Memory Card Manager Information.

- Refer to P. 346 for details.

To play a music data with i-motion player**1 In stand-by, press ◉ ▶ [Data box] ▶ [i-motion] ▶ [Switch phone↔SD].****2 Select a music data from the [Multimedia] folder and play.**

- Refer to P. 321 for details on i-motion playback, P. 322 for Repeat playback, and P. 324 for Continuous play.
- Refer to P. 385 for methods of playing back with Music player.
- Up to 400 files in the [Multimedia] folder are shown. Data may not appear if there are data that cannot be played back or data in the folder exceeds 400 files.

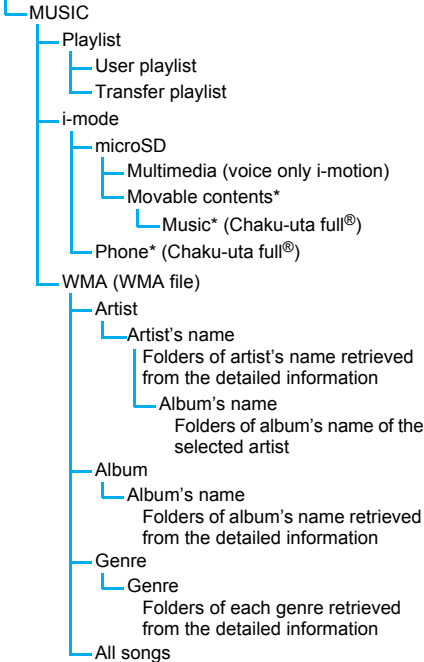
Note

- Playback is stopped if call is received or alarm activates.
- Music data may not play properly depending on the software.

Folder and Screen of Music Player

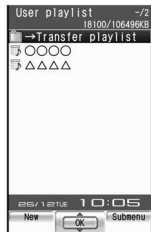
Folder Configuration of Music Player

Data box

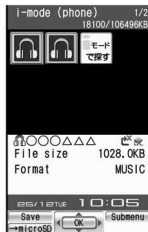


- * Folders can be created in the folder (P. 343, P. 347).
- This folder configuration is available only for Music player. This is different from actual one in the microSD Memory Card.
- For the [WMA] folder, the same file appears in multiple folders according to the detailed information of the WMA file.

Screen Layout



Playlist



Music data list of Chaku-uta full®



Music data list of WMA file



Music data list of data in [Multimedia]

Types and icons of music data

Music data types

User playlist	Transfer playlist	Chaku-uta full®		Chaku-uta full® with replay restrictions	
		Phone	microSD	Phone	microSD
		Expired Uta-hodai*		WMA file	
		Uta-hodai	Expired Uta-hodai*		
		Phone	microSD	Phone	microSD
		Data in [Multimedia]		Music data saved in the middle of download	
		MP4 (Mobile MP4)			

* Depending on the IP (Information Provider), some of Uta-hodai may be prohibited to be played back for convenience of service. In this case, the icon indicating the expiration of the replay period appears.

Icon types

	Music data with FOMA card restrictions applied
	Music data with file restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal
	Music data downloaded with i-mode, etc.
	Music data retrieved via the microSD Memory Card or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately)

Note

- Playing back ASF files is not possible with Music player.

Related Operations

Change the display method for the music data list screen in Chaku-uta full® and [Multimedia]

<Switch view mode>

- 1 In the music data list screen in Chaku-uta full®/[Multimedia], press ► [Display settings].
- 2 Select [Switch view mode] ► [12-part]/[20-part]/[List display].

View the list of music data for playback

<Play song list>

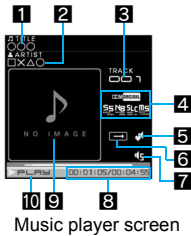
In the Music player screen, press (or ► [Play song list]).

Note (Related operations)

Play song list

- If Play song list is displayed, [not acquired yet] may appear.

Music player screen layout



- 1 Title*
- 2 Artist's name*
- 3 Track number
- 4 Dolby sound

	Normal		Classic
	Rock		Jazz
	Pops		Original

When original is selected

	Sound Space		Sound Level Cnt
	Natural Bass		Mono-to-Stereo

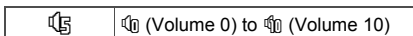
5 Manner playback



6 Playback mode

	Normal playback		Shuffle
	Repeat one		Repeat shuffle
	Repeat all		

7 Volume



8 Play time/Total time

9 Jacket image

10 Playback

	During playback
	While paused
	While stopped
	While fast forward
	While fast rewind

- * For Chaku-uta full® in FOMA terminal handset, up to 253 single-byte (126 double-byte) characters are available for the title and artist's name. For Chaku-uta full® in microSD Memory Card, up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters are available for the title name, and up to 253 single-byte (126 double-byte) characters are available for the artist's name. For the WMA file, up to 63 single/double-byte characters are available for the title and artist's name.

Music

Playing Back Music Data with Music Player

Playing a Series of Music Data in a Folder

1 In stand-by, press ► [Data box] ► [MUSIC].

- Alternatively, press in stand-by and select [MUSIC] → [MUSIC Player].



Data type selection screen

- When Uta-hodai that has reached the expiration date is contained, the confirmation screen for the update of expiration date appears (P. 387).

2 Select a data type.

Chaku-uta full®	[i-mode] ● Chaku-uta full® and folders are shown together. To select Chaku-uta full® in a folder, select the folder. ● To select Chaku-uta full® saved in microSD Memory Card, press (→microSD) → [Movable contents] → select the folder.
-----------------	--

WMA file	[WMA] → select the folder type → select the folder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The folder list screen appears with artists'/albums' names/genre when [Artist]/[Album]/[Genre] is selected as the folder type. When [All songs] is selected, the music data list screen of all the WMA file appears. When a folder of an artist is selected, the folder list screen appears with albums' names of the artist. Press (All) to view the list screen of all WMA file music data of the artist.
Data in [Multimedia]	[i-mode] → (→microSD) → [Multimedia]
Playlist	[Playlist] → select a playlist <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to "Playing a playlist" for details.

- A music data list screen appears.
- The music data previously played resumes from the spot when stopped if [Continue] is selected.

3

Select a music data.

- When Chaku-uta full[®] saved in the middle of download is selected, a confirmation screen asking whether to download the remaining data appears. Select [Yes] to download.

Playing a playlist

1

In stand-by, press [Data box] ▶ [MUSIC] ▶ [Playlist].

- Playlist screen appears (refer P. 384).
- To view Transfer playlist, select [→Transfer playlist].

2

Select a playlist and press (Play).

- To select and play back a music data in a playlist, press and select a music data.

Activating Music player in the viewer position or with the FOMA terminal closed

- Refer to P. 125 for details on Run music settings.
- A confirmation screen appears and playback is not available when Function lock is applied to multimedia, Manner mode is set, battery icon does not indicate /🔋, or Uta-hodai that has reached the expiration date is contained. Also, a confirmation screen may appear depending on the use even when the battery icon indicates 🔋.

1

Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds while the stand-by display is shown in the viewer position or with the FOMA terminal closed.

- Playback resumes from the spot when stopped if the music data is previously played. If there is no music data/playlist that was previously played, music data next to the previously played music data or music data on the top of User playlist/Transfer playlist is played. If a music data has never been played after turning on the power and no User playlist/Transfer playlist exists, no music data is played even if (Eco) is pressed for 1+ seconds. Refer to P. 389 for details on creating Playlist.

Key operations during playback

	When FOMA terminal is open	When in the viewer position	When FOMA terminal is closed
To pause	(Pause)	(📷)	(📷)
To stop	(Stop)	—	—
To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10)	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keep key pressed to adjust volume continuously. 	(Eco)	(Eco)
To play previous song/To return to beginning of song*1		(Eco)	Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds
To fast rewind	Press for 1+ seconds	Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds	—
To play next song			Press for 1+ seconds
To fast forward	Press for 1+ seconds	Press for 1+ seconds	—
To view a jacket image*2	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not displayed without images. 	—	—
To view a lyrics image*2	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not displayed without lyrics. 	—	—
To end Music player	or → [Yes]	(P) (or (📷) for 1+ seconds) → [Yes] → (📷)	Press (📷) for 1+ seconds
To display Submenu		—	—

*1 If playback time is less than approximately 2 seconds, the previous song is played. If playback time is approximately 2 seconds or more, the song returns to the beginning.

*2 Refer to P. 391 for details on key operations while viewing jacket image or lyrics image.



- Press a dial key (1 to 9) to jump to a location assigned to the key and resume playback. Press 1 during playback to return to the beginning of song. Press 2 to 8 to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the total time. Press 9 to jump to the end of song. However, it may not be possible to jump depending on music data.
- When Manner playback is set to [ON], the volume over 6 is changed into 5 (Change the volume from Volume 0 to 5).

When connecting a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately)

- The following operation is available with a flat-plug stereo earphone set (sold separately) or a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).

To play/ To pause	Press a switch ● Alternates each time the switch is pressed.
----------------------	---

Note

- When the battery icon does not indicate , a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not when playback resumes or during playback. Select [Yes] to play. Also, a confirmation screen may appear depending on the use even when the battery icon indicates .
- When a call is received during playback, the playback is stopped, the incoming call screen appears, and the call can be answered. When Music player screen appears after the call is ended, playback resumes from the spot where the playback stopped when the call was received.
- Using other functions during playback may cause music to skip.

Music Data with Replay Restrictions


Some music data may have replay restrictions such as the limitation of number of replays, expiration date, or replay period. The FOMA terminal operates differently depending on the music data types as shown below when the replay restrictions are exceeded.

For Chaku-uta full®

Number of replays	When playback is attempted, [This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?] appears. Select [Yes] to delete.
Expiration date	When playback is attempted, [Replay period has expired. Delete?] appears. Select [Yes] to delete.

Replay period	Before	When playback is attempted, [Replay period has not yet started] appears.
	After	When playback is attempted, [Replay period has expired. Delete?] appears. Select [Yes] to delete.

For Uta-hodai

If Uta-hodai that has reached the expiration date is contained, the confirmation screen for the date of expiration date appears when Music of Data box or Music player of MUSIC menu is selected or the expired Uta-hodai is played back. Press  (Yes) to update the expiration date.

※ Packet transmission charges apply for the update of the expiration date.

- Even if no Uta-hodai is saved, the confirmation screen for the update of expiration date may appear, and the expiration date can be updated. However, the playback is not available until new Uta-hodai is saved.
- The expiration date of some Uta-hodai may have an extra replay period for a few days even after the replay period has expired. During this period, files can be played back without updating the replay period information. After the extra replay period, files cannot be played back. When songs are downloaded without updating the replay period, the playback before saving cannot be resumed.
- When the FOMA card of the phone number different from the one used to download Uta-hodai is inserted, the Uta-hodai cannot be played even if the replay period is updated. Moreover, the replay period information of Uta-hodai saved on the FOMA terminal handset cannot be completely deleted. Therefore, a confirmation screen asking whether to update the replay period may appear. To delete all the replay period information of Uta-hodai, perform Delete user data (P. 417).
- The expiration date may arrive earlier or later than indicated if the FOMA terminal is used outside Japan.
- Packet transmission charges for updating the replay period during international roaming are not covered by the Pake-hodai or Pake-hodai full services.
- If there are multiple expired Uta-hodai entries when Music of Data box or Music player of MUSIC menu is selected and the expiration date is updated, all the expired entries are updated. When updating is completed, the data type selection screen appears.
- If the playback of Uta-hodai set as the ring tone or alarm tone becomes unavailable, the preset ring tone or alarm tone sounds when a call or mail is received or the alarm sounds.

Confirmation screens for the update of the expiration date

Some data need to update replay period. Send phone/terminal and UIM ID, and connect to site? • XXXXXXXX1 • XXXXXXXX2 • XXXXXXXX3 • XXXXXXXX4 • XXXXXXXX5	Need to update replay period. Send phone/terminal and UIM ID, and connect to site? XXXXXXXX2
--	--

When selecting Music in Data box or Music player in MUSIC menu

When selecting Uta-hodai after the expiration date

For WMA file

When the replay restriction has been exceeded, [Unable to play. To play this track, sync your phone to your PC] appears. When there is a WMA file that can be updated, connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to update (☞ P. 382).

Managing Folder/Playlist/Music Data

Managing Folders

Create up to 20 folders in the [i-mode] folder in MUSIC of Data box and manage Chaku-uta full®. In addition, 20 folders are available in each created folder.

- For details on creating/deleting the folders and editing the folder's name, refer to P. 343 or P. 347.

Managing Music Data

- Refer to P. 344 for managing data in [Multimedia] of microSD Memory Card.

Editing title <Edit title>

1 In the music data list screen of Chaku-uta full® (☞ P. 384), select Chaku-uta full® and press ▶ [Edit title].

2 Select [Direct input] ▶ edit the title and press .

- To return to original title, select [Back to original].
- To erase title, press for 1+ seconds in the title editing screen.
- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters.

Sorting music data <Sort>

Change the list order to one of the followings.

- The setting continues even if the music data list is ended after sorting.
- Sorting methods of Chaku-uta full® and the data in [Multimedia] are as follows.

Date (new → old)	Music data is sorted with the latest save date first
Date (old → new)	Music data is sorted with the oldest save date first
Title-artist name	Phonetic order of title names displayed in the music data list screen
By title*	Phonetic order of title names displayed in the music player screen
By artist name*	Files are sorted with artist's name in character code order
Album*	Phonetic order of album names
Genre*	Phonetic order of genres

By source*	Files are sorted by acquisition method in the following order: blank → i-mode
Year (new to old)*	Music data is sorted with the latest composed year first
Year (old to new)*	Music data is sorted with the oldest composed year first
Size (big → small)	Music data is sorted with largest files first
Size (small → big)	Music data is sorted with smallest files first
Track # (descend)*	Largest track number
Track # (ascend)*	Smallest track number

* Cannot be selected if the data is in [Multimedia].

- WMA files can be sorted when [All songs] is selected as the folder type. Sort procedure is as follows.

Title	Phonetic order of title names displayed in the music player screen
Year	Music data is sorted with the oldest composed year first
Track number	Smallest track number

1 In the music data list screen (☞ P. 384), select a music data and press ▶ [Display settings].

2 Select [Sort] ▶ select a sorting method.

Moving Chaku-uta full® to another folder <Move to folder>

1 In the music data list screen of Chaku-uta full® (☞ P. 384), select a Chaku-uta full® and press ▶ [Move].

2 Select [Move to folder] ▶ select a transfer method.

To move Chaku-uta full® individually	[Move one] → select folder and press
To move multiple Chaku-uta full® collectively	[Move selected] → select data (repeatable) → → select folder and press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

Note

- Chaku-uta full® cannot be moved without created folders.

Moving Chaku-uta full® to microSD Memory Card <Move → microSD>

Chaku-uta full® can be moved between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.

1 In the music data list screen of Chaku-uta full® (☎ P. 384), select Chaku-uta full® and press [Move].

- To move all Chaku-uta full® in the microSD Memory Card, select the [Movable contents] folder, press [Move], select [Move to the phone] → [Move all], enter terminal security code and press [Yes].

2 Select [Move → microSD] ▶ select a transfer method.

- To move Chaku-uta full® from the microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset, select [Move to the phone] → select a transfer method.

To move Chaku-uta full® individually	[Move one] → [Yes]
To move multiple Chaku-uta full® collectively	[Move selected] → select data (repeatable) → [Move] → [Yes] ● Press [SelAll]/[ClrAll] to select/clear all.
To move all Chaku-uta full® in folders	[All in folder] → [Yes] → enter terminal security code and press [Yes]
To move to destination folder	[Select destination] → select destination folder and press [Move]

Note

- If Chaku-uta full® saved in a playlist is moved, the Chaku-uta full® cannot be played back from the playlist.

Deleting Chaku-uta full® <Delete>

1 In the music data list screen of Chaku-uta full® (☎ P. 384), select Chaku-uta full® and press [Delete].

2 Select a deletion method.

To delete folders collectively	[Delete sel folders] → select folder (repeatable) → [Delete] → enter terminal security code and press [Yes] ● Press [SelAll]/[ClrAll] to select/clear all.
To delete all Chaku-uta full® (keep folders)	[Del all (keep fol)] → enter terminal security code and press [Yes]

To delete all folders and Chaku-uta full®	[Del all (del fol)] → enter terminal security code and press [Yes]
To delete Chaku-uta full® individually	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete Chaku-uta full® collectively	[Delete selected] → select data (repeatable) → [Delete] → [Yes] ● Press [SelAll]/[ClrAll] to select/clear all.
To delete all Chaku-uta full® in folders	[All in folder] → enter terminal security code and press [Yes]

Note

- If Chaku-uta full® saved in a playlist is deleted, the Chaku-uta full® cannot be played back from the playlist.

Creating Playlist

User playlist created by FOMA terminal and Transfer playlist created with a PC are available for playback on the FOMA terminal.

- Up to ten User playlists can be created. Register up to 99 music data per playlist.
- Up to 100 Transfer playlists can be viewed. View 400 music data per playlist. Playlists cannot be created/moved/edited on the FOMA terminal. Refer to "Saving WMA File" on P. 382 for transfer methods of Transfer playlist.

1 In the music data list screen (☎ P. 384), select music data and press [Add to playlist].

- Alternatively, select music data and press [Save] (Save) in the music data list screen of Chaku-uta full®/WMA file. Proceed to step 3.
- Or, press [Add to playlist] while music is stopped in the Music player screen. Proceed to step 3.

2 Select a saving method.

To save one	[Add one]
To save ones collectively	[Add selected] → select a music data (repeatable) → [Add] ● Press [SelAll]/[ClrAll] to select/clear all.
To save all	[Add all] → [Yes]

Save.

To create a new playlist and save	<p>[New] → enter a playlist name and press [Enter].</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter up to 50 single/double-byte characters for a playlist name.
To add music data	Select a playlist
To overwrite music data	Select a playlist and press [Overwrite] → [Yes]

Related Operations**Create a new playlist <New playlist>**

- In the User playlist screen, press [New] (or [Manage playlists]) ▶ [New playlist].
- Enter the playlist name and press [Enter].

Add music data to a playlist <Add song>

- In the User playlist screen, select a playlist.
- Press [Add] (or [Add song]).
- To select Chaku-uta full®, select [i-mode].
 - To add WMA files: Select [WMA] ▶ select a folder.
- Select a music data and press [Add].

Move playlist order upward <Move playlist (↑)>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist and press [Move] (or [Move playlist (↑)]).

Delete music data in a playlist <Delete>

- In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ select a music data and press [Delete].
- To delete one music data, select [Delete one].
 - To delete music data collectively: Select [Delete selected] ▶ select music data (repeatable) ▶ [Delete].
 - To delete all music data: Select [Delete all].
- Select [Yes].

Delete playlists <Delete>

- In the User playlist screen, select a playlist and press [Delete].
- To delete one playlist, select [Delete one].
 - To delete playlists collectively: Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a playlist (repeatable) ▶ [Delete] ▶ enter terminal security code and press [Enter].
 - To delete all playlists: Select [Delete all] ▶ enter terminal security code and press [Enter].
- Select [Yes].

Edit a playlist name <Edit playlist name>

- In the User playlist screen, select a playlist and press [Manage playlists].
- Select [Edit playlist name] ▶ edit a playlist name and press [Enter].

Copy a playlist <Copy>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist and press [Copy] ▶ enter a playlist name and press [Enter].

Related Operations**Shuffle songs saved in a playlist <Shuffle>**

- In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ [Shuffle].
- Select a music data to be moved and select a destination (repeatable) ▶ [Shuffle].

Update a playlist <Update playlist>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ [Update playlist] ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)**Deleting music data saved in a playlist**

- The original music data are not deleted even if a music data is deleted from a playlist.

Updating a playlist

- In the following cases, music data are deleted from a playlist when the playlist is updated.
 - When an original music data is deleted
 - When an original music data is moved between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card
 - When microSD Memory Card is not inserted although a music data in microSD Memory Card was added to a playlist
- A music data which has reached the limitations of number of replays/expiration date/replay period is not deleted even if a playlist is updated.

Setting Chaku-uta full® as the Ring Tone <Ring Tone>

- In the music data list screen of Chaku-uta full® (P. 384), select Chaku-uta full® and press [Ring tone].

- Select a ring tone item.

Item	Phone ring tone	Msg R ring tone
	V.phone ring tone	Msg F ring tone
	User unset tone	SMS ring tone
	Mail ring tone	PushTalk tone

- Select the setting range.

To set a full song	[Full song ring tone]
To set part of Chaku-uta full®	[Point ring tone] → select range and press [Enter]. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The selectable range is pre-determined.

- When Chaku-uta full® saved in the [Movable contents] folder in the microSD Memory Card is selected, the confirmation screen for transferring to the FOMA terminal handset appears. Select [Yes] to move Chaku-uta full® to the [i-mode] folder in Music of Data box and set it as the ring tone.
- Some Chaku-uta full® can be set to only [Full song ring tone] or [Point ring tone].

Note

- Some Chaku-uta full® cannot be set as a ring tone (☞ P. 121).

Viewing Properties of Music Data

<File Property>

- For details on the properties, refer to P. 349.

1 In the music data list screen (☞ P. 384), select music data and press [OK] ▶ [File property].

- Press [OK] or [CLR] to end checking.
- If the music data has URL, press [WebTo] (WebTo) while viewing the properties, and select [Yes] to open the site or the Internet web page.

Editing Chaku-uta full® Information

<Edit Info>

Edit the Chaku-uta full® information which includes Title, Artist's name, Album's name, Genre, Year, Comment, Track number and Total.

1 In the music data list screen of Chaku-uta full® (☞ P. 384), select Chaku-uta full® and press [OK] ▶ [Edit info].

2 Select the item to be edited ▶ edit and press [OK].

- To undo, select [Back to original] → [Yes].

Note

- The title changed in Edit information is reflected to the title name displayed in the Music player screen. To change the title name displayed in the music data list screen, use **Edit title**.
- Information of some Chaku-uta full® cannot be edited.

Viewing Images and Lyrics in Music Data

- For Chaku-uta full®, up to three images and up to seven pages of lyrics can be displayed.
- For the WMA file, only one image can be displayed.

1 In the Music player screen (☞ P. 385), press [F2].

- Alternatively, press [OK] and select [Show image].
- To view lyrics, press [OK] and select [Show lyrics] or press [X].

Key operations while viewing images and lyrics

	When FOMA terminal is open	When in the viewer position
To view next images/lyrics	[Next]	[Next]
To view previous images/lyrics	[Previous]	[Previous] (Eco)
To not view images/lyrics	[CLR]	[Off] (P)
To save images/lyrics*	[Save]	—

* Saving is not available during music playback.

- Refer to P. 386 for details on all key operations except those listed above.

Note

- Some images or lyrics are not available.
- For the WMA file, images are not available.

Deleting All WMA Files <Del All>

Delete WMA files and transfer playlist saved on microSD Memory Card collectively.

1 In data type selection screen (☞ P. 385), select [WMA] ▶ [Del all].

2 Enter terminal security code and press [OK] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- If the operation is suspended while all the WMA files are being deleted collectively, the music data list screen for WMA files cannot be displayed. Try deleting the WMA files collectively again.

Playback Settings

Setting Music Player

1 In the Music player screen (☞ P. 385), press [OK] ▶ [Playback settings] ▶ select a setting item.

To set playback mode	[Set playback mode] → [Normal playback]/[Repeat one]/[Repeat all]/[Shuffle]/[Repeat shuffle]
To set manner playback	[Manner playback] → [ON]/[OFF]

Note

Manner playback

- When Manner playback is set to [ON], the playback volume cannot be set to Volume 6 or larger.

Setting Dolby Sound <Dolby Sound Set.>

- 1 In the Music player screen (ⓘ P. 385), press [Dolby Sound Set.] ▶ select a setting item.

Item	Normal	Classic
	Rock	Jazz
	Pops	Original

- Set each item and press (Complete) if original is selected.

Sound Space	Select [Sound Space] → [ON]/[OFF]
Natural Bass	Select [Natural Bass] → [ON]/[OFF]
Sound Level Controller	Select [Sound Level Cnt] → [ON]/[OFF]
Mono to Stereo	Select [Mono-to-Stereo] → [ON]/[OFF]

SD-Audio

Using SD-Audio

Use SD-Jukebox or PC to save music data from a purchased CD to the microSD Memory Card and play on the FOMA terminal. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase a microSD Memory Card at home electronics shops (ⓘ P. 335).

- The music data that can be played back using SD-Audio are as follows.

Type	Software	Format
SD-Audio data	SD-Jukebox	SD-Audio compatible AAC

- Music data saved on the microSD Memory Card can be used for personal use only. Refrain from infringing upon intellectual property rights of a third party's copyrighted material. Do not copy or transfer music data saved on the microSD Memory Card to a PC or any other medium.

SD-Jukebox

SD-Jukebox can be purchased in the following web page.

http://www.sense.panasonic.co.jp/PanaSense/special/soft/sd_jukebox/

SD-Jukebox compatible OS are Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Vista. Refer to the following web page for details on the system requirements.

<http://panasonic.jp/support/software/sdjib/>

Saving Music Data to microSD Memory Card

Connect the FOMA terminal and PC using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) and save music data to microSD Memory Card.

- SD Memory Card readers/writers can also be used. However, the reader/writer must support copyright protection function.
- Install SD-Jukebox to the PC in advance.

- 1 Insert microSD Memory Card in the FOMA terminal and set FOMA terminal to [microSD mode] (ⓘ P. 345).

- 2 Connect the FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01.

- 3 Start SD-Jukebox and insert audio CD in the PC.

- 4 Select music data to save ▶ copy music data to microSD Memory Card.

- Refer to SD-Jukebox help for operation methods.

- 5 Disconnect FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 from the FOMA terminal after copying the music data.

- To disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01, follow the safe disconnecting method for hardware of each OS in a PC.

- 6 Press a key other than the side key ▶ [Yes].

- Switch to Communication mode automatically.

Playing Back Music Data with SD-Audio

Play back the music data saved in the [SD_AUDIO] folder of the microSD Memory Card in AAC format.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [MUSIC] ▶ [SD-Audio].

- 2 Press (Play).

- The music data previously played resumes from the spot when stopped.

- Activating SD-Audio in the viewer position or with the FOMA terminal closed

- Refer to P. 125 for details on Run music settings.

- 1 Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds while the stand-by display is shown in the viewer position or with the FOMA terminal closed ▶ (⊗).

Key operations during playback

	When FOMA terminal is open	When in the viewer position	When FOMA terminal is closed
To pause	⏸ (Pause)	⏸ (Ⓜ)	⏸ (Ⓜ)
To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keep key pressed to adjust volume continuously. 		(Eco)
To play previous song/To return to beginning of song*	⏮	(Eco)	Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds
To fast rewind	Press ⏮ for 1+ seconds	Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds	—
To play next song	⏭		Press for 1+ seconds
To fast forward	Press ⏭ for 1+ seconds	Press for 1+ seconds	—
To end SD-Audio	or → [Yes]	(P) (or (Eco) for 1+ seconds) → [Yes] → (Eco)	Press (Eco) for 1+ seconds
To display Submenu		—	—

* If playback time is less than approximately 2 seconds, the previous song is played. If playback time is approximately 2 seconds or more, the song returns to the beginning.

- Press a dial key (1 to 9) to jump to a location assigned to the key and resume playback. Press 1 during playback to return to the beginning of song. Press 2 to 8 to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the total time. Press 9 to jump to the end of song. However, it may not be possible to jump depending on music data.
- When Manner playback is set to [ON], the volume over 6 is changed into 5 (Change the volume from Volume 0 to 5).

When connecting a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately)

- The following operation is available with a flat-plug stereo earphone set (sold separately) or a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).

To play/To pause	Press a switch <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternates each time the switch is pressed.
------------------	--

Note

- When the battery icon does not indicate /🔌, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not when playback resumes or during playback. Select [Yes] to play. Also, a confirmation screen may appear depending on the use even when the battery icon indicates 🔌.
- Playback may stop if a call is received, alarm activates or other functions are operated during playback.
- Using other functions during playback may cause music to skip.
- During SD-Audio playback, the history information of the last song displayed (track number and playback time) is retained in the microSD Memory Card. Playback resumes from the ending point the next time the song is played. However, when SD-Audio is ended after a playlist is switched, the next playback starts with the first song of the switched playlist. If songs on the microSD Memory Card are deleted or added with the FOMA terminal or PC, the history information is cleared and may be used for different files.
- When the battery pack or the microSD Memory Card is removed during SD-Audio playback, the history information of the last played back song is not retained. If a song is deleted or sorted, the history information is cleared.
- Since a song is composed of 2 second units, if the playback is stopped, the stopped position and the resumed position may not be the same.
- When **Function lock** is applied to multimedia, enter terminal security code to activate SD-Audio.
- During SD-Audio playback, the microSD Memory Card cannot be used with other functions.
- While microSD Memory Card is in use with other functions, SD-Audio cannot be started up.

Related Operations

Set Repeat/Shuffle playback <Set playback mode>

- While music is paused/playing, press ▶ [Playback settings].
- Select [Set playback mode] ▶ [Normal playback]/[Repeat one]/[Repeat all]/[Shuffle]/[Repeat shuffle].

Set Manner playback <Manner playback>

- While music is paused/playing, press ▶ [Playback settings] ▶ [Manner playback] ▶ [ON].

Set Dolby sound <Dolby sound set.>

- While music is paused/playing, press ▶ [Dolby Sound Set.].
- Select [Normal]/[Rock]/[Pops]/[Classic]/[Jazz]/[Original].
 - When [Original] is selected: Select [Sound Space]/[Natural Bass]/[Sound Level Cnt]/[Mono-to-Stereo] ▶ [ON]/[OFF] ▶ .

Related Operations

Set Playback screen <Playback screen>

- 1 While music is paused, press ▶ [Playback screen].
- 2 Select [Pattern1]/[Pattern2]/[Pattern3].

Edit title or artist name <Edit track info>

- 1 While music is paused, press ▶ [Edit track info].
 - Edit in the playlist screen: Select [Song list] in the playlist ▶ select a song and press ▶ [Edit track info].
- 2 Select [Title]/[Artist] ▶ edit title/artist name and press .

Note (Related operations)

Edit info

- When music data are saved from audio CDs to microSD Memory Card, title (double-byte), title (single-byte), artist (double-byte), artist (single-byte), album (double-byte), album (single-byte) and genre are set.
- Edit title (double-byte) and artist (double-byte). Character limit for title/artist is 125 characters in total. Title (single-byte), artist name (single-byte), album (double-byte), album (single-byte) and genre cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- If data is included in the items that cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal, the number of characters that can be edited is decreased.

Using Playlist <Playlist>

Use a saved playlist to play back.

- Display Song list and user playlists made with SD-Jukebox.
- Create up to 99 user playlists. Save up to 99 music data per one user playlist.

1 While music is paused, press ▶ [Current playlist].

- Proceed to step 4 to select a song from current playlist. Also, available to select it while playing music.

2 Press ▶ [Playlist].

- Alternatively, press to view a playlist.

3 Select a playlist.

- Select a playlist and press to see properties of a playlist.

4 Select song to play.

Related Operations

Delete music data <Delete track>

- 1 Select [Song list] in the playlist ▶ select a song and press ▶ [Delete track].
- 2 To delete one song, select [Delete one].
 - To delete songs collectively: Select [Delete selected] ▶ enter terminal security code and press ▶ select song (repeatable) ▶ .
 - To delete all songs: Select [Delete all] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .
- 3 Select [Yes].

Shuffle songs in the playlist <Shuffle>

- 1 Select [Song list] in the playlist ▶ ▶ [Shuffle].
- 2 Select song to be moved and select destination (repeatable) ▶ .

View detailed information <File property>

- In the playlist screen, select a song and press ▶ [File property].
- To end checking: Press or .

Note (Related operations)

Deleting track/Shuffling

- Deleting and Shuffling are not available while showing user playlists.

Searching tracks in a playlist

<Search track>

- 1 While music is paused, press in the playlist screen ▶ [Search track] ▶ select a search method.

Search by title	[Search title] → enter title and press
Search by artist	[Search artist] → enter artist's name and press
Select from search history	[Search history] → select search history <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The latest five search results are displayed.

- To delete a track from the search results list: Press , select [Del search tracks] and select deleting method. Deleting a track from the search results list does not mean deleting the source track data.
- To start over: Press and select [Srch playlist trax].
- To return to the playlist screen: Press and select [Return to playlist] or press .
- The search history is cleared when SD-Audio is ended.

2 Select a track to play.

- When press and select [Show srch results] during playback, the screen returns to the search results list.

Other Convenient Functions

- Checking Settings <Check Settings>396
- Multiaccess <Multiaccess>396
- Using Multi Assistant (Multitask) <Multi Assistant (Multitask)>396
- Retrieving the Recently Used Function or File <Active Marker>397
- Turning Power On Automatically <Auto Power ON>399
- Turning Power Off Automatically <Auto Power OFF>399
- Sounding Alarm After Set Time Passes <Timer>400
- Sounding Alarm at Set Time <Alarm>401
- Managing Schedules <Schedule>403
- Accessing Functions Quickly <Shortcut Menu>409
- Saving Own Name and Image <Owner Information>410
- Recording Other's Voice During Call or Own Voice When in Stand-by
. <Voice Memo (During Call)/Voice Memo (Stand-by)>412
- Displaying the Call Duration/Charge <Talk Time/Cost>412
- Using as Calculator <Calculator>414
- Entering Memos <Text Memo>414
- Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Earphone/Microphone with Switch>415
- Answering Calls Automatically with Earphone <Auto Answer Setting>417
- Resetting Settings <Reset Settings>417
- Deleting All Saved Data <Delete User Data>417

Check Settings

Checking Settings

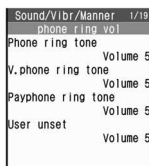
Check settings for various functions.

- 1 In stand-by, press [Settings] [General settings] [Check status] [Check settings] enter terminal security code and press .

- 2 Select function to check.

Function	Sound/Vibr/Manner	Full Browser
	Disp/LED/Pwr saver	Mail/Message
	General settings	i-appli
	Phone settings	GPS menu
	Security	ToruCa
	i-mode	Osaifu-Keitai

- Settings appear. Press to turn the page.
- Press and the previous screen reappears.



When [Sound/Vibr/Manner] is selected

Multiaccess

Multiaccess

Use voice calls and some packet transmissions (receiving i-mode mail or data communications with a PC) simultaneously with the FOMA terminal. This is called Multiaccess.

- Receiving SMS during communication (such as voice call) is available besides Multiaccess.
- Packet transmissions other than the above (i-mode and sending i-mode mail) are available during voice calls.
- i-mode mail cannot be received during Videophone call. i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center.

Multiaccess Combinations

Refer to "Multiaccess Combinations" on P. 478 for the main combinations of transmission functions available for simultaneous use on the FOMA terminal.

Receiving i-mode Mail or SMS During Calls

- 1 Receive i-mode mail or SMS during a voice call.

- , , or Mail ticker (P. 219) appears on the display.
- Alternatively, continue the call and read i-mode mail or SMS afterwards.

- 2 Press for 1+ seconds while Mail ticker is being displayed.

- In the viewer position, press () for 1+ seconds.
- Received messages list screen appears.
- Press () to hide Mail ticker.

- 3 Select a mail.

- Press and select [Voice call] to return to voice call screen.

Making a Call During i-mode

Make a voice call with Phone To (AV Phone To) during i-mode.

- i-mode is disconnected when dialing Videophone or PushTalk.

- 1 Select phone number from sites or Internet web pages.

- 2 Press / (Call) [Yes].

- Number is dialed while connected to i-mode.

- 3 Press after call.

- The site or Internet web page reappears.

Multi Assistant (Multitask)

Using Multi Assistant (Multitask)

Multi Assistant (Multitask) is a function that allows multiple functions to be used simultaneously, such as composing of a message during a voice call or while watching 1Seg.

- Four or more functions may be used simultaneously when voice call or data transmission is received.
- An icon for the activated function (Multitask display) appears in the upper part of the display (P. 30).

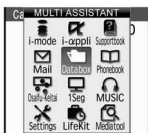
Retrieving a New Function

Start a different function while using a function such as voice call.

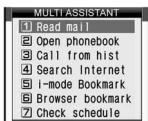
- Other functions are not available with Multi Assistant when in stand-by, during Videophone call, PushTalk transmission, Ir exchange or iC transmission, camera or voice recorder is activated, alarm is being set (during the alarm setting operation), timer is being used, microSD manager, other setting screen, or Shortcut menu is open.

1 Press **[MULTI]** during a voice call or while using a function.

- When application icon selection screen does not appear, press **[MULTI]** (Switch) multiple times.
- Alternatively, press **[MULTI]** to switch or select the function to use when the application list selection screen appears.
- When Multi Assistant is not available, Multi Assistant screen does not appear even when **[MULTI]** is pressed.
- Press **[TV]** during a voice call or while using a function to activate 1Seg.



Application icon selection screen



Application list selection screen

2 Select the icon for the function to use.

- Move the cursor with **[Left/Right]**.
- Unavailable functions cannot be used.
- Select an item when the function list appears. Refer to the corresponding page for details on each function.
- To make a voice call, press **[Call]** in Multi Assistant screen, enter the phone number and press **[Call]**.
- To switch the function icon position on the application icon selection screen, select a function icon, press **[Move]** and select destination position. Press **[Reset]** (Reset) to undo.



When [Phonebook] is selected

Switching Screens

Switch between screens when multiple functions are being used with Multi Assistant.

1 Press **[MULTI]** while multiple functions are in use.



Application icon switching screen

- Icons for functions in use appear in the application icon switching screen. When four or more functions are in use, the application list switching screen appears.

2 Select the icon for the function to use.

- When four or more functions are operating, list of functions in use appears. Select a function from list.

Ending the Function

Ending the shown function

1 Press **[End]** while multiple functions are in use.

- The shown function ends and another function in use appears.

Ending the selected function

1 Press **[MULTI]** while multiple functions are in use.

2 Select the function with **[Up]** and press **[End]**.







- When four or more functions are operating, select the function with **[Up]** and press **[End]**.
- To end all functions, press **[End all]** and select [Yes]. Select [No] to return to the functions operating in step 1.
- When [End] does not appear in guidance, the functions cannot be ended even if **[End]** is pressed.

Active Marker



Retrieving the Recently Used Function or File

Easily retrieve functions, pages and images that were recently used from stand-by. The current day's schedule details are also available.

Icon	Function	Explanation
	i-mode history	The URL and title for five i-mode sites most recently accessed from the i-mode menu are recorded. Select from the history list to access the same sites quickly (Each site is recorded as one history item).

Icon	Function	Explanation
	Full Browser history	The URL and title for five sites most recently accessed from Full Browser are recorded. Select from the history list to access the same sites quickly (Each site is recorded as one history item).
	MUSIC history	A music data most recently played with Music player and SD-Audio is recorded. Select [Playback MUSIC] or [Playback SD-audio] to play back easily.
	Show schedule	Up to five of the earliest schedule entries that begin on the current day appear. Select from the list to view the details screen.
	My Picture history	The five images most recently viewed with Image Viewer are recorded. Select from the history list to view (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not recorded).
	i-motion history	The five i-motion most recently played with i-motion player are recorded. Select from the history list to play back.
	i-appli history	The five most recently activated saved i-appli are recorded. Select from the history list to activate (Stand-by i-appli is not recorded).

1 In stand-by, press .

- When calendar is shown in stand-by, press , disable the calendar display and press .



Desktop icon selection screen

2 Select desktop icon ▶ select history.

- History does not appear for desktop icons without history.
- Selected function activates.
- Terminal security code is required while Function lock is set for the selected function or folder security is set.
- When the selected file has been deleted or moved, [Unable to start. May be deleted or moved] appears and cannot be opened. In addition, when My Picture history or i-motion history is selected, the image displayed in the Display calendar/date area switches to a substitute image. If there is no i-appli corresponding to the selected history item, [No requested software] appears.
- My Picture history and i-motion history data are shown and can be used even if moved within folders in the FOMA terminal handset.

Calendar/Date area

- When the history of [Show schedule] is being displayed, calendar appears. If set to [My Picture history] or [i-motion history], selected image appears. In other cases, [Disp calendar/date] settings are followed.

Setting the Active Marker

Setting Display calendar/date

<Disp calendar/date>

- When the history of [Show schedule] is being displayed, calendar appears. If set to [My Picture history] or [i-motion history], selected image appears.


1 In the desktop icon selection screen, press ▶ [Disp calendar/date] ▶ select content to show.

Content	Display calendar	OFF
	Display date	

Deleting history <Delete history>

- MUSIC history and Show schedule cannot be deleted.

1 In the desktop icon selection screen, select a desktop icon ▶ select a history and press ▶ [Delete history] ▶ select deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one]
To delete all in the category	[Del all in ctgry]
To delete all	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press  .

Showing desktop icons



<Set disp category>

Set to show desktop icon by function.

1 In the desktop icon selection screen, press ▶ [Set disp category] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .

Set disp category
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MUSIC history
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> i-mode history
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Full Browser hist
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> My Pictures hist
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> i-motion history
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> i-appli history
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show schedule

2 Select an item to show or hide ▶ (Complete).

- indicates show and indicates hide.
- Select an item to switch between show and hide.
- Press  (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

Auto Power ON

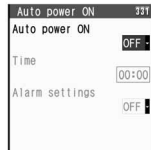
Turning Power On Automatically

Turn FOMA terminal on automatically at a specified time.

- Auto power ON settings are repeated daily until disabled.
- Disable Auto power ON before turning the handset off when near high precision instruments, aboard aircraft, in hospitals or in other locations where use is prohibited.

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[General settings]** **[Auto power ON/OFF]** **[Auto power ON]**.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞ P. 47).



2 Select **[Auto power ON]** **[ON]**.

3 Select **[Time]** enter time to activate (four digits) and press **[OK]**.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move the cursor with **[Left]**.

4 Select **[Alarm settings]** **[ON]**.

- To disable the alarm, select **[OFF]** and proceed to step 7.

5 Select **[Alarm tone]** select folder select alarm tone and press **[OK]**.

- To preview alarm tone, select an alarm tone. To stop, press **[Stop]**.

6 Select **[Alarm volume]** adjust volume with **[Up]**/**[Down]** and press **[OK]**.

7 Press **[Complete]**.

- [Alarm does not sound until PIN1 code is entered if Set PIN1 code is ON] appears when Alarm settings is set to **[ON]**. Select **[Agree]** to set Auto power ON.

When the set time arrives

Power automatically turns on and [Auto power ON It's time] appears.

- Message also appears when power is already on.
- When PIN1 code settings (☞ P. 144) are set to **[ON]**, the PIN1 code entry screen appears and [Auto power ON It's time] appears after entering PIN1 code.
- Alarm sounds for approximately 15 seconds if set. Refer to "Key operations when alarm sounds" on P. 402 to stop the alarm.

- While engaged in a call or receiving a call, alarm sounds after the call is disconnected.

Note

- If Auto power ON and **Alarm** (Alarm/Schedule alarm/Reception reserve alarm/Record reserve alarm) are set for the same time, Auto power ON takes priority. Wait a while (approximately 15 seconds) or press a key to clear the Auto power ON notification screen, and the alarm activates.
- If Auto power ON and **Auto power OFF** are set for the same time, power turns on if FOMA terminal is off and turns off if on. However, when power is on, power may turn on immediately after power turns off.
- Auto power ON may not function when the battery pack is removed and the power is turned off.

Turning the Handset On at the Alarm Time and Sounding Alarm

<Link Alarm/Power ON>

- When Auto power ON and Link alarm/power ON are set for the same time, Auto power ON is prioritized.

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[General settings]** **[Auto power ON/OFF]** **[Link alarm/power ON]** **[ON]**.

2 Select **[Agree]**.

Auto Power OFF

Turning Power Off Automatically

Turn FOMA terminal off automatically at a specified time.

- Auto power OFF settings are repeated daily until disabled.

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[General settings]** **[Auto power ON/OFF]** **[Auto power OFF]**.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞ P. 47).

2 Select **[Auto power OFF]** **[ON]**.

3 Select **[Time]** enter time to activate (four digits) and press **[OK]**.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move the cursor with **[Left]**.

4 Press **[Complete]**.

- Auto power OFF is set.

When the set time arrives

If other operations are performed at set time (i.e. when display the screens other than stand-by: Mail, Alarm (ringing), Calculator, Schedule, Timer, Melody player, 1Seg, i-mode, Continuous play/Slideshow/full-screen of Data box, and others), the confirmation screen appears. Select [Yes] or perform no operations to turn off the handset in approximately 1 minute. Select [No] to continue the operations.



Confirmation screen

- In a call, the confirmation screen appears after the call is ended and the handset is returned to the screen before the call.
- If software is being updated (☞ P. 498), the confirmation screen appears after software update is completed and returning to stand-by.
- While the confirmation screen is displayed, timer-set alarms for starting or recording programs are not activated. In addition, watching or recording does not start.

Note

- If Auto power OFF and **Alarm** (Alarm/Schedule alarm/Reception reserve alarm/Record reserve alarm) are set for the same time, handset turns off and alarm does not sound (However, if handset is restarted immediately or [No] is selected in the confirmation screen, alarm sounds).
- Handset does not turn off at time set for Auto power OFF if i-appli is running. Auto power OFF confirmation screen appears when i-appli is ended. If no operations are made, handset automatically turns off.
- Handset does not turn off at time set for Auto power OFF if **Ir exchange** function is activated. Auto power OFF confirmation screen appears when Ir exchange is ended. If no operations are made, handset automatically turns off.
- If **Auto power ON** and Auto power OFF are set for the same time, power turns on if FOMA terminal is off and turns off if on. However, when power is on, power may turn on immediately after power turns off.

Timer

Sounding Alarm After Set Time Passes

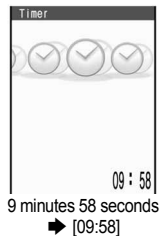
Sound a timer or light called LED after a set amount of time passes.

- While alarm sounds, press a key in the normal position or the viewer position to stop.
- Change the timer sound and ring time (☞ P. 122).
- If Vibration mode (☞ P. 125) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

1 In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[Timer/Alarm]** **[Timer]**.

2 Enter time and press **[Start]**.

- The two digits on the left are minutes and the two on the right are seconds.
- Set between 1 second and 99 minutes 59 seconds.
- Timer ends if power is turned off.



To stop	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press [Start] to resume. ● Press [Reset] to reset to 3 minutes.
To disable	[Back]

Note

- Also set notice called LED actions (☞ P. 138).
- Timer continues even when a call or mail is received. However, if the time arrives while the timer is not shown such as during a call or when receiving mail, the timer does not sound.

Related Operations

Use timer from stand-by **<Timer>**

In stand-by, enter time (1 to 99 minutes) and press **[Start]** **[Timer]**.

Alarm

Sounding Alarm at Set Time

Activate melody, Chaku-uta full® or movie/i-motion at the set time/day.

- If Vibration mode (☞ P. 125) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

Setting Alarms

Basic setting methods for alarm time and day are described below.

- Set the operations when alarm is activated (☞ P. 402). For the settings, change the alarm volume and tone, display a message and a phone number or perform other operations. Also, change Melody stereo effects (☞ P. 124) and called LED (☞ P. 138).

Message	Show messages when alarm operates. Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters.
Contacts	Show phone numbers when alarm operates. Make calls when alarm operates.
Alarm tone	Change alarm tone. Melody, Chaku-uta full® and movie/i-motion are available.
Alarm volume	Change the volume.
Snooze setting	Set the number of times to ring alarm and its interval.
Ring duration	Change the duration to ring alarm.

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[LifeKit]** ▶ **[Timer/Alarm]** ▶ **[Alarm]** ▶ select alarm registration number.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞ P. 47).
- Save up to nine alarms. Alarms are repeated until disabled when set to activate everyday or if the day of the week setting is set to repeat.



Alarm setting screen

2 Select **[Enter Time]** ▶ enter activation time (four digits) and press **⊙**.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with **⏪** **⏩**.

3 Select **[Set repeat]** ▶ select a repeat method.

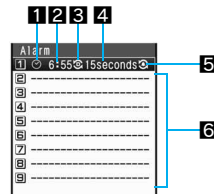
To sound once	[Once only] ● Setting is disabled after activation.
---------------	--

To sound on specified day	[Set day of week] → select day (repeatable) → Ⓜ ● If a check is placed in [Exclude holidays], alarm does not activate for set vacations or holidays. ● To disable, select day. ● Press Ⓜ ([SelAll])/ Ⓜ ([ClrAll]) to select/clear all.
To sound every day	[Daily]

4 Press **Ⓜ** (Complete).

- Press **⏪** to end setting (**Ⓜ** appears in the stand-by display).

Setting details



1 Appears when alarm is set

2 Time

3 Repeat frequency

1	Once only
2	Set day of week
3	Daily

4 Duration of alarm

5 Appears when snooze is set

6 Unsaved

Note

- When multiple alarm functions are set to the same time, the alarms are prioritized in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Alarm function	Recording → Reception → Alarm → Schedule

- If recording and starting TV programs are set for the same time, Reception reserve alarm is not activated.
- One-time alarm can also be easily set on the current day (the following day if set time has passed) (Quick alarm).

Related Operations

Set alarm from stand-by <Quick alarm>

In stand-by, enter time (ex. 2:05 P.M.: 1405) and press **⊙** ▶ **[Quick alarm]**.

Related Operations

Display messages <Message>

In the alarm setting screen, select [Message] ▶ enter message and press **⓪**.

Display contacts <Contacts>

- In the alarm setting screen, select [Contacts].
- Select [Search phonebook] ▶ select name.
 - To input directly: Select [Direct input] ▶ enter phone number and press **⓪**.

Change alarm tone <Alarm tone>

- In the alarm setting screen, select [Alarm tone].
- Select [Melody]/[MUSIC]/[i-motion].
 - To not set: Select [Not set].
- Refer to step 2 on P. 120 and select alarm tone.

Change alarm volume <Alarm volume>

- In the alarm setting screen, select [Alarm volume].
- Press **⓪/⓪ ▶ ⓪**.
 - To not sound alarm: Set to [Silent].

Set number of times and interval of alarm

<Snooze setting>

- In the alarm setting screen, select [Snooze setting].
- Select [ON].
- Enter interval (two digits: 02 to 15 minutes) and press **⓪ ▶** enter times (2 to 6) and press **⓪**.

Change ring duration <Ring duration>

In the alarm setting screen, select [Ring duration] ▶ enter ring duration (two digits: 02 to 99 seconds) and press **⓪**.

Note (Related operations)

Setting alarms from stand-by (Quick alarm)

- The alarm set is saved for the current day (the following day if set time has passed) as [Quick alarm] in Schedule with [No category].

Contacts

- Contacts cannot be entered while **Keypad dial lock** is set.
- Terminal security code** is required to use Phonebook while **Function lock** is applied to phonebook.

Setting alarm tone

- When **Function lock** is applied to Multimedia, **terminal security code** needs to be entered to set [Melody], [MUSIC] or [i-motion].

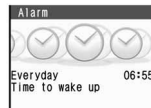
Snooze interval

- If a voice call is received while snoozing or snooze time arrives during a call, alarm rings immediately after the call is ended. If the set interval is not reached during the call, snoozing begins after the call is ended and the alarm rings in the set interval.

When Set Time Arrives

1 Alarm sounds.

- Alarm operates in accordance with alarm tone, volume and duration settings. Saved messages and image saved as contacts in phonebook are also displayed.
- Called LED also flashes if Alarm/Timer LED (**☞** P. 138) are set.
- Vibrator functions with alarm if Vibration mode (**☞** P. 125) is set.



Key operations when alarm sounds

	When FOMA terminal is open	When in the viewer position	When FOMA terminal is closed
To stop alarm (Snooze activated)	[1] to [9], [0], [X], [H], [⓪], [←], [→], [M], [P], [CLR], [MAY]	[Eco], [Eco], [P], [P]	[Eco], [Eco], [P], [P]
To stop alarm (Snooze disabled)	[⓪]	—	—
To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10)*	[⓪/⓪]	—	—

* Adjusting the volume is not available when volume is set to Step. If Auto power ON is set, stop alarm.

- Press **⓪** to clear the displayed screen.
- When snooze is set, alarm continues to ring in set intervals if a key other than **⓪** is pressed to stop alarm. When alarm is turned off by pressing **⓪**, snooze settings are canceled. Press **⓪** while snoozing to disable snooze. When in the viewer position, press **[Eco]**.
- Press **⓪** to make a call to the saved contact.

Note

- If Picture call is set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the image appears when alarm sounds.
- When picture call and group picture call are set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the Picture call saved in the entry has priority.
- When an i-motion with image and voice is set as alarm tone, i-motion image appears regardless of Picture call set for contacts.
- When an i-motion with voice only (melodies with no video) is set as alarm tone, the picture call set for contact appears. When an i-motion is set for Picture call, regular alarm screen appears.
- While **Memo/Schedule/Alarm Function lock** is set, alarm does not sound at set time.

Note

- If the time set for alarm/Schedule alarm arrives during **Ir exchange**, data transmission or **Infrared remote control**, alarm activates after transmission ends and the stand-by display reappears. However, if time set arrives during **software update**, alarm may not activate even when updating is completed.
- During snooze or while the alarm to which snooze is set sounds, other alarm and Schedule alarm do not sound at the set time.

If alarm duration passes with no operations

- Alarm stops and a message stating alarm time has passed appears (The set alarm time appears).

If alarm time arrives during a call

- Alarm is activated when the call is ended and handset is returned to the screen from before the call.

If alarm time arrives when receiving mail

- Mail ring tone stops and Alarm is activated.

If alarm time arrives while in Manner mode

- In Normal manner mode, alarm tone does not sound but vibrator is activated. In Silent manner mode, alarm tone does not sound and vibrator is not activated. In Original manner mode, alarm tone and vibrator [ON]/[OFF] settings are followed.

If vibrator is set to [ON] in Normal or Original manner mode, vibrator operates in [Pattern 1] even if **Vibrator** is set to [OFF].

If alarm time arrives while in Public mode (Drive mode)

- Alarm tone does not sound. In addition, called LED and vibrator are not activated.

If alarm time arrives when watching 1Seg

- 1Seg is interrupted and alarm is activated when the FOMA terminal is in the normal position. The display is switched to **Multi Window (W)** and alarm is activated when in the viewer position. When alarm ends, the screen is returned to that for watching 1Seg in either position.









Disabling/Deleting/Changing Alarm Settings

Change/disable/delete alarm settings individually. Details are erased when alarm is deleted. Details are retained when disabled. To use the same details, set again.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[Timer/Alarm]** **[Alarm]** select a registration number and set to **disable/delete/change**.



When disabled

To disable	 <ul style="list-style-type: none">● To disable, select a slot with . When disabled,  disappears.
To set again	 <ul style="list-style-type: none">● To set again, select a slot without . When set,  appears and  appears in stand-by.
To delete	 → [Yes] <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Details are deleted and [-----] appears in Alarm list.

Schedule

Managing Schedules

Manage schedules by saving start date and time, end date and time, details and contacts (phone number). Sound alarm before scheduled time or show a message, phone number or still picture. Additionally, search schedules by contacts, call using the shown phone number or create mail. Easily save category icons on the icon calendar. Add details later (☞ P. 404).

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞ P. 47).
- Save up to 300 schedules.
- Save schedules between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

Displaying Calendar <Calendar>

Display calendar (☞ P. 129). Check saved schedules.

- Check the settings of timer for starting or recording TV programs on calendar (☞ P. 294).
- Japanese national holidays as stipulated in the revised National Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Elderly (Law No. 43, 2005) are set by default (as of October 2007). Dates for Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may differ because they are released on February 1 of the previous year. Holidays are shown in red.
- Add holidays and vacations and show on calendar.

1 In stand-by, press [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule].

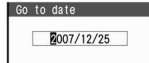
- Current month's calendar appears.
- Press to close calendar.



To show last month	
To show next month	

Specifying date <Go to date>

1 In Calendar, press [Show] ▶ [Go to date].



2 Enter date and press .

Related Operations

Show calendar by entering date from stand-by

In stand-by, enter date and press [Schedule].

Note (Related operations)

- Entered dates and calendar shown correlate as follows.

01 to 31	Current month (1st to 31st)
0101 to 1231	Specified date (January 1 to December 31)
20000101 to 20991231	Specified date and year (January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2099)

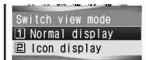
Changing calendar format

<Switch view mode>

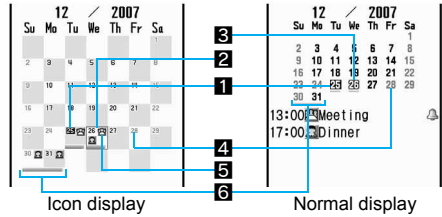
- Calendar display in stand-by is not changed when calendar is changed to Icon display (Set schedules and vacation are reflected). Refer to P. 129 for details on setting stand-by calendar display.

1 In Calendar, press [Show] ▶ [Switch view mode] ▶ select format.

- To show a schedule, select schedule (P. 407).



Calendar layout



- 1 Today (Highlighted)
- 2 Selected day (Shown in a black box)
- 3 Selected day (Shown green)
- 4 Set vacation (Shown red)
- 5 Saved schedule (Icon display by category)
 - appears for timer for starting TV programs and for recording.
- 6 Schedule saved (Underlined)
 - Schedule is 2 or more days (Underlined)

Saving Schedules

Basic saving methods for schedules including time and date, agenda, category and contact are explained below.

- Always set start date/time and agenda.

1 In stand-by, press [Schedule] ▶ select day and press [New].

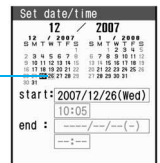
- Alternatively, when in Icon calendar, press (New).
- Sound alarm (P. 405) before scheduled time or save schedules as Secret (P. 406).



Schedule saving screen

2 Select [Date] ▶ enter the start date of the schedule.

- To select a date from a calendar, press (Switch) and select a start date.



Calendar date selection screen

3 Enter time and press ▶ select a repeat method.

Method	Once only*	Weekly	Yearly
	Daily	Monthly	

- * If [Once only] is selected, proceed to step 5.
- Use 24-hour format.
- If end date and time are entered, select [Once only].

- To reset end date and time, press

4 Enter number of times to repeat (00 to 99) and press .

- 00 represents unlimited times.

5 Select [Smry] enter summary and press .

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.

6 Select [Ctgr] select category icon. Categories

Icon	Category	Icon	Category
	No category		Birthday
	Personal		Hobby
	Holiday		Date
	Travel		Karaoke
	Business		Party
	Meeting		Shopping
	Meals		School
	Drive		Business trip
	Exercise		Appreciation
	Anniversary		Hospital

- Selected category appears.
- Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.

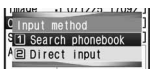
7 Select [Image] select a still picture.

To set	[My picture] → select folder → select still picture and press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To check still picture, select a still picture and press (Agree). Press and the previous screen reappears.
To not set	[Not set]

- Movies/i-motion cannot be selected.
- Title of selected still picture appears.
- Set image appears in Schedule list and schedule details screen.

8 Select [Cntcts] select input method and set contact.

- Set contact information to show the contact in the schedule details or alarm screen, allowing for easy calling.
- Contacts are not available while Keypad dial lock is set.



To select from phonebook	[Search phonebook] → enter phone number <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Entries without phone numbers are not available.
To input directly	[Direct input] → enter phone number and press

9 Select [Agenda] enter agenda and press .

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.

10 Press (Complete).

Note

- Refer to P. 340 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Refer to P. 352 for details on Ir exchange.
- Refer to P. 356 for details on iC transmission.
- Images registered in a schedule are deleted when the schedule is sent as an i-mode mail attachment, sent via Ir or iC transmission or copied to a microSD Memory Card.

Related Operations

Save only category icon from icon calendar

In Calendar, press [Show] [Switch view mode] [Icon display] select day and press select category icon.

Note (Related operations)

Contents of Schedule

Date	Selected day + set time
Summary	–
Category	Category of selected icon
Alarm	OFF
Image	–
Contacts	–
Secret	OFF
Agenda	[No content] is entered.

Setting Alarms

Sound an alarm before the scheduled time. Also set alarm actions.

- If Vibration mode (P. 125) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.
- If multiple Schedule alarms are set for the same time, the set alarm sounds for the set number of times.

Alarm time	Set to sound an alarm before the scheduled time.
Ring duration	Change the duration the alarm sounds.
Alarm tone	Change alarm tone.
Alarm volume	Change alarm volume.

- Set the above in the schedule saving screen (☞ P. 404).

Setting alarms

- In schedule saving screen (☞ P. 404), select [Alarm] ▶ [ON].**



- Select [Alarm time] ▶ enter time to sound alarm (minutes before the scheduled time: 00 to 99) and press Ⓞ.**

- Press [Complete].**

- Schedule saving screen reappears.

Related Operations

Change alarm duration <Ring duration>

In the alarm setting screen, select [Ring duration] ▶ enter ring duration (two digits: 02 to 99 seconds) and press Ⓞ.

Change alarm tone <Alarm tone>

- In the alarm setting screen, select [Alarm tone].
- Select [Melody]/[MUSIC]/[i-motion].
 - To not set: Select [Not set].
- Refer to step 2 on P. 120 and select alarm tone.

Change alarm volume <Alarm volume>

In the alarm setting screen, select [Alarm volume] ▶ [Mute] ▶ [On].

- To not sound alarm: Set to [Silent].

Setting as Secret

When schedules are set as Secret, they cannot be seen unless terminal security code is entered and Secret mode is set to [ON]. This allows you to protect your personal information.

- Refer to P. 150 for details on setting Secret mode.
- Set Secret mode to [ON] (☞ P. 150) in advance to disable secret setting.

- In schedule saving screen (☞ P. 404), select [Secret] ▶ [ON].**

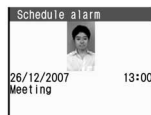
When Alarm Time Arrives

Alarm operates in accordance with settings. If contact is saved, contact information appears when the alarm is stopped (☞ P. 405).

- Refer to "Key operations when alarm sounds" on P. 402 to stop the alarm or adjust the volume.

- If images are set for Schedule, i-motion with images is set for alarm tone or phonebook entries set as contacts have Picture call set, those images appear in the following priority.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	i-motion set as alarm tone → schedule image → phonebook picture call → group picture call → alarm image



Standard schedule



Secret data

- Secret schedules are notified by alarm but phone numbers, messages and images do not appear. Appears when Secret mode is set to [ON] (☞ P. 150).
- While Memo/Schedule/Alarm Function lock is set, alarm does not sound at the set time.
- Alarm tone does not sound when in Normal or Silent manner mode. For Original manner mode, set the alarm tone [ON]/[OFF].
- If the time set for alarm arrives while in Public mode (Drive mode), alarm tone does not sound. Also, called LED/vibrator is not activated.

Saving Vacation <Set Vacation>

Set certain days or certain days of the week as vacations. Set up to 100 vacations. Disable all set vacations or all past vacations (excluding vacations set to specific day of week) collectively.

- For Disable all, vacations set to specific days of week return to the default settings.

- In Calendar (☞ P. 404), select day to set as vacation (or disable vacation settings) and press [Set].**

- Days do not need to be selected when disabling all vacations and setting weekly vacations.

- Select [Set vacation] ▶ select method of setting.**

To set/disable selected vacation	[Clear/Set today] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When day set as vacation is selected, setting is disabled.
To set weekly vacations	[Set day] → select day (repeatable) → [Repeat] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press [SelAll]/[Clear] (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

- Set vacation appears red.

Related Operations

Collectively disable set vacations

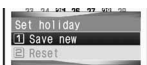
<Disable all/Disable all past>

In Calendar, press ▶ [Set] ▶ [Set vacation] ▶ [Disable all]/[Disable all past] ▶ [Yes].

Saving Holidays <Set Holiday>

- Save up to 20 holidays in addition to the preset Japanese national holidays.

- In Calendar (P. 404), select day to set as holiday and press ▶ [Set] ▶ [Set holiday].



- Select [Save new].

- To disable all set holidays, select [Reset] → [Yes].

- Select method of setting holidays.

To set (day)/(month) of every year	[Yearly XX/XX]
To set 1st/2nd/3rd/4th/5th (day) of (month) of every year	[1st/2nd/3rd/4th/5th (day) of (month)]

- Enter holiday name and press .

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.
- In schedule details screen, press and select [Edit] to change the details for the set holiday. Enter day to change, press and proceed to step 3.
- Set holiday appears red.

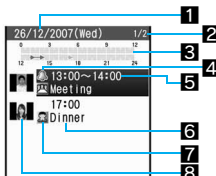
Checking Schedules

Check contents of saved schedules. The settings of timer for starting or recording TV programs are also available. Sort them by categories or contacts. Place calls or send i-mode mail if phone number or mail address is saved. Schedules can also be copied.

- In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule] ▶ select day.

- Up to five schedules for selected day are listed (Schedule list).
- Press (Previous) to show previous day's schedule list.
- Press (Next) to show next day's schedule list.
- To check secret schedules, set Secret mode to [ON] (P. 150).

- To check schedules in microSD Memory Cards, press and select [View microSD data] in Calendar.



Schedule list

- Date
- Number of saved schedules for the day
- Time bar
Schedule start time to end time is indicated in 30 minute intervals.
- Alarm
- Start time
- Summary or Agenda*
- Category
- Image (image saved in My picture or phonebook)
* If summary is saved, the first 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters appear.
If summary is not saved, the first 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters of Agenda appear.

- Select schedule.

- If an image is saved, press to preview.
- If contact is saved, phone number appears and call can be made. Name appears if saved in phonebook. Press and the phonebook entry details screen (P. 111) appears. Make calls or send mail.
- Press (Previous) to check a schedule saved for the previous day. Press (Next) to check a schedule saved for the next day. For the day with multiple schedules saved, check the schedules using to switch.
- Press to end viewing.



Schedule details

Note

- Press to view Schedule during a voice call or while composing message (P. 396).

Related Operations

Display by category <Show by category>

In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule] ▶ ▶ [Show] ▶ [Show by category] ▶ select category.

Display by contacts <Show by contact>

In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule] ▶ ▶ [Show] ▶ [Show by contact] ▶ select contacts.

Related Operations

Check all schedules <Show all scheds>

- In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[Schedule]** **[Show]** **[Show all scheds]**.
- To check the schedule: Select schedule.
 - To check schedule in microSD Memory Cards: In Calendar, press **[View microSD data]**.

Make calls from schedule

- In the schedule details screen, press **[Phone]**.
- Press **[Call]** to make a voice call.
 - To make Videophone call: Press **[V]**.
 - To send PushTalk transmissions: Press **[PushTalk]**.

Create i-mode mail from schedule

- In the schedule details screen, press **[Phone]** **[Address]** **[Compose message]**.

Schedules attach to i-mode mail

<Attach to mail>

- In the schedule details screen, press **[Attach to mail]** **[Compose message]**.

Copy schedules <Copy>

- In the schedule details screen, press **[Copy]** **[Copy]**.
- Paste copied schedule in mail text, phonebook and other text entry screens.

Apply Function lock to Schedule <Function lock>

- In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[Schedule]** **[Function lock]** **[Enter terminal security code]** **[ON]**.

Note (Related operations)

Composing i-mode mail

- Compose i-mode mail from schedule if mail address is saved in phonebook.

File attachment

- Schedule for TV timer or Recording timer cannot be attached.

Editing Schedules <Edit>

- In stand-by, press **[LifeKit]** **[Schedule]** **[Select day]** **[Select schedule]** **[Edit]**.

- To select secret schedules, set Secret mode to [ON] (P. 150).

Date	: [26/12/2007]
Smry	: []
Ctgr	: [Personal]
Alarm	: [OFF]
Image	: [071225_17392]
Cntcts	: [090XXXXXXX]
Secret	: [OFF]
Agenda	: [Dinner]

- Edit schedule and press **[Save]** **[Complete]** **[Select save method]**.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving (P. 404).

To save as a new schedule	[Save new]
To overwrite schedule	[Overwrite] → [Yes]

Saving contacts from Received calls and Redial

Save phone numbers from Received calls and Redial as contact information.

- Select Received calls (**[Step 1 on P. 56]**)/Redial (**[Step 1 on P. 55]**) and press **[Create schedule]**.

Contents of Schedule

	Received calls	Redial
Date	Received date and time	Called date and time
Summary	-	
Category	No category	
Alarm	OFF	
Image	-	
Contacts	Phone number	
Secret	OFF	
Agenda	[No content] is entered.	

- Add and save the contents (**[Steps 2 to 10 on P. 404]**).

Saving contents of i-mode mail

Save contents of received/sent mail as Agenda.

- Attachments are not saved.

- Show received/sent messages (**[Steps 1 and 2 on P. 224]**) and press **[Add/Save]** **[Create schedule]**.

Contents of Schedule

	Received mail	Sent mail
Date	Received date and time	Sent date and time
Summary	-	
Category	No category	
Alarm	OFF	
Image	-	
Contacts	First phone number saved in phonebook (Contact is not saved if not saved in phonebook)	First phone number saved in phonebook (Contact is not saved if not saved in phonebook)
Secret	OFF	
Agenda	Subject and message (Up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters)	

- Add and save the contents (**[Steps 2 to 10 on P. 404]**).

Saving contents of text memos

Save text from text memos as Agenda.

- In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Text memo] ▶ select text memo and press ▶ [Create] ▶ [Create schedule].

Contents of Schedule

Date	--/------
Summary	—
Category	Category of Text memo
Alarm	OFF
Image	—
Contacts	—
Secret	OFF
Agenda	Content of Text memo

- Add and save the contents (steps 2 to 10 on P. 404).

Saving still pictures from My picture

Save still pictures from My picture of Data box to Schedule.

- Movies/i-motion in Data box are not available.

- Select still picture (steps 1 to 3 on P. 312) and press ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Set schedule image].

Contents of Schedule

Date	Save date and time of still picture
Summary	—
Category	No category
Alarm	OFF
Image	Title of still picture
Contacts	—
Secret	OFF
Agenda	[No content] is entered.

- Add and save the contents (steps 2 to 10 on P. 404).

Note

- While previewing a shot still picture, press and select [Set screen] → [Schedule] to save to schedule. Still picture cannot be saved to Schedule if save destination is set as microSD Memory Card. Set save destination to the FOMA terminal handset before shooting.
- Still pictures on microSD Memory Cards are not directly available. Copy to FOMA terminal handset before saving.

Deleting Schedules <Delete>

Use one of the following to delete schedules.

To delete one	Deletes entries individually.
To delete all past ones	Deletes all entries prior to specified day.
To delete all	Deletes all entries.
To delete selected ones	Deletes entries collectively.

- In stand-by, press ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule] ▶ ▶ [Show].

- Select [Show all scheds] ▶ select schedule and press ▶ [Delete].

- When selecting secret schedules for Delete one or Delete selected, set Secret mode to [ON] (P. 150).
- To delete selected entries, select in step 3.
- For Delete all past, all schedules prior to the selected day are deleted.

- Select deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete all past ones	[Delete all past] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete all	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]
To delete ones collectively	[Delete selected] → select schedule (repeatable) → → [Yes] • Press (SelAll)/ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.

Related Operations

Delete entries from Calendar

- In Calendar, press ▶ [Delete].
- Select [Delete all past]/[Delete all].
- Enter terminal security code and press ▶ [Yes].

Shortcut Menu

Accessing Functions Quickly

Save frequently used functions as shortcuts for easy access.

Saving to Shortcut Menu

Save up to 10 shortcuts. The shortcuts are preset in FOMA terminal. Overwrite them with i-appli software, bookmarks and other frequently used functions.



1 Press **[MULTI]** for 1+ seconds in function with **[S]** shown to save.

- When registered i-appli software or URL bookmarks are deleted, they are automatically deleted from the Shortcut menu.

2 Select destination to save.

3 Select **[Yes]** to overwrite.

Note

- When **Reset settings** are made, shortcuts return to default settings.

Running Shortcut Menu

1 In stand-by, press **[C]** select shortcut icon.

- Saved function activates.
- Menus saved in **[1]** to **[3]** of shortcut menu are assigned to **[1]** to **[3]**. Execute those functions by pressing each key for 1+ seconds in stand-by.
- When a calendar is shown in stand-by, press **[C]** to disable the calendar display and press **[C]**.
- To check the saving method of the Shortcut menu, press **[M]** in the Shortcut menu and select **[Reg method]**.

Note

- The following menus are preset in **[1]** to **[3]** of shortcut menu.

Menu	Assigned key
[1] Bar code reader	[1]
[2] Receive Ir data	[2]
[3] Card reader	[3]

Deleting from Shortcut Menu

1 In the Shortcut menu, select the shortcut icon and press **[M]** **[Delete]**.

2 Select deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete all	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press [C] → [Yes]

- Selected shortcut is deleted from Shortcut menu.

Moving Shortcut Menu Icons

<Move Icon>

1 In the Shortcut menu, select the shortcut icon and press **[M]** **[Move icon]**.

2 Select target location.

- Shortcuts are switched.

Resetting Shortcut Menu

<Reset Shortcut>

Reset Shortcut menu to default items.

1 In the Shortcut menu, press **[M]** **[Reset shortcut]** enter terminal security code and press **[C]** **[Yes]**.

Owner Information

Saving Own Name and Image

Save name, phone number, mail address, postal address, birthday, etc. as owner information.

Save three phone numbers (including Own number) and three mail addresses.










Items to set

```




(Not registered)
R (Not registered)
090XXXXXXXX
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
Own image
(Not set)
    
```

- Only the phone number of the inserted FOMA card appears by default. Add acquired mail address.


Icon	Item
[P]	Name (up to 32 single-byte/16 double-byte characters)
R	Reading (up to 32 single-byte characters)
[E]	Own number (cannot be edited)
[P]	Phone number (two numbers, up to 26 digits per number)

Icon	Item
	Mail address (three addresses, up to 50 single-byte characters per address)
	Company/school (29 single-byte/14 double-byte characters)
	Department (20 single-byte/10 double-byte characters)
	Title (20 single-byte/10 double-byte characters)
	Postal code (up to seven single-byte digits)
	Postal address (up to 100 single-byte/50 double-byte characters)
	Birthday (single-byte numbers, from January 1, 1900 to December 31, 2099)
	Memo (up to 200 single-byte/100 double-byte characters)
	Own image


1 In stand-by, press .

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], press   in stand-by to view the owner information of Number A. Press  (Number B) to switch to the owner information of Number B.


2 Enter terminal security code and press .

- To save the Number B of 2in1, in the owner information details screen of the Number B, press  and select [2in1 reg check] → [Yes].


3 Select items save details.

- Editing procedures are the same as phonebook. Refer to P. 102 to P. 106 for details.
- Screen of step 2 reappears after each item is saved. Continue setting other items.
- Press  in each entry screen to delete name, reading, phone number, mail address, Company/school, Department, Title, postal code, postal address, birthday and memo. Select [Not set] to delete Own image.

4 After saving items, press (Complete).

- Select icon with  to show saved details.

Note

- Customize mail address. Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” for details.
- Changing for mail address are not reflected in owner information. Save mail address manually.
- Copy microSD Memory Card phonebook contents to owner information ( P. 110).

Related Operations

Check own mail address (i-mode subscribers only)




In stand-by, press     select [Mail Settings]  select [Confirm Mail Address].

Showing Owner Information Details


- Also, copy characters from owner information items and paste in other screens.

1 In stand-by, press (Details).

2 Enter terminal security code and press .











- Press  to view saved items in order.
- To copy Owner information, select item to copy with , press  and select [Copy] → [Copy item]. Names, own number, other phone numbers, mail addresses, company/school, department, title, postal addresses, and memos can be copied.

Note





- Alternatively, send owner information to other FOMA terminals with Ir exchange ( P. 354).
- Refer to P. 356 for details on iC transmission.

Related Operations




Copy while composing i-mode mail or SMS

- 1 In stand-by, press    select [Msg]   .
- 2 Press   enter terminal security code and press   select an item.

Copy owner information to microSD Memory Card <Copy to microSD>

In the owner information details screen, press    .

Restrict transferring of own image with Ir exchange or iC transmission, or copying to microSD Memory Card <Image transfer>

In the owner information details screen, press   .


Voice Memo (During Call)/ Voice Memo (Stand-by)



Recording Other's Voice During Call or Own Voice When in Stand-by

Record other party's voice during a call (Voice memo (during call)) or own voice when in stand-by (Voice memo (stand-by)).

- Use recorded Voice memos (stand-by) for On hold tone (☎ P. 70), Hold tone (☎ P. 71) or Reply message (☎ P. 76).
- Record up to three Record messages (voice calls) (☎ P. 74) and Voice memos of approximately 15 seconds each.
- Record up to two Record messages (Videophone) of approximately 15 seconds each.



Recording Other Party's Voice During a Call <Voice Memo>

1 During a voice call, press  ▶ [Voice memo].

- Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds during a voice call.
- Notes on recording are the same as for recording own voice when in stand-by (☎ P. 412).
- To stop recording, press  (Voice is recorded until stopped).

Recording Own Voice When in Stand-by <Stand-by Voice Memo>

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Voice memo/Rec msg] ▶ [Record].


- Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds in stand-by.
- Recording begins.
- Speak within approximately 10 cm away.
- Recording automatically ends after approximately 15 seconds.
- Indicator is an estimate.
- To stop recording, press  (Stop) (Voice is recorded until stopped).



Note

- Own voice is not recorded in Voice memo (during call). However, own voice may be recorded due to line status.
- Messages that indicate outside the service area, changed phone number, and others cannot be recorded.
- **Key/Standby i-motion** is silenced while recording Voice memo (stand-by).

When call is received during Voice memo (stand-by)

- Recording is stopped. Press  to answer the call (Voice is recorded until stopped).

Keep a separate memo and note recorded memos

- Recorded content may be altered or lost by misuse, static, electronic noise, malfunction, repairs, changing FOMA terminal or other handling. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Talk Time/Cost

Displaying the Call Duration/ Charge

Check previous or total call duration/charge for voice calls, Videophone calls, etc.

- Voice call duration, Videophone call duration and 64K data communication duration appear for call duration. Duration time includes calls made and received.
- Call charge includes only calls made. When calls are made to toll-free numbers, directory assistance (104), etc., [0YEN] or [*****YEN] appears.
- Call charges for switching between Videophone and voice call appear as [Last call cost ¥○○] and [V.phone call cost ¥○○]. Charges for calls switched multiple times appear for each voice/ Videophone call in total.
- Call charge is saved on the FOMA card. If a different FOMA card is inserted, the total call charges stored (those calculated since December 2004) on the currently inserted card appears.
 - ※ Total call charges on a FOMA card cannot be viewed on models released prior to the FOMA 901i series (However, total charge is saved on the FOMA card).
- Call duration/charge that appears can be reset.
- Call duration/charge is an estimate and may differ from actual amount. Call charge does not include consumption tax.
- Enter the four- to eight-digit number for PIN1/PIN2 code (☎ P. 142).

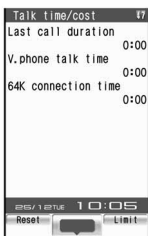
Note

- Refer to P. 77 for details on playing/deleting Voice memos during calls and stand-by.
- Voice memos of 3 seconds or less may not be recorded.

Displaying the Call Details

1 In stand-by, press **[Setting]** **[NW Services]** **[Talk time/cost]**.

- While accessing the FOMA card, [Reading UIM data] appears.
- If the information has never been reset, [----/--/--(--)--:--] appears for the reset date and time.
- When total call charge is reset, the charges at the time of resetting are saved for the reset date and time.
- Press **[End]** to end viewing.



Note

- Transmission duration and charge for PushTalk, i-mode and packet transmissions are not counted. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on checking i-mode charge.
- If previous call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- If total call duration exceeds 999:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- Time used receiving or making a call is not counted.
- Last call cost is reset to [*****YEN] when the power is turned off.
- Transmission charges for Chaku-moji are not counted.
- International call charges for WORLD CALL are counted. International call charges for other call services are not counted.
- If subscribed to the 2in1, total call charge is the total of Number A and Number B.

Resetting Call Duration/Call Cost

The recorded previous call duration or the total call duration/cost can be reset to 0.

1 In stand-by, press **[Setting]** **[NW Services]** **[Talk time/cost]** **[Reset]**.



2 Select an item to reset.

To reset total call cost	[Reset total] → enter PIN2 code and press [Enter] → [Yes]
To reset total call duration	[Talk time reset] → enter terminal security code and press [Enter] → [Yes]

- The reset year, month and day are saved in [reset date].

Setting Call Cost Limit Notice

<Limit Settings>

Show a stock icon or sound an alarm in stand-by when the set maximum talk cost is exceeded after the call is ended. Also, reset total call cost on the first of the month.

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[NW Services]** **[Talk time/cost]** **[Limit]**.

2 Select **[Limit settings]** enter terminal security code and press **[Enter]**.

3 Select **[Limit settings]** **[Enable]**.

4 Select **[Limit settings]** enter maximum cost limit and press **[Enter]**.

- Enter from 10 to 100,000 yen in 10 yen increments.

5 Select **[Notice method]** **[Stand-by]**.

- To sound an alarm as well as displaying a message, Select [Alarm + stand-by], set the alarm tone (**[P. 402]**)/alarm volume (**[P. 402]**)/ring duration (**[P. 402]**) and press **[Complete]**.

6 Select **[Auto reset]** select whether to reset automatically.

- If Auto reset is set to [ON], when 12 A.M. of the first of the month passes or at a later date set in Date settings (**[P. 47]**), call cost is reset.

7 Press **[Complete]** enter PIN2 code and press **[Enter]**.

Note

- When **[Charge limit exceeded]** appears in stand-by, press **[Enter]**, select **[Charge limit exceeded]**, and enter terminal security code to delete **[Charge limit exceeded]**. Alternatively, set Limit notice again to delete **[Charge limit exceeded]**.

Related Operations

Delete Limit settings message in stand-by

<Delete notice>

In stand-by, press **[OK]** ▶ select **MENU (Custom menu)** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[Talk time/cost]** ▶ **[Delete notice]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

Note (Related operations)

- When Limit settings message is deleted, the message is not displayed until All calls cost is reset or Limit settings is set again.

Calculator

Using as Calculator

Add, subtract, multiply, divide, calculate percentages and sales tax.

- Refer to P. 477 for examples of various calculations.

1 In stand-by, press **[OK]** ▶ **[LifeKit]** ▶ **[Calculator]**.

- Alternatively, enter numbers to calculate in stand-by, press **[OK]** and select **[Calculator]**.

2 Enter numbers to calculate.

- Use the following to enter.

[0] to [9]	Numbers 0 to 9
[.]	Decimal point
[+/-]	Switch between + and -*

* Input a numerical value and then press **[+/-]** to switch between + and -.

- Press **[CLR]** to erase all entered numbers (Press **[CLR]** to end when number is 0).

3 Select calculation.

- Mathematical functions are allotted to guide key.

[+]	Add	[-]	Subtract
[x]	Multiply	[÷]	Divide



Calculator

- Also perform the following.

[CM]	CM Clear memory	[RM]	RM Recall memory	[%]	% Calculate percentage
[TAX]	TAX Calculate tax	[M+]	M+ Add memory		

4 Enter numbers to calculate and press **[=]** (=).

- Press **[END]** to end Calculator. The stand-by display reappears.

Note

- The stand-by display does not reappear when **Alarm** or **Schedule alarm** activates while Calculator is being used. Calculator reappears after Alarm operation ends.
- Results are retained if memory is used.

Related Operations

Change tax rate

In Calculator, press **[TAX]** for 1+ seconds ▶ enter tax rate (01 to 99) and press **[OK]**.

Calculate tax

Display results and press **[TAX]** (TAX).

- To calculate amount without tax: Display results and press **[TAX]** (TAX) **[TAX]** (TAX) (-TAX).

Copy calculation contents

Press **[COPY]** for 1+ seconds during calculation.

Note (Related operations)

Calculating tax

- The amount after the decimal point is rounded off.
Example: If 120 **[TAX]** (TAX) is pressed, [5Tax] appears.

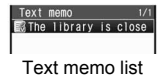
Text Memo

Entering Memos

Save frequently used phrases and use them when composing message or Schedule.

1 In stand-by, press **[OK]** ▶ **[LifeKit]** ▶ **[Text memo]**.

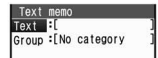
- Save up to 10 text memos. Sort them into 20 types.



Text memo list

2 Press **[Create]** ▶ **[New]**.

- Alternatively, press **[New]** (New).
- To preview saved memo, select a memo.



3 Select **[Text]** ▶ enter message and press **[OK]**.

- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters.

4 Select [Group] ▶ select category icon.

- Select category from 20 types. Refer to P. 405 for details on categories.
- Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.

5 Press [] (Complete).

Note

- Refer to P. 340 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Send and receive text memo saved on the FOMA terminal handset using **Ir exchange** or **iC transmission**.

Using Memos

Use saved memos when composing message or Schedule.

1 In text memo list (☞ P. 414), select memo.

Text memo 1/1	
025/12/2007(Tue)10:30	— Date created
025/12/2007(Tue)11:00	— Last edit date
☞ Holiday	— Category
☞ The library is closed every Monday.	— Agenda

2 Press [] ▶ [Create] ▶ select memo function.

Compose message	Compose message screen appears. Content of memo is entered in [Msg].
Create schedule	The schedule saving screen appears. Content of memo is entered in [Agenda] and memo type is entered in [Ctgr].

Note

- Press [MULTI] to start Text memo during a voice call or while composing message (☞ P. 396).

Editing Saved Memos <Edit>

1 In text memo list (☞ P. 414), select memo and press [] ▶ [Edit] ▶ edit memo.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving (☞ P. 414).

2 When finished editing, press [] (Complete) ▶ select save method.

To save as new	[Save new]
To overwrite	[Overwrite] → [Yes]

Deleting Memos <Delete>

1 In text memo list (☞ P. 414), select memo and press [] ▶ [Delete] ▶ select deletion method.

To delete one memo	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete multiple memos	[Delete selected] → select memo (repeatable) → [] → [Yes] ● Press [] (SelAll)/[] (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To delete all memos	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press [] → [Yes]

Related Operations

Apply Function lock to Text memo <Function lock>

In stand-by, press [] ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ [Text memo] ▶ [] ▶ [Function lock] ▶ enter terminal security code and press [] ▶ [ON].

Note (Related operations)

- When setting Function lock for Text memo, Function lock is also set for **Schedule** and **Alarm**, and the alarm does not sound at the set time.

Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) to the earphone/microphone terminal to call numbers saved in the phonebook or answer voice/Videophone or PushTalk calls by merely pushing a switch.


- Use earphone/microphone individually or in conjunction with the following.
 - Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch
 - Earphone/microphone with switch + Earphone plug adapter P001
 - Stereo earphone set P001 + Earphone plug adapter P001
 - Earphone terminal P001 + Earphone plug adapter P001
Separate stereo earphones are required.
- Use FOMA terminal keys to place Videophone or PushTalk calls.
- Do not forcefully pull earphone/microphone terminal cover. May damage the cover.


Setting Earphone/Microphone with Switch

<Headset Sw to Call>

Set flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to make voice calls using only the switch. Save phone numbers to FOMA terminal handset phonebook and specify memory number.

- Save one entry from memory numbers 000 to 999 from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
- Making Videophone calls is not available from switch.

1 In stand-by, press  **[Settings]** **[Phone settings]** **[Headset sw to call]** **[Voice call]**.

2 Enter memory number (three digits: 000 to 999) and press .

Making Voice Calls with Switch

1 Connect flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.

- Insert plug of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch into earphone/microphone terminal.

2 In stand-by, press switch for 2+ seconds.

- When the screen is off due to the screen display time, press a key or the switch to show the screen in advance.
- The phone number for the memory number set for headset switch to call is dialed automatically.
- If multiple phone numbers are saved for memory number set for headset switch to call in the phonebook, the first phone number saved is called. If the slot for the first phone number is empty, then the second phone number is called. If the slot for the second phone number is empty, then the third phone number is called.


3 Press switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

- Alternatively, press  on FOMA terminal to disconnect.

Note

- When a memory number set for headset switch to call is set as Secret, set **Secret mode** to [ON] before using switch to call.
- Calls may be placed accidentally if FOMA terminal is carried in bags with flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch connected. Disconnect when not in use.

Note


- Calls cannot be placed while **Function lock** is applied to phonebook.
- Calls may be placed if earphone/microphone without switch is rapidly inserted and removed.
- **Key/Standby i-motion** are output to flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch when connected.
- The volume for earphone is the same as set in Earpiece volume ( P. 69).

Answering Calls with Switch

1 Connect flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.

- Insert plug of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch into earphone/microphone terminal.

2 Ring tone sounds when call is received.

- Ring tone sounds from the device set for Headset setting ( P. 126).

3 Press switch for 2+ seconds.

- Alternatively, press  on FOMA terminal to connect.

4 Press switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

- Alternatively, press  on FOMA terminal to disconnect.

Note

- Call may be answered accidentally if connected while ring tone is ringing. Disconnect when not in use.
- Do not press switch repeatedly. Call may be placed and received automatically.
- Do not wind cord for flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around FOMA terminal. Internal antenna may not work properly.
- Placing cord for flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch near internal antenna causes noise.
- Secure plug. Sound may not be audible if not completely inserted.
- A beep sounds when plug is inserted only halfway during a call. This is not a malfunction.
- A pop may sound when power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

Auto Answer Setting

Answering Calls Automatically with Earphone

Automatically connect voice/Videophone/ PushTalk calls received while flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- Set time before voice/Videophone call is automatically connected (Receive time).
- When flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is not connected, Auto answer setting is not available even if set to [ON] (excluding PushTalk).

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Incoming settings] ▶ [Auto answer setting].

2 Select item ▶ set Auto answer.

To set for voice and Videophone calls	[Phone/Videophone] → [ON] → enter Receive time (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) and press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Call is automatically answered after approximately 2 seconds if is pressed without entering time. ● Calls are answered without ringing or vibrating when set to [000 seconds].
To set for PushTalk	[PushTalk] → [ON]

Note

- Calls from those set for Reject calls or Accept calls are not answered automatically.
- Set different Auto answer setting and Record message ring times.
- **Voice Mail Service** and **Call Forwarding Service** may be prioritized if Auto answer setting is set to same time.
To prioritize Auto answer setting, set Receive time shorter than for **Record message**, **Voice Mail Service** or **Call Forwarding Service**.

Reset Settings

Resetting Settings

Restore default values.

- Refer to "Custom Menu/Basic Menu List" on P. 458 to P. 471 for default settings.
- For Kisekae Tool in the [Pre-install] folder, [White] (for the handset color White) can be set regardless of the handset color. Refer to "Using Kisekae Tool" on P. 134 for the items to which Kisekae Tool can be set.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Reset settings] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .

- When the 2in1 is used, the message indicating 2in1 function is disabled appears. Select [Agree].

2 Select [Yes] ▶ [Agree].

Note

When reset

- The following are not reset (deleted/changed). Refer to respective pages to reset.


Terminal security code (P. 143)	Alarm (P. 403)
Owner information (P. 410)	Saved signature (P. 234)
Accept calls list (P. 150)	Network service settings (P. 430 to P. 444)
Reject calls list (P. 151)	Phonebook entries (P. 115)
Recordings such as Record message (P. 77)	microSD Memory Card data (P. 344)
Data box data (P. 347 and P. 351)	Text memo (P. 415)
Camera images (P. 347 and P. 351)	User dictionary (P. 426)
Select language (P. 46)	Download dictionary (P. 427)
Sent/Received/Unsent mail (P. 230)	Schedule (P. 409)
Screen memo (P. 191)	

- Refer to P. 198 for details on resetting i-mode.
- Refer to P. 236 for details on resetting mail settings.
- Refer to P. 300 for details on resetting 1Seg settings.
- When Reset settings is performed, i-Channel ticker does not appear. The i-Channel tickers appear automatically when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.
- When Reset settings is performed, **2in1 function OFF** is applied. In addition, **Mode switching**, **Stand-by display**, **Display call/receive No.** and **Number B Ring tone** are reset.

Delete User Data

Deleting All Saved Data

Delete all saved data and return all functions to default settings.

- i-appli, Chara-den, i-motion, Deco-mail images (Decomail pictures, Deco-mail pictographs, and Template) Kisekae Tool and PDF data are deleted. Melodies in [Pre-install] folder in Melody of Data box and still pictures, animated GIFs, and Flash movies in [Pre-install] folder in My picture of Data box are not deleted.
- Terminal security code returns to default number [0000].
- Protected data in FOMA terminal are also deleted.
- Other functions are not available while deleting. Receiving voice call/video phone call/mail, alarms and 1Seg timer recording are also not available while deleting.
- Delete all data with the battery level . If battery level is low, data may not be completely deleted.
- Do not turn off handset while deleting.
- Refer to the "Custom Menu/Basic Menu List" on P. 458 to P. 471 for details on default settings.

Deleted data	Phonebook (includes Phonebook 2in1 set), PushTalk phonebook, Still picture/ Movie/1Seg/Melody/Chara-den/ Chaku-uta full®/PDF files/Kisekae Tool of Data box, i-appli, Mail, Message R/F, Bookmarks, Screen memo, Download dictionary, Voice memo, Text memo, Alarm settings, Received calls, Redial, Sent messages, Mail history, URL history, Signature, User dictionary, Manga&BookReader bookmarks, Folders*, SMS, i-appli mail data, Mail templates, Record messages (including recorded voice guidance), Data read by Bar code reader, Schedule (including saved/changed holidays), ToruCa, Last URL, Exchanging history of Data Security Service, Chaku-moji message, Location history, Location service client, Software update-related information (reservation information, update notification icon, rewrite notification icon, downloaded update file) History of timer recording, Saved data of writing authentication, Replay period information of Uta-hodai
Data not deleted (returns to default settings)	Functions that can be reset (☎P. 417) and the following functions return to default settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Set screen, Ring tone, Record message reply message, phrases, Memory term item, Settings, Terminal security code, GPS setting, Date settings, Custom menu, Basic Menu, Shortcut menu, Call duration, Themes, Reply message, USSD, Owner information (excluding own number), PushTalk group, Set PushTalk, Mail member, Entered URL, International prefix, Operation settings for My picture, i-motion, Melody and My Documents of Data box, Mail setting, i-mode setting, i-appli setting, Operator name display, Network search mode, Data in the broadcast storage area, TVlink, Channel list

* Preset folders are not deleted.

1 In stand-by, press  **[Settings]** **[Security]** **[Delete all data]** **[Delete user data]**.

2 Select **[Agree]** **enter terminal security code and press .**

- When the 2in1 is used, the message indicating 2in1 function is disabled appears. Select [Agree].
- [This may take about 20 minutes. OK?] appears.

3 Select **[Yes]**.

- [Delete and restart. OK?] appears.

4 Select **[Yes]**.

- FOMA terminal restarts after deleting.

Note

- Download preset i-appli, Chara-den, i-motion, **Deco-mail** images and Kisekae Tool from the iMenu site [SH-MODE]. Packet transmission charges apply when downloading (☎P. 191, P. 193, P. 194, P. 202, P. 248).
- Data saved/registered/set in FOMA card or microSD Memory Card are not deleted.
- Deleting data collectively is not available while other functions are performed.
- More time may be required when deleting large amounts of data collectively.
- While deleting data collectively, the display may become garbled, so do not close the FOMA terminal.
- When Delete user data is performed, i-Channel ticker does not appear. The i-Channel tickers appear automatically when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.
- i-appli Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control), iD 設定アプリ (iD setting appli) and DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli) are not deleted.


Deleting Secret Data Collectively

<Del Secret Data>

Delete secret phonebooks and schedule collectively.

- Available regardless of Secret mode settings.

1 In stand-by, press  **[Settings]** **[Security]** **[Delete all data]** **[Del secret data]**.

2 Enter terminal security code and press  **[Yes]**.

Character Entry

- Entering Text <Text Input>420
- 5-touch Input Method Text Entry <5-touch>420
- Editing/Saving Phrases. <Save Phrases>425
- Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text <Copy Text>425
- Inputting Kuten Code <Kuten Code Input>426
- Registering Frequently Used Words. <Register Words (User Dictionary)>426
- Resetting Memorized Conversion Candidates <Clear Memory Terms>426
- Using a Downloaded Dictionary <Download Dictionary>427
- Selecting Conversion Method. <Guess Conversion>428
- 2-touch Input Method Text Entry <2-touch>428

Refer to "Kuten Code List" in PDF format in the accompanying CD-ROM for details on "Kuten Code List". Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view "Kuten Code List" in PDF format. Install it from the accompanying CD-ROM to your personal computer if not installed.

Text Input

Entering Text

Enter text for various functions on the FOMA terminal, such as phonebook and mail. Before entering text, it is recommended to learn about the text input methods.

Text input methods

5-touch	Each key is assigned multiple characters. Press key multiple times to enter character. Refer to P. 472 to P. 473 for details on key assignment. Press to scroll backwards through characters.
2-touch	Use two-digit combinations to enter character. Refer to P. 474 for details on two-digit combinations and available characters.

- Refer to P. 428 for details on selecting text input methods.
- Each method has input modes for entering different types of characters (☞ P. 422, P. 428).

Types of characters which can be entered

Double-byte	Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols, pictographs
Single-byte	Katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols

- Use double-byte alphanumeric mode to enter double-byte numbers.
- Refer to P. 472 to P. 474 for details.

Quick conversion and Guess conversion

Quick conversion	For every one to five hiragana characters entered, conversion candidate words starting with those characters appear. Commonly used words are registered in a specialized dictionary.
Guess conversion	After characters are confirmed, the next word is predicted from previous input/conversion records, automatically showing candidate characters that follow confirmed characters.

- Conversion functions can be disabled individually (☞ P. 428).
- Memorized conversion candidates can be reset (☞ P. 426).

Note

- Design of the text input screen depends on the function.

5-touch

5-touch Input Method Text Entry

Entering Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana

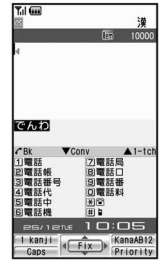
In kanji mode, convert hiragana to kanji, hiragana, katakana and symbols.

1 In text input screen, press the dial keys to enter hiragana.

- Every time the key is pressed, the character changes.
- Conversion candidate words appear every time a hiragana character is entered.
- To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press to move the cursor, or press the same key for 1+ seconds after entering a character.

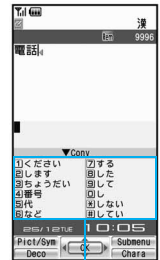
Example: To enter あい, press → → , or press → for 1+ seconds →

- To enter katakana or alphanumerics, press (Chara) in text input screen and input mode is selected.



2 Move the cursor to the conversion candidate field with and select character.

- Alternatively, press to , , , or corresponding to list number of conversion candidates to enter.
- Press to stop selection. The cursor returns to the text input screen. Continue entering text.



Conversion candidates field

To show the next list screen	(Page ▼)
To show the previous list screen	(Page ▲)
When the kanji is not available	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the cursor is on the text input screen, use to change highlighted characters and convert again. For normal conversion, when the cursor is on the conversion candidates field, press (←Reslct) or (Reslct→) to change characters. Press for One-touch conversion (☞ P. 421).

Note

Canceling text input

- Press **CLR** to cancel text input and return to the previous screen. If text is already entered, press **CLR** to delete all text (☞ P. 422), and press **CLR** again. If cursor is in middle of text, press **CLR** for 1+ seconds twice and press **CLR**.

Related Operations

Add dakuten (´)

Enter character and press **☒**.

Add handakuten (゜)

Enter character and press **☒** **☒**.

Convert to lower case

Enter character and press **☑** (Caps).

Add a space at the end of message

Press **○** at the end.

Undo entry <Undo>

After entering text and confirming operation (delete, cut), press **☑**.

View key list <Key list>

In text input screen, press **☉** ▶ [Key list].

Note (Related operations)

Dakuten and handakuten

- For single-byte katakana, press **☒** once for dakuten (´), twice for handakuten (゜), three times to add a prolonged sound (ー), and four times for a line break (↵). Press five times to return to dakuten (´). The added marks count as one character.
- For double-byte hiragana, press **☒** once for a dakuten (´), twice for a handakuten (゜), and three times to restore the original character.

Lower case

- For alphabet, text is converted to lower case. The entry mode is also switched to lower case.

Entering a space

- A single-byte space will be entered regardless of input mode. Each space counts as one character.

Undo operation

- If **☑** is pressed 11+ times, [UNDO Unable to undo anymore] appears and the screen 10 times before reappears. When entering mail message, undo is available only once.
- After text is edited, operations in memory are cleared.
- Undo may not be available depending on the entry screen.

1-character memory conversion

<1 chara mem conv>

Set whether to display a kanji or text that has been entered once as a conversion candidate next time when the first character is entered.

1 In text input screen, press **☉** ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Guess conversion].

2 Select [1 chara mem conv] ▶ [ON]/[OFF].

When the kanji cannot be found

<1 kanji conversion>

Enter a single kanji by its on or kun reading.

1 In text input screen, enter hiragana and press **☑** (1 kanji).

2 Select kanji.

Note

- There are 6,355 kanji available from JIS level-1/level-2 kanji sets.
- Complex kanji are changed in part or are excluded.

Quickly specifying character string

<One-touch conv>

Use One-touch conversion to convert kanji using all the hiragana combinations assigned to each key. The same key does not need to be pressed multiple times for the hiragana.

Example: When entering おはよう

1 In text input screen, press **1** **6** **8** **1**.

- One-touch conversion works best with nouns.
- For characters with dakuten/handakuten marks, press the key for the unmarked character once, then enter the dakuten/handakuten mark.

Example: To enter 勉強,

press **6** →
☒ → **0** →
2 → **8** → **1**.



2 Press **○**.

- Press **☑** (←Reslct) or **☉** (Reslct→) in One-touch conversion status to change the pre-converted characters to convert. Further conversion is One-touch conversion.
- The character strings used most frequently appear first in the list.
- When conversion candidates appear, press **CLR** to return to the hiragana before converted. After that, normal conversion candidates appear.
- Reading is not automatically entered if One-touch conversion is used to enter name when adding to phonebook.



3 Select candidate.

Predictive headword conversion

In One-touch conversion, words that start with the characters assigned to the pressed key (words starting with あ, い, う, え, お when あ is entered) appear according to the time of day.

- Words shown are already registered.
- Words shown are grouped into the following times: 5:00 to 10:59, 11:00 to 16:59, 17:00 to 22:59, and 23:00 to 4:59.

One-touch single-character memory

If the first character for a character string previously used in One-touch conversion is entered (example: あ when あたあさわ was converted into お父さん), the previously converted word (お父さん) appears.

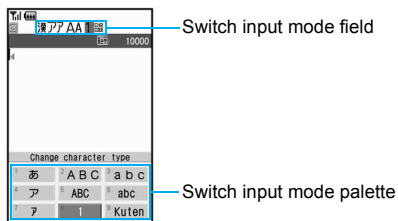
Switching Input Modes in 5-touch Input

Switch input modes to enter various types of text.






Input mode

- Kanji/hiragana
- Double-byte katakana
- Single-byte katakana
- Double-byte alphanumeric characters
- Single-byte alphanumeric characters
- Single-byte numbers
- Kuten code


1 In text input screen, press (Chara).



2 Select input mode from input mode palette.

- Input mode palette corresponds to keypad layout. Alternatively, press dial key ( to ) to select.
- Alternatively, press  (Chara) to switch input mode and press . Every time  (Chara) is pressed, 1 (single-byte numbers) → 漢 (JIS kuten code) → 漢 (kanji/hiragana) → ア (double-byte katakana) → ア (single-byte katakana) → A (double-byte alphanumeric) → A (single-byte alphanumeric) cycles through in this order on the switch input mode field.

Note

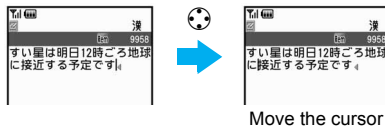
- When [Pict/Sym] appears on text input screen, press  (Pict/Sym) to switch to pictograph (P. 424).

Editing Text

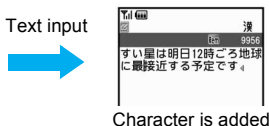
Adding characters

1 Move cursor to location to add characters and input text.

Example: When entering 最 in front of 接近



Move the cursor



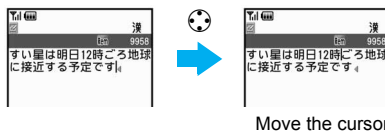
Character is added

Deleting text

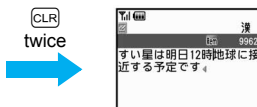
1 Move cursor to the left of the character to delete and press .

- The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.
- When the cursor is on a character, the character at the location is deleted.


Example: When deleting ごろ



Move the cursor



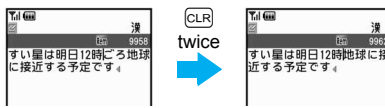
Characters are deleted

- Press  for 1+ seconds to delete all characters at and after the cursor. If there is the cursor at the end of the message, all characters are deleted.

Changing characters

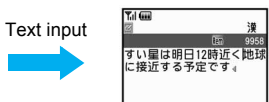
1 Delete and re-enter characters.

Example: When changing ごろ to 近く





Move the cursor

Characters are deleted














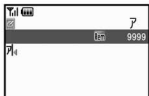
Characters are added

Entering Katakana (Single-byte)

1 In text input screen, press  (Chara) ▶ select  from the switch input mode palette.

2 Press the dial key to enter single-byte katakana.

- Enter next character, or press  or  to confirm.
 - When entering text for i-mode mail, press  to confirm.
 - To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press  to move the cursor or, after entering the first character, press the same key for 1+ seconds.
- Example: To enter アイ, press  →  →   or  →  for 1+ seconds → .




Related Operations



Convert hiragana to katakana (double- and single-byte) <Kana/English conv>

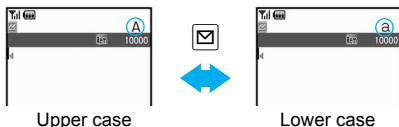
Enter hiragana and press  ▶ select a double-byte katakana/single-byte katakana.

Entering Alphanumeric Characters

Entering alphabet

1 In text input screen, press  (Chara) ▶ select [A B C]/[ABC]/[a b c]/[abc] from the switch input mode palette.












- Enter double-byte alphanumerics while [A B C]/[a b c] is shown and single-byte alphanumerics while [ABC]/[abc] is shown.
- Alternatively, press  after selecting from the switch input mode palette to switch between upper case and lower case. Also, press  after entering characters to convert characters entered just before.



Upper case


Lower case

2 Press the dial key to enter alphabet.




- For double-byte alphanumeric, enter next character, or press  or  to confirm. When entering text for i-mode mail, press  to confirm.
- In the single-byte alphanumeric mode on the address entry screen or other screens, conversion candidates used on the Internet appear.
- To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press  to move the cursor or, after entering the first character, press the same key for 1+ seconds.
Example: To enter **AB** or **ab**, press  →  →   or press  →  for 1+ seconds → .
- If an English word is entered in kanji mode (example: はうす), single-byte English (example: **House**, **house**, etc.) appears in the conversion candidates.
- If hiragana is entered in kanji mode (example: ひとみ), single-byte English (example: **hitomi**, etc.) appears in the conversion candidates.

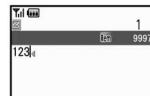


Entering numbers

1 In text input screen, press  (Chara) ▶ select [1] from the switch input mode palette.


2 Press the dial key to enter numbers.

- Confirms automatically.
- In double-byte alphanumeric mode (upper/lower case), press key multiple times for double-byte number.
Example: To enter 1, press  five times.
To enter 2, press  seven times (upper case)/press  four times (lower case).
- Alternatively enter hiragana in kanji mode, and select numbers from kana/English conversion candidates.



Related Operations

Convert hiragana to alphabet/numbers <Kana/English conv>

Enter hiragana and press  ▶ select an alphabet/number.

Related Operations

Note (Related operations)

- Conversion candidates appear for the number or alphabet assigned to the key and predicted date and time.

Example: Enter いき (1 → 1 → 2 → 2) and press (KanaAB12), イキ (double-byte katakana), ｲｷ (single-byte katakana), 1 1 2 2 (double-byte numbers), 1122 (single-byte numbers), /B (double-byte upper case alphabet), /B (single-byte upper case alphabet), /b (double-byte lower case alphabet), /b (single-byte lower case alphabet), 1 1月2 2日, 11:22, 1 1時2 2分 and 11:22 appear.

Using Bar Code Reader to Enter Characters

Enter text read from bar codes (JAN/QR codes) into text input fields during i-mode ("Selecting items and entering text in sites/Internet web pages" on P. 183).

1 In text input fields on sites or Internet web pages, press [Quote] ▶ [Bar code reader].

2 Scan data.

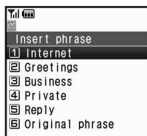
- Refer to P. 173 for details on Bar code reader usage.

Using Preset Phrases <Insert Phrase>

Use preset phrases (P. 476), original phrases (P. 425) and enter mail addresses easily.

1 In text input screen, press ▶ [Insert phrase].

- Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds in text input screen.
- To show all phrases, press . Select phrase (All) screen appears.



Insert phrase screen

2 Select type of phrase.

3 Select phrase ▶ confirm phrase and press .

Note

- When the Select phrase (All) screen appears, phrases appear in the used order starting with the most recently used phrase.

Entering Pictographs/Symbols

Enter pictographs and symbols. Also enter Deco-mail pictographs to message text and signature.

- Deco-mail pictographs cannot be entered when Function lock is applied to multimedia. Enter terminal security code to temporarily disable Function lock.

1 In text input screen, press (Pict/Sym) ▶ enter pictograph or symbol.

To enter Pictograph	Select a pictograph. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To create a mail message/signature, press to switch between Pictograph and Pictograph D (Deco-mail pictograph).
To enter symbol	(Symbol) → select a symbol <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To switch between single- and double-byte symbols, press .
To show the next list screen	(Page ▼) → (Page ▼) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press (Page ▼) once when the cursor is on the last pictograph or symbol of the list.
To show the previous list screen	(Page ▲) → (Page ▲) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press (Page ▲) once when the cursor is on the first pictograph or symbol of the list.

- Enter consecutively.
- To return to the previous input mode, press .

Note

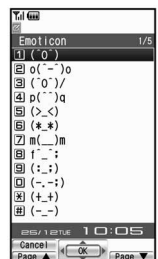
- Enter Deco-mail pictographs while composing mail to create **Deco-mail**.
- Convert keywords "keyword (reading)" to pictographs. Refer to "Pictograph List" on P. 475.
- For PictographD (Deco-mail pictographs), only Decomail pictographs saved in the [Decomail pict] folder in My picture of Data box appear in the Conversion candidates field.
- Refer to "Symbols/Special Character List" on P. 474 for details on available symbols and special characters.
- The ten pictographs or symbols used most recently appear on the first line of the list.
- Use the same operation for **2-touch input**.

Entering Emoticons <Emoticon>

Emoticon table (P. 476)

1 In text input screen, press ▶ [Emoticon].

- Alternatively, in text input screen, press for 1+ seconds.



To show the next list screen	(Page ▼) → (Page ▼) ● Press (Page ▼) once when the cursor is on the last line of the list.
To show the previous list screen	(Page ▲) → (Page ▲) ● Press (Page ▲) once when the cursor is on the first line of the list.

2 Select emoticon.

- Alternatively, press to , , , or corresponding to list number of the Emoticon list to enter.

Note

- Enter かお in hiragana to see emoticons in the kanji conversion candidates list. The contents displayed as candidates differ from those of the Emoticon list.

Save Phrases

Editing/Saving Phrases

Register frequently used original phrases and edit preset phrases.

- Refer to P. 476 for details on preset phrases.
- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters for each phrase.
- Phrases can be reset to default settings.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Edit phrase] ▶ [Original phrase].

- To edit saved phrases, select the categories to edit.

2 Select number to register to and press (Edit).

3 Enter original phrase and press .

Resetting to default phrases <Reset>

Reset phrases to their default settings. The following reset commands are available.

To reset one	Resets one phrase at a time.
To reset folder	Resets all phrases in one category.
To reset all	Resets all phrases.

Related Operations

Reset one/folder <Reset one/Reset folder>

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Edit phrase] ▶ select category ▶ select phrase and press .
- Submenu does not appear for folder not edited.
- 2 Select [Reset one]/[Reset folder].
- 3 Select [Yes].

Related Operations

Reset all phrases <Reset all>

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Edit phrase] ▶ .
- 2 Select [Yes].

Copy Text

Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text

Copy/cut a character string and paste it to a different location.

- Paste text onto the same screen or another text input screen. However, cannot paste to a screen in which Submenu is not displayed.
- Cut text is deleted from its original location.
- Cut/copy up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters at once.
- Only one character string can be copied/cut at a time. Copying/cutting again will replace the old text with the new text.

Copying/Cutting Text

Example: When copying/cutting text from text memo

1 In text input screen, move cursor to the first character to copy/cut.

2 Select copy/cut.

To copy	→ [Copy] →
To cut	Press for 1+ seconds ● From the menu, press , select [Cut] and press .

3 Move the cursor to the last character and press .

- Selected text to copy is highlighted. The highlighted text is copied or cut.
- Press for 1+ seconds to select all characters after character selected in step 1.
- Press for 1+ seconds to select all characters before character selected in step 1.

Copying the Contents of Mail, etc.

1 In received/sent message screen (P. 226), press ▶ [Move/Copy] ▶ [Copy].

- For unsent mail, select [Msg] in compose message screen and press to select [Copy]. Proceed to step 3.

2 Select an item to copy.

Item	Address*	Subject	Text
------	----------	---------	------

* The address is copied and operation ends.

3 Move the cursor to the first character to copy and press **⊙** (Start).

4 Move the cursor to the last character to copy and press **⊙** (Copy).

Pasting Text

Example: When pasting text into a new message

1 Open the text input screen to paste to and move the cursor to the paste location and press **⊗** for 1+ seconds.

- From the menu, press **⊕**, select [Paste], move the cursor to the paste location and press **⊙**.
- Character string in memory is inserted.

Note

- In fields that accept only single-byte characters such as the "Reading" field in the phonebook, only single-byte characters in memory are pasted. Depending on the location, only the allowed number of characters is pasted.
- Text stays in memory until new text is copied/cut or power is turned off.

Kuten Code Input

Inputting Kuten Code

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbol, and alphanumeric characters.

- Each kuten code corresponds to a specific character.
- Refer to "Kuten Code List" in PDF format in the accompanying CD-ROM for details on "Kuten Code List".

1 In text input screen, press **⊞** select [Kuten] from the switch input mode palette.

2 Enter four-digit kuten code.

- After the fourth digit is entered, the character appears.
- Before the fourth digit is entered, press **⊞** to clear the numbers when the wrong kuten code is entered. Re-enter correct code.

Register Words (User Dictionary)

Registering Frequently Used Words

Register up to 250 frequently used words with a short keyword (up to eight hiragana characters) for easy retrieval. When a keyword is entered and converted to kanji, the registered word appears in the candidate list and can be easily entered.

- The same keyword can be registered up to five words.

Registering a New Word

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [User dictionary].

- User dictionary list appears.
- Press **⊞** to switch between word and keyword lists.

2 Select [Save new].

3 Enter word and press **⊙**.

- Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters.
- Line breaks cannot be entered.

4 Enter keyword and press **⊙**.

- Enter up to eight hiragana characters.

Editing Registered Words

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [User dictionary] ▶ select word.

2 Edit word and press **⊙**.

3 Edit keyword and press **⊙** ▶ select a saving method.

Saving method	Save new*	Overwrite
---------------	-----------	-----------

* New word cannot be registered if the same keyword is registered five words.

- To not edit, press **⊙** and select a saving method.

Deleting Registered Words <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [User dictionary] ▶ select word and press **⊞** ▶ [Delete].

2 Select [Yes].

Clear Memory Terms

Resetting Memorized Conversion Candidates

All conversion candidates memorized through functions such as Quick conversion and Guess conversion can be reset.

- Pictograph and symbol conversion candidates are also reset.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Clear memory terms] ▶ enter terminal security code and press .

- 2 Select [Yes].

Download Dictionary

Using a Downloaded Dictionary

Save up to ten dictionaries for Japanese conversion downloaded from sites or Internet web pages on the FOMA terminal. Use five of these dictionaries for kanji conversion. When dictionaries for such as technical terms are downloaded, the terms in the dictionaries appear as the conversion candidates.

- User dictionary can be replaced with Downloaded dictionary.
- Refer to P. 194 for details on downloading dictionaries.

Setting/Clearing a Dictionary

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary].

- Registered dictionaries appear. Dictionaries currently in use appear with .

- 2 Select dictionary and set/clear.

To set/clear a dictionary	→ [Set dictionary]/[Clear dictionary] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If five dictionaries are already set, [5 dictionaries can be saved] appears. Clear dictionary currently in use and try again. ● If a set dictionary is selected, it is cleared.
To check dictionary information	→ [Properties] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Dictionary information (title, author, version, download date, and others) appears. Press or (Back) and the previous screen reappears.

Note

- Alternatively, press in text input screen, select [Chara entry/dict] → [Dwnld dictionary] to set/clear dictionary.

Checking Dictionary Contents

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary] ▶ select dictionary.

- Press (Detail) to show word details.
- Press to end checking.
- Press (Switch) to show a list of keywords. Press to switch between “word list” and “keyword list”.

Deleting a Dictionary <Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary] ▶ select dictionary and press ▶ [Delete].

- 2 Select deletion method ▶ [Yes].

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete all	[Delete all] → [Yes]

Note

- If a different FOMA card from when the dictionary was downloaded is inserted, a FOMA card restriction mark appears next to the dictionary. In such cases, dictionary contents cannot be checked, but can be deleted.

Replacing User Dictionary with Download Dictionary <Dwd Dictionary>

Replace the User dictionary with Download dictionary.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [User dictionary] ▶ ▶ [Dwd dictionary].

- 2 Select destination to save to.

- To overwrite a saved dictionary, select [Yes].
- In the Set dictionary confirmation screen, select [Yes] to set dictionary. If five dictionaries are already set, confirmation screen does not appear.

Note

- User dictionary is deleted when replaced with Download dictionary.

Related Operations

Edit title of dictionary replaced with download dictionary <Change name>

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary].
- 2 Select dictionary and press ▶ [Change name] ▶ edit title and press .


Edit contents of dictionary replaced with download dictionary <Edit dictionary>


- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary] ▶ select dictionary and press ▶ [Edit dictionary].
- 2 Select word.
 - To register a new word: Select [Save new].
- 3 Edit word and press ▶ edit keyword and press ▶ .

Guess Conversion

Selecting Conversion Method

Set to enable/disable Quick conversion and Guess conversion (☞ P. 420).

1 In text input screen, press  ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Guess conversion].


- When using Quick conversion, press  (Normal) when the cursor is in the conversion candidates field to temporarily cancel the use of Quick conversion.


2 Select [Quick conversion] ▶ [ON]/[OFF].

- For Guess conversion, select [Guess conversion] → [ON]/[OFF].

Setting the Priority for Conversion Candidates <1st Choice Genre>


Prioritize Celebrity, Station, Spot, Brand, and emoticons in the conversion candidate list.

1 In text input screen, press  ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Guess conversion].

- Alternatively, in text input screen, enter hiragana and press  (Priority).


2 Select [1st choice genre] ▶ select an item.

- indicates high priority and low priority.

3 Press  (Complete).

Including Emoticons as Conversion Candidates <With Emoticon Conv>


Set whether to include pictographs/emoticons in the conversion candidates list. If pictographs/emoticons are included, they appear as candidates of characters that may follow emotional adjectives such as “happy”.

1 In text input screen, press  ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Guess conversion].

2 Select [With emoticon conv] ▶ [ON]/[OFF].

Including Words Input with Hiragana as Conversion Candidates <Direct Conversion>

Set whether to include words input with hiragana as conversion candidates.

1 In text input screen, press  ▶ [Chara entry/dict].

2 Select [Direct conversion] ▶ [ON]/[OFF].


2-touch


2-touch Input Method Text Entry

Setting 2-touch Input

<Conversion Method>



Use 2-touch input to enter hiragana with two keys. This method is recommended for users accustomed to 2-touch character input.

1 In text input screen, press  ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Conversion method] ▶ [2-touch].





- 2-touch input continues until handset is returned to normal input ([5-touch]).
- Operation for inserting preset phrases is the same for 2-touch and 5-touch.
- Katakana/alphanumeric conversion is not available in 2-touch input.
- To return to 5-touch input, press  in text input screen and select [Chara entry/dict] → [Conversion method] → [5-touch].

Changing Input Mode

1 In text input screen, press  (Chara).

- Every time  is pressed, input modes cycle in the order of  (kuten code) → Full (double-byte upper case letters) → Half (single-byte upper case letters).

Note

- Switch upper/lower case while in single/double-byte mode.
After entering text, press  (Caps) to convert characters individually (☞ P. 421).
- After pressing  (Chara) once in the text input screen, pressing  will switch the input modes in the same order. Press  to switch in the reverse order.

Entering Text

In 2-touch input, enter two digits to specify a character.

1 In text input screen, enter two digits.

Example: To enter き ▶ press  .

- Refer to P. 474 for details on character assignments.

Network Services

- Using Voice Mail Service <Voice Mail Service>430
- Using Call Waiting <Call Waiting>432
- Using Call Forwarding Service <Call Forwarding Service>433
- Using Nuisance Call Barring Service <Nuisance Call Barring Service>435
- Using Caller ID Request Service <Caller ID Request Service>436
- Using Dual Network Service <Dual Network Service>437
- Switching Guidance Language <English Guidance>437
- Using Service Numbers <Service Number>438
- Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Call <Arrival Call Act>438
- Activating/Deactivating Arrival Actions <Set Arrival Act>439
- Setting Remote Control <Remote Control>439
- Using Multi Number <Multi Number>439
- Using 2in1 <2in1>440
- Using OFFICEED <OFFICEED>444
- Using Additional Services <Additional Services (USSD)>444

Connectable network services

- Use the following network services on the FOMA terminal.

Service name	Subscription	Monthly fee	Service name	Subscription	Monthly fee
Voice Mail Service	Necessary	Fees apply	Caller ID Request Service	Not necessary	Free
Call Waiting	Necessary	Fees apply	Dual Network Service	Necessary	Fees apply
Call Forwarding Service	Necessary	Free	English Guidance	Not necessary	Free
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Not necessary	Free	Multi Number	Necessary	Fees apply
Notify Caller ID Service	Not necessary	Free	2in1	Necessary	Fees apply
Public mode (Drive mode)	Not necessary	Free	OFFICEED	Necessary	Fees apply
Public mode (power off)	Not necessary	Free	Melody Call	Necessary	Fees apply

- “Deactivate” does not mean that the Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or other subscriptions are canceled.
- Network services are not available outside the service area or in a place with no signal.
- “OFFICEED” is a service that requires subscription. Refer to the NTT DoCoMo web page for corporations (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212>) for further information.
- Network services are operated by connecting to the network service center and are not available while handset is outside the service area (Public mode (Drive mode) can be set from outside the service area).
- Add services to the menu when new network services become available from DoCoMo (P. 444).
- This manual explains the outline of each network service based on the operation using the FOMA terminal menu. Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]” for details.
- For subscription and inquiries, contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.

Using Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail Service is a service for answering incoming voice/Videophone calls with Replay message and recording callers' messages when the handset is outside the service area or turned off, or when calls cannot be answered.

- If Record message (☎ P. 74) is also set, set ring time for Voice Mail Service shorter to prioritize answering duration for Record message.
- If a voice/Videophone call is not answered when Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate", the call is saved as "Missed calls" in "Received calls" and ☎ (missed call) appears in stand-by.

Note

- Record up to 20 messages respectively for voice and Videophone calls with 3 minutes of recording time per message. Messages are saved for up to 72 hours.
- Ring tone sounds for the set ringing time (can be changed: ☎ P. 430) when a call is received while **Voice Mail Service** is set to "Activate". Answering during the set ringing time connects call. Calls are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center after set time. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by and **Received calls**. However, when ringing time is set to [0 seconds], calls are not saved in Received calls.
- If a Videophone call is received when Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate", the call is connected to Voice Mail Service and recording message is activated after the set ringing time passes. Answering during the set ringing time connects call without connecting to Voice Mail Service.
- Make a voice call to **1412** to change the Videophone call settings of Voice Mail Service.
- When the call is connected to Voice Mail Service with Chara-den, the DTMF operations become unavailable. Switch the DTMF mode to [ON] from the Submenu (☎ P. 51).
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], select [Number A] or [Number B] to activate/deactivate Voice Mail Service, play messages or set Voice Mail Service.

Basic Flow of Voice Mail Service

- STEP 1 Activate Voice Mail Service.
 STEP 2 Voice/Videophone call is received.
 STEP 3 Call is connected to Voice Mail Service center if not answered.
 STEP 4 Caller records a message.
 STEP 5 Play back message.

Activating/Deactivating Voice Mail Service <Activate/Deactivate VoiceMail>

Activating Voice Mail Service

- 1 In stand-by, press [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Activate VoiceMail].**

- 2 Select activation method.**

To activate service	[Activate VoiceMail] → [Yes]
To set ringing time before activating	[Ring time+start] → enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) and press → [Yes]

- Alternatively, press in stand-by and select [Settings] → [NW Services] → [Voice Mail] → [Set ring time] to set the ringing time.

Note

- When the 2in1 is used, [Ring time+start] cannot be set with Number B. To set the Ringing time, press in stand-by and select [Settings] → [NW Services] → [Voice Mail] → [Set ring time].

Deactivating Voice Mail Service

- 1 In stand-by, press [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Deactivate VoiceMail] ▶ [Yes].**

Playing Back Messages <Play Messages>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Play Messages] ▶ [Yes].

2 Play back messages according to voice guidance.

Note

- When (voice mail) appears in stand-by, press , select (voice mail) and [Play messages?] appears. Select [Yes] to play back the messages.
- Number that appears is the number of new messages notified by guidance when playing back. Saved messages are not included.
- Videophone messages can be played back by making a Videophone call to **1417**.

Setting Voice Mail Service Using Voice Guidance <Voice Mail Setting>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Voice Mail setting] ▶ [Yes].

2 Press and set according to voice guidance.

To set message stating unavailability	
To confirm or set Reply message or announcement for name	
To confirm or set Caller ID guidance	

Checking for New Messages

<Check Messages>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Check messages].

- If there are new messages of voice call, (voice mail) appears in stand-by.
- When a Videophone message is received, an SMS informing that a new message is recorded is received.

Checking and Changing Voice Mail Service Settings <Status(Voice Mail)>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Status(Voice Mail)].

- Current settings appear.

Status(Voice Mail) 016	
Voice Mail:Inactive	
Ring time:15sec.	

When inactive

2 Press ▶ select a function.

To activate service	[start] → [Activate VoiceMail] → [Yes]
To set ringing time before activating	[start] → [Ring time+start] → enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) and press → [Yes]
To deactivate service	[Stop] → [Yes]
To change ringing time	[Change time] → enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) and press

Note

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode] or [B mode], select which settings of [Number A] or [Number B] to check.

Sounding Alarm When New Message Is Stored <Voice Mail Alarm>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Notification setting] ▶ [Voice Mail alarm] ▶ [ON].

- Voice mail alarm is set.

Deleting New Message Icon

<Delete Display>

Delete (voice mail) that appears when new message is received.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ select MENU (Custom menu) ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Notification setting] ▶ [Delete display] ▶ [Yes].

- (voice mail) disappears.
- Alternatively, press , select (voice mail) and press for 1+ seconds to delete (voice mail) displayed in stand-by.

Note

- If messages are still stored at Voice Mail Service center, even if (voice mail) disappears, these messages are not deleted. (voice mail) reappears when message is checked or new message is recorded.

Using Missed Call Notification Function

<Start/Stop Notification>

Receive SMS notifying missed calls received while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off.

- Missed calls are notified even if Reject all SMS is set.

■ Activating Missed call notification

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Notification] ▶ [Start notification].

2 Select whether to notify calls with no ID or not ▶ [Yes].

- Select [Yes] in the activate Missed call notification screen. The function is activated.

■ Deactivating Missed call notification

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Notification] ▶ [Stop notification] ▶ [Yes].

■ Checking Missed call notification settings

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ [Notification] ▶ [Status(Notification)].

- Current settings appear.

Call Waiting

Using Call Waiting

Call Waiting is a service for placing the current call on hold and answer a new incoming call when the handset beeps during a call to notify you of another call. In addition, place the current call on hold and make a new call.

- To use Call Waiting, set "Arrival call action" (P. 438) to [Answer] in advance. If set differently, answering a new incoming voice call during a voice call is not available even if Call Waiting is activated.
- Call Waiting cannot be set from outside the service area.

Note

- Videophone calls cannot be placed on hold to answer or place voice/Videophone calls.
- Voice calls cannot be placed on hold to answer or place incoming Videophone calls.

Activating/Deactivating Call Waiting

<Activate/Deactivate>

■ Activating Call Waiting

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Call waiting] ▶ [Activate] ▶ [Yes].

■ Deactivating Call Waiting

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Call waiting] ▶ [Deactivate] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Charges are incurred by caller when call is on hold.
- Placing current voice call on hold and making a voice call to another party is possible even when Call Waiting is deactivated.

■ Checking settings

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Call waiting] ▶ [Status request].


- Current settings appear.

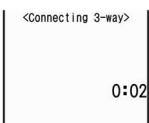
Status request	121
Call waiting : Active	

When active



Placing current call on hold and answer a voice call

1 When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press .


- Original call is automatically placed on hold and incoming call is connected.
- Press  to switch between callers.



2 Press when finished.

- Press  to reconnect original call.
- To end the call on hold
- Press  and select [Disconnect].

Note

- When a Videophone call is received during a voice call or when a voice/Videophone call is received during a Videophone call, in-call ring tone is not heard and the incoming call cannot be answered.  (missed call) appears when a voice/Videophone call is ended and returned to stand-by.

Disconnecting current call and answer a voice call

1 When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press .

- Ring tone for incoming call sounds.

2 Press .


- Incoming call is connected.

Placing current call on hold and place a separate call

1 Dial other party's phone number during a call.


- Alternatively, select the number from phonebook, Received calls, or Redial.

2 Press .

- Speak to the new party.
- Original call is automatically placed on hold.
- Press  to switch between calls.





3 Press when finished with the new call.

- New call is disconnected.
- Press  to reconnect original call.


Call Forwarding Service

Using Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service is a service for forwarding voice/Videophone calls to designated phone numbers when the handset is outside the service area or turned off, or when calls are not answered within set ringing time.

- To prioritize Call Forwarding Service when Record message ( P. 74) is also set, set the ringing time for Call Forwarding Service shorter than the answering duration for Record message.
- If a voice/Videophone call is not answered when Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the call is saved as "Missed call" in "Received calls" and  (missed call) appears in stand-by.

Note

- For **Videophone** calls, the forwarding guidance is not played. The caller sees a message that the call is being forwarded.
- Ring tone sounds for the set ringing time (can be changed:  P. 434) when Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate". Answering during the set ringing time connects call. Calls are automatically forwarded to the set destination after set time passes. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by and saved in **Received calls**. However, calls are not saved in Received calls if ringing time is set to [0 seconds].
- Collect calls (receiver accepts charges) are not connected when Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate".
- Calls received while engaged in a call can be automatically forwarded.
- Call Forwarding is automatically deactivated if **Voice Mail Service** is set to "Activate".
- Setting Call Forwarding Service from FOMA terminal is not available from outside the service area. In such cases, access Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone landline phones and payphones using **network security code**. **Remote control** must be set in advance.
- When the **2in1** mode is set to [Dual mode], select [Number A] or [Number B] to activate/deactivate Call Forwarding Service.

Basic Flow of Call Forwarding Service

- STEP 1 Register forwarding destination.
STEP 2 Activate Call Forwarding Service.
STEP 3 Voice/Videophone call is received.
STEP 4 Call is automatically forwarded to the destination if not answered.

Activating/Deactivating Call Forwarding Service <Activate/Deactivate>

■ Activating Call Forwarding Service

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[Call forwarding]** ▶ **[Activate]**.

2 Select **[Forwarding number]** ▶ select input method.

To input directly	[Direct input] → enter phone number and press [OK]
To enter from phonebook	[From phonebook] → select name → [OK]

3 Select **[Set ring time]** ▶ enter ringing time (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) and press **[OK]**.

4 Select **[Activate]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

Note

- Calls are automatically forwarded without sounding ring tone while the handset is outside the service area, in **Self mode** or turned off.
- Answer while ring tone is ringing to connect call.
- When the **2in1** is used, Forwarding number or Ring time cannot be set with Number B.

■ Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[Call forwarding]** ▶ **[Deactivate]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

■ Forwarding voice calls received during voice calls

1 While the handset beeps during a call, press **[Forward calls]**.

- Received call is forwarded to set destination.

■ Forwarding calls while ring tone is sounding

1 While ring tone is sounding, press **[Forward calls]**.

- Received call is forwarded to set destination.

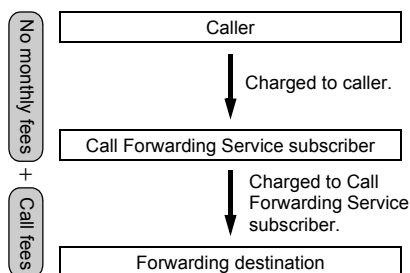
■ Setting Call Forwarding guidance

1 In stand-by, press **[1]** **[4]** **[2]** **[9]** ▶ **[OK]**.

- Set according to voice guidance.

■ Call Forwarding Service fees

■ Call fees

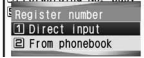


※ Operations for setting destination, activating and deactivating are not charged.

Changing Forwarding Destination

<Register Number>

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[NW Services]** **[Call forwarding]** **[Register number]** select input method.



To input directly	[Direct input] → enter phone number and press [Direct input]
To enter from phonebook	[From phonebook] → select name → [Direct input]

- Select an item.

Item	Change number	Change+activate
------	---------------	-----------------

Note

- When the **2in1** is used, [Change+activate] cannot be selected with Number B.

Using Voice Mail Service When Forwarding Destination Is Busy

<Forwarding No. Busy>

- Subscription for Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply) is required.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[NW Services]** **[Call forwarding]** **[Forwarding No. busy]** **[Yes]**.

Checking Call Forwarding Service Settings <Status Request>

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[NW Services]** **[Call forwarding]** **[Status request]**.
 - Current settings appear.

Note

- When the **2in1** mode is set to [Dual mode] or [B mode], select which settings of [Number A] or [Number B] to check.

Nuisance Call Barring Service

Using Nuisance Call Barring Service

Register phone numbers for “nuisance calls” such as prank calls. When numbers are registered for the Nuisance Call Barring Service, calls are automatically rejected and a guidance answers them.

- A ring tone does not sound when calls are received from registered numbers. In addition, the calls are not saved in Received calls.

Note

- Reject callers with no ID.
- International calls may not be rejected.

Barring Last Caller <Register Caller>

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[NW Services]** **[Bar nuisance calls]** **[Register caller]** **[Yes]**.

Registering Selected Numbers for Nuisance Call Barring Service

<Register Selected No>

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[NW Services]** **[Bar nuisance calls]** **[Register selected No]** select a saving method.

Saving method	Received calls	Phonebook
	Redial	Direct input

- Select a phone number **[Yes]**.

- For direct input, enter a phone number and select [Yes].
- If 30 phone numbers are already registered, [Exceeds limit. Delete oldest entry and save new one?] appears. Select [Yes] to overwrite.

Deleting All Saved Numbers

<Delete All Entries>

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[Bar nuisance calls]** ▶ **[Delete all entries]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

Deleting last saved number

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[Bar nuisance calls]** ▶ **[Delete last entry]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

- The last saved number is deleted. Repeat this operation to delete numbers individually from the last saved number.

Confirming Total Numbers Set

<Check No of Entries>

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[Bar nuisance calls]** ▶ **[Check No of entries]**.

- The number of saved entries appears.

Note

- Use Delete all entries or Delete last entry to delete phone numbers. Deleting only specified numbers cannot be performed.

When other services are active

The following actions are taken when various services are activated.

- When a PushTalk call is received from a number registered to the Nuisance Call Barring Service, a guidance message is not played to the other party and the call is disconnected.

Service	Response
Voice Mail Service	Rejection message is played. Message is not recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Rejection message is played. Call is not forwarded.
Call Waiting	Rejection message is played.
Caller ID Request Service	Rejection message is played.

Caller ID Request Service

Using Caller ID Request Service

Caller ID Request Service is a service for playing Caller ID Request for voice/ Videophone calls without caller ID and disconnecting the calls automatically.

- When calls are not received with the Caller ID Request Service, the calls are not saved in "Received calls" and **☎** (missed call) does not appear.
- When PushTalk is received without caller ID, a message is not played and the call is disconnected.

When other services are active

The following actions are taken when Caller ID Request Service is set to "Activate" along with the various services.

Service	Response
Voice Mail Service	Caller ID request message is played. Message is not recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Caller ID request message is played. Call is not forwarded.
Call Waiting	Caller ID request message is played.
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Rejection message is played when called by a rejected nuisance number.

Activating Caller ID Request Service

<Activate>

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[Caller ID request]** ▶ **[Activate]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

Deactivating Caller ID Request Service

<Deactivate>

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[Caller ID request]** ▶ **[Deactivate]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

Checking Settings <Status Request>

- In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[Caller ID request]** ▶ **[Status request]**.

- Current settings appear.

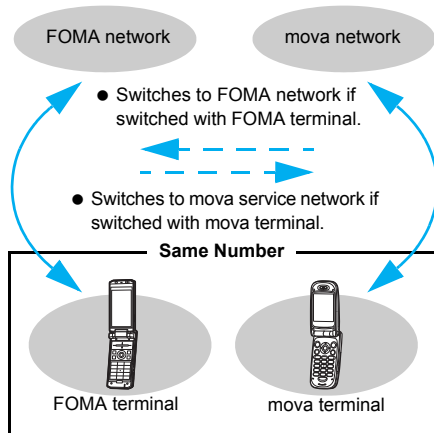
Dual Network Service

Using Dual Network Service

A mova terminal is available with a phone number registered for the FOMA terminal. FOMA and mova can be switched depending on service area.

- FOMA and mova terminals cannot be used simultaneously.
- Enter the four-digit number for the network security code (P. 142).

Switching Dual Network Service



- Certain services are restricted.
- FOMA and mova cannot be used simultaneously.
- Switch using unavailable terminals for the Dual Network Service.

Switching to FOMA Network <Switching>

Switch handset to FOMA network.

- 1** In stand-by, press **⓪** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Other NW Services]** ▶ **[Dual network]** ▶ **[Switching]**.

- Network security code entry screen appears.

- 2** Enter network security code and press **⓪** ▶ **[Yes]**.

- Network is switched.

Note

- Check signal status before switching. **Y** indicates signal strength, not availability of network service.

Checking Settings <Status Request>

- 1** In stand-by, press **⓪** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Other NW Services]** ▶ **[Dual network]** ▶ **[Status request]**.

- Current settings appear.

English Guidance

Switching Guidance Language

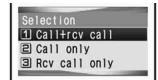
Change into English the guidance language for network service settings such as “Voice Mail Service” and the voice guidance notifying that the handset is outside the service area.

- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- If caller subscribes to this service, caller's settings are prioritized.

Available guidances

	Menu item	Details
Outgoing (Played when setting network services)	Japanese	All guidances are in Japanese.
	English	All guidances are in English.
Incoming (Played when called)	Japanese	All guidances are in Japanese.
	Japanese+ English	English guidance follows Japanese guidance.
	English+ Japanese	Japanese guidance follows English guidance.

- 1** In stand-by, press **⓪** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Other NW Services]** ▶ **[English guidance]** ▶ **[Guidance setting]** ▶ select Guidance type.



- 2** Select language.

Checking Settings <Status Request>

- In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [English guidance] ▶ [Status request].

- Current settings appear.



Service Number

Using Service Numbers

Call can be made to Repair inquiries and General inquiries.

- Items may appear differently or may not appear depending on the FOMA card to be used.

- In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Service number] ▶ select an item.

ドコモ故障問合せ (Repair inquiries)	Call can be made to Repair inquiries.
ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General inquiries)	Call can be made to General inquiries.

- Select [Yes].

Note

- Before calling to Repair inquiries, refer to “Troubleshooting” (☎ P. 482 to P. 484) and check by yourself.
- “ドコモ故障問合せ” (Repair inquiries), “ドコモ総合案内・受付” (General inquiries), etc. may not appear depending on the FOMA card used. When not displayed, save numbers of “General Inquiries”, “Repairs”, etc. on the back of this manual.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], select [Number A]/[Number B] in the selection screen before calling.

Arrival Call Act

Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Call

Select actions for voice calls received during a voice call if “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Forwarding Service”, or “Call Waiting” is subscribed.

- If “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Forwarding Service”, or “Call Waiting” is not subscribed, calls cannot be answered during a call.
- Set arrival actions to “Activate” to use Arrival call action.

Available actions

Voice Mail	Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center. Messages are stored regardless of Voice Mail Service settings.
Call forwarding	Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded to Call Forwarding Service center. Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded regardless of Call Forwarding Service settings.
Call Rejection	Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically rejected.
Answer	Follows Call Waiting settings if set to “Activate”. If set to “Deactivate”, one of the following applies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disconnect current call and answer incoming call. Manually connect incoming calls to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or reject. Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service settings are used if set to “Activate”.

- To use Call Waiting, set Arrival call act to [Answer].
- No matter the Arrival call action setting, if a call is received while engaged in another call, it is saved in Received calls.

- In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [In-call arrival act] ▶ [Arrival Call Act] ▶ select an arrival action.


Set Arrival Act

Activating/Deactivating Arrival Actions


Set arrival actions to “Activate” to receive another voice call according to Arrival call act (☎ P. 438) during a call.

- Cannot be set from outside the service area.

Activating Arrival Actions <Activate>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [In-call arrival act] ▶ [Set arrival act] ▶ [Activate] ▶ [Yes].

Deactivating Arrival Actions <Deactivate>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [In-call arrival act] ▶ [Set arrival act] ▶ [Deactivate] ▶ [Yes].

Checking Settings <Status Request>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [In-call arrival act] ▶ [Set arrival act] ▶ [Status request].
 - Current settings appear.

Remote Control

Setting Remote Control

Set “Voice Mail Service” or “Call Forwarding Service” remotely from touch-tone landline phones, payphones and DoCoMo mobile phones.

- Remote control is also available from outside the FOMA service area.
- To perform remote operations, set Remote control to “Activate” in advance.
- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- To use network service overseas, set Remote control to “Activate”.


Activating Remote Control <Activate>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Remote control] ▶ [Activate] ▶ [Yes].

Deactivating Remote Control <Deactivate>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Remote control] ▶ [Deactivate] ▶ [Yes].

Checking Settings <Status Request>

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Remote control] ▶ [Status request].
 - Current settings appear.

Accessing network services from other phones

- For details on operating Network services from a payphone and others: “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]”.

Multi Number

Using Multi Number


Multi Number is a service for using up to two phone numbers, Additional Number1 and Additional Number2, besides Basic Number on the FOMA terminal.

- Set a name and ring tone (☎ P. 120) for each number.
- Multi Number settings (name, phone number, etc.) registered in the FOMA terminal may be deleted when a FOMA card is removed or replaced. In such cases, register again.
- A registered name appears according to each Multi Number (Basic Number/Additional Number1/ Additional Number2) on the screen when a call is being made/received.
- When making a call from Redial or Received calls, the previously used Multi Number is displayed and dialed.

Registering Multi Number

<Number Setting>

- “Basic Number” cannot be deleted.
- The registered name appears in the Multi Number selection screen when calling or incoming call screen.

- 1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Multi number] ▶ [Number setting] ▶ select number to register to.

- 2 Enter name and press .

- Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

- 3 Enter phone number and press .

- Enter up to 26 digits for phone number. P cannot be entered.

- 4 Select ring tone and press  (OK).

- Refer to P. 120 for details on setting the ring tone.

Calling from the selected phone number

- 1 In stand-by, enter a phone number.
 - To make a call from phonebook, in stand-by, press and select a name.
- 2 Press ▶ [Sel Multi number].
 - Dial input is not available after Multi Number is selected.
- 3 Select a phone number.
- 4 Press .
 - Call is placed from the phone number selected.

Note

- To select a number from **Received calls** or **Redial**, select a person to call to display the details screen and perform steps 2 to 4.
- When the **2in1** is used, Multi Number cannot be selected.
- Alternatively, enter ***590#**, ***591#**, ***592#** at the end of a phone number and make a call for Multi Number. Adding ***590#** selects “Basic Number”, ***591#** selects the “Additional Number1”, and the ***592#** selects the “Additional Number2”. In that case, a phone number selected as a calling number for Multi Number in the [Sel Multi number] of the Submenu is prioritized to make a call.

Setting the Phone Number to Use When Calling <Set Multi Number>

- Use the set phone number to call all destinations.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Multi number] ▶ [Set multi number].
- 2 Select the phone number to use ▶ [Yes].
 - The set phone number is available for outgoing calls.

Checking the Multi Number Setting <Status Request>

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Multi number] ▶ [Status request].
 - Current settings appear.

Editing Multi Number

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Multi number] ▶ [Number setting].
- 2 Select number ▶ [Edit].
 - Editing procedures are the same as when registering.

Deleting Multi Number

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Multi number] ▶ [Number setting].
- 2 Select number ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

2in1

Using 2in1

2in1 is a service that two phone numbers and two mail addresses can be used on one mobile phone with dedicated mode function as if two different mobile phones are used.

A mode	Available operations are calling from your phone number (Number A), sending/receiving i-mode mail (Address A) and viewing related information.
B mode	Available operations are calling from the 2in1 phone number (Number B), accessing to sites for which WEB mail (Address B) can be used and viewing related information.
Dual mode	Available operations are those of both the A and B modes.

- Use Address B to exchange mail at the dedicated WEB mail site.
- Packet transmission is available even in B mode if i-mode is subscribed.
- Refer to P. 443 for details on using functions in each mode.
- When a call/transmission is made from an external device with 64K data communication, Number A is used when 2in1 is set to [A mode]/[Dual mode]. Number B is used when 2in1 is set to [B mode].
- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [2in1]” for details on 2in1.

Using 2in1 <2in1 Setting>

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[2in1 setting]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

- When the 2in1 has been already used, the menu screen for the 2in1 settings appears.



2 Select **[Yes]**.

Calling from the selected phone number

Use this function only when Mode switching is set to [Dual mode].

1 In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press **☎** ▶ **[Select 2in1]**.

- To make a call from phonebook, in stand-by, press **☎**, select a name, press **☎** and select [Select 2in1].

2 Select **[Number A]/[Number B]** ▶ **☎**.

- Call is placed from the phone number selected.

Note

- To make a call from Received calls or Redial, use the phone number that is received or dialed. To select a number to call, select the other party to view details screen, press **☎**, select [Select 2in1] and perform step 2.
- When using the FOMA terminal overseas, calling is not available from Number B.

Switching Modes <Mode Switching>

Switch modes when the 2in1 is used.

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[2in1 setting]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **⊙** ▶ **[Mode switching]**.

- Alternatively, press **Ⓜ** for 1+ seconds in stand-by, enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

2 Select a mode.

Mode	A mode	Dual mode
	B mode	

- The mode being used cannot be selected.

Setting the Mode to Be Registered in the Phonebook <Phonebook 2in1 Set>

When the 2in1 is used, available phonebook is automatically switched depending on the mode of the 2in1. In the mode of 2in1 when entries are saved to a phonebook, the Phonebook 2in1 setting is saved (☎ P. 101) and can be changed in the following way.

- Refer to P. 443 for details on displayed phonebooks.

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[2in1 setting]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

2 Select **[Phonebook 2in1 set]** ▶ select a setting method.

To set entries collectively	[Selection setting] → select name (repeatable) → ☎ ● Press ☎ (SelAll)/ ☎ (ClrAll) to select/clear all.
To set all in a selected group	[Collective grp set] → select group
To set all	[Set to all]

3 Select a Phonebook 2in1 set to register.

Phonebook 2in1 set	A	Common
	B	

- If [B] is set, a message stating that PushTalk transmission cannot be sent appears when a phone number is saved in PushTalk phonebook. Select [Yes] and Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B].

Setting the Stand-by Display for Each Mode <Stand-by Display>

Set the stand-by displays of [Dual mode] and [B mode].

- Use JPEG/GIF images, animated GIF, and Flash movies in My picture of Data box. Movies/i-motion and i-αppli are not available.
- For the stand-by display of [A mode], the image set as stand-by (☎ P. 128) appears.

1 In stand-by, press **⊙** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[NW Services]** ▶ **[2in1 setting]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

2 Select **[Stand-by display]** ▶ select an item.

Item	Dual mode	B mode
------	-----------	--------

3 Select **[Set]** ▶ select a folder ▶ select an image and press **☎** ▶ **[Yes]**.

- Refer to P. 128 for details on setting the image.
- When the stand-by is disabled, select [Release] → [Yes]. The default settings are restored.

Note

- Even if **i-appli stand-by** is set when the mode of 2in1 is set to [B mode] or [Dual mode], it cannot be set to the stand-by display of [B mode] or [Dual mode]. It is set to the stand-by display of [A mode].

Setting the Color Scheme of Call/Receive Display of Number B

<Disp. Call/Rcv No.>

In order to differentiate the calling/receiving of Number B, the phone number, the name saved in a phonebook or the reason of non-disclosure can be displayed in gray on the call/receive screen or voice call screen regardless of Color theme setting.

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[NW Services]** **[2in1 setting]** enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

2 Select **[Set call/receive No.]** **[Disp. Call/Rcv No.]** **[ID display ON]**.

Changing the Ring Tone of Number B

<Number B Ring Tone>

Set the ring tone for when a call is received with Number B or mail is received with Address B.

- Use melodies, movies/i-motion and Chaku-uta full® of Data box.

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[NW Services]** **[2in1 setting]** enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

2 Select **[Set call/receive No.]** **[Number B Ring tone]** select an item to be set.

Item	Phone ring tone	Mail ring tone
	V.phone ring tone	SMS ring tone

3 Select **[Settings]** refer to step 2 on P. 120 and select a ring tone.

- To disable, select **[Release]** → **[Yes]**.

Note

- For User unset calls, the normal **Select ring tone** is followed regardless of Number B Ring tone.

Deactivating 2in1 <2in1 Function OFF>

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[NW Services]** **[2in1 setting]** enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

2 Select **[2in1 function OFF]** **[Yes]**.

Note

- When “Change for Number B of 2in1” or “FOMA card exchange (2in1 subscriber → 2in1 subscriber)” is performed while the 2in1 is used, set 2in1 function OFF once and then set the **2in1 setting** to ON again to receive the correct Number B. Also, when “FOMA card exchange (2in1 subscriber → 2in1 nonsubscriber)” is performed, set 2in1 function OFF to update the correct owner information.

Restricting Calls <Receive Avoidance>

Restrict calls of Number A and Number B. In conjunction with the mode of 2in1, set to accept only calls of Number A in A mode and only calls of Number B in B mode, and calls of both Number A and B in Dual mode. Also, set Receive avoidance from abroad.

1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[NW Services]** **[2in1 setting]** enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

2 Select **[Receive avoidance]** set receive avoidance.

To restrict calls of Number A and Number B	[Change rcv. avoid.] → select [Receive (Number A)]/[Receive (Number B)] → [Avoid]/[Receive]/[Unchange] → [F] (Complete) → [Agree]
To check settings	[Check rcv. avoid.] → [Yes] → [Agree]
To activate/deactivate Mode link	[Mode link setting] → [Yes] → [Agree]
To set Receive avoidance from abroad	[Rcv. avoid. (abroad)] → [Yes] → operate according to voice guidance

Using Functions in Each Mode

The following functions operate differently depending on the mode used (Functions that operate in the same way as A mode are excluded).

	Service	A mode	B mode	Dual mode
Voice/ Videophone call	Making a call	Number A	Number B	Selectable when making a call ¹
	Receiving a call	All (Can be restricted with Receive avoidance) ^{2, 3, 4}		
Phonebook ⁵	Display	[A] and [Common]	[B] and [Common]	All
	Converting a name ⁶	[A] and [Common]	[B] and [Common]	All
	Phonebook 2in1 setting when saving a new entry	[A]	[B]	[A]
	Receiving all entries from Ir exchange/C transmission	Copy the Phonebook 2in1 setting of the sender ⁷		
	Receiving one entry from Ir exchange/C transmission	[A]	[B]	[A]
	Copy to microSD Memory Card	Copy all entries/single entry/selected entries/entries in a group: Only [Common] for the Phonebook 2in1 setting.		
	Copy from FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card	Only [Common] for the Phonebook 2in1 setting		
Copy from FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset	[A]	[B]	[A]	
Redial	Display	Number A outgoing call	Number B outgoing call	All outgoing call
Received calls	Display	Number A incoming call	Number B incoming call	All incoming call
Mail/SMS	Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail sent or received with Address A. SMS sent or received with Number A. 	FOMA terminal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail that is received with Address B and saved in the FOMA terminal (mail for which [端末に保存] (Save to handset) is selected on the WEB mail site). Also displays a new mail notice and alarm notice. SMS received with Number B. WEB mail site <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail sent or received with Address B. 	FOMA terminal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail sent or received with Address A and mail that is received with Address B and saved in the FOMA terminal. Also displays a new mail notice and alarm notice. SMS sent or received with Number A. WEB mail site <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SMS received with Number B. Mail sent or received with Address B.
	Send	FOMA terminal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail from Address A. SMS from Number A. 	FOMA terminal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail/SMS cannot be sent. WEB mail site <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail from Address B. 	FOMA terminal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail from Address A.⁸ SMS from Number A. WEB mail site <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail from Address B.
	Receive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Receives mail that is addressed to Address A/SMS that is addressed to Number A (The terminal rings). Receives mail, a new mail notice and alarm notice that is addressed to Address B and saved in the FOMA terminal. Also receives SMS that is addressed to Number B (The terminal does not ring). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Receives mail that is addressed to Address A/ SMS that is addressed to Number A (The terminal does not ring). Receives mail, a new mail notice and alarm notice that is addressed to Address B and saved in the FOMA terminal. Also receives SMS that is addressed to Number B (The terminal rings). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Receives mail that is addressed to Address A/SMS that is addressed to Number A (The terminal rings). Receives mail, a new mail notice and alarm notice that is addressed to Address B and saved in the FOMA terminal. Also receives SMS that is addressed to Number B (The terminal rings).
	Receiving all entries from Ir exchange/C transmission	Copy the status of the sender ⁹		
	Receiving one entry from Ir exchange/C transmission	A		
	Copy to microSD Memory Card	Copy all entries/single entry/selected entries/all entries in a folder: Only A		
	FOMA card (SMS only)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When copied from the FOMA terminal handset to the FOMA card: Only A. When copied from the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal handset: Only A. 		

Service	A mode	B mode	Dual mode
PushTalk	Send	Number A	Number A
	Receive	Available with Number A	
	PushTalk phonebook	Can be displayed	Cannot be displayed
i-αppli	All available	Partially available ^{*10}	Partially available ^{*11}
Own number	Number A and Address A	Number B and Address B	Number A and Address A/ Number B and Address B

- *1 At default, calls are made from Number A when the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [A] and [Common] is used. Calls are made from Number B when the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B].
- *2 In the setting of Accept calls, phone numbers of the phonebook, which is displayed in the used mode, are received (phone numbers of the phonebook saved in other modes and not displayed are rejected).
- *3 In the setting of Reject calls, phone numbers of the phonebook, which is displayed in the used mode, are rejected (phone numbers of the phonebook saved in other modes and not displayed are received).
- *4 In the setting of Reject unknown, phone numbers of the phonebook other than the one, which is displayed in the used mode, are rejected (phone numbers of the phonebook saved in other modes and not displayed are rejected).
- *5 Set secret is available regardless of the Phonebook 2in1 set.
- *6 This is a function that compares the items (caller's/receiver's number (voice/Videophone call), sender's/receiver's number (SMS), sender's/receiver's address (Mail)) with the phonebook in which the items are saved, and converts the items to the name of the phonebook and displays the names.
- *7 [A] in Phonebook 2in1 set is made valid if the sender's terminal does not support the 2in1 setting.
- *8 In Dual mode, a destination address for new mail can be selected from the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B]. However, the new mail is sent from Address A.
- *9 A is made valid if the sender's terminal does not support the 2in1 setting.
- *10 Message applications, mail applications and applications set to the stand-by are excluded.
- *11 Applications set to the stand-by are excluded.

OFFICEED

Using OFFICEED

“OFFICEED” is the in-group flat-rate service offered with a specified IMCS (Inbuilding Mobile Communication System). Using this service requires a separate subscription. Refer to the NTT DoCoMo web page for corporations (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>) for further information.

※ OFFICEED is only available in Japanese.

Additional Services (USSD)

Using Additional Services

Save and use new DoCoMo network services when they are added.

- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- Save these new service special numbers or codes in the FOMA terminal.
- When there is a service code, it is saved as a “USSD” on the FOMA terminal.

Saving Services <USSD>

- Save up to ten new DoCoMo network services.

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Additional service] ▶ [USSD].
- 2 Select a number to save and press ▶ [Edit] ▶ enter service name and press .
 - Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- 3 Enter special number/service code for the service to add and press .

Using Saved Services

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Additional service] ▶ [USSD].

- 2 Select service.

Deleting Registered Services

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Additional service] ▶ [USSD].
- 2 Select service and press ▶ select deletion method.

To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete all	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

Changing Receive Display for Saved Service <Reply Message>

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Additional service] ▶ [Reply message].
- 2 Select Receive display and press ▶ edit.

To edit	[Edit] → enter receive display name and press → enter special number or service code and press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a receive display name.
To delete one	[Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete all	[Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press → [Yes]

PC Connection Setting

● Data Communication	446
● Before Use	447
● General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication	448
● AT Commands	448
● CD-ROM	448
● DoCoMo Keitai Datalink	448

Refer to “Manual for PC connection setting” in PDF format in the accompanying CD-ROM* for details on data communication. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view “Manual for PC connection setting” in PDF format. Install it from the accompanying CD-ROM to your personal computer if not installed.
Refer to Adobe Reader Help for details on how to use the software.

* Place the accompanying CD-ROM in the PC and the initial screen appears. Click [取扱説明書] (User's Manual) → [パソコン接続マニュアル (PDFファイル)] (Manual for PC connection setting (PDF file)). If the initial screen does not appear, click [マイコンピュータ] (My Computer), select and right-click [FOMA_SH905i], click [エクスプローラ] (Explorer), double-click [manual] and double-click [SH905i_E_Manual.pdf].

Data Communication

Data Communication Available from the FOMA Terminal

FOMA terminal communication formats fall into three categories: packet transmission, 64K data communication and data transfer.

- The FOMA terminal does not support fax transmissions.
- The FOMA terminal supports data communication with musea, sigmarion II and sigmarion III. However, the data is sent/received at the maximum speed of 384 kbps. HIGH-SPEED communication for FOMA HIGH-SPEED area is not supported. Update musea and sigmarion II before using. Refer to the DoCoMo web page for details on how to update.
- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
- Unable to use 64K data communication overseas.

Packet transmission

Charges incurred are based on the amount of data sent and received. When you are only connected to the network and are not sending or receiving data, no communication charges are incurred. Remain connected to the network, with no charge, and only send or receive data when necessary. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA packet transmission, such as the DoCoMo Internet connection services “mopera U” and “mopera”, and sends and receives data at speeds up to 384 kbps and 3.6 Mbps respectively (A best-effort connection is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions).

For packet transmission, connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings. Best suited for when sending and receiving mail text data or other relatively small amounts of data at high speeds. Note that sending or receiving large files will lead to higher transmission charges.

Making voice calls while performing packet transmissions with a PC or other devices is possible (☎ P. 396).

- The data is sent/received at the maximum speed of 384 kbps outside the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.

64K data communications

Charges incurred are based on the connection time. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA 64K data communications, such as the DoCoMo Internet communication services “mopera U” and “mopera”, or a synchronous ISDN 64K access point. Connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings to use 64K data communications. Best suited for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data, such as downloading Data box contents.

Note that long-time communication leads to higher transmission charges.

Data transfer

Transfer or exchange data using a FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) or Ir exchange without charges. Send or receive data such as phonebook entries, sent/received messages, and bookmarks.

Use infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to another FOMA terminal or mobile phone. Use either the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 or infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC.

Things to Keep in Mind

Internet service provider fees

When using the Internet, usage fees are charged by the Internet service provider. These usage fees, paid to the Internet service provider, are separate from the FOMA service fee. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about usage fees.

Use the DoCoMo Internet connection services “mopera U” and “mopera”. Subscription to “mopera U” requires a charge. To use “mopera”, subscription and monthly charge are not required, although the maximum communication speed of sending/receiving data is limited to 384 kbps.

Host (Internet service provider, etc.) settings

Hosts for packet transmission and 64K data communications differ. For packet transmission, use a host that supports FOMA packet transmission, and for 64K data communications, use a host that supports FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is not possible.
- Connecting to PHS 64K/32K data communication data access points (such as PIAFS) is not possible.

User authentication

Depending on the host, user authentication (ID and password) may be necessary when connecting. In such cases, enter your ID and password using communication software (dial-up network) to connect. Your ID and password are provided by your host Internet service provider or host network administrator. Contact your host Internet service provider or host network administrator for more information.

Packet transmission and 64K data communications conditions

The following conditions are necessary for data transmission (packet transmission/64K data communication) using the FOMA terminal in Japan.

- The PC must support the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01.
- Must be within the FOMA service area.
- For packet transmission, the access point must be compatible with FOMA packet transmission.
- For 64K data communications, the host must support FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communications.

However, even if above conditions are met, communication may not be possible due to a busy base station or poor signal conditions.

Note

- When performing packet transmission, the device connected to your FOMA terminal must be a JATE (Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Equipment) authorized product.

Before Use

Confirming the Operating Environment

The following lists the operating requirements for using data communications.

Item	System requirements	
	FOMA communication setting file FOMA PC Setup Software	FirstPass PC Software
PC	PC/AT compatible A USB port (USB specification 1.1/2.0-compliant) is required	PC/AT compatible
OS	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista (all Japanese versions)	
Required memory*	Windows 2000: At least 64 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB Windows Vista: At least 512 MB	Windows 2000: At least 32 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB Windows Vista: At least 512 MB
Hard disk*	At least 5 MB free space	At least 10 MB free space
Browser	—	Windows 2000, Windows XP: Internet Explorer 6.0 and above Windows Vista: Internet Explorer 7.0

- * Required memory and hard disk are for the "FOMA PC Setup Software" and "FirstPass PC Software" operating environment. May differ depending on the PC system configuration.
- The operation in an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.
 - Depending on the operating environment, use of the software may not be possible. DoCoMo holds no responsibility for responding to inquiries or guaranteeing operation in environments other than those specified above.

Required Equipment

The following hardware and software are required besides the FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- CD-ROM "FOMA SH905i CD-ROM" (accessory)

Note

- Use a dedicated USB cable "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01" or "FOMA USB cable". USB cables for PC are not available since the connector shape is different.
- The explanations in this manual are based on the case of "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01".
- Use of USB HUB may not work correctly.

Data communication terminology

APN (Access Point Name)

A character string used by Internet service providers and corporate LANs for identification purposes. The APN of the DoCoMo Internet connection service mopera U is **mopera.net** and mopera is **mopera.ne.jp**.

cid (Context Identifier)

Registration number assigned when an APN is registered to the FOMA terminal. On the FOMA terminal, numbers 1 to 10 can be used.

DNS (Domain Name System)

System that converts domain names (for example, **nttdocomo.co.jp**) into IP addresses used on the PC.

HSDPA

The abbreviation of High Speed of Downlink Packet Access, which is a standard that increased the speed of data communication of the third generation (3G) mobile telecommunication systems "W-CDMA".

IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

Organization that establishes the standard for infrared exchange.

IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)

Standard created for the purpose of transferring data between mobile phones or PDAs (Personal Digital Assistants).

Exchange phone numbers and schedules between mobile phones or PDAs with IrMC-compliant infrared terminals.

OBEX (Object Exchange)

One of the international data communication standards. Enables sending and receiving data between OBEX-compatible devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)

Service quality. Technology for using lines as the user intends, during communication. Set communication speed for connection, etc. on the FOMA terminal.

W-CDMA

One of the third-generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000) recognized as a global standard. The FOMA terminal is compliant with the W-CDMA standard.

Transmission setting optimization

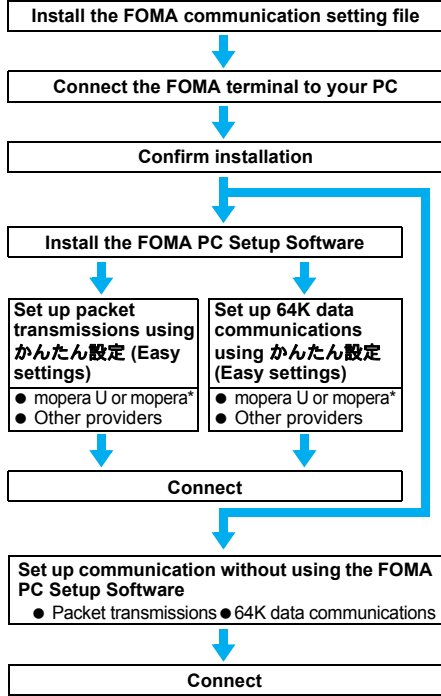
A TCP parameter for maximizing TCP/IP transfer capabilities when using packet transmission on the FOMA network. Use this communication setting to maximize the communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

Users with PC administrator rights

Authority that makes access to all OS systems possible. On a single PC, at least one person is set as a user with PC administrator rights. Normally, users without PC administrator rights cannot install or uninstall drivers or software.

General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication

This section describes the preparation required to connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, and use packet transmission and 64K data communications. The general flow is as shown below.



* Use "mopera U" (subscription necessary) for broadband Internet connection, etc. Subscribe to a plan that only charges for months which the service was used. Also available is "mopera", a simple Internet connection service with no subscription necessary.

FOMA Communication Setting File

To connect the FOMA terminal to your PC for data communication, installation of the FOMA communication setting file from the accompanying CD-ROM is required.

FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

Install the FOMA PC Setup Software from the accompanying CD-ROM to a PC and make a variety of necessary settings to perform packet transmission and 64K data communications connecting the FOMA terminal to the PC. The FirstPass PC Software enables access to FirstPass supported sites via a PC Web browser with user certificates obtained by the FOMA terminal. Refer to FirstPassManual on the CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format).

AT Commands

AT commands are commands used to set FOMA terminal functions from a PC. When AT commands are entered from a PC, the FOMA terminal performs the corresponding operations. Refer to "Manual for PC connection setting" in the accompanying CD-ROM for details on AT commands.

CD-ROM

The accompanying CD-ROM in this manual contains the software for data transmissions on the FOMA terminal and the manuals (in PDF format) such as "Manual for PC connection setting" and "Kuten Code List". Refer to the accompanying CD-ROM for details.

■ Contained software and PDF

- FOMA通信設定ファイル
- FOMA PC設定ソフト
- FOMAバイトカウンタ
- ドコモケータイdatalinkのご案内
- FirstPass PCソフト
- mopera Uのご案内 (mopera Uかんたんスタート/Uかんたん接続設定ソフト/Uオリジナルデータ取得ソフト/FOMAバイトカウンタ)
- ナップスター[®]のご案内
- パソコン接続マニュアル and "Manual for PC connection setting" in PDF format
- 区点コード一覧 and "Kuten Code List" in PDF format
- Adobe[®] Reader[®]

The following warning message may appear when a CD-ROM is set in a PC. This warning is shown by the security setting of Internet Explorer but does not cause any problem for use. Click はい (Yes).

※ The following screen is an example for Windows XP. The screen depends on your PC.



DoCoMo Keitai Datalink

Use DoCoMo keitai datalink software to back up the data such as "phonebook" and "mail" from the user's mobile phone to a PC and edit them. The software can be downloaded from an NTT DoCoMo web page. Refer to the following URL for details and downloading. Alternatively, access the following page using the accompanying CD-ROM. <http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/>

※ DoCoMo keitai datalink is only available in Japanese.

Refer to the web page above for details on downloading, transferable data, operating environment such as compatible OS, installing and operating instructions, restrictions, etc. Refer to the software's help feature for the operation procedure after installation. A USB Cable (sold separately) is required to use DoCoMo keitai datalink.

Overseas Use

● Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING)	450
● Services Available Overseas	450
● Before Using Overseas.	451
● Making Calls at Your Country of Stay.	452
● Receiving Calls.	453
● Setting Network Communication System	<3G/GSM Setting>453
● Setting a Search Method of Carrier	<Network Search Mode>454
● Setting a Carrier to Preferentially Connect to	<PLMN Setting>454
● Displaying a Carrier While in Roaming.	<Operator Name Disp>454
● Activating Roaming Guidance	<Roaming Guidance>455
● Rejecting Calls During Roaming.	<Call Barring>455
● Using Network Service During Roaming	<Int'l Services>455

Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING)

International Roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that enables you, using overseas telecommunication carrier's networks, to make calls and use i-mode.

Use this FOMA terminal for voice/Videophone calls, i-mode and SMS with the phone number and mail address used in Japan. Network services such as Voice Mail and Call Forwarding can also be used.

- This service is available in the 3G network and GSM/GPRS network service area. Refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website" for details on the area.
- At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal is set to automatically switch networks (☞ P. 454).

Country codes of major countries

The following shows "Country code" used when making international calls (☞ P. 61) or setting International dial assist (☞ P. 62).

- For other country codes and details, refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website".

(As of October 2007)

Country/region	Code	Country/region	Code
Australia	61	Maldives	960
Austria	43	Netherlands	31
Belgium	32	New Caledonia	687
Brazil	55	New Zealand	64
Canada	1	Norway	47
China	86	Peru	51
Czech	420	Philippines	63
Egypt	20	Russia	7
Fiji	679	Singapore	65
Finland	358	South Korea	82
France	33	Spain	34
Germany	49	Sweden	46
Greece	30	Switzerland	41
Hong Kong	852	Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689
Hungary	36		
India	91	Taiwan	886
Indonesia	62	Thailand	66
Italy	39	Turkey	90
Japan	81	U.K.	44
Macao	853	U.S.A.	1
Malaysia	60	Vietnam	84

Services Available Overseas

The communication services available overseas are as follows.

Communication service	Explanation	3G	GSM	GPRS
Voice call	Make or receive calls in your country of stay or make international calls to Japan or to other countries with the same phone number as used in Japan while abroad.	○	○	○
Videophone	Make international Videophone calls to users of the specified 3G carriers overseas and FOMA users in Japan.	○	×	×
i-mode mail	Send/receive i-mode mail overseas with the same address as used in Japan.	○	×	○
i-mode	Use i-mode overseas.	○	×	○
i-Channel	Use i-Channel overseas.	○	×	○
SMS	Send/receive SMS overseas with the same phone number as used in Japan.	○	○	○
Data communication (Packet transmission)	Use packet transmission overseas.	○	×	○

- Some communication services are not available depending on the network/carrier. Refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website" for details.
- Communication charges are incurred for every reception of i-Channel overseas (The domestic talk-free service does not apply). In addition, communication charges for automatically updating "ベーシックチャネル (Basic channel)" are incurred.
- Unable to use 64K data communication overseas.
- シャベって翻訳 for SH (Speech translation for SH) is available overseas (☞ P. 254).
- GPS function is not available overseas. An error screen appears and charges are incurred when the site of GPS Service settings is accessed overseas.
- When the 2in1 is used, calling from Number B is not available overseas.
- When Multi Number is used, calling from Additional Number is not available overseas.

Before Using Overseas

The following items must be checked before departure, at your country of stay, and after homecoming.

Preparation Before Departure

Prepare below in Japan before using the FOMA terminal overseas.

About contract

- If subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, subscription for "WORLD WING" is not required. However, if subscription for "WORLD WING" is canceled at or after subscription for the FOMA service, subscription for "WORLD WING" is required again.
- If subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but not subscribed to "WORLD WING", subscription for "WORLD WING" is required. Some payment plans are not available.
- Insert WORLD WING compatible FOMA card (other than blue) to the FOMA terminal (☎P. 37).

About charging batteries

- Precautions for handling AC Adapter ☎P. 19
- To charge AC Adapter ☎P. 41, P. 42

About browsing i-mode sites

To browse i-mode site overseas, the settings for overseas use must be made from iMenu in advance. i-mode site: [iMenu] → [English iMenu] → [Options] → [International Settings] → [i-mode Settings]

- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

About setting network service

If subscribed to network services, Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or other services can be used overseas.

- Some network services may not be set or checked depending on overseas carrier. In addition, some network services are available only in Japan. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]" before departure.
- To use network service overseas, set Remote control (☎P. 439, P. 456) to "Activate".

About inquiries overseas

For lost, stolen, and cost settlement, or malfunction of the FOMA terminal overseas, refer to "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" or "Failures encountered overseas" on the back of this manual. Note that any call or transmission charges incurred after the FOMA terminal is lost or stolen are charged to the subscriber.

- Add "international call access code" or "international prefix number for the universal number" that is assigned to your country of stay, to the head of your phone number for inquiries.
- For the latest information of the international call access code and the international prefix number for the universal number, refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website".

International call access codes of major countries (Table 1)

The following shows the International call access codes of major countries (As of August 2007).

Country/region	Code	Country/region	Code
Australia	0011	Malaysia	00
Belgium	00	Monaco	00
Brazil	0041/ 0014	Netherlands	00
		New Zealand	00
		Norway	00
Canada	011	Philippines	00
China	00	Poland	00
Czech	00	Portugal	00
Denmark	00	Russia	810
Finland	00	Singapore	001
France	00	South Korea	001
Germany	00	Spain	00
Greece	00	Sweden	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	002
India	00	Thailand	001
Indonesia	001	Turkey	00
Ireland	00	U.A.E.	00
Italy	00	U.K.	00
Luxemburg	00	U.S.A.	011
Macao	00	Vietnam	00

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2)

The following shows the International prefix number for the universal number of each country (As of August 2007).

Country/region	Code	Country/region	Code
Argentina	00	Luxemburg	00
Australia	0011	Malaysia	00
Austria	00	Netherlands	00
Belgium	00	New Zealand	00
Brazil	0021	Norway	00
Bulgaria	00	Peru	00
Canada	011	Philippines	00
China	00	Portugal	00
Columbia	009	Singapore	001
Denmark	00	South Africa	09
Finland	990	South Korea	001
France	00	Spain	00
Germany	00	Sweden	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00

Country/region	Code	Country/region	Code
Hungary	00	Taiwan	00
Ireland	00	Thailand	001
Israel	014	U.K.	00
Italy	00	U.S.A.	011

- Some codes may not be used.
- Note that the universal number may not be used for calls from a mobile phone, payphone or hotel.
- The universal number can be used only for countries listed above.
- Calling from a hotel may cost you extra call charges requested by the hotel (You are responsible for the call charges). Confirm with the hotel before making calls.

Using at Your Country of Stay

The service is available in the 3G network and GSM/GPRS network service area.

The FOMA terminal is set to automatically search for the network when the power is turned on, and to be connected to the available carrier in your country of stay.

- If the connected carrier is changed when Auto time correction (☞ P. 47) is set to [ON], a screen notifying that time difference is adjusted may appear.
- When Operator name display (☞ P. 454) is set to [Yes], the carrier connected appears in stand-by.
- When Clock display is set to [ON(Large)], Japan time appears above the local time (excluding regions keeping the same standard time as Japan time).
- Talk time or stand-by time may be reduced to half the normal time depending on the network condition of your country of stay.

Setting After Homecoming

If Network search mode is default settings, the FOMA terminal is set to automatically search for the network and to be connected to the FOMA network when the power is turned on after homecoming. Reset Network search mode to the FOMA network (DoCoMo).

- If Network search mode is set to [Manual], switch to the FOMA network (DoCoMo) manually or change to [Auto].
- Set 3G/GSM setting to [AUTO] or [3G].

Making Calls at Your Country of Stay

Make a call from overseas using the international roaming service.

Making a Call Outside Your Country of Stay (Including Japan)

Make a call from your country of stay to Japan or other countries.

- In stand-by, enter [+]** (press **[0]** for **1+ seconds**), **country code, area code (city code), other party's phone number and press** **[Phone]/[Phone]** (**V.phone**).

- When the area code (city code) begins with **0**, omit the **0** when dialing (However, include **0** when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy).

Making an international call outside your country of stay using country code conversion

Set Country code conversion (☞ P. 62) to [ON] and set the country code frequently called to easily make an international call.

- **0** at the beginning of a phone number is automatically converted to the country code set in Country code conversion.

Example: Make a call from phonebook

- In stand-by, press** **[Phone]** **▶ select the other party and press** **[Phone]/[Phone]** (**V.phone**).




- Select [Call].**



- To dial a phone number as stored in the phonebook, select [Original number].

Making a call to the phone in the country saved in Set country code

Save a country code using Set country code (☞ P. 63) to select a country code before making an international call.



- The following operation is available overseas only.

1 In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press  ▶ [Add prefix setting].

2 Select [International Call] ▶ select the country code ▶  (Phone)/ (V.phone).

Making a Call in Your Country of Stay

Make a domestic call at your country of stay in the same way as you do in Japan.

1 In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press  (Phone)/ (V.phone).




- Always dial the area code (city code), even when the number is in the same area.
- When making a domestic call at your country of stay using phonebook, select [Original number] in step 2 of "Making an international call outside your country of stay using country code conversion".

Note

- Refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website" for details on available countries, country codes and carriers.
- Even when **Notify caller ID** of the network service is set to "Send ID", [Not support] or [No caller ID] appears depending on the carrier, and the caller ID may not be displayed correctly.


Making a Call to a WORLD WING Subscriber Overseas

When making a call to a "WORLD WING" subscriber overseas, make an international call to Japan regardless of your country of stay.

1 In stand-by, enter [+](press  for 1+ seconds), country code 81 (Japan), the other party's mobile phone number excluding 0 and press  (Phone)/ (V.phone).

Receiving Calls

Answer a call overseas in the same way as you do in Japan.

1 Press  to answer an incoming call.

- Speak to the caller.

Note

- Even when a caller tried to notify of caller ID, it might not be notified depending on the used carrier.
- When a call is received while in **international roaming**, the call is forwarded from Japan. Call charges to Japan are incurred by the caller and international forwarding charges by the receiver.

Having Calls to Your FOMA Phone

Having calls to your FOMA phone made from Japan

To receive an international call from Japan, make calls to your FOMA phone by entering the phone number in the same way as it is entered in Japan. **090-XXXX-XXXX** or **080-XXXX-XXXX**

- Calling from Received calls may not be available since the number of international roaming carrier is added to the beginning of the phone number.

Having calls to your FOMA phone made from countries other than Japan

Add the international access code and **81** (Japan) to the beginning of your phone number whose **0** is excluded to make an international call to Japan regardless of your country of stay.

International access code of the country of the caller-81-90-XXXX-XXXX


or

International access code of the country of the caller-81-80-XXXX-XXXX

3G/GSM Setting

Setting Network Communication System

Set the communication system supporting your area and carrier.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [3G/GSM setting] ▶ select a communication method.

AUTO	Searches all the networks that can be connected.
3G	Searches only networks supporting 3G
GSM/GPRS	Searches networks supporting GSM or GPRS.

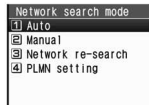
Network Search Mode

Setting a Search Method of Carrier

- Set to manually select a carrier.
- Check that Network search mode is set to [Auto] if the FOMA terminal is indicated to be outside the service area even after homecoming.

Manually Changing a Carrier to Be Connected

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Roam.]** ▶ **[Network search mode]**.



- Select **[Manual]** ▶ select a carrier.

- The carrier is changed.
- Select [Auto] → [Yes] to automatically change a carrier.

Searching the Host Network Again

<Network Re-search>

Re-search a network to set another carrier.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Roam.]** ▶ **[Network search mode]** ▶ **[Network re-search]**.

- The host network is changed automatically if Network search mode is set to [Auto]. If set to [Manual], select a carrier.

Checking the Communication Services Available <In-area Status>

Check the status whether making a call, data transmission or packet transmission is available.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[In-area status]**.

- Press **[OK]** or **[CLR]** to end checking.

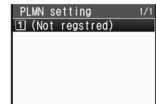
PLMN Setting

Setting a Carrier to Preferentially Connect to

Specify the priority order of carriers connected to when Network search mode is set to [Auto]. Save up to 20.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Roam.]** ▶ **[Network search mode]** ▶ **[PLMN setting]**.

- To check the saved carrier's detailed information, select the carrier. Press **[OK]** or **[CLR]** to end checking.



- Select the number of the priority order and press **[OK]** ▶ select a saving method.

To enter country code and network code	[UPLMN manual] → enter country code (MCC) and press [OK] → enter network code (MNC) and press [OK] → [3G]/[GSM]/[3G and GSM] → [Yes]
To select from a telecommunications carrier list	[UPLMN by list] → select a telecommunications carrier → [3G]/[GSM]/[3G and GSM] → [Yes] ● Searching a telecommunications carrier from country name: [UPLMN by list] → [OK] (Search) → select a country name
To save the telecommunications carrier currently connected to	[Set VPLMN to PLMN] → [Yes]
To change priority	[Change priority] → select a destination → [Yes]
To delete	[Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]
To delete one	[Delete] → [Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press [OK] → [Yes]
To delete all	[Delete] → [Delete all] → enter terminal security code and press [OK] → [Yes]

Operator Name Disp

Displaying a Carrier While in Roaming

Set whether to display a carrier currently connected to on the stand-by while in international roaming.

- In stand-by, press **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Roam.]** ▶ **[Operator name disp]**.

- Select **[display ON]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

When displaying a carrier



A carrier

Note

- Operator name display is available only while in international roaming.

Roaming Guidance

Activating Roaming Guidance

When a call is received during international roaming, the caller hears the guidance indicating that international roaming is activated.

- Set only in Japan.

Activating Roaming Guidance

<Activate>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Other NW Services]** **[Roaming guidance]** **[Activate]** **[Yes]**.

Deactivating Roaming Guidance

<Deactivate>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Other NW Services]** **[Roaming guidance]** **[Deactivate]** **[Yes]**.

Checking Settings <Status Request>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Other NW Services]** **[Roaming guidance]** **[Status request]** **[Yes]**.
 - Current settings appear.

Call Barring

Rejecting Calls During Roaming

Set the FOMA terminal to reject calls during roaming. Select whether to bar all incoming calls or only the Videophone and 64K data communication calls.

- Depending on the overseas telecommunication carrier, the setting cannot be made.
- Unable to use 64K data communication overseas.

Activating Call Barring <Activate>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Phone settings]** **[Other settings]** **[International Roam.]** **[Call barring]** **[Activate]**.
- 2 Select a barring method **enter network security code and press**.

Barring method	Bar all incoming
	Bar V.phone/64K

Deactivating Call Barring <Deactivate>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Phone settings]** **[Other settings]** **[International Roam.]** **[Call barring]** **[Deactivate]** **enter network security code and press**.

Checking Settings <Status Request>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[Settings]** **[Phone settings]** **[Other settings]** **[International Roam.]** **[Call barring]** **[Status request]**.
 - Current settings appear.

Int'l Services

Using Network Service During Roaming

Use network services such as Voice Mail and Call Forwarding from overseas.

- Voice Mail and Call Forwarding subscription are required to use Voice Mail (Int.) and Call Forward (Int.).
- To use network service overseas, set Remote control to "Activate".
- If operated from overseas, international call charges for your country of stay are incurred.

Operating Voice Mail at Your Country of Stay <Voice Mail(Int.)>

Activate/deactivate Voice Mail Service, play messages and change the settings.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Voice Mail(Int.)].

2 Select an item ▶ [Yes] ▶ operate according to voice guidance.

Item	Activate Voice Mail	Voice Mail settings
	Deactivate	Set ring time
	Play Messages	

Operating Call Forwarding at Your Country of Stay <Call Forward (Int.)>

Activate/deactivate the Call Forwarding Service and change the settings.


1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Call Forward (Int.)].

2 Select an item ▶ [Yes] ▶ operate according to voice guidance.

Item	Activate	Settings
	Deactivate	


Operating Roaming Guidance at Your Country of Stay <Roam. Guidance(Int.)>

Activate/deactivate Roaming guidance.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Roam. guidance(Int.)] ▶ [Yes] ▶ operate according to voice guidance.

Setting Remote Access at Your Country of Stay <Remote Access(Int.)>


Activate/deactivate Remote access.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Remote access(Int.)] ▶ [Yes] ▶ operate according to voice guidance.

Operating the Caller ID Request Service <Caller ID Req (Int.)>

Activate/deactivate the Caller ID Request Service.

- Even when the Caller ID Request Service is used, [Not support] may appear before a call is received.

1 In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Caller ID req (Int.)] ▶ [Yes] ▶ operate according to voice guidance.

Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting

● Menu List	.458
● Dial Key Assignments (5-touch)	.472
● Dial Key Assignments (2-touch)	.474
● Symbols/Special Character List	.474
● Pictograph/Emoticon List	.475
● Phrase List	.476
● Using the Calculator	.477
● Multiaccess Combinations	.478
● Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations	.479
● Services Available from the FOMA Terminal	.480
● Options and Accessories	.481
● Using with External Devices	.481
■ Troubleshooting	
● Troubleshooting	.482
● List of Error Messages	.485
● Warranty and After-sales Services	.496
● Updating Software	<Software Update>.498
● Protecting Your FOMA Terminal from Harmful Files	<Scanning Function>.504
● Main Specifications	.507
● Number of Saved/Registered/Protected Entries in the FOMA Terminal	.508
● Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)	.509
● Japan Export Control Regulation/Export Administration Regulation	.510

Menu List

Custom Menu/Basic Menu List

- A function can be recalled quickly by inputting the function number in function menu.
 - In the following menu screens, enter a function number to recall each function.
 - i-mode menu · i-appli menu · Mail menu · Camera menu
 Example) Bookmark
 In i-mode menu screen, press **[2]**.
 - In the Basic menu, enter a function number sequentially from the upper level to recall each of the following functions.
 Since the function numbers at the highest level of Basic menu such as LifeKit do not appear on the screen, check them in the following table.
 Example) “phone ring vol” of Settings menu
 In Basic menu, press **[1][1][1]**.
 Example) “Bar code reader” of LifeKit menu
 In Basic menu, press **[9][2][1]**.
- In the Custom menu, different function menus from the following may appear and the function numbers may not appear.
- When settings are reset (P. 417), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

i-mode menu

	Function menu	Default setting	Page	
i-mode	[1] iMenu	–	P. 180	
	[2] Bookmark	[Bookmark] folder	P. 188	
	[3] Screen Memo	–	P. 190	
	[4] Last URL	–	P. 182	
	[5] Go to location	[1] URL history	–	P. 187
		[2] Input URL	http://	P. 187
	[6] i-Channel	[1] Run i-Channel list	–	P. 204
		[2] i-Channel ticker	ON (Ticker font size: Large(default), Ticker color: Pattern1 (Font color: green, Background color: black), Ticker speed: Normal)☆	P. 205
		[3] Reset i-Channel	–	P. 205
	[7] Message R/F	[1] MessageR	–	P. 239
		[2] MessageF	–	P. 239
	[8] Check new message	–	P. 220 P. 238	
	[9] i-mode setting	[1] Host selection	i-mode (UIM)☆	P. 197
		[2] Save login info	–	P. 186
[3] Set image display		ON☆	P. 198	
[4] Font size		Normal☆	P. 182	
[5] Certificates		All enabled☆	P. 199	
[6] i-motion auto replay		Yes☆	P. 203	
[7] Secure setting		Cert Operation: - DoCoMo CA Host: DoCoMo☆	P. 199 P. 201	
[8] Use phone info		Yes☆	P. 198	
[9] Sound fx setting		Volume 5☆	P. 182	
[0] i-mode arrival act		PushTalk preferred☆	P. 198	
[X] Reset i-mode		–	P. 198	
[#] Function lock	OFF☆	P. 181		

Function menu		Default setting	Page		
i-mode	Full Browser	① Home	-	P. 302	
		② Bookmark	[Bookmark] folder, [検索] folder	P. 302	
		③ Last URL	-	P. 302	
		④ Go to location	① URL history	-	P. 302
			② Input URL	http://	P. 302
		⑤ FB Settings	① Home URL	http://www.google.co.jp	P. 302
			② Cookie Setting	Valid☆	P. 306
			③ Delete cookie	-	P. 307
			④ Script Setting	Valid☆	P. 307
			⑤ Display Mode	PC mode, 100%☆	P. 307
			⑥ Set image display	ON☆	P. 307
			⑦ Window Open Guard	Invalid☆	P. 307
		⑧ Referer Setting	Send☆	P. 307	
	⑨ Access Setting	OFF☆	P. 307		
⑩ Reset full browser	-	P. 307			

i-αppli menu

Function menu		Default setting	Page
i-αppli	① Software list	Sort: By usage☆	P. 249
	② i-αppli volume	Volume 5☆	P. 250
	③ Software info	OFF☆	P. 249
	④ Auto start	OFF☆	P. 257
	⑤ Used by i-αppli	-	P. 261
	⑥ Error display	-	P. 260
	⑦ Trace info	-	P. 260
	⑧ Battery icon	OFF☆	P. 250
	⑨ Power saver set	OFF☆	P. 251
	⑩ Function lock	OFF☆	P. 261

Mail menu

Function menu		Default setting	Page	
Mail	① Inbox	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Mail list Display settings (Preview: ON, List display: Two lines, Sort: Date(new→old)☆)	P. 224 to P. 230	
	② Outbox			
	③ Unsent messages			
	④ Compose message	-	P. 208	
	⑤ Compose SMS	-	P. 241	
	⑥ WEB Mail	-	P. 208	
	⑦ Check new message	-	P. 220 P. 238	
	⑧ Check new SMS	-	P. 243	
	⑨ Receive option	① Receive option	-	P. 219
		② Receive opt. setting	OFF☆	P. 234
	⑩ Template	-	P. 214	
	Mail setting	① Quick reply mail	また後でかけ直します、OKです、NGです、ありがとうございます、ごめんなさい、よろしく願い致します、キャンセルです、今忙しい、了解しました、ちょっと待ってください	P. 235
		② Rcv attached file	All attachments☆	P. 235
		③ Melody Auto replay	Auto replay☆	P. 235
④ Font size		Display, Text input: Normal☆	P. 233	

Function menu		Default setting	Page	
Mail	☒ Mail setting	☒ Rcv/Auto send disp	Notice first☆ P. 236	
		☒ Check new message	i-mode mail, MessageR, MessageF: ON☆ P. 234	
		☒ Auto message display	Msg R preferred☆ P. 238	
		☒ Receive opt. setting	OFF☆ P. 234	
		☒ Mail member	Member 1 to Member 10 P. 234	
		☒ Save signature	ON☆ P. 234	
		☒ Mail ticker setting	Only notice☆ P. 219	
		☒ SMS setting	☒ 1 SMS center	DoCoMo P. 244
			☒ 2 Report request	Do not request☆ P. 244
			☒ 3 SMS expiry	3 days P. 245
			☒ 4 SMS input character	Japanese(70Chara) P. 245
		○ 1 Area Mail setting	☒ 1 Receive setting	OFF☆ P. 241
			☒ 2 Receive entry	- P. 241
			☒ 3 Beep setting	Allow☆ P. 241
			☒ 4 Beep time	10 seconds☆ P. 241
		○ 2 Check mail settings	- P. 236	
		○ 3 Reset mail settings	- P. 236	
		○ 4 Function lock	OFF☆ P. 236	

Settings menu

- On default settings, [White], [Black], [Pink] or [Blue] appears according to handset color for items that can be set on Kisekai Tool (☒ P. 134). The title name of Kisekai Tool appears when Kisekai Tool settings are changed.

Function menu		Default setting	Page	
Settings	1 Select volume	☒ 1 phone ring vol	phone ring tone, V.phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: Volume 5☆ P. 122	
		☒ 2 Mail ring vol	Mail ring tone, MessageR ring tone, MessageF ring tone, SMS ring tone: Volume 5☆ P. 123	
		☒ 3 PushTalk tone vol	Volume 5☆ P. 123	
		☒ 4 Key/Standby i-motion	Volume 5☆ P. 123	
		☒ 5 Charge start sound	Volume 5☆ P. 123	
		☒ 6 Charge end sound	Volume 5☆ P. 123	
		☒ 7 Timer sound	Volume 5☆ P. 123	
		☒ 8 GPS volume	Pos location sound, Pos location notice, Loc provision/acpt, Loc provision/notify: Volume 5☆ P. 124	
		2 Select sound	☒ 1 Select ring tone	Phone ring tone: 着信音1☆ V.phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: Phone ring tone☆ P. 120
			☒ 2 Select mail tone	Mail ring tone: 着信音2☆ MessageR ring tone, MessageF ring tone, SMS ring tone: Mail ring tone☆ P. 121
	☒ 3 PushTalk tone		着信音1☆ P. 121	
	☒ 4 Shutter sound		Default tone☆ P. 172	
	☒ 5 Timer sound		TI (標準音)/Ring time setting: 15 seconds☆ P. 122	
	☒ 6 GPS tone		Pos location sound: OFF☆ Pos location notice: 着信音4☆ Loc provision/acpt: 着信音5☆ Loc provision/notify: 着信音6☆ P. 122	
	3 Vibrator	☒ 1 Vibration mode	OFF☆ P. 125	
		☒ 2 Mail vibration	OFF☆ P. 125	
		☒ 3 GPS vibrator	Position location, Location notification, Loc provision/accept, Loc provision/notify: OFF☆ P. 125	
	4 Manner mode	☒ 1 Normal	- P. 127	
		☒ 2 Silent	- P. 127	

Function menu		Default setting	Page		
Settings	① Snd/ Vibrator/ Manner	④ Manner mode	③ Original	Record message, Vibrator, Mic sensitivity up: ON☆ Alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion, Low battery alarm: OFF☆ Ring tone, Mail ring tone: Silent☆	P. 128
		⑤ Headset setting		Headset + speaker☆	P. 126
		⑥ Ring time setting	① Mail ring time set	ON/3 seconds☆	P. 126
			② PT ring time set	30 seconds☆	P. 126
			③ GPS ring time set	Pos location sound, Pos location notice, Loc provision/acpt, Loc provision/notify: ON/5 seconds☆	P. 126
		⑦ Set mute ring time		OFF☆	P. 153
		⑧ Hold/On hold tone	① Set on hold tone	On hold tone 1☆	P. 70
			② Set hold tone	Hold melody 1☆	P. 71
		⑨ Sound plybck	① Melody stereo fx	Stereo/3D sound☆	P. 124
			② Melody equalizer	Normal☆	P. 124
	③ Run music settings		MUSIC Player☆	P. 125	
	② Disp/ LED/ Power saver	① Set screen	① Stand-by display	待受画面1 (Handset color: White), 待受画面2 (Handset color: Black), 待受画面3 (Handset color: Pink), 待受画面4 (Handset color: Blue)*1	P. 128
			② Clock display	Clock display: ON(Large)☆ Set clock style: 待受時計1☆ Set disp position: Down☆	P. 129
			③ Calendar display	OFF☆	P. 129
④ Desktop clock			2 hours☆	P. 130	
② Font style		① Font style setting	LC Gothic☆	P. 139	
		② Font size	① Collective setting Normal☆ ② Individual setting i-mode, Full Browser, Mail/Message, Input: Normal☆	P. 139	
③ Themes		① Kisekai Tool		-	P. 134
		② Call/Rcv display	Picture call set: ON☆ Outgoing calls: 電話発信1 (Handset color: White), 電話発信2 (Handset color: Black), 電話発信3 (Handset color: Pink), 電話発信4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Incoming voice calls, Incoming video phone, Payphone, User unset, Not support: 電話着信1 (Handset color: White), 電話着信2 (Handset color: Black), 電話着信3 (Handset color: Pink), 電話着信4 (Handset color: Blue)*1		P. 130
			③ Send/Rcv display		Send display: メール送信1 (Handset color: White), メール送信2 (Handset color: Black), メール送信3 (Handset color: Pink), メール送信4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Receive display: メール受信1 (Handset color: White), メール受信2 (Handset color: Black), メール受信3 (Handset color: Pink), メール受信4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Mail rcvd screen: メール受信結果1 (Handset color: White), メール受信結果2 (Handset color: Black), メール受信結果3 (Handset color: Pink), メール受信結果4 (Handset color: Blue)*1
		④ Submenu image		メニュー枠1(上)/メニュー枠1(下)	P. 136
		⑤ Dial image set		Dial image 1	P. 136
		⑥ Animate notices		お知らせアニメ1 (Handset color: White), お知らせアニメ2 (Handset color: Black), お知らせアニメ3 (Handset color: Pink), お知らせアニメ4 (Handset color: Blue)*1	P. 136

*1 When Delete all data or Reset settings is performed, the setting will be for the White handset.

Function menu		Default setting	Page		
Settings	③ Themes	⑦ Signal/batt/s clock	Signal icon: 電波マーク1 (Handset color: White), 電波マーク2 (Handset color: Black), 電波マーク3 (Handset color: Pink), 電波マーク4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Battery icon: 電池残量1 (Handset color: White), 電池残量2 (Handset color: Black), 電池残量3 (Handset color: Pink), 電池残量4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Small clock: 時計表示1☆	P. 136	
		⑧ Color theme setting	GentleWhite (Handset color: White), UrbanBlack (Handset color: Black), JewelryPink (Handset color: Pink), CobaltBlue (Handset color: Blue)*1	P. 136	
	④ LED settings	① Called LED	① Phone	LED color settings: Aqua☆ LED pattern settings: Shooting star☆	P. 138
			② Video-phone	LED color settings: Aqua☆ LED pattern settings: Shooting star☆	P. 138
			③ PushTalk	LED color settings: Sun set☆ LED pattern settings: Shooting star☆	P. 138
		② Mail LED	① Mail/Message LED	LED color settings: Leaf☆ LED pattern settings: Stars☆	P. 138
			② Mail send/rcv LED	ON (LED color settings: Sky LED pattern settings: Stars)☆	P. 138
		③ In-call LED	OFF☆	P. 138	
		④ Alarm/Timer LED	ON (LED color settings: Rainbow LED pattern settings: Neon)☆	P. 138	
		⑤ IC card LED	ON☆	P. 138	
		⑥ Open/close LED	ON (LED color settings: Aqua LED pattern settings: Firefly)☆	P. 138	
		⑦ Notice LED	Missed call notice, New unrnd mail noti: ON☆	P. 138	
		⑧ GPS LED	① Position location	LED color settings: Sky☆	P. 138
			② Location notification	LED color settings: Sky☆	P. 138
	③ Loc provision/accept		LED color settings: Sky☆	P. 138	
	④ Loc provision/notify		LED color settings: Sky☆	P. 138	
	⑤ Display img quality	① Vibrant image mode	Stand-by, Camera, 1Seg/Data Box(1Seg), Data Box(My picture), Data Box(Music&V ch), Data Box(i-motion), Internet movie plyr: Dynamic☆	P. 139	
		② Control by scene	ON☆	P. 139	
	⑥ Light/Power saver ²	① Norm (auto bright)	① Norm (auto bright)	-	P. 132
			② Norm (fixed bright)	-	P. 132
③ Eco mode (Pwr saver)			-	P. 132	
④ Original Eco mode		① Display light time	Normal: 10 seconds☆ Charging, Internet: Same as normal☆ Video-phone: Always ON☆ i-appli: Software☆	P. 132	
		② Screen dsp time	1 minute☆	P. 133	
		③ Brightness	Automatic☆	P. 134	
		④ Keypad light setting	Light☆	P. 133	
⑦ Private filter		① Linked manner	OFF☆	P. 140	
	② Filter density	Normal☆	P. 140		
⑧ Menu priority		Custom menu☆	P. 34		

*1 When Delete all data or Reset settings is performed, the setting will be for the White handset.

*2 The default setting is [Norm (auto bright)].

Settings		Function menu	Default setting	Page	
Settings	③ General settings	① Check status	① Owner Information	-	P. 411
			② Check memory	-	P. 351
			③ Battery level	-	P. 44
			④ Check settings	-	P. 396
		② Text input setting	① User dictionary	-	P. 426
			② Dwnld dictionary	No dictionaries registered	P. 427
			③ Edit phrase	-	P. 425
			④ Clear memory terms	-	P. 426
		③ Auto power ON/OFF	① Auto power ON	OFF☆	P. 399
			② Auto power OFF	OFF☆	P. 399
			③ Link alarm/power ON	OFF☆	P. 399
		④ Date settings	Auto time correction: ON☆	P. 47	
		⑤ Select language	日本語	P. 46	
		⑥ TOUCH CRUISER set	① Usage settings	ON☆	P. 33
			② Pointer speed	Normal☆	P. 33
			③ Scroll speed	Normal☆	P. 33
			④ Double tap speed	Normal☆	P. 33
		⑦ USB mode setting	Communication mode☆	P. 345	
		⑧ Scanning function	① Update	-	P. 504
			② Set auto-update	-	P. 505
	③ Set scan		Scan, Scan message: Enable☆	P. 504	
	④ Version		-	P. 506	
	⑨ Software update	Set auto-update: auto-update (Day: Default, Time: 03:00)	P. 498		
	⑩ Reset settings	-	P. 417		
	④ NW Services	① Voice Mail	① Check messages	-	P. 431
			② Play Messages	-	P. 431
			③ Activate VoiceMail	-	P. 430
			④ Set ring time	-	P. 430
			⑤ Deactivate VoiceMail	-	P. 430
			⑥ Status(Voice Mail)	-	P. 431
			⑦ Voice Mail setting	-	P. 431
			⑧ Notification setting	Voice Mail alarm: ON☆	P. 431
⑨ Notification			-	P. 432	
② Call waiting		① Activate	-	P. 432	
		② Deactivate	-	P. 432	
		③ Status request	-	P. 432	
③ Call forwarding		① Activate	-	P. 434	
		② Deactivate	-	P. 434	
		③ Register number	-	P. 435	
		④ Forwarding No. busy	-	P. 435	
		⑤ Status request	-	P. 435	
④ Bar nuisance calls		① Register caller	-	P. 435	
		② Register selected No	-	P. 435	
		③ Delete all entries	-	P. 436	
		④ Delete last entry	-	P. 436	
		⑤ Check No of entries	-	P. 436	
⑤ Notify caller ID		① Status request	-	P. 48	
		② Notify caller ID	-	P. 48	

Function menu		Default setting	Page			
Settings	☒ Caller ID request	① Activate	–	P. 436		
		② Deactivate	–	P. 436		
		③ Status request	–	P. 436		
	⑦ Talk time/cost	Limit settings: Disable☆ (Notice method: Alarm + stand-by, Auto reset: OFF when set to Enable)		P. 413		
	④ NW Services	☒ 2in1 setting	① Mode switching	Dual mode	P. 441	
			② Phonebook 2in1 set	–	P. 441	
			③ Stand-by display	① Dual mode	待受画面 6	P. 441
				② B mode	待受画面 7	P. 441
			④ Set call/receive No.	① Disp. Call/Rcv No.	ID display ON	P. 442
				② Number B Ring tone	Phone ring tone: 着信音 3 V.phone ring tone: Phone ring tone Mail ring tone: 着信音 4 SMS ring tone: Mailing ring tone	P. 442
			⑤ 2in1 function OFF	–	P. 442	
			⑥ Receive avoidance	① Change rcv. avoid.	Receive (Number A), Receive (Number B); Unchange☆	P. 442
				② Check rcv. avoid.	–	P. 442
				③ Mode link setting	OFF☆	P. 442
	④ Rcv. avoid. (abroad)	–		P. 442		
	☒ In-call arrival act	① Set arrival act	① Activate	–	P. 439	
			② Deactivate	–	P. 439	
			③ Status request	–	P. 439	
		② Arrival Call Act	Answer☆	P. 438		
	⑤ Other NW Services	① Remote control	① Activate	–	P. 439	
② Deactivate			–	P. 439		
③ Status request			–	P. 439		
② Dual network		① Switching	–	P. 437		
		② Status request	–	P. 437		
③ English guidance		① Guidance setting	–	P. 437		
		② Status request	–	P. 438		
④ Service number		① ドコモ故障問合せ	–	P. 438		
		② ドコモ総合案内・受付	–	P. 438		
⑤ Additional service		① USSD	–	P. 444		
		② Reply message	–	P. 444		
⑥ Multi number		① Set multi number	–	P. 440		
		② Status request	–	P. 440		
		③ Number setting	–	P. 439		
⑦ Chaku-moji		① Create message	–	P. 58		
		② Message display	With caller ID☆	P. 59		
⑧ Roaming guidance		① Activate	–	P. 455		
		② Deactivate	–	P. 455		
	③ Status request	–	P. 455			
☒ Phone settings	① In-call settings	① Noise reduction	ON☆	P. 65		
		② Reconnect signal	Alarm on(high)☆	P. 65		
		③ Quality alarm	Alarm on(high)☆	P. 126		
	② Headset sw to call	OFF☆	P. 416			

Function menu		Default setting	Page			
Settings	③ Incoming settings	① Any key answer	ON☆	P. 68		
		② Auto answer setting	Phone/Videophone, PushTalk: OFF☆	P. 417		
		③ Melody Call setting	-	P. 125		
	④ Videophone set	① Redial voice call	OFF☆	P. 84		
		② Set sending image	Substitute image: キャラ (女性) ^{*3} ☆ On hold image: テレビ電話代替☆ Hold image: テレビ電話代替☆	P. 81		
		③ Display setting	Show me small☆	P. 83		
		④ Subscreen position	Upper left☆	P. 83		
		⑤ Visual preference	Normal☆	P. 82		
		⑥ Notify switch mode	-	P. 84		
		⑦ Hands-free V.phone	ON☆	P. 82		
		⑧ V-phone while packet	V-phone priority☆	P. 85		
	⑤ Record message	① Record message	OFF☆	P. 74		
		② Answering duration	13 seconds☆	P. 76		
		③ Reply message	Reply message 1☆	P. 76		
		④ V.phone reply image	テレビ電話代替☆	P. 76		
	⑥ Set PushTalk	① Set PT arrival act	Answer☆	P. 97		
		② Hands-free PT	ON☆	P. 98		
	⑦ Set when folded	① Phone/Videophone	Finish call☆	P. 69		
		② PushTalk	Speaker phone☆	P. 69		
	⑧ Self mode		OFF☆	P. 147		
	⑥ Phone settings	① Int'l prefix		First entry: 009130-010☆	P. 64	
			② Sub address	ON☆	P. 64	
		③ Int'l dial assist	① Auto conversion	Int'l prefix conv: ON☆ Country code conv: ON☆ Country (code): Japan(+81)☆	P. 62	
			② IDD prefix setting	WORLD CALL 009130-010☆	P. 63	
			③ Set country code	22 country codes saved	P. 63	
		⑨ Other settings	① Network search mode		Auto	P. 454
				② Operator name disp	display ON☆	P. 454
			④ International Roam.	③ Voice Mail(Int.)	-	P. 456
				④ Call Forward (Int.)	-	P. 456
				⑤ Remote access(Int.)	-	P. 456
				⑥ Caller ID req (Int.)	-	P. 456
				⑦ Roam. guidance(Int.)	-	P. 456
				⑧ Call barring	-	P. 455
				⑨ 3G/GSM setting	AUTO☆	P. 453
				⑤ In-area status	-	P. 454
		⑦ Security	① Secret mode	OFF☆	P. 150	
			② UIM Settings	① PIN1 code input set	OFF	P. 144
	② Change PIN1 code			0000	P. 145	
	③ Change PIN2 code			0000	P. 145	

*3 [テレビ電話代替] is set when Reset settings (☎ P. 417) is performed after [キャラ (女性)] is deleted from Chara-den.

Function menu		Default setting	Page		
Settings	3] Accept/Reject calls	1] Accept calls	OFF ☆	P. 151	
		2] Reject calls	OFF ☆	P. 152	
		3] Reject unknown	Accept ☆	P. 153	
		4] User unset	Accept ☆	P. 152	
		5] Reject payphone	Accept ☆	P. 152	
		6] Reject not support	Accept ☆	P. 152	
	4] Show call/received	1] Show rcvd calls	ON ☆	P. 150	
		2] Show redial	ON ☆	P. 150	
	5] Show sent/received	1] Show sent messages	ON ☆	P. 150	
		2] Show rcvd messages	ON ☆	P. 150	
	7] Security	6] Lock settings	1] All lock	Disabled	P. 145
			2] Keypad dial lock	OFF ☆	P. 148
			3] Function lock	OFF ☆	P. 147
		4] IC card lock	IC lock(power-on): OFF ☆ IC lock(power-off): Follow power ON ☆	P. 272	
		5] Multi easy lock set	All lock ☆	P. 149	
		6] Multi lock auto-set	OFF ☆	P. 149	
		7] Change security code	0000	P. 143	
	8] Writing authentic	OFF ☆	P. 143		
	9] Delete all data	1] Delete user data	-	P. 417	
		2] Del secret data	-	P. 418	
	0] Initial setting	-	P. 46		

LifeKit menu

Function menu		Default setting	Page	
9] 2] LifeKit	1] Bar code reader	-	P. 173	
	2] Receive Ir data	1] Receive	-	P. 354
		2] Receive all	-	P. 355
	3] microSD manager	1] View microSD data	-	P. 342
		2] Backup/restore	-	P. 340
		3] Import	-	P. 346
		4] New manager info	-	P. 346
		5] Format	-	P. 343
		6] USB mode setting	Communication mode ☆	P. 345
	4] GPS menu	1] Position location	-	P. 274
		2] i-αppli	-	P. 275
		3] Location history	-	P. 283
		4] Set position loc.	GPS button setting: Read a Map ☆ Positioning mode: Standard mode ☆	P. 275
		5] Loc.notification/set	Positioning mode: Standard mode ☆	P. 281
	6] Loc. request menu	Loc. prov. ON/OFF: Loc. provision: OFF ☆ Positioning mode: Standard mode ☆ Host setting: Default ☆	P. 279	
	5] Card reader	AF mode: Closeup	P. 178	
	6] Schedule	Show (Switch view mode: Normal display) Set (Set vacation: Saturday and Sunday) New (Alarm time: 00 minutes, Ring duration: 15 seconds, Alarm tone: 着信音 1, Alarm volume: Volume 5 when Alarm set to ON)	P. 403	
7] Calculator	Tax rate: 5%	P. 414		
8] Text memo	-	P. 414		

Function menu		Default setting	Page	
⑨ ② LifeKit		① Timer	-	P. 400
	⑨ Timer/Alarm	② Alarm	Set repeat: Once only Alarm tone: 着信音 1 Alarm volume: Volume 5 Snooze setting: OFF Ring duration: 15 seconds	P. 401
		③ Wakeup TV	-	P. 296
	⑩ Voice memo/Rec msg		-	P. 412
	⑪ Character reader		-	P. 176
	⑫ Data Sec. Service		Send phonebook img: OFF☆	P. 117 P. 153

1Seg menu

Function menu		Default setting	Page	
⑨ ⑥ 1Seg	① Activate 1Seg	Display settings (Display mode (L): Video+data, Display mode (W): Vid (full-screen), Mark display (W): Full-time display, App area (L): Full-time display) Subtitles: OFF (Startup settings: Linked manner) Dolby Sound Set.: Link genres Recording end time (only for recording): Unrestricted Data broadcasting (Set image display: ON, Sound FX: ON) Disp program guide: Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) 1Seg settings (Vibrant image mode: Dynamic, Brightness: Automatic, Main/Sub language: Main, Change language: Main language, Set when folded: Continue, Video recding dest: Auto(microSD first), Switch auto area: ON)	P. 289 P. 292	
	② Program guide	Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)	P. 293	
	③ Booking list	Timer setting screen Start ann (Reception): ON (Alarm tone: 着信音 1, Alarm volume: Volume 5, Linked startup setting: ON (Notify)) Start ann (Recording): ON fixed (Alarm tone: 着信音 1, Alarm volume: Volume 5) Booking list Sort: Air date(old→new)	P. 294	
	④ Reserve rec hist	-	P. 297	
	⑤ TVlink	-	P. 299	
	⑥ Channel setting	-	P. 287	
	⑦ 1Seg settings	① Video recding dest	Auto(microSD first)☆	P. 299
		② Erase storage area	-	P. 300
		③ Set image display	ON☆	P. 300
		④ Sound FX	ON☆	P. 300
		⑤ 1Seg status	-	P. 300
⑥ Reset status disp		-	P. 300	
⑦ Reset 1Seg	-	P. 300		

Osaifu-Keitai menu








Function menu		Default setting	Page	
Osaifu-Keitai	① IC card content	–	P. 265	
	② DCMX	–	P. 256	
	③ ToruCa	ToruCa list Sort: Date(new→old)☆	P. 267	
	④ IC card lock	① IC lock(power-on)	OFF☆	P. 272
		② IC lock(power-off)	Follow power ON☆	P. 272
	⑤ Setting	① ToruCa from IC	ON☆	P. 272
		② ToruCa duple check	ON☆	P. 272
		③ ToruCa auto read	ON☆	P. 272
		④ ToruCa auto disp	ON☆	P. 272
	⑤ ToruCa sound fx	Volume 5☆	P. 272	
⑥ Search by i-mode	–	P. 194		

Camera menu

Function menu		Default setting	Page
Camera	① Shoot still pic	Shooting menu (AF mode: Standard, Image quality: NORMAL, Brightness: 0, Continuous mode: OFF, Shoot by scene: Auto, Effect shot: OFF, Shoot with frame: OFF, White balance: Auto, Auto timer: OFF)☆ Select size: "std-by: 480×854"☆ Camera settings (Fix camera shake: ON, Auto save mode: OFF, Save camera set: ON)☆	P. 162
	② Shoot movie	Shooting menu (AF mode: Standard, Image quality: SUPER FINE, Common replay mode: OFF, Brightness: 0, File size limit: For mail (long), Switch img/voice: Image + voice, Effect shot: OFF, Shoot by scene: Auto, White balance: Auto, Auto timer: OFF) Select size: "QVGA: 320×240" Camera settings (Fix camera shake: ON, Noise Reduction: ON, Display Light Time: As light setting, Save camera set: ON)	P. 165
	③ Character reader	Select subject: Auto Switch AF mode: Closeup Inverse mode: Automatic	P. 175
	④ Bar code reader	Switch AF mode: Closeup	P. 173
	⑤ Card reader	AF mode: Closeup	P. 178

Phonebook menu

Function menu		Default setting	Page
Phonebook	Search by: Reading? Switch view mode: Show business card Group settings: No groups, グループ 1 (Group 1) to グループ 1 9 (Group 19) (FOMA terminal handset phonebook), No groups, グループ 1 (Group 1) to グループ 1 0 (Group 10) (FOMA card phonebook) Image transfer: Yes	P. 109	





	Function menu	Default setting	Page
<p> 1 Data box</p>	<p> My picture</p>	<p>Folder list Slideshow (Play interval: Normal, Effects settings: Random) Backlight time: As light setting Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Image list Edit data (File restriction: Not restricted) Slideshow (Play interval: Normal, Effects settings: Random) My Picture setting (Switch view mode: 5-part/details, Sort: Date (new→ old), Backlight time: As light setting, Set volume: Volume 5) <Image viewer (excluding Flash movies)> Edit data (File restriction: Not restricted) My Picture setting (Backlight time: As light setting, Set volume: Volume 5) <Image viewer (Flash movies)> Backlight time: As light setting</p>	<p>P. 312</p>
	<p> MUSIC</p>	<p>Music data list in Chaku-uta full® and [Multimedia] Display settings (Switch view mode: 12-part, Sort: Date (new→ old)) <MUSIC player> Playback settings (Set playback mode: Normal playback, Manner playback: OFF) Dolby Sound Set.: Normal</p>	<p>P. 385</p>
	<p> Music&Video ch</p>	<p>Program list Switch view mode: 12-part Sort: Date (new→old) <Music&Video Channel player (program with voice only)> Playback settings (Repeat: OFF, Manner playback: OFF) Dolby Sound Set.: Normal <Music&Video Channel player (program with video and voice)> Playback settings (Repeat: OFF, Manner playback: OFF, Backlight time: As light setting) Dolby Sound Set.: Normal</p>	<p>P. 380</p>
	<p> i-motion</p>	<p>Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Continuous play (Repeat playback: No, Sample playback: No) i-motion setting (Backlight time: As light setting, Set volume: Volume 5) Movie list Edit data (File restriction: Not restricted) Continuous play (Repeat playback: No, Sample playback: No) i-motion setting (Switch view mode: 12-part, Sort: Date (new→ old), Backlight time: As light setting, Set volume: Volume 5, Resume settings: ON) <i-motion player> Edit data (File restriction: Not restricted) i-motion setting (Change size: Zoom, Backlight time: As light setting, Resume settings: ON, Frame rate: Rough (hi-speed), Launch screen mode: Normal Play)</p>	<p>P. 321</p>
	<p> 1Seg</p>	<p>Video file list screen 1Seg data settings (Switch view mode: 12-part, Sort: Date (new→ old)) <Video player> Display settings (Display mode (L): Video+data, Display mode (W): Vid (full-screen), Mark display (W): Full-time display, App area (L): Full-time display) Subtitles: OFF (Startup settings: Linked manner) Dolby Sound Set.: Link genres Data broadcasting (Set image display: ON, Sound FX: ON) 1Seg settings (Vibrant image mode: Dynamic, Brightness: Automatic, Main/Sub language: Main, Change language: Main language)</p>	<p>P. 327</p>
	<p> Melody</p>	<p>Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Set volume: Volume 5 Melody list Melody settings (Start position: Play all, Sort: Date (new→ old), Set volume: Volume 5) <Melody player> Melody settings (Equalizer: Normal, Stereo effects: Stereo/3D sound)</p>	<p>P. 333</p>

	Function menu	Default setting	Page
9 1 Data box	7 My Documents	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) My Documents list My documents set (Sort: Date (new→ old))	P. 358
	8 Kisekae Tool	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Kisekae Tool list Kisekae Tool (Switch view mode: 12-part, Sort: Date (new→ old)) Data screen in Kisekae Tool Set volume: Volume 5	P. 134
	9 Chara-den	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Backlight time: As light setting Chara-den list Chara-den disp set (Sort: Date (new→ old), Backlight time: As light setting) <Chara-den player> Backlight time: As light setting Screen size: Zoom ↑	P. 330
	0 Print setting(DPOF)	Data list Specify number: 00 print Sort: Date (new→old)	P. 373

Media tool menu

	Function menu	Default setting	Page
9 3 Media tool	1 Voice recorder	Noise reduction: ON Auto timer: OFF Retain settings: ON	P. 357
	2 Manga&BookReader	File list Sort (e-comic only): Date (new→old) Backlight time: As light setting Details screen Display settings (Font size: Normal, Text direction: Vertical, Ruby text: OFF, Image Size: Double Size) Comics setting: Flame/Page Set volume: Medium Vibrator: ON Backlight time: As light setting	P. 367
	3 Document Viewer	Sort: By title name Backlight time: As light setting	P. 364
	4 PDF Viewer	Set screen (Page layout: Single page, View types: Fit page, Scroll bar: ON, Page numbers: ON, Magnification: ON)	P. 358

MUSIC menu

Function menu		Default setting	Page
 MUSIC	 MUSIC Player	Refer to MUSIC of Data box	P. 385
	 Music&Video ch	Refer to Music&Video ch of Data box	P. 376
	 SD-Audio	Playback settings (Set playback mode: Normal playback, Manner playback: OFF) Dolby Sound Set.: Normal Playback screen: Pattern1	P. 392

Other Functions

Function menu		Default setting	Page
Earpiece volume		Volume 5	P. 69 P. 123
Videophone		Change send img: Chara-den Brightness (when sending a camera image): ± 0 Videophone (Display setting: Show me small, Subscreen disp: Upper left, Visual preference: Normal, Lighting: Always ON) DTMF mode: OFF	P. 77 P. 83
PushTalk		Edit group name: グループ 1 to グループ 9 Set PushTalk (Set auto answer: OFF, Set PT arrival act: Answer, Ring time setting: 30 seconds, Set when folded: Speaker phone, Hands-free PT: ON)	P. 97
Manner mode		OFF (Normal when set to ON)	P. 127
Omakase Lock		Disabled	P. 146
Keypad dial lock		OFF	P. 148
Active marker		Disp calendar/date: Display calendar Set disp category: All desktop icons are shown	P. 397
Shortcut menu		Bar code reader, Receive Ir data, Card reader, Timer, Host selection, Calculator, 地図アプリ, Schedule, Alarm, Bookmark	P. 409
Character Entry	Chara entry/dict	Conversion method: 5-touch, Direct conversion: ON Guess conversion (Quick conversion: ON, Guess conversion: ON, 1 chara mem conv: ON, With emoticon conv: ON, 1st choice genre: Celebrity)	P. 420

Dial Key Assignments (5-touch)

Use dial keys to enter text. Each key has multiple characters assigned to it.

- Press the key multiple times to switch characters.
- Example: In double-byte katakana mode, ㊦ (ア) ➔ ㊦ (イ) ➔ ㊦ (ウ) ... appears.
- Press ㊦ to scroll backwards through characters.

Double-byte Characters

Key	漢 Kanji (hiragana) input mode	㊦ Double-byte katakana input mode	Double-byte alphanumeric input mode		Kuten code mode
			㊦ Upper and lower case	㊦ Lower case	
㊦	あいうえお	アイウエオ	. / _ @ 1 (space)	. / _ @ 1 (space)	1
㊦	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	A B C a b c 2	a b c 2	2
㊦	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	D E F d e f 3	d e f 3	3
㊦	たちつてと	タチツテト	G H I g h i 4	g h i 4	4
㊦	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l 5	j k l 5	5
㊦	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	M N O m n o 6	m n o 6	6
㊦	まみむめも	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s 7	p q r s 7	7
㊦	やゆよ	ヤユヨ	T U V t u v 8	t u v 8	8
㊦	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z 9	w x y z 9	9
㊦	わをんわ (space)	ワヲン (space)	0 (space)	0 (space)	0
㊦ to ㊦ for 1+seconds	*1				0 to 9
㊦	ゝ	↓ ^{*2}		↓ ^{*2}	↓
㊦	Double-byte symbol conversion (ー ~、。 ! ? ・)				n/a
㊦	One-touch conversion (previous candidate)	Cursor up			
㊦	Normal conversion (next candidate) ↓ ^{*2}	Cursor down/↓ ^{*2}			
㊦	Shrink highlighted segment	Cursor left			
㊦	Expand highlighted segment	Cursor right			
㊦	Change character input modes				
㊦ for 1+seconds	Insert phrase				
㊦	Conversion to lower case characters (for characters which can be lower case)	Conversion between upper and lower case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	Conversion to upper case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes		n/a
㊦ for 1+seconds	Insert emoticon				
㊦ ^{*3}	Single character deletion, canceling conversion	Single character deletion			Deletion of entered code or single character
㊦ for 1+seconds	Deletion of all characters after the cursor ^{*4}				
㊦	Apply, OK	OK			
㊦	Show in reverse order or undo				Undo

*1 Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next character assigned to the same key.

*2 Press after confirming a character to enter a line break (↓). ↓ appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/delete new line mark like any other character. Available when inputting text for messages, Schedule, and Text memo.

*3 Press CLR without entering characters and the previous screen reappears.

*4 If there is the cursor at the end of the text, all characters are deleted.

● Some hiragana and katakana with a dakuten mark may be partially omitted.

Single-byte Characters

Key	Single-byte katakana mode	Single-byte alphanumeric mode		Single-byte numeric input mode
		Upper and lower case	Lower case	
1	アイウエオ	. / _ @ 1 (space)	. / _ @ 1 (space)	1
2	カキクケコ	A B C a b c 2	a b c 2	2
3	サシスセソ	D E F d e f 3	d e f 3	3
4	タチツテトッ	G H I g h i 4	g h i 4	4
5	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l 5	j k l 5	5
6	ハヒフヘホ	M N O m n o 6	m n o 6	6
7	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s 7	p q r s 7	7
8	ヤユヨ	T U V t u v 8	t u v 8	8
9	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z 9	w x y z 9	9
0	ワヲン (space)	0 (space)	0 (space)	0
0 to 9 for 1+seconds		*1		*2
✖	* ° - ↓		↓*3	✖
⌘	Single-byte symbol conversion (-~、。!?() ' " , ; ¥ &)*4			#
⤴	Cursor up			P (during entry of a phone number)/ Cursor up
⤵	Cursor down/↓*3			
⤶	Cursor left			
⤷	Cursor right			
⌘	Change character input modes			
⌘ for 1+seconds	Insert phrase			
✉	Conversion to lower case characters (for characters which can be lower case)	Conversion between upper and lower case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	Conversion to upper case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	n/a
⌘ for 1+seconds	Insert emoticon			
CLR	Single character deletion			
CLR for 1+seconds	Deletion of all characters after the cursor*5			
⏪	OK			
↶	Show in reverse order or undo			Undo

*1 Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next character assigned to the same key.

*2 Press 0 for 1+ seconds to enter "+".

*3 A line break (↓) is entered. ↓ appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/delete new line mark like any other character. Available when inputting text for messages, Schedule, and Text memo.

*4 During single-byte alphanumeric input (entering mail addresses, URL), “、”, “。”, or “.” cannot be entered.

*5 If there is the cursor at the end of the text, all characters are deleted.

How characters are counted

One double-byte character is counted as two single-byte characters.

A single-byte dakuten/handakuten mark is counted as a single character.

Pictograph/Emoticon List

Pictograph List

Enter reading to convert to pictographs.

Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph
はーと、はあと		はれ		おーけー		れすとらん		はた		ししご		まるまる、しろうひょう	
はーと、はあと		くもり		えぬじー		きさでん		すのぼ		おとめご		きけん、けいこく	
しつれん、はーと、はあと		あめ、かさ		め		ぼー		ほけつとべる、ほげべる		てんびんご		きんし	
はーと、はあと		ゆき		みみ		びーる、さけ		たばこ、まっえん		さそりご		あき、くうしつ、くうせき、くうしゃ	
かお、にこ		かみなり		くー		とっくり、さげ		きんえん		いてご		ごうかく	
かお、むか		うずまき、たいふう		ちよき、ふい		わいん、さげ		かめら		やぎご		まんしつ、まんせき、まんしゃ	
かお、かなしい		きり		ばー		はんぼーがー		かばん		みずがめご		いち	
かお、かなしい		ごさめ		おーけー、くつど、ないず		くるーぼー		ほん		うおご		に	
かお、ふらふら		いぬ		あし		さくらんぼ、ちりりー		りほん		しんげつ、つき		さん	
かお		ねこ		はしる、ひと		ちかーりつぷ、はな		ふれぜんと		つき		よん、し	
かお、にこ		かたつむり		じてんしゃ		ばなな		ぼーすでー		はんげつ、つき		ご	
かお、あせ		ひよこ		でんしゃ		りんご		てれび		みかづき、つき		ろく	
かお、あせ		べんぎん		ちかてつ		め		げむ		まんげつ、つき		なな、しち	
かお、むか		さかな		しんかんせん		もみじ		しーでー		あいもーど		はち	
かお、ほげ		うま		くるま		さくら		べる、ちゃべる		あいもーど		きゅう、く	
はーと		ぶた		おんま		おにぎり、おむすび		おにぎり		あいあぶり		ぜろ	
かお、べー		おんぶ		げーき		おなか、どるぶくろ		あいあぶり		はーと、はあと			
かお、ういんく		おんぶ		ふね		らーめん、どんぶり		ばそこん		どこも		ずべど	
かお、にこ、うれいし		おんせん		ひこうき		ばん、しよぼん		れんち、こうく		どこも		だいや	
かお、がまん、かなしい		かわいい		よと、リモート		ぶていっく		えんげつ		ゆうりょう		くらーぼー、くらぶ	
ねこ		きす		くりすます		はるみ、びまういん		おうかん		ふりーむりょう		やじるし、まぎた	
かお、かなしい		ひかひか、まらまら		いえ		からおけ		ゆわ		あいでー		やじるし、まぎた	
かお、なみだ、かなしい		ひらめき		びる		えいが		すなごけい、とけい		かぎ、しーくれつと、ぼすわーど		やじるし、ひだりうえ	
かお、うまい		むか、いかり		ゆうびんきょく		ゆうえんち		おちや、ゆのみ		りたーん		やじるし、ひだりした	
かお		ほんち		びょういん		おんがく		うでどけい、とけい		くりあ		やじるし、ひだりした	
かお、げっそりまげ		ぼくだん		ぎんこう		あーと		くつ		むしめがね、るべ、まーち		やじるし、しろうけ	
やじるし、くつど		ねる、ねむい	zzz	ぎんこう、えーとーいーえむ		えんげき		ていーしつ、しつ		にゅー		かちんこ	
やじるし、ぼつど		びっくり		はてる		いべんと		さいん		はた		ふくる	
でんわ		びっくり		こんびに		ちげつと		くちべに、けいよう		ふりーだいやる		べん	
でんわ、けいれい		びっくり		がりりん、すたんど		すげーつ		しんぎ、しーばん、ずばん		しーだいやる		ひとかけ	
めーる		しよげき、いらいら		ちゅうしゃじょう		やきゅう		めがね		もばきゅー		いす	
らぶれたー		あせ		かこう		ごるふ		くるまいす		くりっご		よる、つき	
めも		あせ		なみ		にす		おひつじご		こひーらいと		ずーん	
でんわ		だっしゅ		ふじさん、やま		さかー		おうしご		ていーむ、せーと、まーく、しろうけ		おん	
めーる		-		しんごう		すきー		ふたごご		まるひ		えんど	
ふあつくす		-		といれ		ぼすげつと、ぼすげ		かにご		りさいくる		とけい	

- The pictographs may not appear properly depending on the receiving model. In addition, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode. Pictographs other than , , and appear as spaces in SMS.

Emoticon List

(^_^)	(+_+)	(^^<	Φ(。_。)	(^^)Y☆Y(^^)
o(^-^o	(-_-)	(☆_☆)	(^人^)	o(^-^o)(o^-^o)
(^0^)/	(v_v)	(ノ><)/	<(^_>	(ノ^0^)/
p(^^)"q	(T_T)	(-_-#)	(^_且^)	(^o^)\(-_-)
(>_<)	(≡_≡)	(〃;)	\(^-::)	(UoU)。。。)
(X_X)	(@_@)	(-_-メ)	(#^_^#)	(^^)\(^o^)
m(_)_m	(?_?)	(^▽^)	(^0)=3	\^o^/
f^_^;	(;_);)	!(^^)!	(;^_^)	(TT_TTT)
(:;)	(O_O)	o(><)o	(^~^;)	??(^o。)??
(.-;)	(^_)	(。o;)	(^▽^;)	(^-)-☆

Phrase List

Internet	1	.ne.jp	Private	1	遊びに行こう
	2	.co.jp		2	飲みに行きませんか？
	3	.ac.jp		3	遅れます
	4	.or.jp		4	変更します
	5	.go.jp		5	中止です
	6	.com		6	先に行きます
	7	@docomo.ne.jp		7	先に帰ります
	8	http://		8	時間です
	9	www.		9	何してるの？
Greetings	1	おはようございます	Reply	1	OKです
	2	おやすみなさい		2	NGです
	3	昨日は、どうもありがとうございました		3	ありがとう
	4	行ってきます		4	ごめんなさい
	5	いってらっしゃい		5	待ってて
	6	お疲れ様でした		6	今忙しい
	7	お世話になっております		7	後で連絡入れます
	8	こんにちは		8	保留です
	9	こんばんは		9	キャンセルです
Business	1	直行します	Original phrase	1	-----
	2	直帰します		2	-----
	3	休暇をとります		3	-----
	4	半休します		4	-----
	5	電車遅延のため、遅れます		5	-----
	6	本日の会議は中止となりました		6	-----
	7	出欠をご連絡ください		7	-----
	8	次の指示を待ってください		8	-----
	9	携帯の電源を切ります		9	-----

- Original phrases are not registered in handset at the time of purchase.

Using the Calculator

Example of various calculations

Example calculations		Operation	Displayed result	
Addition, subtraction, multiplication, division	$14 \times 3 + 5 =$	$14[\times]3[+]5[=]$	47	
	$(-24) \div 4 - 2 =$	$[-]24[\div]4[-]2[=]$	-8	
Constants	$34 + 57 =$	$34[+]57[=]$	91	
	$45 + 57 =$	$45[+]57[=]$	102	
	$48 - 23 =$	$48[-]23[=]$	25	
	$14 - 23 =$	$14[-]23[=]$	-9	
	$68 \times 25 =$	$68[\times]25[=]$	1,700	
	$68 \times 40 =$	$68[\times]40[=]$	2,720	
Percentages	What is 10% of 200?	$200[\times]10[\%]$	20	
	9 is what % of 36?	$9[\div]36[\%]$	25	
Consumption tax calculation	How much tax is included in 3,000 yen?	$3000[\text{TAX}]$	142 Tax	
	How much is 3,000 yen without tax?	$3000[\text{TAX}][\text{TAX}]$	2,858 -TAX	
Premiums, discounts	10% increase of 200?	$200[+]10[\%]$ (Or $200[\times]10[\%][+]1[=]$)	220	
	20% discount of 500?	$500[-]20[\%]$ (Or $500[\times]20[\%][-]1[=]$)	400	
Powers	$(4^3)^2 =$	$4[\times][=][\times][=]$	4,096	
Inverse numbers	$1/8 =$	$8[\div][=]$	0.125	
Memory calculations	Sum	$27 \times 5 =$	$[CM]27[\times]5[M+]$	M 135
		$+ 87 \div 3 =$	$87[\div]3[M+]$	M 29
		$+ 68 + 15 =$	$68[+]15[M+]$	M 83
		(Sum) =	$[RM]$ also functions as a [=]	M 247
Temporary memory	$(13 + 3 \times 4) \times (50 - 45) =$	$[CM]13[M+]3[\times]4[M+]50[-]45[\times][RM][=]$	M 125	
Constant memory	$135 \times (12 + 14) =$	$[CM]12[+]14[M+]$	M 26	
	$(12 + 14) \div 5 =$	$135[\times][RM][=]$ $[RM][\div]5[=]$	M 3,510 M 5.2	

- [M] appears when a value other than 0 is in memory.

Note

- Press \square (CM) to clear the memory before starting.
- Numbers after the decimal point are left off when calculating tax.
Example: If 120 [TAX] is pressed, [5Tax] appears.

When [E] appears

- When [E] appears as a result, no further calculations can be made. Press \square (C/CE).

- ① When dividing by 0 (Example: $5 \div 0 [=]$)
- ② When the number of integers in the memory exceeds 12 digits (Example: $[CM] 999999999999 [M+] 1 [M+]$)
- ③ When the number of integers in a calculation is 12 digits or more (Example: $1000000000 \div 0.01 [=]$)

Multiaccess Combinations

The following are the main combinations of transmission functions operable simultaneously.

Transmission type	Voice call		Video-phone		i-mode	i-mode mail		SMS		Data trans. (packet)		Data trans. (64K)		PushTalk		Push-Talk-Plus Network connection	Positioning location	1Seg
	Make	Receive	Make	Receive		Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive			
Phone	△ ^{*1}	△ ^{*1}	×	× ^{*4}	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	× ^{*4}	×	× ^{*4}	×	○	○
Videophone	×	× ^{*4}	×	× ^{*4}	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	× ^{*4}	×	×	×	×	×
i-mode	○	○	△ ^{*6}	△ ^{*2}	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	× ^{*4}	△ ^{*3}	△ ^{*7}	×	○	○
i-αppli transmission	△ ^{*3}	△ ^{*3}	△ ^{*3}	△ ^{*2}	×	△ ^{*3}	○	△ ^{*3}	○	×	×	×	× ^{*4}	△ ^{*3}	△ ^{*7}	×	△ ^{*3}	×
Transmitting data (packet)	○	○	×	× ^{*4}	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	× ^{*4}	×	×	×	×	○
Transmitting data (64K)	×	× ^{*4}	×	× ^{*4}	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	× ^{*4}	×	×	×	×	×
PushTalk transmission	×	△ ^{*5}	×	× ^{*4}	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	× ^{*4}	× ^{*8}	× ^{*4}	×	×	×
PushTalkPlus (Network connection)	○	○	×	× ^{*4}	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	× ^{*4}	○	○	×	×	×
1Seg	○	○	×	△ ^{*9}	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×

○: Current transmission is retained and new transmission is processed.

×: Current transmission is retained (Cannot process new transmission).

△: New transmission is processed depending on the condition.

*1 Available when subscribed to Call Waiting (☎ P. 432).

*2 Receive a Videophone call or continue packet transmission (☎ P. 85).

*3 i-mode/i-αppli transmission is disconnected and new transmission is processed.

*4 The call is saved in Received calls (excluding PushTalk reconnected call).

*5 When [Set PT arrival act] is set to [Call Rejection] (Default setting: [Answer]), the current PushTalk call is continued. Change [Set PT arrival act] to a setting other than [Call Rejection] to answer a voice call during a PushTalk call (☎ P. 97). After the setting is changed, PushTalk transmission is terminated if voice call is received and answered. If the voice call is ignored, the PushTalk is not terminated.

*6 Videophone call is transmitted after disconnecting i-mode connection.

*7 When [i-mode arrival act] is set to [PushTalk preferred] (default setting), i-mode and i-αppli transmissions are disconnected and new transmission is processed (☎ P. 198).

*8 Sending a transmission to add a member is possible only when a PushTalk sender is Myself (PushTalk is not saved in Redial).

*9 When an incoming call is answered, 1Seg is terminated.

Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations

The following are the main combinations of transmission functions operable simultaneously.

Additional function	Multi Assistant screen/Call from history	Mail/Read mail	Dial Input/Voice call	PushTalk calling	Videophone	Schedule/View schedule	Calculator	Text memo	Open phonebook	Phonebook	Manner mode/Light/Power saver set	SD-Audio	Supportbook	GPS	ToruCa	Full Browser bookmark/i-mode bookmark	Full Browser/Search the Internet	i-mode	Document Viewer	Data box(list screen)	1Seg menu	i-αppli/C card content/DCMX	i-Channel	Manga&BookReader	Music&Video Channel	
Current function																										
Custom/Basic menu	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-αppli	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PDF Viewer/My Documents	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
SD-Audio	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Activate 1Seg	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Phonebook/PushTalk phonebook	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Text memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Schedule	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Data box(list screen)/My picture/i-motion*/Melody*/Chara-den	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Video player	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Music player	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Voice call	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Manga&BookReader	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
ToruCa	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Full Browser	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Mail/Compose message	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
GPS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Music&Video Channel	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Data transmission (packet)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
IC card content/DCMX	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Document Viewer	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-mode/i-Channel	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

○: Available function

×: Unavailable function. Displayed in gray.

* Background playback is not available for Melody player or i-motion player.

- Multi Assistant may not be available when using a function not listed under "Current function" in the table.
- Combinations shown in the table may not be entirely correct depending on the status of the application.
- Multi Assistant is sometimes not available as shown above when memory is running low.
- Document Viewer may not be available when searching in i-mode/Full Browser/Internet.
- Press [↶] in the Multi Assistant screen to recall "dial input".
- The simultaneous execution of activating SD-Audio and using the microSD Memory Card from other functions is impossible.

Watching 1Seg in Multi Window

The following shows functions that can be activated using Multi Window (W) while watching 1Seg.

- i-mode*1
- Full Browser
- i-Channel
- Supportbook
- Play list and music data list of Music player
- Mail*2, 3
- Phonebook
- ToruCa
- Folder list and file list in Data box*5
- GPS*4
- Schedule
- Calculator
- Text memo
- Manga&BookReader
- Document Viewer

- *1 [Reset i-mode] is not available.
- *2 Available in Multi Window (L).
- *3 [Mail setting] cannot be selected.
- *4 [-αppli] is not available.
- *5 [Music&Video ch] is not available.

Note

- Text input is not available in Multi Window (W).

Services Available from the FOMA Terminal

Services available from the FOMA terminal	Phone number
Directory assistance service (fees apply: assistance fee + call fee) ※ Phone numbers of customers who decline being listed are not available.	(No area code) 104
Telegrams (fees apply: telegram fee)	(No area code) 115
Time tone service (fees apply)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (fees apply)	Area code of region + 177
Police emergencies	(No area code) 110
Fire department/Medical assistance	(No area code) 119
Emergencies and accidents at sea	(No area code) 118
Disaster message (fees apply)	(No area code) 171
Collect call (fees apply: assistance fee + call fee)	(No area code) 106

Note

- An additional 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) handling fee is charged to the recipient for each call when collect calls (106) are made (As of October 2007).
- An additional 100 yen (105 yen including tax) directory fee is charged when using directory assistance (104). People with disabilities in vision or upper limbs can receive this service free of charge. For details, call 116 (NTT sales counter) from a landline phone (As of October 2007).
- If landline phones subscribed to "Call forwarding" is set to forward calls to mobile phones, callers may hear the phone ringing even if the mobile phone is busy, outside the service area, in **Self mode**, or turned off depending on the settings for the landline phones/mobile phones.
- Services such as 116 (NTT sales counter), Dial Q2, message service and credit card calls are not available (Automatic credit card calls to a FOMA terminal can be made from a landline telephone or payphone).
- This FOMA terminal supports "Location notification of emergency call".
When dialing an emergency number such as 110, 118, and 119, the information of your location (location information) is automatically notified to the agency that receive the emergency call (e.g. the police station). Depending on your location and the reception status of the signal, the agency that received the emergency call may not be able to confirm the exact location.
When the location information is notified, the name of the agency that received the emergency call appears in stand-by.
If you are not sending your caller ID by calling with **184** added or other means, your location information and phone number are not notified. However, if the agency that received the emergency call considers your location information and phone number necessary for important purposes, such as life saving, the agency can retrieve them regardless of your settings.
In addition, the area/timing to introduce "Location notification of emergency call" depends on the state of preparation in each agency that receives emergency calls.
- When calling 110, 119, and 118 from your FOMA terminal, the police or fire stations may return your call for verification purposes. State that you are calling from a mobile phone, and give your phone number and exact location.
Remain stationary to ensure that you are not disconnected while making an emergency call, and keep handset turned on to receive calls for about 10 minutes afterwards.
- Depending on the region, calls to the police or fire station may not be connected. In such cases, use the nearest payphone or landline phone.

Options and Accessories

Combine the FOMA terminal with various optional accessories (sold separately) for expanded personal and business use.

Some products may not be available in certain areas. Contact a DoCoMo Shop or retailer for details. Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details.

- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02^{*1}
- Battery Pack SH14
- Desktop Holder SH16
- Back Cover SH17
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001^{*2}/P002^{*2}
- Stereo Earphone Set P001^{*2}
- Earphone Terminal P001^{*2}
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna^{*3}
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01^{*4}
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use^{*1}
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01^{*5}
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- In-Car Holder 01^{*6}
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Carry Case L 01
- FOMA USB Cable^{*4}
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)^{*3}
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

*1 Refer to P. 40 and P. 42 for details on charging an AC adapter.

*2 Earphone/Microphone with switch, Stereo earphone set, and Earphone terminal cannot be used without Earphone plug adapter.

*3 Use only in Japan.

*4 Use of USB HUB may not work correctly.

*5 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to charge and connect to FOMA SH905i with the USB cable.

*6 Activate Side key guard settings to use the In-Car Holder 01.

Using with External Devices

Using supported external devices, play back movies saved on microSD Memory Cards on the FOMA terminal.*

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (☎ P. 335).

For details on compatible devices, refer to <http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh905i/>. Or, contact the number below.

- Play i-motion created on external devices (including music data in AAC format) on the FOMA terminal (☎ P. 383).

* Some movies cannot be played back depending on the file format or the type of external device.

Sharp Data Communication Support Center

TEL: 03-5396-2351

Hours: 10:00 A.M. to 12:00 noon, 1:00 P.M. to 5:00 P.M., Monday through Friday
(Closed on weekends, national holidays, and company holidays)

- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

About Movie Player Software


QuickTime™ Player (Free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3+3GPP) provided by Apple Computer, Inc. is required to play back movies on a PC.





QuickTime™ Player can be downloaded from the following web page.


<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>


- To download, a PC connected to the Internet is required. Additional transmission fees are charged for downloading.
- Refer to the Apple Computer, Inc. web page for details on the operating environment, downloading, and usage instructions.

Troubleshooting

Check to see if software update is necessary. If so, perform update (Updating Software  P. 498).


Problem	Explanation	Page
Does not function	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the FOMA terminal turned off? ● Is the battery level sufficient? ● Is the battery pack inserted properly? 	P. 45 P. 45 P. 39
Does not turn on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Was  pressed for 2+ seconds? ● Is the battery level sufficient? If handset does not turn on after alert tone sounds, recharge the battery. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the battery pack inserted properly? 	P. 45 P. 45 P. 39
Power turns off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the IC portion of the FOMA card dirty? ● Is the battery pack connector terminal or FOMA terminal charger terminal dirty? 	P. 37 P. 39
Does not recharge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the battery pack inserted properly? ● Is the temperature of the FOMA terminal or battery high? ● Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean terminal with a cotton swab. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the AC adapter connector properly connected to the FOMA terminal and Desktop holder? ● Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder? 	P. 39 P. 41 – P. 42 P. 43 P. 43
Handset is recharged but quickly loses power	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder? ● Is the battery still usable? ● Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean terminal with a cotton swab. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Battery duration varies depending on handset use. 	P. 43 P. 41 – P. 41
Keys do not respond	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the FOMA terminal turned off? ● Is All lock or Key guard active? 	P. 45 P. 145 P. 149
TOUCH CRUISER pad does not function properly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Make the finger stand a little bit to operate easily. ● Turn the FOMA terminal off, and then turn it on again. 	P. 33 P. 45
 appears and calls cannot be made	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the handset outside the service area or in a place with a weak signal? 	P. 28
 appears and calls cannot be made	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Self mode set? 	P. 147
Calls cannot be made from the phonebook	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is phonebook Function lock set? ● Is All lock enabled? 	P. 147 P. 145
Calls cannot be made with the dial keys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Keypad dial lock set? ● Is All lock enabled? 	P. 148 P. 145
Busy signal sounds after dialing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Was 090, 080, 070 or the area code dialed? ● Does  appear? ● If the other party's signal is weak, the call may not connect. 	P. 51 P. 28 –
Call is interrupted or disconnects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the handset in an area with a weak signal? ● Is the battery level sufficient? 	P. 28 P. 45
The other party's voice is too loud or is distorted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the earpiece volume too high? 	P. 69
Clicks sound during a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The FOMA terminal has a weak signal and is switching areas. 	–
When saving to phonebook, cannot select [Sent messages] or [Rcvd messages]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Show sent messages or Show received messages set to [OFF]? 	P. 150
When a message is received, set ring tone does not sound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Receive/Auto send display set to [Operation first]? 	P. 236

Problem	Explanation	Page
Ring tone does not sound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the phone ring volume set to [Silent]? ● Is the battery level sufficient? ● Is the FOMA terminal turned off? ● Is a call in progress? ● Is a call on hold? ● Is Ring start time set? ● Is Accept calls set? ● Is Reject calls set? ● Is Reject by reason of non-disclosure set? ● Is Reject unknown set? ● Is the Voice Mail Service active and is the ringing time set to [0 seconds]? ● Is Public mode (Drive mode) active? ● Is Manner mode active? 	<p>P. 122</p> <p>P. 45</p> <p>P. 45</p> <p>P. 66</p> <p>P. 70</p> <p>P. 153</p> <p>P. 151</p> <p>P. 152</p> <p>P. 152</p> <p>P. 153</p> <p>P. 430</p> <p>P. 71</p> <p>P. 127</p>
When a message is received, a different ring tone sounds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a particular individual, that mail ring tone sounds. ● When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a particular group, that mail ring tone sounds. ● When different mail ring tones are set for both individual and group, the mail ring tone for the individual sounds. ● When multiple messages are received, the specific mail ring tone of the last person sounds. ● When the other party's mail address is <i>phone number@docomo.ne.jp</i>, save only the phone number for the mail address in the phonebook and set a specific mail ring tone. ● Is the sender's mail address saved correctly in the phonebook or is a specific mail ring tone set? ● When SMS is received, specified mail ring tone sounds if set in phonebook. ● Is the phone number saved correctly? 	<p>P. 104</p> <p>P. 109</p> <p>P. 121</p> <p>–</p> <p>P. 104</p> <p>P. 104</p> <p>P. 104</p> <p>P. 102</p>
When a call or mail is received, LED flashes in another way than settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When a call or mail is received from the other party for which phonebook called LED/phonebook mail LED is set, LED flashes according to the LED settings. ● When a call or mail is received from the other party for which group called LED/group mail LED is set, LED flashes according to the LED settings that are made for the group. ● When a call or mail is received from the other party for which both phonebook called LED/phonebook mail LED and group called LED/group mail LED are set, LED flashes according to the LED settings made with phonebook called LED/phonebook mail LED. ● When multiple messages are received, LED flashes according to the LED settings made for the last received mail address. ● When the other party's mail address is <i>phone number@docomo.ne.jp</i>, save only the phone number for the mail address in the phonebook and make the LED settings. ● Is the sender's mail address saved correctly in the phonebook and are LED settings made? ● When SMS is received, LED settings become valid if made in phonebook. ● Is the phone number saved correctly? 	<p>P. 104</p> <p>P. 109</p> <p>P. 138</p> <p>–</p> <p>P. 104</p> <p>P. 104</p> <p>P. 104</p> <p>P. 102</p>
[Service not registered] appears	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Subscription is required to use i-mode. ● If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart. 	<p>–</p> <p>–</p>
The date appears backwards	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Select language set to [日本語]? 	<p>P. 46</p>
[Please wait] appears and cannot be cleared	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The audio line/the packet communication system is not in service, or the audio line network/the packet communication network is extremely congested. Try again later. 	<p>–</p>
Cannot make/receive calls, send/receive mail or use i-mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the battery level sufficient? ● Does  appear? ● Is Self mode set to [ON]? 	<p>P. 45</p> <p>P. 28</p> <p>P. 147</p>
Cannot enter text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Has the character limit been exceeded? 	<p>–</p>

Problem	Explanation	Page
Display is blank	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the FOMA terminal turned off? ● Is the battery level sufficient? ● Is Power saver mode active? ● Is Auto power OFF set? 	P. 45 P. 45 P. 133 P. 399
Message on DoCoMo web page or [お知らせ] (News) on iMenu says software update is necessary	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Software needs to be updated. Update software. 	P. 498
IC card (for FeliCa functions) is unusable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is IC card lock or Omakase Lock all enabled? ● Is the battery level sufficient? 	P. 146 P. 272 P. 45
Screen is washed out	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Private filter set to enabled? Press  (Z) to disable Private filter. 	P. 140
Display is too dark or keypad backlight does not light	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Brightness in Light/Power saver set to [Automatic]? Brightness of the display and keypad backlight are automatically adjusted according to the surrounding light. 	P. 134
Brightness sensor does not function properly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Are there any stickers attached to the brightness sensor? 	P. 24
Handset makes sounds or vibrates while using the camera	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Camera uses a linear motor to move the lens, which may cause sounds or vibrations. 	P. 168
Total call charge does not increase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Total call charge for FOMA card does not increase when maximum limit (approximately 16,770,000 yen) has been reached. Reset total call charge to 0 yen. 	P. 413
Cannot position the present location	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● i-mode subscription is required to use the service. 	–
Cannot use location notification/location provision	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the location service client set correctly? ● Is Location provision ON/OFF set to [Loc. provision:OFF]? ● Is the settings required for location provision made with Service settings? 	P. 282 P. 279 P. 281
Data is not transferred	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is USB HUB used? Use of USB HUB may not work correctly. 	–
Cannot watch 1Seg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the handset outside the area of a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service or in a place with a broadcast wave? ● Is the FOMA card properly inserted? ● Is Channel setting set? 	– P. 37 P. 287

List of Error Messages

- A three-digit number will also appear with some messages. Some of the numbers are codes used only by DoCoMo.

Message	Explanation	Page
[B number dialing is not available when using abroad. A number dialing will be performed]	● Appears if calling is attempted with Number B when the 2in1 is used overseas. Select [Call] to call with Number A. Select [No ID dialing] to call without sending ID.	P. 440
[Data in B mode phonebook is unavailable]	● Appears if sending PushTalk is attempted to the person whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B] when the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode].	P. 111
[Database recovery will be performed]	● Restoration for the database in Data box is performed. The following information or others in Data box may not be restored. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Damaged data ■ Folders created by users However, data in the folders are not deleted and remain in the source folders. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ i-motion and music data with file restrictions ■ PDF files that are not pre-installed ■ Some data saved in Data box, which is used by i-appli 	–
[Disable accept calls]	● Accept calls is set. Disable and try again.	P. 151
[Enter correct Network security code]	● Appears when an incorrect network security code is entered. Enter correct network security code. FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring FOMA terminal and identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop in the case of a forgotten network security code.	P. 142
[Error in image. Does not work correctly]	● Flash movie has an error.	–
[Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls]	● Appears when PushTalk transmissions are sent to five members or more from the PushTalk phonebook. Set four members or less.	P. 95
[Function is locked]	● Phonebook Function lock is set. Disable and try again.	P. 147
[Keypad dial lock]	● Disable Keypad dial lock when calling from functions other than phonebook (excluding microSD Memory Card phonebook) and Redial.	P. 148
[Memory is full]	● Appears when the FOMA terminal handset phonebook already has 1,000 entries saved and a new party is about to be added without entering the memory number.	P. 100
[Music&Video Channel denied] [Music&Video Channel denied.Program deleted]	● Music&Video Channel service is not subscribed. Subscription is required to use Music&Video Channel.	–
[Omakase Lock activated]	● Appears when Omakase Lock is set.	P. 146
[Out of service area]	● Appears when network service is attempted or making a Videophone call but handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Retry after moving to a location where  appears.	P. 28
[PIN1 code blocked]	● Appears when power is turned on while PIN1 code is locked. Enter correct PUK when prompt appears to disable PIN lock.	P. 145
[Please enter security code]	● Appears when a restricted operation was attempted while Function lock is set. Enter correct terminal security code to temporarily disable Function lock and continue operation.	P. 147
[Insert UIM]	● Make sure the FOMA card is properly inserted.	P. 37

Message	Explanation	Page
[Please wait]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The audio line/the packet communication system is not in service, or the audio line network/the packet communication network is extremely congested. Try again later. Press a dial key to erase the message. Calls to 110, 119, and 118 are available. However, a call may not be connected depending on phone line conditions. 	– –
[Please wait for a while (packet)]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The packet communication system is not in service, or the packet communication network is extremely congested. Try again later. 	–
[PUK blocked]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when power is turned on or a FOMA card operation is used while PUK is blocked. Contact a DoCoMo Shop. 	P. 143
[Record error]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when recording is attempted after the maximum number of items is recorded, and Voice recorder ends. Delete unnecessary data before recording. 	P. 357
[Recording failed]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when shooting is started with the save destination set to the microSD Memory Card and there is no available space, Camera mode ends and the stand-by display reappears. 	–
[Requested software unavailable]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if mail-type i-appli software is activated when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode]. 	P. 250
[Secret data saved]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when Secret mode is not active and secret data is about to be sent by 2-touch dialing. 	P. 116 P. 150
[Security code is wrong] [Please enter 4-8 digits]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when an incorrect terminal security code is entered. Enter correct terminal security code. FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring FOMA terminal and identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop in the case of a forgotten terminal security code. 	P. 142
[Self mode]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when a restricted operation was attempted while in Self mode. 	P. 147
[Services are full. MUSIC of overwritten service is unable to play. Overwrite?]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the maximum number of available MUSIC (subscription) services has been exceeded (50 services). When [Yes] is selected, the MUSIC (subscription) service is overwritten with the oldest expiration date first. In addition, Uta-hodai, which is downloaded from the overwritten MUSIC (subscription) service, becomes unavailable. 	–
[Some items cannot be copied. Copy anyway?]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Since capacity of FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook differ, only the first phone number/mail address is copied to FOMA card. Characters and character limits also differ. Appears if some data cannot be copied. Select [Yes] to copy the first phone number/mail address. 	–
[This UIM cannot be recognized]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when a FOMA card not usable by the terminal may have been inserted. Appears when FOMA card may be damaged or not properly inserted. Make sure the FOMA card is properly inserted. 	– P. 37
[Unable to authenticate. Register symbol again if error continues]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when writing authentication is failed. If errors persist, perform Register symbol again. 	P. 143
[Unable to record any more]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again. 	P. 77
[Unable to renew memory number xxx]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores secret data when Secret mode is not active. Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores an entry for Accept/Reject calls. 	P. 116 P. 150 P. 151
[Unable to save part of data. OK to save?]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when invalid data is included to save the characters scanned by Character reader to Phonebook. Select [Yes] to save. 	–
[Unable to use. Connected to external device]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i-mode can only be disconnected. Other i-mode operations are not available because handset is connected to an external device. 	P. 481

Message	Explanation	Page
[Unable to use PushTalk from call logs of Number B.]	● Appears if sending PushTalk is attempted from Redial or Received calls of Number B when the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode].	P. 55 P. 56
[Unable to use PushTalk in B mode]	● Appears if sending PushTalk or retrieving PushTalk phonebook is attempted when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].	P. 89 P. 94
[Unable to use this function]	● Appears if composing i-mode mail is attempted from a phonebook when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].	P. 111
[You already have 3 voice memos saved]	● Three Record messages (voice call) and less than two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again.	P. 77
[You already have two messages saved]	● Less than three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again.	P. 77

i-mode

- Numbers in brackets () appearing in i-mode error messages are sent from the i-mode center as a code to distinguish between errors.

Message	Explanation	Page
[Already downloaded]	● The same version of the software has been already downloaded.	P. 260
[An attached file will be deleted]	● File with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded or replied to with Reply with quote. After the message appears, the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.	P. 214
[Area mail received]	● When Area Mail is set to be received and is received, this message may appear. The screen before reception reappears soon.	P. 240
[Attachable size exceeded. Unable to attach]	● File exceeds size limit and cannot be attached. Delete some of message text or send message without attaching the file.	P. 214
[Authentication canceled]	● Appears when [Cancel] is selected or [CLR] is pressed in the authentication screen.	–
[Authentication type is not supported (401)]	● Appears when authentication is not possible. Previous screen reappears.	–
[Capacity exceeded. Some data may be lost. End editing?]	● Appears when message text alone exceeds 10,000 bytes. Select [Yes] to open compose message screen. Excess data is deleted and [X] appears. Depending on mail content (text, images, etc.), excess data may not be deleted. To re-edit, select [No] and the message entry screen reappears. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less.	–
[Certificate is rejected (tampered)]	● Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.	P. 181
[Connection failed]	● Appears when host is set incorrectly. Properly reset [Host selection] in i-mode settings. ● Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.	P. 197 P. 180
[Connection failed (403)]	● Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.	P. 180
[Connection interrupted]	● i-mode has been disconnected due to a weak signal. Try i-mode again after moving to an area with a strong signal. ● When this message appears in spite of a strong signal and [Y] , the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.	P. 28 –
(During Ir exchange)	● Appears when canceling Ir exchange.	P. 354
[Connection suspended]	● Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select [Yes] to try again.	P. 354
[No response Retry?]	● Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select [Yes] to try again.	P. 354
[Authentication failed. Retry?]	● Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select [Yes] to try again.	P. 354

Message	Explanation	Page
[Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion]	● Appears when the file of Standard type i-motion that can be split-downloaded or Streaming type i-motion exceeds 10 MB and cannot be downloaded.	P. 201
[Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion]	● Appears when Standard type i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and cannot be downloaded.	P. 201
[Continue using i-αppli and transmit data?]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When [No] is selected for [Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?], this message appears when i-αppli once again attempts transmission. ● To transmit and continue use of i-αppli, select [Yes]. To not transmit and continue use of i-αppli, select [No]. Select [Terminate] to end i-αppli. 	P. 250 –
[Data in IC card is full. Unable to download. Delete service?]	● Appears when space of IC card is not enough to download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli. Select [Yes] to display the already registered Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli list and the capacity (bytes) in the IC card. After checking how much capacity is lacking, select services to be deleted and start i-αppli to delete them. Depending on the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, however, only the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli list appears after selecting [Yes]. In this case, select i-αppli to be deleted from the list.	–
[Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when data transmission is noticeably frequent during i-αppli use. ● To transmit and continue use of i-αppli, select [Yes]. To not transmit and continue use of i-αppli, select [No]. Select [Terminate] to end i-αppli. 	P. 250 –
[Download canceled]	● Appears when downloading is canceled during download.	–
[Download failed]	● Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.	–
[Invalid content Download failed]	● Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.	–
[Duplicate address deleted]	● A duplicate address is deleted when the same mail address is set as address or broadcast for i-mode mail.	P. 210
[Folder is full]	● If i-mode mail is received when there is no available space in memory and no unprotected read mail, [Folder is full] appears. [0] appears for the number of messages in receive complete screen.	–
[Handset memory is full. Unable to receive anymore] or [UIM is full. Unable to receive anymore]	● Appears when FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card memory are full. SMS cannot be received. Check the unread i-mode mail/SMS (☞ P. 218, P. 244), disable the protect (☞ P. 230), and delete the unnecessary i-mode mail/SMS (☞ P. 230, P. 246) on FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card.	–
[“i-αppli To” function is not set]	● Appears when attempting to start software, unauthorized to be linked, from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, or i-mode mail. The software could not be started.	P. 258
[Input error (205)]	● Appears when server is about to reset contents after sending text entered in a site or Internet web page. All text and settings entered on screen are deleted (Contents sent before the error message appeared has already been sent).	–
[Invalid data. Connection cannot be established (400)]	● Connection cannot be established due to errors in sites/Internet web pages. Check whether the URL is correct.	P. 184 P. 304
[Invalid UIM. download/ Upgrade/start failed or Invalid UIM. Unable to save]	● Appears when the information of an inserted FOMA card (UIM) is different from that mapped to Felica.	–

Message	Explanation	Page
[Invalid UIM. Requested service not available]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when attempting to view screen memo or Message R/F protected by FOMA card restriction functions. ● Appears when attempting to activate i-αpli from the software list. ● Appears when attempting to activate i-αpli from sites, Internet web pages, or i-mode mail. 	P. 38 – P. 38
[Is the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone used through the reader/writer?]	● Appears when ToruCa auto reading check is set to [OFF] and the automatic reading function is attempted to use with the scanning device. Select [Yes] to set ToruCa auto reading check to [ON] and make the automatic reading function available.	P. 272
[May be unable to fully acquire all data. Acquire data?]	● Appears when downloading standard type i-motion with unknown file size.	P. 201
[Memory low]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Software cannot be run due to lack of available memory. ● Processing suspended due to lack of available memory. When this message appears frequently, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart. 	– –
[Memory shortage. Return to Full Browser Menu]	● Appears if available memory space is lacking while viewing an Internet web page with Full Browser. In this case, select [Agree]. All the open windows are closed.	P. 305
[No content is available (204)]	● Appears when there is no data to display at the connected site or Internet web page.	–
[No more space Overwrite?]	● Appears when screen memo memory is full. Select [Yes] and select a screen memo to overwrite. Proceed to the save confirmation screen. Select [No] and the site or Internet web page reappears.	–
[No requested software]	● Appears when attempting to start a non-existent i-αpli software from i-mode mail or Ir exchange function.	P. 258
(During iC transmission) [No response]	● Appears when the other party could not be recognized.	–
[No response (408)]	● Transmission disconnected due to no reply from the site or Internet web page. Try again later.	P. 180
[Not enough space. Continue to overwrite?]	● Appears when the screen memo is larger than the available memory space. Select [Yes] and select a screen memo to overwrite. The screen memo is deleted upon selection. Select [No] and the site or Internet web page reappears.	–
[Out of service area]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal. To use i-mode service, move to a location where  appears. 	–
[Page is not found (404)]	● Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web page may not exist.	–
[Password is not correct (401)]	● Appears when authentication is not possible on the authentication screen.	–
[Phone/Terminal and UIM ID will be sent]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● May appear while viewing sites or Internet web pages. Select [Yes] to send "Terminal ID and UIM ID". To not send and return to the previous screen, select [Return] or press . ● "Terminal ID and UIM ID" are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset. ● "Terminal ID and UIM ID" are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age, and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation. 	P. 181 – –
[Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion]	● Appears when the file of Standard type i-motion that can be split-downloaded or Streaming type i-motion exceeds 10 MB and download is not completed.	P. 201

Message	Explanation	Page
[Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion]	● Appears when Standard type i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and download is not completed.	P. 201
[Requested software unavailable]	● Appears when attempting to start software from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, i-mode mail, or Ir exchange function, and the specified software could not be started.	P. 258
[Root certificate has expired. Connect?]	● Appears when a server certificate whose signature has expired is received. To connect without safety assured, select [Yes]. To not connect, select [No]. Set date and time.	P. 181
[Root certificate is not valid]	● Appears when a certificate set to Disable is received. Confirm why the certificate was set to Disable. When the certificate has no security problems, set it to Enable, and then reconnect to the site.	P. 199
[Save aborted]	● Appears when data cannot be saved during the download of i-αppli.	–
[Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download/update/run. Delete a service?]	● When the same service has already been downloaded, a new service cannot be downloaded/updated/run unless the already registered service is deleted. Select [Yes] to display the service to be deleted. Delete the registered service.	–
[Service not registered]	● i-mode is not subscribed to. Subscription is required to use i-mode. ● If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart.	P. 180 –
[Size of this page is not supported]	● Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed. ● Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.	P. 187 –
[SMS is full Unable to copy anymore]	● Appears when the maximum number of SMS are saved in the FOMA terminal handset or the FOMA card and no further SMS could be copied.	P. 245
[Software already updated]	● The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.	P. 260
[Software terminated due to security error]	● Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli. ● Appears when use of a function not permitted by the software is attempted. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.	P. 259 P. 259
[SSL Session cannot be established]	● Appears when the attempt to connect to a site or Internet web page supporting SSL session failed. Try again later.	P. 181
[SSL session failed]	● Appears when an error occurs during SSL authentication and the SSL session is disconnected.	P. 181
[This certificate has expired. Connect?]	● Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received. To connect without safety assured, select [Yes]. To not connect, select [No].	P. 181
[This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?]	● Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect without safety assured, select [Yes]. To not connect, select [No].	P. 181
[This data may not be replayed. Download?]	● Appears when i-motion in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.	P. 324
[This site is not certified. Connect?]	● Appears when a server certificate that cannot be verified on the FOMA terminal is received. To connect without safety assured, select [Yes]. To not connect, select [No].	P. 181
[This software contains an error]	● i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.	–
[This software contains an error. Unable to download]	● i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.	–

Message	Explanation	Page
[This software is not supported by this phone]	● Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.	–
[Time out]	● i-mode center is congested. Try again later.	–
[Too many unsent messages. Unable to activate]	● Unsent messages are full. New mail cannot be composed. Send or delete unsent messages and compose again.	P. 217 P. 230
[Too much data was entered]	● Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long. Retry after erasing some text.	–
[Transmission failed]	● Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When [Address is not valid] appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with [i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later], try sending again later. When [Target server is full] appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.	–
[Unable to open any more window]	● Appears if a new window cannot be opened when the number of frames which can be viewed is exceeded or the memory is low.	–
[Unable to protect anymore]	● Number of protected messages for Message R/F exceeds maximum. Disable protection.	P. 240
[Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)]	● Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.	P. 180
[URL address changed (301)]	● Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.	P. 188
[URL address is not valid (301)] [URL address is not valid (302)]	● Data received contains error and cannot be displayed. Received data is discarded.	–
[URL is too long to register]	● URL exceeds maximum number of characters and cannot be registered as a bookmark.	P. 188
[Usage is currently restricted. Try again later]	● Appears when excessive amounts of data is downloaded during a certain time span for users of the flat-rate i-mode packet transmission service. Connection will be restricted for a certain amount of time. Try i-mode again later.	P. 180
[以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした(561) Mails could not be sent to following address. ○○@△△△.ne.jp] ※ The mail address depends on the recipient address.	● Appears when mail could not be properly sent to a displayed address.	–
[“○△□.ne.jp”宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません(555) Unable to send. “○△□.ne.jp” is not available temporarily.] ※ The domain name depends on the recipient address.	● Appears when the line system is not in service, or when the line is extremely congested. Try again later.	–

Message	Explanation	Page
[An error has occurred Viewer will close]	● Appears when Document Viewer is activated and an error has occurred in analyzing while loading the next page. Appears when file data is corrupted.	–
[Document may not be fully displayed]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● File size is too large to be displayed in Document Viewer. ● Appears when file contains functions unsupported by Document Viewer. ● Appears when memory is low and Document Viewer does not start properly. ● Appears when connection times out while starting Document Viewer. Occurs when file requires an extended period of time for analysis. ● Appears when an attempt to display file properties failed. 	P. 364 P. 364 – – P. 366
[Memory is full. Cannot overwrite]	● Appears when memory is full and data cannot be overwritten.	–
[Memory is full. Unable to update]	● Appears when memory is full and data cannot be updated.	–
[Unable to activate]	● Appears when Document Viewer is activated but memory is too low to activate functions such as Magnifier or Zoom at selected area.	–

Data box



Message	Explanation	Page
[Battery low]	● Battery level is low. Camera mode cannot be activated. Use after fully charging the battery.	P. 40
[Copyright information is incorrect. Delete all from the WMA folder]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when WMA files in microSD Memory Card that have been played back with a FOMA terminal is attempted to be played back with other FOMA terminals. ● Appears when the database of the WMA file is damaged. 	P. 382 –
[Link set for data in folder. Unable to delete part of data]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when attempting to delete folders containing data that cannot be deleted, such as data set for stand-by, ring tone, etc., by performing Delete all folders. ● Appears when folders exist in folders such as xxxSHARP/xxxSH_UF/PRLxxx. Delete applicable folder with a PC or other devices, or format a microSD Memory Card. 	P. 347 P. 343
[Memory is almost full]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when the free space in the FOMA terminal handset memory is insufficient and the still picture mode/movie mode is activated. ● FOMA terminal handset memory is low. Delete other pictures to save image with current settings. 	– –
[Memory is full. Unable to save anymore]	● Appears when maximum number of entries is exceeded during copying. Delete unnecessary data and copy data again.	–
[Replay period has expired] [Replay period has expired. Delete?] [View period has expired. Delete?]	● Appears when attempting to play/display i-motion, Chaku-uta full® or an e-comic or Music&Video channels after the replay/view period or expiration date.	P. 203 P. 368 P. 377 P. 387
[This data can no longer be replayed] [This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?] [This data can no longer be viewed. Delete?]	● Appears when attempting to play/display i-motion, Chaku-uta full® or an e-comic or Music&Video channels after the allowable number of replays/views is exceeded.	P. 203 P. 368 P. 377 P. 387
[Replay period has not yet started] [View period has not yet started]	● Appears when attempting to play/display i-motion, Chaku-uta full® or an e-comic or Music&Video channels before the set replay/view period.	P. 203 P. 368 P. 377 P. 387
[Set the clock to play data] [Set date/time to view this data]	● Appears if date and time are not set correctly when attempting to play/display i-motion with replay restrictions or an e-comic with view restrictions in [Movable contents] folder.	P. 203 P. 368

Message	Explanation	Page
[This data cannot be replayed. Delete?] [This data cannot be viewed. Delete?]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when attempting to play/display i-motion, Chaku-uta full® or an e-comic with replay/view restrictions after resetting the time setting. ● Appears when attempting to play back Uta-hodai in the FOMA terminal handset without the license of the corresponding MUSIC (subscription) service. 	–
[To play this data, activate auto time adjust and adjust clock]	● Appears if date and time are not set correctly when attempting to play/display Chaku-uta full®, a WMA file or Music&Video channels with replay restrictions in the [Movable contents] folder.	P. 377 P. 388
[Unable to copy part of data]	● Appears when there are files or folders on the microSD Memory Card that were created on a PC or a handset other than the FOMA SH905i.	P. 337
[Unable to play. microSD memory is full]	● Appears if the free space of microSD Memory Card is 64K or less when attempting to play a WMA file.	P. 382
[(IPs (Information Providers)) Unable to play data. This service needs to be signed up. Connect to site?]	● Appears when the service offered by the IP (Information Provider) is not subscribed to while expired Uta-hodai is updated. Select [Yes] to go to the IP's site.	P. 387
[Unable to play this data]	● Appears when attempting to play back Uta-hodai in microSD Memory Card without the license of the corresponding MUSIC (subscription) service.	–
[(IPs (Information Providers)) Unable to update.]	● Appears when the update of expired Uta-hodai has failed.	P. 387
[(IPs (Information Providers)) Unable to update due to connection failure.]	● Appears when a connection cannot be made to the site for an unspecified reason, causing the update of the expiration date to fail while expired Uta-hodai is updated. Try again later.	P. 387
[Unsupported. Cannot edit]	● Image data is invalid and image cannot be edited.	–
[Update replay period or sign up when you play next time]	● Appears when attempting to play back Uta-hodai that is in the valid period for updating the expiration date.	P. 387
[URL has been changed. Connect to site?]	● Appears when the URL is changed while expired Uta-hodai is updated. Select [Yes] to go to the new address.	P. 387
[(IPs (Information Providers)) URL has been changed. Unable to update replay period.]	● Appears when the update of the expiration date has failed because the address of the site was changed while expired Uta-hodai is updated.	P. 387

Multi Assistant (Multitask)

Message	Explanation	Page
[Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation]	● Appears if battery starts to run out. Charge the battery.	P. 40 P. 45
[Function is already running End and restart?]	● Appears when a function that is already running is selected. Quit the function and run again or switch to the screen for the running function.	–
[Incompatible function running. Unable to start Please end the function pushing the Multi button]	● Function that cannot be used simultaneously is running. Quit the function and try again.	–
[Unable to start any more] [Unable to start any more. Please end the function pushing the Multi button]	● Appears when the maximum number of functions are running. Quit unused functions and try again.	–

1Seg

Message	Explanation	Page
[Battery low. Unable to record anymore]	● Appears when the battery level is low while recording is in progress.	–
[Copy-protected program]	● Appears when copy signal indicates that the 1Seg program cannot be recorded.	P. 293
[Copy-protected program. End recording]	● While recording a 1Seg program, appears when another program starts despite copy control signal indicates that program cannot be recorded.	–
[Memory low. Could not record]	● Appears when images for which 1Seg programs are recorded as a still picture cannot be saved with insufficient memory of FOMA terminal handset. ● Appears when 1Seg programs cannot be recorded with insufficient space of the FOMA terminal handset or the microSD Memory Card.	– –
[Memory low. End recording]	● Appears when available space on the FOMA terminal handset or the microSD Memory Card becomes insufficient while recording a program.	–
[microSD is in use. Could not record]	● Appears when microSD Memory Card is used at start of recording if Video recording destination is set to [microSD].	–
[microSD is not inserted. Could not record]	● Appears when microSD Memory Card is not inserted at start of recording if Video recording destination is set to [microSD].	P. 335
[Out of Digital TV service area. Unable to record]	● Appears when 1Seg cannot be recorded because the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received. Move to a location where  appears to use.	P. 290
[There is no image. Unable to save]	● Appears when a still picture is attempted to be recorded in full-screen of data broadcasting.	P. 294
[TVlink is expired]	● Appears when expired TVlink is selected.	P. 299
[Unavailable channel]	● Appears when the 1Seg program stops and broadcast waves cannot be received. ● The message may appear even if the 1Seg program is available depending on the reception status of broadcast waves.	– –
[Unavailable channel]	● Appears when the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received. Move to a location where  appears to use.	P. 290
[Unavailable Channel]	● Appears when the specified channel is not detected or when the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received.	–

Other messages

Message	Explanation	Page
[A Network error has occurred.]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when an error occurs in the system at Position location, Location notification and Location provision or the service is not subscribed to. 	–
[Battery too low. Please recharge and retry]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when battery level is  or  while updating software. Recharge battery to . 	P. 40
[Camera function is not available now]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when activating camera while camera portion becomes hot from being stored in a hot place. Use the camera after letting it cool down. ● Appears when using Videophone camera while battery level is low. Use after charging battery. ● May appear due to functional limitations when a call is received while the camera shooting screen is shown. In such cases, activate camera again after ringing stops or call is disconnected. ● May appear when the FOMA terminal is opened if the terminal is closed immediately after the camera is activated from phonebook or mail. Activate the camera again. 	– P. 50 – –
[Connection failed]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when software could not be updated. Perform software update again. 	P. 498
[End pic shooting. Use camera later]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when FOMA terminal or camera portion becomes hot from being used for an extended period of time. Use the camera after letting it cool down. 	P. 162
[Invalid data is included. Unable to send part of data]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when images with FOMA card restriction are deleted before transmission, while attempting to update the service center with the phonebook of the FOMA terminal handset or to save selected mails. 	–
[Invalid file contents. Unable to display]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The manager information file of microSD Memory Card is incorrect. The available space of microSD Memory Card is insufficient, and the manager information may not be updated correctly. Delete unnecessary files, increase available memory space and perform "New manager info". 	P. 346
[Memory low. Unable to receive picture call image]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when free space in the FOMA terminal handset memory is insufficient to store an image, while attempting to update the service center with the phonebook of the FOMA terminal handset. 	–
[Other functions running. Unable to activate]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Software could not be updated at the set time because other functions are running. Update immediately or set another date and time. 	P. 498
[Root certificate is not valid]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when Root Certificate is not set to valid when updating software. Set certificates 1 to 11 in [Certificates] to valid. 	P. 199
[SSL session was terminated]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when FOMA terminal date is not set correctly when updating software. Set the FOMA terminal date. 	P. 47
[Unable to Format]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when some microSD Memory Card does not support the copyright protection function. microSD Memory Card may be used if inserted again. However, there is no guarantee for the save and copy of data since the microSD Memory Card is unsupported by FOMA terminal. 	P. 343
[Unable to receive part of PushTalk group]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Appears when a PushTalk group cannot be registered any more for the reason that PushTalk groups downloaded from the service center exceed 19 entries or the phone number has already been registered, while attempting to update the service center and the phonebook of the FOMA terminal. 	–

Warranty and After-sales Services

Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check that the name of the retailer, the date of purchase, and the necessary details have been filled in on the warranty card. Be sure to keep it in a safe place.
Contact the retailer if any necessary details on the warranty card are not completed.
The warranty period without charge is 1 year from the date of purchase.
- For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.
- Information registered in your FOMA terminal, such as phonebook entries, may be lost or damaged if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled. It is recommended that a memo be kept of all data stored in the FOMA. If the FOMA terminal is repaired, information downloaded using i-mode and i-αpli cannot be transferred (excluding some cases) to a repaired handset due to copyright law.
 - ※ For this FOMA terminal, data such as phonebook entries, etc. can be saved in the microSD Memory Card.
 - ※ For this FOMA terminal, i-motion and data available for i-αpli can be saved to the microSD Memory Card.
 - ※ For this FOMA terminal, data such as phonebook entries, etc. can be stored in the Data Storage Center by using the Data Security Service (a paid service that requires subscription).
 - ※ If you own a PC, you can transfer and store registered information such as phonebook entries using DoCoMo keitai datalink (ケータイ P. 448) and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) or the FOMA USB cable (sold separately).

After-sales Services

● If you have problems with your FOMA

Refer to “Troubleshooting” before requesting repairs.

Contact a number listed in “Repairs” on the back of this manual if problems persist.

● If your FOMA needs repairs after contacting DoCoMo

Bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies. However, the repair shop is only open during business hours. Make sure to bring your warranty card with you.

■ During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired without charge in accordance with the terms of the warranty.
- When bringing the FOMA terminal in for repairs, be sure to bring the warranty card. Even during the warranty period, a fee will be charged for repairs of malfunctions or damage caused by improper handling by the customer, or when no warranty card is presented.
- Repairs for damages caused by the use of devices and accessories other than those specified by DoCoMo will also incur a fee, even during the warranty period.
- Repair for damages of the LCD or connector and others after purchase will incur a fee.

■ Repairs may not be possible in the following circumstances.

Repairs to your FOMA terminal may not be possible if the moisture detection seal has reacted, if damage from water exposure, condensation, sweat, or other liquids are found, or if the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed. Even when repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred because the warranty does not cover such damage.

■ After the warranty period has expired

Charged repairs will be carried out upon request.

■ Replacement parts

Replacement parts (required to maintain the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock basically for 6 years following termination of production. However, note that there may be a case when repair is not possible for the shortage of replacement parts depending on the faulty part. Repairs may be possible even after this period has passed, depending on the type of malfunction. Contact number listed in “Repairs” on the back of this manual for details.

● IMPORTANT!

- Never attempt to modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
 - May cause fire, injury, or malfunction.

- If your FOMA terminal has been modified previously, it will only be accepted for the repair as long as you agree that we restore the FOMA terminal to its original state. However, repairs may be refused depending on the extent of the modification.
The following cases may be considered as a modification.
 - ・ Stickers are applied to the LCD or keys.
 - ・ Decorations are made to the FOMA terminal with adhesive agent.
 - ・ Exterior parts are replaced with those of a standard DoCoMo product.
- Repairs for any malfunction or damage caused by such modifications will incur fees, even during the warranty period.
- Do not peel off the model nameplate attached to the FOMA terminal.
 - The nameplate seal functions as a certification that the equipment conforms to the prescribed technical standards. If the nameplate is removed or is replaced, repairs may be refused because conformity to the standards cannot be determined.

技術基準適合認証品

- Information stored in your FOMA terminal, such as the settings of various functions and the total call duration, may be cleared or reset if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled.
 - If this occurs, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.
- The following sections of the FOMA terminal contain parts that generate magnetic waves. Keep ATM cards and other objects likely to be affected by magnetic waves away from the FOMA terminal. Cards may become unusable.
 - Sections: Speaker, Earpiece
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or has been in a humid location, turn off the power, take out the battery immediately, and bring it to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies as soon as possible. However, depending on the condition, repairs may not be possible.

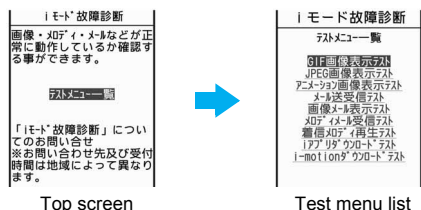
Memory dial (Phonebook) and downloaded information

- It is recommended that you keep a separate memo of the information you register on your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for data that may be modified or lost.
 - Created, imported, or downloaded data may be modified or deleted when upgrading or repairing the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any modification or deletion of content. DoCoMo may, at our convenience, exchange your FOMA terminal for a substitute in lieu of repairs. For this FOMA terminal, only data including downloaded images or melodies or data created by the user will be transferred at the time of repair (Some contents cannot be transferred. Also, contents may not be transferred depending on the degree of malfunction.).
- ※ Transferring may take long or be even unavailable depending on the size of data saved in the FOMA terminal.

i モード故障診断サイト (i-mode Fault Diagnosis Site)

Check whether the FOMA terminal can normally send and receive mail, download melodies or perform other operations.

※ i-mode fault diagnosis site is only available in Japanese.



Top screen

Test menu list

Accessing the “i-mode fault diagnosis site”



i-mode site: [iMenu] → [お知らせ] (News) → [サービス・機能] (Services/Functions) → [i モード] (i-mode) → [i モード故障診断] (i-mode fault diagnosis)

QR code to connect to the site

- Packet transmission charges do not apply for the i-mode fault diagnosis.
- ※ Accessing from abroad is charged.

- The test items differ depending on the FOMA terminal model. In addition, the test items may be changed.
- Before checking the operation with the test items, read precautions in the site carefully to execute the test.
- For accessing the i-mode fault diagnosis site and testing mail transmission, information about your FOMA terminal (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (i-mode fault diagnosis server). Sent information is only used for i-mode fault diagnosis.
- When a malfunction is found after checking, contact the number listed in "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

Software Update

Updating Software

Software Update

Connect the FOMA terminal to the network and check for software updates. If necessary, use packet transmission* to download software and update.

* There is no packet transmission charge for updating software.

Check the DoCoMo web page or [お知らせ] (News) on iMenu for updates.

When updating, select "auto-update", "Now update" or "Reserve".

Auto-update: New software can be updated automatically and rewritten on set time in advance.

Now update: Update immediately.

Reserve: Software updates automatically on set date and time.

Note

- Do not remove the battery pack while the software is updating. Failure to update software may occur.
- Software can be updated even if the FOMA terminal contains phonebook, camera image, or download data. However, DoCoMo cannot protect data that could be lost due to malfunction, damage, water exposure and so on. It is recommended that important data be backed up before updating. Note that some data, such as downloaded data, cannot be backed up.

Using Software Update


- Software is updated even when host for i-mode is changed to a custom host.
- Recharge battery before updating software.
- Software cannot be updated during the following conditions.

■ Date and time are set incorrectly	■ While in Self mode
■ During a call/Outside the service area	■ Connected to an external device
■ Battery level is below the necessary level to update software	■ Omakase Lock is set
- Downloading and updating software may take time.
- Making/receiving calls, transmission functions and other functions cannot be used while software is being updated (Receiving voice calls is possible during download).
- During software update, the handset makes an SSL connection with the server (DoCoMo site). Set the Root Certificate to valid (The default setting is [Enable] ⓘ P. 199).
- It is recommended to update software at a location with a strong signal and you are not moving (three bars for the antenna icon).
 - ※ If signal status becomes weak or download is interrupted when downloading software, update software again in a location with good signal conditions.
- If software has already been uploaded, [No update is needed. Please continue to use as before] appears when software update is checked.
- While updating software, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- If i-mode mail or Message R/F is held at i-mode center, ⓘ/Ⓜ/Ⓜ appears but will disappear when software is reloaded after update. In addition, even if Receive option is set to [ON] and mail is received during software update, notices may not appear on the display after update is completed. Mail and messages are held at i-mode center.
- When updating software, information about handset (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.
- If software update fails, [Rewrite failed] appears and all operations are not available. In this case, bring FOMA terminal to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies.

- Updating software is not available overseas.
- During software update, timer-set alarms for starting or recording programs are not activated. In addition, watching or recording does not start.

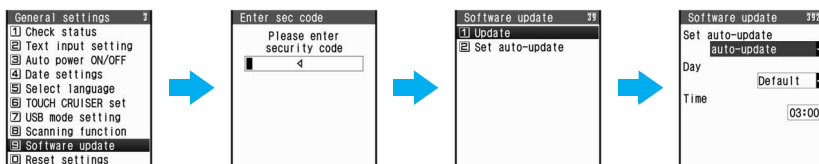
Updating Software on Automatically <Set Auto-update>

The new version of software is automatically downloaded, and the software is updated on the time set in advance.



When the software becomes ready to be rewritten, rewrite notification icon  (Update required) appears to confirm the time when the rewrite starts, the time to rewrite can be changed, and whether to rewrite now can be selected.

Setting auto-update date and time

- 1 In stand-by, press  [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Software update] ▶ enter terminal security code and press  [Set auto-update].**



- 2 Select [Set auto-update] ▶ [auto-update].**

- To not set, select [disable], press  (Complete) and select [Yes].
- If the notification icon appears in stand-by when software must be updated, select [only notification] and press  (Complete).

- 3 Select [Day] ▶ select day of week ▶ select [Time] ▶ enter time and press   (Complete).**

Note

- If software update cannot be activated at the automatic update time,  (Update required) appears in stand-by.

When rewrite notification icon appears

- 1 When the software is automatically downloaded,  (Update required) appears in stand-by.**

- 2 In stand-by, press  select  (Update required).**

- 3 Select whether to confirm the time when rewrite starts, change the time to rewrite, or rewrite now.**

- Rewrite notification icon disappears when it is confirmed once.



When [OK] is selected

- The stand-by display reappears. Rewrite starts when the set time arrives.

When [Change] is selected

- Set day of week and time in the same way as step 3 of "Setting auto-update date and time".

When [Now rewrite] is selected

- Rewrite starts. When rewrite is completed,  (Update complete) appears in stand-by ( does not appear when rewrite started at set time).

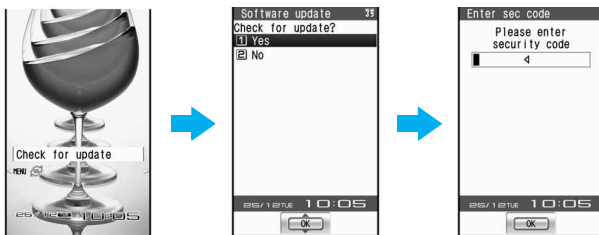
Starting Software Update

To start software update, press the key when the notification icon is displayed on the screen, or perform it from the menu screen.

- The notification icon appears in the following cases.
 - When a notification is received from DoCoMo on setting auto-update to [only notification]
 - When Reserve is failed or canceled
 - When update is required after the interruption of software update

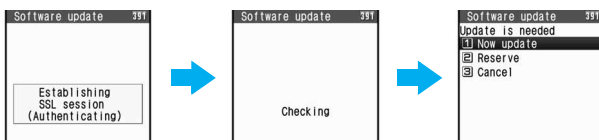
Starting software update by pressing the key when the notification icon is displayed



1 When (Check for update) appears in stand-by, press select (Check for update) ▶ [Yes].



- Select [No] to show [Delete update notification?]. Select [Yes] to delete.

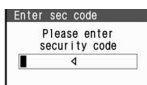
2 Enter terminal security code and press .



- Numbers are masked with asterisks. The default setting is [0000].
- Terminal security code entry screen appears even if Writing authentication is set to [ON].
- When updating software, information about handset (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.
- When updating is not necessary, [No update is needed. Please continue to use as before] appears. Press  and resume operations.
- When updates are necessary, [Update is needed] appears. Select [Now update] or [Reserve].
- Press  to cancel.

Starting software update from menu

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Software update].



2 Enter terminal security code and press .



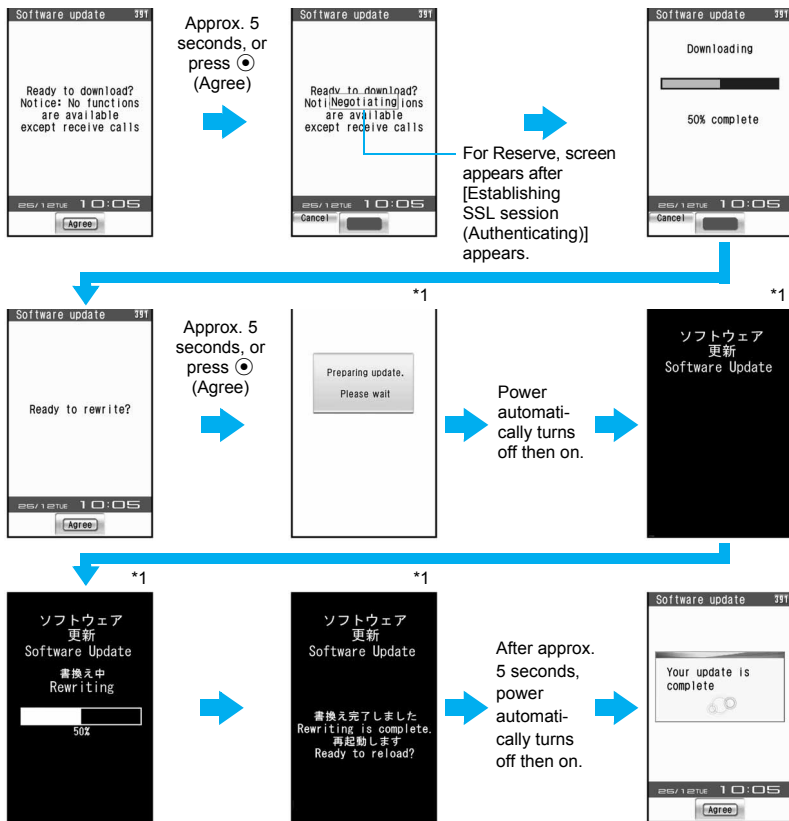
- Numbers are masked with asterisks. The default setting is [0000].
- Terminal security code entry screen appears even if Writing authentication is set to [ON].

3 Select [Update].

- Refer to step 2 of “Starting software update by pressing the key when the notification icon is displayed” on P. 500 for subsequent steps.

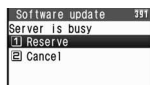
1 Perform operations of “Starting software update from menu” and select [Now update].

- Software download starts. Software is automatically updated without selecting menus.
- Select [Cancel] to not update.



*1 Keys will not respond. Update cannot be canceled.





- A screen asking to end or not appears if [Cancel] is pressed. If download is aborted, data downloaded up to that point is deleted (Cannot operate during software rewrite).



- When [Server is busy] appears after [Negotiating], select [Reserve]. Refer to steps 2 to 4 of “Updating Software Later” on P. 502 for subsequent steps. Select [Cancel] to not reserve. A screen appears prompting to stop. To stop, select [Yes].

2 Press (Agree).

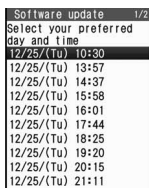
Note

- When [Preparing update. Please wait], [Software update], [Software Update Rewriting] or [Rewriting is complete. Ready to reload?] appears during steps 1 and 2, the handset status is the same as when outside the service area and calls cannot be answered. Calls can be answered in other screens. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended.
- While performing steps 1 and 2, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- When  (Update complete) or  (Check update) appears in stand-by after software update, press . If **terminal security code** is entered when software update is incomplete, a message stating so appears. Press  and retry update.


Updating Software Later <Reserve>

Set date and time to update software when downloading takes too much time or the server is extremely congested.

1 Perform operations of “Starting software update from menu” and select [Reserve].



Software update 1/2	
Select your preferred day and time	
12/25/(Tu)	10:30
12/25/(Tu)	13:57
12/25/(Tu)	14:37
12/25/(Tu)	15:58
12/25/(Tu)	16:01
12/25/(Tu)	17:44
12/25/(Tu)	18:25
12/25/(Tu)	19:20
12/25/(Tu)	20:15
12/25/(Tu)	21:11

- Schedule selection screen appears.
- The time and date are the same as the server time.
- To cancel operation, in steps 1 to 4, press , select [Yes].

2 Select preferred date/time.

- A confirmation screen appears.
- Alternatively, select the date and time after selecting [Other date/time] and accessing the server. Select the date and then select the time.

In the screen to select times, schedule status appears as [○:Avail] and [△:Limited] for each time slot. Select a time to reconnect to the server and show schedule candidates. Select a schedule.

3 Select [Yes].

- The preferred date/time is reserved.

4 Press (Agree).

Note

- Incoming calls can be received during the above operation. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended. Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.

When the reserved date and time arrives



The screen on the left appears in the stand-by display. Software update will automatically start. Software will not update if the handset is turned off when the reserved time arrives.

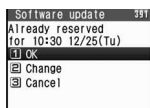
Refer to step 1 of "Updating Software Immediately" for subsequent steps.

After approximately 5 seconds or pressing **OK** (Agree), software update automatically starts.

- Before software updates, make sure that the stand-by screen is displayed and the handset is in a place with a strong signal. Software is not updated if the battery level is below the necessary level to update software at the reserved date and time.
- Software is not updated if the handset at the reserved date and time is performing functions such as a call in progress, sending mail, receiving mail, i-mode, i-appli, or using menus. Software update starts when the stand-by display reappears after the operation.
- Software is not updated if the handset at the reserved date and time is being connected to an external device, in Self mode, or in Omakase lock.
- If the alarm or another function takes place at the same time when the reserved date and time arrives, alarm or the function is prioritized and software is not updated. Software is updated if stand-by reappears after Alarm operation ends.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off at the reserved date and time for software update or when the FOMA terminal is turned off right after the update starts, the update will be canceled.
- If "Delete all data (Delete user data)" (P. 417) is performed after reservation is completed, the software update is not activated. Reserve the software update again.

Confirming/Changing/Canceling Reservation

1 In stand-by, press **OK** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[General settings]** ▶ **[Software update]** ▶ enter terminal security code and press **OK**.



- Reserved date and time appears.

To confirm	[OK]
To change	Select [Change] and preferred date screen appears. • Refer to steps 2 to 4 of "Updating Software Later" on P. 502 for subsequent steps.
To cancel	[Cancel] → [Yes] → OK after [The reservation is canceled] appears

Note

- Incoming calls can be received during the above operation. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended. Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.

Protecting Your FOMA Terminal from Harmful Files

First, update pattern definitions to bring them up-to-date.

Stop activating or delete any data or applications that could cause operational malfunctions. These types of data include data or programs that are attached to i-mode mail, or downloaded from sites or external devices.

- Pattern definitions are used for checking. When new problems are discovered, pattern definitions are immediately upgraded. Update the pattern definitions.
- The scan function helps to protect the handset from damage caused by data such as data received from web pages or mail. If the pattern definition corresponding to a particular harmful file is not downloaded or saved, the scan function will not be able to protect the FOMA terminal.
- Pattern definitions vary depending on the phone model. Therefore, DoCoMo may discontinue offering pattern definitions for a particular model 3 years after the release date.

Setting Scan Functions <Set Scan>

When Scan function is set to [Enable], data and programs are automatically checked when running. Set whether to apply Scan function to SMS.

- Scan message can be set only when Scan function is set to [Enable].
- When Scan function is set to [Disable], Scan message is set to [Disable] regardless of current settings.


- 1 In stand-by, press  [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Scanning function] ▶ [Set scan] ▶ [Scan].**




- 2 Select [Enable] ▶ [Yes].**

- 3 Select [Scan message].**

- 4 Select [Enable] ▶ [Yes].**

- When Scan function is set and malicious data is detected, security warning appears in five levels ( P. 506).




Updating Pattern Definitions <Update>

- 1 In stand-by, press  [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Scanning function] ▶ [Update] ▶ [Yes].**



- To not send terminal ID, select [No].

- 2 Select [Yes].**

- Downloading starts.
- To cancel download, press  (Cancel) or  and select [Yes].
- When updating is not necessary, [Pattern definitions are up-to-date] appears. Press  and resume operations.

3 Press when updating is completed.

Note

- When updating pattern definitions, information about the handset (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo scan function server). Sent information is only used for pattern definition update.
- Correctly set the FOMA terminal date (year/month/day) beforehand.
- Download may be interrupted if signal is weak.

Updating Pattern Definitions Automatically <Set Auto-update>

Set auto-update to [Enable] to automatically update pattern definitions when a new version becomes available.

When auto-update is successful, a message stating so appears in the stand-by display. Auto-update is not performed depending on the status of the FOMA terminal. In such cases, a message stating that pattern definitions have been updated appears.

1 In stand-by, press ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Scanning function] ▶ [Set auto-update] ▶ [Enable].



2 Select [Yes].

3 Select [Yes].

4 Select [Agree].


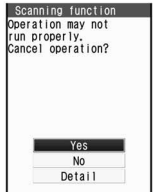
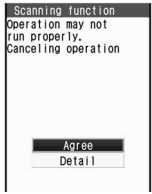
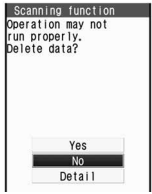

Note

- Information regarding Enable/Disable for Set auto-update is saved on the network. Therefore, [Enable] is always selected on the FOMA terminal when setting.
- When setting auto-update, information about the handset (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo scan function server). Sent information is only used for pattern definition update.
- Set auto-update may be interrupted if signal is weak.

Displaying Scanned Results

When data that can cause malfunctions are detected, a warning screen appears.

Scanned results display

Level 0	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
				
<p>Displaying, activating, and calling are available. Appears when there was an error previously, but there is no error presently. Select [Agree] to display, activate, or call.</p>	<p>Select [No] to display, activate, or call. Select [Yes] to cancel the operation.</p>	<p>Displaying, activating, and calling are not available. Select [Agree] to end.</p>	<p>Displaying, activating, and calling are not available. Select [Yes] and select [Yes] in the delete confirmation screen to delete the data. Select [No] to end without deleting.</p>	<p>Displaying, activating, and calling are not available. Select [Agree] to delete the data.</p>

※ Warning screens other than the above may appear depending on the contents of pattern definitions.

Displaying detected errors



- In the warning screen, select [Detail] to show error names. When no error name exists for the contents of the pattern data, [Detail] does not appear.
- Up to five error names appear. [Etc] appears below the fifth error name when six or more are detected. If same error is detected more than once, it is only listed once.

Checking Version of Pattern Definitions <Version>

- In stand-by, press  ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Scanning function] ▶ [Version].



Main Specifications

Product name		FOMA SH905i	
Size		112 (H) × 48 (W) × 16.9 (D) mm (when folded)	
Weight		Approx. 125 g (with battery pack installed)	
Continuous stand-by time*1, 3	FOMA/3G	3G/GSM setting: 3G	When mobile: Approx. 370 hours*5
		3G/GSM setting: Auto	When mobile: Approx. 345 hours*5 At rest: Approx. 540 hours*4
	GSM	3G/GSM setting: Auto	At rest: Approx. 290 hours*4
Consecutive call duration*2, 3	FOMA/3G	Voice call: Approx. 200 min Videophone: Approx. 100 min	
	GSM	Voice call: Approx. 190 min	
Time for watching 1Seg		Approx. 230 min	
Charge time		AC adapter: Approx. 120 min	
		DC adapter: Approx. 120 min	
LCD	Type	New Mobile ASV LCD (16,777,216 colors)	
	Size	Approx. 3.0 inches	
	Pixels	409,920 pixels (480×854 dots)	
Image pickup device	Type	CMOS*6	
	Size	1/3.2 inch	
Camera	Effective pixels	Approx. 3.2 million pixels	
	Recorded pixels (Max.)	Approx. 3.2 million pixels	
	Zoom (Digital)	Up to approx. 24.0 times	
Recording	Number of still pictures recorded	Approx. 1,000 shots (when saved into the handset)*7	
	Continuous shooting of still pictures	25 shots/9 shots/6 shots/4 shots	
	File format for still picture	JPEG	
	Recording time for movies	Approx. 434 sec per recording (when saved into the handset)*8 Approx. 60 min per recording (when saved into the microSD Memory Card (64 MB))*9	
	File format for movie	MP4	
Music Playback	Continuous playback time	i-motion (Compatible with background playback*10): Approx. 840 min*11	
		Chaku-uta full® (Compatible with background playback): Approx. 1,000 min*11	
		SD-Audio data (Compatible with background playback): Approx. 1,000 min*11	
		WMA file (Compatible with background playback): Approx. 1,000 min*12	
		Music&Video Channel (voice) (Compatible with background playback*10): Approx. 840 min	
		Music&Video Channel (movie): Approx. 300 min	
Memory capacity	Chaku-uta®	Approx. 104 MB*13	
	Chaku-uta full®		

*1 Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of the time when FOMA SH905i is folded and in a status where signals are received. Talk and stand-by times may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, functions used, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission) and stand-by times. In addition, watching 1Seg, composing i-mode mail and activating downloaded i-appli or the i-appli stand-by will also shorten call (transmission)/stand-by duration even if calls or i-mode transmission are not made.

*2 Consecutive call duration is an estimate of the time when talking in a location where the signal is normal.

*3 The above mentioned call duration and stand-by time are shortened with the use of data communications, Multiaccess, and the camera.

*4 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when FOMA SH905i is folded when you are not moving and in a status where signals are received.

*5 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when FOMA SH905i is folded and in At rest, When mobile or Outside the service area status.

*6 A CMOS (Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor) is image devices equivalent to the film of silver salt cameras.

*7 Still picture size: sQCIF (128 × 96 pixels)/Quality: NORMAL/File size: 10 KB

*8 Movie size: sQCIF (128 × 96 pixels)/Quality: NORMAL/File size limit: For mail (long)/Type: Image + voice

*9 Movie size: sQCIF (128 × 96 pixels)/Quality: NORMAL/File size limit: Unrestricted/Type: Image + voice

*10 When playing back with Music player

*11 File: AAC format

*12 File: WMA format

*13 When Still picture, Movie, MUSIC, Melody, My Documents, Kisekae Tool, Chara-den or i-αppli are saved, the memory capacity of Chaku-uta®/Chaku-uta full® will be small.

Number of Saved/Registered/Protected Entries in the FOMA Terminal

Data type		Number of applicable entries to be saved/registered	Number of applicable entries to be protected	Page
Phonebook		1,000 ^{*1}	–	P. 100
1Seg	TVlink	100	–	P. 299
	Reception/Recording	50 ^{*2}	–	P. 294
Schedule	Schedule	300	–	P. 403
	Vacation	100	–	P. 406
	Holiday	20 ^{*3}	–	P. 407
Text memo		10	–	P. 414
Mail (The total number of SMS and i-mode mail)	Received mail	1,000 ^{*4, 5}	1,000	P. 224
		User created folder	20	–	P. 227
	Sent mail	500 ^{*4, 5}	500	P. 224
		User created folder	20	–	P. 227
	Unsent mail	500 ^{*5}	500	P. 224
		User created folder	20	–	P. 227
Deco-mail templates		10 to 100 ^{*6}	–	P. 213
Message	Message R	50 ^{*5}	25	P. 237
	Message F	50 ^{*5}	25	
Bookmark		100	–	P. 188
	Bookmark folder	20	–	P. 189
Screen memo		400 ^{*5}	400 ^{*5}	P. 190
i-αppli		100 ^{*5}	–	P. 248
	Mail-type i-αppli	5	–	P. 248
Still picture		1,000 ^{*5}	–	P. 191
	User created folder	20	–	P. 347
Movie/i-motion		100 ^{*5}	–	P. 201
	User created folder	20	–	P. 347
Kisekae Tool		50 ^{*5}	–	P. 193
	User created folder	20	–	P. 347
Chara-den		50 ^{*5}	–	P. 194
	User created folder	20	–	P. 347
Melody		500 ^{*5}	–	P. 192
	User created folder	20	–	P. 347
PDF data		50 ^{*5}	–	P. 193
	User created folder	20	–	P. 347
ToruCa		1,000 ^{*5}	–	P. 266
	User created folder	20	–	P. 269

*1 Up to 50 entries can be saved in the FOMA card.

*2 Save up to 50 timer settings for starting and recording TV programs.

*3 Save a national holiday besides holidays already saved.

*4 For SMS, up to 20 received and sent messages can be saved in the FOMA card (P. 245).

*5 The number of entries may decrease according to the size of data.

*6 Pre-installed data is included.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

This model phone FOMA SH905i meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***. All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.298 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value. For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO) <http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm>

TELEC http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/>

SHARP Corporation <http://www.sharp.co.jp/products/menu/phone/cellular/sar/index.html>

* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

** The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*** International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health. The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.146 W/kg*.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head.

* The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that this FOMA SH905i is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

A copy of the original declaration of conformity can be found at the following Internet address:
<http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.

It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.577 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.307 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after searching on FCC ID APYHRO00061. Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

Japan Export Control Regulation/Export Administration Regulation

The Japan Export Control Regulation ("Foreign Exchange and International Trade Law" and its related laws) and the Export Administration Regulation are applied to this product and its accessories under certain conditions. To export or reexport this terminal and its accessories, conduct all legally required procedures at your own risk and expense. For details on the procedures, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry or the US Department of Commerce.

Index/Quick Manual

● Index	512
● Quick Manual	522

Index

How to Use Index

This index lists function names, words, and key words in alphanumeric order. If you cannot remember a function name, search with key words.

<Example: When searching “Omakase Lock”>

To search with function names

OFFICEED	444
Omakase Lock	146
On hold	70
One-touch conversion One-touch single character memory	422

To search with key words

Lock function	145
All lock	145
Function lock	147
Keypad dial lock	148
Multi easy lock	148
Omakase Lock	146
Self mode	147

Numerics

186/184	60
1Seg	286
1Seg settings	292, 299
1Seg status	300
Activate 1Seg	289
Auto channel set	288
Booking list	294
Channel setting	287
Data broadcasting	298
Erase storage area	300
Multi Window	292
Preset channel setting	288
Program guide	293
Recording end time	294
Recording movies	294
Recording still pictures	294
Recording timer	294
Reset 1Seg	300
Reset status display	300
Set image display	300
Sound effects	300
Switch auto area	292
TV timer	294
TVlink	299
Video recording destination	299
Wakeup TV	296
2in1	440
2in1 setting	440
2in1 function OFF	442
Display call/receive number	442
Mode switching	441

Number B Ring tone	442
Phonebook 2in1 set	441
Receive avoidance	442
Stand-by display	441
2-touch dialing	116
2-touch input	428
Change input mode	428
Conversion method	428
Key assignments	474
Text input	428
3D sound	124
5-touch input	420
Key assignments	472

A

AC adapter	42
Accept calls	150
Disable	151
Save list	150
Settings	151
Active marker	397
Delete history	398
Display calendar/date	398
Set display category	398
Additional services	444
Delete	444
Reply message	444
After-sales service	496
Alarm	401
Quick alarm	401
Reception reserve alarm	295

Record reserve alarm	295
Schedule alarm	405
Snooze	402
All lock	145
Disable	146
Settings	145
Animate notices	136
Answering calls/Videophone calls	66
Any key answer	68
Area Mail	240
Area Mail setting	241
Beep setting	241
Beep time	241
Receive	240
Receive entry	241
Receive setting	241
Arrival call action	438
ASF file	321
Authentication password	354
Auto answer setting	417
Auto power OFF	399
Auto power ON	399

B

Background playback	381
Bar code reader	173
Add bookmark	175
Add to phonebook	175
Basic menu	
Icon image	137
Key list	137

Reset menu screen . . .	137	Fix camera shake . . .	169	Download	194
Set background	137	Focus lock	171	File property	333
Battery		Full-screen mode	172	Image for call	331
Battery pack	39	Image quality	167	Move to folder	332
Charging	40	Key list	162	Playback	330
Check battery level	44	Noise reduction	170	Sort	332
Times of use	41	Number of recordable images	157	Substitute image	331
Bookmark	188	Panorama	164	Check mail address	411
Attach to mail	189	Save camera settings	173	Check memory	351
Delete	189	Select size	157, 167	Check new message	220, 238
Edit title	189	Send message	173	Check settings	396
View	188	Shoot	162, 165	Clear memory terms	426
Bookmark folder	189	Shoot by scene	170	Color theme setting	136
Brightness	134	Shoot movie	165	Component names and functions	24
C		Shoot still picture	162	Contents transfer compatible	261, 339
Cache	184	Shoot with frame	168	Continuous mode	163
Calculator	414	Shooting settings	171	Copy	425
Calculation example	477	Shutter sound	172	Copy item	115
Calendar	403	Switch AF mode	168	Copy text	425
Disable set vacations	407	Switch camera-mode	166	Cut	425
Display	403	Switch image/voice	168	Paste	426
Go to date	404	Switch phone⇄SD	172	Create/Edit/Delete folder	347
Set holiday	407	White balance	170	Custom menu	
Set vacations	406	Zoom in and out	166	Assign function	135
Switch view mode	404	Card reader	178	Kisekae Tool	134
Call Forwarding Service	433	Certificate operations	199	Reset function assignment	135
Forward calls	434	Change certificate issue	201	Reset menu history	135
Forwarding number busy	435	Download	200	Reset menu screen	136
Register number	435	Invalidate	200	Cut	425
Status request	435	Issue	200	D	
Call Waiting	432	Site access	200	Data Security Service	
Call/Receive display	130	Certificates	199	Connect to the data storage center	117, 153
Caller ID Request Service	436	Chaku-moji	58	Exchanging history	117
Activate	436	Create message	58	Image	320
Deactivate	436	Message display	59	Mail	227
Status request	436	Chaku-uta full®	381	Phonebook	117
Camera	156	Download	382	Send phonebook image	117
Activate/Deactivate	161	Edit information	391	Date settings	47
Auto save mode	173	Ring tone	390	DC adapter	42
Auto timer	168	Change i-mode password	186	Deco-mail	211
Bar code reader	173	Character reader	175	Compose Deco-mail	212
Brightness	166	Add bookmark	177	Edit template	214
Character reader	175	Add to phonebook	177	Open template	214
Common replay mode	172	Search dictionary	177	Save template	223
Continuous mode	163	Chara-den	330	View image in mail	223
Display indicators	159	Action list	78, 331		
Display light time	171	Backlight time	331		
Effect shot	169	Change action	79		
File size limit	167	Change Chara-den	79		
		Change send image	78		
		Chara-den call	331		
		Chara-den player	330		
		Delete	333		

Decomail pictograph	e-comic	195	Enter alphabet	423
Enter	i-appli	248	Enter PIN1 code at power on	144
208, 209, 424	i-melody	192	.....	144
Delete	i-motion	202	Equalizer	334
Bookmark	Kisekai Tool	193	Error messages list	485
Deco-mail template	PDF files	193		
Download dictionary	ToruCa	194	F	
.....	Download dictionary	427		
427	Check	427	FeliCa	264
PDF files	Delete	427	IC card lock	272
364	Set/Clear	427	Precautions for using	
Phonebook	DPOF (Print setting)	373	Osaifu-Keitai	265
115	Dual Network Service	437	Use Osaifu-Keitai	264
PushTalk phonebook	Status request	437	File playback	80
96	Switching	437	File restriction	350
Record message/Voice	E		FirstPass	199
memo			Flash movie	
77	Earphone/Microphone	415	Display	182
Recording timer	Earphone/Microphone with		Playback	314
297	switch	415	Sound effects setting	
Redial/Received calls	Answering calls	416	.....	197
56	Auto answer setting	417	Use phone information	
Register words	Headset switch to call		.....	198
426	416		Focus lock	171
Schedule	Making calls	416	Folder security	228, 348
409	69, 123		FOMA card	37
Screen memo	Earpiece volume		FOMA card (UIM) settings	
191	Edit image	316	.....	144
Shortcut menu	Change face position		PIN1 code/PIN2 code	
410	.....	320	.....	142
SMS	Character stamp	319	Restriction functions	38
246	Check image	316	FOMA card phonebook	
Text	Correct image	318	Copy to FOMA terminal	
422	Face effects	318	phonebook	107
TV timer	Face stamp	319	Save	106
297	Facial treatment	320	FOMA terminal phonebook	
Video file	Frame	319	Copy to FOMA card	
329	Image editing screen		phonebook	107
Delete all data	.....	316	Save	100
417	Image effect	318	Font size	139
Delete secret data	Image stamp	319	Collective setting	139
418	Resize image	317	Individual setting	140
Delete user data	Rotate	318	Font style setting	139
417	Trimming	316	Frame	
Desktop clock	Edit movie	326	Shoot with frame	168
130	Capture still	327	Full Browser	302
Desktop holder	File property	326	Access setting	307
43	Image cutter	326	Add bookmark	304
Dial image set	Movie editing screen		Cookie setting	306
136	.....	326	Display	303
Disable PIN lock	Edit phonebook entries	114	Display mode	307
145	Emoticon		Download	305
Disable/Delete/Change alarm	Emoticon list	476	Key list	306
settings	Enter	424	Multiple windows	305
403	English Guidance	437	Referer setting	307
Display light time	Status request	438	Reset full browser	307
132				
DoCoMo keitai datalink				
.....				
448				
Document Viewer				
Backlight time				
366				
Capture screen				
365				
Delete				
367				
Display				
364				
File property				
366				
Light up				
366				
Magnifier				
365				
Move spec page				
366				
Move within screen				
366				
Rotate view				
365				
Save image				
366				
Shortcut key				
366				
Sort				
366				
Zoom/Shrink				
365				
Dolby sound set.				
.....				
379, 392, 393				
Download				
Chaku-uta full®				
382				
Chara-den				
194				
Client certificate				
200				
Deco-mail template				
192				
Download dictionary				
194				

Script setting	307	Change tone/image	201
Search page	306	252	i-motion mail
Search web	306	Delete	325
Set image display	307	Error display	321
SSL/TSL	304	i-αppli stand-by	AV settings
Switch to Full Browser	306	Icon information set	325
Upload file	305	Location usage	Backlight time
Window open guard	307	Motion tracking	322
Function lock	147	Network set	Change size
		Power saver set	322
		Run i-αppli	Chapter list
		Software information	324
		249	Continuous play
		Sort	Frame rate
		260	322
		Upgrade	Full-screen mode
		260	322
		View phonebook/history	Launch screen mode
		251	322
		i-αppli To function	Light up
		196, 258	322
		i-αppli used data	Repeat playback
		261	322
		IC card lock	Resume settings
		272	322
		iC transmission	Set volume
		Receive	322
		Receive all	Import
		Send	346
		Send all	In-car hands-free
		357	65
		i-Channel	Infrared remote control
		204	356
		i-Channel ticker setting	Initial setting
		205	46
		Reset i-Channel	Intellectual property
		205	20
		Show i-Channel	International call
		204	61
		Sound effects setting	International dial assist
		204	62
		Image mail	Auto conversion
		Create	62
		Send	IDD prefix setting
		214	63
		View/Save	International call
		223	63
		Image Viewer	Set country code
		312	63
		Backlight time	International prefix
		312	64
		Full-screen mode	Select prefix
		312	64
		Light up	International Roaming
		312	(WORLD WING)
		Location information	450
		312	3G/GSM setting
		Wide mode	453
		312	Call barring
		Zoom	455
		312	In-area status
		i-mode	454
		180	International services
		i-mode arrival action	455
		198	Making calls
		i-mode fault diagnosis site	452
		497	Network search mode
		i-mode host selection	454
		197	Operator name display
		i-mode mail	454
		208	PLMN setting
		Save to schedule	454
		408	Receiving calls
		i-mode password	453
		142	Roaming guidance
		i-motion	455
		201	Internet access
		Download	187
		202	Internet movie player
		File property	308
		203	Ir Exchange
		i-motion auto replay	352
		203	High-speed Ir exchange
		Save	315
		203	Receive
		Standard type	354
		201	Receive all
			355
			Send
			354
			Send all
			355
			IrSS function
			315
			ISP connection transmission
			197

G

GPS

GPS button setting	275
GPS compatible i-αppli	275
Host setting	281
Location history	283
Location notification	281
Location request	279
Notification clients	282
Position location	274
Position location set	275
Positioning mode	275
Service settings	281
Using location information	284
Group settings	108
Called LED color	109
Called LED pattern	109
Edit group name	108
Mail LED color	109
Mail LED pattern	109
Mail ring tone	109
Picture call set	109
Select ring tone	109

H

Handling precautions	18
Hands-free	
In-car hands-free	65
PushTalk	98
Voice call/Videophone	53, 82
Headset setting	126
Headset switch to call	416
Hold	
Hold active call	53
On hold	70
Hold active call	53

I

i-αppli	248
Auto start	257

J

JAN code	173
Japan export control regulation/Export administration regulation	510

K

Kana/Alphanumeric conversion	423
Katakana (single-byte)	423
Keypad dial lock	148
Keypad light setting	133
Kisekae Tool	134
Download	193
Reset	136
Kuten code input	426

L

Last URL	182
LED settings	
LED color settings	138
LED pattern settings	138
Notice LED	138
Light/Power saver	132
Link alarm/power ON	399
Lock function	145
All lock	145
Function lock	147
Keypad dial lock	148
Multi easy lock	148
Omakase Lock	146
Self mode	147
Side key guard	149

M

Mail	207
Add to phonebook	221
Attached files for manual reception	222
Auto send error	217
BOX list	224
Broadcast	210
Cancel send reservation	217
Check address	229
Compose	208
Delete	231
File attachment	214
Folder security	228
Forward	221
i-mode mail	208
i-motion mail	325

Inbox	224
List display	229
Mail list layout	225
Mail menu	208
Message screen	225
Move	230
Outbox	224
Preview	228
Protect	230
Quick reply	221
Receive option	219
Register address	221
Reply	220
Ring time setting	126
Save	216
Search subject	230
Send	208
Send reservation	210
Signature	209
Sort	229
Store at center	227
Unsent messages	224
View attachment	222
Mail member	234
Delete	235
Edit member	235
Register address	235
Mail setting	
Area Mail setting	241
Check mail settings	236
Check new message	234
Font size	233
Mail member	234
Melody Auto replay	235
Quick reply mail	235
Receive attached file	235
Receive option setting	234
Receive/Auto send display	236
Reset mail settings	236
Save signature	234
Sort rules	233
Mail ticker setting	219
Mail To function	195
Main specifications	507
Making calls/Videophone calls	51
Manga&BookReader	367
Comic setting	368
Copy text	369
Current location	369
Delete	373
Edit file name	372
Edit title	372
File property	373
Font size	369

Frame/Page	369
Insert bookmark	369
Link	371
Mail To	371
Mask	371
Move	373
Move to bookmark	369
Phone To (AV Phone To)	371
Ruby text	369
Save to My picture	371
Search dictionary	370
Set % move	369
Set volume	369
Switch folder	368
Table of contents	369
Text direction	369
To end	369
To top	367
Vibrator	369
Web To	371
Zoom ↑ /Zoom ↓	369
Manner mode	127
Auto disable	127
Disable	127
Original manner mode	128
Setting	127
Media To function	197
Melody call setting	125
Melody equalizer	124
Melody player	333
Continuous play	334
Equalizer	334
Play	333
Ring tone	335
Send message	334
Set volume	333
Start position	334
Stereo effects	333
Melody stereo effects	124
Memory number	103
Menu list	458
Camera	468
Data Box	469
i-appli	459
i-mode	458
LifeKit	466
Mail	459
Media tool	470
Phonebook	468
Settings	460
Menu priority	34
Menu selections	34
Submenu	36
Message	236
Auto message display	238

Reject unknown	153	Edit track information	394	Self mode	147
Reject unsupported ID	152	Manner playback	393	Send	
Reject user unset	152	Play	392	Movie/i-motion	214, 325
Remote control	439	Playback screen	394	Sent messages	209
Activate	439	Playlist	394	SMS	241
Deactivate	439	Save	392	Still picture	214, 315
Status request	439	Search track	394	Send/Receive display	131
Replace with Download dictionary	427	Set playback mode	393	Sent messages	231
Reset i-mode	198	Search dictionary	370	Add to phonebook	222
Reset settings	417	Character reader	371	Send message	232
Run music settings	125	Search phonebook	109	Service number	438
S		By group	112	Services available from the FOMA terminal	480
Safety precautions	12	By memory number	112	Set alarm	401
SAR	509	By reading	111	Set arrival action	439
Save login information	186, 304	Secret mode	150	Activate	439
.		Disable	150	Deactivate	439
Save original phrase	425	Settings	150	Status request	439
Schedule	403	Security codes	142	Set hold tone	71
Attach to mail	408	Security Scan (Scanning function)	504	Set mute ring time	153
Change alarm tone	406	Security settings	141	Set on hold tone	70
Change alarm volume	406	Accept/reject calls	150, 151	Set screen	128, 315
Check	407	. . . . .		Calendar display	129
Copy	408	All lock	145	Clock display	129
Create i-mode mail	408	Change PIN1 code/PIN2 code	145	Stand-by display	128
Delete	409	Function lock	147	Set secret	116
Edit	408	Keypad dial lock	148	Set when folded	69
Making calls	408	PIN1 code input set	144	Shoot movie	165
Ring duration	406	Secret mode	150	Shoot still picture	162
Save	404	Show call/received	150	Shortcut menu	409
Save from icon calendar	405	Show sent/received	150	Delete	410
Save from mail	408	Writing authentic	143	Move icon	410
Save from My picture	409	Select language	46	Reset shortcut	410
Save from Received calls	408	Select ring tone	120	Save	410
Save from text memo	409	Mail ring tone	121	Show by contact (Schedule)	407
Secret data	406	Phone ring tone	120	. . . . .
Show all schedules	408	PushTalk tone	121	Show call/received	150
Show by category	407	Select shutter sound	172	Save to schedule	408
Show by contact	407	Select sound		Show sent/received	150
Screen display time	133	GPS tone	122	Side key guard	149
Screen memo	190	Mail ring tone	121	Signature	
Delete	191	PushTalk tone	121	Add signature	209
Display	190	Select ring tone	120	Save signature	234
Edit title	191	Shutter sound	172	Silent	69
File property	190	Timer sound	122	Slideshow	314
Save	190	Select volume	122	SMS	
SD-Audio	392	Charge end sound	123	Check new SMS	243
Delete track	394	Charge start sound	123	Compose/Send	241
Dolby sound set	393	Earpiece volume	69, 123	Copy to FOMA card	245
		GPS volume	124	Copy to FOMA terminal handset	246
		Key/Standby i-motion	123	Delete	246
		Mail ring volume	123	Display	244
		Phone ring volume	122	Edit/Send	243
		Timer sound	122, 123		

Forward	244	1 character memo conversion	421	Signal/battery/small clock	136
Receive	243	1 kanji conversion	421	Submenu image	136
Reply	244	1st choice genre	428	Time	47
Report request	244	2-touch input	428	Timer	400
Save	242	5-touch input	420	ToruCa	266
SMS center	244	Add space	421	Add to phonebook	268
SMS expiry	245	Alphabet	423	Attach to mail	271
SMS input character	245	Alphanumeric characters	423	Copy	270
Software update	498	Change	422	Delete	271
Now update	501	Clear memory terms	426	Move	270
Reserve	502	Copy	425	Retrieve	266
Sound effects setting		Cut	425	Retrieve ToruCa from IC	272
Flash	197	Dakuten/Handakuten mark	421	Save image	268
i-Channel	204	Delete	422	Search	271
Sound playback		Direct conversion	428	Settings	272
Melody equalizer	124	Edit	422	Sort	270
Melody stereo effects	124	Emoticon	424	Sort rules	269
Specific absorption rate	509	Guess conversion	428	View	267
SSL	199	Insert phrase	424	TOUCH CRUISER pad	32
Certificates	199	Katakana (single-byte)	423	TOUCH CRUISER set	33
Standard parts packaged with unit and main optional parts	22	Key list	421	Touch-tone signals	61
Still picture		Lower case	421	Troubleshooting	482
Display	312	Next word guess	420, 428	TV timer/Recording timer	294
Download	191	Numbers	423	Alarm	295
Stock icon	31	One-touch conversion	421	Delete	297
Sub address	64	One-touch single character memory	422	Edit	297
Submenu	36	Pictograph	424	EPG	294
Submenu image	136	Predictive headword conversion	422	Manual input	295
Supportbook	36	Quick conversion	420, 428	Reserve recording history	297
Surround		Register words	426	Sort	297
3D sound	124	Symbol input	424	U	
Switch display to English	46	Text input methods	420	Undo	421
Switch to videophone	54, 68	Undo	421	Update	504
Switch to voice call	54, 68	With emoticon conversion	428	URL	
Symbol/Special character		Text input methods	420	Delete URL history	187
Enter	424	Text memo	414	History	187
List	474	Delete	415	Last URL	182
T		Edit	415	USB mode setting	345
Talk time/cost	412	Save to schedule	409	Communication mode	345
Auto reset	413	Themes	136	microSD mode	345
Display	413	Animate notices	136	MTP mode	345
Limit settings	413	Call/Receive display	130	Use phone information	198
Reset	413	Color theme setting	136	User dictionary	426
Terminal security code	142	Dial image set	136	Delete	426
Change	143	Picture call set	132	Edit	426
Text input	420	Send/Receive display	131	Register	426
				Replace with Download dictionary	427
				Using with external devices	481

Quick Manual

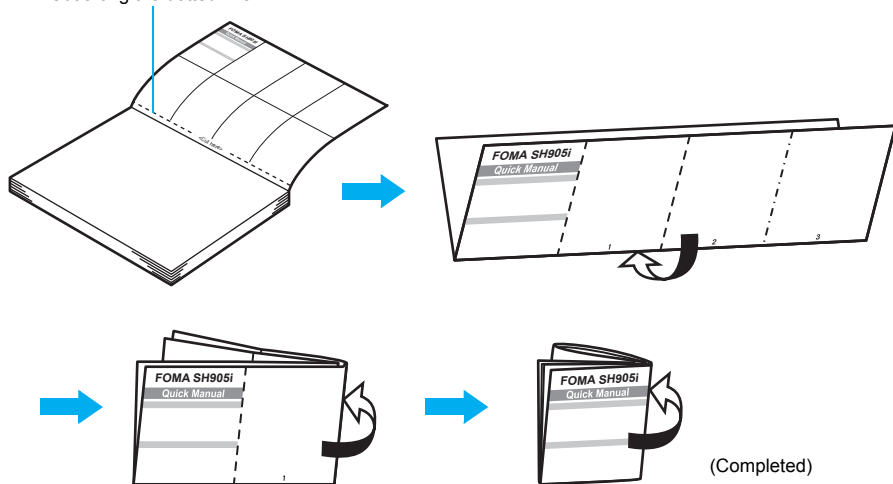
How to Use the Quick Manual

Remove the Quick Manual attached to the end of this manual by cutting along the dotted line and fold it as shown below.

Carry the Quick Manual “Overseas Use” when the mobile phone is used with the international roaming (WORLD WING) overseas.

Folding the Quick Manual

Cut along the dotted line.



Warning

- Be careful of injuries when cutting out Quick Manual.

Quick Manual

Registration/Contacts

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center> (In English)

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)

※ Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS. (In Japanese only)

☎ (No prefix) 151 (toll free)

※ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS. Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

If you have problems with your FOMA

(In Japanese only)

☎ (No prefix) 113 (toll free)

※ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS. (In Japanese only)

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

※ Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS. Please confirm the phone number before you dial. For further information, refer to the "Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Add to Phonebook

- In stand-by, press [Add] for 1+ seconds ▶ [Phone]/[UIM].
- Enter name ▶ [Phone type] ▶ enter phone number ▶ [Phone type] ▶ phone number type (not applicable for FOMA card) ▶ enter mail address ▶ mail address type (not applicable for FOMA card) ▶ * For FOMA cards
- Press [Complete] ▶ enter memory number (not applicable for FOMA card).
- Select PushTalk phonebook entry (not applicable for FOMA card).

Saving to Phonebook from Redial and Received Calls

- In stand-by, press [Redial] ▶ phone number ▶ [Add to phonebook].
To save from Redial: In stand-by, press [Redial] ▶ phone number ▶ [Add to phonebook].
- Select [Save new to phone] ▶ save phonebook.
To save to FOMA card phonebook: Select [Save new to UIM].
To add/overwrite: Select [Add/overwrite].
To add to PushTalk phonebook: Select [PushTalk phonebook].
To add to PushTalk group: Select [Add PushTalk group].

-1-

Items to add

Icon	Item
[Person]	Name
[R]	Reading
[Group]	Group
[Phone]	Phone number
[Phone type]	Phone number type*
[Address]	Mail address
[Address type]	Mail address type*
[Company]	Company/School*
[Dept]	Department*
[Title]	Title*
[Postal]	Postal code*
[Postal address]	Postal address*
[Location]	Location info*
[Birthday]	Birthday*
[Memo]	Memo*
[Secret]	Secret*
[Secret code]	Secret code*

-2-

Icon	Item
[Ring tone]	Select ring tone*
[Ring tone]	Mail ring tone*
[LED color]	Called LED color*
[LED pattern]	Called LED pattern*
[LED color]	Mail LED color*
[LED pattern]	Mail LED pattern*
[Picture call set]	Picture call set*
[Substitute image settings]	Substitute image settings*

* Cannot be saved to FOMA card.

Editing Entries

- In stand-by, press [Name] ▶ name ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Edit] ▶ item ▶ [Edit].

Making Calls from Phonebook Entries

- In stand-by, press [Call].
To change search method: Press [Search] in phonebook list ▶ [Search by] ▶ search method ▶ [Call].
- Select name ▶ [Call] or [Call].

-3-

Text Input

Changing input mode

- In text input screen, press [Input mode] ▶ input mode ▶ [Input mode].

Entering lower case letters

- In text input screen, press [a b c]/[abc].
To convert to lower case after entering text: Press [a b c].

One-touch conversion

- After entering text, press [One-touch].

Deleting text

- Move the cursor to text and press [Delete].
To erase all text: Press [Delete] for 1+ seconds at the end.

Using phrases

- In text input screen, press [Phrase] for 1+ seconds ▶ categorize phrase ▶ phrase ▶ phrase ▶ [Phrase].

-4-

Entering pictographs/symbols/Deco-mail pict

- In text input screen, press [Pict/Sym].
Pictograph mode is activated.
To enter Deco-mail pictographs: Press [Pict/Sym] in pictograph mode.
 - The input mode switches between Pictograph and Pictograph D (Deco-mail pictograph).
 To enter symbols: Press [Symbol] in pictograph mode.
 - Press [Symbol] in symbol mode to switch between upper case and lower case.

Entering emoticons

- In text input screen, press [Emoticon] for 1+ seconds ▶ emoticon ▶ [Emoticon].

Cutting/Copying/Pasting text

- In text input screen, move cursor to the first character to cut ▶ press [Cut] for 1+ seconds.
To copy: In text input screen, press [Copy] ▶ move cursor to the first character to copy ▶ [Copy].
- Move the cursor to the last character to cut/copy ▶ [Cut/Copy].
- Move the cursor to the paste location ▶ press [Paste] for 1+ seconds.

Example

Ex.) 今日のデニス3時

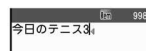
-5-

- In text input screen, press [Cut] twice ▶ [Cut] ▶ [Cut].



- Enter hiragana with the dial key. Every time the key is pressed, the character changes.
- Closest entry appears after each character is entered.
- Select conversion candidates.
- Press [Lower case] for lower case.
- To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press [One-touch] to move the cursor, or after entering a character, press the same key for 1+ seconds.

- Press [One-touch] ▶ [One-touch].
- Press [4] [5] [3] ▶ [デニス].
- Use [One-touch] for One-touch conversion.
- Press [Five times] ▶ [Five times].



- Press [Five times] five times for single-byte alphanumeric mode.

- Press [Two times] ▶ [Three times] ▶ [X] ▶ [Time] ▶ [Time].
- Use [X] for dakuten mark.
- Press [Pict/Sym] ▶ [Pict/Sym].

-6-



Changing font (font style)

- In stand-by, press [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Font style] ▶ [Font style setting] ▶ font.
To set to LC Gothic: Select [LC Gothic].
To set to SH Heisei Mincho: Select [SH Heisei Mincho].
To set to SH Crystal Touch: Select [SH Crystal Touch].

Changing font size

- In stand-by, press [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Font style] ▶ [Font size] ▶ [Individual setting] ▶ [Input] ▶ font size ▶ [Yes].
For Collective setting: Press [Five] for 1+ seconds in stand-by.

-7-

Camera

Shoot still picture

- In stand-by, press **[Home]** **[FOMA]** **[Save]**.
Shoot panoramic pictures
 - In stand-by, press **[Panorama]** **[FOMA]** **[Left/Right]** **[End]** **[Save]**.

Shoot movie

- In still picture shooting screen, press **[Switch camera-mode]** **[Movie]** **[Rec]** **[record]** **[Stop]** **[Save]**.

Viewing still pictures

- In stand-by, press **[Data box]** **[My picture]** **[folder]** **[still picture]**.

Playing back movies

- In stand-by, press **[Data box]** **[i-motion]** **[folder]** **[movie]**.

-8-

Sending Deco-mail

- In message entry screen, press **[Decorate mail]** **[decoration type]** **[specify decoration]** **[enter text]** **[Preview]** **[Agree]** **[Send]**.

Attaching a file

- In stand-by, press **[Home]** for 1+ seconds **[attachment file field]** **[file to attach]**.

[Image]	[folder]	[image]
[Melody]	[folder]	[melody]
[i-motion]	[folder]	[movie/i-motion]
[ToruCa]	[folder]	[ToruCa]
[PDF]	[folder]	[PDF data]
[Phonebook]	[phone]	[name]
[Schedule]	[phone]	[date]
[Bookmark]	[i-mode]/[Full Browser]	[folder]
[Document]	[file]	[file]
[Other]	[folder]	[file]

-12-

Watching 1Seg

Performing the Automatic Channel Setting

- In stand-by, press **[1Seg]** **[Channel setting]**.
- Select the destination No. **[Auto channel set]** **[Yes]**.
- Select a region **[prefecture/district]** **[Yes]**.
- Press **[Yes]**.

Selecting a Channel List

- In stand-by, press **[1Seg]** **[Channel setting]** **[Channel list]** **[Set]**.

Watching 1Seg

- In stand-by, press **[TV]**.
To record a movie of 1Seg programs: Press [Home] for 1+ seconds while watching 1Seg [record] [Stop].
To record 1Seg programs as a still picture: Press [Home] while watching 1Seg.

Watching Video

- In stand-by, press **[Data box]** **[1Seg]** **[video file]**.

-9-

Composing/Sending SMS

- In stand-by, press **[Compose SMS]** **[To]** **[Direct input]** **[enter address]** **[Msg]** **[enter message]** **[Send]**.

Auto receive



- i-mode mail is automatically received.
- Select **[Mail]** **[mail]**.
 • Received mail appears.

Receive option setting

- In stand-by, press **[Receive option]** **[Receive opt. setting]** **[ON]** **[Yes]**.

Check new messages

- In stand-by, press **[Check new message]**.
For SMS: Press [Home] [Check new SMS].

-13-

Music Playback

Playing back with Music player

- In stand-by, press **[Data box]** **[MUSIC]** **[data type]**.

Chaku-uta full®	[i-mode] [music data]
WMA file	[WMA] [folder type] [folder] [music data]
Data in [Multimedia]	[i-mode] [microSD] [Multimedia] [music data]
Playlist	[Playlist] [playlist] [Play]

Key operations during playback

To pause	[Stop]
To stop	[Home]
To adjust volume	[Volume Up/Down]
To play previous song/To return to beginning of song	[Previous]
To play next song	[Next]
To end Music player	[Home]/[Yes]

-10-

Replying to i-mode mail

- Open i-mode mail **[Reply/Forward]**.
- Select **[Reply]**.
To quote message and reply: Select [Reply with quote].
- Compose and send i-mode mail.

Forwarding i-mode mail

- Open i-mode mail **[Reply/Forward]** **[Forward]**.
- Compose and send i-mode mail.

Menu List

Selecting from Custom menu

- In stand-by, press **[Custom menu]** **[function]**.

Switching Custom menu/Basic menu

- In Custom menu screen, press **[Basic]**.
For Basic menu: Press [Home] (Custom).

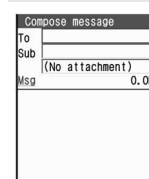
Recalling function number

- In stand-by, press **[function number]** in Basic menu.

-14-

Mail

Composing/Sending i-mode Mail



- In stand-by, press **[Home]** for 1+ seconds **[To]**.
- Select **[Direct input]** **[enter address]**.
To select from phonebook: Select [Search phonebook] recipient [Home].

To select from Sent/Received messages history: Select [Sent messages]/[Rcvd messages] recipient [Home].
To select from mail members: Select [Mail members] member [Home].

- Select **[Sub]** **[enter subject]** **[Msg]** **[enter message]** **[Send]**.
Paste Position location URL to i-mode mail text
 - In message entry screen, press **[Location info]** **[From position loc.]** **[Yes]**.

-11-

Sound

[1] Snd/Vibrator/Manner	[1] Select volume	phone ring vol, Mail ring vol, PushTalk tone vol, Key/Standby i-motion, Charge start sound, Charge end sound, Timer sound, GPS volume
	[2] Select sound	Select ring tone, Select mail tone, PushTalk tone, Shutter sound, Timer sound, GPS tone
	[3] Vibrator	Vibration mode, Mail vibration, GPS vibrator
	[4] Manner mode	ON (Normal, Silent, Original), OFF
	[5] Headset setting	
	[6] Ring time setting	Mail ring time set, PT ring time set, GPS ring time set
	[7] Set mute ring time	
	[8] Hold/On hold tone	Set on hold tone, Set hold tone
	[9] Sound plybck	Melody stereo fx, Melody equalizer, Run music settings

-15-

Display

② Disp/ LED/ Power saver	① Set screen	Stand-by display, Clock display, Calendar display, Desktop clock
	② Font style	Font style setting, Font size
	③ Themes	Kisekiae Tool, Call/Rcv display, Send/Rcv display, Submenu image, Dial image set, Animate notices, Signal/batt/s clock, Color theme setting
	④ LED settings	Called LED, Mail LED, In-call LED, Alarm/Timer LED, IC card LED, Open/close LED, Notice LED, GPS LED
	⑤ Display img quality	Vibrant image mode, Control by scene
	⑥ Light/Power saver	Norm (auto bright), Norm (fixed bright), Eco mode (Pwr saver), Original Eco mode
	⑦ Private filter	Linked manner, Filter density
	⑧ Menu priority	

-16-

General Settings

③ General settings	① Check status	Owner Information, Check memory, Battery level, Check settings
	② Text input setting	User dictionary, Dwnld dictionary, Edit phrase, Clear memory terms
	③ Auto power ON/OFF	Auto power ON, Auto power OFF, Link alarm/ power ON
	④ Date settings	
	⑤ Select language	
	⑥ TOUCH CRUISER set	Usage settings, Pointer speed, Scroll speed, Double tap speed
	⑦ USB mode setting	
	⑧ Scanning function	Update, Set auto-update, Set scan, Version
	⑨ Software update	
	⑩ Reset settings	

-17-

NW Services

④ NW Services	① Voice Mail	Check messages, Play Messages, Activate VoiceMail, Set ring time, Deactivate VoiceMail, Status(Voice Mail), Voice Mail setting, Notification setting, Notification
	② Call waiting	Activate, Deactivate, Status request
	③ Call forwarding	Activate, Deactivate, Register number, Forwarding No. busy, Status request
	④ Bar nuisance calls	Register caller, Register selected No, Delete all entries, Delete last entry, Check No of entries
	⑤ Notify caller ID	Status request, Notify caller ID
	⑥ Caller ID request	Activate, Deactivate, Status request
	⑦ Talk time/cost	

-18-

④ NW Services	② 2in1 setting	Mode switching, Phonebook 2in1 set, Stand-by display, Set call/ receive No., 2in1 function OFF, Receive avoidance
	⑨ In-call arrival act	Set arrival act, Arrival Call Act

Other NW Services

⑤ Other NW Services	① Remote control	Activate, Deactivate, Status request
	② Dual network	Switching, Status request
	③ English guidance	Guidance setting, Status request
	④ Service number	ドコモ故障問合せ, ドコモ総合案内・受付
	⑤ Additional service	USSD, Reply message
	⑥ Multi number	Set multi number, Status request, Number setting
	⑦ Chaku-moji	Create message, Message display
	⑧ Roaming guidance	Activate, Deactivate, Status request

-19-

Phone settings

⑥ Phone settings	① In-call settings	Noise reduction, Reconnect signal, Quality alarm
	② Headset sw to call	
	③ Incoming settings	Any key answer, Auto answer setting, Melody Call setting
	④ Videophone set	Redial voice call, Set sending image, Display setting, Subscreen position, Visual preference, Notify switch mode, Hands-free V.phone, V.phone while packet
	⑤ Record message	Record message, Answering duration, Reply message, V.phone reply image
	⑥ Set PushTalk	Set PT arrival act, Hands-free PT
	⑦ Set when folded	Phone/Videophone, PushTalk
	⑧ Self mode	
⑨ Other settings	Int'l prefix, Sub address, Int'l dial assist, International Roam., In-area status	

-20-

Security

⑦ Security	① Secret mode	
	② UIM Settings	PIN1 code input set, Change PIN1 code, Change PIN2 code
	③ Accept/Reject calls	Accept calls, Reject calls, Reject unknown, User unset, Reject payphone, Reject not support
	④ Show call/ received	Show rcvd calls, Show redial
	⑤ Show sent/ received	Show sent messages, Show rcvd messages
	⑥ Lock settings	All lock, Keypad dial lock, Function lock, IC card lock, Multi easy lock set, Multi lock auto-set
	⑦ Change security code	
	⑧ Writing authentic	
⑨ Delete all data	Delete user data, Del secret data	

Other settings

⑧ Initial setting
⑩ Own number

-21-

Application

⑧ ⑨ Data box	① My picture	
	② MUSIC	
	③ Music&Video ch	
	④ i-motion	
	⑤ 1Seg	
	⑥ Melody	
	⑦ My Documents	
	⑧ Kisekiae Tool	
	⑨ Chara-den	
	⑩ Print setting(DPOF)	
⑧ ⑨ LifeKit	① Bar code reader	
	② Receive Ir data	
	③ microSD manager	View microSD data, Backup/restore, Import, New manager info, Format, USB mode setting
	④ GPS menu	Position location, i-αppli, Location history, Set position loc., Loc.notification/set, Loc. request menu
⑤ Card reader		
⑥ Schedule		

-22-

⑧ ⑨ LifeKit	⑦ Calculator	
	⑧ Text memo	
	⑨ Timer/Alarm	Timer, Alarm, Wakeup TV
	⑩ Voice memo/Rec msg	
⑧ ⑨ Media tool	⑪ Character reader	
	⑫ Data Sec. Service	
	⑬ Voice recorder	
	⑭ Manga&BookReader	
⑧ ⑨ Media tool	⑮ Document Viewer	
	⑯ PDF Viewer	
	⑰ MUSIC	
⑱ Osaifu-Keitai		
⑲ 1Seg		

-23-

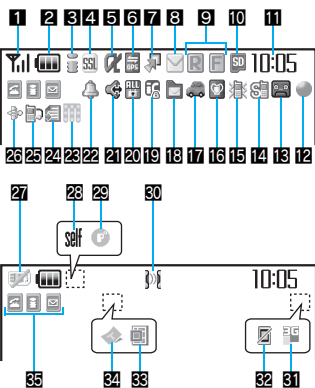
Other Functions

Manner mode enable/disable	Press [H] for 1+ seconds
Public mode (Drive mode) activate/deactivate	Press [X] for 1+ seconds
Multi easy lock activate/deactivate	Press [O] for 1+ seconds
Show Redial	[C]
Show Received calls	[C]
Show i-Channel properties	[CLR] ([CH])/press [CLR] ([CH]) for 1+ seconds
Show Active marker	[A]
Show i-mode menu	[I]
Show i-oppli software list screen	Press [I] ([P]) for 1+ seconds
Activate Record message/Voice memo	Press [Z] for 1+ seconds
Font Size all set to Zoom/all set to Normal	Press [5] for 1+ seconds
Display Mail menu	[M]
View phonebook	[P]
Activate camera (still picture mode)	[C]

-24-

Icon List

Upper Part of the Main Display



-28-

Activate camera (movie mode)	In still picture shooting screen, press [C] ▶ [Switch camera-mode] ▶ [Movie]
Display Data box menu	Press [D] for 1+ seconds
Supportbook	In stand-by, press [S]
Activate Multi Assistant (Multitask)	[M] while running an application
Display Shortcut menu	[S]
Register Shortcut menu	Press [S] for 1+ seconds when [S] appears
Earpiece Volume	During call, press [V] / [V]
Side Key Guard Set/Disable	Press [F] ([F]) for 1+ seconds
Private filter ON/OFF	Press [F] ([Z]) for 1+ seconds
Activate Music player	Press [M] (Eco) for 1+ seconds in the viewer position/when FOMA terminal is closed

-25-

1	Signal strength indicator
2	Battery level/Charging
3	i-mode/Full Browser
4	SSL indicator
5	i-oppli indicator
6	GPS indicator
7	Shortcut menu registration indicator
8	i-mode mail/SMS/Area mail received
9	Message R/F icon
10	microSD Memory Card indicator
11	Clock display
12	1Seg being recorded
13	Record message
14	Silent
15	Vibrator enabled
16	Manner mode active
17	Public mode (Drive mode)

-29-

Network Services

※ In the confirmation screen, select [Yes] and press **[O]**.

Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail Service is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

- In stand-by, press **[O]** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail].**
- Select [Activate VoiceMail] ▶ [Activate VoiceMail].**

To deactivate: Select [Deactivate VoiceMail].
To play message: Select [Play Messages].
To check for messages: Select [Check messages].

Call Waiting

Call Waiting is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

- In stand-by, press **[O]** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Call waiting].**
- Select [Activate].**

To deactivate: Select [Deactivate].
To request status: Select [Status request].

- Place current call on hold and answer a voice call**

- Beeps during call ▶ **[V]** ▶ call ▶ **[V]** ▶ **[V]** ▶ call.**

-26-

Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service is a free option that requires subscription.

- In stand-by, press **[O]** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Call forwarding].**
- Select [Activate].**
To deactivate: Select [Deactivate].
To request status: Select [Status request].
- Select [Forwarding number] ▶ [Direct input] ▶ enter forwarding number ▶ **[O]** ▶ [Set ring time] ▶ enter ringing time ▶ **[O]** ▶ [Activate].**

Caller ID Request Service

Subscription is not required (no monthly fees).

- In stand-by, press **[O]** ▶ [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Caller ID request].**

- Select [Activate].**
To deactivate: Select [Deactivate].
To request status: Select [Status request].

-27-

<Emergency contacts in case of loss or other accidents>

Omakase Lock

※ Omakase Lock is a paid service.
If Omakase Lock is subscribed while or at the same time as when the use of FOMA terminal is suspended, the usage fee of Omakase Lock is not charged.

Enable/Disable Omakase Lock
[O] 0120-524-360

Office hours: 24hours

Other contacts

<Contacts: >
<Contacts: >
<Contacts: >
※ Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

-30-

18	Storage status of i-mode center
19	IC Card lock
20	Restriction enabled
21	Hands-free/Mute in progress
22	Alarm
23	Music&Video Channel program reservation
24	i-mode mail send reservation
25	Earphone/Microphone connected
26	FOMA USB cable is connected
27	FOMA card error
28	Self mode enabled
29	PushTalk in progress
30	Ir exchange/External device indicator
31	3G/GSM setting
32	Private filter
33	Status of Comics setting
34	View ToruCa
35	Multitask

※ Refer to P. 28 to P. 30 of Manual for detailed explanations on displayed icons.

-31-

Quick Manual "Overseas Use"

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas

<DoCoMo Information Center> (24-hour service)

For DoCoMo mobile phones

International call access code of your country of stay (Table 1) **+81-3-5366-3114***(toll free)

* Communication charges to Japan will apply when you make a call from a fixed-line telephone.

※ If you use the SH905i, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to dial "+", press the "0" key for over a second).

For fixed-line telephones

<Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2) **-800-0120-0151***

* Communication charges or other charges to your country of stay will apply.

※ See P.13 and P.14 for international call access codes of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2).

Failures encountered overseas
<Network Technical Operation Center>
(24-hour service)

For DoCoMo mobile phones

International call access code of your country of stay (Table 1) **+81-3-6718-1414***(toll free)

* Communication charges to Japan will apply when you make a call from a fixed-line telephone.

※ If you use the SH905i, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to dial "+", press the "0" key for over a second).

For fixed-line telephones

<Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2) **-800-5931-8600***

* Communication charges or other charges to your country of stay will apply.

※ See P.13 and P.14 for international call access codes of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2).

Preparing for Oversea Use

Setting i-mode

Setting in Japan

1 In stand-by, press **[i]** ▶ **[iMenu]** ▶ **[English iMenu]** ▶ **[Options]** ▶ **[International Settings]** ▶ **[i-mode services Settings]** ▶ **[Yes]** ▶ enter i-mode password ▶ **[OK]**.

Setting in overseas

1 In stand-by, press **[i]** ▶ **[iMenu]** ▶ **[English iMenu]** ▶ **[International Settings]** ▶ **[i-mode services Settings]** ▶ **[Yes]** ▶ enter i-mode password ▶ **[OK]**.

Setting Remote Access

Setting in Japan

1 In stand-by, press **[S]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Other NW Services]** ▶ **[Remote control]** ▶ **[Activate]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

Setting in overseas

1 In stand-by, press **[S]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Room.]** ▶ **[Remote access(Int.)]** ▶ **[Yes]** ▶ operate according to voice guidance.

Correct the Date and Time Automatically

1 In stand-by, press **[S]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[General settings]** ▶ **[Date settings]** ▶ **[Auto time correction]** ▶ **[ON]** ▶ **[i]**.

Set the Time Zone Manually

1 In stand-by, press **[S]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[General settings]** ▶ **[Date settings]** ▶ **[Auto time correction]** ▶ **[OFF]**.
2 Press **[City]** ▶ time zone ▶ **[city]** ▶ **[i]**.

Available Network

3G network	Available
GSM network	Available
GPRS network	Available

Setting Network Communication System

1 In stand-by, press **[S]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Room.]** ▶ **[3G/GSM setting]** ▶ **[AUTO]/[3G/GSM/GPRS]**.

Services Available Overseas

Communication service	Explanation
Voice call	Make or receive calls in your country of stay or make international calls to Japan or to other countries with the same phone number as used in Japan while abroad.
Videophone	Make international Videophone calls to users of the specified 3G carriers overseas and FOMA users in Japan.
i-mode mail	Send/receive i-mode mail overseas with the same address as used in Japan.
i-mode	Use i-mode overseas.
i-Channel	Use i-Channel overseas.
SMS	Send/receive SMS overseas with the same phone number as used in Japan.
Data communication	Data communication (Packet transmission and 64K data communications), which are performed by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC, are available.

Setting a Search Method of Carrier

Network search mode

Default setting: [Auto] (Automatically switches to a telecommunications carrier)

1 In stand-by, press **[S]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Room.]** ▶ **[Network search mode]**.

2 Select **[Auto]** ▶ **[Yes]**.
To manually switch telecommunications carriers: Select **[Manual]** ▶ telecommunications carrier ▶ **[i]**.

Searching the host network again

1 In stand-by, press **[S]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Room.]** ▶ **[Network search mode]** ▶ **[Network re-search]**.

- When Network search setting is [Auto], automatically switches an available carrier.
- When Network search setting is [Manual], displays the list of carriers. Select a carrier.

Setting a Carrier to Preferentially Connect to

1 In stand-by, press **[S]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Room.]** ▶ **[Network search mode]** ▶ **[PLMN setting]** ▶ numbers of carriers in the priority order ▶ **[i]**.
2 Select **[UPLMN manual]** ▶ enter country code (MCC) ▶ **[i]** ▶ enter network code (MNC) ▶ **[i]** ▶ **[3G]/[GSM]/[3G and GSM]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

To save from a telecommunications carrier list: Select **[UPLMN by list]** ▶ telecommunications carrier ▶ **[i]** ▶ **[3G]/[GSM]/[3G and GSM]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

To save the telecommunications carrier currently connected to: Select **[Set VPLMN to PLMN]** ▶ **[Yes]**.
To change priority: Select **[Change priority]** ▶ destination ▶ **[i]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

Displaying a Carrier on the Stand-by



1 In stand-by, press **[S]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Room.]** ▶ **[Operator name disp]** ▶ **[display ON]** ▶ **[Yes]**.

A carrier

Setting After Homecoming

If Network search mode is set to [Auto], reset Network search mode to the FOMA network (DoCoMo) automatically when the power is turned on.

Setting to the FOMA network (DoCoMo) manually

1 In stand-by, press **[S]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Room.]** ▶ **[Network search mode]**.
2 Select **[Manual]** ▶ **[DoCoMo]**.

Making Calls

Making a call to other countries from your country of stay (includes Japan)

Use + to make an international call

- In stand-by, press **[0]** for 1+ seconds ▶ enter country code, area code (city code) and other party's phone number ▶ **[✓]** (Phone)/**[☎]** (V.phone) ▶ **[Yes]**.

Enter **81** as a country code to make an international call to Japan. When the area code (city code) begins with **0**, omit the **0** when dialing. However, include **0** when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.

Making an international call outside your country of stay using country code conversion

0 at the beginning of a phone number is automatically converted to the country code set in Country code conversion. Example: Make a call from phonebook.

- In stand-by, press **[☎]** ▶ select person to call ▶ **[✓]** (Phone)/**[☎]** (V.phone) ▶ **[Call]**.

International call

Save a country number using Set country code to select a country code before making an international call. The following operation is available overseas only.

- In stand-by, enter phone number ▶ **[☎]** ▶ **[Add prefix setting]** ▶ **[International Call]** ▶ select country code ▶ **[0]** ▶ **[✓]** (Phone)/**[☎]** (V.phone).

-8-

Making a call to the phone in your country of stay

- In stand-by, enter phone number ▶ **[✓]** (Phone)/**[☎]** (V.phone).

Making a call to the phone in your country of stay using phonebook

- In stand-by, press **[☎]** ▶ select person to call ▶ **[✓]** (Phone)/**[☎]** (V.phone) ▶ **[Original number]** ▶ **[0]**.

Making a call to a WORLD WING subscriber overseas

Even when making a call to the phone in your country of stay, make an international call to Japan if the call recipient is a "WORLD WING" subscriber.

- In stand-by, press **[0]** for 1+ seconds ▶ **[☎]** ▶ enter the other party's phone number excluding **0** ▶ **[✓]** (Phone)/**[☎]** (V.phone) ▶ **[Yes]**.

Receiving Calls

- Press **[✓]** to answer an incoming call.

Having calls to your FOMA phone made from Japan

Enter the phone number in the same way as it is entered in Japan and make a call.

Having calls to your FOMA phone made from countries other than Japan

Enter international access code of the country of the caller-81-user's phone number excluding **0** and make a call.

-9-

Setting Roaming Guidance

Set only in Japan.

- In the confirmation screen, select **[Yes]** and press **[0]**.

- In stand-by, press **[0]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Other NW Services]** ▶ **[Roaming guidance]**.

- Select **[Activate]**.
To deactivate: Select **[Deactivate]**.
To request status: Select **[Status request]**.

Call Barring

- Depending on the overseas telecommunication carrier, the setting cannot be made.

- In stand-by, press **[0]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Roam.]** ▶ **[Call barring]**.

- Select **[Activate]** ▶ **[Bar all incoming]**/ **[Bar V.phone/64K]** ▶ enter network security code ▶ **[0]**.

To deactivate: Select **[Deactivate]** ▶ enter network security code ▶ **[0]**.

To request status: Select **[Status request]**.

Using Network Service

- To use a network service overseas, set Remote control to "Activate".

- In the confirmation screen, select **[Yes]** and press **[0]**.

-10-

Voice Mail (Int.)

- Operate according to voice guidance.

- In stand-by, press **[0]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Roam.]** ▶ **[Voice Mail(Int.)]**.

- Select **[Activate Voice Mail]**.
To deactivate: Select **[Deactivate]**.
To play message: Select **[Play Messages]**.
To set Voice Mail Service: Select **[Voice Mail settings]**.

Call Forwarding (Int.)

- Operate according to voice guidance.

- In stand-by, press **[0]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Roam.]** ▶ **[Call Forward (Int.)]**.

- Select **[Activate]**.
To deactivate: Select **[Deactivate]**.
To set Call Forwarding Service: Select **[Settings]**.

Roaming guidance (Int.)

- In stand-by, press **[0]** ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Phone settings]** ▶ **[Other settings]** ▶ **[International Roam.]** ▶ **[Roam. guidance(Int.)]** ▶ operate according to voice guidance.

-11-

Country Codes of Major Countries

The following shows "Country code" used when making international calls or setting International dial assist.

(As of October 2007)

Country/region	Code	Country/region	Code
Australia	61	Maldives	960
Austria	43	Netherlands	31
Belgium	32	New Caledonia	687
Brazil	55	New Zealand	64
Canada	1	Norway	47
China	86	Peru	51
Czech	420	Philippines	63
Egypt	20	Russia	7
Fiji	679	Singapore	65
Finland	358	South Korea	82
France	33	Spain	34
Germany	49	Sweden	46
Greece	30	Switzerland	41
Hong Kong	852	Tahiti (French)	689
Hungary	36	Polynesia	
India	91	Taiwan	886
Indonesia	62	Thailand	66
Italy	39	Turkey	90
Japan	81	U.K.	44
Macao	853	U.S.A.	1
Malaysia	60	Vietnam	84

※ For other country codes and details, refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website".

-12-

International Call Access Codes of Major Countries (Table 1)

The following shows the International call access codes of major countries.

(As of August 2007)

Country/region	Code	Country/region	Code
Australia	0011	Malaysia	00
Belgium	00	Monaco	00
Brazil	0041/ 0014	Netherlands	00
		New Zealand	00
		Norway	00
Canada	011	Philippines	00
China	00	Poland	00
Czech	00	Portugal	00
Denmark	00	Russia	810
Finland	00	Singapore	001
France	00	South Korea	001
Germany	00	Spain	00
Greece	00	Sweden	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	002
India	00	Thailand	001
Indonesia	001	Turkey	00
Ireland	00	U.A.E.	00
Italy	00	U.K.	00
Luxembourg	00	U.S.A.	011
Macao	00	Vietnam	00

-13-

International Prefix Number for the Universal Number (Table 2)

The following shows the International prefix number for the universal number of each country.

(As of August 2007)

Country/region	Code	Country/region	Code
Argentina	00	Luxemburg	00
Australia	0011	Malaysia	00
Austria	00	Netherlands	00
Belgium	00	New Zealand	00
Brazil	0021	Norway	00
Bulgaria	00	Peru	00
Canada	011	Philippines	00
China	00	Portugal	00
Columbia	009	Singapore	001
Denmark	00	South Africa	09
Finland	990	South Korea	001
France	00	Spain	00
Germany	00	Sweden	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	00
Ireland	00	Thailand	001
Israel	014	U.K.	00
Italy	00	U.S.A.	011

-14-

About Inquiries Overseas

For lost, stolen, and cost settlement, or malfunction of the FOMA terminal overseas, refer to "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" on the cover of Quick Manual "Overseas Use" or "Failures encountered overseas" on P.1.

- Add "international call access code" of your country of stay that is assigned to your country of stay, or the "international prefix number for the universal number", to the head of your phone number for inquiries.

-15-

Please Follow Proper Etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, please be considerate of those around you.

Turn Off Your FOMA Terminal in the Following Places

■ When in an area where use is prohibited

There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Be sure to turn off your FOMA terminal in the following places.

★ On an airplane ★ In a hospital

※ There are people outside hospital wards who also use electric medical equipment. Please make sure that your FOMA terminal is turned off in the lobby and waiting room.

■ While driving

Using a mobile phone in hand while driving is regarded as a punishable act.

※ If there is no choice but to receive a call, use Hands-free and tell the caller that you will “call back”, and then pull over to a safe place to make a call.

■ When in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator

Your FOMA terminal may affect the operation of such equipment.

■ When in public places such as theaters, movie theaters, or museums

Use of your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will annoy others.

Be Careful of Where You Use Your FOMA Terminal and the Volume of Your Voice and the Ring Tone

■ When using your FOMA terminal in a restaurant or a hotel lobby, lower your voice.

■ In crowded places, be careful not to obstruct other pedestrians.

Be Considerate of the Privacy of the Individuals Around You



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

The Following Functions Will Help You to Keep Your Manners in Public

There are useful functions you can use to set your FOMA terminal not to answer incoming calls, and to silence all sounds.

● Manner mode (☎ P. 127)/Original manner mode (☎ P. 128)

Silences the Key/Standby i-motion sound and all the sounds from the FOMA terminal, and Record message is set (Manner mode). When in Manner mode, automatically set functions (Record message, Vibrator, Mic sensitivity up, Ring tone, Mail ring tone, alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion sound, and Low battery alarm) can be set to ON (enable)/OFF (disable) (Original manner mode).

● Public mode (Drive mode) (☎ P. 71)

The caller hears a guidance message that informs the receiver is driving and unable to answer. The call then disconnects. Your FOMA terminal does not sound even when it receives calls, so you can drive safely.

● Vibration mode (☎ P. 125)

Notifies incoming calls by vibration.

● Record message (☎ P. 74)

When you are unable to take a call, the Record message function records the caller's message.

※ You can also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service (☎ P. 430) and Call Forwarding Service (☎ P. 433).

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

From i-mode

iMenu ▶ 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Applications/Setting) ▶ 各種手続き (ドコモサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

Packet communication charges free

From PC

My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ▶ 各種手続き (ドコモサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

- You will need your **Network Security Code** to access e-site from i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- You will need your **DoCoMo ID/Password** to access e-site from PC.
- If you do not have or you have forgotten your **Network Security Code** or **DoCoMo ID/Password**, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.


General Inquiries
<DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

 **0120-005-250** (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.


(In Japanese only)

 (No prefix) **151** (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

 (No prefix) **113** (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

 **0120-800-000** (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

* For further information, refer to the "Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas
<DoCoMo Information Center> (24-hour service)

For DoCoMo mobile phones

International call access code of your country of stay (Table 1) **+81-3-5366-3114*** (toll free)

* Communication charges to Japan will apply when you make a call from a fixed-line telephone.

* If you use the SH905i, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to dial "+", press the "0" key for over a second).

For fixed-line telephones

<Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2) **-800-0120-0151***

* Communication charges or other charges to your country of stay will apply.

* See P.451 for international call access codes of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2).

For DoCoMo mobile phones

International call access code of your country of stay (Table 1) **+81-3-6718-1414*** (toll free)

* Communication charges to Japan will apply when you make a call from a fixed-line telephone.

* If you use the SH905i, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to dial "+", press the "0" key for over a second).

For fixed-line telephones

<Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2) **-800-5931-8600***

* Communication charges or other charges to your country of stay will apply.

* See P.451 for international call access codes of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2).

- When your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen, be sure to immediately contact DoCoMo to suspend your services.
- When you have a trouble with your FOMA terminal, bring it to a repair counter specified by DoCoMo after returning to Japan.



Don't forget your mobile phone... or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation



To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



Made from 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

'07.11 (1st Edition)
TINSEA146AFZZ
07L 3.2 DS SM532①

FOMA® SH905i

Manual for PC connection setting

● Data Communication	1
● Before Use	2
● General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication	3
● Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC	4
● Installing the FOMA Communication Setting File	4
● Communication Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software	7
● Communication Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software	18
● Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX)	27
● AT Command List	29

PC connection setting manual

This manual explains the necessary items to perform the data communication with FOMA SH905i and the installation methods of "FOMA Communication Setting File" and "FOMA PC Setup Software" in the CD-ROM.

The operation procedure and screens may be partly different depending on the use environment.

Data Communication

Data Communication Available from the FOMA Terminal

FOMA terminal communication formats fall into three categories: packet transmission, 64K data communication and data transfer.

- The FOMA terminal does not support fax transmissions.
- The FOMA terminal supports data communication with musea, sigmarion II and sigmarion III. However, the data is sent/received at the maximum speed of 384 kbps. High-speed communication for FOMA High-speed Area is not supported. Update musea and sigmarion II before using. Refer to the DoCoMo web page for details on how to update.
- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
- Unable to use 64K data communication overseas.

Packet transmission

Charges incurred are based on the amount of data sent and received. When you are only connected to the network and are not sending or receiving data, no communication charges are incurred. Remain connected to the network, with no charge, and only send or receive data when necessary. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA packet transmission, such as the DoCoMo Internet connection services "mopera U" and "mopera", and sends and receives data at speeds up to 384 kbps and 3.6 Mbps respectively (A best-effort connection is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions).

For packet transmission, connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings. Best suited for sending and receiving mail text data or other relatively small amounts of data at high speeds.

Note that sending or receiving large files will lead to higher transmission charges.

Making voice calls while performing packet transmissions with a PC or other devices is possible.

- The data is sent/received at the maximum speed of 384 kbps outside the FOMA High-speed Area.

64K data communications

Charges incurred are based on the connection time. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA 64K data communications, such as the DoCoMo Internet connection services "mopera U" and "mopera", or a synchronous ISDN 64K access point. Connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings to use 64K data communications. Best suited for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data, such as downloading Data box contents.

Note that long-time communication leads to higher transmission charges.

Data transfer

Transfer or exchange data using a FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) or Ir exchange without charges. Send or receive data such as phonebook entries, sent/received messages, and bookmarks.

Use infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to another FOMA terminal or mobile phone. Use either the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 or infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC.

Things to Keep in Mind

Internet service provider fees

When using the Internet, usage fees are charged by the Internet service provider. These usage fees, paid to the Internet service provider, are separate from the FOMA service fee. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about usage fees.

Use the DoCoMo Internet connection services "mopera U" and "mopera". Subscription to "mopera U" requires a charge. To use "mopera", subscription and monthly charge are not required, although the maximum communication speed of sending/receiving data is limited to 384 kbps.

Host (Internet service provider, etc.) settings

Hosts for packet transmission and 64K data communications differ. For packet transmission, use a host that supports FOMA packet transmission, and for 64K data communications, use a host that supports FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is not possible.
- Connecting to PHS 64K/32K data communication data access points (such as PIAFS) is not possible.

User authentication

Depending on the host, user authentication (ID and password) may be necessary when connecting. In such cases, enter your ID and password using communication software (dial-up network) to connect. Your ID and password are provided by your host Internet service provider or host network administrator. Contact your host Internet service provider or host network administrator for more information.

Packet transmission and 64K data communications conditions

The following conditions are necessary for data transmission (packet transmission/64K data communication) using the FOMA terminal in Japan.

- The PC must support the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01.
- Must be within the FOMA service area.
- For packet transmission, the access point must be compatible with FOMA packet transmission.
- For 64K data communications, the host must support FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communications.

However, even if above conditions are met, communication may not be possible due to a busy base station or poor signal conditions.

Note

- When performing packet transmission, the device connected to your FOMA terminal must be a JATE (Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Equipment) authorized product.

Before Use

Confirming the Operating Environment

The following lists the operating requirements for using data communications.

Item	System requirements	
	FOMA Communication Setting File FOMA PC Setup Software	FirstPass PC Software
PC	PC/AT compatible A USB port (USB specification 1.1/2.0-compliant) is required	PC/AT compatible
OS	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista (all Japanese versions)	
Required memory*	Windows 2000: At least 64 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB Windows Vista: At least 512 MB	Windows 2000: At least 32 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB Windows Vista: At least 512 MB
Hard disk*	At least 5 MB free space	At least 10 MB free space
Browser	—	Windows 2000, Windows XP: Internet Explorer 6.0 and above Windows Vista: Internet Explorer 7.0

* Required memory and hard disk are for the "FOMA PC Setup Software" and "FirstPass PC Software" operating environment. May differ depending on the PC system configuration.

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 and above is recommended for activating menus. Take the steps below if one of the followings happens; menus do not appear even if the CD-ROM is set.

For Windows XP and Windows 2000

Click [ファイル名を指定して実行] (Run) in [スタート] (Start) menu, enter [<CD-ROM drive name>: index.html] and click [OK].

For Windows Vista

In the [スタート] (Start) menu of Windows, specify [<CD-ROM drive name>: index.html] in the [検索の開始] (Start search) field and click [index.html] displayed in the search result field.

- The operation in an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.
- Depending on the operating environment, use of the software may not be possible. DoCoMo holds no responsibility for responding to inquiries or guaranteeing operation in environments other than those specified above.

The following warning message may appear when a CD-ROM is set in a PC. This warning is shown by the security setting of Internet Explorer but does not cause any problem for use.

Click [はい] (Yes).

- ※ The following screen is an example for Windows XP. The screen depends on your PC.



Required Equipment

The following hardware and software are required besides the FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- CD-ROM "FOMA SH905i CD-ROM" (accessory)

Note

- Purchase a dedicated USB cable "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01" or "FOMA USB cable". USB cables for PC are not available since the connector shape is different.
- The explanations in this manual are based on the case of "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01".
- Use of USB HUB may not work correctly.

Data communication terminology

APN (Access Point Name)

A character string used by Internet service providers and corporate LANs for identification purposes. The APN of the DoCoMo Internet connection service mopera U is *mopera.net* and mopera is *mopera.ne.jp*.

cid (Context Identifier)

Registration number assigned when an APN is registered to the FOMA terminal. On the FOMA terminal, numbers 1 to 10 can be used.

DNS (Domain Name System)

System that converts domain names (for example, *nttdocomo.co.jp*) into IP addresses used on the PC.

HSDPA

The abbreviation of High Speed of Downlink Packet Access, which is a standard that increased the speed of data communication of the third generation (3G) mobile telecommunication systems "W-CDMA".

IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

Organization that establishes the standard for infrared exchange.

IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)

Standard created for the purpose of transferring data between mobile phones or PDAs (Personal Digital Assistants). Exchange phone numbers and schedules between mobile phones or PDAs with IrMC-compliant infrared terminals.

OBEX (Object Exchange)

One of the international data communication standards. Enables sending and receiving data between OBEX-compatible devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)

Service quality. Technology for using lines as the user intends, during communication. Set communication speed for connection, etc. on the FOMA terminal (☞ P. 32, P. 38 and P. 39).

W-CDMA

One of the third-generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000) recognized as a global standard. The FOMA terminal is compliant with the W-CDMA standard.

Transmission setting optimization

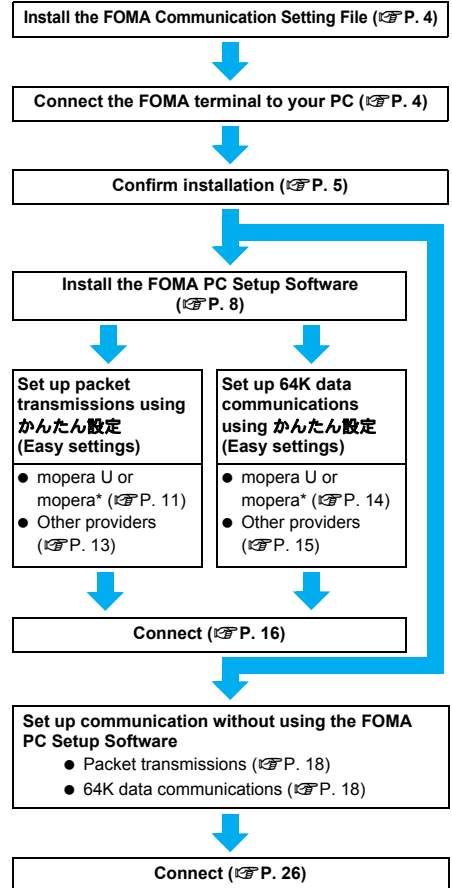
A TCP parameter for maximizing TCP/IP transfer capabilities when using packet transmission on the FOMA network. Use this communication setting to maximize the communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

Users with PC administrator rights

Authority that makes access to all OS systems possible. On a single PC, at least one person is set as a user with PC administrator rights. Normally, users without PC administrator rights cannot install or uninstall drivers or software.

General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication

This section describes the preparation required to connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, and use packet transmission and 64K data communications. The general flow is as shown below.



* Use "mopera U" (subscription necessary) for the broadband Internet connection, etc. Subscribe to a plan that only charges for months which the service was used. Also available is "mopera", a simple Internet connection service with no subscription necessary.

FOMA Communication Setting File

To connect the FOMA terminal to your PC for data communication, installation of the FOMA Communication Setting File from the accompanying Setting File from the accompanying CD-ROM is required (☞ P. 4 to P. 7).

Note


- If installation fails and [FOMA SH905] is not listed in the screens of step 3 of “Confirming the Installed FOMA Communication Setting File (Driver)” on P. 5, uninstall the FOMA Communication Setting File (☞ P. 6) and install it again.
- If, for some reason, the PC is unable to recognize the FOMA terminal, uninstall the FOMA Communication Setting File (☞ P. 6) and install it again.

FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

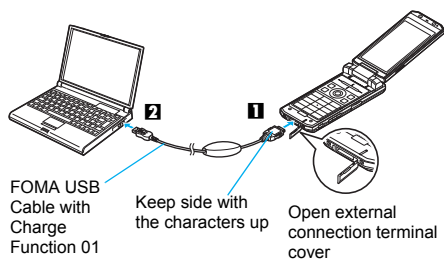
Install the FOMA PC Setup Software from the accompanying CD-ROM to a PC and make a variety of necessary settings to perform packet transmission and 64K data communications connecting the FOMA terminal to the PC (☞ P. 7). The FirstPass PC Software enables access to FirstPass supported sites via a PC Web browser with user certificates obtained by the FOMA terminal.

Refer to “FirstPassManual” on the accompanying CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view “FirstPassManual” (PDF format).

Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC with both devices turned on. If the FOMA Communication Setting File is already installed,  appears on the FOMA terminal screen.

Connecting Using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

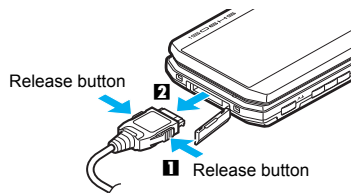


1 Insert the FOMA side of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately) into the external connection terminal on the FOMA terminal (1).

2 Insert the PC side of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 into the PC USB connector (2).

How to remove

1 Hold the release button on the FOMA terminal side of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (1), and pull out from the FOMA terminal (2). Pull by force may cause a malfunction.



2 Pull the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 out from the PC.

Note

- Connecting the FOMA terminal while charging in the desktop holder is also possible.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 during data transmission. Otherwise, transmission disconnection or data loss may occur.

Installing the FOMA Communication Setting File

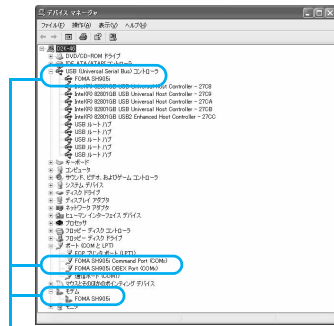
To make data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC, the FOMA Communication Setting File is required. Install the file before connecting the FOMA terminal for the first time to the PC.

Installing the FOMA Communication Setting File (Driver)

- Install on the PC using a user with administrator rights.
- Perform steps 1 to 3 first, and then connect the FOMA terminal to the PC.

3 Click on each device, and confirm the name of the installed device.

Confirm that the names of all the installed devices are displayed for [USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ] (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers), [ポート (COMとLPT)] (Ports (COM & LPT)) and [モデム] (Modems).



If recognized, they will appear in this manner.

- The following drivers are installed when the FOMA Communication Setting File is installed.

Device type	Device name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers Windows Vista Universal Serial Bus controllers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FOMA SH905i
Ports (COM and LPT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FOMA SH905i Command Port (COMx)* • FOMA SH905i OBEX Port (COMx)*
Modem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FOMA SH905i

* The "x" from "COMx" is a number and differs depending on the PC.

Related Operations

If installation fails or [FOMA SH905i] does not appear in the screen of step 3

- Uninstall the file, and then install it again. Refer to "Uninstalling the FOMA Communication Setting File (Driver)" for steps on uninstalling.

Uninstalling the FOMA Communication Setting File (Driver)

This section describes how to uninstall the FOMA Communication Setting File.

- When uninstalling the FOMA Communication Setting File, the PC user must have administrator rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software.
Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

Uninstalling from the accompanying CD-ROM

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP

- The screens are different for Windows Vista and Windows 2000.

1 Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into your PC.

- When the initial screen (P. 5) appears, exit the screen (Close the screen). The initial screen may not appear when the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC depending on your settings.

2 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [ファイル名を指定して実行] (Run).

- The [ファイル名を指定して実行] (Run) screen appears.

Windows Vista

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [検索の開始] (Start search).

3 Enter [<CD-ROM drivename>: ¥SH905i_USB_Driver¥Drivers ¥SH905i¥Win2k_XP¥SH905ic.exe] and click [OK].



Windows Vista

- Enter [<CD-ROM drivename>: ¥SH905i_USB_Driver¥Drivers¥SH905i ¥WinVista32¥] and click [sh905ic.exe] displayed in the search result field.

4 When [FOMA SH905i ドライバーのアンインストールを行います。] (Uninstalling the driver.) appears, click [はい] (Yes).

- Uninstallation of the FOMA Communication Setting File begins.

5 When [アンインストールは完了しました。PCを再起動してください。] (Uninstallation of the driver is completed. Restart the PC.) appears, click [OK] and restart the PC.

- Uninstallation of the FOMA Communication Setting File finishes.

Uninstalling from the control panel

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP

- 1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and click the [プログラムの追加と削除] (Add/Remove programs) icon.

- The [プログラムの追加と削除] (Add/Remove programs) screen appears.

Windows Vista

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel), and then click the [プログラムと機能] (Programs and features) icon. The [プログラムのアンインストールまたは変更] (Uninstall or change programs) screen appears.

Windows 2000

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [設定] (Settings) → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and double-click the [アプリケーションの追加と削除] (Add/Remove application) icon. The [アプリケーションの追加と削除] (Add/Remove application) screen appears.

- 2 Select [FOMA SH905i USB] and click [変更と削除] (Change/Remove).

Windows Vista

- Double-click [FOMA SH905i USB].

- 3 When [FOMA SH905i ドライバーのアンインストールを行います。] (Uninstalling the driver.) appears, click [はい] (Yes).

- Uninstallation of the FOMA Communication Setting File begins.

- 4 When [アンインストールは完了しました。PCを再起動してください。] (Uninstallation of the driver is completed. Restart the PC.) appears, click [OK] and restart the PC.

- Uninstallation of the FOMA Communication Setting File finishes.

Communication Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software

- The explanations in the subsequent steps are based on the settings for Windows XP. The screens are different for Windows Vista and Windows 2000.

FOMA PC Setup Software

Various network settings are required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet transmissions and 64K data communications. Use the FOMA PC Setup Software to easily make the following settings.

Easy settings

Follow the menu to easily create dial-up settings for FOMA data transmissions and optimize the transmission settings.

Transmission setting optimization

This optimizes the network settings in the PC before using [FOMA packet transmission]. Optimize the transmission settings and fully utilize the transmission performance.

Setting the Host (APN)

This configures the host (APN) required for packet transmissions.

Unlike in the case of 64K data communications, the host for FOMA packet transmissions does not use a telephone number. A host name, called an APN (Access Point Name), is registered to the FOMA terminal for each host in advance. The registration number (cid) of the APN is assigned to the host telephone number field and a connection is established. The APN *mopera.ne.jp* is registered in the first cid (cid1) and *mopera.net* is registered in the third cid (cid3) at the time of purchase for connection to mopera or mopera U. Configure a separate APN to connect to another provider or a corporate LAN. cid [Context Identifier] ...

This number is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. This is configured when an APN is registered in the FOMA terminal.

Note

- Alternatively, configure packet transmissions and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC Setup Software (P. 18).
- FOMA PC Setup Software of versions earlier than 4.0.0 (earlier version FOMA PC Setup Software) supplied with a FOMA terminal released before this handset are installed in the PC, uninstall the earlier version FOMA PC Setup Software in advance.

From installing the FOMA PC Setup Software to connecting to the Internet

Check the operating environment of the FOMA PC Setup Software (☞ P. 2).

STEP 1 Install the FOMA PC Setup Software
Uninstall earlier version FOMA PC Setup Software if installed before installing FOMA PC Setup Software of version 4.0.0. If earlier version FOMA PC Setup Software is installed, FOMA PC Setup Software of version 4.0.0 cannot be installed.



When a screen appears to indicate that earlier version W-TCP Setup Software and earlier version APN Setup Software are installed, refer to P. 10.

STEP 2 Setup preparation

Check the following before making any settings.

- The FOMA terminal is connected to a PC (☞ P. 4)
- The FOMA terminal is recognized on the PC (☞ P. 5)



If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, setup and communications are not possible. Install the FOMA Communication Setting File (☞ P. 4).

STEP 3 Use Easy settings to configure the network

- Packet transmissions using mopera U or mopera (☞ P. 11)
- Packet transmissions using other providers (☞ P. 13)
- 64K data communications using mopera U or mopera (☞ P. 14)
- 64K data communications using other providers (☞ P. 15)



Refer to P. 18 and following pages for other settings.

STEP 4 Establish a connection (☞ P. 16)

Connect to the Internet.

Installing the FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

- To install the FOMA PC Setup Software or FirstPass PC Software, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to install this software.

Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

- Before installation, check that the FOMA Communication Setting File (driver) is properly installed on the PC (☞ P. 5). In addition, close all other programs. If other programs are running, click [キャンセル] (Cancel) on the FOMA PC Setup Software screen, close all other programs after saving, then restart installation.

1 Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into your PC.

- The initial screen appears (☞ P. 5).

2 Click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] (Data link software/Setting software) → [インストール] (Install) in the [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC Setup Software) column.

- When [インストール] (Install) is clicked, the following warning message may appear. This warning is shown by the security setting of Internet Explorer but does not cause any problem for use.

■ When the ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告 (File Download - Security Warning) screen appears

Click [実行] (Run).



■ When the Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告 (Internet Explorer - Security Warning) screen appears

Click [実行する] (Run).



To install FirstPass PC Software

- In the initial screen, click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] (Data link software/Setting software) → [インストール] (Install) in the [FirstPass PCソフト] (FirstPass PC Software) column.
- A warning screen similar to the one that appears when the FOMA PC Setup Software is installed may appear depending on the security settings of Internet Explorer, but does not cause any problem for use.
- Follow the instructions in [FirstPassManual] found in the FirstPassPCSoft folder of the CD-ROM to install.

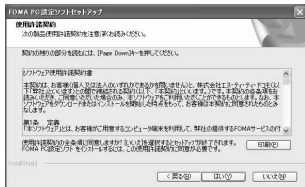
Windows 2000

- In the initial screen, click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] (Data link software/Setting software) → [インストール] (Install) in the [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC Setup Software)/[FirstPass PCソフト] (FirstPass PC Software) column → [開く] (Open).

3 Click [次へ] (Next).

- Refer to "Notes about installing the FOMA PC Setup Software" on P. 9 if a screen appears, stating that an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software or FOMA PC Setup Software is already installed.

4 Read the licensing agreement and click [はい] (Yes) to agree.



- This is the user licensing agreement for the FOMA PC Setup Software. Clicking [いいえ] (No) cancels the installation.

Windows Vista

- The setting in step 5 is not necessary. Proceed to step 6.

5 Put a check mark to [タスクトレイに常駐する] (Resident in task tray) and click [次へ] (Next).



- After setup, the transmission setting optimization icon is added to the task tray (参考 P. 16). This icon can be removed or added after installation by selecting [メニュー] (Menu) on the start screen of the FOMA PC Setup Software and then changing the setting of [通信設定最適化をタスクトレイに常駐させる] (Add the transmission setting optimization icon to the task tray).

6 Confirm the destination program folder and click [次へ] (Next).



- To change the destination program folder, click [参照] (Browse), select a destination for installation and click [次へ] (Next).

7 Confirm the program folder name and click [次へ] (Next).



- To change, enter a new folder name and click [次へ] (Next).

8 Click [完了] (Finish) on the [InstallShield Wizardの完了] (InstallShield Wizard completed) screen.

- The FOMA PC Setup Software restarts. Now configure the settings (参考 P. 11).

Notes about installing the FOMA PC Setup Software

● If an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, FOMA Data Transmission Software or FOMA PC Setup Software is installed

If an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, FOMA Data Transmission Software or FOMA PC Setup Software is installed, a warning screen appears. Click [OK] and uninstall the software using [プログラム (アプリケーション) の追加と削除] (Add/Remove programs (application)) before installing the FOMA PC Setup Software (Ver. 4.0.0).

● If [キャンセル] (Cancel) is clicked during installation

The setup cancellation screen appears if [キャンセル] (Cancel) or [いいえ] (No) is clicked during setup to cancel installation. To continue with the installation, click [いいえ] (No). To cancel the installation, click [はい] (Yes).

Checking the FOMA PC Setup Software version

In the startup screen of the FOMA PC Setup Software, select [メニュー] (Menu) → [バージョン情報] (Version information) to view version information.

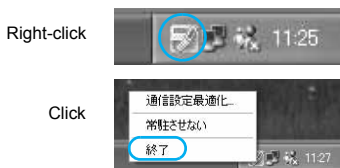
Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

Before uninstalling the software

Return the transmission settings changed for the FOMA back to their original settings before uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software.

- To uninstall the FOMA PC Setup Software or FirstPass PC Software, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software. Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

1 Right-click in the task tray and click [終了] (Exit).



2 End any programs that are running.

Uninstalling the software

1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and click the [プログラムの追加と削除] (Add/Remove programs) icon.

- The [プログラムの追加と削除] (Add/Remove programs) screen appears.

Windows Vista

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) → [プログラム] (Programs) → [プログラムと機能] (Programs and features).

The [プログラムのアンインストールまたは変更] (Uninstall or change programs) screen appears.

Windows 2000

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [設定] (Settings) → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and double-click the [アプリケーションの追加と削除] (Add/Remove application) icon. The [アプリケーションの追加と削除] (Add/Remove application) screen appears.

2 Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト] (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC Setup Software) and click [削除] (Remove).

Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト] (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC Setup Software).



Click here

Windows Vista

- Double-click [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト] (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC Setup Software).

Windows 2000

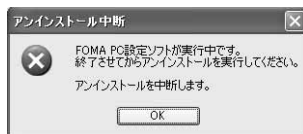
- Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト] (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC Setup Software) and click [変更と削除] (Change/Remove).

To uninstall FirstPass PC Software

- Select [FirstPass PC ソフト] (FirstPass PC Software) and click [変更と削除] (Change/Remove).

3 Confirm the program name to delete and click [はい] (Yes).

- Uninstallation of the FOMA PC Setup Software begins.
- The below screen will appear when attempting to uninstall, while FOMA PC Setup Software or Transmission Setting Optimization Software are running. Cancel the uninstallation program and close the running programs.



4

Click [完了] (Finish).

- Uninstallation of the FOMA PC Setup Software is completed.

Disabling transmission setting optimization (for Windows XP and Windows 2000 only)

- The screen below appears when the transmission settings are optimized.
- Click [はい] (Yes) to disable optimization. The transmission setting optimization is disabled after the PC is restarted.



Setting Up Communication

Use the FOMA PC Setup Software to easily create a dial-up setting for FOMA data communications.

- Check that the FOMA terminal is correctly connected to the PC before making any settings (P. 4).

1

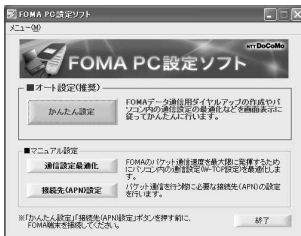
Start the FOMA PC Setup Software.

Windows XP, Windows Vista

- Select [スタート] (Start) menu → [すべてのプログラム] (All programs) → [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC Setup Software) → [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC Setup Software).

Windows 2000

- Select [スタート] (Start) menu → [プログラム] (Programs) → [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC Setup Software) → [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC Setup Software).



Easy Settings

Communication setting

1

Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click [メニュー] (Menu) → [通信設定] (Communication setting).

2

Select 通信ポート指定 (Specify communication port) and click [OK].

- Normally, select [自動設定 (推奨)] (Automatic setting (recommended)). The connected FOMA terminal is automatically specified.
- To specify a COM port, select [COMポート指定] (Specify COM port) and specify a COM port number (COM 1 to 99) to which the FOMA terminal is connected.



Note

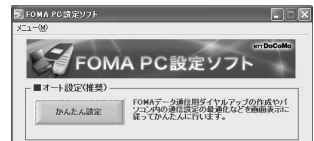
- Refer to “Confirming the Installed FOMA Communication Setting File (Driver)” on P. 5 for the checking method of COM ports.

Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps. For the provider, use mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet connection service (The communication speed for both sending and receiving is up to 384 kbps for using mopera).

1

Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click [かんたん設定] (Easy settings).



8 Click **[はい]** (Yes).

9 Confirm the setting information and click **[完了]** (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.
If [デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する] (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked , a shortcut is created automatically.
To change the settings, click [戻る] (Back).

10 Click **[OK]** on the **[完了]** (Finish) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click **[はい]** (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (☞ P. 16)

Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps.

1 Follow steps 1 to 4 of “Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)” on P. 11.

- Select **[その他]** (Other) for the host in step 3.

2 Enter the connection name and click **[接続先 (APN) 設定]** (Host (APN) settings).



- Enter a name in the **[接続名]** (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.
¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”
- Select whether to enable Notify caller ID when dialing up. For details on the Notify caller ID setting, follow instructions provided by your provider.
- When using overseas, select **[設定しない]** (No) for Notify caller ID.

Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

- Click **[詳細情報の設定]** (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

3 Configure the host (APN).

- The default setting for the first cid is **mopera.ne.jp**, the APN used to connect to mopera. The default setting for the third cid is **mopera.net**, the APN used to connect to mopera U.

1 Click **[追加]** (Add).

The **[接続先 (APN) の追加]** (Add host (APN)) screen appears.

2 Properly enter the FOMA packet transmission supported host name (APN) for the provider in the **[接続先 (APN)]** (Host (APN)) field, and click **[OK]**.

The **[接続先 (APN) 設定]** (Host (APN) settings) screen reappears.

- Enter only single-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) or period (.) for **[接続先 (APN)]** (Host (APN)).

- When using overseas, select **[IP接続]** (IP connections).

※ Register up to ten cids.

4 Click **[OK]** on the **[接続先 (APN) 設定]** (Host (APN) settings) screen.

- The screen in step 2 reappears. The host (APN) set in step 3 appears in **[接続先 (APN) の選択]** (Selected host (APN)).

5 Check the host name (APN) in **[接続先 (APN) の選択]** (Selected host (APN)) and click **[次へ]** (Next).

6 Enter the user ID and password, and click [次へ] (Next).

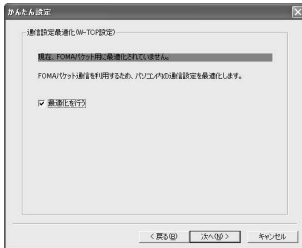
- Enter the user ID and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- For Windows XP and Windows 2000, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



Windows Vista

- The setting in steps 7 and 8 is not necessary. Proceed to step 9.

7 Make sure that [最適化を行う] (Optimize) is checked and click [次へ] (Next).



- The transmission settings on the PC are optimized for using FOMA packet transmission. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized. Proceed to step 9.

8 Click [はい] (Yes).

9 Confirm the setting information and click [完了] (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.
If [デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する] (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked , a shortcut is created automatically.
To change the settings, click [戻る] (Back).

10 Click [OK] on the [完了] (Finish) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click [はい] (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (☞ P. 16)

■ Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)

The setting is made for 64K data communications. For the provider, use mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet connection service.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 of “Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)” on P. 11.

- Select [64K データ通信] (64K data communications) for the connection method in step 2.

2 Enter the connection name, select a modem and click [次へ] (Next).



- Enter a name in the [接続名] (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.
¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”
- Make sure that [FOMA SH905] is set in [モデムの選択] (Selected modem).
- To connect to mopera U and mopera, Notify caller ID must be enabled. Select [設定しない] (No) or [186を付加する] (Add 186).

3 Click [次へ] (Next).

- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザーID] (User ID) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- For Windows XP and Windows 2000, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



4 Confirm the setting information and click [完了] (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.
If [デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する] (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked , a shortcut is created automatically.
To change the settings, click [戻る] (Back).

5 Click [OK] on the [完了] (Finish) screen.

- Sending and receiving transmissions (参照 P. 16)

Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for 64K data communications.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 of “Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)” on P. 11.

- Select [64K データ通信] (64K data communications) in step 2 and [その他] (Other) in step 3.

2 Make the settings and click [次へ] (Next).



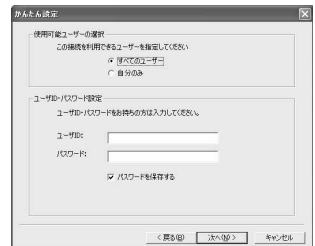
- To connect to a provider with an ISDN synchronous 64K access point, make the following settings when creating a dial-up setting.
 - Connection name:
Enter a connection name.
 - Selected modem: FOMA SH905i
 - Phone number:
Enter the phone number provided by the provider.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered for the connection name.
¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”
- The following characters can be entered for the phone number.
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D P T W a b c d p t w !
@ \$ - . () + * # , & and single-byte space
- Select whether to enable Notify caller ID when dialing up. For details on the Notify caller ID setting, follow instructions provided by your provider.

Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

- Click [詳細情報の設定] (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

3 Enter the User ID and password and click [次へ] (Next).

- Enter the User ID and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- For Windows XP and Windows 2000, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



4 Confirm the setting information and click [完了] (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If [デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する] (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked , a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click [戻る] (Back).

5 Click [OK] on the [完了] (Finish) screen.

Executing the Configured Transmission

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

- The connection screen appears.
- The name of the connection icon is the connection name entered in the earlier setting.



2 Click [ダイヤル] (Dial).

- The connection starts.



- When using moperla U or moperla, [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- If a user name and password are entered in step 3 on P. 15, that information is entered automatically into the [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) fields.
- When using other providers or dial-up to connect, enter the [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) and click [ダイヤル] (Dial).
- When Save user name and password field is checked , the user name and password do not need to be entered next time.

Note

- When there is no connection icon on the desktop
<Windows XP>
Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [すべてのプログラム] (All programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ネットワーク接続] (Network connections).
<Windows Vista>
Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [接続先] (Connect to).
<Windows 2000>
Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [プログラム] (Programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続] (Network and dial-up connections).
- A screen appears on the FOMA terminal showing the calling for packet transmission or dialing for 64K data communications.
- The transmission speed shown on the PC may differ from the actual transmission speed.


Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

1 Click in the task tray and click [切断] (Disconnect).

- The connection is disconnected.

Windows Vista

- Click in  the task tray → [接続または切断...] (Connect or disconnect), and double-click the disconnection icon.

Disabling transmission setting optimization (for Windows XP and Windows 2000 only)

Transmission setting optimization function

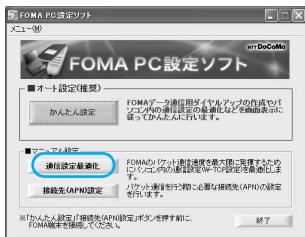
Transmission Setting Optimization Software is a TCP parameter setup tool used to optimize the TCP/IP transmission capacity when sending and receiving packet transmissions over the FOMA network. Configure the transmission settings with this software to fully utilize the transmission performance of the FOMA terminal.

- When connecting a PC overseas, disable transmission setting optimization before using.


Enabling and disabling optimization

- On Windows XP, configuring optimization for each dial-up setting is possible.

1 Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click [通信設定最適化] (Transmission setting optimization).



When optimizing the transmission setting in the task tray

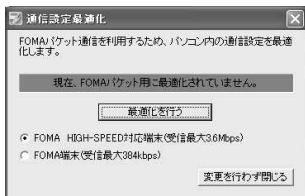
- Click  in the task tray to start the transmission setting optimization.



2 Perform the next operation.

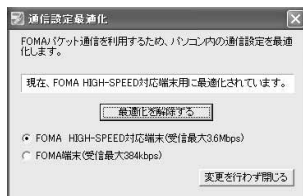
When the system setting is not optimized

- The following screen appears.
Select [3.6 Mbps] and click [最適化を行う] (Optimize).
The HIGH-SPEED 対応端末の確認 (Confirm HIGH-SPEED compatible terminal) screen appears. Click [[はい] (Yes). Optimization of the system setting begins. Setting completed screen appears when optimization ends. Click [OK].
Follow the instructions on the screen to restart the PC. After the PC is restarted, optimization is enabled.



When the system setting is optimized

- The following screen appears.
Click [最適化を解除する] (Disable optimization) → [OK] to disable the setting, for example, in order to send and receive transmissions without the use of the FOMA terminal. The restart confirmation screen appears. End all currently running programs and restart the PC to disable the optimization setting.



Host (APN) Settings

Reading Host (APN) information from the FOMA terminal

Click [接続先 (APN) 設定] (Host (APN) settings) and on the retrieve setting from FOMA terminal



screen, click [OK]. The connected FOMA terminal is accessed automatically and the registered host (APN) information is read (This operation is not performed if the FOMA terminal is not connected). The setting information can also be read by selecting from the toolbar [ファイル] (File) → [FOMA 端末から設定を取得] (Retrieve setting from FOMA terminal).

Adding, editing or deleting a host (APN)

● To add a host (APN)

Click [追加] (Add) on the host (APN) settings screen.

● To edit a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click [編集] (Edit).

● To delete a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click [削除] (Delete).

- The host (APN) registered to the first and third cid cannot be deleted. When the third number (cid) is selected and [削除] (delete) is clicked, the number is not actually deleted. The number returns to *mopera.net*.

Saving to a file

Select [ファイル] (File) from the toolbar to back up the host (APN) settings registered to the FOMA terminal or to save settings being edited.

Loading settings from a file

To load saved host (APN) settings in order to re-edit them or write them onto the FOMA terminal, select the appropriate function from the [ファイル] (File) menu on the toolbar.

Writing host (APN) information onto the FOMA terminal

To write the indicated host (APN) setting to the FOMA terminal, click [FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む] (Write settings onto FOMA terminal) on the Host (APN) setting screen.

Creating dial-up settings

On the host (APN) settings screen, select an added or edited host (APN) and click [ダイヤルアップ作成] (New dial-up). A screen confirming the writing of the setting to the FOMA terminal appears. Click [はい] (Yes). After the setting is written to the host (APN), the [パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成] (New dial-up for packet transmission) screen appears.

Enter a connection name and click [ユーザID・パスワードの設定] (Set user ID and password) (Can be left blank to connect when using moper a U or moper a).

For Windows XP and Windows 2000

Enter a [ユーザID] (User ID) and [パスワード] (Password), specify the users to whom rights are granted and click [OK].

For Windows Vista

Enter a [ユーザID] (User ID) and [パスワード] (Password), and click [OK].

If the IP and DNS information from your provider are available, click [詳細情報の設定] (Advanced) on the new dial-up for packet transmission screen, enter the necessary information and click [OK].

After entering the information, click [OK] → [OK] → [FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む] (Write settings onto FOMA terminal), confirm that the old setting is to be overwritten and then write the settings.

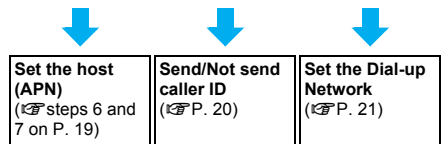
Communication Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software

Setting Communications for Packet Transmissions and 64K Data Communications

This section describes how to set up packet transmission and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC Setup Software. To make the settings, communication software for entering AT commands are required. "Hyper Terminal", which is included as standard with Windows, is used here.

- The flow for setting up with use of AT commands is as follows.
- To use 64K data communications, there is no host (APN) setting.
- Windows Vista is not compatible with "Hyper Terminal". Use Windows Vista compatible software to set up communications (follow the instructions for the software).

Start up communication software that supports AT commands (steps 2 to 5)



End communication software (step 7 on P. 20)

Note

- Install the FOMA Communication Setting File before making settings for packet transmission and 64K data communications (P. 4).
- AT commands are commands for controlling the modem. The FOMA terminal is compliant with AT commands and also supports some extended commands, as well as some unique AT commands.
- Making host (APN) settings is not necessary when using moper a U or moper a, the DoCoMo Internet connection service, since it is set as the default.
- Set Notify caller ID as necessary (When using moper a U or moper a, set [Send]). The default setting is [Not send].
- Set other settings as necessary. Use is possible with the default settings.

Setting the Host (APN)

Set the host (APN) for using packet transmission. Register up to ten numbers. Hosts are managed using cid numbers from 1 to 10 (☞ P. 19).

The default setting for the first cid is **mopera.ne.jp**, the APN used to connect to mopera. The setting for the third cid is **mopera.net**, the APN used to connect to mopera U. Save hosts (APN) to cid2 or 4 to 10.

- The registered cid is the connection number set in the dial-up connection settings.
- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for hosts (APNs) other than mopera U or mopera.

Example: For Windows XP

- The screens are different for Windows 2000.

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.

2 Select [スタート] (Start) menu → [すべてのプログラム] (All programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ハイパーターミナル] (Hyper terminal).

- Hyper terminal starts up.

Windows 2000

- Select [スタート] (Start) menu → [プログラム] (Programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ハイパーターミナル] (Hyper terminal).

3 Enter a name (such as a host name) in the [名前] (Name) field and click [OK].



- The advanced settings screen for phone number appears.

4 Select [FOMA SH905i] from [接続方法] (Connection method), enter a temporary number in [電話番号] (Phone number) field that does not actually exist (such as [0]), and click [OK].



- For the area code, the default setting in Windows (such as [03]), appears. Set any number for the area code, since it is not related to the host (APN) setting.

5 When the connection screen appears, click [キャンセル] (Cancel).

6 Enter host (APN) and press [Enter].



- Enter host (APN) in the format:
AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,<PDP_type>,"APN"
(☞ P. 32).
<cid> : Enter 2 or any of 4 to 10.
<PDP_type> : Enter "PPP" or "IP".
"APN" : Enter the host (APN) enclosed in " ".
- If [OK] appears, the APN is set successfully.
- To check the current host (APN) setting, enter AT+CGDCONT?[Enter], and the settings appear in a list.

When nothing appears on the screen when AT commands are entered

- ATE1☐

Refer to P. 35 for details on AT commands.

When resetting APN settings using AT commands

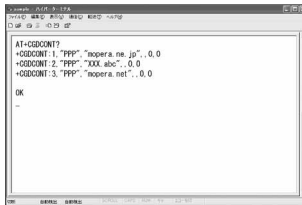
- AT+CGDCONT=☐ : To reset all the cids
- AT+CGDCONT=<cid>☐: To reset only specific cids

When reset, <cid>=1 returns to "mopera.ne.jp" (default setting), <cid>=3 returns to "mopera.net" (default setting) and settings for <cid>=2 or 4 to 10 are unregistered.

When confirming APN settings using AT commands

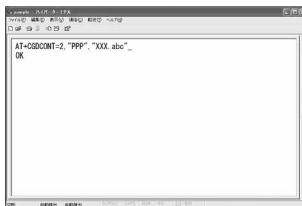
- AT+CGDCONT?☐

Refer to P. 32 for details on AT commands.



```
HyperTerminal - COM1: 9600, 8, N, 1, 1, 1
AT+CGDCONT?
+CGDCONT:1:"PPP","mopera.ne.jp",0,0
+CGDCONT:2:"PPP","XXX.abc",0,0
+CGDCONT:3:"PPP","mopera.net",0,0
OK
--
```

7 Confirm that [OK] appears and select [ハイパーターミナルの終了] (Exit hyper terminal) from the [ファイル] (File) menu.



```
HyperTerminal - COM1: 9600, 8, N, 1, 1, 1
AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc"
OK
--
```

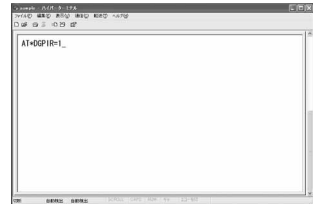
- Hyper terminal ends.
- [セッション×××を保存しますか?] (Save session xxx?) appears. However there is no need to save.

Setting Send/Not Send Caller ID

Handset number (Caller ID) is important personal information. Use caution when setting.

1 Follow steps 1 to 5 of "Setting the Host (APN)" on P. 19.

2 Set either Send caller ID (186) or Not send caller ID (184) during packet transmission.



```
HyperTerminal - COM1: 9600, 8, N, 1, 1, 1
AT+DGPIR=L
--
```

- Enter in the format: "AT*DGPIR=<n>" (☞ P. 31).

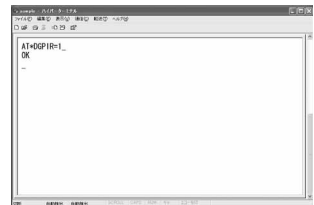
AT*DGPIR=1☐:

Adds "184" when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).

AT*DGPIR=2☐:

Adds "186" when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).

3 Confirm that [OK] appears.



```
HyperTerminal - COM1: 9600, 8, N, 1, 1, 1
AT+DGPIR=L
OK
--
```

■ Send/Not send setting on dial-up networks

Adding "186" (Send) and "184" (Not send) to the host number in dial-up networks is also possible. Setting "186" (Send) and "184" (Not send) in both the *DGPIR command setting and the dial-up network setting results in the following.

Dial-up network setting (when <cid>=1)	Using the *DGPIR command Send/Not send setting	Send/Not send caller ID
*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Send
	Not send	Not send
	Send	Send
184*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Not send (dial-up network "184" is given priority)
	Not send	
	Send	
186*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Send (dial-up network "186" is given priority)
	Not send	
	Send	

- Enter "AT*DGPIR=0" to return "186" (Send)"/"184" (Not send) to [Not set] (default setting).
- Set [Send] for sending caller ID when using mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet connection service.

Setting the Dial-up Network

Set the host and TCP/IP protocol. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.

Hosts

For packet transmissions, set the host (APN) in advance. Register numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for the host (APN) in advance, to enable using packet transmission by specifying control numbers. Host (APN) settings are the equivalent to a phonebook for packet transmissions on a PC. Compared to normal phonebook entries, they appear as follows.

In phonebook	In Packet transmission setting
Registered number (memory number)	Control numbers (cids) 1 to 10
Other party's name	Host name (host (APN))
Other party's phone number	*99***<cid>#

For example, when the mopera host (APN), **mopera.ne.jp**, is registered for cid1, connecting to mopera is possible by specifying the host number "*99***1#". Other registered cids can be used similarly.

- *99***1# : Connects to host (APN) registered to cid1. Alternatively, connect with just *99#.
- *99***2# : Connects to host (APN) registered to cid2.
- *99***10# : Connects to host (APN) registered to cid10.

As the default setting, **mopera.ne.jp**, the APN used to connect to mopera is registered for cid1, and **mopera.net**, the APN used to connect to mopera U is registered for cid3. When connecting to a corporate LAN or Internet service providers other than mopera or mopera U, register the host (APN) using cid2 or cid4 to 10 (P. 19).

For 64K data communications, enter the access point phone number supplied by the Internet service provider or network administrator.

- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.
- Access point phone number is "*8701" for mopera U and "*9601" for mopera when using 64K data communications.
- When using packet transmissions, enter "*99***3#" for mopera U and "*99***1#" for mopera (default setting).

Setting a dial-up network on Windows XP

On Windows XP, use ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol.

Example: Using <cid>=3 to connect to mopera U, the DoCoMo Internet connection service

- Subscription to mopera U requires a charge.

- 1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [すべてのプログラム] (All programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ネットワーク接続] (Network connections).
 - The network connections screen appears.
- 2 Click [新しい接続を作成する] (Create new connection) in [ネットワークタスク] (Network tasks).
 - A new connection wizard screen appears.
- 3 Click [次へ] (Next).
 - The screen to select network connection type appears.
- 4 Select [インターネットに接続する] (Dial-up to the Internet) and click [次へ] (Next).
 - A preparation screen appears.
- 5 Select [接続を手動でセットアップする] (Manually set up Internet connection) and click [次へ] (Next).
 - The Internet connection screen appears.
- 6 Select [ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する] (Connect through phone line and modem) and click [次へ] (Next).
 - A screen to specify the device appears.

7 Select [モデム - FOMA SH905i (COMx)] (Modem - FOMA SH905i (COMx)) and click [次へ] (Next).

- A number will replace "x".
- The connection name screen appears.
- Screen does not appear when no modems other than [FOMA SH905i] are installed.

8 Enter a connection name in the [ISP名] (ISP name) field and click [次へ] (Next).



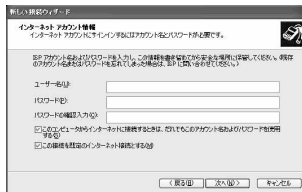
- The phone number to dial screen appears.
- The [ISP名] (ISP name) is the name of the Internet service provider.

9 Enter the host number in [電話番号] (Phone number) field and click [次へ] (Next).



- The Internet account connection information screen appears.
- To connect to <cid>=3 (mopera U), enter "*99**3#".

10 Set options in the screen, as shown below and click [次へ] (Next).



- The new connection wizard completed screen appears.
- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- When connecting to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) fields.

11 When [新しい接続ウィザードの完了] (New connection wizard completed) appears, click [完了] (Finish).

- The newly created connection wizard appears.

12 Confirm the setting information and click [キャンセル] (Cancel).

- Only confirming the settings without actually connecting.

13 Select the icon for host created and select [プロパティ] (Properties) from the [ファイル] (File) menu.

- Properties screen for the host appears.

14 Confirm all the settings in the [全般] (General) tab.



- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, make sure that [FOMA SH905i] in [接続の方法] (Connect using) shows . When appears instead, change to . For modems other than [FOMA SH905i], change to .
- Confirm that [ダイヤル情報を使う] (Use dialing rules) shows . When appears instead, change to .

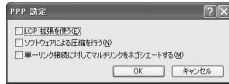
15 Click the [ネットワーク] (Networking) tab, confirm all settings and click [設定] (Settings).



- Set [呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類] (Type of dial-up server to call) to [PPP: Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet.]

- In the [この接続は次の項目を使用します] (Components checked are used by this connection) field, should appear only for [インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)] (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)). Leave [QoS パケットスケジューラ] (QoS packet scheduler) settings as is. No changes are necessary.
- The PPP setting screen appears.
- For TCP/IP settings used for connecting to an Internet service provider, confirm with the Internet service provider or network administrator.

16 Check all options to show and click [OK].



- Properties screen of the host reappears.

17 Click [OK] on the [プロパティ] (Properties) screen.

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 26 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

■ Setting a dial-up network on Windows Vista

On Windows Vista, use ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) to set the host (APN).

Example: Using <cid>=3 to connect to mopera U, the DoCoMo Internet connection service

- Subscription to mopera U requires a charge.

1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [接続先] (Connect to).

- The connect to a network screen appears.

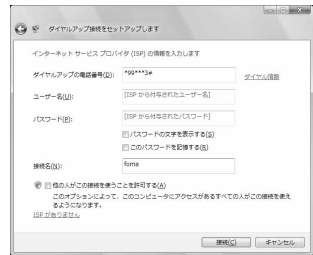
2 Click [接続またはネットワークをセットアップします] (Set up a connection or network).

- The connect to a network screen appears.

3 Click [ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします] (Set up a dial-up connection) → [次へ] (Next).

- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, [どのモデムを使いますか?] (Which modem do you want to use?) appears. Select [FOMA SH905i].
- The set up a dial-up connection screen appears.

4 Enter the host number in [ダイヤルアップの電話番号] (Dial-up phone number) field and a connection name in the [接続名] (Connection name) field, and then click [接続] (Connect).



- To connect to <cid>=3 (mopera U), enter "*99**3#" in [ダイヤルアップの電話番号] (Dial-up phone number) field.
- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- When connecting to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) fields.

5 When [接続名] に接続中] (Connecting to (Connection name)) appears, click [スキップ] (Skip).

- Only confirming the settings without actually connecting.
- If [スキップ] (Skip) is not clicked, the network is connected to the Internet.

6 Click [接続をセットアップします] (Set up a connection), and click [閉じる] (Close).

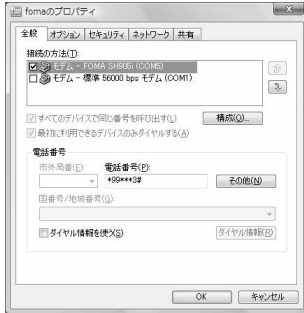
7 Click [スタート] (Start) → [ネットワーク] (Network), and then click [ネットワークと共有センター] (Network and sharing center) → [ネットワーク接続の管理] (Manage network connections).

- The network connections screen appears.

8 Select and right-click the icon for host created and select [プロパティ] (Properties).

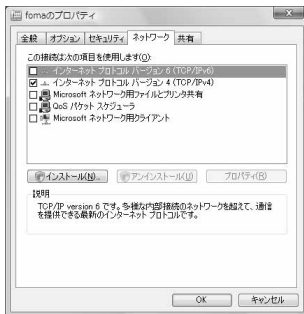
- Properties screen appears.

9 Confirm all the settings in the [全般] (General) tab.



- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, make sure that [FOMA SH905i] in [接続の方法] (Connect using) shows . When appears instead, change to . For modems other than [FOMA SH905i], change to .
- Confirm that [ダイヤル情報を使う] (Use dialing rules) shows . When appears instead, change to .

10 Click the [ネットワーク] (Networking) tab and confirm all settings.

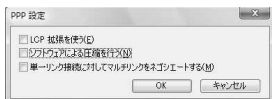


- In the [この接続は次の項目を使用します] (Components checked are used by this connection) field, should appear only for [インターネットプロトコルバージョン4 (TCP/IPv4)] (Internet protocol version 4 (TCP/IPv4)). Set [QoSバケットスケジューラ] (QoS packet scheduler) according to the instructions of the provider.

11 Click the [オプション] (Option) tab and click [PPP設定] (PPP setting).

- The PPP setting screen appears.

12 Check all options to show and click [OK].



- The option setting screen reappears.

13 Click [OK].

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 26 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

■ Setting a dial-up network on Windows 2000

On Windows 2000, use ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network Connection Wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol.

Example: Using <cid>=3 to connect to moperu A, the DoCoMo Internet connection service

- Subscription to moperu U requires a charge.

1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [プログラム] (Programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続] (Network and dial-up connections).

- The network and dial-up connections screen appears.

2 Double-click the [新しい接続の作成] (Create new connection) icon.

- The location information screen appears.
- This screen appears the first time the [新しい接続の作成] (Create new connection) icon is double-clicked. For the second and subsequent times, proceed to step 5.

3 Enter [市外局番] (Area code) and click [OK].

- The phone and modem options screen appears.

4 Click [OK].

- A network connection wizard screen appears.

5 Click [次へ] (Next).

- The screen to select network connection type appears.

6 Select [インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する] (Dial-up to the Internet) and click [次へ] (Next).

- A wizard startup screen appears.

7 Select [インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します] (Connect to Internet manually or through local area network (LAN)) and click [次へ] (Next).

- The screen to select the Internet appears.

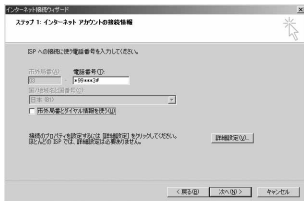
8 Select [電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します] (Connect through phone line and modem) and click [次へ] (Next).

- A screen to specify the modem appears.

9 Confirm that [FOMA SH905i] is set in [インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する] (Select modem to use to connect to the Internet) and click [次へ] (Next).

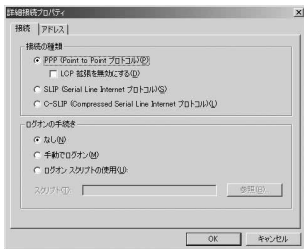
- The Internet account connection information screen appears.
- Set to [FOMA SH905i] if not set.
- The screen does not appear when no modems other than [FOMA SH905i] are installed.

10 Enter the host number in [電話番号] (Phone number) field and click [詳細設定] (Advanced).

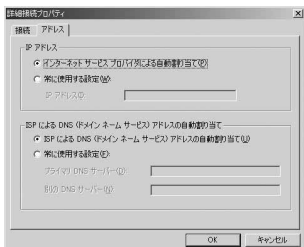


- Advanced connection properties screen appears.
- Confirm that [市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う] (Use area code and dial-up information) shows . When appears instead, change to .

11 Confirm that all settings in the [接続] (Connection) tab are set as shown in the example screen below.



12 Click the [アドレス] (Addresses) tab and confirm that all settings are set as shown in the example screen below.



- For TCP/IP settings used for connecting to an Internet service provider, confirm with the Internet service provider or network administrator.

13 Click [OK].

- The Internet account connection information screen reappears.

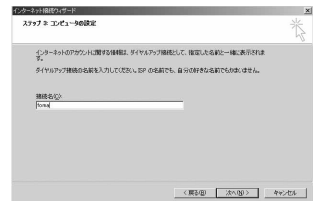
14 Click [次へ] (Next).

- The Internet account login information screen appears.

15 Confirm all settings and click [次へ] (Next).

- The PC configuration screen appears.
- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect. When [次へ] (Next) is clicked with [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) left blank, a confirmation screen appears for the each of them. Click [はい] (Yes).
- When connecting to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) fields.

16 Enter a connection name in the [接続名] (Connection name) field and click [次へ] (Next).

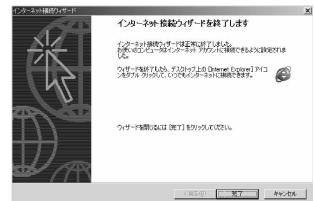


- The e-mail account configuration screen appears.

17 Select [いいえ] (No) and click [次へ] (Next).

- An Internet connection wizard completed screen appears.

18 Click [完了] (Finish).



- The network and dial-up connections screen reappears.

19 Select the icon for host created and select [プロパティ] (Properties) from the [ファイル] (File) menu.

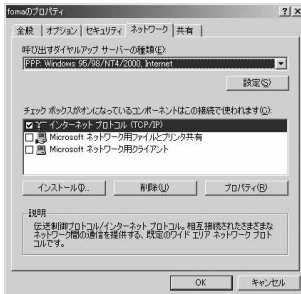
- Properties screen for the host appears.

20 Confirm all the settings in the [全般] (General) tab.



- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, make sure that [FOMA SH905i] in [接続の方法] (Connect using) shows . When appears instead, change to . For modems other than [FOMA SH905i], change to .
- Confirm that [ダイヤル情報を使う] (Use dialing rules) shows . When appears instead, change to .

21 Click the [ネットワーク] (Networking) tab and check all the settings.



- Set [呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類] (Type of dial-up server to call) to [PPP: Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet.]
- Only [インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)] (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) should show .

22 Click [設定] (Settings).

- The PPP setting screen appears.

23 Check all options to show and click [OK].



- Properties screen of the host reappears.

24 Click [OK].

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 26 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

Connecting to the Dial-up Network

Example: Connecting with Windows XP

- The screens are different for Windows Vista and Windows 2000.

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.

2 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [すべてのプログラム] (All programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ネットワーク接続] (Network connections).

- The dial-up network screen appears.

Windows Vista

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [接続先] (Connect to).

3 Double-click the connection icon.



- The connection screen appears.
- Alternatively, select the host icon and then select [接続] (Connect) in the [ファイル] (File) menu to display the connection screen.

4 Confirm the settings and click [ダイヤル] (Dial-up).



- The FOMA is connected to the host.
- The phone number set in "Setting the Dial-up Network" (P. 21) appears in the [ダイヤル] (Dial-up) field.
- When using moper a U or moper a, [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.


Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

1 Click in the task tray and click [切断] (Disconnect).


- The connection is disconnected.

Windows Vista

- Click  in the task tray → [接続または切断...] (Connect or disconnect), and double-click the disconnection icon.

Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX)

Sending/Receiving FOMA Terminal Data to/from a PC

- The FOMA terminal has OBEX as a data communication protocol. OBEX data communication enables sending and receiving phonebook, owner information from the Own number screen, Schedule, sent mail (including SMS), received mail (including SMS), unsent mail (including SMS), Area mail, text memos, melodies, My picture, i-motion, My Documents, bookmark, ToruCa, and Location service client data to and from a PC. The FOMA SH905i is also equipped with an Ir exchange function. Send and receive phonebook entries or data from received mail to/from other FOMA terminals also equipped with the Ir exchange function. Also, transfer data using microSD Memory Card.
- Use the following three types of data communication with the FOMA terminal.
 - Send data one item at a time, from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write 1).
 - Send data in bulk, from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write all).
 - Send data in bulk, from a FOMA terminal to a PC (Read all).
- During data communication, the handset will be outside the service area, and functions such as voice/ Videophone call, i-mode, i-mode mail, packet transmission, and PushTalk will not be available.
- Even after completion of data communication,  (outside the service area) may be displayed for a short time.

Note

- Make sure the FOMA terminal is properly connected to the PC. If not connected properly, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Check whether there is enough remaining battery power of the FOMA terminal. If data communication is performed when the battery level is low or empty, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.

Note

- Check the PC power supply as well. If not turned on, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Perform data communication with the FOMA terminal in stand-by. When movie/i-motion is set as the stand-by display, stop movie/i-motion playback before performing data communication.
- During communication (voice/Videophone call, data communication, and PushTalk), data cannot be sent or received. Also, when sending and receiving data, other data communication cannot be performed. However, receiving a call, right after data communication has begun, may be possible. In such cases, the sending or receiving of data is canceled.
- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent.
- During Ir exchange, melodies, still pictures, i-motion or PDF files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal cannot be sent. However, still pictures and movies shot with the built-in camera can be sent even if File restriction is set to [Restricted].
- Mail with i-appli start up designations can be sent after attached data has been deleted.
- Mail attachment data exceeding 100 KB (including the message text) are deleted and only message is sent.
- Data such as phonebook entries cannot be sent or received while All lock is set. Data of locked functions cannot be received while Function lock is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock is set.
- Depending on data size, data communication may take some time. In addition, the FOMA terminal may not be able to receive data due to data size.
- When receiving phonebook data, data will be added from memory number [010] for single entry, or in accordance with memory number information when receiving all entries.
- When receiving all phonebook entries, Owner information (excluding first phone number) registered in Own number will be overwritten.
- Phonebook entries are sent in memory number order.
- When sending all phonebook entries, Owner information from own number screen is also sent.
- PDF files which exceed 2 MB cannot be sent.

Devices required for data communication (OBEX)

- To perform data communication, downloading OBEX-compliant data transfer software from the Internet, and installing this software to your PC is necessary. Refer to the software manual for information on operating environment and installation methods. In addition, installation of the FOMA Communication Setting File (P. 4 to P. 6) is necessary beforehand.
- A FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.

Note

- The FOMA terminal data communication (OBEX) function conforms with IrMC1.1. However, depending on the function, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC1.1.

Sending Single Data Item (Write 1)

- Send data from a PC to a FOMA terminal one item at a time.
- Sending one item at a time from a FOMA terminal to a PC is not possible.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

1 Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Write 1).

- Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.

Note

- When phonebook data is sent (from a PC to the FOMA terminal handset) one entry at a time, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number from [010] to [999]. If all memory numbers from [010] to [999] are already used, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number between [000] and [009].
- When phonebook data is received and 1,000 entries (names, phone numbers, or mail addresses) are already registered, or more than 1,000 entries have been registered, a message appears notifying that no further entries can be saved.

Sending All Data (Write All/Read All)

- Send and receive all data at once, between a PC and the FOMA terminal.
- "Write all" and "Read all" operations require data transfer software and your FOMA terminal authentication password.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

1 Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Forward all).

- Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.
- Entering your authentication password on the PC will be necessary.
- Enter your authentication password (four digits).

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and the authentication password (four digits).

3 Start data transmission.

Note

- Performing Write all from a PC to your FOMA terminal replaces all data stored in the FOMA terminal. All data previously stored in your FOMA terminal will be deleted. This includes phonebook, Schedule, and protected mail data saved as secret data.
- If an error occurs during data transmission from a PC to the FOMA terminal, all data stored in the FOMA terminal may be deleted. Check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal battery level, and the PC power supply before performing Write all. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.
- Depending on the connected device, the transmission status (bar display) may not appear.

AT Command List

AT Commands

AT commands are commands used to set FOMA terminal functions from a PC. When AT commands are entered from a PC, the FOMA terminal performs the corresponding operations.

AT command input format

AT commands must always start with "AT". Enter in single-byte alphanumeric characters. Below is an input example.

ATD:*99*:*1#

Return symbol: Entered by pressing the Enter key. Used to separate commands.

Parameter: The command argument

Command: The command name

Each AT command including parameter (number or symbol) following the command must be entered on a single line. A single line means the characters from the first character until the character directly before the is pressed. Up to 160 characters (including "AT") can be entered.

AT command input modes

To operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands, set the PC to terminal mode. In terminal mode, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate the FOMA terminal.

- Offline mode
The FOMA terminal is in stand-by. Normally, this mode is used to operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands.
- Online data mode
The FOMA terminal is connected and performing data communication. When an AT command is entered in this mode, the characters are sent directly to the receiver, and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands in this mode.
- Online command mode
Even when the FOMA terminal is connected and performing communication, with special operations, operation by AT commands is possible. When in this mode, AT commands are executed while remaining connected to the receiver, and communications can be resumed after the operation is completed.

Note

- When a call/transmission is made from an external device with 64K data communication, select [A mode]/[Dual mode] to call with Number A. Select [B mode] to call with Number B.
- Terminal mode enables a single PC to operate like a communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

Switching between online data mode and online command mode

Use either of the following methods to switch the FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode.

- Enter "+++" command, or enter the set code in the "S2" register.
- Turn the RS-232C* ER signal OFF when set to "AT&D1".

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO".

* USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, enabling RS-232C signal line control by the communication application.

AT Command List

[M]: AT commands that can be used with the FOMA SH905i Modem Port.

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT [M]	—	The modem function of the FOMA terminal can be controlled by adding commands in the list to the end of this command. ※ Returns OK if only AT is entered.	AT [] OK
AT%V [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2	—	AT%V [] Ver1.00 OK
AT&C<n> [M]	Sets operating condition for circuit CD (DCD) signals sent to DTE.*1	n=0: Circuit CD always ON n=1: Circuit CD signal changes according to line connection status (default setting) When "&C1" is set, the CD signal is turned "ON" directly before the CONNECT signal is sent when connection is completed. The CD signal is turned "OFF" right before "NO CARRIER" is sent when the circuit is disconnected.	AT&C1 [] OK
AT&D<n> [M]	Sets the operation when the circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE changes from "ON" to "OFF" during online data mode.*1	n=0: Ignores status (always considers signal ON) n=1: Sets online command mode when signal changes from ON to OFF n=2: Disconnects line and activates offline mode when signal changes from ON to OFF (default setting)	AT&D1 [] OK
AT&E<n> [M]	Selects speed display specifications when connecting.*1	n=0: Wireless area transmission speed appears. n=1: DTE serial transmission speed appears. (Default setting)	AT&E0 [] OK
AT&F<n> [M]	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings to their default settings. If this command is entered during communication, the settings are reset after disconnected.*2	Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted).	AT&F [] OK
AT&S<n> [M]	Controls when the signal of data set ready (DR) is set to DTE.*1	n=0: Always ON (default setting) n=1: DR signal ON when line is connected	AT&S0 [] OK
AT&W<n> [M]	Stores the current settings in the FOMA terminal's memory.*2, 5	Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted).	AT&W [] OK
AT* DANTE [M]	Displays the reception status of the FOMA terminal.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. *DANTE:<m> <m> 0: Status where outside the service area appears on the FOMA terminal 1: Status where zero or one antenna appears on the FOMA terminal 2: Status where two antennas appears on the FOMA terminal 3: Status where three antennas appears on the FOMA terminal	AT* DANTE [] *DANTE:3 OK
AT*DGANSM=<n> [M]	Sets Accept/Reject call modes for incoming packet communications. This setting is only valid for incoming packet communications after entering setup commands.*2	n=0: Sets Reject call and Accept call settings to [OFF] (Default setting) n=1: Sets Reject call settings to [ON] n=2: Sets Accept call settings to [ON]	AT*DGANSM=0 [] OK AT*DGANSM? [] *DGANSM:0 OK
AT*DGAPL=<n> [,<cid> [M]	Sets host (APN) to accept transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT".*2	Adds or deletes from Accept calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, adds (<n>=0) or deletes (<n>=1) all of <cid> to or from list. Adds (deletes) <cid> not defined with "+CGDCONT" to (from) list with this command. n=0: Adds to list (Adds APN defined by <cid> to Accept calls list) n=1: Deletes from list (Deletes APN defined by <cid> from Accept calls list)	AT*DGAPL=0,1 [] OK AT*DGAPL? [] *DGAPL:1 OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT*DGARL=<n> [,<cid>] [M]	Sets host (APN) to reject transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT". ²	Adds or deletes from Reject calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, adds (<n>=0) or deletes (<n>=1) all of <cid> or from list. Adds (deletes) <cid> not defined with "+CGDCONT" to (from) list with this command. n=0: Adds to list (Adds APN defined by <cid> to Reject calls list) n=1: Deletes from list (Deletes APN defined by <cid> from Reject calls list)	AT*DGARL=0,1 [] OK AT*DGARL?[] *DGARL:1 OK
AT*DRPW [M]	Displays the reception power sent from FOMA terminal. ²	The result from this command is in the following format. *DRPW:<m> m: 0 to 75 (reception power)	AT*DRPW[] *DRPW:0 OK
AT*DGPIR=<n> [M]	Setting this command is valid when establishing communication. Enables adding 186 (send caller ID) and 184 (not send caller ID) to host number. Also available in dial-up network settings. ²	n=0: When establishing packet transmission, connects to host (APN) directly (default setting) n=1: When establishing packet transmission, adds 184 and connects to host (APN) n=2: When establishing packet transmission, adds 186 and connects to host (APN) When 186 (send caller ID)/184 (not send caller ID) are set by this command and in the dial-up network settings, refer to the table on P. 20.	AT*DGPIR=0[] OK AT*DGPIR?[] *DGPIR:0 OK
+++ [M]	Switches the FOMA terminal mode from online data mode to online command mode. Escape guard interval is fixed at one second. ²	—	(During communication) +++ (Does not appear) OK
AT+CACM=[<passwd> [M]	Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM. ²	Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM, if the password matches. <passwd>: SIM PIN2 ※ Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks (" ") when entering.	AT+CACM="0123" [] OK
AT+CAOC=[<mode> [M]	Inquires the current accumulated cost. ²	<mode> 0: Inquires the cost of current call. The result from this command is in the following format. +CAOC:"<ccm>"	AT+CAOC[] +CAOC:"00001E" OK
AT+CBC [M]	Inquires the battery status. ²	The result from this command is in the following format. +CBC:<bcs>,<bcl> <bcs> 0: The battery operates the FOMA terminal 1: Charging the battery 2: The battery is unconnected 3: Reducing the power <bcl> 0 to 100 (remaining battery power)	AT+CBC[] +CBC:0,80 OK
AT+CBST=[<speed>[,<name>[,<ce>]]] [M]	Sets the bearer service when establishing transmission. This setting is only valid when AT+FCLASS=<n> command (☞ P. 34) = 0. ¹	<speed> 116: 64K data communications (default setting) <name> 1: fixed value <ce> 0: fixed value	AT+CBST=116,1,0[] OK
AT+CEER [M]	Displays disconnection reason for preceding communication session. ²	Refer to "Reasons for Disconnection" (☞ P. 38).	AT+CEER[] +CEER:36 OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+CGDCONT [M]	Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission. ^{*2}	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (☞ P. 38).	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (☞ P. 38).
AT+CGEQMIN [M]	Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from network when establishing packet transmission. ^{*2}	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (☞ P. 38).	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (☞ P. 38).
AT+CGEQREQ [M]	Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested of network during packet transmission. ^{*2}	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (☞ P. 39).	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (☞ P. 39).
AT+CGMR [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version. ^{*2}	—	AT+CGMR☐ 1234567890123456 OK
AT+CGREG=<n> [M]	Sets whether to send network registration status. Service area information (inside/outside) is sent. ^{*1}	<n> 0: Does not set (default setting) 1: Sets When AT+CGREG=1 is set, information is sent in the format "+CGREG:<stat>". 0, 1, 4 or 5 can be set for the <stat> parameter. <stat> 0: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor)	AT+CGREG=1☐ OK (Set to send) AT+CGREG?☐ +CGREG:1,0 OK (Indicates outside area) +CGREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area)
AT+CGSN [M]	Displays the FOMA terminal's serial number. ^{*2}	—	AT+CGSN☐ 123456789012345 OK
AT+CLIP=<n> [M]	Shows PC calling number when receiving 64K data communications. ^{*1}	<n> 0: Does not output results (default setting) 1: Outputs results Displays +CLIP:<n>,<m> for "AT+CLIP?" <m> 0: NW setting to not send own number during transmissions 1: NW setting to send own number during transmissions 2: Unknown	AT+CLIP=0☐ OK AT+CLIP?☐ +CLIP:0,1 OK
AT+CLIR=<n> [M]	Sets whether to send terminal's phone number when establishing 64K data communications. ^{*2}	<n> 0: Follows the service agreement 1: Does not send 2: Sends (default setting) Displays +CLIR:<n>,<m> for AT+CLIR? <m> 0: CLIR is not running (always send) 1: CLIR is always running (never send) 2: Unknown 3: CLIR temporary mode (default setting is Do not send) 4: CLIR temporary mode (default setting is Send)	AT+CLIR=0☐ OK AT+CLIR?☐ +CLIR:2,3 OK
AT+CMEE=<n> [M]	Sets the manner to display FOMA terminal error reports. ^{*1}	Sets whether to display errors only as "ERROR", or to display reason with text or numerical value. <n> 0: Displays "ERROR" and no result codes (default setting) 1: Displays result codes with numerical values 2: Displays result codes with text When reports are set to display by setting "n=1" or "n=2", they are displayed in the following format: +CME ERROR:xxxx xxxx is a numerical value or text. Refer to "Error Reports" (☞ P. 38).	AT+CMEE=0☐ OK AT+CNUM☐ ERROR AT+CMEE=1☐ OK AT+CNUM☐ +CME ERROR:10

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+CNUM [M]	Displays FOMA terminal phone number. ²	number: Phone number type : 129 or 145 129: Does not include + international access code 145: Includes + international access code	AT+CNUM☐ +CNUM:,"+819012345678",145 OK
AT+COPS=<mode>[,<format>[,<oper>]] [M]	Selects a telecommunications carrier to be connected. ²	<mode> 0: Auto (Automatically searches network and switch telecommunications carriers) 1: Manual (Connects to the telecommunications carrier specified in <oper>) 2: Cancels (disconnects) the connection to the telecommunications carrier ※ Unsupported. 3: Does not make mapping 4: Manual auto (Performs "Auto" processing if not connected to the telecommunications carrier specified in <oper>) ※ Unsupported. <format> 2: Fixed value <oper> is indicated by a hexadecimal number consisting of a country code (MCC) and a network code (MNC). The formats are shown below. Digit 1 of MCC...octet 1 bits 1 to 4. Digit 2 of MCC...octet 1 bits 5 to 8. Digit 3 of MCC...octet 2 bits 1 to 4. Digit 3 of MNC...octet 2 bits 5 to 8. Digit 2 of MNC...octet 3 bits 5 to 8. Digit 1 of MNC...octet 3 bits 1 to 4.	AT+COPS=1,2,"44F001"☐ OK (Connects to MCC:440MNC:10)
AT+CPAS [M]	Inquires the activity status of the FOMA terminal. ²	The result from this command is in the following format. +CPAS:<pas> <pas> 0: AT commands can be sent/received 1: AT commands cannot be sent/received (does not send the +CPAS:1 result) 2: Unknown 3: AT commands can be sent/received and the FOMA terminal is receiving a call 4: AT commands can be sent/received and performing data communication	AT+CPAS☐ +CPAS:0 OK
AT+CPIN=<pin>[,<newpin>] [M]	Enters the UIM password (PIN1, PIN2). ²	<pin> Enters PIN1 while waiting for PIN1 input (Enter <pin> parameter only) Enters PIN2 while waiting for PIN2 input (Enter <pin> parameter only) Enters PUK1 while waiting for PUK1 input Enters PUK2 while waiting for PUK2 input ※ Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks (" ") when entering. <newpin> Enters a new PIN1 while waiting for PUK1 input Enters a new PIN2 while waiting for PUK2 input ※ Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks (" ") when entering.	AT+CPIN?☐ +CPIN:SIM PIN1 OK (Indicates waiting status for PIN1 input) AT+CPIN="1234"☐ OK AT+CPIN?☐ +CPIN:SIM PUK1 OK (Indicates waiting status for PUK1 input) AT+CPIN="12345678","1234"☐ OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+CR=<mode> [M]	Sets whether to display packet transmission/64K data communications before "CONNECT" result code is displayed during line connection.*1 "GPRS" is displayed for packet transmission, and "SYNC" is displayed for 64K data communications.	<mode> 0: Does not display when line is connected (default setting) 1: Displays when line is connected	AT+CR=1☐ OK ATD:*99:*:*1# +CR:GPRS CONNECT
AT+CRC=<n> [M]	Sets to use extended results code at reception.*1	n=0: Does not use extended results code (Default setting) n=1: Uses extended result codes	AT+CRC=0☐ OK
AT+CREG=<n> [M]	Sets service area information on or off.*1	When AT+CREG=1 is set, information is set in the format "+CREG:<stat>". 0, 1, 4 or 5 can be set for the <stat> parameter. <n> 0: Does not send (default setting) 1: Sends <stat> 0: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor)	AT+CREG=1☐ OK (Set to send) AT+CREG?☐ +CREG:1,0 OK (Indicates outside area) +CREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area)
AT+CUUSD=[<n>,<str>,<dcs>] [M]	Changes setting toward net for optional services, etc.*1	<n> 0: Answers without intermediate result (default setting) 1: Answers with intermediate result <str> Service code ※ Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]". <dcs> 0: fixed value	AT+CUUSD=0,"xxx xxx"☐ OK
AT+FCLASS=<n> [M]	Sets the mode.*1	<n> 0: data (fixed value)	AT+FCLASS=0☐ OK
AT+GCAP [M]	Displays the ability list of the FOMA terminal.*2	—	AT+GCAP☐ +GCAP:+CGSM, +FCLASS,+W OK
AT+GMI [M]	Displays FOMA terminal maker name in single-byte alphanumeric characters.*2	—	AT+GMI☐ SHARP OK
AT+GMM [M]	Displays abbreviated FOMA terminal product name (FOMA SH905i) in alphanumeric characters.*2	—	AT+GMM☐ FOMA SH905i OK
AT+GMR [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2	—	AT+GMR☐ Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC=<n,m> [M]	Sets local flow control format between the PC and FOMA terminal.*1	DCE by DTE (<n>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting) DTE by DCE (<m>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting)	AT+IFC=2,2☐ OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+WS46? [M]	Answers according to the 3G/ GSM switch setting of the international roaming setting.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. <n> 12: GSM/GPRS mode 22: 3G mode 25: Auto mode	AT+WS46?☐ 25 OK (Auto mode)
A/ [M]	Performs the preceding executed command.*2	—	A/ OK
ATA [M]	Performs incoming process for packet or 64K data if entered when receiving the data.*2	Enter "ATA184☐" (arrival call action for anonymous call) or "ATA186☐" (arrival call action for identified call) while receiving packets.	RING ATA☐ CONNECT
ATD [M]	Establishes communication.*2, 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Packet transmission ATD*99***<cid>#☐ When ATD*99# is entered: Uses <cid>=1 (default setting) (When <cid> is not entered, setting becomes <cid>=1). When syntax starting with ATD184*99***<cid># is entered: "184" is added to host (APN) defined by specified <cid> (Alternatively, "186" can be added by same operation to turn caller ID sending to ON). 64K data communications ATD [parameter] [phone number] ☐ Number cannot be dialed if characters other than 0 to 9, *, #, +, A, a, B, b, C, c, D, d, hyphens (-), spaces, T, t, P, p, !, W, w, @, or commas (,) are included. Characters highlighted with ☐ can be entered but are ignored during dialing. 	ATD*99***1#☐ CONNECT
ATE<n> [M]	Sets whether the FOMA terminal returns echo of AT commands sent from the PC.*1	n=0: Does not return echo n=1: Returns echo (default setting) Normally, set to n=1. If the PC has an echo function, set to n=0.	ATE1☐ OK
ATH [M]	Disconnects line when entered during packet transmission or 64K data communications.*2	—	(During communication) +++ (Does not appear) OK ATH☐ NO CARRIER
ATI<n> [M]	Displays the verification code.*2	n=0: NTT DoCoMo n=1: Displays abbreviated product name (FOMA SH905i) n=2: Displays the product version in a format such as "VerX.XX" n=3: Displays each element of ACMP signals n=4: Displays details of the communication functions provided in the FOMA terminal	ATI0☐ NTT DoCoMo OK
ATO [M]	Returns to online data mode from online command mode during communication.*2	—	ATO☐ CONNECT
ATQ<n> [M]	Sets whether to display result codes.*1	n=0: Displays result codes (default setting) n=1: Does not display result codes	ATQ0☐ OK
ATV<n> [M]	Sets manner of displaying result codes.*1	Displays all result codes with numbers or text. n=0: Displays result codes with numbers n=1: Displays result codes with text (default setting)	ATV1☐ OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
ATX<n> [M]	Sets whether to include speed in the CONNECT display when connecting. Also detects busy tone or dial tone.*1	Busy tone detection: Sends BUSY response when number dialed is busy. Dial tone detection: Determines whether FOMA terminal is connected. Speed display: Sets whether to include speed in the CONNECT display when connecting. n=0: No busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, no speed display n=1: No busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, speed display n=2: No busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display n=3: Busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, speed display n=4: Busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display (default setting)	ATX1☐ OK
ATZ<n> [M]	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings.*2, 4	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings to the values set in non-volatile memory. If this command is entered during communication, the settings are reset after disconnected. Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted).	(When online) ATZ☐ NO CARRIER (When offline) ATZ☐ OK
ATS0=<n> [M]	Sets number of rings before FOMA terminal automatically receives.*1	n=0: No automatic receiving (Default setting) n=1 to 255: Automatically receives after sets number of rings	ATS0=0☐ OK
ATS2=<n> [M]	Sets the escape character.	n=0 to 127 (default setting: n=43) When n=127 is set, escape is disabled.	ATS2=43☐ OK ATS2?☐ 043 OK
ATS3=<n> [M]	Sets the carriage return (CR) character.	Defines the character used to recognize the end of an AT command character string. Appended to the end of the echoed command character string and result code. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=13).	ATS3=13☐ OK ATS3?☐ 013 OK
ATS4=<n> [M]	Sets the line feed (LF) character.	Appended after the CR character, when result codes are displayed as text. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=10).	ATS4=10☐ OK ATS4?☐ 010 OK
ATS5=<n> [M]	Sets the backspace (BS) character.	When detected while entering an AT command, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=8).	ATS5=8☐ OK ATS5?☐ 008 OK
ATS6=<n> [M]	Sets pause time (seconds) until dialing.	Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 2 to 10 (default setting: n=5)	ATS6=10☐ OK
ATS8=<n> [M]	Sets pause time (seconds) until comma dialing.	Sets a register but does not affect the pause time (3 seconds). n=0: Does not pause n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=3)	ATS8=3☐ OK
ATS10=<n> [M]	Sets the delay time (seconds) for automatic disconnection (1/10 seconds).*1	Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=1)	ATS10=1☐ OK
ATS30=<n> [M]	Disconnects when no data is sent/received for at least this amount of time.	Only valid during 64K data communications. <n> is set in minutes. n: 0 to 255 (default setting: n=0) n=0 sets inactive timer off.	ATS30=3☐ OK
ATS103=<n> [M]	Sets delimiter used when adding an incoming sub-address to number dialed.	Only valid during 64K data communications. n=0: *Asterisk n=1: /Slash (default setting) n=2: ¥Yen mark or backslash	ATS103=0☐ OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
ATS104=<n> [M]	Sets delimiter used when adding an outgoing sub-address to number dialed.	Only valid during 64K data communications. n=0: #Pound sign n=1: %Percent symbol (default setting) n=2: &Ampersand	ATS104=0 [] OK
AT#S [M]	Displays current command and S register settings. ^{*2}	—	AT#S [] E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 %V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT#V<n> [M]	Selects response code type used during connection. ^{*1}	Only valid when the ATX<n> command (P. 36) setting is not n=0. n=0: Does not use extended result codes (default setting) n=1: Uses extended result codes	AT#V1 [] OK

*1 Stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands.

*2 Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

*3 Perform Redial with ATDN [] or ATDL [].

*4 If the ATZ command is executed before the AT&W command is used, terminal settings return to last written memory, and prior changes are erased.

*5 Settings written into the FOMA terminal's memory using the AT&W command is stored as non-volatile data when power is turned off.

Reasons for Disconnection

Packet transmissions

Value	Reason
27	Host (APN) does not exist, or was incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	No packet transmission subscription.
36	Disconnected properly.

64K data communications

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected properly.
17	Line busy.
18	Number was dialed, but no response received within specified time.
19	Dialed number is making a call.
21	Dialed number refused incoming call.
63	Network service or option is not valid.
65	Transmission capacity not provided was specified.
88	Dialed number of terminal with different terminal attribute, or call was received.

Error Reports

Numerical display	Text display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	FOMA card not inserted.
15	SIM wrong	A non-DoCoMo SIM (IC card equivalent to FOMA card) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Password is incorrect.
100	unknown	Unknown error occurred.

More on AT Commands

Command name: +CGDCONT=[parameter]

Overview

Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission.
Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

```
+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,<PDP_type>][,<APN>]]
```

Parameter description

<cid>* : 1 to 10
<PDP_type>* : PPP or IP
<APN>* : Any number

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA terminal. The default settings are *mopera.ne.jp* for <cid>=1 (<PDP_type> is "PPP") and *mopera.net* for <cid>=3 (<PDP_type> is "IP"). Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10. APN is a user-specified character string for each connection, indicating the host.

Execution example

```
Command when registering host (APN) name "abc" (for <cid>=2)  
AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc"  
OK
```

Operation when parameter is abbreviated

```
AT+CGDCONT=  
Clears all <cid> settings. Resets <cid>=1 and 3 settings to default values.  
AT+CGDCONT=<cid>  
Clears specified <cid> setting. Resets <cid>=1 and 3 settings to default values.  
AT+CGDCONT=?  
Displays list of values that can be set.  
AT+CGDCONT?  
Displays current settings.
```

Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

Overview

Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from the network when establishing PPP packet transmission. The command execution examples below describe the four available setting patterns. Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

```
AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid> [, <Maximum bitrate UL> [, <Maximum bitrate DL>]]
```

Parameter description

<cid>* : 1 to 10
<Maximum bitrate UL>* : None (initial setting) or 384
<Maximum bitrate DL>* : None (initial setting) or 3648
<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA terminal. The default settings are *mopera.ne.jp* for <cid>=1 and *mopera.net* for <cid>=3. Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10. [Maximum bitrate UL] and [Maximum bitrate DL] set the minimum uplink and downlink transmission speed (kbps) between the FOMA terminal and base station. When set to [None] (default setting), all speeds are permitted. Note that when set to "384" and "3648", connections established under these speeds are not permitted, so packet transmission connection may not be established.

Execution examples

Set one of the following four patterns. Setting (1) is the initial setting for all cid.

- (1) Command permitting all uplink/downlink speeds (for <cid>=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK
- (2) Command permitting only uplink speeds of 384 kbps and downlink speeds of 3,648 kbps (for <cid>=3)
AT+CGEQMIN=3,,384,3648
OK
- (3) Command permitting uplink speeds of 384 kbps and all downlink speeds (for <cid>=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,384
OK
- (4) Command permitting all uplink speeds and downlink speeds of 3,648 kbps (for <cid>=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,3648
OK

Operation when parameter is abbreviated

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting.

AT+CGEQMIN=?

Displays list of values that can be set.

AT+CGEQMIN?

Displays current settings.

Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

Overview

Sets QoS (Quality of Service) required of the network when establishing PPP packet transmission.

The command execution example below describes the setting pattern which is also set as the initial setting.

Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

Parameter description

This setting is assigned to each cid by default value.

<cid>*: 1 to 10

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA terminal. The default settings are **mopera.ne.jp** for <cid>= 1 and **mopera.net** for <cid>=3. Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10.

Command when requesting connection at uplink speed of 384 kbps, or downlink speed of 3,648 kbps

Execution example

For <cid>=3

AT+CGEQREQ=3

OK

Operation when parameter is abbreviated

AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> settings to default settings.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ=?

Displays list of values that can be set.

AT+CGEQREQ?

Displays current settings.

Result Codes

Result codes

Numerical display	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected to number dialed.
2	RING	Call detected.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not accepted.
6	NO DIAL TONE	No dial tone detected.
7	BUSY	Detecting busy tone.
8	NO ANSWER	Connection completed. The server connection timed out.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redial restricted.

Extended result codes

Numerical display	Text display	Meaning
5	CONNECT 1200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 1,200 bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 2,400 bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 4,800 bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 7,200 bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 9,600 bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 14,400 bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 19,200 bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 38,400 bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 57,600 bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 115,200 bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 230,400 bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 460,800 bps.

Note

- When n=1 is set for the ATV<n> command (☞ P. 35), result codes are displayed as text (default setting). When set to n=0, they are displayed as numerical values.
- Transmission speed is displayed to maintain compatibility with conventional modems connected by RS-232C. However, since the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01, the displayed speed will differ from the actual speed of connection.
- When [RESTRICTION] (Number: 100) appears, the transmission network is congested. Try connecting again later.

Communication Protocol Result Codes

Numerical display	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connected with 64K data communications
5	PACKET	Connected with packet transmission

Result code display examples

When ATX0 is set

The CONNECT display appears only when connection is completed, regardless of the AT¥V<n> command (☞ P. 37) setting.

Text display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
CONNECT
```

Numerical display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
1
```

When ATX1 is set

- When ATX1 and AT¥V0 are set (initial value)

When connection is completed, CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> appears in the syntax.

Text display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
CONNECT 460800
```

Numerical display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
1 21
```

- When ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set*

When connection is completed, the information below appears in the syntax.

CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> PACKET <host (APN)>/<maximum uplink speed (FOMA terminal to mobile network base station)>/<maximum downlink speed (mobile network base station to FOMA terminal)>

Text display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
CONNECT 460800 PACKET  
mopera.ne.jp/384/3648  
(Indicates terminal connected to  
mopera.ne.jp, at maximum uplink  
speed of 384 kbps and maximum  
downlink speed of 3,648 kbps)
```

Numerical display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
1 21 5
```

- * Dial-up connection may not be processed correctly when ATX1 and AT¥V1 are simultaneously set. Using only AT¥V0 is recommended.

Kuten Code List

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbol, and alphanumeric characters.

- Each kuten code corresponds to a particular character.
Refer to "Inputting Kuten Code" of the user's guide for details.
- If an unregistered kuten code is entered, either a space or nothing will be entered.
- Some entries in the kuten code list may differ from on the screen.

Kuten 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit									Kuten 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit									Kuten 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010										073	б	Э	Ю								187	我	牙	画	臥	手	俄	驚	
011	!	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	074	Э	Ю	Я								188	介	会	解	塊	挽	悔		
012	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	075	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	э	189	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
013	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	ь	190	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
014	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	077	ф	х	я								191	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
015	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	078	ю	я									192	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
016	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	080	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	194	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
017	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	081	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	195	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
018	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	082	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	196	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
019	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	083	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	197	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
020	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	130	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	198	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
021	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲	200	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
022	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	132	⑳	㉑	㉒	㉓	㉔	㉕	㉖	㉗	㉘	㉙	201	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
023	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	133	㉚	㉛	㉜	㉝	㉞	㉟	㊱	㊲	㊳	㊴	202	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
024	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	134	㊴	㊵	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	㊻	㊼	㊽	203	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
026	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	135	㊾	㊿	Ⓚ	Ⓛ	Ⓜ	Ⓝ	Ⓞ	Ⓟ	Ⓠ	Ⓡ	204	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
027	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	136	Ⓡ	Ⓢ	Ⓣ	Ⓤ	Ⓥ	Ⓦ	Ⓧ	Ⓨ	Ⓩ	ⓐ	205	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
028	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	137	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	ⓔ	ⓕ	ⓖ	ⓗ	ⓘ	ⓙ	206	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
029	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	138	ⓙ	ⓚ	ⓛ	ⓜ	ⓝ	ⓞ	ⓟ	ⓠ	ⓡ	ⓢ	207	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
031	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	139	ⓢ	ⓣ	ⓤ	⓶	⓷	⓸	⓹	⓺	⓻	⓼	207	介	会	画	臥	手	俄		
032	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	岐	器		
033	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器			
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
036	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
039	z	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
040	あ	い	う	え	お	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
041	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
042	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
043	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
044	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
045	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
046	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
047	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
048	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
050	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
051	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
052	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
053	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
054	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
055	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
056	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
057	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
058	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
060	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
061	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
062	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
063	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
064	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
065	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
070	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
071	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		
072	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	207	基	奇	岐	岐	器		

